

**THE BOOK OF
MORMON**

**HMONG – ENGLISH
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to ben.crowder@gmail.com.

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Phau Ntawv Maumoos

Ib Zaj uas Tau Sau Los ntawm Maumoos Txhais Tes Rau Saum cov Phiaj uas Tau Muab ntawm Nifais cov Phiaj Los

Yog li ntawd, nws thiaj yog ib qho ntsiab lus ntawm Nifais cov neeg phau ceev xwm txheej, thiab cov Neeg Lamas thiab—Tau sau rau cov Neeg Lamas, cov uas yog ib co noob uas seem los ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab kuj yog rau cov Neeg Yudaïs thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg—Tau sau raws li txoj kev txib ua, thiab kuj yog los ntawm tus ntsuj plig kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab kev tshwm sim—Tau sau tseg thiab tau nias cim rau, thiab tau muab zais cia rau tus Tswv, es kom lawv txhob raug puas tsuaj—Kom xwv yuav tawm los los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev pub thiab lub hwj chim mus rau ntawm txoj kev txhais lus—Tau muab nias cim rau los ntawm Maulaunais txhais tes, thiab tau muab zais rau tus Tswv, es kom yuav tawm los nyob hauv lub caij teem cia, los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg los—Ntawm txoj kev txhais lus los ntawm txoj kev pub ntawm Vajtswv.

Ib qho ntsiab lus uas tau muab ntawm Phau Ntawv Ethaws los thiab, uas yog cov Neeg Tsales ib phau ceev xwm txheej, cov uas tau raug ua tawg ri niab lub caij tus Tswv ua rau cov neeg yam lus tsis sib nkag siab, thaum lawv tseem tab tom tsa ib tug pej thuam mus rau saum ntuj—Qhov uas yuav ua qhia rau tsev neeg Ixayees cov noob uas seem kom paub seb tus Tswv tau ua tej yam loj li cas rau lawv cov yawg koob lawm; thiab xwv kom lawv yuav paub tau tus Tswv tej kev khi lus, hais tias lawv twb tsis raug muab pov tseg mus ib txhis li—Thiab rau ntawm txoj kev yaum cov Neeg Yudaïs thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg hais tias YEXUS yog tus KHETOS, VAJTSWV TUS UAS NYOB MUS IB TXHIS, ua ntshis nws tus kheej tawm mus rau txhua haiv neeg—Thiab nim no, yog muaj tej kev yuam kev tej ntawd tsuas yog neeg tej kev Tsis yog xwb; yog li ntawd, tsis txhob thuam tej yam uas yog Vajtswv li, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav raug nrhiav pom tsis muaj qhov ceb nyob ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim.

The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

Nifais Thawj Phau Ntawv

Nws Kev Kav Teb Chaws Thiab

Nws Kev Ua Hauj Lwm Qhuab

Qhia Txoj Moo Zoo

Ib zag piav txog Libais thiab nws tus poj niam Xaliyas, thiab nws plaub tug tub, hu ua, (pib ntawm tus blob mus) Lamas, Lemu-ees, Xam, thiab Nifais. Tus Tswv ceeb toom kom Libais kbiau tawm hauv daim av Yeluxalees mus, vim tias nws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau tej pej xeem hais txog lawv tej kev txbaum thiab lawv nrhiv txo nws txoj sia pov tseg. Nws nrog nws tsev neeg tsiv mus peb hnub nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua. Nifais koj nws cov tij laug rov qab mus pem daim av Yeluxalees mus muab cov Neeg Yudais phau ceev xwm txheej. Zaj piav txog lawv tej kev txom nyem. Lawv koj Ixama-ees cov ntxhais ua poj niam. Lawv koj lawv tsev neeg tawm mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua. Lawv tej kev txom nyem thiab kev kub ntxhov nyob tom roob moj sab qhua. Lawv txoj kev tsiv. Lawv mus txog cov dej hiax txwv. Nifais cov tij laug ntseev siab rau nws. Nws ua rau nkarwv ua twjywm, thiab txua ib lub nkoj. Lawv hu qhov chaw no lub npe hu ua Huaj Vam. Lawv bla cov dej hiax txwv mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, thiab lwm yam ntxiv. Zaj no yog hais raws nraim li Nifais zaj; los sis ua lwm yam hais, kuv, Nifais tau sau phau ceev xwm txheej no.

1 Nifais 1

- 1 Kuv, Nifais, tau yug los ntawm niam txiv uas zoo, yog li ntawd kuv raug qhia kuv txiv tej yam kev txawj ntse huv tib si; thiab tau pom kev tsim txom ntau nyob hauv kuv lub neej, txawm li ntawd los, kuv tseem tau raug txhawb pab los ntawm tus Tswv ntau heev nyob tag nrho rau hauv kuv lub neej thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, tau paub ntau txog txoj kev zoo thiab tej txuj ci uas neeg tsis paub txog ntawm Vajtswv, ces kuv txawm sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej txog tej yam uas kuv tau ua los lawm nyob rau hauv kuv lub neej.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej raws li kuv txiv yam lus, uas muaj txog cov Neeg Yudais kev txawj ntse thiab cov neeg Iyiv yam lus.

The First Book of Nephi

His Reign and Ministry

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.

1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

- 3 Thiab kuv paub tias phau ceev xwm txheej uas kuv sau no muaj tseeb tiag; thiab kuv muab kiag kuv txhais tes sau; thiab kuv sau raws nraim li kuv txoj kev txawj ntse.
- 4 Vim tau muaj tias pib thawj xyoo uas Xedekhiyas, teb chaws Yudas tus vaj ntxwv, sawv kav teb chaws, (kuv txiv, Lihais, tau nyob hauv Yeluxalees tas nws sim neej); thiab tib lub xyoo ntawd kiag tau muaj ntau tug yaj saub tuaj, tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg sawv daws kom lawv yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, tsis li ntawd lub zos Yeluxalees uas loj yuav tsum raug puas tsuaj mus.
- 5 Vim li ntawd ces tau muaj tias kuv txiv, Lihais, thaum nws tau tawm mus thov tus Tswv, muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb tau thov tag nws lub siab lub ntsws, rau nws cov neeg.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws thov tus Tswv, txawm muaj ib tug ncej nplaim hluav taws tshwm tuaj nyob saum ib lub pob zeb ntawm nws xub ntiag; thiab nws pom ntau yam thiab hnov ntau yam; thiab vim tej yam uas nws tau pom thiab nws tau hnov nws txawm xob vog thiab tshee heev kawg li.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws rov qab los tom nws lub tsev hauv Yeluxalees; thiab nws qhau cev hlo rau saum nws lub txaj pw, vim tus Ntsuj Plig thiab tej yam xwm uas nws tau pom twb ua rau nws tsis muaj zog lawm.
- 8 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig twb tseem ua rau nws tsis muaj zog, nws ua yog toog pom mus deb, uas nws tau pom ntuj qhib plo, thiab nws xav tias nws pom Vajtswv zaum saum nws lub rooj zaum, muaj tim tswv coob leej suav tsis txheeb nrog ncig nws, zoo li lawv hu nkauj thiab qhuas lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau pom Ib Tug nqis puag nruab ntug los, thiab nws ntsia pom tias tus ntawd qhov ci tseem ci tshaj li lub hnuv thaum tav su.
- 10 Thiab nws kuj tau pom kaum ob tug lawv tus ntawd qab, thiab lawv qhov ci tseem ci tshaj cov hnuv qub nyob saum ntuj.
- 11 Thiab lawv tau nqis los thiab tau mus saum nruab nqhuab; thiab thawj tug tau los thiab tau sawv ntawm kuv txiv xub ntiag, thiab tau muab ib phau ntawv rau nws, thiab hais kom nws yuav tsum nyeem.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws nyeem, nws txawm muaj tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

- 13 Thiab nws nyeem, hais tias: Kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem, rau Yeluxalees, vim kuv tau pom nej tej kev qias! Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv txiv tau nyeem ntau yam txog Yeluxalees—hais tias nws yuav raug puas tsuaj mus, thiab tej neeg zej zog uas nyob hauv thiab; coob leej yuav tuag rau hniav ntaj hniav riam, thiab coob leej yuav raug txhom cab mus rau hauv Npanpiloos.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv txiv tau nyeem thiab tau pom ntau yam zoo thiab tseem ceeb, nws tau tsa ncauj hais ntau yam rau tus Tswv; xws li: Koj txoj hauj lwm zoo thiab tseem ceeb kawg li, Au tus Tswv Vajtsv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus! Koj lub rooj zaum nyob siab puag saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thiab koj lub hwj chim, thiab qhov zoo, thiab lub siab hlub tshua nthuav pub rau tag nrho cov neeg hauv ntiaj teb no huv tib si; thiab, vim tias koj muaj lub siab hlub tshua, koj yuav tsis cia kom cov neeg uas los cuag koj piam sij mus!
- 15 Thiab tom qab uas kuv txiv tau tsa lus qhuas nws tus Vajtsv zoo li no lawm; nws tus ntsuj plig txawm tau zoo siab heev, thiab tag nrho nws lub siab puv npo, vim tej yam uas nws tau pom los lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, yam uas tus Tswv tau pub rau nws pom.
- 16 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tsis sau tag nrho tej zaj uas kuv txiv tau sau cia lawm, vim nws tau sau ntau yam uas nws tau ua yog toog pom thiab ua npau suav pom; thiab nws kuj tau sau ntau yam uas nws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tau hais rau nws tej me nyuam, uas kuv yuav tsis sau tag nrho txhua zaj.
- 17 Tiam sis kuv yuav sau txog zaj uas kuv tau ua los lawm nyob hauv kuv lub neej. Saib seb, kuv sau ib zag ntsiab lus tawm ntawm kuv txiv phau ceev xwm txheej, rau saum cov phiaj uas kuv tau muab kuv txhais tes ua kiag; yog li ntawd, tom qab uas kuv tau sau ib zag ntsiab lus tawm ntawm kuv txiv phau ceev xwm txheej lawm ces kuv yuav sau ib zag txog kuv lub neej.
- 18 Yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej paub, tias tom qab uas tus Tswv tau muab ntau yam tseem ceeb rau kuv txiv, Lihais pom, muaj tseeb tiag, hais txog kev puas tsuaj ntawm Yeluxalees, saib seb nws tau mus ncig rau tej pej xeem, thiab nws tau pib tshaj tawm tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab hais rau lawv txog cov uas nws tau pom thiab tau hnov los lawm.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Yudais txawm tau thuam nws vim tej uas nws tau ua tim khawv rau lawv; vim tias nws tau ua tim khawv tseeb ntawm lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias; thiab nws ua tim khawv tias tej yam uas nws tau pom thiab tau hnov lawm, thiab tej yam uas nws tau nyeem nyob hauv phau ntawv thiab, tau qhia meej txog qhov uas tus Mexiyas yuav los, thiab txoj kev txhiv dim rau neeg ntiaj teb.

20 Thiab thaum cov Neeg Yudais hnov tej no lawv npau taws rau nws; muaj tseeb tiag, twb ib yam nkaus li ua rau cov yaj saub thaum ub, cov uas lawv tau muab ntiab khiav tawm, thiab xuas pob zeb ntaus, thiab tua pov tseg; thiab lawv nrhiav txo nws txoj sia, kom lawv yuav tau muab nws txoj sia txo pov tseg. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv, Nifais, yuav qhia rau nej tias tus Tswv txoj kev hluv tshua muaj nyob nrog txhua tus uas nws twb tau xaiv tseg lawm, vim lawv txoj kev ntseeg, thiaj ua rau lawv muaj zog zis mus txog thaum lawv muaj lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev cawm dim.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

1 Nifais 2

- 1 Vim saib seb, tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv txiv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau hais nyob hauv ib zag npau suav, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj tau koob hmoov kawg Lihais, vim yog tej uas koj tau ua lawm; thiab vim koj tau muab siab ntseeg thiab tau qhia txhua yam uas kuv tau txib koj ua rau cov neeg no sawv daws, saib seb, lawv nrhiav muab koj txoj sia txo pov tseg.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau txib kuv txiv, twb tau hais nyob hauv ib zag npau suav, kom nws yuav tsum coj nws tsev neeg thiab khiav tawm mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau mloog tus Tswv lus, vim li ntawd nws thiaj tau ua raws li tus Tswv tau txib nws.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ncaim mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua. Thiab nws tau tso nws lub vaj lub tsev tseg, thiab thaj av uas yog nws qub txeeg qub teg, thiab nws tej nyiaj thiab nws tej kub, thiab nws tej khoom muaj nuj nqis, thiab tsis tau nqa ib yam dab tsi nrog nws li, tsuas yog coj nws tsev neeg nkaus xwb, thiab nqa tej yam yuav siv xwb, thiab nqa cov tsev pheb suab ntaub xwb, thiab nws txawm tawm mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua lawm.
- 5 Thiab nws tau nqis raws ciam teb tuaj ze ntawm ntug Dej Hiav Txwv Liab; thiab nws tsiv mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua hauv ciam teb uas nyob ze zog rau ntawm Dej Hiav Txwv Liab; thiab nws kuj tau tsiv mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua nrog nws tsev neeg, uas muaj kuv niam, Xaliyas, thiab kuv cov tij laug, uas yog Lamas, Lemu-ees, thiab Xam.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau mus peb hnuv rau hauv roob moj sab qhua lawm, nws tau tsa nws lub tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob hauv ib lub hav nyob ib sab ntawm ib tug kwj deg uas muaj dej.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tsa ib lub thaj pob zeb, thiab nws tau ua kev cai txi pub rau tus Tswv, thiab ua tus Tswv uas yog peb tus Vajtswv tsaug.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tis tus dej ntawd npe hu ua tus dej Lamas, thiab tus dej ntawd ntws mus tshuam rau Dej Hiav Txwv Liab; thiab lub hav ntawd nyob rau ntawm ciam teb ze ntawm qhov dej tshuam.

1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

- 9 Thiab thaum kuv txiv tau pom tias tus dej ntawd ntws mus tshuam rau hauv pas Dej Hiav Txwv Liab, nws hais rau Lamas hais tias: Au xav kom koj yuav zoo tau npaum li tus dej no, uas ntws mus tsis tu ncuva rau hauv txhua txoj kev ncaj ncees huv tib si!
- 10 Thiab nws kuj tau hais rau Lemu-ees hais tias: Au xav kom koj yuav zoo tau npaum li lub hav no, khov thiab ruaj nrees, thiab nyob khov kho hauv kev coj raws nraim li tus Tswv tej lus txib!
- 11 Nim no nws hais li no los vim Lamas thiab Lemu-ees nkawd txoj kev tawv ncauj; vim saib seb nkawd tau yws yws ntau yam rau nkawd txiv, vim tias nws yog ib tug neeg uas pheej ua yog toog pom, thiab thiaj tau coj lawv tawm ntawm daim av Yeluxalees, kom tso thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg tseg, thiab tau tso lawv tej nyiaj tej kub, thiab tso lawv tej khoom muaj nuj nqis, es tuaj mus piam sij nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua. Thiab nkawd hais tias nws tau ua li no los yog vim tej yam vwm ntsuav uas nws lub siab xav.
- 12 Vim li no Lamas thiab Lemu-ees, ob tug ua tij, thiaj tau yws yws rau nkawd txiv. Thiab nkawd tseem tau yws yws vim tias nkawd tsis paub txog tej kev ua dej ua num ntawm tus Vajtswv uas tau tsim nkawd los.
- 13 Thiab nkawd kuj tsis tau ntseeg tias Yeluxalees, lub nroog loj ntawd, yuav raug puas tsuaj mus raws li cov yaj saub tej lus. Thiab nkawd zoo li cov Neeg Yudais uas nyob rau hauv Yeluxalees, cov uas nrhiav muab kuv txiv txoj sia txo pov tseg.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv txiv txawm tau hais rau nkawd nyob hauv lub hav Lemu-ees, nws hais muaj hwj chim zis, muaj tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo hauv nws, nws hais mus txog thaum nkawd lub cev tshee na ntawm nws xub ntiag. Thiab nws tau ua rau nkawd ua twj ywm, kom nkawd tsis txhob yws yws nws lawm; yog li ntawd, nkawd thiaj tau ua raws li nws txib nkawd.
- 15 Thiab kuv txiv tau nyob hauv ib lub tsev pheeб suab ntaub.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tus uas tseem hluas heev, tiam sis tseem muaj lub cev loj siab, thiab kuj muaj lub siab xav paub txog Vajtsv wv tej txuj ci uas neeg tsis paub txog thiab, yog li ntawd, kuv thiaj tau tsa ncauj quaj thov rau tus Tswv; thiab saib seb nws tau los xyuas kuv, thiab tau nplij kuv lub siab ces kuv txawm ntseeg txhua lo lus uas kuv txiv tau hais; yog li ntawd, kuv tseem tsis tau ntseev siab tawm tsam nws li kuv cov tij laug.
- 17 Thiab kuv tau hais rau Xam, kom nws paub txog tej yam uas tus Tswv tau pub rau kuv paub los ntawm nws tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ntseeg kuv cov lus.
- 18 Tiam sis, saib seb, Lamas thiab Lemu-ees tsis kam mloog kuv cov lus; thiab kuv tau nyuaj siab rau qhov nkawd muaj lub siab tawv kuv thiaj tau thov tus Tswv pab nkawd.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Koj tau koob hmoov kawg, Nifais, vim koj txoj kev ntseeg, vim koj tau kub siab lug nrhiav kuv nrog lub siab mos siab muag.
- 20 Thiab npaum tias koj yuav coj raws nraim li kuv tej lus txib, koj yeej yuav huaj vam, thiab yuav raug coj mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib thaj av uas kuv tau npaj tseg cia rau koj lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib thaj av uas zoo tshaj li lwj thaj.
- 21 Thiab npaum tias koj ob tug tij laug yuav ntseev siab tawm tsam koj, nkawd yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag mus.
- 22 Thiab npaum tias koj yuav coj raws nraim li kuv tej lus txib, koj yuav raug xaiv los ua tus thawj thiab tus xib hwb uas kav koj ob tug tij laug.
- 23 Vim saib seb, hnuv uas nkawd yuav ntseev siab tawm tsam kuv, kuv yuav foom phem rau nkawd, twb yuav yog ib qhov kev foom mob heev li, thiab nkawd yuav tsis muaj hwj chim tshaj koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntswv tsuas ntshai lawv ho yuav ntseev siab tawm tsam kuv thiab xwb.
- 24 Thiab yog muaj tias lawv ntseev siab tawm tsam kuv, lawv yuav ua ib rab nplawm rau koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntswv, uas yuav txhib kom lawv ntshov rau tej kev rov nco txog.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Nifais 3

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tom qab uas kuv nrog tus Tswv tham tas lawm, kuv tau rov qab los rau tom kuv txiv lub tsev pheeb suab ntaub.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Saib seb kuv tau ua ib zag npau suav, nyob hauv zaj npau suav no tus Tswv tau txib kuv tias kom koj thiab koj cov tij laug yuav tsum rov qab mus lawm pem Yeluxalees.
- 3 Vim saib seb, Lanpas tau cov Neeg Yudais phau ceev xwm txheej thiab kuj muaj ib zag keeb kwm uas qhia txog kuv cov poj koob yawm txwv, thiab muab lawv sau rau hauv cov phiaj toog.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau txib kuv tias kom koj thiab koj cov tij laug yuav tsum mus lawm pem Lanpas tsev, thiab nrhiav cov ceev xwm txheej, thiab koj cov ntawd los rau ntawm roob moj sab qhua no.
- 5 Thiab nim no, saib seb koj cov tij laug yws yws, hais tias yam uas kuv hais kom lawv ua mas nyuaj heev; tiam sis saib seb twb tsis yog kuv hais kom lawv ua, tiam sis nws yog ib txoj lus txib ntawm tus Tswv.
- 6 Yog li ntawd kuv tus me tub es, cia li mus, thiab koj yuav raug txhawb pab los ntawm tus Tswv, vim tias koj tsis tau yws nws li.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais rau kuv txiv tias: Kuv yuav mus thiab ua tej uas tus Tswv tau txib kom ua, vim kuv paub tias tus Tswv yeej tsis muab tej lus txib rau tib neeg ua ib yam dab tsi li, tsuas yog nws yuav npaj ib txoj hau kev rau lawv xwv kom lawv yuav ua tau yam uas nws tau txib lawv ua lawm xwb.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv txiv tau hnov cov lus no nws tau zoo siab heev, vim nws paub lawm tias tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov rau kuv lawm.
- 9 Thiab kuv, Nifais, thiab kuv cov tij laug tau taug kev mus hauv roob moj sab qhua, peb nqa peb cov tsev pheeb suab ntaub, nce rov qab mus pem daim av Yeluxalees.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum peb nce rov mus txog pem daim av Yeluxalees lawm, kuv thiab kuv cov tij laug txawm tau sib tham.

1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

- 11 Thiab peb tau sib twv hmoov—saib peb leej twg yuav tsum mus hauv Lanpas lub tsev; Thiab tau muaj tias twv hmoov tau poob rau Lamas; thiab Lamas txawm tau mus hauv Lanpas lub tsev, thiab nws nrog Lanpas tham thaum nws zaum nyob hauv nws lub tsev.
- 12 Thiab nws tau thov rau Lanpas kom muab cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, uas muaj ib zag keeb kwm uas qhia txog kuv txiv tej poj koob yawm txwv.
- 13 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj tias Lanpas tau npau taws, thiab muab Lamas thawb tawm ntawm nws lub xub ntiag mus; thiab nws tsis kam muab cov ceev xwm txheej no rau Lamas. Yog li ntawd, nws thiaj hais rau Lamas tias: Saib seb koj yog ib tug tub sab, thiab kuv yuav muab koj tua.
- 14 Tiam sis Lamas tseem tau khiav tawm ntawm nws lub xub ntiag mus, thiab tau piav tej uas Lanpas tau ua, rau peb. Thiab peb kuj tau pib nyuaj siab heev, thiab kuv cov tij laug twb tau yuav luag rov qab mus cuag kuv txiv nram roob moj sab qhua.
- 15 Tiam sis saib seb kuv tau hais rau lawv tias: Ib yam li tus Tswv muaj txoj sia nyob, thiab ib yam li uas peb tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, peb yuav tsis rov qab mus cuag peb txiv nram roob moj sab qhua, txog thaum uas peb tau ua tiav yam uas tus Tswv tau txib kom peb tuaj ua lawm tso.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, cia peb muaj txoj kev ntseeg coj raws nraim li tus Tswv tej lus txib; yog li ntawd cia peb mus lawm nram thaj av uas yog peb txiv qub txeeg qub teg, vim saib seb nws tau tso tej nyiaj thiab tej kub tseg, thiab ib puas tsav yam uas muaj nuj nqis. Thiab nws tau ua ib puas yam tsav zoo li no los vim yog tej uas tus Tswv kom ua.
- 17 Vim nws paub lawm tias Yeluxalees yuav tsum raug puas tsuaj mus, rau qhov vim tej tib neeg txoj kev phem.
- 18 Vim saib seb, lawv tau tsis kam lees yuav cov yaj saub tej lus. Yog li ntawd, yog tias kuv txiv tseem nyob hauv lub teb chaws ntawd tom qab uas nws tau raug hais kom khiav tawm ntawm lub teb chaws ntawd mus, saib seb, nws yeej yuav piam sij tib yam. Yog li ntawd, nws thiaj yuav tsum tau khiav tawm ntawm lub teb chaws ntawd mus.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

19 Thiab saib seb, yam no yog Vajtsv lub tsvv yim tias peb yuav tsum nqa kom tau cov ceev xwm txheej no, xwv kom peb yuav khaws tau peb cov yawg koob tej lus cia rau peb tej me nyuam.

20 Thiab kom peb yuav khaws tau cov yaj saub dawb huv tej lus uas lawv tau hais los ntawm lawv qhov ncauj lawm cia rau peb tej me nyuam thiab, cov ntawd yog cov uas lawv twb tau txais los ntawm Vajtsv tus Ntsuj Plig thiab nws lub hwj chim, txij puag thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los mus txog ntua niaj hnuv nim no.

21 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau hais zoo li no lawm kuv thiaj yaum tau kuv cov tij laug, kom lawv yuav cia siab koj raws nraim li Vajtsv tej lus txib.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau mus nram thaj av uas yog peb qub txeeg qub teg, thiab peb tau sau peb tej nyiaj tej kub thiab peb tej khoom muaj nuj nqis los ua ke.

23 Thiab tom qab uas peb tau sau tej yam no los ua ke lawm, peb txawm rov qab nce mus pem Lanpas lub tsev dua.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias peb txawm tau mus rau hauv Lanpas, thiab thov kom nws muab cov ceev xwm txheej uas muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog rau peb, ces peb yuav muab peb tej nyiaj tej kub, thiab tag nrho peb tej khoom muaj nuj nqis rau nws.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Lanpas pom peb tej khoom, thiab nws yog ib co uas zoo heev li, kawg tias, nws thiaj muab peb ntiab tawm, thiab tau xa nws cov tub qhe tuaj muab peb tua, xwv kom nws yuav tau peb tej khoom.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau khiav ua Lanpas cov tub qhe ntej, thiab peb yuav tsum tso peb tej khoom rau tom qab, thiab cov khoom no txawm tau poob rau Lanpas tes.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau khiav mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua lawm, thiab Lanpas cov tub qhe txawm raws tsis tau peb, thiab peb tau mus nkaum nyob rau hauv ib lub qhov tsua.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias Lamas tau npau taws rau kuv, thiab rau kuv txiv thiab; thiab Lemu-ees los kuj npau taws ib yam, vim nws mloog Lamas lus. Yog li ntawd Lamas thiab Lemu-ees tau cem ntau yam lus hnyav rau wb, nkawd cov kwv, thiab nkawd twb tau muab ib tug pas ntaus wb.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nkawd tseem xuas ib tug pas ntaus wb, saib seb, tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv tau los thiab sawv ntawm nkawd xub ntiag, thiab nws hais rau nkawd, hais tias: Tim li cas neb muab ib tug pas ntaus neb tus kwv? Neb tsis paub tias tus Tswv tau xaiv nws los ua tus kav neb los, thiab li no los vim neb tej kev phem? Saib seb nej yuav tsum rov qab nce mus lawm pem Yeluxalees dua, thiab tus Tswv yuav muab Lanpas rau nej tes.

30 Thiab tom qab uas tus tim tswv tau hais lus rau peb tas lawm, nws tau ncaim mus lawm.

31 Thiab tom qab uas tus tim tswv tau ncaim mus lawm, Lamas thiab Lemu-ees rov pib yws yws dua, hais tias: Yuav muaj tau li cas tias tus Tswv yuav muab tau Lanpas rau peb tes? Saib seb, nws yog ib tug neeg muaj meej mom thiab nws muaj peev xwm txib tau tsib caug leej, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tseem muaj peev xwm tua tau tsib caug leej thiab; ces ua li cas nws thiaj yuav tua tsis tau peb?

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

1 Nifais 4

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais rau kuv cov tij laug, hais tias: Cia peb rov qab nce mus pem Yeluxalees dua, thiab cia peb muab siab rau ntseeg coj tus Tswv tej lus txib; vim saib seb nws yog tus uas muaj hwj chim loj tshaj neeg sawv daws hauv ntiaj teb tag nrho, vim li cas nws thiaj yuav tsis muaj hwj chim dua li Lanpas thiab nws tsib caug leej, muaj tseeb tiag, los sis yeej muaj hwj chim tshaj dua li nws txhiab txhiab vam vam leej?
- 2 Yog li ntawd cia peb nce mus; cia peb ua khov kho zoo li Mauxes; vim muaj tseeb tias nws hais rau cov dej hauv Dej Hiav Txwv Liab thiab cov dej ntawd txawm faib hlo rau ob sab, thiab peb cov yawg koob thiaj los dhau lawm, tawm ntawm txoj kev ua qhev los, los rau saum nruab nqhuab, thiab Falaus cov tub rog kuj tuaj raws lawv qab tiam sis raug poob deg tuag nyob hauv tus Dej Hiav Txwv Liab ntawd lawm.
- 3 Nim no saib seb neb yeej paub tias tej no yeej muaj tseeb tiag; thiab neb kuj paub tias ib tug tim tswv twb tau hais rau neb lawm thiab; yog li ntawd ua li cas neb pheej tsis ntseeg li? Cia peb nce mus; tus Tswv yeej muaj peev xwm pab tau peb, ib yam li nws twb tau pab peb cov yawg koob lawm, thiab nws yeej muaj peev xwm ua kom Lanpas puas tsuaj ib yam li cov neeg Iyiv.
- 4 Nim no thaum kuv tau hais cov lus no lawm, nkawd tseem pheej npau taws thiab, thiab nkawd tseem pheej yws yws ntxiv thiab; tiam sis nkawd kuj tau raws kuv qab mus txog sab nraum Yeluxalees cov ntsa loog.
- 5 Thiab nws yog lub sij hawm tsaus ntuj; thiab kuv kom lawv nkaum nyob sab ntsa loog nraud. Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau nkaum tas lawm, kuv, Nifais, tau ntsiag to mus rau hauv zos thiab tau mus lawm tom Lanpas lub tsev.
- 6 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig tau coj kuv kev, paub tsis tau ua ntej rau tej uas kuv yuav tsum ua.
- 7 Txawm li ntawd los kuv tseem pheej taug kev mus ntxiv, thiab thaum kuv tau mus txog ze Lanpas lub tsev lawm, kuv tau pom ib tug txiv neej, thiab nws tau ntog pw rau hauv pem teb pem kuv hau ntej, vim nws tau qaug cawv txiv hmab lawm.
- 8 Thiab thaum kuv tau los txog ntawm nws kuv pom hais tias nws yog Lanpas.

1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

- 9 Thiab kuv tau pom nws rab ntaj, thiab kuv tau rho rab ntaj tawm ntawm nws lub hnab; thiab tus ko yog tseem kub, thiab tus qauv tes uas ntaus rab ntaj ntawd ntaus tau zoo nkauj kawg nkaus li, thiab kuv tau pom tias tus hniav ntaj ntawd yog ib yam hlau uas zoo tshaj plaws li.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Ntsuj Plig kom kuv yuav tsum tua Lanpas; tiam sis kuv tau xav hauv kuv nruab siab tias: Tsis tau muaj ib zaug li uas kuv tau txo ib tug neeg ntshav. Thiab kuv thiaj tau thim hlo thiab xav zoj tias txhob muab nws tua.
- 11 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig rov hais rau kuv dua ib zaug tias: Saib seb tus Tswv twb tau muab nws los rau koj tes lawm. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj tau paub tias nws twb tau nrhiav muab kuv txoj sia txo; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yeej tsis xav mloog txog tus Tswv tej lus txib; thiab nws kuj tau muab peb tej cuab tam lawm thiab.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Ntsuj Plig hais rau kuv dua ib zaug tias: Muab nws tua, vim tus Tswv twb tau muab nws los rau koj tes lawm;
- 13 Saib seb tus Tswv tua tej neeg phem kom nws muaj tau txoj kev ncaj taug mus. Ib tug neeg raug ploj raug tuag yuav zoo dua li ib haiv neeg tso kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus thiab piam sij nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 14 Thiab nim no, thaum kuv, Nifais, tau hnov cov lus no lawm, kuv rov nco txog tus Tswv cov lus uas nws twb tau hais rau kuv nyob tom roob moj sab qhua, hais tias: Npaum li uas koj cov xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tseem coj raws nraim li kuv tej lus txib, lawv yeej yuav huaj vam nyob rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj tau xav tias lawv yuav tsis muaj peev xwm coj tus Tswv tej lus txib mus raws nraim li Mauxes txoj kev cai, tsuas yog lawv yuav tsum muaj txoj kev cai.
- 16 Thiab kuv kuj tau paub tias txoj kev cai raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog.
- 17 Thiab ntxiv dua, kuv tau paub tias tus Tswv tau muab Lanpas los rau kuv tes vim qhov no ntag—xwv kom kuv yuav muab tau cov ceev xwm txheej raws nraim li nws tej lus txib.
- 18 Yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tau ua raws li tus Ntsuj Plig lub suab hais, thiab tau ntsiab nkaus Lanpas cov plaub hau, thiab kuv tau muab nws rab ntaj txiav nws lub taub hau pov tseg.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

19 Thiab tom qab uas kuv tau muab nws rab ntaj txiav nws lub taub hau pov tseg lawm, kuv tau muab Lanpas cov ris tsho coj los hnav rau saum kuv lub cev; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv twb hnav txhua yam huv tib si; thiab kuv tau muab nws lub tsho tiv rog sia zog ntawm kuv duav.

20 Thiab tom qab uas kuv tau ua li no lawm, kuv tau nkag mus rau hauv Lanpas lub txhab nyiaj. Thiab thaum kuv tau mus lawm tom Lanpas lub txhab nyiaj, saib seb, kuv tau pom Lanpas ib tug tub qhe uas muaj cov yuam sij qhib lub txhab nyiaj. Thiab kuv tau ua Lanpas lub suab txib nws, kom nws yuav tsum nrog kuv mus rau hauv lub txhab nyiaj.

21 Thiab nws tau xav tias kuv yog nws tus tswv, Lanpas, vim nws tau pom cov ris tsho hnav thiab rab ntaj uas sia tuaj ntawm kuv lub duav thiab.

22 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv txog cov Neeg Yudais cov txwj laug, nws tseem paub tias nws tus tswv Lanpas, tau tawm mus ntsib lawv thaum tsaus ntuj lawm.

23 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws ib yam li kuv twb yog Lanpas.

24 Thiab kuv kuj tau hais rau nws tias kuv yuav tsum nqa cov ceev xwm txheej, cov uas tau muab sau nyob rau saum cov phiaj toog, mus rau kuv cov tij laug, uas nyob sab ntsa loog sab nraud.

25 Thiab kuv kuj tau kom nws cia li lawv kuv qab.

26 Thiab nws, tseem xav tias kuv hais txog cov kwv tij ntawm lub koom txoos, thiab tias kuv yeej yog Lanpas tus uas kuv twb tau muab tua pov tseg lawm, yog li no nws thiaj tau raws kuv qab.

27 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv ntau zaus txog cov Neeg Yudais cov txwj laug, thaum kuv mus rau tom kuv cov tij laug, cov uas nyob sab ntsa loog sab nraud.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Lamas pom kuv nws tau ntshai heev li, thiab Lemu-ees thiab Xam kuj ntshai ib yam nkaus. Thiab lawv tau khiav thaum lawv pom kuv mus; vim lawv tau xav tias kuv yog Lanpas, thiab xav hais tias nws muab kuv tua lawm thiab nws tuaj nrhiav muab lawv txoj sia txo pov tseg thiab.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hu rau lawv, thiab lawv tau hnov kuv hu; yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj tau tsum tsis khiav kuv mus ntxiv lawm.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Lanpas tus tub qhe tau pom kuv cov tij laug nws tau pib tshee, thiab twb yuav luag khiav tawm ntawm kuv hau ntej mus thiab yuav rov qab mus lawm tom nroog Yeluxalees.

31 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, uas yog ib tug neeg uas muaj lub cev loj, thiab kuj tau txais kev muaj zog ntau heev los ntawm tus Tswv, yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tau ntsiab nkaus Lanpas tus tub qhe, thiab tau tuav nws tseg, xwv kom nws thiaj khiav tsis tau mus.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais rau nws tias, yog nws yuav mloog kuv cov lus, ib yam li tus Tswv muaj txoj sia nyob, thiab ib yam li kuv muaj txoj sia nyob, yog tias nws yuav mloog peb cov lus, peb yuav tseg nws txoj sia.

33 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws, nrog kev lav lus, hais tias kom nws tsis txhob ntshai; nws yeej yuav tsum tau ua ib tug neeg nyob ywj siab ib yam li peb yog tias nws kam nrog peb mus lawm nram roob moj sab qhua.

34 Thiab kuv kuj tau hais rau nws, hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag uas tus Tswv tau txib peb ua yam no; thiab peb puas yuav tsis kub siab lug coj raws li tus Tswv tej lus txib? Yog li ntawd, yog tias koj yuav nrog peb mus lawm nram roob moj sab qhua mus cuag kuv txiv koj yuav muaj ib qho chaw nrog peb nyob.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias Xaulas txawm tau ua siab loj rau cov lus uas kuv tau hais. Nim no Xaulas yog tus tub qhe ntawd lub npe; thiab nws tau cog lus tias nws yuav mus lawm nram roob moj sab qhua mus cuag peb txiv. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj tau lav lus rau peb tias nws yuav nrog peb nyob txij thaum ntawd mus.

36 Nim no peb tau xav kom nws nrog peb nyob, yog vim tias kom cov Neeg Yudais tsis txhob paub txog qhov uas peb tau khiav mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua lawm, ntshai nyob tsam tias lawv yuav raws peb qab tuaj muab peb tua pov tseg.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Xaulas tau lav lus rau peb lawm, peb thiaj tsis ntshai txog nws lawm.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau nqa cov phiaj toog nrog Lanpas tus tub qhe, thiab tau ncaim mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua, thiab mus lawm nram peb txiv lub tsev pheeb suab ntaub.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

1 Nifais 5

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas peb tau nqes los rau nram roob moj sab qhua los cuag tau peb txiv, saib seb, nws tau xyiv fab heev, thiab kuv niam, Xaliyas, tau zoo siab heev ib yam nkaus, vim nws tau nyuaj siab heev tiag yog vim peb.
- 2 Vim nws tau xav tias peb tau piam sij nyob rau pem roob moj sab qhua lawm; thiab nws kuj tau yws yws rau kuv txiv, es tseem hais rau nws tias nws yog ib tug neeg uas pheed ua yog toog pom ntau yam; tseem hais tias: Saib seb koj tau coj peb tawm ntawm thaj av uas yog peb qub txeeg qub teg, thiab kuv cov tub los tsis muaj lawm, thiab peb yuav piam sij nyob ntawm roob moj sab qhua no.
- 3 Thiab kuv niam tau siv yam lus li no yws kuv txiv.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv txiv tau hais rau nws, hais tias: Kuv paub tias kuv yog ib tug neeg uas pheed ua yog toog pom ntau yam; vim tias yog kuv tsis tau pom tej yam uas yog Vajtswv li nyob hauv txoj kev ua yog toog pom kuv yuav tsis paub txog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, tiam sis tseem yuav nyob hauv Yeluxalees, thiab tau raug piam sij nrog kuv cov kwv tij.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau txais ib thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, qhov ntawd ua rau kuv zoo siab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv paub tias tus Tswv yuav cawm kuv cov tub tawm ntawm Lanpas txhais tes, thiab coj lawv rov qab los rau wb nyob nram roob moj sab qhua no dua.
- 6 Thiab tom qab uas kuv txiv, Lihais, tau hais cov lus zoo li no lawm, tau nplij kuv niam, Xaliyas, lub siab uas txhawj txog peb, thaum uas peb tseem taug kev nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua nce mus pem daim av Yeluxalees, mus nqa cov Neeg Yudais phau ceev xwm txheej.
- 7 Thiab thaum peb tau rov qab los txog ntawm peb txiv lub tsev pheed suab ntaub, saib seb nkawd txoj kev xyiv fab twb puv npo, thiab kuv niam zoo siab hlo lawm.

1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

- 8 Thiab kuv niam tau hais li no, tias: Nim no kuv paub tseeb tias tus Tswv tau kom kuv tus txiv khiav tawm mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj paub tseeb tias tus Tswv tau tsom kwm kuv cov tub, thiab cawm lawv tawm ntawm Lanpas tes, thiab tau muab hwj chim rau lawv xwm kom lawv yuav muaj peev xwm ua tiav tej yam uas tus Tswv tau txib kom lawv ua. Thiab nws thiaj tau hais tej yam lus zoo li no.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau zoo siab heev kawg li, thiab tau ua kev cai txi thiab tau hlawv tsiaj pub rau tus Tswv; thiab lawv tau ua Ixayees tus Vajtswv tsaug.
- 10 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau ua Ixayees tus Vajtswv tsaug tas lawm, kuv txiv, Lihais, tau muab cov ceev xwm txheej cov uas tau sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, thiab nws txawm tau tshawb nrhiav cov ceev xwm txheej no tom hauv paus tuaj.
- 11 Thiab nws tau pom tias cov ceev xwm txheej ntawd muaj Mauxes tsib phau ntawv nyob hauv, cov no qhia ib zag txog kev tsim lub ntiaj teb no, thiab kuj qhia txog Adas thiab Evas, ob tug uas yog peb thawj tug niam thiab txiv.
- 12 Thiab kuj muaj cov Neeg Yudaib ib phau ceev xwm txheej txij thaum chiv keeb, los mus txog ntua thaum vaj ntxwv Xedekhiyas sawv kav teb chaws Yudas.
- 13 Thiab kuj muaj cov yaj saub dawb huv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, txij puag thaum chiv keeb los, mus txog ntua thaum Xedekhiyas pib sawv kav teb chaws; thiab kuj muaj ntau zaj lus qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas yog Yelemis lub qhov ncauj hais.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv txiv, Lihais, kuj tshawb pom tias nyob hauv cov phiaj toog ntawd muaj ib zag keeb kwm qhia txog nws poj koob yawm txwv, yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau paub lawm tias nws yog Yauxej ib tug xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tus Yauxej uas yog Yakhauj tus tub, tus uas tau raug muab muag mus rau lub teb chaws Iyiv, thiab yog tus uas tus Tswv txhais tes tau hwm tseg cia lawm, xwv kom nws yuav cawm tau nws txiv, Yakhauj, thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg ntawm txoj kev tuag tshaib tuag nqhis.
- 15 Thiab lawv kuj tau raug coj khiav tawm ntawm kev ua qhev thiab ntawm thaj av Iyiv, los ntawm tib tug Vajtswv tus uas tau tsom kwm lawv lawm.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

- 16 Thiab xws li no kuv txiv, Lihais, tau nrhiav tau zaj uas qhia txog nws poj koob yawm txwv lawm. Thiab Lanpas kuj yog Yauxej ib tug xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv thiab, yog li ntawd nws thiab nws tej poj koob yawm txwv thiaj tau khaws cov ceev xwm txheej no cia.
- 17 Thiab nim no thaum kuv txiv pom tej no huv tib si lawm, nws txawm tau muaj tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo, thiab tau pib qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntsig txog nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv—
- 18 Hais tias cov phiaj toog no yuav tsum mus rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab cov neeg uas yog nws xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.
- 19 Yog li ntawd, nws tau hais tias cov phiaj toog no yuav tsis raug piam sij ib zaug li; los sis yuav tsis muaj ib lub caij nyoog uas lawv yuav ploj mus li. Thiab nws tau qhia ntau yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntsig txog nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias yav tag los kuv thiab kuv txiv wb tau koj raws li tej lus txib uas tus Tswv tau txib kom peb ua.
- 21 Thiab peb mus muab tau cov ceev xwm txheej uas tus Tswv tau txib peb, thiab tau muab tshawb thiab pom tias cov ceev xwm txheej no yog ib yam uas zoo; muaj tseeb tiag, twb muaj nuj nqis heev rau peb, kawg tias peb tseem khaws tau tus Tswv tej lus txib cia rau peb tej me nyuam thiab.
- 22 Yog li ntawd, nws yog tus Tswv lub tswv yim uas peb yuav tsum koj cov ceev xwm txheej no nrog nraim peb, thaum peb tsiv nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nifais 6

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tsis qhia txog zaj keeb kwm uas hais txog kuv tej poj koob yawm txwv nyob rau hauv kuv phau ceev xwm txheej no; los sis yav no rau tom ntej kuv yeej yuav tsis muab tej no sau rau hauv cov phiaj uas kuv tseem tab tom sau no; vim twb muaj nyob hauv phau ceev xwm txheej uas kuv txiv tau ceev tseg lawm; yog li ntawd, kuv thiaj tsis sau rau hauv txoj hauj lwm no.
- 2 Yog li ntawd yog kuv hais tias peb yog Yauxej tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv ces txaus lawm.
- 3 Thiab nws yuav tsis ua cas rau kuv yog kuv tsis sau ib puas tsav yam huv tib si uas yog kuv txiv li, rau qhov uas muab tsis tau cov no sau rau saum cov phiaj no, vim kuv xav kom muaj chaw cia rau kuv tau sau tej yam uas yog Vajtswv li.
- 4 Vim nyob tag nrho hauv kuv lub siab yog qhov uas kuv xav yaum kom neeg los mus cuag tau Anplaham tus Vajtswv, thiab Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtswv, thiab kom lawv dim lawv lub txim.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, tej yam uas ntxim siab rau neeg ntiaj teb kuv tsis sau, tiam sis kuv tsuas sau tej yam uas ntxim siab rau Vajtswv thiab rau cov uas tsis yog neeg ntiaj teb xwb.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav muab txoj lus txib rau kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob siv tej phiaj no sau tej yam uas tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi li rau noob neej.

1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

1 Nifais 7

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv xav kom nej paub, tias tom qab uas kuv txiv, Lihais, tau los xaus qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntsig txog nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tas lawm, tau muaj tias tus Tswv rov qab hais rau nws dua, hais tias tsis tsim nyog rau nws, Lihais, uas yuav coj nws tsev neeg mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua ib yig xwb; tiam sis tsim nyog nws cov tub yuav tsum tau coj luag tej ntxhais ua poj niam, xwv kom lawv yuav yug tau noob rau tus Tswv nyob rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau txib nws tias kom kuv, Nifais, thiab kuv cov tij laug, yuav tsum rov qab mus lawm pem daim av Yeluxalees dua, thiab mus coj Ixama-ees thiab nws tsev neeg los rau nram roob moj sab qhua no.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau nrog kuv cov tij laug, rov qab mus lawm pem roob moj sab qhua nce rov mus pem Yeluxalees dua.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias peb ncaj nram mus rau hauv Ixama-ees lub tsev, thiab peb tau raug pom zoo nyob ntawm Ixama-ees lub qhov muag, kawg tias thaum kawg peb thiaj tau hais tus Tswv cov lus rau nws.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau nplij Ixama-ees lub siab, thiab kuj tau nplij nws tsev neeg tej siab thiab, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv thiaj muab xub ke nrog peb los mus rau nram roob moj sab qhua los cuag peb txiv nram nws lub tsev pheb suab ntaub.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum peb tsiv mus nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua, saib seb Lamas thiab Lemu-ees, thiab Ixama-ees ob tug ntxhais, thiab Ixama-ees ob tug tub thiab nkawd tsev neeg, txawm tau ntseev siab tawm tsam peb; muaj tseeb tiag, tau ntseev siab rau kuv, Nifais, thiab Xam, thiab lawv txiv, Ixama-ees, thiab nws tus poj niam, thiab nws peb tug ntxhais.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv txoj kev ntseev siab no, lawv xav rov qab mus lawm pem daim av Yeluxalees.

1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

8 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tau nyuaj siab txog lawv txoj kev siab tawv, yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tau hais rau lawv, hais tias, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau hais rau Lamas thiab Lemu-ees tias: Saib seb neb yog kuv ob tug tij laug, yog vim li cas neb lub siab yuav tawv ua luaj li, thiab yog vim li cas neb siab yuav dig ua luaj li, es neb tseem yuav kom kuv, tus uas yog neb kwv, hais neb thiab, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tseem yuav kom kuv ua ib tug yam ntxwv rau neb thiab?

9 Yog vim li cas neb tseem tsis tau hnov tus Tswv cov lus thiab?

10 Yog vim li cas es neb tau tsis nco qab tias neb twb tau pom tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv lawm?

11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yog vim li cas es neb tau tsis nco qab tej yam xwm tseem ceeb uas tus Tswv tau ua rau peb lawm, tau cawm peb dim ntawm Lanpas tes, thiab kom peb yuav nqa tau phau ceev xwm txheej?

12 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yog vim li cas es neb tau tsis nco qab tias tus Tswv muaj peev xwm ua tau ib puas tsav yam raws nraim li nws lub siab nyiam, rau noob neej, yog tias lawv muaj lub siab ntseeg nws? Yog li ntawd, cia peb muab siab rau ntseeg nws.

13 Thiab yog tias peb yuav muab siab rau ntseeg nws, peb yuav tau txais thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab neb yuav paub tau tias nyob ib ntus tom ntej no tus Tswv cov lus uas tau hais txog kev puas tsuaj ntawm Yeluxalees yeej yuav muaj xwb; vim tias ib puas tsav yam uas tus Tswv tau hais txog kev puas tsuaj ntawm Yeluxalees yuav tsum muaj xwb.

14 Vim saib seb, tsis ntev no tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig yuav tsis ua hauj lwm pab lawv lawm; vim saib seb, lawv tau tsis ntseeg cov yaj saub, thiab lawv tau txhom Yelemis koj mus kaw rau hauv tsev rau txim. Thiab lawv tau nrhiav yuav muab kuv txiv txoj sia txo pov tseg, kawg tias lawv tau muab nws ntiab tawm ntawm lub teb chaws mus.

15 Nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau neb tias yog neb yuav rov qab mus pem Yeluxalees neb yuav piam sij nrog lawv ib yam nkaus thiab. Thiab nim no, yog neb yuav xaiv li no, es neb nce rov mus pem lub teb chaws, thiab nco qab ntsoov txog cov lus uas kuv hais rau neb, hais tias yog neb mus neb yuav piam sij ib yam nkaus; vim tej no tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig thiaj kom kuv yuav tsum hais.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv, Nifais, tau hais cov lus no rau kuv cov tij laug tas lawm, nkawd txawm tau npau taws rau kuv. Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau tsa hlo tes rau kuv, vim saib seb, nkawd tau npau taws heev kawg li, thiab nkawd tau muab hlua los khi kuv, vim nkawd nrhiav muab kuv txoj sia txo pov tseg, es kom nkawd tau tso kuv rau tom roob moj sab qhua rau tsiaj qus noj.
- 17 Tiam sis tau muaj tias kuv tau thov tus Tswv, hais tias: Au tus Tswv, raws nraim li kuv txoj kev ntseeg uas muaj nyob hauv koj, thov koj cawm kom kuv dim ntawm kuv cov tij laug tes; muaj tseeb tiag, ib yam li muab lub zog rau kuv xwv kom kuv yuav tu tau cov hlua uas khi kuv lawm.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv tau hais cov lus no lawm, saib seb, cov hlua txawm cia li hle xoob tawm ntawm kuv tes thiab taw, thiab kuv tau sawv ntsug ntawm kuv cov tij laug xub ntiag dua, thiab kuv rov qab hais lus rau nkawd ntxiv.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau rov npau taws rau kuv dua, thiab yuav tsa tes rau kuv ntxiv; tiam sis saib seb, Ixama-ees ib tug ntxhais, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws niam, thiab Ixama-ees ib tug tub, tau thov kuv cov tij laug, kawg tias lawv thiaj nplij tau nkawd lub siab; thiab nkawd thiaj tau tseg tsis txo kuv txoj sia lawm.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd txawm tau nyuaj siab, vim nkawd txoj kev phem, ces kawg tias nkawd tau khoov pe ntawm kuv xub ntiag; thiab tau thov kom kuv zam txim pub rau nkawd rau yam uas nkawd tau ua rau kuv lawm.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau ua lub siab dawb paug zam txim pub rau nkawd txog ib puas tsav yam uas nkawd tau ua lawm, thiab kuv tau ntuas kom nkawd yuav tsum thov kev zam txim ntawm tus Tswv nkawd tus Vajtswv. Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau ua li ntawd. Thiab tom qab uas nkawd tau thov tus Tswv tas lawm peb txawm tau rov qab taug kev mus rau nram peb txiv lub tsev pheeb suab ntaub.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau los txog nram peb txiv lub tsev pheeb suab ntaub. Thiab tom qab uas kuv thiab kuv cov tij laug thiab tag nrho Ixama-ees tsev neeg huv tib si tau los txog nram kuv txiv lub tsev pheeb suab ntaub lawm, lawv txawm tau ua tus Tswv tus uas yog lawv tus Vajtswv tsaug; thiab lawv tau ua kev cai txi thiab hlawv tsiaj pub rau nws.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

1 Nifais 8

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau sau txhua yam noob los ua ke tsis hais noob qoob noob loo, los yog txhua yam noob npleg, thiab noob txiv hmab txiv ntoo txhua yam huv tib si.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv txiv tseem nyob tom roob moj sab qhua nws tau hais rau peb li no: Saib seb, kuv tau ua ib zag npau suav, los sis hais tias, kuv tau ua yog toog pom.
- 3 Thiab saib seb, vim tej yam uas kuv tau pom, kuv thiaj li muaj kev zoo siab rau tus Tswv vim yog Nifais thiab kuj yog Xam thiab; rau qhov kuv xav tias nyaj nkawd, thiab nkawd tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv coob leej, yuav dim lawv lub txim.
- 4 Tiam sis saib seb, Lamas thiab Lemu-ees, kuv ntshai heev kawg nkaus li vim yog neb; vim saib seb, zoo li kuv tau pom nyob hauv kuv zaj npau suav, ib lub roob moj sab qhua uas muaj kev tsaus ntuj thiab kev nyuaj siab.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ib tug txiv neej, thiab nws hnav ib ce ris tsho dawb; thiab nws tau los thiab sawv ntawm kuv hauv ntej.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau kuv, thiab thov kom kuv lawv nws qab.
- 7 Thiab thaum kuv lawv nws qab mus kuv tau pom tias kuv tus kheej tau nyob hauv ib qhov chaw uas muaj kev tsaus ntuj thiab kev nyuaj siab.
- 8 Thiab tom qab uas kuv tau mus hauv qhov chaw tsaus ntuj ntawd tau ntau ntau teev lawm, kuv tau pib thov tus Tswv kom nws muaj kev hlub tshua rau kuv, raws li nws tej kev hlub tshua uas muaj ntau.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau thov tus Tswv tas lawm kuv tau pom ib lub nras uas loj thiab dav.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ib tsob ntoo, uas muaj cov txiv uas ua tau kom neeg muaj kev zoo siab.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau mus ntawm tsob ntoo thiab kuv tau noj cov txiv ntawd; thiab kuv tau pom tias nws yog cov uas qab zib tshaj txhua yam uas kuv tau noj tas lawm. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv twb tau pom hais tias cov txiv ntawd yog ib co uas dawb, dawb tshaj txhua yam uas kuv tau pom los lawm.

1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

- 12 Thiab thaum kuv tau noj cov txiv ntawd nws ua rau kuv tus kheej muaj kev xyiv fab heev; yog li ntawd, kuv tau xav kom kuv tsev neeg tau noj thiab; vim kuv paub lawm hais tias nws yog ib yam txiv uas qab tshaj txhua yam txiv.
- 13 Thiab thaum kuv tsa qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig, saib puas pom kuv tsev neeg thiab, kuv tau pom ib tug kwj deg uas muaj dej; thiab tus dej ntawd ntws, thiab nws nyob ze ntawm tsob ntoo uas kuv tau noj cov txiv.
- 14 Thiab kuv ntsia mus pom qhov uas tus dej ntawd los; thiab kuv tau pom tias tus dej ntawd txhawv nyob tsis deb ntawd; thiab nyob ntawm qhov dej txhawv ntawd kuv pom nej niam Xaliyas, thiab Xam, thiab Nifais; thiab lawv tau sawv ntsug zoo li lawv tsis pom qab tias lawv yuav tsum mus lawm qhov twg.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hu co tes rau lawv; thiab kuv kuj tau hais nrov nrov rau lawv kom lawv yuav tsum los ntawm kuv, thiab los noj cov txiv, uas yog cov uas qab tshaj txhua yam txiv huv tib si.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau los ntawm kuv thiab kuj tau noj cov txiv ntawd.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau xav kom Lamas thiab Lemu-ees yuav los noj cov txiv ntawd thiab; yog li ntawd, kuv tau tsa muag ntsia rau pem hauv dej, saib kuv puas pom nkawd.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom nkawd, tiam sis nkawd tsis kam los ntawm kuv thiab los noj cov txiv ntawd.
- 19 Thiab kuv tau pom ib tug nqaj hlau uas mus raws tus ntug dej thiab tuam los txog ntawm tsob ntoo uas kuv sawv.
- 20 Thiab kuv kuj tau pom ib txoj kev ti thiab nqaim, uas tau los raws tus nqaj hlau, uas los txog ntua ntawm tsob ntoo uas kuv sawv thiab; thiab txoj kev ntawd kuj mus dhau tus hauv dej txhawv, mus txog rau ib lub nras uas loj thiab dav, nws zoo li twb tau yog ib lub ntiaj teb.
- 21 Thiab kuv tau pom ntau pab neeg coob coob uas suav tsis txheeb, coob leej ntawm cov neeg ntawd tau txiv mus lawm tom hauv ntej, xwv kom lawv yuav tau los txog ntawm txoj kev uas coj mus rau ntawm tsob ntoo uas kuv sawv.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau los, thiab tau pib taug txoj kev uas coj mus txog tsob ntoo.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib qhov kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab sawv los; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib qhov kev tsaus ntuj nti uas muaj huab zig niab loj heev, kawg tias ua rau lawv ib co uas twb tau taug txoj kev ntawd lawm nrhiav tsis tau txoj kev, kom lawv mus yuam kev thiab ploj mus.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom lwm cov neeg tab tom sib txiv mus lawm tom hauv ntej, thiab lawv tau los thiab tuav tus nqaj hlau tom qhov kawg; thiab lawv tau txiv los dhau hauv qhov kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab, tuav rawv tus nqaj hlau tsis tso, twb tsis tso mus txog thaum uas lawv tau los txog thiab tau los noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo ntawd tso.
- 25 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo ntawd tas lawm lawv tau tsa muag ntsia ib puag ncig zoo li lawv tau pom tias lawv txaj muag.
- 26 Thiab kuv kuj tau tsa qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig thiab tau pom, ib lub tsev loj thiab dav nyob ntawm tus kwj deg uas muaj dej sab tiv; thiab nws zoo li nyob yuj yees puag saum nruab cua, siab dua ntiaj teb.
- 27 Thiab nws muaj neeg nyob puv nkaus, muaj cov laus cov hluas, muaj poj niam thiab txiv neej; thiab lawv hnav tsuj hnav npuag ci ntsa iab; thiab lawv tau luag thuam thiab taw tes ntshis rau cov uas tau los txog ntawm tsob ntoo thiab tau tab tom noj cov txiv.
- 28 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau noj cov txiv ntawd tas lawv tau txaj muag, vim cov neeg ntawd tau luag thuam lawv; thiab lawv tau ncaim mus rau hauv cov kev txwv tsis pub mus thiab tau ploj mus lawm.
- 29 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tsis hais tag nrho kuv txiv tej lus.
- 30 Tiam sis, ua kom txoj kev sau ntawv no luv, saib seb, nws tau pom dua ntau pab neeg txiv los mus lawm tom hauv ntej; thiab lawv tau los thiab tuav tus nqaj hlau tom qhov kawg; thiab lawv tau tuav tus nqaj hlau ruaj ruaj txiv los mus lawm tom hauv ntej mus txog thaum lawv tau los mus txog thiab tau qhau cev thiab tau noj cov txiv ntoo ntawd.
- 31 Thiab nws kuj tau pom dua ntau pab neeg tau maub xuas mus rau tom lub tsev loj thiab dav ntawd.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias muaj coob leej tau poob deg nyob rau hauv tus dej lawm; thiab muaj coob leej tau plam ntawm nws lub qhov muag mus, tau taug cov kev uas tsis tau muaj neeg mus dua li.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

33 Thiab tau muaj neeg coob heev tau nkag mus rau hauv lub tsev txawv txawv ntawd. Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau nkag mus rau hauv lub tsev ntawd, lawv kuj tau taw tes ntshis thuam kuv thiab cov uas tau noj cov txiv ntawd; tiam sis peb tsis quav ntsej lawv li.

34 Cov no yog kuv txiv tej lus: Cov uas tau mloog lawv lus coob npaum cas, npaum ntawd tau ploj mus lawm.

35 Thiab kuv txiv tau hais tias Lamas thiab Lemu-ees tsis tau noj cov txiv ntawd.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv txiv tau hais tag nrho nws cov lus ntawm nws zaj npau suav los yog nws txoj kev ua yog toog, uas yog ib zag uas ntev heev, nws tau hais rau peb hais tias, vim tej yam uas nws tau pom nyob hauv nws txoj kev ua yog toog, nws tau poob siab heev rau Lamas thiab Lemu-ees; muaj tseeb tiag, nws ntshai heev hais tias nyob tsam tus Tswv yuav ntiab nkawd tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag mus.

37 Thiab thaum ntawd nws tau qhuab ntuas nkawd kawg siab kawg ntsws li niam txiv siab hlub kom nkawd yuav mloog nws cov lus, kom tej zaum tus Tswv yuav hlub tshua nkawd, thiab yuav tsis ntiab nkawd tawm; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv txiv tau qhuab ntuas rau nkawd.

38 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau qhuab ntuas rau nkawd, thiab kuj tau qhia ntau yam rau nkawd txog tej yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, nws thov kom nkawd coj raws li tus Tswv tej lus txib; thiab nws tau tsum tsis hais rau nkawd lawm.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

1 Nifais 9

- 1 Thiab ib puas yam tsav uas kuv txiv tau pom, tau hnov, thiab tau hais no, yog thaum nws nyob hauv ib lub tsev pheb suab ntaub, nyob hauv lub hav Lemuees, thiab kuj muaj ntau yam tseem ceeb, uas sau tsis tau rau saum cov phiaj no.
- 2 Thiab nim no, ib yam li kuv twb tau hais ntsig txog cov phiaj no lawm, saib seb lawv tsis yog cov phiaj uas kuv sau tag nrho kuv cov neeg tej keeb kwm rau hauv; vim cov phiaj uas kuv sau tag nrho kuv cov neeg tej keeb kwm rau hauv kuv tau tis lub npe Nifais rau; yog li ntawd, lawv hu ua Nifais cov phiaj, raws li kuv lub npe ntag; thiab cov phiaj nqaim no kuj hu ua Nifais cov phiaj thiab.
- 3 Tiam sis, kuv tau txais ib txoj lus txib los ntawm tus Tswv tias kuv yuav tsum sau cov phiaj no, yuav tsum sau ib zag uas muaj lub ntsiab tseem ceeb uas hais txog kev ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo los ntawm kuv cov neeg.
- 4 Nyob rau lwm cov phiaj yuav tsum sau ib zag txog kev kav teb kav chaw ntawm cov vaj ntxwv, thiab txog kev tsov kev rog thiab txog kev sib cav sib ceg ntawm cov neeg; yog li ntawd cov phiaj no yuav cia sau txog kev ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo xwb; thiab lwm cov phiaj mam cia sau txog kev kav teb kav chaw ntawm cov vaj ntxwv thiab txog kev ua tsov ua rog thiab txog kev sib cav sib ceg ntawm cov neeg.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau kom kuv ua cov phiaj no rau ib lub ntsiab tseem ceeb nyob ntawm nws, lub ntsiab uas kuv tsis paub.
- 6 Tiam sis tus Tswv yeej paub txij puag thaum chiv keeb los; yog li ntawd, nws yeej npaj ib txoj hau kev rau noob neej kom lawv yuav ua tau li nws tej hauj lwm huv tib si; vim saib seb, nws yeej muaj hwj chim tag nrho uas ua tau kom tiav raws li tag nrho nws cov lus. Thiab txhua yam yeej muaj li ntawd tiag. Amees.

1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nifais 10

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, rov sau ntxiv ib zag rau saum cov phiaj no txog tej yam uas kuv tau ua los lawm, thiab txog kuv txoj kev kav teb kav chaw thiab kev qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo; yog li ntawd, qhov uas yuav sau kuv tej zaj ntxiv, kuv yuav tsum hais me ntsis txog tej yam uas yog kuv txiv li, thiab txog tej yam uas yog kuv cov tij laug li thiab.
- 2 Vim saib seb, tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv txiv tau los xaus hais txog cov lus ntawm nws zaj npau suav lawm, thiab tau los xaus ntuas nkawd kom nkawd kub siab lug rau txhua yam, nws tau hais rau nkawd txog cov Neeg Yudais—
- 3 Tias tom qab uas lawv raug puas tsuaj tas lawm, lub nroog Yeluxalees uas loj los raug puas tsuaj tib yam nkaus, thiab coob leej yuav raug txhom cab mus rau hauv Npanpiloos, raws li lub caij lub nyoog uas tus Tswv twb tau teem tseg cia lawm, lawv yuav rov qab los dua, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb yuav raug coj tawm rov qab los ntawm txoj kev raug txhom mus ua qhev; thiab tom qab uas lawv raug coj tawm rov qab los ntawm txoj kev raug txhom mus ua qhev lawm lawv yuav rov qab tau thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg dua.
- 4 Muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog rau pua xyoo txij thaum uas kuv txiv tau ncaim Yeluxalees, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tsa ib tug yaj saub sawv hauv cov Neeg Yudais los—twb yog ib tug Mexiyas, los sis, ua lwm yam lus hais, yog ntiaj teb ib tug Cawm Seeg.
- 5 Thiab nws kuj tau hais txog cov yaj saub, muaj coob leej ntau tus kawg uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no, hais txog tus Mexiyas no, tus uas nws tau hais txog, los sis ntiaj teb tus Txhiv Dim no.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, tib neeg sawv daws tau yuam kev thiab tau poob rau kev txhaum, thiab yuav zoo li ntawd mus ib txhis li tsuas yog lawv yuav vam khom rau tus Txhiv Dim no nkaus xwb.
- 7 Thiab nws kuj tau hais txog ib tug yaj saub tus uas yuav los ua ntej tus Mexiyas, los npaj tus Tswv txoj kev—

1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb yuav mus rau tom roob mox sab qhua thiab hais nrov nrov hais tias: Nej cia li npaj tus Tswv txoj kev, thiab kho nws txoj kev kom ncaj; vim muaj ib tug nrog nej sawv ua ke ntawm no nej twb tsis paub nws; thiab nws muaj hwj chim loj dua kuv, txawm yog daws nws txoj nyuag hlua khau los kuv twb tsis tsim nyog daws. Thiab kuv txiv tau hais ntau yam txog tej no.
- 9 Thiab kuv txiv tau hais tias nws yuav ua kev cai raus dej nyob rau hauv lub zos Npethanpalas, hauv tus dej Yauladees; thiab nws kuj tau hais tias nws yuav ua kev cai raus dej; nws twb yog tus uas yuav muab tus Mexiyas ua kev cai raus dej.
- 10 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau muab tus Mexiyas ua kev cai raus dej tas lawm, nws yuav nco qab txog thiab ua tim khawv hais tias nws tau muab Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj ua kev cai raus dej lawm, tus uas yuav los tshem neeg ntiaj teb tej kev txog kev txhaum.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv txiv tau hais cov lus no tas lawm nws tau hais rau kuv cov tij laug txog txoj moo zoo uas yuav tsum raug coj mus qhia thoob plaws rau cov Neeg Yudais, thiab nws kuj tau hais txog kev tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg ntawm cov Neeg Yudais. Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau muab tus Mexiyas tua lawm, tus uas tseem yuav los, thiab tom qab uas nws tau tuag lawm nws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, thiab nws yuav qhia nws tus kheej rau lwm haiv neeg paub, los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv txiv twb tau hais ntau yam txog lwm haiv neeg, thiab kuj tau hais txog tsev neeg Ixayees, tias lawv yuav zoo li ib tsoob ntoo ntseej, uas nws tej ceg yuav lov thiab yuav tawg khiav ri niab mus thoob plaws hauv lub ntiaj teb no.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, nws tau hais tias yuav tsum muaj tias peb yuav raug coj ua ib ke mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, kom yuav muaj tiav li tus Tswv txoj lus, tias peb yuav tawg ri niab mus thoob plaws hauv lub ntiaj teb no.

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

- 14 Thiab tom qab uas tsev neeg Ixayees tawg ri niab tas lawm lawv yuav raug sau los ua ke dua; los sis; ua lwm yam lus hais, tom qab uas lwm haiv neeg tau txais txoj moo zoo uas muaj txhij txhua tas lawm, tej ceg ntseej nyeg, los sis cov uas seem tshuav nyob hauv tsev neeg Ixayees, yuav coj rov qab los txuas rau tus ceg ntoo, los sis rov los paub txog tus Mexiyas tseeb, lawv tus Tswv thiab lawv tus Txhiv Dim.
- 15 Thiab kuv txiv tau qhia txog tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tau hais rau kuv cov tij laug zoo li no, thiab ntau yam ntxiv uas kuv tsis sau rau hauv phau ntawv no; vim kuv tau sau ntau npaum li uas kuv xav tias yuav txaus rau kuv lawm nyob rau hauv kuv lwm phau ntawv.
- 16 Thiab txhua yam txhua tsav no, uas kuv tau hais lawm, tau tshwm sim thaum uas kuv txiv nyob hauv ib lub tsev pheb suab ntaub, nyob rau hauv lub hav Lemu-ees.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau hnov kuv txiv txhua lo lus, ntsig txog yam uas nws tau pom nyob rau hauv txoj kev ua yog toog, thiab tej uas nws tau hais los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, lub hwj chim uas nws tau txais los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg Vajtswv tus Tub—thiab Vajtswv tus Tub no yog tus Mexiyas tus uas tseem yuav los—Kuv, Nifais, kuj tau xav tias kheev lam kuv yuav pom, thiab yuav hnov, thiab yuav paub txog tej yam no, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, qhov uas yog ib qhov khoom pub los ntawm Vajtswv rau txhua tus neeg uas kub siab lug nrhiav nws, tsis yog txheej puag thaum ub xwb tiam sis kuj yog txheej uas nws yuav ua kom noob neej pom nws thiab.
- 18 Vim nws yeej zoo nws li qub, nag hmo, hnuob no, thiab mus ib txhis li; thiab nws tau npaj ib txoj hau kev rau neeg txhua leej txhua tus txij puag thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los lawm, yog tias lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag nws.
- 19 Vim tus uas kub siab lug nrhiav yeej yuav ntsib; thiab Vajtswv tej txuj ci uas neeg tsis paub txog yuav qhib plho rau lawv, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, zoo li txheej tam sim no los ib yam li txheej puag thaum ub thiab, thiab txheej puag thaum ub los yeej zoo ib yam li txheej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej no thiab; vim tias, tus Tswv txoj kev yeej yog ib txog uas ncig nyob mus ib txhis li.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

20 Yog li ntawd cia li nco ntsoov rau nruab siab, Au noob neej es, vim txhua yam txhua tsav uas nej ua nej yeej yuav raug coj los mus rau txoj kev txiav txim.

21 Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias nej pheej yuav nrhiav ua txoj kev phem nyob hauv nej lub caij sim siab no xwb, ces thaum nej los mus sawv ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiav txim nej yuav raug nrhiav pom muaj qhov tsis dawb huv; thiab tsis muaj ib yam uas tsis dawb huv yuav mus nrog Vajtswv nyob tau li; yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsum raug ntiab khiav tawm mus ib txhis li.

22 Thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv muab lus tso cai kom kuv yuav tsum hais tej yam no, thiab txhob tseg lawv li.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

1 Nifais 11

- 1 Vim tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau xav pom tej yam uas kuv txiv tau pom lawm, thiab ntseeg tias tus Tswv yeej muaj peev xwm ua tau tej ntawd rau kuv pom, thaum kuv tseem zaum xav ntsoov hauv kuv nruab siab tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau coj kuv tawm mus, muaj tseeb tiag, coj kuv mus rau puag saum ib lub ncov roob uas siab kawg, lub uas kuv tsis tau pom dua ib zaug li, thiab lub uas kuv txhais ko taw tsis tau mus txog dua ib zaug li.
- 2 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb, koj xav tau dab tsi?
- 3 Thiab kuv tau hais tias: Kuv xav pom tej yam uas kuv txiv tau pom lawm.
- 4 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj puas ntseeg tias koj txiv tau pom tsob ntoo uas nws tau hais?
- 5 Thiab kuv tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, koj yeej paub tias kuv ntseeg kuv txiv txhua lo lus.
- 6 Thiab thaum uas kuv tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, tus Ntsuj Plig tau ua ib lub suab qw nrov nrov hais tias: Hauxanas rau tus Tswv, Vajtswv tus uas muaj hwj chim loj kawg nkaus; vim nws yog Vajtswv tus uas kav lub ntiaj teb tag nrho, muaj tseeb tiag, yeej muaj hwj chim tshaj ib puas yam tsav. Thiab koj tau koob hmoov kawg, Nifais, vim yog koj ntseeg Vajtswv tus uas muaj hwj chim loj kawg nkaus leej Tub; yog li ntawd, koj yuav tau pom tej uas koj tau xav pom.
- 7 Thiab saib seb yam no yuav muab ua ib lub cim rau koj, tias tom qab uas koj tau pom tsob ntoo uas tau txi cov txiv uas koj txiv tau noj, koj kuj yuav pom ib tug txiv neej nqes saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, thiab koj yuav pom nws; thiab tom qab uas koj tau pom nws lawm koj yuav ua tim khawv hais tias nws yog Vajtswv leej Tub.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais rau kuv tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom ib tsob ntoo; thiab nws zoo li tsob ntoo uas kuv txiv tau pom; thiab qhov zoo nkauj ntawm tsob ntoo mas zoo nkauj tshaj, muaj tseeb tiag, zoo nkauj tshaj txhua yam tsav uas zoo nkauj huv tib si li; thiab qhov dawb ntawm tsob ntoo tseem dawb tshaj qhov dawb ntawm cov dau uas cua muab ntsawj ya.

1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau pom tso
ntoo lawm, kuv tau hais rau tus Ntsuj Plig hais tias:
Kuv pom koj tau muab tso ntoo uas muaj nuj nqis
tshaj dua li lwm tso ntoo rau kuv pom.

10 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj xav tau dab
tsi?

11 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws hais tias: Xav paub
saib tej ntawd txhais li cas—vim kuv tau hais lus rau
nws ib yam li ib tug tib neeg hais lus; vim kuv tau
pom tias nws zoo li ib tug neeg; tiam sis, kuv yeej
paub lawm hais tias nws yog tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig;
thiab nws tau hais lus rau kuv ib yam li ib tug tib
neeg hais lus nrog rau lwm tus.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau kuv hais tias:
Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau tig hlo mus ntsia nws, thiab
kuv tsis pom nws; vim nws tau ncaim ntawm kuv
mus lawm.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom
lub nroog Yeluxalees uas loj, thiab lwm cov nroog
thiab. Thiab kuv tau pom lub nroog Naxales; thiab
nyob hauv lub nroog Naxales no kuv tau pom ib tug
nkauj xwb uas tsis tau deev dua hluas nraug li, thiab
nws yog ib tug ntshais uas zoo nkauj thiab dawb huv
heev.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom rooj ntug qhib;
thiab ib tug tim tswv tau nqis saud los thiab tau los
sawv ntawm kuv xub ntiag; thiab nws hais rau kuv
hais tias: Nifais, koj pom dab tsi?

15 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws hais tias: Kuv tau pom
ib tug nkauj xwb, tus uas zoo nkauj thiab dawb huv
tshaj plaws dua lwm tus nkauj xwb.

16 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Koj puas
paub hais tias Vajtsvw twb yuav nqis los nrog neeg
nyob?

17 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws hais tias: Kuv paub tias
nws yeej hlub nws cov me nyuam; txawm li ntawd
los, kuv twb tsis paub tej ntsiab lus ntawm txhua
yam.

18 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Saib seb, tus
nkauj xwb uas koj pom yog Vajtsvw tus Tub leej
niam, raws li ntawm sab cev nqaij daim tawv.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom tias nws raug tus
Ntsuj Plig muab koj lawm; thiab tom qab uas nws
raug tus Ntsuj Plig muab koj mus tau ib ntus lawm
tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Ntsia seb!

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said
unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me
the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation
thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for
I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet never-
theless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and
he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look!
And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him
not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the
great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I
beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of
Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly
fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open;
and an angel came down and stood before me; and
he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and
fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the conde-
scension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his
children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of
all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom
thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the
manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was car-
ried away in the Spirit; and after she had been car-
ried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the an-
gel spake unto me, saying: Look!

20 Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom dua tus nkauj xwb, nws tab tom puag ib tug me nyuam mos hauv nws caj npab.

21 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Saib seb Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Leej Txiv tus uas nyob mus ib txhis leej Tub! Koj puas paub lub ntsiab ntawm tsob ntoo uas koj txiv tau pom?

22 Thiab kuv tau teb nws, hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yog kev hlub los ntawm Vajtsv, uas tau nthuav kom dav rau txhua txhia qhov chaw nyob rau hauv noob neej tej siab tej ntsws; yog li ntawd, nws yog yam uas xav tau tshaj plaws txhua txhia yam huv tib si.

23 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yog ib qho kev zoo siab tshaj plaws rau tus ntsuj plig.

24 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, nws hais rau kuv tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia, thiab kuv tau pom Vajtsv leej Tub tau tawm mus rau tej neeg sawv daws; thiab kuv tau pom coob leej tau qhau cev rau ntawm nws ko taw thiab teev tiam nws.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom tias tus pas hlau, uas kuv txiv tau pom, yog Vajtsv txoj lus, uas coj mus rau cov dej uas txhawv cawm neeg txoj sia, los yog coj mus rau tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia; cov dej no piv txog Vajtsv txoj kev hlub; thiab kuv kuj tau pom tias tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia los kuj piv txog Vajtsv txoj kev hlub ib yam.

26 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv dua: Ntsia thiab saib txoj kev uas Vajtsv los nrog neeg nyob!

27 Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom ntiaj teb no tus Txhiv Dim, tus uas kuv txiv tau hais txog; thiab kuv kuj tau pom tus yaj saub uas los npaj txoj kev ua ntej nws. Thiab Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau mus thiab tau ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm nws; thiab tom qab uas nws tau ua kev cai raus dej tas lawm, kuv tau pom rooj ntug qhib, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau nqis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los thiab tsaws nyob saum nws zoo li ib tug nquab.

28 Thiab kuv tau pom tias nws tau tawm mus qhuab qhia thiab foom koob hmoov rau tej neeg sawv daws, uas muaj hwj chim thiab muaj yeeb koob loj kawg; thiab muaj neeg coob tau tuaj sib sau ua ke mloog nws; thiab kuv tau pom tias lawv tau muab nws ntiab khiav tawm ntawm lawv mus.

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

- 29 Thiab kuv kuj tau pom kaum ob tug lawv nws qab. Thiab tau muaj tias tus Ntsuj Plig tau coj lawv cov no ncaim ntawm kuv lub qhov muag mus, thiab kuv txawm tsis pom lawv lawm.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv rov qab hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia, thiab kuv tau pom rooj ntug rov qab qhib dua, thiab kuv tau pom tej tim tswv tau nqis los nrog tej neeg nyob; thiab lawv cov no tau qhuab qhia thiab foom koob hmoov rau tej tib neeg.
- 31 Thiab nws rov qab hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia, thiab kuv tau pom Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj mus thoo plaws rau tej neeg sawv daws. Thiab kuv tau pom muaj neeg coob cov uas muaj mob, thiab cov uas raug kev txom nyem los ntawm tej kab mob kev nkeeg, thiab ntawm tej dab thiab tej ntsuj plig tsis huv; thiab tus tim tswv tau hais thiab tau ua rau kuv pom tag nrho tej no. Thiab lawv zoo mob zoo nkeeg los ntawm Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub hwj chim; thiab nws tau ntiab tej dab thiab tej ntsuj plig tsis huv tawm mus.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv rov qab hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, nws tau raug neeg muab txhom; muaj tseeb tiag, Vajtswv tus uas muaj txoj sia kav ib txhis leej Tub tau raug neeg ntiab teb txiav txim rau; thiab kuv tau pom thiab ua tim khawv.
- 33 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau pom tias nws tau raug luag muab ntsia rau saum tus ntoo khaub lig thiab muab nws tua theej neeg ntiab teb tej kev txhaum.
- 34 Thiab tom qab uas nws raug luag muab tua lawm kuv tau pom muaj neeg ntiab teb coob leej, lawv tau sau tuaj ua ke nkaug tawm tsam tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov thwj tim; yog vim li ntawd kaum ob leeg no thiaj raug hu los ntawm tus Tswv tus tim tswv.
- 35 Thiab cov neeg ntiab teb coob leej tau tuaj sib sau ua ke; thiab kuv tau pom tias lawv nyob hauv ib lub tsev loj thiab dav, zoo li lub tsev uas kuv txiv tau pom lawm. Thiab tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Saib seb cov neeg ntiab teb thiab lawv tej tswv yim ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb cov neeg Ixayees tau sib sau ua ke tuaj nkaug tawm tsam tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom thiab ua tim
khawv, tias lub tsev loj thiab dav ntawd yog tej neeg
ntiaj teb txoj kev muab hlob; thiab nws tau raug puas
tsuaj mus, thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawd tau yog ib
txog uas phem heev. Thiab tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau
rov hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Yog li ntawd txhua
haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus thiab tej
tib neeg sawv daws yuav raug txoj kev puas tsuaj
phem heev ntawd ntag, yog hais tias lawv sawv
nkaug tawm tsam tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug
thwj tim.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record,
that the great and spacious building was the pride of
the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceed-
ingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me
again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all na-
tions, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight
against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

1 Nifais 12

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Ntsia, thiab saib seb koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, thiab koj cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv thiab. Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab kuv tau pom muaj neeg coob heev, muaj tseeb tiag, twb ntau npaum li cov xuab zeb nram ntug dej hiav txwv.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ntau pab neeg tau tuaj sib sau ua ke sib ntaus sib tua, ib leeg tawm tsam ib leeg; thiab kuv tau pom kev ua tsov ua rog, thiab hnov lus paj lus cua txog kev ua tsov ua rog, thiab kuv cov neeg coob leej tau poob tsam los ntawm hniav ntaj.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ntau tiam neeg tau dhau mus, raws li tej kev tsov kev rog thiab kev sib cav sib ceg nyob rau hauv thaj av; thiab kuv tau pom ntau lub nroog, muaj tseeb tiag, yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tsis suav lawv.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ib txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab nyob rau saum thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab kuv tau pom xob laim liab pes vog, thiab tau hnov xob quaj nroo pes ntws, thiab hnov av qeeg, thiab hnov txhua txhia yam suab nrov; thiab kuv tau pom tej av thiab tej pob zeb tau tawg; thiab kuv tau pom tej roob tau nphau pes nphwv ua doj ua daim; thiab kuv tau pom tej tiaj nrag ntawm lub ntiaj teb tau tawg ntsoog ntxaws; thiab kuv tau pom ntau lub nroog tau saus rau hauv dej hiav txwv; thiab kuv tau pom ntau lub nroog tau raug hluav taws kub hnyiab; thiab kuv tau pom ntau lub nroog tau nphau rau hauv pem teb, vim tej kev av qeeg ntawd.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau pom tej yam xwm no tas lawm, kuv tau pom txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab, uas nws tau sawv hauv av tuaj mus rau saum nruab ntug; thiab saib seb, kuv tau pom muaj ntau pab neeg uas tsis tau raug puas tsuaj vim ntawm txoj kev txiav txim loj thiab phem heev ntawm tus Tswv.
- 6 Thiab kuv tau pom rooj ntug qhib, thiab Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau nqis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los; thiab nws tau nqis los thiab tau qhia nws tus kheej rau lawv.

1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

- 7 Thiab kuv kuj tau pom thiab ua tim khawv tias tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau nqis los rau saum kaum ob tug; thiab lawv cov no tau raug tsa los ntawm Vajtswv, thiab tau raug xaiv.
- 8 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Saib seb tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug pab coj, cov uas tau raug xaiv los qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo rau koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.
- 9 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj puas nco qab txog tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim thaud? Saib seb lawv yog cov uas yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg Ixayees kaum ob xeeb neeg; yog li ntawd, kaum ob tug kws qhuab qhia ntawm koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm lawv cov no; vim nej yog los ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees los.
- 10 Thiab kaum ob tug qhuab qhia uas koj pom no yuav txiav txim rau koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv. Thiab, saib seb, lawv ua ncaj ncees tas mus ib txhis li; vim lawv txoj kev ntseeg hauv Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lawv tej ris tsho thiaj raug ua dawb paug los ntawm nws cov ntshav.
- 11 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia, thiab tau pom peb tiam neeg tuag dhau mus lawm nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees; thiab lawv tej ris tsho dawb paug zoo ib yam li Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj. Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv: Cov no raug ua dawb paug los ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov ntshav, vim lawv txoj kev ntseeg nws.
- 12 Thiab kuv, Nifais, kuj tau pom neeg coob leej uas nyob hauv tiam neeg thib plaub tau tuag dhau mus lawm nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom ntau pab neeg hauv ntiaj teb no tau tuaj sib sau ua ke.
- 14 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb koj tej noob, thiab tej noob ntawm koj tej kwv tij.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom cov neeg ntawm kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tau tuaj sib sau ua ke tsheej pab tawm tsam kuv cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; thiab lawv tau tuaj sib sau ua ke sib ntaus sib tua.
- 16 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Saib seb qhov dej txhawv ntawm cov dej vuab tsuab uas koj txiv tau pom; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tus dej uas nws tau hais txog; thiab qhov tob ntawm tus dej ntawd yog qhov tob ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus ntag.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

- 17 Thiab txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab yog tej kev dag ntxias ntawm tus dab uas tau npog noob neej tej qhov muag thiab ua kom noob neej tej siab tej ntsws tsis mloog lus, thiab coj lawv mus rau tej kev dav, kom lawv piam sij thiab ploj mus.
- 18 Thiab lub tsev loj thiab dav, uas koj txiv tau pom, yog txoj kev xav khav theeb thiab txoj kev muab hlob ntawm noob neej. Thiab muaj ib tug kwj tob tob uas loj thiab phem heev tau muab lawv kem; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog txoj lus ntawm txoj kev txim lij ntawm Vajtswv tus uas muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, thiab tus Mexiyas uas yog Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, tus uas tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ua tim khawv rau, txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los mus txog rau lub sij hawm no, thiab txij li lub sij hawm no mus lawm yav tom ntej thiab mus ib txhis li.
- 19 Thiab thaum uas tus tim tswv tseem hais tej lus no, kuv tau saib thiab tau pom kuv cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tau nkaug tawm tsam kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, raws li tus tim tswv lo lus; thiab vim txoj kev muab hlob ntawm kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, thiab tej kev dag ntxias ntawm tus dab, kuv tau pom tias kuv cov tij laug tej noob tau yeej tsam ntawm cov neeg ntawm kuv tej noob.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau saib, thiab tau pom cov neeg ntawm kuv cov tij laug tej noob lawv tau yeej tsam ntawm kuv tej noob; thiab lawv tau mus tsheej pwb pab rau saum thaj av.
- 21 Thiab kuv tau pom lawv sib sau ua ke tsheej pwb pab; thiab kuv tau pom kev ua tsov ua rog thiab hnov lus paj lus cua txog kev ua tsov ua rog nyob nrog lawv; thiab nyob rau hauv tej kev ua tsov ua rog thiab kev hnov lus paj lus cua txog kev ua tsov ua rog kuv tau pom ntau tiam neeg tuag dhau mus lawm.
- 22 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb tej neeg no yuav tso lawv tej kev ntseeg tseg.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom, tom qab uas lawv tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg lawm lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg tawv dub, thiab ntxim ntxub, thiab vuab tsuab, tau ua neeg tub nkeeg heev thiab muaj tej kev qias txhua yam.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

1 Nifais 13

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Ntsia seb! Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom ntau haiv neeg thiab ntau lub teb chaws.
- 2 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj pom tus dab tsi? Thiab kuv tau hais tias: Kuv pom ntau haiv neeg thiab ntau lub teb chaws.
- 3 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Cov no yog tej haiv neeg thiab tej teb chaws ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom txoj kev tsim tsa ntawm lub koom txoos muaj zog uas nyob ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 5 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb txoj kev tsim tsa ntawm lub koom txoos uas yog lub txaus ntxub tshaj plaws dua li lwm lub koom txoos huv tib si, lub uas muab cov ntseeg Vajtswv tua pov tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsim txom lawv thiab muab lawv khi cia, thiab txwv lawv tsis pub lawv ua raws li lawv lub siab xav, thiab coj lawv mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub no; thiab kuv tau pom tias tus dab yog tus tsim lub koom txoos no.
- 7 Thiab kuv kuj tau pom tej nyiaj, thiab tej kub, thiab tej ntaub yaj pwm, thiab tej ntaub liab, thiab tej ntaub npuag, thiab txhua txhia yam ntaub uas muaj nuj nqis heev; thiab kuv tau pom ntau tus niam ntiav.
- 8 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Saib seb tej nyiaj, thiab tej kub, thiab tej ntaub yaj pwm thiab tej ntaub liab, thiab tej ntaub npuag, thiab tej ntaub uas muaj nuj nqis heev, thiab tej niam ntiav, puav leej yog tej kev xav yuav xav tau ntawm lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub no.
- 9 Thiab kuj yog rau txoj kev qhuas ntawm lub ntiaj teb lawv thiaj ua kom cov ntseeg Vajtswv puas tsuaj, thiab coj lawv mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau saib thiab tau pom cov dej hiav txwv; thiab cov dej no tau faib Lwm Haiv Neeg tawm ntawm kuv cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb Vajtswv npau taws rau koj cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.

1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

- 12 Thiab kuv tau saib thiab tau pom ib tug txiv neej uas nyob nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg, tus uas cov dej hiav txwv tau muab kem tawm ntawm kuv cov tij laugtej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; thiab kuv tau pom Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, uas tau nqis los thiab tau los yaum tus txiv neej no; thiab nws tau mus rau saum cov dej hiav txwv, mus txog ntua rau kuv cov tij laugtej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, cov uas nyob rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, tau los yaum lwm cov neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg; thiab lawv cov no tau tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev, mus rau saum cov dej hiav txwv.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom muaj ntau pab neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg nyob rau saum thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab kuv tau pom Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws, uas nyob rau saum kuv cov tij laug tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; thiab lawv tau raug khiav ri niab los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab tau raug Lwm Haiv Neeg tsim txom.
- 15 Thiab kuv tau pom Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, tau los nyob nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab lawv tau huaj vam thiab tau txais thaj av ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg; thiab kuv tau pom lawv cov no yog neeg tawv dawb, thiab txaus nyiam thiab zoo nkauj heev, zoo li kuv cov neeg ua ntej thaum lawv raug luag tua.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau pom tias cov neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg uas tau tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev tau txo lawv tej hwj chim rau tus Tswv; thiab tus Tswv lub hwj chim tau los nrog lawv nyob.
- 17 Thiab kuv tau pom tias Lwm Haiv Neeg cov uas tseem nyob tim lawv qub teb qub chaw tau sib sau tuaj ua ke rau saum dej hiav txwv thiab rau saum av, tuaj tawm tsam lawv.
- 18 Thiab kuv tau pom tias Vajtswv lub hwj chim tau nrog lawv nyob, thiab Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws tau nyob saum cov neeg uas tau sib sau tuaj ua ke tuaj sib tua tawm tsam lawv.
- 19 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau pom tias Lwm Haiv Neeg cov uas tau tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev Vajtswv lub hwj chim tau coj lawv dim ntawm txhua txhia haiv neeg tej tes.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau pom tias lawv cov no tau huaj vam nyob rau hauv thaj av; thiab kuv tau pom ib phau ntawv, thiab lawv tau coj phau ntawv no nrog lawv.

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

- 21 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj puas paub lub ntsiab ntawm phau ntawv no?
- 22 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv tsis paub.
- 23 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Saib seb nws tau muaj tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudaïs lub qhov ncauj los. Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau pom phau ntawv no; thiab nws hais rau kuv tias: Phau ntawv uas koj pom yog cov Neeg Yudaïs ib phau ceev xwm txheej, uas muaj tus Tswv tej kev khi lus tseg, uas nws tau khi rau tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab nws kuj muaj cov yaj saub dawb huv tej kev qhia ntau yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej nyob hauv; thiab nws yog ib phau ceev xwm txheej zoo li cov uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, tiam sis tsuas yog tsis tshua muaj ntau npaum li ntawd xwb; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem muaj tus Tswv tej kev khi lus nyob rau hauv, uas nws tau khi rau tsev neeg Ixayees; yog li ntawd, lawv yog ib co uas muaj nuj nqis heev rau Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 24 Thiab tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj tau pom tias phau ntawv no tau muaj tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudaïs lub qhov ncauj los; thiab thaum uas nws tau muaj tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudaïs lub qhov ncauj los nws tau muaj tus Tswv txoj moo zoo uas muaj txhij txhua nyob rau hauv, tus Tswv uas kaum ob tug thwj tim tau ua tim khawv txog, thiab lawv ua tim khawv raws li txoj kev tseeb uas muaj nyob hauv Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, tej yam no tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudaïs dawb paug mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, raws li txoj kev tseeb uas muaj nyob hauv Vajtswv.
- 26 Thiab tom qab uas tej yam no tau tawm dhau ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim txhais tes mus lawm, ntawm cov Neeg Yudaïs mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, koj pom txoj kev tsim tsa ntawm lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub, uas yog lub uas txaus ntxub tshaj plaws dua li lwm lub koom txoos huv tib si; vim saib seb, lawv tau muab ntau yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev hauv tus Me Nyuam Yaj txoj moo zoo rho tawm lawm; thiab lawv kuj tau rho tus Tswv ntau txoj kev khi lus tawm pov tseg thiab.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

27 Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam txhua tsav no es kom lawv thiaj yuav muaj peev xwm hloov tus Tswv tej kev uas yog qhov yog, es kom lawv yuav npog tau tej tib neeg tej qhov muag kom txhob pom kev thiab ua kom tej tib neeg muaj lub siab tawv tsis txhob mloog lus.

28 Yog li ntawd, koj pom tias tom qab uas phau ntawv tau mus dhau ntawm lub koom txoos muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub tej tes lawm, es tau muaj ntau yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev tau raug rho tawm hauv phau ntawv mus lawm, phau uas yog Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj phau ntawv.

29 Thiab tom qab uas tej yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev no tau raug rho tawm pov tseg lawm nws tau mus thoob plaws rau txhua txhia haiv neeg uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg; thiab tom qab uas nws tau mus thoob plaws rau txhua haiv neeg uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, twb mus hla dhau ntau tus dej hiav txwv uas koj tau pom nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg uas tau tawm hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev, koj pom—vim yog ntau yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev uas raug muab rho tawm hauv phau ntawv mus, uas yog ib co uas yooj yim rau noob neej to taub, raws li txoj kev yooj yim to taub uas muaj nyob hauv Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj—vim yog tej yam no uas tau raug rho tawm hauv tus Me Nyuam Yaj txoj moo zoo, thiaj muaj neeg coob leej heev tau dawm taw ntog, muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias Ntxwng Nyoog thiaj muaj hwj chim loj heev kav lawv.

30 Tsis tas li ntawd xwb, koj pom tias Lwm Haiv Neeg cov uas tau tawm hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev, thiab Vajtswv lub hwj chim tau txhawb lawv lub dag lub zog tau pab lawv tshaj li lwm haiv neeg, nyob rau saum thaj av uas yog thaj uas zoo tshaj plaws li lwm thaj, uas yog thaj av uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau khi lus tseg cia rau koj txiv lawm tias nws tej noob yuav tau txais thaj av no ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg; yog li ntawd, koj pom tias tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav tsis cia kom Lwm Haiv Neeg ua kom koj tej noob uas tau yuav koj cov tij laugtej noob puas tsuaj huv tib si li.

31 Los sis nws yuav tsis cia kom Lwm Haiv Neeg ua kom koj cov tij laugtej noob puas tsuaj mus thiab.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

32 Los sis tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav tsis cia kom Lwm Haiv Neeg nyob hauv txoj kev dig muag no mus ib txhis, txoj uas koj pom lawv tseem nyob hauv, vim yog tej yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj txoj moo zoo tau raug lub koom txoos uas txaus ntxub muab tuav tseg, lub uas tau tsim tsa uas koj tau pom lawm.

33 Yog li ntawd Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj hais tias: Kuv yuav hlub tshua txog rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, txog rau kev mus saib xyuas tsev neeg Ixayees uas seem tshuav nyob hauv lub caij txiav txim loj.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais tias, Saib seb tom qab uas kuv tau mus saib xyuas tsev neeg Ixayees uas seem tshuav tas lawm—thiab cov neeg seem tshuav uas kuv hais txog no yog koj txiv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv—yog li ntawd, tom qab uas kuv tau mus saib xyuas lawv nyob hauv txoj kev txiav txim, thiab kom Lwm Haiv Neeg txhais tes tau muab lawv tsim txom, thiab tom qab uas Lwm Haiv Neeg pib ua kev txhaum heev zuj zus, vim yog tej yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj txoj moo zoo uas lub koom txoos uas txaus ntxub tau muab tuav tseg, lub uas yog tus niam ntawm cov niam ntiav, tus Me Nyuam Yaj hais li ntawd—Kuv yuav hlub tshua txog rau Lwm Haiv Neeg nyob rau hnuv ntawd, kawg tias kuv yuav coj ntau yam ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo, txoj uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis los rau lawv los ntawm kuv lub hwj chim, tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais li ntawd.

35 Vim, saib seb, tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais tias: Kuv yuav qhia kuv tus kheej rau koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv paub, kom tias lawv yuav tau sau ntau yam uas kuv yuav qhia rau lawv, uas yuav yog cov uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis; thiab tom qab uas koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv yuav raug puas tsuaj, thiab tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg, thiab koj cov tij laugtej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv los kuj tib yam, saib seb, tej yam no yuav raug coj mus zais cia, kom mam li ho tawm los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, los ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj txoj kev pub thiab lub hwj chim.

36 Thiab nyob rau hauv tej yam no yuav cia sau kuv txoj moo zoo, tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais li, thiab yuav cia sau kuv qhov chaw vam khom thiab kuv txoj kev cawm seeg.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

37 Thiab cov uas nrhiav kev tsa kuv lub Xi-oos nyob rau hnub ntawd yuav tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav tau txais txoj kev pub thiab lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; thiab yog tias lawv yuav nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg lawv yuav raug tsa sawv nyob hauv hnub kawg, thiab lawv yuav tau zoo nyob kaj siab lug nyob hauv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub nceeg vaj uas kav ib txhis; thiab leej twg los xij yog tias nws yuav tshaj tawm txoj kev thaj yeeb nyab xeeb, muaj tseeb tiag, tej moo zoo ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab, lawv yuav zoo nkauj npaum li cas nyob rau saum tej roob.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom cov neeg seem tshuav ntawm kuv cov kwv tij tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, thiab kuj tau pom Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj phau ntawv, phau uas tau muaj tawm los ntawm cov Neeg Yudais lub qhov ncauj, tias nws tau los dhau ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg mus rau cov neeg seem tshuav ntawm kuv cov tij laugtej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.

39 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau tawm los mus rau hauv lawv lawm kuv tau pom lwm cov ntawv, cov uas tau tawm los ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub hwj chim, los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg mus rau lawv, mus rau txoj kev uas yuav yaum Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab kuv cov tij laugtej noob, thiab rau cov Neeg Yudais uas tau tawg ri niab mus thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no, tias tus Me Nyuam Yaj tej yaj saub thiab kaum ob tug thwj tim cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej yeej muaj tseeb tiag.

40 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej kawg no, uas koj tau pom nyob nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg, yuav tsim txoj kev tseeb ntawm thawj cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej, cov uas yog tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim li, thiab yuav ua kom paub txog tej yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis uas tau raug rho tawm ntawm thawj cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej; thiab yuav ua kom paub mus thoob plaws rau txhua xeeb neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg sawv daws, tias Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj yog Leej Txiv tus uas nyob mus ib txhis Leej Tub, thiab nws yog lub ntiaj teb tus Cawm Seeg; thiab tias tag nrho neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav tsum los cuag nws, los sis lawv yuav tsis raug cawm dim.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

41 Thiab lawv yuav tsum los raws li txoj lus uas tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub qhov ncauj tau tshaj tawm; thiab tus Me Nyuam Yaj tej lus yuav tau ua kom sawv daws paub nyob rau hauv cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej uas koj tej noob sau, thiab tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej uas lawv sau; yog li ntawd cov ntawv ceev xwm txheej no yuav raug muab los ua ib phau xwb; vim muaj tib tug Vajtsv thiab tib tug Tswv Yug Yaj saib thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no xwb.

42 Thiab thaum lub caij lub nyooq los txog lawm nws yuav qhia nws tus kheej rau txhua haiv neeg, tsis hais rau cov Neeg Yudais los yog rau Lwm Haiv Neeg paub; thiab tom qab uas nws tau qhia nws tus kheej rau cov Neeg Yudais thiab rau Lwm Haiv Neeg paub lawm, ces nws yuav qhia nws tus kheej rau Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab rau cov Neeg Yudais thiab, thiab cov uas ua qab yuav tau los ua ntej, thiab cov uas ua ntej ho yuav tau los ua qab.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

1 Nifais 14

- 1 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias, yog Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav mloog Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lus nyob rau hnuv ntawd uas nws yuav qhia nws tus kheej rau lawv los ntawm nws lo lus, thiab kuj los ntawm hwj chim, los ntawm txhua yam uas nws ua, mus rau txoj kev uas nws yuav tshem tej yam uas dawm lawv ko taw—
- 2 Thiab yog tias lawv yuav tsis ua siab tawv rau Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, lawv yuav raug suav nrog koj txiv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav raug suav nrog tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab lawv yuav yog ib cov neeg uas tau koob hmoov nyob rau saum thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm mus ib txhis; lawv yuav tsis raug koj mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev; thiab tsev neeg Ixayees yuav tsis raug muab mus txuam nrog lwm haiv neeg ntxiv lawm.
- 3 Thiab lub qhov uas tob heev ntawd, uas lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab tsaus ntxub tau khawb cia rau lawv lawm, lub koom txoos uas tau txhim tsa los ntawm tus dab thiab nws tej me nyuam, es kom nws yuav koj tau tej neeg tej ntsuj plig mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus—muaj tseeb tiag, lub qhov tob heev ntawd uas tau khawb cia rau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm tej neeg yeej yuav ntim puv nkaus cov neeg uas tau khawb nws, es kom lawv yuav raug kev puas tsuaj huv tib si li, Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais li ntawd; tsis yog kev puas tsuaj ntawm tus ntsuj plig, tiam sis tsuas yog yuav muab nws pov rau hauv lub ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas tsis muaj qhov kawg.
- 4 Vim saib seb, tej yam no yog raws li txoj kev poob cev qhev rau tus dab, thiab kuj raws nraim li Vajtswv txoj kev ncaj ncees, rau tag nrho lawv cov uas yuav ua txoj kev phem thiab kev qias rau ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, Nifais, hais tias: Koj tau pom tias yog hais tias Lwm Haiv Neeg hloov siab lees txim qhov ntawd yuav zoo kawg nkaus rau lawv; thiab koj kuj paub ntsig txog tus Tswv tej kev khi lus tseg rau tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab koj kuj tau hnov lawm tias yog leej twg tsis hloov siab lees txim nws yuav tsum raug piam sij.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, kev txom nyem raug rau Lwm Haiv Neeg yog tias lawv yuav ua lawv tej siab tawv tawm tsam Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj.

1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7 Vim yuav muaj lub sij hawm, Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau hais, uas kuv yuav ua ib txoj hauj lwm loj thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob rau noob neej; ib txoj hauj lwm uas yuav kav ib txhis, tsuas muaj nyob ntawm ib sab tes los sis lwm sab xwb—tsuas yog mus rau txoj kev uas yaum lawv mus rau txoj kev thaj yeeb nyab xeeb thiab muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, los sis koj lawv mus rau txoj kev cia kom lawv tej siab tawv thiab ua kom lawv tsis thoob tsib to nrog es kom lawv yuav raug koj mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev, thiab mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, tsis hais sab cev nqaij daim tawv los sis sab ntsuj plig, raws li txoj kev poob cev qhev rau tus dab, uas kuv tau hais txog lawm.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas tus tim tswv tau hais cov lus no, nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj puas nco qab txog tej kev khi lus uas Leej Txiv tau khi rau tsev neeg Ixayees? Kuv tau hais rau nws tias, kuv nco kawg.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Ntsia thiab saib lub niag koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub, lub uas yog leej niam ntawm txoj kev qias, lub uas tus txhim tsa yog tus dab.

10 Thiab nws hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb tsuas muaj ob lub koom txoos nkaus nkaus xwb; ib lub yog Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub, thiab lwm lub yog tus dab lub koom txoos; yog li ntawd, leej twg yog tsis zwm rau hauv Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub koom txoos ces yeej zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos muaj zog ntawd, lub uas yog leej niam ntawm txoj kev qias; thiab nws yog tag nrho ntiaj teb tus niam ntiav.

11 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom tag nrho ntiaj teb tus niam ntiav, thiab nws tau zaum saum ntau tus dej hiav txwv; thiab nws tau kev kav rau saum ntiaj teb tag nrho, nrog rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab rau tej neeg sawv daws.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub koom txoos, thiab nws tsis muaj neeg coob peg tsawg, vim yog txoj kev phem thiab kev qias ntawm tus niam ntiav uas zaum saum ntau tus dej hiav txwv; tsis tas li ntawd, kuv tseem tau pom tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub koom txoos, lub uas yog cov ntseeg Vajtswv, cov ntseeg no kuj nyob thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no thiab; thiab lawv txoj kev uas kav tej teb chaws hauv qab ntuj no tsis muaj ntau, vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm tus niam ntiav uas phem heev tus uas kuv tau pom.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom tias txoj kev qias leej niam uas phem heev tau sib sau ntau pab neeg tuaj ua ke nyob thoob plaws hauv qab ntuj no, nyob nrog txhua haiv neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, es tuaj tua tawm tsam Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau pom Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub hwj chim, nws tau nqis los rau saum cov ntseeg ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub koom txoos, thiab tau nqis los rau saum tus Tswv cov neeg uas tau khi lus tseg, cov uas tau tawg ri niab mus thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no; thiab lawv tau muab txoj kev ncaj ncees los ua ntaj riam thaiv lawv thiab nrog rau Vajtswv lub hwj chim uas muaj yeeb koob heev.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom tias Vajtswv tau hliv nws txoj kev npau taws rau saum lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub, kawg tias tau tso muaj tsov muaj rog thiab hnov lus paj lus cua txog kev ua tsov ua rog nyob nrog txhua haiv neeg thiab, txhua xeeb neeg hauv ntiav teb no.

16 Thiab thaum uas tau pib muaj kev tsov kev rog thiab hnov lus paj lus cua txog kev ua tsov ua rog nyob nrog txhua haiv neeg uas tau zwm rau hauv leej niam ntawm txoj kev qias, tus tim tswv saum ntuj tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Saib seb, Vajtswv npau taws kawg rau tej niam ntiav leej niam; thiab saib seb, koj twb pom txhua yam tsav no—

17 Thiab thaum txog hnuv ntawd Vajtswv yuav hliv nws txoj kev npau taws rau saum tej niam ntiav leej niam, uas yog lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub uas nyob thoob plaws hauv qab ntuj no, uas tus txhim tsa yog tus dab, ces, nyob rau hnuv ntawd, Leej Txiv txoj hauj lwm yuav pib npaj txoj hauv kev kom muaj txhua yam li nws tej kev khi lus, uas nws tau cog rau nws cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Ntsia seb!

19 Thiab kuv tau ntsia thiab tau pom ib tug txiv neej, thiab nws hnav ib lub tsho tshaj sab dawb.

20 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Saib seb ib tug thwj tim ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj kaum ob tug thwj tim.

21 Saib seb, nws yuav tau pom thiab nws yuav tau sau tej yam uas seem tshuav no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntau yam uas tau tshwm sim lawm thiab.

22 Thiab nws kuj yuav sau ntsig txog txoj kev uas lub ntiaj teb no yuav kawg.

23 Yog li ntawd, tej yam uas nws yuav sau yog yam uas ncaj ncees thiab tseeb xwb; thiab saib seb lawv yog cov uas tau muab sau rau hauv phau ntawv uas koj tau pom tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudais lub qhov ncauj los; thiab thaum lub sij hawm uas lawv tau muaj tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudais lub qhov ncauj los, los sis, thaum lub sij hawm uas phau ntawv tau muaj tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudais lub qhov ncauj los, tej yam uas tau sau tsuas yog yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab huv huv xwb, thiab yog tej yam uas muaj nuj nqis heev thiab yooj yim rau neeg txhua leej txhua tus to taub xwb.

24 Thiab saib seb, tej yam uas tus Me Nyuam Yaj tus thwj tim no yuav tau sau yog ntau yam uas koj twb tau pom los lawm; thiab saib seb, cov uas seem tshuav los koj tseem yuav pom thiab.

25 Tiam sis tej yam uas koj tseem yuav pom tom qab no koj tsis txhob sau; vim tus Tswv Vajtsv tau tsa Vajtsv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tus thwj tim kom nws sau lawv lawm.

26 Thiab lwm cov neeg uas tau nyob hauv ntiaj teb no, tus Tswv Vajtsv kuj tau muab txhua yam no rau lawv pom, thiab lawv kuj tau sau cov no tseg; thiab cov no tau muab foob tseg cia es kom thaum lawv tawm tuaj los kom yog ib cov uas dawb huv, raws li txoj kev tseeb uas muaj nyob hauv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, nyob hauv tus Tswv lub sij hawm uas nws tau teem tseg rau tsev neeg Ixayees.

27 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau hnov thiab ua tim khawv, tias tus Me Nyuam Yaj tus thwj tim lub npe yog Yauhas, raws li tus tim tswv lo lus.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

- 28 Thiab saib seb, kuv, Nifais, tau raug txwv tsis pub sau tej yam uas seem tshuav uas kuv tau pom thiab tau hnov; yog li ntawd tej yam uas kuv tau sau twb txaus kuv lawm; thiab kuv tsuas tau sau me ntsis ntawm tej yam uas kuv tau pom xwb.
- 29 Thiab kuv ua tim khawv tias kuv tau pom tej yam uas kuv txiv tau pom lawm, thiab tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau ua tej no rau kuv paub.
- 30 Thiab nim no kuv yuav tsum tawm kev hais txog tej yam uas kuv tau pom thaum uas tus ntsuj plig tau coj kuv lawm; thiab txawm hais tias tsis tau muab txhua yam txhua tsav uas kuv tau pom sau cia los tej yam uas kuv tau muab sau lawm yeej muaj tseeb. Thiab yeej muaj li ntawd tiag. Amees.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

1 Nifais 15

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau raug tus ntsuj plig coj lawm, thiab tau pom txhua yam txhua tsav no lawm, kuv tau rov qab los rau tom kuv txiv lub tsev pheed suab ntaub.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pom kuv cov tij laug, thiab lawv tseem tab tom sib cav zom zaws txog tej yam uas kuv txiv tau hais rau lawv lawm.
- 3 Vim nws yeej tau hais ntau yam uas tseem ceeb rau lawv, tej yam uas tsis yooj yim to taub, tsuas yog ib tug neeg yuav tsum thov tus Tswv pab xwb; thiab vim lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tej ntsws tawv qhwb qhaw, yog li ntawd lawv tsis vam khom txog tus Tswv li uas lawv yuav tsum vam khom.
- 4 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tau tu siab heev vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab tej ntsws, thiab vim kuj yog tej yam uas kuv tau pom, thiab tau paub lawm uas yuav tsum muaj los es zam tsis dhau li vim yog noob neej tej kev phem heev ntawd.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau qaug dag qaug zog vim yog kuv tej kev kub ntxhov, vim kuv tau xav hais tias kuv tej kev kub ntxhov yog tej uas loj tshaj txhua yam huv tib si, vim yog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg, vim kuv tau pom lawv txoj kev poob.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv rov qab muaj zog lawm kuv tau hais rau kuv cov tij laug, saib xwm txheej tus dab tsi ua rau lawv pheed sib cav.
- 7 Thiab lawv hais tias: Saib seb, peb twb tsis to taub txog cov niag lus uas peb txiv tau hais ntsig txog cov ceg ntseej nyeg ntawm tsoob ntoo ntseej, thiab hais txog Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 8 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias; Nej puas tau thov tus Tswv?
- 9 Thiab lawv teb rau kuv tias: Peb tsis tau; vim tus Tswv tsis ua tej yam zoo li no rau peb paub li.
- 10 Saib seb, kuv tau hais rau lawv tias: Yog vim li cas nej thiaj tsis ceev tus Tswv tej lus txib? Yog vim li cas es nej xav kom nej piam sij, vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm nej tej siab tej ntsws los?
- 11 Nej tsis nco qab txog tej yam uas tus Tswv tau hais lawm los?—Yog hais tias nej tsis txhob cia nej tej siab tej ntsws tawv qhwb qhawv, thiab thov kuv los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, ntseeg ntsoov tias nej yeej yuav tau txais, kub siab lug ceev kuv tej lus txib, ces nej yeej yuav paub tej yam no.

1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

- 12 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias tsev neeg Ixayees tau muab piv rau ib tsob ntoo ntseej, los ntawm tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv peb txiv; thiab saib seb tsis yog peb tawg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees los los, thiab peb tsis yog ib ceg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees los?
- 13 Thiab nim no, yam uas peb txiv hais txog txoj kev uas yuav muab cov ceg nyeg los txuas los ntawm txoj kev muaj txhij txhua ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, yog li no, tias nyob rau hauv hnuv nyoog kawg, thaum uas peb tej noob yuav tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, tau ntau xyoo, thiab ntau tiam neeg tom qab uas tus Mexiyas yuav los ntawm sab nqaij tawv rau noob neej paub, ces tus Mexiyas txoj moo zoo uas muaj txhij txhua yuav los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab yuav los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg los mus rau peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv uas tseem seem tshuav—
- 14 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd peb cov noob uas seem tshuav yuav paub tias lawv yog ib co ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab tias lawv yog tus Tswv cov neeg uas tau khi lus cia lawm; thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav paub thiab los mus paub txog lawv tej yawg koob, thiab kuj yuav los mus paub txog txoj moo zoo ntawm lawv tus Txhiv Dim, uas tau qhuab qhia rau lawv tej yawg koob los ntawm nws; yog li ntawd, lawv yuav los paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim thiab nws txoj lus qhia tseem ceeb, es kom lawv yuav paub los cuag nws thiab raug cawm dim.
- 15 Thiab thaum txog hnuv ntawd lawv puas yuav tsis zoo siab thiab qhuas rau lawv tus Vajtswv uas kav ib txhis, uas yog lawv qhov chaw vam khom thiab lawv txoj kev cawm seeg? Muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau hnuv ntawd, lawv puas yuav tsis tau txais lub zog thiab txoj kev loj hlob tawg paj txi txiv los ntawm tsob txiv hmab nyeg? Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv puas yuav tsis los mus rau hauv Vajtswv pab yaj tseeb?
- 16 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Muaj tseeb tiag; tsev neeg Ixayees yuav rov qab nco txog lawv dua; lawv yuav raug koj los txuas rov qab rau, vim lawv yeej yog ib tug ceg ntseej nyeg, rau tsob ntoo ntseej nyeg tseeb.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

17 Thiab qhov no yog lub ntsiab ntawm yam uas peb txiv tau hais, thiab nws hais tias lawv txoj kev txais txoj moo zoo yuav tsis tau muaj los txog thaum uas Lwm Haiv Neeg ua rau lawv tawg ri niab tso; thiab nws hais tias lawv txoj kev txais txoj moo zoo yuav los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg los, es tus Tswv thiaj tau pub nws lub hwj chim rau Lwm Haiv Neeg pom, rau qhov uas cov Neeg Yudais los yog tsev neeg Ixayees yuav tsis kam lees yuav nws.

18 Yog li ntawd, peb txiv yeej tsis tau hais txog peb tej noob xwb, tiam sis nws yeej hais txog tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees huv tib si, hais txog cov lus khi tseg uas yuav muaj tiav nyob rau hauv hnuv nyoog kawg; uas yog cov lus cog tseg uas tus Tswv tau khi tseg rau peb tus yawg koob Anplaham, hais tias: Txhua haiv neeg uas nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb no yuav tau koob hmoov los ntawm koj tej noob.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais ntau yam ntau tsav rau lawv ntsig txog tej yam no; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau hais rau lawv ntsig txog txoj kev rov qab muab cov Neeg Yudais txum tim los dua nyob rau hauv hnuv nyoog kawg.

20 Thiab kuv tau rov hais Yaxayas tej lus rau lawv, tej uas nws tau hais ntsig txog txoj kev txum tim cov Neeg Yudais, los sis ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees rov qab los; thiab tom qab uas lawv raug txum tim rov qab los lawm lawv yuav tsis raug muab tov xyaw nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg ib zaug ntxiv lawm, los sis lawv yuav tsis raug muab faib tawg ri niab ntxiv lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais ntau lo lus rau kuv cov tij laug, ces lawv thiaj tau tsum tsis sib cav lawm thiab thiaj tau txo lawv tej hwj chim rau tus Tswv.

21 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau hais rau kuv dua, hais tias: Tej yam no uas peb txiv tau pom nyob hauv zaj npau suav txhais li cas? Tsob ntoo uas nws pom ne ho txhais li cas?

22 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias: Nws yog ib yam uas sawv cev ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia.

23 Thiab lawv tau hais rau kuv tias: Tus pas hlau uas peb txiv tau pom, es koj mus rau tsob ntoo ne ho txhais li cas?

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

- 24 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias nws yog Vajtswv txoj lus; thiab cov uas yuav mloog Vajtswv txoj lus, thiab tuav txoj lus no tsis tso, lawv yuav tsis piam sij ib zaug li; txoj kev dag ntxias thiab yeeb ncuab xib xub hluav taws yuav kov tsis yeej kom lawv poob rau hauv txoj kev dig muag, es coj lawv mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj puas ntsoog.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Nifais, tau ntuas kom lawv mloog tus Tswv txoj lus; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau ntuas lawv tag kuv lub dag lub zog, thiab tag kuv lub peev xwm uas kuv muaj, es kom lawv yuav mloog Vajtswv txoj lus thiab nco ntsoov ceev nws tej lus txib txhua lub caij nyooog rau txhua yam.
- 26 Thiab lawv tau hais rau kuv tias: Tus dej uas peb txiv tau pom ne txhais li cas?
- 27 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias cov dej uas kuv txiv tau pom yog txoj kev vuab tsuab; thiab muaj ntau yam uas nws lub siab xav txog es nws thiaj tsis tau pom txoj kev vuab tsuab ntawm cov dej.
- 28 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias nws yog ib tug kwj phem phem uas tob heev, uas tau cais cov neeg phem tawm ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia, thiab kuj cais cov neeg phem tawm ntawm cov neeg ntseeg Vajtswv thiab.
- 29 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias nws yog ib qho chaw sawv cev ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas phem heev, uas tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias yog npaj los rau cov neeg phem ntag.
- 30 Thiab kuv tau hais rau lawv tias peb txiv kuj tau pom tias Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij kuj tau faib cov neeg phem tawm ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees; thiab qhov kev ci ntawd zoo li ib tug nplaim hluav taws ci, uas nce mus rau Vajtswv mus ib txhis thiab ib txhis, thiab tsis muaj qhov kawg li.
- 31 Thiab lawv tau hais rau kuv tias: Yam no puas yog muaj lub ntsiab txog txoj kev tsim txom ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv thaum tseem ua neej nyob no, los sis puas yog nws muaj lub ntsiab txog zaum theem kawg ntawm tej ntsuj plig tom qab uas cev nqaij daim tawv tau ploj tau tuag lawm, los sis puas yog nws hais txog tej yam uas yog sab cev nqaij daim tawv?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

32 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais rau lawv tias qhov ntawd yog ib qho chaw sawv cev ntawm tej yam uas yog sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig; vim hnuv ntawd yeej yuav los es lawv yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tej hauj lwm uas cev nqaij daim tawv tau ua nyob rau thaum lawv tseem ua neej nyob.

33 Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias lawv yeej yeem tuag nyob hauv lawv txoj kev phem lawv yeej yuav raug muab pov tseg thiab, raws li tej yam ntawm sab ntsuj plig, uas raws li txoj kev ncaj ncees; yog li ntawd, lawv yeej yuav raug coj los sawv ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag, los raug txiav txim ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm; thiab yog hais tias lawv tej hauj lwm tau yog kev vuab tsuab ces lawv yeej vuab tsuab; thiab yog hais tias lawv vuab tsuab ces nws yeej yuav muaj tseeb tias lawv yuav tsis muaj peev xwm nyob tau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; yog hais tias lawv nyob tau ces Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj kuj yog vuab tsuab tib yam thiab.

34 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj tsis vuab tsuab, thiab yuav muaj tsis tau ib yam dab tsi uas vuab tsuab nkag tau mus rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj ib zaug li; yog li ntawd yeej yuav tsum muaj ib qho chaw uas vuab tsuab tu tseg tos rau yam uas vuab tsuab ntawd.

35 Thiab muaj ib qho chaw uas tau npaj tseg tos, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog lub niag ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas phem heev uas kuv tau hais txog, thiab tus dab yog tus uas npaj qhov chaw ntawd ntog; yog li ntawd zaum kawg ntawm neeg tej ntsuj plig yog nrog Vajtswv nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj, los sis raug ntiab tawm vim txoj kev txim lij uas kuv tau hais txog ntawd.

36 Yog li ntawd, cov neeg phem yuav raug muab rho tawm ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees, thiab tawm ntawm tsob ntoos uas cawm neeg txoj sia thiab, uas muaj cov txiv uas muaj nuj nqis tshaj thiab yog cov txiv uas qab tshaj txhua yam txiv huv tib si; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yog ib qho txiaj ntsim uas zoo tshaj txhua yam txiaj ntsim ntawm Vajtswv huv tib si li. Thiab li ntawd kuv tau hais rau kuv cov tij laug. Amees.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

1 Nifais 16

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau xaus lus rau kuv cov tij laug tas lawm, saib seb lawv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj tau hais rau peb tej yam uas nyuaj heev, tshaj dua li peb yuav muaj peev xwm ua tau.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais rau lawv tias kuv yeej paub tias kuv tau hais tej yam uas nyuaj tawm tsam cov neeg phem, raws li txoj kev tseeb; thiab kuv tau hais txim lij rau cov neeg ncaj ncees, thiab tau ua tim khawv tias lawv yuav raug tsa sawv thaum hnuv kawg; yog li ntawd, cov neeg uas muaj txhaum mas coj txoj kev tseeb nyuaj heev, vim tej no hlais lawv mus txog ntua nruab siab.
- 3 Thiab nim no kuv cov mi tij laug, yog hais tias nej yog neeg ncaj ncees thiab zoo siab hlo mloog txoj kev tseeb, thiab mob siab ua raws li nws, kom nej yuav mus tau ncaj rau ntawm Vajtswv, ces nej yuav tsis yws yws vim yog txoj kev tseeb, thiab yuav tsis hais tias: Koj hais tej yam nyuaj heev tawm tsam peb.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau ntuas kuv cov tij laug, kom kub siab lug, ua coj raws li tus Tswv tej lus txib.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau txo lawv lub hwj chim rau tus Tswv; kawg tias kuv tau xyiv fab thiab muaj kev cia siab heev rau lawv, hais tias lawv yuav taug txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 6 Nim no, tag nrho tej yam no tau raug hais thiab tau ua thaum kuv txiv nyob hauv ib lub tsev pheed suab ntaub hauv lub hav uas nws hu ua lub hav Lemu-ees.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau coj Ixama-ees ib tug ntxhais los ua poj niam; thiab, kuv cov tij lauglos kuj tau coj Ixama-ees cov ntxhais los ua poj niam; thiab Xaulas los kuj tau coj Ixama-ees tus ntxhais hlob los ua poj niam thiab.
- 8 Thiab li no kuv txiv tau ua tiav tag nrho tus Tswv cov lus txib uas nws tau txais. Thiab kuv, Nifais, kuj tau txais koob hmoov ntau kawg los ntawm tus Tswv.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv lub suab tau hais rau kuv txiv thaum tsaus ntuj, thiab txib kom kaj ntu tag kis nws yuav tsum tsiv lawm tom roob moj sab qhua.

1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas kuv txiv sawv thaum sawv ntxov, thiab tawm mus rau ntawm lub tsev pheb suab ntaub lub qhov rooj, qhov uas ua rau nws xav tsis thooob heev yog nws tau pom ib lub pob kheej uas muaj tus qauv tes ntaus zoo heev nyob rau hauv pem teb; thiab nws yog tseem tooj dag. Thiab nyob rau hauv lub pob ntawd muaj ob tug koob; thiab muaj ib tug koob tau taw rau txoj kev uas peb yuav tsum taug mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias peb txawm tau sau ib puas tsav yam uas peb yuav nqa mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua los ua ib ke, thiab peb txhua yam khoom seem uas tus Tswv tau pub rau peb; thiab peb tau nqa txhua txhia yam noob qoob noob loo uas peb yuav nqa tau mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias peb txawm tau nqa peb cov tsev pheb suab ntaub thiab ncaim mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua, hla tus dej Lamas mus.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias peb mus tau plaub hnuv, ze rau sab hnuv tuaj phab nram hav, thiab peb txawm tau tsa peb cov tsev pheb suab ntaub dua; thiab peb tau tis qhov chaw no lub npe hu ua Saxes.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau nqa peb tej hneev thiab peb tej xub, thiab mus plob rau tom roob moj sab qhua tua nqaij los rau peb tsev neeg noj; thiab tom qab uas peb tau tua nqaij rau peb tsev neeg lawm peb tau rov qab los cuag peb tsev neeg dua nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua, ntawm qhov chaw Saxes dua. Thiab peb tau rov qab mus rau tom roob moj sab qhua dua, raws tib txog qub ke, mus raws tej koog zoov ntsuab hauv roob moj sab qhua, uas nyob ntawm qhov ciam teb ze Dej Hiav Txwv Liab.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau mus tau ntau hnuv, muab peb tej hneev thiab peb tej xub thiab peb tej pob zeb thiab peb tej hlua txawb, tua nqaij thaum peb mus.
- 16 Thiab peb tau raws lub pob uas qhia kev, uas tau koj peb kev mus rau hauv tej koog zoov uas ntsuab tshaj nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua.
- 17 Thiab tom qab uas peb tau mus tau ntau ntau hnuv, peb tau tsa peb cov tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob ib ntus, kom peb tau so ntxiv thiab nrhiv tau zaub rau peb tsev neeg noj.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas kuv, Nifais, tau tawm mus tua nqaij, saib seb, kuv tau ua kuv rab hneev lov, rab uas tau muab tseem kab ua; thiab tom qab uas kuv tau ua kuv rab hneev lov lawm, saib seb, kuv cov tij laug tau npau taws rau kuv vim tias kuv rab hneev tau piam lawm, ces peb thiaj nrhiav tsis tau nqaij.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov qab los cuag peb tsev neeg nrhiav tsis tau dab tsi li, thiab tau lim heev, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsiv, lawv tau raug txom nyem heev vim lawv txoj kev tshaib plab.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias Lamas thiab Lemu-ees thiab Ixama-ees cov tub tau pib yws yws heev kawg li, vim lawv txoj kev txom nyem thiab kev kub ntxhov nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua; thiab kuv txiv kuj tau pib yws yws tawm tsam tus Tswv nws tus Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv txhua leej txhua tus tau nyuaj siab kawg nkaus, kawg tias lawv tau yws yws rau tus Tswv.
- 21 Nim no tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau raug kev kub ntxhov nrog kuv cov tij laugvim rau qhov kuv rab hneev tau piam lawm, thiab lawv tej hneev cov nta los tau poob lawm thiab, ces txawm tau pib nyuaj heev kawg nkaus li, muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias peb nrhiav tsis tau nqaij hlo li.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais ntau yam rau kuv cov tij laug, vim tias lawv tau rov qab ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv dua, twb tawv mus txog thaum lawv yws lawv tus Tswv tus uas yog lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau ua ib rab hneev ntoo, thiab muab ib tug pas los ncab, ua ib xib xub; yog li ntawd, kuv thiaj tau ev ib rab hneev thiab ib xib xub, nrog ib txog hlua txawb thiab ib co pob zeb. Thiab kuv tau hais rau kuv txiv tias: Kuv yuav mus qhov twg thiaj nrhiav tau nqaij?
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau thov tus Tswv, lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim vim yog kuv cov lus; vim kuv tau hais ntau yam rau lawv tag nrho kuv lub peev xwm uas kuv muaj.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv lub suab tau los hais rau kuv txiv; thiab nws tau raug txo hwj chim heev vim qhov nws tau yws yws tawm tsam tus Tswv, kawg tias nws tau raug coj los rau hauv txoj kev uas nyuaj siab heev.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv lub suab tau hais rau nws tias: Ntsia saum lub pob seb, thiab saib seb tej yam xwm uas sau rau saud.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv txiv pom tej yam xwm uas tau sau nyob saum lub Pob Zeb, nws tau ntshai thiab tshee heev kawg li, thiab kuv cov tij laug thiab Ixama-ees cov tub thiab peb cov poj niam los ntshai thiab tshee heev kawg li thiab.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau pom ob tug koob taw uas nyob rau hauv lub pob, hais tias lawv tau ua hauj lwm raws li txoj kev ntseeg thiab kub siab lug thiab kev mloog uas peb tau muab rau lawv.
- 29 Thiab kuj tau muaj ib co ntawv sau tshiab, nyob rau saum cov no, uas nyeem tau yooj yim, uas tau muab rau peb to taub txog tus Tswv tej kev; thiab nws sau thiab tau raug pauv ib ntus dhau ib ntus, raws li txoj kev ntseeg thiab kub siab lug uas peb tau muab rau nws. Thiab xws li no peb pom tias los ntawm tej yam me me, tus Tswv yeej ua tau tej yam tseem ceeb heev.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau nce mus rau puag saum ncov roob, raws nraim li kev taw kev uas tau muaj nyob hauv lub pob.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tua tau tsiaj qus, kawg tias kuv nrhiav tau nqaij rau peb tej tsev neeg noj.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau rov qab los rau ntawm peb cov tsev pheed suab ntaub, nqa nraim cov tsiaj uas kuv tau tua los; thiab nim no thaum lawv tau pom tias kuv nrhiav tau nqaij lawm, lawv tau xyiv fab heev kawg li! Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim rau tus Tswv, thiab tau ua nws tsaug.
- 33 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tsiv mus dua, tau tsiv mus zoo yuav luag ib yam li thaum peb nyuam qhuav tuaj; thiab tom qab uas peb tau mus tau ntau hnuv lawm peb tau tsa peb cov tsev pheed suab ntaub dua, xwv kom peb tau nyob so ib ntus.
- 34 Thiab tau muaj tias Ixama-ees tau tuag, thiab tau muab nws faus rau ib qho chaw uas hu ua Nahos.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias Ixama-ees cov ntxhais tau tu siab heev, vim rau qhov lawv txiv tau tuag lawm, thiab vim rau qhov lawv txoj kev kub ntxhov nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua; thiab lawv tau yws yws tawm tsam kuv txiv, vim tias nws tau coj lawv tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees, hais tias: Peb txiv tuag lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tau ua loj leeb ntau heev nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua, thiab peb tau raug kev kub ntxhov, kev tshaib, kev nqhis, thiab kev qaug zog heev kawg li; thiab tom qab uas raug tej kev txom nyem no tag peb yuav tsum raug piam sij nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua rau txoj kev tshaib.

36 Thiab lawv tau yws yws li no rau kuv txiv, thiab rau kuv ib yam; thiab lawv tau xav rov qab mus lawm pem nroog Yeluxalees dua.

37 Thiab Lamas hais rau Lemu-ees thiab kuj hais rau Ixama-ees cov tub thiab tias: Saib seb, cia peb muab peb txiv thiab peb tus kwv Nifais tua pov tseg, tus uas tau tsa nws tus kheej los ua peb tus xib hwb thiab kav peb, cov uas yog nws tij laug.

38 Nim no, nws hais tias tus Tswv tau nrog nws tham, thiab nws kuj tau hais tias cov tim tswv tau qhia rau nws. Tiam sis saib seb, peb paub tias nws dag peb xwb; thiab nws qhia tej no rau peb, thiab nws tau ua ntau yam los ntawm nws kev txawj ntse, xwv kom nws yuav plooj tau peb tej qhov muag, xav ntsoov tias, tej zaum, nws yuav coj tau peb tawm mus rau tej roob moj sab qhua deb uas tsis tau muaj leej twg mus dua; thiab tom qab uas nws tau coj peb mus deb lawm, nws yuav xav tias nws yuav tsa nws tus kheej ua vaj ntxwv thiab ib tug nom kav peb, kom nws ua tau rau peb raws li nws lub siab xav thiab lub siab nyiam. Thiab kuv tus tij laug Lamas thiaj txhib lawv tej siab kom npau taws.

39 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau nrog wb nyob, muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv lub suab twb tau los thiab tau hais ntau cov lus rau lawv, thiab tau ntuas lawv ntau heev kawg li; thiab tom qab uas tus Tswv lub suab tau ntuas lawv tas lawm lawv txawm tsis npau taws lawm, thiab tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum, kawg tias tus Tswv tau rov qab foom koob hmoov rau peb kom peb muaj zaub mov noj, xwv kom peb thiaj tsis piam sij.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

1 Nifais 17

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov qab tsiv mus hauv roob moj sab qhua; thiab peb tau mus ze rau sab hnuv tuaj txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus. Thiab peb tau mus thiab tau ntsib ntau yam kev kub ntxhov nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua; thiab peb tej poj niam tau tu me nyuam nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua.
- 2 Thiab tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov ntau kawg nkaus rau peb, txawm yog thaum peb nyob tom roob moj sab qhua es peb noj nqaij nyoos xwb los, peb cov poj niam tseem muaj mis txaus rau lawv cov me nyuam noj thiab, thiab muaj zog, muaj tseeb tiag, ib yam li cov txiv neej; thiab lawv tau pib uv taus lawv tej kev tsiv tsis yws lawm.
- 3 Thiab xws li no peb pom tias Vajtsv tej lus txib yeej yuav tsum muaj tiav. Thiab yog hais tias noob neej coj Vajtsv tej lus txib, nws thiaj yuav pub lawv noj, thiab txhawb lawv lub dag lub zog, thiab txhawb lawv tej cuab yeej rau lawv kom lawv yuav ua tau tiav tej yam uas nws tau txib lawv ua lawm; yog li ntawd, nws thiaj tau muab tej cuab yeej rau peb thaum uas peb tseem nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua.
- 4 Thiab peb tau nyob tau ntau xyoo, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob tau yim xyoo diam rau hauv roob moj sab qhua.
- 5 Thiab peb tau los txog thaj av uas peb tau hu ua Huaj Vam, vim qhov ntawd muaj txiv hmab txiv ntoo ntau thiab kuj muaj zib ntab qus; thiab ib puas tsav yam no yog tus Tswv tau npaj los xwv kom peb txhob piam sij. Thiab peb tau pom dej hiav txwv, cov uas peb hu ua Ile-atus, qhov uas txhais hais tias yog cov dej ntau.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tsa peb cov tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv; thiab txawm li ntawd los peb tseem tau raug ntau yam kev kub ntxhov thiab ntau yam kev nyuaj siab, muaj tseeb tiag, twb muaj ntau yam kawg nkaus uas peb tsis muaj peev xwm sau tau tas, tiam sis peb tau zoo siab kawg nkaus thaum uas peb tau los txog ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv; thiab peb tau hu qhov chaw ua Huaj Vam, vim rau qhov muaj txiv hmab txiv ntoo ntau heev.

1 Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau los nyob rau hauv thaj av Huaj Vam tau ntau hnuv lawm, tus Tswv lub suab tau los hais rau kuv hais tias: Sawv thiab koj cia li nce mus lawm pem roob. Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau sawv thiab tau mus rau pem roob, thiab tau tsa ncauj thov tus Tswv.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Koj yuav tsum txua ib lub nkoj, raws li txoj kev uas kuv tseem yuav qhia rau koj no, xwv kom kuv yuav thauj tau koj cov neeg hla cov dej no mus.
- 9 Thiab kuv tau teb hais tias: Tus tswv, kuv yuav mus qhov twg es kuv thiaj yuav nrhiav tau hlau coj los nchuav, xwv kom kuv yuav ua tau twj tes los txua lub nkoj raws li txoj kev uas koj tau piav rau kuv?
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau qhia rau kuv qhov chaw uas kuv yuav mus nrhiav tau hlau, xwv kom kuv yuav ua tau tej twj tes.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, txawm tau ua ib lub foob xab coj los tshuab hluav taws, uas yog tawv tsiaj qus; thiab tom qab uas kuv tau ua ib lub foob xab, xwv kom kuv muaj ib yam coj los tshuab hluav taws lawm, kuv tau txhuam ob lub pob zeb ua ke xwv kom kuv ua tau hluav taws.
- 12 Vim tus Tswv tsis tau cia peb rauv hluav taws ntau, thaum uas peb tseem tsiv nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua; vim nws hais tias: Kuv yuav ua kom nej tej nqaij noj qab zib, xwv nej thiaj tsis tau muab nws ua noj;
- 13 Thiab kuv kuj yuav ua nej lub teeb nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua; thiab kuv yuav npaj txoj hau kev ua nej ntej, yog hais tias nej yuav coj raws li kuv tej lus txib; yog li ntawd, npaum tias nej yuav ua raws li kuv tej kev txib nej yuav raug coj mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab nej yuav paub tias kuv yog tus uas coj nej kev.
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv kuj tau hais tias: Tom qab uas nej tau mus txog thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, nej yuav paub tias kuv, tus Tswv, yog Vajtswv; thiab hais tias kuv, tus Tswv, yeej tau cawm nej dim ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, hais tias kuv tau coj nej tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees.
- 15 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Nifais tau ua tag zog coj raws li tus Tswv tej lus txib, thiab kuv tau ntuas kuv cov tij laug rau txoj kev ntseeg thiab kev mob siab ua zoo.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau muab cov hlau uas kuv tau nchuav tawm ntawm tej pob zeb los ua tej twj tes.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

- 17 Thiab thaum kuv ob tug tij laug tau pom tias kuv tau npaj yuav txua ib lub nkoj, nkawd tau pib yws yws kuv, hais tias: Wb tus kwv yog ib tug neeg vwm, vim nws xav tias nws yuav muaj peev xwm txua tau ib lub nkoj, muaj tseeb tiag, nws kuj xav tias nws yuav muaj peev xwm hla tau cov niag dej loj no thiab.
- 18 Thiab kuv ob tug tij laug tau yws kuv li no, thiab xav tias nkawd yuav tsis ua hauj lwm, vim nkawd tsis tau ntseeg tias kuv yuav txua tau ib lub nkoj; nkawd kuj tsis ntseeg tias tus Tswv tau txib kuv ua thiab.
- 19 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau tu siab heev vim yog nkawd tej kev siab tawv; thiab nim no thaum nkawd tau pom tias kuv tau pib tu siab nkawd txawm tau zoo siab, npaum tias nkawd tau thuum kuv, hais tias: Wb paub tias koj txua tsis tau ib lub nkoj, vim wb paub tias koj tsis muaj tswv yim; yog li ntawd koj yuav tsis muaj peev xwm ua kom ib txog hauj lwm loj npaum ntawd tiav taus.
- 20 Thiab koj ces zoo nkaus li peb txiv thiab ntag, tau yuam kev ua raws li nws lub siab vwm xwb; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau coj peb tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees, thiab peb tau ua loj leeb nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua tau ntau xyoo li no; thiab peb cov poj niam tseem tau raug ua hauj lwm hnyav heev, thaum xeeb me nyuam loj; thiab lawv tau tu me nyuam nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua thiab raug ib puas tsav yam mob, tsuas yog tsis tuag xwb; thiab nws yuav zoo dua yog lawv tau tuag ua ntej lawv khiav tawm ntawm Yeluxalees es los raug kev kub ntxhov zoo li no.
- 21 Saib seb, peb tau raug txom nyem ntau npaum li no xyoo nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua, yog peb txhob tuaj ntshe lub sij hawm ntawd peb twb tau zoo nyob siv tej uas peb muaj thiab peb thaj av uas yog peb qub txeeg qub teg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntshe peb twb tau muaj kev zoo siab lug lawm los pob.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

- 22 Thiab peb paub tias cov tib neeg uas nyob hauv lub ntawm Yeluxalees yog ib cov tib neeg ncaj ncees; vim lawv tau koj tus Tswv tej lus txib thiab tej txiav txim ntawm tus Tswv, thiab tag nrho nws cov lus txib, raws li Mouxes txoj kev cai: yog li ntawd, peb thiaj paub tias lawv yog tib neeg ncaj; thiab peb txiv tau txiav txim rau lawv, thiab tau koj peb tawm khiav vim tias peb pheej mloog nws tej lus; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tus kuv los zoo ib yam li nws thiab. Thiab kuv ob tug tij laugtau siv cov lus zoo li no yws yws thiab nkaug tawm tsam wb.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais rau nkawd, hais tias: Neb puas ntseeg tias peb cov yawg koob cov uas yog Ixayees tej me nyuam, puas yuav raug koj tawm ntawm cov neeg Iyiv tes yog lawv tsis tau mloog tus Tswv tej lus?
- 24 Muaj tseeb tiag, neb puas xav tias lawv yuav raug koj tawm tau ntawm txoj kev ua luag tauj luag qhev, yog hais tias tus Tswv tsis tau txib Mouxes kom nws yuav tsum koj lawv dim tawm ntawm txoj kev ua luag tauj luag qhev?
- 25 Nim no neb paub tias cov neeg Ixayees tau raug ua luag tauj luag qhev; thiab neb paub tias lawv tau raug ris nra, cov nra uas hnyav heev; yog li ntawd, neb paub tias nws yog ib yam zoo rau lawv, uas lawv tau raug koj tawm ntawm txoj kev ua luag tauj luag qhev mus.
- 26 Nim no neb paub tias tus Tswv tau txib Mouxes ua txoj hauj lwm tseem ceeb ntawd; thiab neb paub tias los ntawm nws cov lus cov dej ntawm tus Dej Hiav Txwv Liab tau raug faib rau sab ped sab nrad, thiab lawv tau hla dhau mus saum av qhuav.
- 27 Tiam sis neb twb paub tias cov neeg Iyiv tau poob tuag rau hauv Dej Hiav Txwv Liab, cov uas yog Falaus cov tub rog.
- 28 Thiab neb twb paub tias tus Tswv tau muab manas rau lawv noj nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua thiab.
- 29 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab neb twb paub tias Mouxes, los ntawm nws cov lus raws Vajtswv lub hwj chim uas muaj nyob hauv nws, thiaj tau ntaus lub pob zeb, ces dej txawm txhawv tawm los, xwv kom cov neeg Ixayees tau haus daws lawv txoj kev nqhis dej.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

30 Thiab txawm tias lawv tau raug coj, tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, lawv tus Txhiv Dim, tseem mus ua lawv ntej thiab, tseem coj lawv mus nruab hnuv, thiab ua lub teeb ci rau lawv thaum hmo ntuj, thiab ua ib puas tsav yam uas tsim nyog ib tug neeg yuav tsum tau txais rau lawv, tiam sis lawv tseem tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv thiab tau npog lawv tej cim xeeb, thiab lawv tseem tau cem Mauxes thiab cem rau Vajtswv tus uas tseeb thiab tus uas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob.

31 Thiab tau muaj tias raws nraim li nws txoj lus nws tau ua kom lawv puas tsuaj; thiab raws nraim li nws txoj lus nws tseem tau coj lawv; thiab raws nraim li nws txoj lus nws tau ua ib puas tsav yam pab lawv; thiab yeej tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi yuav ua tau li tsuas yog los ntawm nws txoj lus xwb.

32 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau hla tus dej Yauladees nws tau ua kom lawv muaj zog xwv lawv thiaj raws tau cov neeg ntawm lub teb chaws ntawd tawm mus, muaj tseeb tiag, kom muab lawv caum ua ri niab rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.

33 Thiab nim no, neb puas xav tias cov neeg uas nyob lub teb chaws ntawd, cov uas tau nyob hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, cov uas raug peb cov poj koob yawm txwv ntiab caum khiav, neb puas xav tias lawv yog neeg ncaj ncees? Saib seb, kuv hais rau neb tias, lawv tsis yog.

34 Neb puas xav tias peb cov poj koob yawm txwv puas yuav tseem ceeb dua li lawv yog hais tias lawv tau ua neeg ncaj ncees? Kuv hais rau neb tias, tsis yog.

35 Saib seb, tus Tswv saib txhua leej txhua tus muaj nqis ib yam nkaus; tus uas ho yog neeg ncaj ncees tus ntawd yog tus uas Vajtswv nyiam. Tiam sis saib seb, cov neeg no tau tsis kam txais yuav Vajtswv txhua txhia lo lus, thiab lawv tau siav nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees; thiab Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws tag nrho huv si tau nyob rau saum lawv; thiab tus Tswv tau foom tsis zoo rau thaj av ntawd rau lawv, thiab foom koob hmoov rau nws pub rau peb cov poj koob yawm txwv; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau foom tsis zoo rau lub teb chaws rau lawv kom lawv puas tsuaj, thiab nws tau foom koob hmoov rau lub teb chaws pub rau peb cov poj koob yawm txwv kom lawv muaj hwj chim kov yeej lub teb chaws ntawd.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

36 Saib seb, tus Tswv tau tsim lub ntiaj teb xwv kom tib neeg tau nyob; thiab nws tau tsim nws cov me nyuam xwv kom lawv tau lub ntiaj teb no.

37 Thiab nws yuav txhawb tsa ib haiv neeg ncaj ncees, thiab ua kom cov neeg phem puas tsuaj mus.

38 Thiab nws coj cov neeg ncaj ncees mus rau hauv tej thaj av uas muaj nqis, thiab nws tau ua kom cov neeg phem puas tsuaj, thiab foom tsis zoo rau tej thaj av rau lawv vim lawv txoj kev phem.

39 Nws kav nyob siab puag saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, vim qhov ntawd yog nws lub rooj zaum, thiab lub ntiaj teb no yog nws lub rooj tiag taw.

40 Thiab nws hlub cov uas xav tau nws los ua lawv tus Vajtswv. Saib seb, nws tau hlub peb cov poj koob yawm txwv, thiab nws tau khi lus rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau khi rau Anplaham, Ixaj, thiab Yakhaus; thiab nws tseem nco txog cov lus uas nws tau khi tseg lawm; yog li ntawd, nws thiaj tau coj lawv tawm dim ntawm lub teb chaws Iyiv los.

41 Thiab nws tau muab nws rab nplawm qhuab lawv nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua; vim lawv tej siab tau tawv qhwb qhawv, tib yam li neb; thiab tus Tswv tau qhuab lawv vim lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees. Nws tau tso cov nab tsiv tsaim uas ya tau tuaj rau lawv; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau raug tom lawm nws twb npaj ib txog kev los kho kom lawv zoo; thiab qhov uas lawv yuav tsum ua yog muab lub qhov muag los ntsia xwb; thiab vim txoj kev ntawd yooj yim heev, los sis tias nws tsis nyuaj, thiaj tau muaj coob leej tau piam sij.

42 Thiab lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv ib ntus dhau ib ntus, thiab lawv tau cem Mauxes, thiab kuj tau cem Vajtswv thiab; tiam sis, neb paub tias lawv twb tau raug coj tawm los ntawm nws lub hwj chim uas piv tsis tau mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.

43 Thiab nim no, tom qab ib puas yam tsav no, lub sij hawm tau los es lawv tau rais los ua ib cov neeg phem, muaj tseeb tiag, ze rau qhov yuav siav lawm; thiab kuv tsis paub tiam sis niaj hnuv nim no lawv twb yuav raug puas tsuaj mus; vim kuv paub tias hnuv ntawd yeej yuav los tiag kom lawv yuav tsum raug puas tsuaj, es tsuas tshuav ob peb leeg xwb, cov uas yuav raug coj mus ua qhev.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simplicity of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

44 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv thiaj tau kom kuv txiv khiav tawm mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua; thiab cov Neeg Yudais kuj tau nrhiav yuav muab nws txoj sia txo pov tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab neb los kuj tau nrhiav yuav muab nws txoj sia txo pov tseg thiab; yog li ntawd, neb yog neeg tua neeg nyob hauv neb tej siab thiab neb zoo li lawv.

45 Neb mas nrawm kawg mus ua qhov uas tsis ncaj ncees tiam sis mas nco qeeb kawg txog tus Tswv neb tus Vajtswv. Neb twb tau pom ib tug tim tswv, thiab nws twb tau hais lus rau neb lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, neb twb tau hnov nws lub suab ib lub sij hawm txog ib lub sij hawm thiab nws twb tau maj mam ua suab yau yau hais lus rau neb, tiam sis neb tej siab tsis xeev li, es neb thiaj hnov tsis tau nws cov lus; yog li ntawd, nws thiaj tau hais lus rau neb zoo li suab xob quaj, qhov uas tau ua rau tej av qeeg nkaus li uas yuav faib hlo ua ob sab.

46 Thiab neb kuj paub hais tias los ntawm nws lo lus uas muaj hwj chim loj nws yeej ua tau kom lub ntiaj teb no ploj mus; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab neb twb paub tias los ntawm nws lo lus nws ua tau kom tej chaw siab qis tiaj taus, thiab tej chaw tiaj tus tawg ntsoog ntxaws tau. Au, ces, yog vim li cas tiag, neb tej siab thiaj yuav tawv ua luaj?

47 Saib seb, kuv lub siab twb tawg tag nrog kev nyuaj siab los vim yog neb, thiab mob mob kuv lub siab; kuv ntshai nyob tsam neb yuav raug muab tso pov tseg mus ib txhis li. Saib seb, kuv muaj Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo, kawg tias kuv lub cev tsis muaj zog lawm.

48 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum kuv tau hais cov lus no lawm, nkawd tau npau taws rau kuv, thiab tau xav muab kuv pov rau hauv qab thu dej hiav txwv tob; thiab thaum nkawd tau yuav los tsa tes rau kuv, kuv tau hais rau nkawd, hais tias: Los ntawm Vajtswv tus uas muaj Hwj Chim Loj kawg nkaus lub npe, kuv hais kom neb tsis txhob chwv kuv, vim kuv muaj Vajtswv lub hwj chim puv npo, twb ua rau kuv nqaij tawv kub lug; thiab yog leej twg tsa nws txhais tes rau kuv nws yuav qhuav ib yam li ib tug xyoob rawm qhuav; thiab tus ntawd yuav zoo li tsis muaj dab tsi rau Vajtswv lub hwj chim, vim Vajtswv yuav ua kom nws puas tsuaj.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

- 49 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais rau nkawd tias nkawd yuav tsum tseg tsis txhob yws yws nkawd txiv lawm; thiab yuav tsum tsis txhob tsis pab kuv ua hauj lwm, vim Vajtswv tau txib kom kuv yuav tsum txua ib lub nkoj.
- 50 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nkawd tias: Yog Vajtswv tau txib kom kuv ua ib puas tsav yam kuv yeej ua tau xwb. Yog tias nws txib kuv kom kuv hais rau cov dej no tias, cia li ua av, ces cov dej no yeej yuav ua av; thiab yog tias kuv yuav hais li ntawd, ces nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd tiag.
- 51 Thiab nim no, yog hais tias tus Tswv muaj hwj chim loj npaum li ntawd, thiab tau ua ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb rau noob neej, ua li cas nws thiaj yuav tias muaj peev xwm qhia tau kuv, kom kuv txua tau ib lub nkoj?
- 52 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau hais ntau yam rau kuv ob tug tij laug, kawg tias nkawd tsis paub hais li cas lawm thiab tias muaj peev xwm cem tau kuv; thiab nkawd kuj tias kam muab nkawd tej tes tsa rau kuv los sis muab nkawd tej ntiv tes chwv kuv, twb mus txog tau ntau hnub. Nim no nkawd tias kam ua li no ntshai nyob tsam nkawd yuav qhuav ntawm kuv lub xub ntiag, vim Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig muaj hwj chim loj heev li; thiab xws li no nws thiaj tau ua qhia rau nkawd.
- 53 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Rov qab xyab koj txhais tes dua rau koj ob tug tij laug, thiab nkawd yuav tias qhuav ntawm koj lub xub ntiag, tiam sis kuv yuav ua kom nkawd ceeb nkaus, tus Tswv tau hais li ntawd, thiab kuv yuav ua li no, xwv kom nkawd yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv nkawd tus Vajtswv.
- 54 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau xyab kuv txhais tes mus rau kuv ob tug tij laug, thiab nkawd tias qhuav ntawm kuv lub xub ntiag; tiam sis tus Tswv tau ua rau nkawd tshee hnyo, raws nraim li lo lus uas nws tau hais lawm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

55 Thiab nim no, nkawd tau hais tias: Wb paub tseeb tseeb lawm hais tias tus Tswv nrog koj nyob, vim wb paub tias nws yog tus Tswv lub hwj chim uas tau ua rau wb tshee hnyo. Thiab nkawd tau qhau caug ntua ntawm kuv lub xub ntiag, thiab twb yuav luag pe kuv, tiam sis kuv tsis kheev nkawd ua li, hais tias: Kuv yog neb tus kwv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog neb tus kwv yau; yog li ntawd, cia li teev tiam tus Tswv neb tus Vajtsvw, thiab hwm neb txiv thiab neb niam, es neb thiaj yuav muaj sia nrog luag ua neej nyob ntev hauv lub teb chaws uas tus Tswv neb tus Vajtsvw yuav muab pub rau neb.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

1 Nifais 18

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd txawm tau teev tus Tswv thiab tau tawm nrog kuv mus; thiab peb tau muab ntoo txua ua ntau yam. Thiab tus Tswv tau qhia rau kuv ib ntus dhau ib ntus saib kuv yuav tsum txua cov ntoo ua lub nkoj li cas.
- 2 Nim no kuv, Nifais, tsis tau txua cov ntoo raws li tej uas tib neeg tau kawm los thiab kuv tsis tau txua lub nkoj mus raws li tej tib neeg txua; tiam sis kuv txawm txua nws raws li zaj uas tus Tswv tau qhia rau kuv; yog li ntawd, nws thiaj tsis zoo li tib neeg ua.
- 3 Thiab kuv Nifais, tau nce mus saum roob ntau zaus, thiab kuv tau nquag nquag thov tus Tswv; yog li ntawd tus Tswv thiaj tau qhia rau kuv tej yam uas zoo.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau txua lub nkoj tiav lawm, raws nraim li tus Tswv lus, kuv ob tug tij laugtau pom tias nws yog ib lub uas zoo, thiab hais tias tus qauv tes uas txua lub nkoj ntawd zoo heev li; yog li ntawd, nkawd thiaj tau rov qab txo nkawd tej hwj chim rau tus Tswv ib zaug dua.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv lub suab tau los hais rau kuv txiv, tias kom peb yuav tsum sawv thiab nqis mus lawm nram lub nkoj.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias kaj ntug tag kis, tom qab uas peb tau npaj ib puas tsav yam, ntau yam txiv hmab txiv ntoo thiab nqaij uas nrhiav tau tom roob moj sab qhua los, thiab nqa zib ntab ntau heev, thiab nqa tej khoom siv raws nraim li tej uas tus Tswv tau txib kom peb nqa, peb txawm tau nqis mus rau hauv lub nkoj, nrog tag nrho peb cov khoom thiab peb tej noob qoob noob loo, thiab tej uas peb tau nqa nrog peb los, txhua txhia leej raws li nws hnuv nyoog; yog li ntawd, peb sawv daws thiaj tau nqis mus rau hauv lub nkoj, nrog peb cov poj niam thiab peb cov me nyuam.
- 7 Thiab nim no, kuv txiv tau muaj ob tug tub nyob rau tom roob moj sab qhua, tus hlob hu ua Yakhausj thiab tus yau hu ua Yauxej.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas peb tau nqis tas huv tib si rau hauv lub nkoj lawm, thiab tau nqa peb tej khoom siv thiab tej yam uas tus Tswv tau txib peb nqa, peb tau coj lawm tom dej hiav txwv thiab raug tsav mus ua ntej ntawm tej cua uas tshuab ncaj qha mus rau tim thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.

1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

- 9 Thiab tom qab uas peb raug tsav mus ntawm tej cua tau ntau hnuv lawm, saib seb, kuv ob tug tij laugthiab Ixama-ees cov tub thiab lawv cov poj niam txawm tau pib ua kev lom zem, kawg tias lawv tau pib dhia muas caum, thiab hu nkauj, thiab hais lus lwj liam ntau yam, muaj tseeb tiag, twb ua rau lawv tsis nco qab txog lub hwj chim uas tau coj lawv los txog qhov ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau khav theeb ua lwj ua liam heev kawg li.
- 10 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau pib ntshai heev tias tsam tus Tswv yuav npau taws rau peb, thiab qhuab peb vim peb txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, xwv kom peb raug dej hiav txwv tob muab peb nqos mus; yog li ntawd, kuv, Nifais, tau pib ua tib zoo hais lus rau lawv; tiam sis saib seb lawv tau npau taws rau kuv, hais tias: Peb tsis xav kom peb tus kwv yau los ua ib tug nom kav peb.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Lamas thiab Lemu-ees txawm tau ntes kuv thiab muab hlua los khi kuv, thiab nkawd tau ua kub ua ceev heev rau kuv; txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv tseem nyiaj taus tej ntawd thiab es kom nws thiaj yuav qhia tau nws lub hwj chim, rau txoj kev uas yuav ua kom tiav los raws li nws cov lus uas nws tau hais txog cov neeg phem.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nkawd tau khi kuv ruaj kawg tias kuv nti tsis tau, lub koob qhia kev, uas tus Tswv tau npaj los, txawm tau nres tsis ua hauj lwm lawm.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj tsis paub saib yuav tig lub nkoj rau sab twg, kawg tias muaj cua daj cua dub loj sawv tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, ib npluav nag xob thiab nag cua uas phem heev, thiab peb tau raug ntsawj rov qab nyob saum cov nplaim dej mus tau peb hnuv; thiab lawv tau pib txhawj heev ntshai nyob tsam lawv yuav poob rau hauv dej hiav txwv; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tsis tso kuv thiab.
- 14 Thiab hnuv plaub, uas peb tau raug ntsawj rov qab, kob nag xob nag cua ntawd tau pib ua phem heev.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias peb twb yuav luag mag dej hiav txwv tob muab peb nqos mus. Thiab tom qab uas peb tau raug ntsawj nyob saum cov nplaim dej rov qab mus tau plaub hnuv lawm, kuv cov tij laugtau pib pom tias Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim twb muaj rau saum lawv lawm, thiab hais tias lawv yuav tsum raug piam sij tsuas ntshai lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees xwb; yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj tau los cuag kuv, thiab hle cov hlua uas khi kuv dab teg, thiab saib seb kuv ob txhais tes tau o heev kawg li; thiab kuv ob lub dab taw los kuj o kawg li thiab, thiab qhov mob mas mob kawg li.

16 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv tseem tau vam khom rau kuv tus Vajtswv, thiab kuv tau qhuas nws tag nrho ib hnuv li; thiab kuv tsis tau yws tawm tsam tus Tswv vim kuv tej kev kub ntxhov.

17 Nim no kuv txiv, Lihais, tau hais ntau yam rau lawv, thiab kuj tau hais rau Ixama-ees cov tub thiab; tiam sis, saib seb, lawv tau ua pa tawm lus phem heev rau txhua tus uas yuav hais lus pab kuv; thiab kuv niam kuv txiv los tau mob laug heev lawm, thiab tau raug kev nyuaj siab heev vim nkawd tej me nyuam, nkawd thiaj tau ntshaus ntshov, muaj tseeb tiag, nkawd twb qaug txaj lawm.

18 Vim nkawd txoj kev tu siab thiab kev nyuaj siab ntau, thiab kuv ob tug tij laug txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, nkawd twb raug coj los nyob ze qhov uas yuav raug nqa tawm ntawm lub sij hawm no mus cuag nkawd tus Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, nkawd tej plaub hau txheeb twb yuav raug muab tso cia qis nyob hauv tej plua tshauv av; muaj tseeb tiag, nkawd twb nyob ze qhov uas yuav raug pov nrog kev nyuaj siab rau hauv ib lub qhov ntxa uas muaj muaj dej.

19 Thiab Yakhauj thiab Yauxej los, tseem yau, es tseem xav tau txoj kev pab ntau, kuj tau nyuaj siab vim nkawd niam tej kev kub ntxhov; thiab kuv tus poj niam nrog nws tej kua muag thiab tej kev thov Vajtswv thiab kuv cov me nyuam thiab, los yeej nplij tsis tau kuv ob tug tij laug tej siab tej ntsws kom muag es kom nkawd yuav daws kuv li.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

- 20 Thiab tsis muaj tus dab tsi li lawm tsuas tshuav Vajtsv lub hwj chim lawm xwb, uas tau ua rau nkawd ntshai nrog txoj kev puas tsuaj, es thiaj nplij tau nkawd tej siab tej ntsws kom muag; yog li ntawd, thaum nkawd tau pom tias nkawd twb yuav raug nqos mus rau hauv qab thu dej hiav txwv tob nkawd thiaj tau hloov siab lees txim rau tej yam uas nkawd tau ua lawm, kawg tias nkawd tau muab kuv daws.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nkawd tau daws kuv lawm, saib seb, kuv tau muab lub koob qhia kev, thiab nws tau ua hauj lwm raws li kuv lub siab xav. Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau thov rau tus Tswv; thiab tom qab uas kuv tau thov tas lawm cov cua tau tu lawm, thiab tej cua daj cua dub los tau tu lawm thiab, thiab txawm zoo ntsiag to mus lawm.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, thiaj tau tsav lub nkoj, xwv kom peb yuav rov mus tau dua ncaj lawm tim thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas peb tau caij nkoj mus tau ntau hnuv lawm peb tau tuaj txog thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab peb txawm tau mus rau saum thaj av, thiab tau tsa peb cov tsev pheeb suab ntaub; thiab peb tau hu nws ua thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau pib ua teb, thiab peb tau pib cog tej noob qoob noob loo; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau cog tag nrho peb tej noob qoob noob loo rau hauv av, tej uas peb tau nqa hauv Yeluxalees teb chaws tuaj. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau hlob zoo heev li; yog li ntawd, peb thiaj raug foom koob hmoov nplua mias.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias peb kuj nrhiav pom nyob rau saum thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, thaum peb tau mus tom hav zoov, kuj muaj txhua txhia yam tsiaj qus nyob rau hauv hav zoov, muaj maum nyuj thiab heev nyuj, thiab zag thiab nees, thiab tshis thiab sai, thiab ib puas tsav yam tsiaj qus, uas yog cia rau tib neeg siv. Thiab peb kuj nrhiav tau ib puas tsav yam quav tooj quav hlau, nrhiav tau kub thiab nyiaj, thiab tooj liab huv tib si.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

1 Nifais 19

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau txib kuv, yog li ntawd kuv tau muab tej quav tooj quav hlau los ua ib cov phiaj xwm kom kuv yuav muab tau kuv cov neeg tej ceev xwm txheej sau rau saum cov phiaj ntawd. Thiab nyob rau saum cov phiaj uas kuv tau ua kuv tau muab kuv txiv tej ceev xwm txheej sau rau saud, thiab kuj tau sau txog peb tej kev tsiv nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab kuv txiv tej lus qhia uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; thiab kuv kuj tau muab ntau yam ntawm kuv tus kheej tej kev qhia uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej sau rau saum cov phiaj no thiab.
- 2 Thiab thaum lub sij hawm uas kuv tau ua cov no kuv tsis tau paub tias kuv yuav raug tus Tswv txib kom ua cov phiaj no; yog li ntawd, kuv txiv cov ceev xwm txheej, thiab nws tej yawg koob tej keeb kwm, thiab feem ntau ntawm tej yam uas tau tshwm sim rau peb nyob rau hauv hav zoov tau muab sau rau saum thawj cov phiaj ntawd cov uas kuv tau hais txog; yog li ntawd, tej teeb meem uas tau tshwm sim ua ntej kuv tau ua cov phiaj no, ib qho uas tseeb, yeej yog cov uas tau muab hais ntxaws rau saum thawj cov phiaj.
- 3 Thiab tom qab uas kuv tau ua cov phiaj no raws li txoj lus txib lawm, kuv, Nifais, tau txais ib lo lus qhia tias txoj kev qhuab qhia thiab tej kev qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, yam uas yooj yim to taub thiab muaj nuj nqis heev ntawm cov ntawd, yuav tsum raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj no; thiab tias tej yam uas tau muab sau lawm yuav tsum muab ceev tseg cia qhia rau kuv cov neeg, cov uas yuav tau nyob hauv thaj av, thiab rau lwm yam tseem ceeb thiab, tej yam tseem ceeb uas tus Tswv paub.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Nifais, tau sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej rau saum lwm cov phiaj, cov uas tau qhia ib zag, los yog cov uas qhia ib zag uas ntau dua txog tej kev tsov kev rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg thiab tej kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg. Thiab kuv tau ua li no, thiab tau txib kuv cov neeg tias lawv yuav tsum ua li cas tom qab uas kuv tau ncaim lawm; thiab tias cov phiaj no yuav tsum muab cev mus kom dhau ib tiam mus rau ib tiam, los sis dhau ntawm ib tug yaj saub mus rau ib tug yaj saub, mus txog thaum uas tus Tswv muab dua lwm cov lus txib ntxiv.

1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

- 5 Thiab tom qab no kuv mam li qhia ib zag saib kuv ua cov phiaj no li cas; thiab tom qab ntawd ces, saib seb, kuv rov pib raws li uas kuv tau hais lawm; thiab kuv ua li no es kom yuav ceev tau tej yam dawb ceev dua rau kuv cov neeg tau paub.
- 6 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv tsis tau sau txhua yam rau saum cov phiaj tsuas yog yam uas kuv xav tias dawb ceev xwb. Thiab nim no, yog tias kuv ho ua tej yam yuam kev, ib yam li tej uas twb txawj ua yuam kev puag thaud; tsis yog tias kuv yuav zam rau kuv tus kheej vim yog lwm cov neeg txawj ua thiab, tiam sis yog vim txoj kev qaug dag qaug zog uas nyob hauv kuv, raws li sab nqaij tawv, kuv thiaj thov zam rau kuv tus kheej.
- 7 Vim tej yam uas ib txhia neeg suav hais tias muaj nuj nqis heev, tsis hais rau sab cev nqaij daim tawv los sis rau sab ntsuj plig, lwm cov ho muab saib yam tsis muaj nqis dab tsi thiab muab tsuj rau hauv lawv ko taw. Muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog kiag cov neeg Ixayees tus Vajtswv ntag los neeg tseem muab tsuj ntiag rau hauv lawv ko taw thiab; kuv hais tias, muab tsuj rau hauv lawv ko taw tiam sis kuv yuav ua lwm yam lus hais—lawv tau muab nws saib tsis muaj nqis dab tsi li, thiab tsis mloog nws lub suab qhuab ntuas.
- 8 Thiab saib seb nws yuav los, raws nraim li tus tim tswv cov lus, ntawm rau pua xyoo tom qab uas kuv txiv tau ncaim Yeluxalees.
- 9 Thiab tej neeg ntiaj teb, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj, yuav txiav txim rau nws zoo li ib yam uas tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi; yog li ntawd lawv thiaj muab nws nplawm thiab nws ua siab ntev nyiaj; thiab lawv muab nws ntaus, thiab nws ua siab ntev nyiaj. Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv nto qaub ncaug rau nws, thiab nws ua siab ntev nyiaj vim yog nws txoj kev hlub thiab nws txoj kev ua siab ntev rau noob neej.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

10 Thiab tus Vajtswv ntawm peb cov poj koob yawm txwv, cov uas tau raug coj tawm ntawm teb chaws Iyiv, tawm ntawm txoj kev ua luag tauj luag qhev, thiab kuj tau raug nws tsom kwm nyob rau hauv hav zoov, muaj tseeb tiag, Anplaham thiab Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtswv, yuav cia nws tus kheej, raws li tus tim tswv cov lus, zoo li ib tug neeg, mus rau hauv cov neeg phem tes, yuav raug coj mus tsa, raws li Xinoj cov lus, thiab yuav raug ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig, raws li Niyos cov lus, thiab yuav raug coj mus faus cia rau hauv ib lub qhov ntxa, raws li Xinos cov lus, cov uas nws tau hais txog peb hnuv ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj, uas yuav yog ib lub cim ntawm nws txoj kev tuag rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv tej koog pov txwv hauv dej hiav txwv, qhov tseem ceeb dua mas yuav yog ib lub cim rau cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees.

11 Vim tus yaj saub tau hais li no: Tus Tswv Vajtswv yeej yuav los xyuas tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees hnuv ntawd, xyuas ib txhia nrog nws lub suab, vim yog lawv txoj kev ncaj ncees, ces lawv yuav xyiv fab heev thiab yuav tau txais txoj kev cawm seeg, thiab rau lwm cov lawv yuav hnov suab xob quaj thiab pom xob laim ntawm nws lub hwj chim, los ntawm kev cua daj cua dub, los ntawm hluav taws, thiab ntawm tej pa hluav taws, thiab txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas muaj huab zig niab, thiab los ntawm txoj kev uas tej av yuav tawg qhib, thiab ntawm uas tej roob yuav cia li sawv.

12 Thiab tus yaj saub Xinos tau hais tias, tag nrho tej no yeej yuav tsum muaj los tiag. Thiab lub ntiaj teb tej pob zeb yuav tsum tawg; thiab vim lub ntiaj teb tej suab nroo, muaj coob tus vaj ntxwv ntawm tej koog pov txwv hauv dej hiav txwv yuav raug Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig ua kom quaj qw hais tias: Ntiaj teb tus Vajtswv nyiaj tej kev txom nyem.

13 Thiab tus yaj saub tau hais tias, rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees, lawv yuav tau raug txhua leej txhua tus tsim txom, vim lawv muab cov neeg Ixayees tus Vajtswv ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig, thiab tau muab lawv tej siab tej ntsws tig mus rau lwm sab, tsis kam ntseeg tej cim thiab tej txuj ci tseem ceeb, thiab tsis ntseeg cov neeg Ixayees tus Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab tej yeeb koob.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

- 14 Thiab tus yaj saub tau hais tias, vim lawv tau muab lawv tej siab tej ntsws tig mus rau lwm sab, thiab lawv tau ntxub ntxaug Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, lawv yuav tsis pom qab mus qhov twg thaum lawv ua neej nyob, thiab lawv yuav piam sij, thiab lawv yuav rais los ua ib lub suab xuav thiab ib zag paj lug, thiab yuav raug ntxub ntxaug los ntawm txhua txhia haiv neeg.
- 15 Txawm li ntawd los, tus yaj saub tau hais tias, thaum hnuv ntawd los txog, es lawv tsis tig lawv tej siab tej ntsws ntawm Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv mus ntxiv lawm, thaum ntawd nws yuav nco txog tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau lawv tej poj koob yawm txwv.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, ces thaum ntawd nws yuav nco txog tej koog pov txwv uas nyob hauv dej hiav txwv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus Tswv hais tias, kuv yuav nco txog tag nrho cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, kuv yuav sau lawv cov uas nyob plaub ceg kaum ntuj los ua ke, raws li tus yaj saub Xinos cov lus.
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus yaj saub tau hais tias, tag nrho ntiaj teb yuav pom tus Tswv txoj kev cawm seeg; txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeev neeg, txhua yam lus thiab tej neeg sawv daws yuav tau txais koob hmoov.
- 18 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau sau tej yam no rau kuv cov neeg, tias tej zaum nyaj kuv yuav yaum tau lawv kom lawv yuav nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Txhiv Dim.
- 19 Yog li ntawd, kuv hais rau tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees, yog tias lawv yuav khaws tej yam no.
- 20 Vim saib seb, kuv tau txhawj kawg nkaus nyob rau sab ntsuj plig, txog cov neeg uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees, kawg nkaus tias ua rau kuv tau qaug zog kawg kuv tej pob qij txha tsis muaj zog tas huv tib si li; yog tias tus Tswv tseem tau tsis muaj lub siab hlub, es nws tsis qhia tej yam ntsig txog lawv rau kuv, ib yam li nws tau qhia rau tej yaj saub txheej puag thaum ub, ces kuv yeej yuav tau piam sij lawm thiab.
- 21 Thiab nws yeej tau qhia rau tej yaj saub txheej puag thaum ub txog txhua txhia yam uas ntsig txog lawv; thiab nws kuj tau qhia rau ntau tus yaj saub ntsig txog peb; yog li ntawd, thiaj yog ib qhov uas tsim nyog tias peb yuav tsum paub ntsig txog lawv vim txhua txhia yam ntawd twb raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog lawm.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

22 Nim no tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau qhia tej yam no rau kuv cov kwv tij; thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau nyeem ntau yam rau lawv, cov uas luag tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, es kom lawv yuav paub txog tus Tswv tej hauj lwm uas nws tau ua nyob rau hauj lwm thaj av, uas nrog cov neeg txheej puag thaum ub.

23 Thiab kuv tau nyeem cov uas luag tau muab sau rau hauj Mouxes cov ntau yam rau lawv; es saib kuv puas yuav yaum tau lawv los ntseeg tus Tswv lawv tus Txhiv Dim, kuv tau nyeem rau lawv tej uas tus yaj saub Yaxayas tau sau; vim kuv tau muab tag nrho tej vajlugkub koj los piv rau peb, es kom nws thiaj muaj nqis rau peb thiab peb thiaj kawm tau.

24 Yog li ntawd kuv tau hais rau lawv, hais tias: Nej cia li mloog tus yaj saub tej lus, nej cov uas yog cov neeg seem ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, uas yog ib ceg uas tau tawg lawm; nej cia li mloog tus yaj saub cov lus, uas tau sau rau tsev neeg Ixayees tag nrho huv tib si, thiab muab lawv koj los piv rau nej, es kom nej thiaj yuav muaj chaw cia siab ib yam li nej cov kwv tij uas nej tau tawg ncaim lawm; tus yaj saub tau sau zoo li no.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

1 Nifais 20

- 1 Cia li cuab pob ntseg thiab mloog qhov no, Au tsev neeg Yakhauj, cov uas raug hu los ntawm lub npe Ixayees, thiab cov uas tau tawm hauv cov dej Yudas los, los sis tawm hauv cov dej ntawm txoj kev cai raus dej los, cov uas cog lus los ntawm tus Tswv lub npe, thiab tau cav txog cov neeg Ixayees tus Vajtswv, tiam sis lawv tsis tau cog lus tseeb los sis tsis tau cog lus ncaj ncees.
- 2 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem hu lawv tus kheej tias lawv yog cov neeg hauv lub nroog dawb huv, tiam sis lawv ho tsis vam khom rau cov neeg Ixayees tus Vajtswv, tus uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yog nws lub npe.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv twb tau tshaj tawm tej yam uas muaj txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los lawm; thiab lawv tawm ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj mus, thiab kuv tau ua lawv tshwm sim tuaj. Kuv tau ua kom lawv tshwm sim tuaj sai heev li.
- 4 Thiab kuv tau ua li no vim kuv tau paub tias nej tej siab tej ntsws yeej nplaum ntxwb ntxias, thiab nej tej caj dab mas tawv cuag hlau, thiab nej tej hauv pliaj mas tawv cuag tooj;
- 5 Thiab kuv twb tau tshaj tawm zaj no rau nej txij thaum chiv keeb los lawm; ua ntej tej yam no tau muaj kuv twb tau qhia tej yam no rau nej lawm; thiab kuv tau qhia tej no ntshai nyob tsam nej yuav hais tias—Kuv tej mlom tau ua tej ntawd, thiab tej mlom kuv puab, thiab tej mlom kuv txua tau ua kom tej ntawd muaj.
- 6 Nej twb tau pom thiab tau hnov tag nrho yam no huv tib si lawm; thiab nej puas yuav tsis tshaj lawv tawm? Thiab lub caij no, uas kuv twb tau qhia rau nej tej yam tshiab, tej yam uas tau muab zais cia lawm tiag, thiab nej tseem tsis tau paub tej ntawd.
- 7 Tej ntawd raug tsim nim no, thiab tsis yog muaj puag thaum chiv keeb los lawm, ua ntej lub sij hawm uas nej tsis tau hnov txog tej yam no lawv twb tau raug muab tshaj tawm rau nej lawm, ntshai nyob tsam nej yuav hais tias—Saib seb kuv twb paub lawv lawm.

1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej yeej tsis tau hnov; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej tsis tau paub; muaj tseeb tiag, txij thaum ntawd nej lub pob ntseg tseem tsis tau qhib; vim kuv paub lawm tias nej yeej yuav ua tib cov niag hle ris zuav li, thiab tau raug hu ua tus niag neeg ua txhaum txij puag thaum nyob hauv plab los.
- 9 Txawm li ntawd los, vim rau qhov zoo ntawm kuv lub npe kuv yuav tau tseg kuv txoj kev chim, thiab vim kuv txoj kev qhuas kuv yuav tig ntawm nej mus kom kuv thiaj tsis txiav ncuav nej tawm.
- 10 Vim, saib seb, kuv tau lim nej kom huv, kuv tau xaiv nej hauv lub cub tawg ntawm kev kub ntxhov los.
- 11 Vim rau kuv qhov zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, vim rau kuv qhov zoo kuv yuav ua qhov no, vim kuv yuav tsis pub kuv lub npe ceb, thiab kuv yuav tsis muab kuv lub yeeb koob rau lwm tus li.
- 12 Cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog kuv, Au Yakhauj, thiab Ixayees qhov kuv hu, vim kuv yog nws; kuv yog tus thawj, thiab kuv kuj yog tus tw thiab.
- 13 Kuv txhais tes tau tsim lub ntiav teb no, thiab kuv txhais tes xis tau tsim ntuj ceeb tsheej. Kuv hu rau lawv thiab lawv cia li sawv tuaj ua ke.
- 14 Tag nrho nej sawv daws, cia li sau los nyob ua ke, thiab mloog; leej twg uas nyob hauv lawv tau tshaj tej no tawm rau lawv? Tus Tswv tau hluv nws; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yeej yuav ua kom cov lus uas nws tau tshaj tawm los ntawm lawv lawm kom tiav zog; thiab nws yeej yuav ua raws li nws lub siab nyiam rau Npanpiloos, thiab nws txhais caj npab yeej yuav los rau saum cov neeg Tshadees.
- 15 Tus Tswv kuj tau hais thiab, tias; Kuv tus uas yog tus Tswv, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv twb hais lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau hu nws los tshaj tawm, kuv tau coj nws los, thiab nws yuav ua kom nws txoj kev tawg paj txi txiv.
- 16 Nej cia li txav los kom ze kuv; kuv yeej tsis tau hais lus zais li; txij puag thaum chiv keeb los, kuv twb tau hais txij puag thaum lub sij hawm uas nws raug tshaj tawm los; thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv, thiab nws tus Ntsuj Plig, tau xa kuv los.
- 17 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais li no tias, nej tus Txhiv Dim, cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; kuv tau xa nws los, tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv tus uas qhia yam zoo rau nej, tus uas coj nej txoj hauv kev uas nej yuav tsum mus, tau ua li no.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

- 18 Au kheev lam nej tau ceev kuv tej lus txib—ces nej tej kev tau zoo nyob kaj siab lug twb yuav ntwis los rau nej zoo li tus dej, thiab nej tej kev ncaj ncees twb yuav zoo li tej nplaim dej ntawm tus dej.
- 19 Nej tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv twb yuav muaj coob npaum li tej xuab zeb; tej me nyuam hauv nej tej plab yuav npaum li tej noob zaub; nws lub npe twb tsis tsim nyog tau muab rho tawm los sis raug puas tsuaj ntawm kuv lub qhov muag.
- 20 Nej cia li khiav tawm hauv Npanpiloos mus, nej cia li tsiv tawm ntawm cov neeg Tshadees mus, nej cia li tshaj tawm nrog lub suab hu nkauj, qhia qhov no, tshaj tawm mus kom kawg lub ntiaj teb; nej cia li hais tias: Tus Tswv tau txhiv nws tus tub qhe Yakhauj dim lawm.
- 21 Thiab lawv yuav tsis nqhis dej; nws tau coj lawv hla dhau tej roob moj sab qhua; nws tau ua kom tej dej txhawv hauv tej pob zeb los rau lawv haus; nws kuj muab tej pob zeb nruag es kom tej dej ntwis tawm tau.
- 22 Thiab txawm li ntawd los nws tseem tau ua txhua yam no, thiab tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj dua no thiab, tus Tswv tau hais tias, yuav tsis muaj kev tau zoo nyob kaj siab lug rau cov tib neeg phem.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.

1 Nifais 21

- 1 Thiab hais ntxiv tias: Cia li cuab pob tseg mloog, Au nej cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, tag nrho nej cov uas tau ntshua tawm thiab raug ntiab tawm vim yog tej kev phem ntawm cov xib hwb uas yog kuv cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho nej cov uas tau ntshua tawm, uas tau tawg ri niab mus nyob qhov txhia qhov chaw, cov uas yog ib co ntawm kuv tsev neeg, Au cov neeg Ixayees. Au cov neeg uas nyob rau tej koog pov txwv, cia li mloog kuv hais, thiab nej sawv daws cov uas nyob deb cia li mloog thiab; tus Tswv tau xaiv kuv puag thaum tseem nyob hauv plab lawm; txij thaum kuv tseem nyob hauv kuv niam lub plab los nws twb tau muab kuv lub npe hais lawm.
- 2 Thiab nws tau ua rau kuv lub qhov ncauj ntse npaum li ib rab ntaj ntse ntse; nws tau muab kuv zais rau hauv nws txhais tes tus duab ntxoov ntxoo, thiab nws tau muab kuv ua ib xib xub uas ci nplais; nws tau muab kuv zais rau hauv nws lub hnab ntim xub;
- 3 Thiab tau hais rau kuv tias: Nej yog kuv cov tub qhe, Au cov neeg Ixayees, cov uas yuav muab yeeb koob rau kuv.
- 4 Ces kuv tau teb tias, kuv tau ua hauj lwm tsis muaj nuj nqis, kuv tau siv kuv lub dag lub zog rau tej yam uas tsis tseem ceeb thiab tsis muaj nuj nqis; kuv txoj kev txiav txim yeej yuav nrog tus Tswv, thiab kuv txoj hauj lwm yuav nrog kuv tus Vajtswv.
- 5 Thiab nim no, tus Tswv tau hais tias—tus uas tsim kuv nyob hauv plab los es kom kuv yuav los ua nws ib tug tub qhe, los koj cov Neeg Yakhauj rov qab mus cuag nws—txawm hais tias cov neeg Ixayees tsis tau sib sau los, kuv yeej yuav muaj hwj chim ci ntsa iab rau ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag, thiab kuv tus Vajtswv yuav yog kuv lub dag lub zog.
- 6 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Nws yog ib yam yooj yim uas koj yuav los ua kuv tus tub qhe los cawm kom haiv Neeg Yakhauj muaj ntxiv, thiab yuav rov qab muab tej uas tseg cia rau cov neeg Ixayees lawm txum tim rov rau lawv. Kuv kuj yuav siv koj ua ib lub teeb rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, es kom koj yuav ua tau kuv txoj kev cawm seeg rau sawv daws thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj.

1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

- 7 Tus Tswv tau hais li no, cov neeg Ixayees tus Txhiv Dim, nws Tus Dawb Huv, rau nws tus uas neeg thuam, rau nws tus uas tej haiv neeg ntxub, rau cov kav teb kav chaw tus tub qhe: Tej vaj ntxwv yuav pom thiab yuav sawv ntsug, tej tub huab tais los yuav teev tiam, vim yog tus Tswv uas tseem muaj kev ntseeg heev.
- 8 Tus Tswv tau hais li no: Thaum lub sij hawm zoo kuv twb tau hnov nej lawm, Au cov neeg nyob hauv tej koog pov txwv ntawm cov dej hiav txwv es, thiab thaum txog hnuv cawm seeg kuv twb tau pab nej lawm; thiab kuv yuav hwm nej sawv daws tseg, thiab kuv yuav xa kuv tus tub qhe los rau txoj kev khi lus tseg ntawm cov neeg, los tsim kho lub ntiaj teb, los ua kom muaj neeg mus nyob tej teb chaws uas tsis muaj neeg nyob;
- 9 Es kom koj yuav hais rau tej neeg raug kaw tias: Cia li mus dawb mus huv; hais rau cov uas tseem zaum hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj tias: Nej cia li tawm los. Lawv yuav pub noj pub haus rau tom tej kev, thiab lawv tej nras zaub yuav nyob puag saum tej chaw uas siab.
- 10 Lawv yuav tsis tshaib tsis nqhis, thiab tej hluav taws los sis lub hnuv yuav tsis kub lawv; vim nws tus uas muaj txoj kev hlub rau lawv yuav coj lawv txoj hau kev, nws twb yuav coj lawv los ntawm tej qhov dej txhawv.
- 11 Thiab kuv yuav ua kom muaj ib txog kev mus saum kuv tej roob, thiab kuv tej kev loj yuav raug rhawv kom siab.
- 12 Thiab tom qab ntawd ces, Au tsev neeg Ixayees, saib seb, tej no yuav tuaj deb deb tuaj; thiab saib seb, tej no tuaj sab pem tuaj thiab sab hnuv poob tuaj; thiab tej no tuaj tim lub teb chaws Axavas tuaj.
- 13 Au ntuj ceeb tsheej cia li hu nkauj, thiab cia li zoo siab, Au lub ntiaj teb; vim cov neeg uas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj tej ko taw yuav tsis txom nyem nyuaj siab ib zaug lawm; thiab cia li tawm plaws los mus rau txoj kev hu nkauj, Au tej roob; vim lawv yuav tsis raug kev nyuaj siab ib zaug ntxiv lawm; vim tus Tswv tau nplij nws cov neeg tej siab tej ntsws, thiab yuav muaj txoj kev hlub rau saum nws cov neeg uas raug kev txom nyem.
- 14 Tiam sis, saib seb, Xi-oos tau hais tias: Tus Tswv tau tso kuv pov tseg, thiab kuv tus Tswv tau hnov qab kuv lawm—tiam sis nws yuav ua qhia hais tias nws tsis tau ua li ntawd.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

- 15 Vim ib tug poj niam puas yuav muaj cuab kav hnov qab tau nws tus me nyuam uas tseem noj nws mis, es nws yuav tsis muaj txoj kev hlub rau nws tus tub uas nws yug los? Muaj tseeb tiag, tej zaum lawv yuav hnov qab tau, tiam sis kuv yeej yuav tsis hnov qab nej li, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 16 Saib seb, kuv tau muab nej txaug rau saum kuv tej xib teg; kuv yeej saib ntsoov nej tej ntsa loog.
- 17 Nej tej me nyuam yuav kov yeej nej tej yeeb ncuab; thiab lawv cov uas saib tsis taus nej yeej yuav raug tawm ntawm nej mus.
- 18 Cia li tsa nej tej qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig thiab saib seb; txhua txhia leej no sib sau los ua ke, thiab lawv yuav los nrog nej. Thiab thaum uas kuv tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, tus Tswv hais tias, lawv sawv daws yuav los koom nyob ua pab ua pawg ib yam li tus nkauj nyab hnav tej tsuj tej npuag ua npaim ua npus.
- 19 Vim nej tej chaw uas raug puas tsuaj thiab tej chaw uas tsuag tag lawm, thiab nej tej liaj tej teb uas raug puas tsuaj, nim no yuav nqaim heev li lawm vim yuav muaj neeg coob heev los nyob; thiab lawv cov uas tau muab nej nqos yuav nyob deb deb.
- 20 Tej me nyuam uas nej yuav muaj, tom qab uas nej tau ua thawj tug poob lawm, yuav hais dua rau nej tej pob ntseg tias: Qhov chaw no nqaim heev rau kuv; muab chaw rau kuv es kom kuv thiaj tau nyob.
- 21 Ces koj yuav hais nyob hauv koj lub siab hais tias: Leej twg yug cov me nyuam no rau kuv, tau pom tias kuv twb tau ua kuv cov me nyuam poob tas lawm, thiab yuav tsis yug ib co ntxiv lawm, thiab kuv tseem yog ib tug neeg raug txim thiab yog ib tug neeg loj leeb? Thiab leej twg tau coj tej no los? Saib seb, kuv nyob tib leeg xwb; tej no, lawv mus qhov twg los?
- 22 Tus Tswv tus uas yog Vajtsv tau hais li no hais tias: Saib seb, kuv yuav tsa kuv txhais tes mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab tsa kuv tus chij rau tej neeg; thiab lawv yuav coj koj tej tub hauv lawv tej caj npab los, thiab lawv yuav ev koj tej ntxhais saum lawv tej xub pwg los.
- 23 Thiab tej vaj ntxwv yuav ua koj txiv qhuav tu yug koj, thiab lawv tej niam vaj ntxwv yuav ua koj niam qhuav tu yug koj; lawv yuav nyo taub hau mus rau hauv av pe koj, thiab yaim tej plua tshauv ntawm koj tej ko taw; thiab koj yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv; vim lawv cov uas tos ntsoov kuv yeej yuav tsis txaj muag li.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

24 Vim tus tsiaj puas yuav raug muab txeeb tawm ntawm tus uas muaj zog mus, los sis puas yuav muab tej neeg raug txim raws kev cai tso kom dim?

25 Tiam sis tus Tswv hais li no tias, cov neeg raug txim ntawm tej neeg muaj hwj chim los kuj yuav raug coj mus thiab, thiab tus tsiaj uas raug tus phem heev txhom los yeej yuav raug muab tso kom dim; vim kuv yuav tawm tsam tus uas tawm tsam nej, thiab kuv yuav cawm nej tej me nyuam.

26 Thiab kuv yuav muab lawv cov uas ua nruj ua tsiv rau nej tej nqaij rov qab yug lawv; lawv yuav rov qab qaug rau lawv tej ntshav li qaug cawv txiv hmab qab zib; thiab neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav paub tias kuv, tus uas yog tus Tswv, yog nej tus Cawm Seeg thiab nej tus Txhiv Dim, Tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus ntawm Yakhauj.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

1 Nifais 22

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau nyeem tej yam xwm uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog no tas lawm, kuv cov tij laug tau los cuag kuv thiab tau hais rau kuv tias: Tej yam xwm uas koj tau nyeem tas los no txhais li cas? Saib seb, puas yog peb yuav tsum to taub raws li tej yam uas yog sab ntsuj plig, uas yuav muaj los raws li tus ntsuj plig thiab tsis yog sab cev nqaij daim tawv los?
- 2 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau hais rau lawv hais tias: Saib seb tej yam xwm no tau qhia tawm rau tus yaj saub los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig lub suab; vim tus Ntsuj Plig yog tus uas qhia txhua txhia yam rau tej yaj saub paub, tej yam uas yuav muaj los rau noob neej raws li sab nqaij tawv.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, tej yam xwm uas kuv tau nyeem yog tej uas tau sau hais txog tag nrho sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig; vim zoo nkaus li tias tsev neeg Ixayees, ziang no los sis lwm hnuv, yeej yuav raug khiav ri niab mus thooob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no, thiab kuj yuav mus nyob txuam nrog txhua txhia haiv neeg.
- 4 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj coob leej uas twb tau tsis paub txog cov neeg uas tseem nyob hauv Yeluxalees lawm. Muaj tseeb tiag, feem coob ntawm txhua txhia xeem neeg tau raug koj tawm mus lawm; thiab lawv raug tawg khiav rau ub rau no nyob rau saum tej koog pov txwv hauv dej hiav txwv; thiab peb tsis muaj leej twg paub tias lawv mus nyob qhov twg lawm, tiam sis peb tsuas paub tias lawv tau raug ploj mus lawm xwb.
- 5 Thiab vim lawv twb raug koj mus lawm, tej yaj saub twb tau qhia tej yam ntsig txog lawv lawm, thiab kuj tau qhia ntsig txog tag nrho cov uas tseem yuav tawg khiav ri niab tom qab no mus thiab raug xyaw nrog luag lwm pab lwm pawg, vim yog cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; vim lawv yuav ua lawv tej siab tej ntsws tawv qhwb qhawv rau nws; yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj yuav raug khiav tawg ri niab mus nyob nrog txhua txhia haiv neeg thiab yuav raug txhua leej txhua tus ntxub.

1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

6 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab uas lawv tau raug Lwm Haiv Neeg tu yug lawv lawm, thiab tus Tswv tau tsa nws txhais tes rau saum Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab muab lawv tsa zoo li tus chij, thiab lawv tej me nyuam raug muab nqa hauv lawv tej caj npab, thiab lawv tej ntxhais tau raug muab ev rau saum lawv tej xub pwg, saib seb tej yam xwm no cov uas tau hais txog yog tej yam uas yuav muaj tiag; vim li no yog tus Tswv tej kev khi lus nrog rau peb tej yawg koob; thiab nws kuj muaj lub ntsiab hais txog peb nyob rau lub caj nyoog uas yuav los yav tom ntej, thiab kuj hais txog peb cov kwv tij tag nrho cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees.

7 Thiab nws muaj lub ntsiab tias lub sij hawm yuav los es tom qab uas tsev neeg Ixayees tag nrho tau raug khiav ri niab thiab mus nyob txuam nrog lwm haiv neeg lawm, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv yuav tsa ib haiv neeg uas muaj zog heev los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog nyob rau saum thaj av no; thiab peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv yuav raug tawg khiav ri niab los ntawm lawv.

8 Thiab tom qab uas peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv raug tawg khiav ri niab tag lawm tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv yuav pib ua ib txoj hauj lwm tseem ceeb heev rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, uas yuav yog ib txoj uas muaj nqis heev rau peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv; yog li ntawd, txoj hauj lwm no muab pib ib yam li txoj kev uas Lwm Haiv Neeg tu lawv thiab muab lawv nqa hauv lawv tej caj npab thiab muab lawv ev saum lawv tej xub pwg.

9 Thiab txoj hauj lwm no kuj yuav muaj nqis heev rau Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab; thiab tsis yog tsuas muaj nqis rau Lwm Haiv Neeg xwb tiam sis kuj muaj nqis rau tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees thiab, rau txoj kev qhia paub tej kev khi lus ntawm Leej Txiv tus nyob saum ntuj rau Anplaham, hais tias: Los ntawm koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, txhua haiv neeg uas nyob hauv qab ntuj no yuav tau koob hmoov.

10 Thiab kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej paub tias txhua haiv neeg uas nyob hauv qab ntuj no yuav txais tsis tau koob hmoov tsuas yog nws yuav tsum ua kom txhua haiv neeg pom nws lub hwj chim ntawm qhov muag tso.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

- 11 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav pib ua kom txhua haiv neeg pom nws lub hwj chim ntawm qhov muag tso, nws thiaj li coj tau nws tej kev khi lus thiab nws txoj moo zoo mus rau cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, nws yuav rov qab coj lawv tawm hauv txoj kev ua luag tauj luag qhev, thiab lawv yuav sib sau mus nyob ua ke rau hauv thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg dua; thiab lawv yuav dim plaws txoj kev uas pom tsis tseeb thiab dim plaws txoj kev tsaus ntuj; thiab lawv yuav paub tias tus Tswv yog lawv tus Cawm Seeg thiab lawv tus Txhiv Dim, cov neeg Ixayees Tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj kawg nkaus.
- 13 Thiab lub koom txoos uas muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub, lub uas yog tag nrho ntiav teb tus niam ntiav, nws cov ntshav yuav rov qab nchuav los ywg lawv taub hau; vim lawv yuav rov qab ua tsov ua rog rau lawv cov neeg, thiab rab ntaj ntawm lawv tej tes yuav rov qab ya los hlais lawv caj dab, thiab lawv yuav gaug rau lawv cov ntshav.
- 14 Thiab txhua haiv neeg uas yuav ua tsov ua rog tawm tsam nej, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, lawv yeej yuav tig rov qab tawm tsam lawv, thiab lawv yuav poob mus rau hauv tus kwj uas lawv tau khawb cuab tus Tswv cov neeg. Thiab txhua leej txhua tus uas ntaus tawm tsam Xi-oos puav leej yuav raug puas tsuaj mus, thiab tus niam ntiav loj ntawd, tus uas tau coj tus Tswv tej kev ncaj mus rau qhov tsis zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, lub koom txoos muaj zog thiab txaus ntxub ntawd, yuav raug nphau mus rau hauv tej plua tshauv thiab qhov uas puas tsuaj ntawd yuav yog ib qhov uas zoo kawg nkaus.
- 15 Vim saib seb, tus yaj saub tau hais tias, lub caij nyoog yuav los nrawm kawg thaum ntawd Ntxwg Nyoog yuav tsis muaj hwj chim ntxias tau noob neej tej siab tej ntsws li lawm; vim lub sij hawm yuav los txog sai uas txhua txhia leej uas tsis txo hwj chim thiab lawv cov uas ua phem yuav raug kub hnyiab yam li tej quav nyab npleg; thiab thaum hnuv ntawd los txog lawv yuav tsum raug kub hnyiab mus.
- 16 Vim lub caij nyoog yuav los sai heev Vajtswv yuav npau taws heev kawg nkaus rau noob neej txhua leej txhua tus; vim nws yuav tsis cia cov neeg phem ua kom cov neeg zoo puas tsuaj.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

17 Yog li ntawd, txawm tias nws txoj kev npau taws yuav los, nws tseem yuav tsom kwm cov neeg ncaj ncees los ntawm nws lub hwj chim, thiab txawm nws yuav muab hluav taws hlawv kom lawv tej yeeb ncuab puas tsuaj mus los, nws tseem yuav tsom kwm cov neeg ncaj ncees. Yog li ntawd, cov neeg uas ncaj ncees tsis txhob ntshai; vim tus yaj saub tau hais li no, txawm tias yuav muaj hluav taws kub los lawv yeej yuav dim.

18 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij es, kuv hais rau nej tias, tej yam xwm no yeej yuav tsum muaj los tsis ntev tom ntej no; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog ntshav thiab hluav taws, thiab pa hluav taws yuav tsum muaj los; thiab tej no yeej yuav tshwm sim rau saum lub ntiaj teb no ntag; thiab nws yeej yuav muaj los rau noob neej thaum lawv tseem ua neej nyob no yog hais tias lawv tseem yuav ua lawv tej siab tej ntsws tawv qhwb qhawv rau cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv.

19 Vim saib seb, cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav tsis raug piam sij; vim lub caij nyoog yeej yuav tsum los tias txhua leej txhua tus cov uas ntaus tawm tsam Xi-oos yeej yuav raug muab txiav tawm mus.

20 Thiab tus Tswv yeej yuav npaj ib txoj hau kev rau nws cov neeg tiag tiag, kom muaj raws li Mauxes cov lus, cov uas nws tau hais, hais tias: Tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv yuav tsa ib tug yaj saub los rau nej, zoo ib yam li kuv; nws yog tus uas nej yuav hnov tag nrho txhua txhia yam tej uas nws yuav hais rau nej. Thiab yuav tau muaj tias txhua txhia leej uas yuav tsis mloog tus yaj saub ntawd yuav raug muab txiav tawm ntawm cov neeg mus.

21 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tshaj tawm rau nej tias tus yaj saub uas Mauxes tau hais txog no twb yog cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; yog li ntawd, nws yeej yuav txiav txim kom ncaj ncees.

22 Thiab cov neeg ncaj ncees tsis txhob ntshai, vim lawv yog cov uas yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj. Tiam sis twb yog tus dab lub nceeg vaj, uas nws yuav txhim tsa nyob nrog noob neej, yog lub nceeg vaj uas tau raug tsa nyob nrog noob neej uas nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb no—

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

23 Vim lub sij hawm yuav los sai kawg tias txhua lub koom txoos uas tau txhim tsa kom nplua nuj, thiab txhua txhia leej uas tau txhim tsa kom lawv muaj hwj chim los kav lwm tus, thiab cov uas tau txhim tsa kom lawv rais los mus ua ib cov neeg muaj suab muaj npe rau tej qhov muag hauv lub ntiav teb no, thiab cov neeg uas nrhiav tej uas lub cev ntshaw thiab nrhiav khoom ntawm kev ntiav teb, thiab cov uas ua txhua txhia yam kev phem kev qias; muaj tseeb tiag, qhov tiag mas, txhua tus cov uas nyob hauv tus dab txoj kev kav yog cov uas yuav tsum ntshai, thiab ceeb, thiab tshee; lawv yog cov uas yuav tsum txo lawv tej hwj chim kom qis rau hauv av; lawv yog cov uas yuav tsum muab hlawv zoo li tej quav nyab npleg; thiab qhov no yog raws li tus yaj saub tej lus.

24 Thiab lub caij nyoog yuav los sai kawg nkaus thaum uas cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav raug saib xyuas zoo npaum li tej me nyuam nyuj uas kaw hauv tej nkuaj nyug, thiab cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv yuav los kav teb kav chaw, muaj dag muaj zog, thiab muaj hwj chim zis, thiab muaj yeeb koob loj kawg li.

25 Thiab nws yuav sau nws co me nyuam uas nyob thoob plaws hauv plaub ceg kaum ntuj los ua ke; thiab nws suav nws cov yaj, thiab lawv paub nws; thiab thaum ntawd yuav ua ib pab yaj koom ib tug tswv yug yaj lawm xwb; thiab nws yuav pub nws pab yaj, thiab lawv yuav nrhiav tau zaub noj nyob hauv nws.

26 Thiab vim yog tej kev ncaj ncees ntawm nws haiv neeg, Ntxwng Nyoog yuav tsis muaj hwj chim; yog li ntawd, nws yuav raug khi tsis tso li mus ntau niaj ntev xyoo; vim nws yuav tsis muaj hwj chim uas yuav ntxias tau neeg tej siab tej ntsws, vim lawv ua neej nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv yog tus los tswj hwm kav lawv.

27 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv, Nifais, hais rau nej tias txhua txhia yam no yeej yuav muaj los raws li sab cev nqaij daim tawv.

28 Tiam sis, saib seb, txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeeb neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej tib neeg sawv daws yuav nyob kaj siab lug hauv cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv yog hais tias lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim.

29 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tseg tsis sau lawm; vim ntshai kuv yuav tsis hais ntsig txog tej yam no mus ntxiv lawm.

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

30 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij es, kuv xav kom nej paub tias tej yam xwm uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog yeej muaj tseeb tiag; thiab lawv ua tim khawv tias ib tug neeg yuav tsum ua raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.

31 Yog li ntawd, nej tsis txhob xav hais tias tsuas yog kuv thiab kuv txiv wb thiaj yog ob tug uas tau ua tim khawv lawm xwb, thiab yog ob tug uas tau qhia cov no lawm xwb. Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias nej yuav ua raws li tej lus txib, thiab nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg, ces hnuv kawg nej yeej yuav dim xwb. Thiab txhua yam yeej muaj li ntawd tiag. Amees.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

Nifais Phau Ntawv Ob

Ib zag uas hais txog Libais txoj kev tuag. Nifais cov tij laug ntseev siab tawm tsam nws. Tus Tswv ceeb toom Nifais kom nws tawm mus lawm tom hav zoov. Nws txoj kev tsiv nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab lwm yam.

2 Nifais 1

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv, Nifais, tau tsum tsis qhia kuv cov tij lauglawm, peb txiv, Lihais, kuj tau hais ntau yam rau lawv thiab, thiab tau rov qhia dua rau lawv tias, tus Tswv tau ua ntau yam tseem ceeb rau lawv ntawm uas tau coj lawv khiav tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees.
- 2 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv ntsig txog lawv tej kev tawm tsam nyob saum dej hiav txwv, thiab ntsig txog Vajtswv txoj kev hlab uas tau cawm lawv txoj sia, es kom lawv thiaj li tsis raug nqos mus rau hauv dej hiav txwv.
- 3 Thiab nws kuj tau hais rau lawv ntsig txog thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, thaj uas lawv twb tau txais lawm—tus Tswv hlab peb zoo npaum li cas uas nws tau ceeb toom kom peb yuav tsum khiav tawm hauv lub nroog Yeluxalees mus.
- 4 Vim, saib seb, nws tau hais tias, kuv tau ua yog toog pom, vim yam uas kuv pom kuv paub hais tias Yeluxalees tau raug puas tsuaj lawm; thiab yog hais tias peb tseem nyob hauv Yeluxalees ces peb yeej yuav raug piam sij lawm thiab.
- 5 Tiam sis, nws tau hais tias, txawm tias peb tau raug tej kev kub ntxhov los, peb twb tau txais ib thaj av uas tau khi lus tseg cia lawm, uas yog ib thaj av uas zoo tshaj plaws dua li lwm thaj; uas yog ib thaj av uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau cog lus tseg rau kuv lawm tias yuav yog ib thaj av cia rau kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv ua qub txeeg qub teg. Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv twb tau muab thaj av no cog lus tseg rau kuv thiab rau kuv tej me nyuam mus ib txhis li lawm, thiab kuj muab rau txhua leej txhua tus uas yog tus Tswv txhais tes coj tawm ntawm lwm lub teb chaws tuaj.

The Second Book of Nephi

An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.

2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

- 6 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Lihais, qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej no raws li tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv kom kuv qhia, tias yuav tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg uas yuav tuaj tau rau thaj av no hlo li tsuas yog tus Tswv txhais tes rub mas lawv thiaj yuav tuaj tau xwb.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, thaj av no thiaj raug muab tshwj tseg cia rau tus uas nws yuav coj tuaj. Thiab yog hais tias lawv yuav hawm nws raws nraim li tej lus txib uas nws tau muab rau lawv, nws yuav yog ib thaj av uas muaj kev nyob ywj siab pub rau lawv; yog li ntawd, lawv yeej yuav tsis raug txhom coj mus yuam ua qhev ib zaug hlo li; tiam sis yog hais tias lawv ho raug, los nws yuav yog vim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees xwb; vim yog hais tias txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees muaj nrog lawv nyob ces thaj av yuav raug foom tsis zoo pub rau lawv, tiam sis nws yuav yog ib thaj uas tau txais koob hmoov mus ib txhis li pub rau cov neeg ncaj ncees.
- 8 Thiab saib seb, yog tswv yim zoo tias cia tsis txhob maj pub lwm haiv neeg paub txog thaj av no; vim saib seb, ntau haiv neeg yuav tuaj nyob puv nkaus rau hauv thaj av no, ces yuav tsis tshuav ib qho chaw cia tau ua qub txeeg qub teg.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Lihais, tau txais ib lo lus cog tseg, tias npaum li cov uas tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav coj tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees txawm thaum twg los xij yog lawv yuav ceev nws tej lus txib, lawv yuav huaj vam nyob rau saum thaj av no; thiab lwm haiv neeg yuav tsis pom tsis paub txog lawv, ces lawv yuav muaj thaj av no los ua lawv tug. Thiab yog hais tias lawv yuav ceev nws tej kev cai ces lawv yuav tau txais koob hmoov nyob rau saum thaj av no, thiab yuav tsis muaj leej twg hlo li uas yuav tuaj thab lawv, los sis tuaj txeeb thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg; thiab lawv yuav nyob tsis txhawj tsis ntshai mus ib txhis li.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

- 10 Tiam sis saib seb, thaum lub sij hawm los txog lawm es lawv ho yuav tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus, tom qab uas lawv twb tau txais koob hmoov ntau npaum li ntawd los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes lawm—es twb paub txog txoj kev tsim lub ntiaj teb, thiab txoj kev tsim neeg txhua tus, es twb paub txog tej hauj lwm zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob ntawm tus Tswv txij puag thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los; es tau muab lub hwj chim rau lawv ua tau txhua yam txhua tsav los ntawm lawv txoj kev ntseeg; es tau muab tej lus txib rau lawv txij puag thaum chiv keeb los, thiab tau coj tuaj los ntawm nws txoj kev zoo tag nrho li los tseem tau coj lawv tuaj rau hauv thaj av muaj nuj nqis uas tau cog lus cia lawm—saib seb, kuv hais tias, yog muaj ib hnuv es lawv ho yuav tsis lees yuav cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, tus Mexiyas uas tseeb, lawv tus Txhiv Dim thiab lawv tus Vajtswv, ces saib seb, nws tej kev txiav txim uas ncaj ncees yuav poob tuaj rau saum lawv.
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav coj lwm haiv neeg tuaj rau lawv, thiab nws yuav muab lub hwj chim rau lawv cov uas nws coj tuaj no, thiab nws yuav muab tej av uas yog lawv ntiag tug tshem tawm ntawm lawv mus, thiab nws yuav ua kom lawv khiav tawg ri niab thiab raug ploj raug tuag.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, yuav muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog nyob hauv ib tiam dhau ib tiam, thiab yuav muaj kev rau txim hnyav nyob nrog lawv; yog li ntawd, kuv cov me tub es, kuv xav kom nej nco qab ntsoov; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv xav kom nej cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog kuv tej lus.
- 13 Au kuv xav kom nej cia li tsim; tsim los ntawm txoj kev tsaug zog heev, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tsim los ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus txoj kev tsaug zog, thiab cia li daws tej saw hlau uas phem heev uas khi nej pov tseg, cov saw hlau no yog cov uas khi tib neeg, es kom lawv yuav raug cab coj mus ua qhev nyob rau hauv tej kwj tob tob uas nyob mus ib txhis li ntawm txoj kev nyuaj siab thiab txoj kev txom nyem.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

- 14 Cia li tsim dheev los mas! thiab cia li sawv tsees hauv tej plua av los, thiab cia li mloog tus niam thiab txiv uas tsis muaj dag muaj zog, tus uas tsis ntev no nej yuav coj nws lub cev coj mus tso cia rau hauv lub qhov ntxa uas txias zias thiab ntsiag to, uas yog qhov chaw uas tsis muaj neeg rov qab los tau; ob peb hnuv ntxiv xwb ces kuv twb yuav mus rau txoj kev uas neeg ntiag teb txhua leej txhua tus mus.
- 15 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv twb tau txhiv kuv tus ntsuj plig tawm ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus lawm; kuv tau pom nws lub yeeb koob, thiab nws txhais caj npab ntawm nws txoj kev hlub tab tom ua voj voog ncig kuv mus ib txhis li.
- 16 Thiab kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum nco qab ntsoov ua raws li tus Tswv tej kev cai thiab tej kev txiav txim; saib seb, tej no yog tej uas tau ua rau kuv ntxhov siab txij puag thaum pib los.
- 17 Kuv lub siab lub ntsws tau poob nrog txoj kev nyuaj siab ib lub caij dhau ib lub caij, vim kuv tau ntshai, vim tias txoj kev tawv ntawm nej tej siab tej ntsws tus Tswv uas yog nej tus Vajtswv yuav npau taws heev rau nej tiag li, ces nej yuav raug muab ntiab khiav tawm mus thiab yuav raug puas tsuaj mus ib sim li;
- 18 Los sis kuv ntshai tias, tsam ib qho kev foom tsis zoo yuav poob los rau nej rau ntau tiam neeg; thiab nej yuav ntsib hniav ntaj hniav riam, thiab ntsib kev tshaib kev nqhis, thiab yuav raug luag ntxub ntxaug, thiab yuav raug coj mus raws li tus dab lub siab nyiam thiab mus raug poob cev qhev.
- 19 Au kuv cov me tub es, kuv xav hais tias kheev lam tej xwm no yuav tsis txhob los raug nej, es nej yuav ua tus Tswv cov neeg uas nws nyiam thiab cov uas nws tau xaiv tseg lawm xwb. Tiam sis saib seb, nws txoj hauj lwm yeej yuav tiav; vim tej uas nws ua yeej yog cov uas ncaj ncees mus ib txhis li.
- 20 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Npaum li uas nej yuav ceev kuv tej lus txib nej yuav loj hlob tawg paj txi txiv nyob rau hauv thaj av; tiam sis yog nej yuav tsis ceev kuv tej lus txib nej yuav raug ntiab khiav tawm ntawm kuv xub ntiag mus.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

21 Thiab nim no cia kom kuv tus ntsuj plig ho tau nyob kev xyiv fab rau hauv nej, thiab cia kom kuv lub siab lub ntsws ho tau ncaim lub ntiaj teb no mus nrog txoj kev zoo siab vim yog nej, es kom kuv ho tsis txhob tuag nrog txoj kev nyuaj siab thiab chim siab nyob rau hauv lub qhov ntxa, cia li sawv tsees hauv tej plua av los, kuv cov me tub es, thiab ua li txiv neej yawg, thiab cia li ua tib lub siab thiab tib lub ntsws, sib sau ua ib lub siab rau txhua yam, es kom nej thiaj yuav tsis los mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev;

22 Es kom nej thiaj yuav tsis raug foom qhov uas yog ib qho kev foom uas tsis zoo kiag li; thiab nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua rau kom Vajtsv tus uas ncaj ncees npau taws rau nej, es kom nej raug kev puas tsuaj puas ntsoog, muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev puas tsuaj puas ntsoog ntawm sab ntsuj plig thiab sab cev nqaij daim tawv uas nyob mus ib txhis li.

23 Cia li tsim dheev, kuv cov me tub es; cia li muab txoj kev ncaj ncees los coj. Cia li hle tej saw hlau uas khi nej, thiab cia li tawm khiav ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj, thiab sawv tsees hauv tej plua av los.

24 Cia li tsis txhob ntxeev siab tawm tsam nej tus kwv ntxiv lawm, tus uas tau lub neej muaj yeeb koob, thiab tus uas tau ceev tej lus txib txij li thaum uas peb tau ncaim Yeluxalees; thiab tus uas tau yog ib yam cuab yeej nyob rau hauv Vajtsv txhais tes, uas tau coj peb tuaj rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; vim yog tsis muaj nws, ces peb yeej yuav tau piam sij nrog txoj kev tshaib plab nyob rau hauv hav zoov; tsis tas li ntawd xwb, nej tseem tau nrhiav muab nws txoj sia txo pov tseg thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau nyiaj ntau yam kev nyuaj siab vim yog nej.

25 Thiab kuv ntshai thiab tshee heev kawg nkaus li, vim ntshai tsam nws yuav rov qab tau nyiaj tej kev txom nyem dua vim yog nej; vim saib seb, nej tau ntxo nws hais tias nws tau nrhiav hwj chim thiab nrhiav cai kom tau kav nej; tiam sis kuv paub hais tias nws tsis tau nrhiav hwj chim los sis nrhiav cai es kom nws tau los kav nej, tiam sis nws tau nrhiav Vajtsv lub yeeb koob, thiab nrhiav kom nej tau txoj kev nyob kaj siab lug nyob mus ib txhis li.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

26 Thiab nej tau yws yws vim nws tau hais tej lus tseeb rau nej. Nej hais tias nws tau ua nruj ua tsiv rau nej; nej hais tias nws tau npau taws rau nej; tiam sis saib seb, nws txoj kev nruj kev tsiv tsuas yog txoj kev nruj kev tsiv ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus lub hwj chim uas muaj nyob hauv nws xwb; thiab qhov uas nej hu ua kev npau taws ces twb yog qhov tseeb xwb, raws li tej kev tseeb uas muaj nyob hauv Vajtswv, uas nws cheem tsis tau, es tab meeg qhia txog nej txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees.

27 Thiab nws yuav tsum yog tias Vajtswv lub hwj chim yeej yuav tsum nrog nws nyob, kawg tias yog nws txib nej nej yuav tsum mloog nws lus. Tiam sis saib seb, twb tsis yog nws, tiam sis yog tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv nws, uas tau qhib nws lub qhov ncauj kom nws hais ces nws yuav tsis muaj peev xwm kaw tau nws lub qhov ncauj li.

28 Thiab nim no kuv tus me tub, Lamas, thiab Lemuees thiab Xam, thiab kuv cov me tub cov uas yog Ixama-ees cov tub, saib seb, yog hais tias nej yuav cuab pob ntseg mloog rau Nifais lub suab ces nej yuav tsis piam sij. Thiab yog hais tias nej yuav cuab pob ntseg mloog nws kuv yuav tseg ib txog koob hmoov rau nej, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog kuv thawj thawj txog koob hmoov.

29 Tiam sis yog nej ho tsis cuab pob ntseg mloog nws kuv yuav muab kuv thawj thawj txog koob hmoov tshem tawm mus, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog kuv txoj koob hmoov, thiab kuv yuav muab rau nws.

30 Thiab nim no, Xaulas, kuv hais rau koj hais tias: Saib seb, koj yog Lanpas tus tub qhe; tiam sis, koj tau raug coj khiav tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees, thiab kuv paub tias koj yog kuv tus tub, Nifais, ib tug phooj ywg tseeb mus ib txhis li.

31 Yog li ntawd, vim yog koj tau ua ib tug neeg ncaj ncees koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv yuav tau txais koob hmoov nrog nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, tias lawv yuav nyob hauv lub neej vammeej ntev nyob rau saum thaj av no; thiab yuav tsis muaj dab tsi hlo li, uas yuav ua mob los sis ua phem rau lawv tej kev vammeej nyob rau saum thaj av no mus ib txhis li, ntshai tsuas yog ho muaj kev tsis ncaj ncees nyob nrog lawv xwb.

32 Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias koj yuav ceev tus Tswv tej lus txib, tus Tswv tau tshwj thiab ceev thaj av no tseg cia rau txoj kev thaj yeeb nyab xeeb pub rau koj tej noob nrog rau kuv tus tub tej noob nyob.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

2 Nifais 2

- 1 Thiab nim no, Yakhouj, kuv hais rau koj: Koj yog kuv thawj tug tub uas yug nyob rau hauv lub caij uas kuv muaj kev txom nyem nyob rau hauv hav zoov. Thiab saib seb, thaum koj tseem yau koj tau ntsib kev kub ntxhov thiab ntau yam kev nyuaj siab, vim txoj kev ua nruj ua tsiv ntawm koj cov tij laug.
- 2 Tiam sis, Yakhouj, kuv thawj tug me tub uas yug nyob hauv hav zoov, koj twb paub Vajtsv wv tej kev tseem ceeb; thiab nws yuav muab koj tej kev kub ntxhov pub ua kev zoo siab rau koj.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, koj tus ntsuj plig yuav tau txais koob hmoov, thiab koj yuav ua neej nyob tso siab plhuav nrog koj tus tij laug Nifais; thiab koj lub caij ua neej nyob yuav tsum cia siv ua hauj lwm pub rau koj tus Vajtsv wv. Yog li ntawd, kuv paub tias koj twb raug txhiv dim lawm, vim koj tus Txhiv Dim txoj kev ncaj ncees; vim koj tau pom lawm tias thaum txog lub caij uas muaj txhij txhua lawm nws yuav coj txoj kev cawm seeg los rau tib neeg.
- 4 Thiab koj tau pom nws lub yeeb koob thaum uas koj tseem hluas; yog li ntawd, koj yuav tau txais koob hmoov tib yam li cov uas nws yuav los qhuab qhia rau nyob hauv sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab; vim tus Ntsuj Plig yeej zoo tib yam li qub, nag hmo, hnuv no, thiab mus ib txhis li. Thiab yeej tau npaj txoj kev txij li puag thaum tib neeg tau ua txhaum los, thiab txoj kev cawm seej yog ib txog uas tau dawb.
- 5 Thiab neeg tau raug qhuab qhia txaus nkaus es kom lawv paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem. Thiab tau muab txoj kev cai rau neeg. Thiab los ntawm txoj kev cai tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav tsis muaj txim; los sis los ntawm txoj kev cai neeg raug ntiab khiav mus. Muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm txoj kev cai ntawm sab nqaij tawv lawv tau raug ntiab khiav mus; thiab los ntawm txoj kev cai sab ntsuj plig lawv kuj yuav piam sij los ntawm qhov uas zoo, thiab yuav los mus ua ib cov neeg txom nyem qias ntsuav mus ib txhis li.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, txoj kev txhiv dim tsuas muaj los hauv thiab dhau los ntawm Mexiyas tus uas Dawb Huv los xwb; vim nws yog tus uas muaj kev zoo thiab kev tseeb nplua mias.

2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

- 7 Saib seb, nws cia nws tus kheej los ua ib qho kev theej txhoj rau txoj kev txhaum, los teb tej uas txoj kev cai yuav tsum muaj pub rau cov uas muaj lub siab mob thiab muaj lub siab xav ua zoo; thiab yuav tsis muaj leej twg hlo li uas yuav muaj cuab kav teb tau txoj kev cai tej lus.
- 8 Yog li ntawd, yog ib qho uas tseem ceeb kawg nkaus uas muab tej xwm txheej no ua kom tej neeg uas nyob hauv ntiag teb no paub, es kom lawv yuav paub tau tias tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav muaj cuab kav mus nyob tau hauv Vajtswv qhov chaw, tsuas yog los ntawm txoj hauj lwm zoo, txoj kev hlub, thiab txoj kev zoo ntawm tus Mexiyas Dawb Huv xwb thiaj li yuav tau, tus uas tau tso nws txoj sia raws li thaum nws nyob hauv ntiag teb, thiab tau rov qab txais txoj sia dua los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig lub hwj chim, xwv kom nws yuav coj tau cov neeg tuag sawv hauv txoj kev tuag rov qab los, nws yuav yog thawj thawj tug uas sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, nws yog thawj cov txiv rau Vajtswv, npaum li uas nws yuav thov pab rau noob neej sawv daws. Thiab lawv cov uas ntseeg nws yuav dim lawv lub txim.
- 10 Thiab vim txoj kev thov pab rau sawv daws, neeg txhua tus kom los mus cuag tau Vajtswv; yog li ntawd, lawv yuav los sawv ntawm nws xub ntiag, yuav raug nws txiav txim mus raws li txoj kev tseeb thiab txoj kev dawb huv uas nws muaj. Yog li ntawd, tej uas txoj kev cai yuav tsum muaj ua raws li Tus Dawb Huv tau muab lawm, yuav tsum kom nws muab txoj kev rau txim coj los txuas rau txoj kev cai, txoj kev rau txim uas muab txuas rau txoj kev cai yog txoj kev fab ntseeg rau txoj kev zoo siab uas tau npaj lawm rau txoj kev cai, los teb tej uas yuav tsum muaj ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj—

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

- 11 Vim nws yuav tsum muaj, tias txhua txhia yam nyias yeej muaj nyias qhov fab ntxeev. Yog tsis muaj li ntawd, kuv thawj tug me tub uas yug nyob hauv hav zoov ces, yeej yuav muaj tsis tau txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab txoj kev phem, thiab txoj kev dawb huv los sis txoj kev nyuaj siab, thiab qhov phem los sis qhov zoo. Yog li ntawd, txhua txhia yam yuav tsum sau los ua ib qho; yog li ntawd, yog hais tias nws yuav tsum yog ib yam xwb ces nws yeej nyob zoo li uas tuag lawm, uas nyob tsis muaj txoj sia thiab tsis txawj ploj tuag, los sis txawj lwj los tsis txawj lwj, zoo siab los sis nyuaj siab, thiab tsis muaj qhov hnov los sis qhov tsis hnov.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, nws ho yuav tsim nyog tsim rau ib yam uas tsis muaj nqis dab tsi li; yog li ntawd thaum kawg yuav tsis muaj lub hom phiaj rau txoj kev uas tsim nws. Yog li ntawd, qhov no yeej yuav rhuav Vajtswv lub tswv yim thiab nws tej hom phiaj uas nyob mus ib txhis, thiab kuj yuav rhuav lub hwj chim, thiab txoj kev hluv, thiab txoj kev txim lij ntawm Vajtswv.
- 13 Thiab yog nej yuav hais tias twb tsis muaj kev cai, nej kuj yuav hais tias twb tsis muaj kev txog kev txhaum. Yog nej yuav hais tias twb tsis muaj kev txog kev txhaum, nej kuj yuav hais tias tsis muaj txoj kev ncaj ncees. Thiab yog hais tias tsis muaj txoj kev ncaj ncees ces yeej tsis muaj txoj kev zoo siab. Thiab yog hais tias tsis muaj txoj kev ncaj ncees los sis txoj kev zoo siab ces yeej yuav tsis muaj txoj kev rau txim los sis txoj kev txom nyem. Thiab yog hais tias tsis muaj tej no ces yeej tsis muaj Vajtswv. Thiab yog hais tias tsis muaj Vajtswv ces yeej tsis muaj peb, thiab lub ntiaj teb; vim yog yuav tsis tau muaj txoj kev tsim tej yam no ces yuav tsis muaj dab tsi uas ua tau hauj lwm los sis raug tej hauj lwm uas lwm yam ua; yog li ntawd, txhua txhia yam yuav tsum ploj mus kom tas.
- 14 Thiab nim no, kuv cov me tub es, kuv hais tej yam xwm no rau nej xwv kom tau kawm thiab tau zoo; vim yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv, thiab nws tau tsim ib puas yam tsav, tsis hais tej ntuj ceeb tsheej los sis lub ntiaj teb no, thiab tsim txhua txhia yam uas nyob hauv huv tib si, tsis hais yam uas ua tau hauj lwm thiab yam uas ho raug tej hauj lwm uas lwm yam ua.

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

15 Thiab kom koj tau nws tej hom phiaj uas nyob mus ib txhis li los rau neeg thaum kawg, tom qab uas nws tau tsim peb thawj nkawg niam txiv, thiab tej tsiaj nruab nrag thiab tej noog uas ya saum nruab ntug, thiab qhov kawg, txhua txhia yam tsav uas tau raug tsim, nyias yeej yuav tsum muaj nyias qhov fab ntseev; twb ib yam li tsob txiv ntoo uas raug txwv tsis pub noj yog tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia tus yeeb ncuab; ib tsob qab zib hos ib tsob ho iab.

16 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv thiaj tau pub rau tib neeg kom nws yuav muaj kev ywj siab xaiv ua ub ua no rau nws tus kheej. Yog li ntawd, tib neeg yuav ua tsis tau dab tsi rau nws tus kheej tsuas yog nws yuav tsum raug ib tug los sis lwm tus ntxias xwb thiaj li yuav tau.

17 Thiab kuv, Lihais, raws li tej uas kuv tau nyeem los lawm, yuav tsum muaj hais tias Vajtswv ib tug tim tswv, raws li tej uas tau sau cia lawm, tau poob puag saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los; yog li ntawd, nws tau rais los mus ua ib tug dab, uas tau nrhiav ua tej uas phem rau Vajtswv.

18 Thiab vim tias nws tau poob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, thiab tau rais los mus ua ib tug uas nyuaj siab mus ib txhis li, nws kuj tau nrhiav ua kom tib neeg sawv daws nyuaj siab tib yam li nws thiab. Yog li ntawd, nws thiaj tau hais rau Evas, muaj tseeb tiag twb yog tus nab txwj nab laug, uas yog tus dab, tus uas yog, leej txiv ntawm txhua txoj kev dag, yog li ntawd nws thiaj hais tias: Cia li noj cov txiv ntoo uas tau txwv lawm, thiab neb yeej yuav tsis tuag, tiam sis neb yuav zoo tib yam li Vajtswv, yuav paub qhov phem thiab qhov zoo.

19 Thiab tom qab uas Adas thiab Evas tau noj cov txiv uas tau txwv lawm nkawd thiaj tau raug ntiab khiav tawm ntawm lub Vaj Edees, mus ua liaj ua teb.

20 Thiab nkawd thiaj tau muaj tub muaj ki; muaj tseeb tiag, neeg txhua leej txhua tus uas nyob hauv ntiag teb no twb yog nkawd tsev neeg.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

- 21 Thiab tib neeg tej hnuv nyoog uas ua neej nyob thiaj raug muab ua kom ntev, raws li Vajtsvwm pom zoo, es kom lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thaum uas lawv tseem ua neej nyob no; yog li ntawd, lawv txoj kev ua neej thiaj tau rais los mus ua ib txoj kev sim siab, thiab lawv lub caij lub nyoog thiaj raug muab ua kom ntev, raws nraim li tej lus txib uas tus Tsvwm uas yog Vajtsvwm tau muab rau noob neej. Vim nws tau muab txoj lus txib es kom neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim; vim nws tau qhia rau neeg sawv daws tias lawv tau yuam kev lawm, vim yog lawv tej niam tej txiv txoj kev txhaum.
- 22 Thiab nim no, saib seb, yog hais tias Adas tsis tau ua txhaum nws yeej yuav tsis tau poob, tiam sis nws kuj tseem yuav nyob rau hauv lub Vaj Edees. Thiab txhua txhia yam uas tau raug tsim los yeej yuav tsum tseem nyob li qub li thaum uas tsim lawv; thiab lawv yuav tsum nyob li ntawd mus ib txhis li, thiab yuav tsis muaj qhov kawg li.
- 23 Thiab nkawd yeej yuav muaj tsis taus tub ki; ces nkawd yeej tseem yuav nyob hauv qhov chaw uas tsis muaj txog muaj txhaum, yuav tsis muaj kev xyiv fab, vim lawv tsis tau paub kev nyuaj siab; tsis paub ua yam uas zoo, vim lawv tsis tau paub kev txhaum.
- 24 Tiam sis saib seb, txhua txhia yam tsav tau ua tiav mus raws li nws tus uas paub ib puas yam tsav lub tsvwm yim.
- 25 Adas tau poob xwv kom thiaj yuav muaj taus tib neeg; thiab muaj tib neeg xwv kom lawv yuav muaj kev xyiv fab.
- 26 Thiab thaum txog lub caij uas tau teem tseg cia lawm tus Mexiyas yuav los, xwv kom nws thiaj yuav txhiv tau noob neej dim ntawm txoj kev poob. Thiab vim tias lawv tau raug txhiv dim ntawm txoj kev poob lawv rais tau los mus ua ib cov neeg uas nyob ywj siab mus ib txhis li, paub qhov zoo los ntawm qhov phem; muaj cuab kav ua raws li lawv lub siab nyiam thiab yuav tsis raug yuam kom ua ub ua no, tsuas yog los ntawm txoj kev cai rau txim nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg uas yog ib hnuv loj xwb thiaj li yuav yuam lawv ua, raws nraim li tej lus txib uas Vajtsvwm twb tau muab lawm.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

27 Yog li ntawd, neeg yeej nyob ywj siab thaum uas lawv tseem ua neej nyob; thiab txhua txhia yam tsav uas neeg yuav tsum muaj yeej tau raug muab rau lawv. Thiab lawv muaj kev ywj siab xaiv txoj kev nyob ywj siab thiab txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, los dhau ntawm tus Neeg Nruab Nrab uas tseem ceeb ntawm neeg sawv daws txhua leej txhua tus, los sis xaiv txoj kev poob cev qhev thiab txoj kev ploj kev tuag, mus raws nraim li txoj kev poob cev qhev thiab lub hwj chim ntawm tus dab; vim nws nrhiav ua kom neeg sawv daws txhua leej txhua tus ua neeg nyuaj siab zoo ib yam li nws tus kheej.

28 Thiab nim no, kuv cov me tub es, kuv xav kom nej yuav cia siab rau tus Neeg Nruab Nrab uas tseem ceeb, thiab cuab pob ntseg mloog nws tej lus txib uas tseem ceeb; thiab cia siab rau nws tej lus, thiab xaiv yuav txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, uas mus raws li nws tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub siab nyiam.

29 Thiab tsis txhob xaiv yuav txoj kev tuag ua nyob mus ib txhis, uas raws li cev nqaij daim tawv lub siab nyiam thiab qhov kev phem uas nyob hauv lub cev, qhov uas muab lub hwj chim rau tus dab phem kom tshum tau neeg mus ua nws qhev, kom koj tau nej mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus, es nws thiaj yuav muaj hwj chim kav tau nej nyob hauv nws lub nceeg vaj.

30 Kuv tau hais tej lus no qho me ntsis rau nej sawv daws, nyob rau hauv kuv lub neej sim siab thaum kawg no, kuv cov me tub; thiab kuv tau xaiv yam uas zoo, raws li tus yaj saub tej lus. Thiab kuv tsis muaj lwm yam dab tsi tsuas yog xav kom nej sawv daws tsuas muaj kev tau zoo kav ib txhis li xwb. Amees.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

2 Nifais 3

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau koj, Yauxej, kuv tus me tub ntxawg. Koj tau yug nyob rau hauv hav zoov nyob rau thaum kuv muaj kev kub ntxhov; muaj tseeb tiag, koj niam tau yug koj rau thaum uas kuv muaj kev nyuaj siab tshaj plaws.
- 2 Thiab yuav thov tus Tswv tshwj thaj av no tseg rau koj, uas yog ib thaj av uas muaj nqis heev, pub rau koj ua qub txeeg qub teg thiab ua koj tej noob qub txeeg qub teg nrog rau koj tej tij laug, pub rau nej nyob tsis txob tsis ntxawj mus ib txhis li, yog hais tias nej yuav ceev cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv tej kev cai.
- 3 Thiab nim no, Yauxej, kuv tus me tub ntxawg, tus uas kuv tau coj tawm hauv roob moj sab qhua tawm ntawm kuv txoj kev kub ntxhov, thov tus Tswv foom koob hmoov rau koj mus ib txhis mog, vim koj tej noob yeej yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj huv tib si li.
- 4 Vim saib seb, koj yog kuv tus tub; thiab kuv yog Yauxej tus uas tau raug cab coj mus ua qhev nyob tim Iyiv teb chaws ib tug xeeb ntxwv. Thiab tus Tswv tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau Yauxej yog ib co uas tseem ceeb heev.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, Yauxej yeej tau pom lub caij uas peb nyob no tiag. Thiab nws tau txais ib lo lus khi tseg los ntawm tus Tswv, tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tsa ib ceg neeg uas ncaj ncees sawv los rau cov neeg Ixayees los ntawm nws tej tub ki los; tsis yog tus Mexiyas, tiam sis yog ib ceg uas tau raug ntshua lawm, tsis tas li ntawd, yuav tau nco txog tus Tswv tej kev khi lus hais tias tus Mexiyas yuav los ua rau lawv paub, nyob rau hauv hnuv nyoog kawg, nyob rau hauv lub hwj chim ntawm tus ntsuj plig, los coj lawv tawm ntawm qhov tsaus ntuj mus rau qhov kaj—muaj tseeb tiag, tawm ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas npog nrees thiab tawm ntawm txoj kev uas poob cev qhev mus rau txoj kev ywj pheej.
- 6 Vim Yauxej tau ua tim khawv tseeb, hais tias: Tus Tswv uas yog kuv tus Vajtswv yuav tsa ib tug uas pom yav tom ntej, yuav yog tus uas pom yav tom ntej tseem ceeb heev los rau koj tej tub tej ki.

2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, Yauxej tau hais tseeb hais tias: Tus Tswv hais li no rau kuv hais tias: Ib tug uas pom yav tom ntej uas tseem ceeb heev yuav sawv tawm hauv koj tej tub ki los; thiab nws yuav yog ib tug uas koj tej tub ki yuav hwm heev. Thiab kuv yuav muab ib txoj lus txib rau nws xwv kom nws yuav ua tau ib txoj hauj lwm pub rau koj tej tub tej ki, pub rau nws cov kwv tij, qhov uas yuav yog ib qho tsim txiaj heev rau lawv, thiab txoj hauj lwm ntawd twb yuav coj lawv kom los paub txog tej kev khi lus uas kuv twb tau khi nrog koj tej yawg koob lawm.
- 8 Thiab kuv yuav muab ib txoj lus txib rau nws xwv kom nws tsis txhob ua lwm yam hauj lwm, tsuas yog ua txoj hauj lwm uas kuv txib kom nws ua xwb. Thiab kuv yuav ua kom nws yog ib tug neeg tsim txiaj nyob ntawm kuv lub qhov muag; vim nws yuav ua kuv txoj hauj lwm.
- 9 Thiab nws yuav yog ib tug uas tseem ceeb zoo ib yam li Mauxes, tus uas kuv tau hais tias kuv yuav tsa sawv los rau nej, los tso kuv haiv neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 10 Thiab kuv yuav tsa Mauxes sawv, los tso koj cov neeg tawm hauv teb chaws Iyiv.
- 11 Tiam sis kuv yuav tsa ib tug uas pom yav tom ntej sawv tawm hauv koj tej tub tej ki los; thiab kuv yuav muab hwj chim rau nws los qhuab qhia kuv tej lus rau koj tej xeeb leeb xeeb ntxwv—thiab tus Tswv hais tias, tsis yog yuav los qhuab qhia kuv tej lus xwb, tiam sis yuav los yaum kom lawv ntseeg kuv tej lus, tej uas twb xub tau muab rau lawv lawm.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, koj tej tub tej ki yuav tau sau; thiab Yudas tej tub tej ki los yuav tau sau; thiab zaj uas koj tej tub tej ki yuav sau, thiab zaj uas Yudas tej tub tej ki yuav sau, yuav tsum loj hlob ua ib ke, los rhuav tej lus qhia uas tsis tseeb thiab los txo tej kev sib cav sib ceg tseg, thiab los tsim kev nyob kaj siab lug pub rau koj tej tub tej ki, thiab los coj lawv kom los paub txog lawv tej yawg koob nyob hauv hnuv nyoog kawg, thiab kom los paub txog kuv tej kev khi lus thiab, tus Tswv hais li ntawd.
- 13 Thiab tawm hauv txoj kev qaug dag qaug zog nws yuav raug ua kom muaj dag muaj zog, hnuv ntawd thaum kuv txoj hauj lwm yuav pib mus thoo plaws rau kuv haiv neeg, rau txoj kev txum tim koj dua, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, tus Tswv hais li ntawd.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

- 14 Thiab Yauxej tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej li no, hais tias: Saib seb, tus Tswv yuav foom koob hmoov rau tus uas pom yav tom ntej ntawd; thiab lawv cov uas nrhiav ua kom nws puas tsuaj yuav raug swb huv tib si; vim cov lus cog tseg no, cov uas kuv tau txais los ntawm tus Tswv, los rau kuv tej tub tej ki, yeej yuav tiav. Saib seb, kuv yeej paub tseeb hais tias yuav muaj txhij txhua li cov lus cog tseg no;
- 15 Thiab nws lub npe yuav hu li kuv lub; thiab yuav hu nws raws nws txiv lub npe. Thiab nws yuav zoo tib yam li kuv; vim tej yam xwm, uas tus Tswv yuav ua tawm ntawm nws txhais tes los, los ntawm tus Tswv lub hwj chim yuav koj tau kuv haiv neeg los mus rau txoj kev cawm seeg.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, Yauxej tau qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej li no: Kuv paub tseeb txog tej yam xwm no, twb ib yam li kuv paub tseeb txog Mauxes cov lus cog tseg lawm; vim tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias, kuv yuav tsom kwm koj tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv mus ib txhis li.
- 17 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais tias: Kuv yuav tsa ib tug Mauxes sawv; thiab kuv yuav muab lub hwj chim rau nws nyob hauv ib tug pas nrig; thiab kuv yuav muab lub tswv yim zoo rau nws sau tej kev cai. Tiam sis kuv yuav tsis cia nws tus nplaig xooob, kom nws hais lus ntau, vim kuv yuav tsis ua kom nws hais tau lus npliag. Tiam sis kuv yuav xuas kuv tus ntiv tes ntawm kuv txhais tes kiag sau kuv tej kev cai rau nws; thiab kuv yuav muab ib tug neeg hais tau lus npliag rau nws.
- 18 Thiab tus Tswv kuj tau hais rau kuv ntxiv tias: Kuv yuav tsa ib tug rau koj tej tub tej ki; thiab kuv yuav muab ib tug neeg hais tau lus npliag rau nws. Thiab kuv, saib seb, kuv yuav pub kom nws yuav sau koj tej tub tej ki tej ntaub tej ntawv, pub rau koj tej tub tej ki; thiab tus neeg uas hais tau lus npliag ntawm koj tej tub tej ki yuav tshaj zaj no.
- 19 Thiab tej lus uas nws yuav sau yuav yog tej uas tseem ceeb nyob rau hauv kuv lub tswv yim uas yuav tsum mus thoob plaws rau koj tej tub tej ki. Thiab nws yuav zoo tau li tias koj tej tub tej ki tau hu lawv tawm hauv av los; vim kuv paub lawv tej kev ntseeg.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

20 Thiab lawv yuav hu nrov nrov tawm hauv av los; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau lawv tej kwv tij, twb yuav yog tom qab uas ntau tiam neeg tau dhau ntawm lawv mus. Thiab yuav muaj tias lawv lub suab hu yuav mus, raws nraim li lawv tej lus uas yooj yim to taub.

21 Vim lawv tej kev ntseeg lawv tej lus yuav tawm ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj mus rau lawv cov kwv tij uas yog koj tej tub tej ki; thiab lawv tej lus uas qaug dag qaug zog kuv yuav ua kom tej lus ntawd muaj zog vim lawv tej kev ntseeg, kom nco txog kuv tej kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi rau lawv tej yawg koob lawm.

22 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv tus me tub Yauxej, kuv tus yawg koob tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej zoo li no.

23 Yog li ntawd, vim yog txoj kev khi lus no koj thiaj li tau txais koob hmoov; koj tej noob los yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj, vim lawv yuav mloog rau tej lus uas nyob hauv phau ntawv.

24 Thiab yuav sawv ib tug uas muaj hwj chim nyob hauv lawv, tus uas yuav ua tau ntau yam zoo, tsis hais kev hais lus los yog kev ua dej ua num, nws yuav yog Vajtsvwv ib rab cuab yeej uas nyob hauv nws txhais tes, uas muaj txoj kev ntseeg heev, los ua tau tej hauj lwm tseem ceeb, thiab ua tej yam xwm uas loj nyob ntawm Vajtsvwv lub qhov muag, rau txoj kev coj kev txum tim ntau yam rov qab rau tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab rau koj tej kwv tij tej noob.

25 Thiab nim no, koj tau koob hmoov, Yauxej. Saib seb, koj tseem yau; yog li ntawd cia li mloog koj tus tij laug, Nifais, tej lus, thiab koj yuav tau txais raws nraim li tej lus uas kuv tau hais lawm. Nco ntsoov koj txiv tus uas tab tom yuav tuag tej lus mog. Amees.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

2 Nifais 4

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv, Nifais, hais txog cov lus qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas kuv txiv tau hais lawm, hais txog Yauxej, tus uas tau cab mus rau tim Iyiv teb chaws.
- 2 Vim saib seb, nws tau qhia tseeb txog tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas hais txog nws tej noob txhua tus huv tib si. Thiab tej kev qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas nws tau sau, yeej tsis muaj ntau yam uas tseem ceeb dua tej no. Thiab nws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog peb, thiab peb cov tiam neeg uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; thiab lawv raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, tom qab uas kuv txiv tau hais txog txoj kev qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm Yauxej tas lawm, nws tau hu Lamas cov me nyuam, nws tej tub, thiab tej ntxhais, thiab tau hais rau lawv hais tias: Saib seb, kuv tej me tub, thiab me ntxhais, nej cov uas yog kuv thawj tug tub tej tub thiab tej ntxhais, kuv xav kom nej cia li cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej lus.
- 4 Vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais tias: Npaum tias yuav ceev kuv tej lus txib ces nej yuav huaj vam nyob rau hauv thaj av no; thiab npaum tias nej yuav tsis ceev kuv tej lus txib ces nej yuav raug ntiab khiav ncaim ntawm kuv qhov chaw mus.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tej me tub thiab kuv tej me ntxhais es, kuv yuav tsis kam nqes mus rau hauv kuv lub qhov ntxa yog tias kuv tsis tau foom koob hmoov rau nej; vim saib seb, kuv paub tias yog nej raug qhia los mus rau txoj kev uas nej yeej yuav tsum mus nej yuav tsis ncaim nws mus li.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias nej raug foom phem, saib seb, kuv yuav foom kuv tej koob hmoov rau nej, xwv kom txoj kev foom tsis zoo yuav raug tshem tawm ntawm nej mus thiab kom poob mus rau saum nej niam nej txiv tej taub hau.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, vim kuv txoj kev foom koob hmoov tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tsis cia kom nej piam sij; yog li ntawd, nws yuav muaj lub siab hlub rau nej thiab rau nej tej noob mus ib txhis li.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv txiv tau tsum tsis hais rau Lamas tej tub thiab tej ntxhais lawm, nws tau kom koj Lemu-ees tej tub thiab tej ntxhais los cuag nws.

2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv, hais tias: Saib seb, kuv tej me tub thiab me ntxhais, nej cov uas yog kuv tus tub thib ob tej me tub thiab me ntxhais; saib seb kuv yuav foom koob hmoov rau nej tib yam li cov uas kuv tau foom rau Lamas tej tub thiab tej ntxhais lawm; yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj huv tib si; tiam sis thaum kawg nej tej noob yuav tau txais koob hmoov.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas kuv txiv tau tsum tsis hais rau lawv lawm, saib seb, nws tau hais rau Ixama-ees tej tub, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab twb hais rau nws tsev neeg tag nrho.
- 11 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau tsum tsis hais rau lawv lawm, nws tau hais rau Xam, hais tias: Koj yuav tau koob hmoov, thiab koj tej noob los yuav tau koob hmoov; vim nej yuav tau txais thaj av no ua nej qub txeeg qub teg tib yam li koj tus kwv Nifais. Thiab koj tej noob yuav huaj vam coob nrog nws tej noob; thiab koj yuav zoo tib yam li koj tus kwv, thiab koj tej noob yuav zoo li nws tej noob; thiab koj yuav tau txais koob hmoov nyob tag nrho hauv koj lub neej.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv txiv, Lihais, tau hais rau nws tsev neeg txhua leej txhua tus, raws li nws lub siab xav thiab raws li tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv nws lawm, nws tau laus laus lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tuag lawm, thiab tau koj nws mus faus.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis ntev tom qab uas nws tuag lawm, Lamas thiab Lemu-ees thiab Ixama-ees cov tub tau npau taws rau kuv vim tus Tswv tej lus qhuab ntuas.
- 14 Vim kuv, Nifais, tau raug txib kom hais rau lawv, raws li nws lo lus; kuv tau hais ntau yam tsav rau lawv, thiab kuv txiv los kuj tau hais ntau yam tsav rau lawv, ua ntej nws tuag thiab; muaj ntau yam cov uas tau hais no tau muab sau rau saum kuv lwm cov phiaj; vim feem ntau uas hais txog keeb kwv tau muab sau rau saum kuv lwm cov phiaj lawm.
- 15 Thiab nyob rau saum cov no kuv sau ntau yam xwm ntawm kuv tus ntsuj plig, thiab sau ntau cov vajlugkub cov uas muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog. Vim kuv nyiam cov vajlugkub heev, thiab kuv lub siab xav ntsoov txog lawv, thiab sau cov no cia rau kuv tej me nyuam tau kawm thiab cia tau pab lawv.
- 16 Saib seb, kuv nyiam tej yam uas yog tus Tswv li heev; thiab kuv lub siab yeej xav ntsoov tsis tseg rau tej yam uas kuv tau pom thiab tau hnov lawm.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.

17 Tiam sis, txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv txoj kev zoo uas tseem ceeb, tseem tau qhia rau kuv txog nws tes dej num uas loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob, kuv lub siab thiab tau qw hais tias: Au tus neeg phem uas yog kuv es! Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv lub siab muaj kev nyuaj siab yeej vim yog kuv cev nqaij daim tawv; kuv tus ntsuj plig muaj kev nyuaj siab yeej vim kuv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.

18 Kuv raug vij vog ib puag ncig, yeej vim yog tej kev haub kev ntxias thiab tej kev txog kev txhaum uas yooj yim ua rau kuv poob siab.

19 Thiab thaum kuv xav zoo siab, kuv lub siab muaj kev txom nyem vim yog kuv tej kev txog kev txhaum; tiam sis, kuv paub tus uas kuv tau cia siab rau.

20 Kuv tus Vajtswv tau yog kuv qhov chaw txhawb zog; nws tau coj kuv dim dhau kuv tej kev kub ntxhov nyob rau hauv hav zoov; thiab nws tau tsom kwm kuv thaum kuv tseem nyob rau saum tej dej uas tob heev.

21 Nws tau pub rau kuv nws txoj kev hlub, twb ua rau kuv lub cev kub lug.

22 Nws tau kov yeej kuv tej yeeb ncuab, kawg ua rau lawv tshee hnyo rau ntawm kuv xub ntiag.

23 Saib seb, nruab hnuv nws tau hnov kuv lub suab hu, thiab hmo ntuj nws tau muab txoj kev paub rau kuv los ntawm txoj kev ua yog toog pom.

24 Thiab thaum nruab hnuv kuv tau thov nws kawg kuv siab kuv ntsws; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau xa kuv lub suab mus siab; thiab cov tim tswv tau nqis los thiab tau los pab txhawb kuv.

25 Thiab tus ntsuj plig tau thauj kuv rau saum nws phab tis coj kuv mus rau puag saum tej roob uas siab heev. Thiab kuv lub qhov muag tau pom tej yam xwm tseem ceeb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tej uas tseem ceeb dhau rau tib neeg; yog li ntawd kuv tau raug txwv tias kuv yuav tsum tsis txhob muab tej no sau cia.

26 Au ces, yog kuv twb tau pom tej yam xwm tseem ceeb heev li no, yog tias tus Tswv, nyob hauv txoj kev uas nws nqis los nrog noob neej nyob, tau los ua kom neeg muaj kev tau zoo nyob npaum li ntawd, ua li cas kuv lub siab tseem yuav quaj thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tseem yuav nyob hauv lub hav nyuaj siab, thiab kuv cev nqaij daim tawv tseem yuav piam mus, thiab kuv lub zog tseem yuav qaug zuj zus mus, vim kuv tej kev kub ntxhov?

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

- 27 Thiab vim li cas kuv thiaj xij mus rau tej kev txhaum, vim kuv cev nqaij daim tawv? Muaj tseeb tiag, yog vim li cas kuv thiaj mloog tej lus haub ntxias, xwv kom tus uas phem muaj tau ib qho chaw nyob rau hauv kuv lub siab es los rhuav kuv txoj kev thaj yeeb nyab xeeb thiab los ua kom kuv tus ntsuj plig muaj kev kub ntxhov ua tus dab tsi? Yog vim li cas kuv thiaj li npau taws vim kuv tus yeeb ncuab?
- 28 Kuv tus ntsuj plig es, cia li tsim los mas! Tsis txhob tsau nyob hauv txoj kev txhaum ntev ntxiv lawm. Cia li zoo siab, Au kuv lub siab es, thiab tsis txhob cia ib qho chaw rau kuv tus ntsuj plig tus yeeb ncuab ntxiv li lawm.
- 29 Tsis txhob npau taws ntxiv lawm vim yog kuv tej yeeb ncuab. Tsis txhob cia kuv qaug dag qaug zog vim yog kuv tej kev kub ntxhov.
- 30 Cia li zoo siab, Au kuv lub siab es, thiab cia li thov rau tus Tswv, thiab hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, kuv yuav qhuas koj mus ib txhis li; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tus ntsuj plig yuav nyob kaj siab lug hauv koj, kuv tus Vajtswv, uas yog kuv txoj kev cawm seeg qhov chaw vam khom.
- 31 Au tus Tswv es, koj puas yuav txhiv kuv tus ntsuj plig thiab lauj? Koj puas yuav pab kom kuv dim ntawm kuv tej yeeb ncuab tes thiab lauj? Koj puas yuav ua kom kuv paub ntshai thaum uas kuv yuav ua kev txhaum thiab?
- 32 Thov kom ntuj txiag teb tsaus lub qhov rooj cia li kaw tas mus li rau kuv, vim tias kuv lub siab twb tawg tag thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tau xav ua qhov zoo! Au tus Tswv es, thov koj txhob kaw tej qhov rooj ntawm koj txoj kev ncaj ncees rau kuv lauj, xwv kom kuv thiaj yuav tau taug txoj kev uas mus hauv tej hav qis, xwv kom kuv tsuas yuav nyob hauv txoj kev tiaj xwb!
- 33 Au tus Tswv es, thov koj muab lub tsho tshaj sab ntawm koj txoj kev ncaj ncees los qhwv nkaus kuv! Au tus Tswv, thov koj tho ib txog kev rau kuv kom kuv tau kev khiav dim ntawm kuv tej yeeb ncuab! Thov koj kho kom kuv txoj kev ncaj yuav pub rau kuv! Thov koj txhob tso kom muaj pob zeb dawm ko taw rau tom kuv hauv ntej—tiam sis thov koj cheb kom kuv txoj kev du pub rau kuv, thiab thov koj txhob ua laj kab thaiv kuv txoj kev, tiam sis thov koj ua laj kab thaiv kuv tus yeeb ncuab tej hau kev.

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

34 Au tus Tswv es, kuv tau tso siab plhuav rau koj, thiab kuv yuav cia siab rau koj mus ib txhis li. Kuv yuav tsis muab kuv txoj kev cia siab tso rau ib tug neeg twg lub hwj chim li; vim kuv paub hais tias tus uas muab nws txoj kev cia siab tso rau noob neej lub hwj chim tus ntawd yuav raug foom tsis zoo. Muaj tseeb tiag, tus uas muab nws txoj kev cia siab tso rau noob neej los sis tso rau neeg lub hwj chim tus ntawd yuav raug foom tsis zoo.

35 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub tias Vajtswv yuav ua siab dawb paug pub rau tus uas thov. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tus Vajtswv yuav muab pub rau kuv, yog hais tias kuv tsis thov yam uas phem; yog li ntawd kuv yuav tsa kuv lub suab rau koj; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav thov koj, kuv tus Vajtswv, uas yog qhov chaw cuab zog ntawm kuv txoj kev ncaj ncees. Saib seb, kuv lub suab yeej yuav nce mus rau koj mus ib txhis li, kuv qhov chaw vam khom thiab kuv tus Vajtswv uas kav ib txhis. Amees.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

2 Nifais 5

- 1 Saib seb, tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau thov rau tus Tswv uas yog kuv tus Vajtsvw ntau kawg li, vim kuv cov tij laugtej kev npau taws.
- 2 Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tej kev npau taws tawm tsam kuv tau muaj ntau ntxiv, kawg tias lawv tau nrhiav muab kuv txoj sia txo pov tseg.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau yws yws nkaug kuv, hais tias: Peb tus me kwv xav kav peb; thiab peb tau muaj teeb meem ntau los yog vim nws xwb; yog li ntawd, nim no cia peb muab nws tua pov tseg, xwv kom peb thiaj yuav tsis raug kev kub ntxhov ntxiv lawm vim yog nws tej lus. Vim saib seb, peb yuav tsis cia nws los ua tus uas kav peb; vim txoj cai ntawd yog peb cov uas ua nws tij li, uas yuav los kav cov neeg no.
- 4 Nim no kuv tsis tau sau tag nrho tej lus uas lawv yws yws nkaug kuv rau saum cov phiaj no. Tiam sis nws txaus rau kuv hais tias, lawv tau nrhiav txo kuv txoj sia pov tseg.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau ceeb toom rau kuv, tias kuv, Nifais, yuav tsum ncaim ntawm lawv mus thiab khiav mus lawm hauv hav zoov, thiab tag nrho cov uas yuav nrog kuv mus.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau coj kuv tsev neeg, thiab kuj tau coj Xaulas thiab nws tsev neeg, thiab Xam, uas yog kuv tus tij laugthiab nws tsev neeg, thiab Yakhaus thiab Yauxej, uas yog kuv ob tug kwv, thiab kuj coj kuv cov muam thiab, thiab tag nrho cov uas yuav nrog kuv mus. Thiab tag nrho cov uas yuav nrog kuv mus yog cov uas tau ntseeg tej lus ceeb toom thiab tej kev tshwm sim ntawm Vajtsvw; yog li ntawd, lawv tau mloog kuv tej lus.
- 7 Thiab peb tau coj peb tej tsev pheed suab ntaub thiab nqa txhua txhia yam uas peb yuav tsum nqa, thiab tau tsiv nyob hauv hav zoov tau sij hawm ntau hnuv. Thiab tom qab uas peb tau tsiv tau sij hawm ntau hnuv lawm peb tau tsa peb tej tsev pheed suab ntaub.
- 8 Thiab kuv cov neeg tau xav kom peb hu qhov chaw ntawd npe hu ua Nifais; yog li ntawd, peb tau hu qhov chaw ntawd ua Nifais.
- 9 Thiab tag nrho cov uas tau los nrog kuv txawm tau hu lawv ua Nifais cov neeg.
- 10 Thiab peb tau mob siab coj tus Tswv tej kev txiav txim, thiab tej kev cai, thiab tej lus txib txhua txhia yam huv tib si, raws li Mauxes txoj kev cai.

2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

- 11 Thiab tus Tswv tau nrog peb nyob; thiab peb tau huaj vam heev kawg li; peb kuj tau cog qoob loos, thiab peb tau sau tej qoob loos ntawd tau ntau kawg nkaus li. Thiab peb tau pib yug tsiaj yug txhuv, yug nyuj yug twm, thiab txhua txhia yam tsiaj.
- 12 Thiab kuv, Nifais kuj tau coj cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog; thiab kuj nqa lub pob, los sis lub koob qhia kev, uas tus Tswv txhais tes tau npaj rau kuv txiv, raws li uas tau sau los lawm.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau pib vam meej heev kawg li, thiab huaj vam coob nyob rau saum thaj av.
- 14 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau muab Lanpas rab ntaj, thiab tau ntaus ntau rab ntaj zoo li rab ntawd, ntshai nyob tsam cov neeg uas nim no hu ua Neeg Lamas yuav tuaj tawm tsam peb thiab tua peb; vim kuv tau paub tias lawv ntsub kuv thiab kuv tej me nyuam thiab cov uas tau hu ua kuv cov neeg.
- 15 Thiab kuv tau qhia kuv cov neeg ua vaj ua tsev, thiab muab ntoo, thiab hlau, thiab tooj liab, thiab tooj dag, thiab kab, nyiaj thiab kub, thiab tej pob zeb qhua uas muaj nuj nqis, uas muaj siv tsis tag coj los ua txhua yam txhua tsav.
- 16 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau tsa ib lub tuam tsev; thiab kuv tau ua lub tsev no mus raws li Xalaumoos lub tuam tsev tsuas yog tsis tau muab ntau yam khoom muaj nuj nqis coj los ua xwb; vim tsis muaj tej no nyob rau hauv thaj av no, yog li ntawd, thiaj ua tsis tau zoo li Xalaumoos lub tuam tsev. Tiam sis qhov ua lub tsev zoo mas yeej zoo tib yam li Xalaumoos lub tuam tsev; thiab tus qauv tes ua lub tsev ntawd ua tau zoo nkauj kawg nkaus li.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau kom kuv cov neeg ua neeg nquag, thiab siv lawv txhais tes ua hauj lwm.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau xav kom kuv los ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv. Tiam sis kuv, Nifais, tsis xav kom lawv muaj tus vaj ntxwv; txawm li ntawd los, kuv tseem ua rau lawv raws li tej uas nyob hauv kuv lub hwj chim.
- 19 Thiab saib seb, tus Tswv tej lus tau muaj tiav los rau kuv cov tij laug, tej lus uas hais txog lawv, tias kuv yuav los ua tus kav lawv thiab ua lawv tus xib hwb. Yog li ntawd, kuv tau ua tus kav lawv thiab ua lawv tus xib hwb, raws li tus Tswv tej lus txib, mus txog rau lub caij uas lawv tau nrhiav txo kuv txoj sia pov tseg.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

20 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tej lus tau tiav li uas nws tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Yog lawv tsis mloog koj tej lus lawv yuav raug ntiab khiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus. Thiab saib seb, lawv tau raug ntiab khiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag lawm tiag.

21 Thiab nws tau tso tej kev foom tsis zoo los rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib qho kev foom mob heev, vim lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees. Vim saib seb, lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv rau nws, ces thaum kawg lawv thiaj tau rais los mus zoo li ib lub pob zeb uas tawv heev; yog li ntawd, thaum uas lawv tseem ua neeg tawv dawb, thiab zoo nkauj heev thiab txaus nyiam, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau ua kom lawv daim tawv nqajj dub xwv kom lawv yuav ua ib cov neeg tsis txaus nyiam pub rau kuv cov neeg.

22 Thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv thiaj tau hais tias: Kuv yuav ua kom lawv yog cov neeg ntxim ntxub rau koj cov neeg, tsuas yog ntshai lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees xwb.

23 Thiab tus twg tej noob uas mus xyaw lawv tej noob yuav raug foom tsis zoo; vim lawv cov no yuav raug foom tsis zoo tib yam li lawv. Thiab tus Tswv tau hais, thiab tau ua tiav lawm.

24 Thiab vim lawv txoj kev foom uas tau nyob saum lawv, lawv tau rais los mus ua ib cov niag neeg tub nkeeg, neeg thab plaub thab ntug thiab neeg dag ntxias, thiab tau nrhiav tej tsiaj qus uas nyob rau hauv hav zoov txhom tua.

25 Thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Lawv yuav ua ib pab tsim txom rau koj tej noob, yuav txhib kom lawv nco txog kuv; thiab yog hais tias lawv yuav tsis nco txog kuv, thiab tsis mloog kuv tej lus, lawv yuav tsim txom lawv kom mus txog qhov puas tsuaj.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Nifais, tau tsa Yakhauj thiab Yauxej nkawd, xwv kom nkawd yuav yog pov thawj thiab xib hwb rau kuv cov neeg nyob rau hauv thaj av.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau ua neej nyob zoo siab kaj siab lug.

28 Thiab peb caug xyoo tau dhau lawm txij li thaum peb ncaim hauv Yeluxalees.

29 Thiab kuv, Nifais, tau khaws cov ceev xwm txheej rau hauv kuv cov phiaj, uas kuv tau ua, uas hais txog kuv cov neeg txij li ntawd los.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Ua dua lwm cov phiaj; thiab koj yuav tsum sau ntau yam xwm uas zoo rau ntawm kuv rau saum cov no, cia rau koj cov neeg tau siv.

31 Yog li ntawd, kuv, Nifais, yuav ua kom tau li tus Tswv tej lus txib, thiaj tau mus thiab tau ua cov phiaj uas kuv muab sau tej yam xwm no.

32 Thiab kuv tau sau tej yam uas zoo rau Vajtswv. Thiab yog hais tias kuv cov neeg zoo siab rau tej uas yog Vajtswv li lawv yuav zoo siab rau tej uas kuv muab sau rau saum cov phiaj no.

33 Thiab yog kuv cov neeg xav paub ntau txog kuv cov neeg zaj keeb kwm lawv yuav tsum nrhiav kawm kuv lwm cov phiaj.

34 Thiab nws txaus rau kuv hais tias plaub caug xyoo tau dhau lawm, thiab peb twb tau muaj tsov rog thiab muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nrog peb cov kwv tij lawm.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

2 Nifais 6

- 1 Yakhauj, tus uas yog Nifais tus kwv tej lus, uas nws tau hais rau cov Neeg Nifais:
- 2 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, kuv, Yakhauj, tau raug Vajtsv hu, thiab tsa mus raws li nws tus txheej txheem dawb huv, thiab tau raug tsa los ntawm kuv tus tij laugNifais, tus uas nej sawv daws saib zoo li ib tug vaj ntxwv los sis ib tug neeg saib xyuas, thiab tus uas nej sawv daws cia siab rau txoj kev tau zoo nyob, saib seb nej paub tias kuv tau hais rau nej ntau yam kawg nkaus li.
- 3 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv hais rau nej dua; vim kuv xav kom nej tej ntsuj plig tau nyob kaj siab lug. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv txhawj txog nej kawg nkaus li; thiab nej yeej paub lawm hais tias kuv yeej ib txwm txhawj txog nej. Vim kuv tau mob siab qhuab ntuas nej tag kuv siab kuv ntsws; thiab kuv tau muab kuv txiv tej lus coj los qhia nej; thiab kuv tau hais rau nej ntsig txog ib puas tsav yam uas muab sau cia txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los.
- 4 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv yuav hais rau nej ntsig txog tej xwm txheej uas twb muaj lawm, thiab tej uas tseem yuav muaj los; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav nyeem Yaxayas tej lus rau nej. Thiab yog cov lus uas kuv tus tij laugtau xav kom kuv yuav tsum hais rau nej. Thiab kuv hais rau nej kom xwv yuav pab tau nej kom nej kawm thiab txhawb nqa nej tus Vajtsv lub npe.
- 5 Thiab nim no, tej lus uas kuv yuav nyeem yog tej lus uas Yaxayas tau hais txog tsev neeg Ixayees txhua leej txhua tus; yog li ntawd, cov lus no los kuj raug nej sawv daws thiab, vim nej yog ib co ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees thiab. Thiab muaj ntau yam uas Yaxayas tau hais uas raug nej sawv daws, vim nej yog ib co ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 6 Thiab nim no, cov no yog cov lus uas nws hais: Tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv tau hais li no hais tias: Saib seb, kuv yuav tsa kuv txhais tes mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab tsa kuv tus hij rau tej neeg; thiab lawv yuav coj koj tej tub hauv lawv tej caj npab los, thiab yuav ev koj tej ntxhais saum lawv tej xub pwg los.

2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

- 7 Thiab tej vaj ntxwv yuav ua koj txiv qhuav tu yug koj, thiab lawv tej niam vaj ntxwv yuav ua koj niam qhuav yug koj; lawv yuav nyo taub hau mus rau hauv av pe koj, thiab yaim tej plua tshauv ntawm koj tej ko taw; thiab koj yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv; vim lawv cov uas tos ntsoov kuv yeej yuav tsis poob ntsej muag li.
- 8 Thiab nim no kuv, Yakhauj, yuav qhia ib txhia txog tej lus no. Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau qhia rau kuv tias cov uas tseem nyob tim Yeluxalees, txij li puag thaum peb tau ncaim tuaj lawm, tau raug luag tua thiab raug luag cab coj mus ua qhev.
- 9 Txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv tseem tau qhia rau kuv tias lawv yuav rov qab los dua. Thiab nws kuj tau qhia rau kuv tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv, cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, nws tus kheej yuav los tshwm sim ntawm sab nqaij tawv los rau lawv; thiab tom qab uas nws tus kheej los rau lawv pom lawm lawv yuav muab nws nplawm thiab muab nws ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig, raws li tus tim tswv tej lus uas nws tau hais rau kuv lawm.
- 10 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tej ntsws tawv qhawv thiab lawv tej caj dab tawv qhwb qhawv rau cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, saib seb, tej kev txiav txim ntawm cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv yuav los rau saum lawv. Thiab yuav muaj hnuv uas lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj thiab raug kev txom nyem.
- 11 Yog li ntawd, tom qab uas lawv raug ntiab khiav ib qho mus rau ib qho lawm, vim tus tim tswv tau hais li, muaj coob leej yuav raug kev txom nyem ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv, thiab yuav tsis raug piam sij, vim tej kev thov Vajtswv ntawm cov uas muaj kev ntseeg; lawv yuav raug tawg khiav ri niab, thiab raug luag ntaus, thiab raug luag ntxub; txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv tseem yuav ua zoo rau lawv, xwv kom thaum lawv yuav los paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim, lawv yuav rov sib sau los ua ke dua nyob rau hauv tej av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

- 12 Thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg tau koob hmoov, lawv cov uas tus yaj saub tau sau cia lawm; vim saib seb, yog hais tias lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tsis nkaug tawm tsam Xi-oos, thiab yuav tsis sib sau ua ke los mus rau hauv lub koom txoos uas loj thiab ntxim ntxub, ces lawv yuav raug cawm dim; vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yeej yuav ua kom nws tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau nws tej me nyuam tiav; thiab vim yog tej no ntag tus yaj saub thiaj li tau sau tej yam xwm no.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, lawv cov uas nkaug tawm tsam Xi-oos thiab tus Tswv cov neeg khi lus, yuav raug yaim tej hmoov av ntawm lawv tej ko taw; thiab tus Tswv cov neeg yuav tsis raug poob ntsej muag. Vim tus Tswv cov neeg yog cov uas tos ntsoov nws; vim lawv tseem tos hnuv uas tus Mexiyas yuav los.
- 14 Thiab saib seb, raws li tus yaj saub tej lus, tus Mexiyas yuav pib koj lawv rov qab los cuag nws dua zaum ob; yog li ntawd, nws tus kheej yuav los rau lawv ntawm hwj chim thiab yeeb koob loj, yuav los ua kev puas tsuaj rau lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thaum hnuv ntawd los txog yog thaum lawv yuav ntseeg nws; thiab cov uas ntseeg nws yuav tsis muaj ib tug raug puas tsuaj li.
- 15 Thiab lawv cov uas tsis ntseeg nws yuav raug puas tsuaj, los ntawm hluav taws thiab los ntawm cua daj cua dub, thiab los ntawm av qeeg, thiab los ntawm nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, thiab los ntawm tej mob kis, thiab los ntawm kev tshaib kev nqhis. Thiab lawv yuav paub tias tus Tswv yog Vajtswv, tus uas yog cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv.
- 16 Vim tej khoom uas txeeb tau tom yeeb ncuab los puas yuav muab tawm tau ntawm cov neeg muaj hwj chim, los sis tus neeg uas raug luag kaw raws li kev cai puas yuav dim tau?
- 17 Tiam sis tus Tswv hais li no tias: Cov neeg raug txim ntawm tej neeg muaj hwj chim los kuj yuav raug koj mus thiab, thiab tej neeg phem heev tej khoom txeeb tau los yeej yuav raug muab rov qab; vim Vajtswv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus yuav cawm kom nws cov neeg khi lus dim. Vim tus Tswv hais li no: Kuv yuav tawm tsam lawv cov uas tawm tsam nej—

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

18 Thiab kuv yuav muab lawv cov uas ua nruj ua tsiv rau nej tej nqaij rov qab yug lawv; thiab lawv yuav rov qab qaug rau lawv tej ntshav li qaug cawv txiv hmab qab zib; thiab neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav paub tias kuv, tus uas yog tus Tswy, yog nej tus Cawm Seeg thiab nej tus Txhiv Dim, Tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus ntawm Yakhauj.

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

2 Nifais 7

- 1 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv hais li no: Kuv puas tau muab nej pov tseg, los sis kuv puas tau ntiab nej khiav tawm mus ib txhis li? Vim tus Tswv hais li no: Nej niam daim ntawv sib nrauj nyob qhov twg? Kuv tau muab nej rau leej twg, los sis kuv tau muab nej muag rau kuv tej tub uas luag tshuav nuj nqis tus twg? Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau muab nej muag rau leej twg? Saib seb, vim nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees nej tau muab nej tus kheej muag xwb, thiab vim nej tej kev txog kev txhaum nej niam thiaj raug rho tawm lawm.
- 2 Yog li ntawd, thaum uas kuv los, twb tsis muaj ib tug neeg, thaum uas kuv hu, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tsis muaj leej twg teb. Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, puas yog kuv txhais tes luv lawm es thiaj yuav txhiv tsis tau, los sis puas yog kuv tsis muaj hwj chim tso nej dim? Saib seb, thaum uas kuv npau taws kuv ua tau tej dej hiav txwv qhuav, kuv ua tau tej dej ntws qhuav tau li tej tiaj suab puam thiab tej ntses uas nyob hauv cov dej no tsw lwj iab nqhoob vim tej dej tau qhuav lawm, thiab lawv tuag los yog vim txoj kev nqhis dej.
- 3 Kuv ua tau saum ntuj dub nciab, thiab kuv ua tej hnab ntaub npog lawv.
- 4 Tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau pub kuv muaj tej neeg txawj ntse tej nplaig, xwv kom kuv yuav paub lub caij uas yuav qhia ib lo lus rau nej, Au tsev neeg Ixayees. Thaum uas nej nkees nws tsa nej ib tag kis dhau ib tag kis. Nws ua kom kuv lub pob ntseg txawj hnov lus li tej neeg txawj ntse.
- 5 Tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau qhib kuv lub pob ntseg, es kuv thiaj tsis ntxeev siab, los sis tig khiav ntawm nws mus.
- 6 Kuv tau tig kuv lub nraub qaum rau cov uas ntaus neeg, thiab cia kuv tej hwj txwv rau luag rho tawm ntawm kuv plhu. Kuv tsis zais kuv lub ntsej muag rau txoj kev txaj muag thiab raug nto qaub ncaug rau.
- 7 Vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav pab kuv, yog li ntawd kuv yeej yuav tsis swb hlo li. Yog li ntawd kuv puas tau ua kom kuv lub ntsej muag zoo li tej pob zeb ua tawv tawv i, thiab kuv paub tias kuv yuav tsis poob ntsej muag li.

2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

8 Thiab tus Tswv yeej nyob ze, thiab nws yuav qhia hais tias kuv yog ib tug neeg dawb huv. Leej twg yuav nrog kuv sib cav? Peb sawv daws cia li sawv ntsug ua ke. Leej twg yog kuv tus yeeb ncuab? Cia li cia nws txav los ze kuv, thiab kuv yuav siv lub zog ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj tawm tsam nws.

9 Vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yeej yuav pab kuv. Thiab txhua leej txhua tus uas nkaug kuv, saib seb, lawv sawv daws yuav qub li tej ris tsho, thiab tej npauj yuav muab lawv noj.

10 Leej twg nyob hauv nej cov es ho ntshai tus Tswv, es ho mloog nws tus tub qhe lub suab, es mus kev hauv qhov tsaus ntuj thiab ho tsis muaj teeb?

11 Saib seb nej sawv daws cov uas rauv taws, uas txhuam kom hluav taws tawm txim ib ncig nej, cia li mus thaum nej cov hluav taws pom kev thiab cia li mus thaum tej txim hluav taws uas nej txhuam cig. Tej yam no yog tej uas nej yuav tau txais los ntawm kuv txhais tes—nej yuav tuag nyob hauv txoj kev tu siab.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

2 Nifais 8

- 1 Cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog kuv, nej cov uas taug lawv txoj kev ncaj ncees qab. Cia li ntsia ntsoov rau lub pob zeb uas nej tau tawg ntshua los, thiab cia li ntsia ntsoov rau lub qhov khawb pob zeb uas luag khawb nej tawm los.
- 2 Cia li ntsia ntsoov rau Anplaham, uas yog nej txiv, thiab rau Xalas, tus uas tau yug nej los; vim kuv tsuas tau hu nws tib leeg xwb, thiab tau foom koob hmoov rau nws xwb.
- 3 Vim tus Tswv yuav nplij Xi-oos lub siab, nws yuav kho txhua txhia qhov chaw uas tsuag lawm kom rov muaj nuj nqis tuaj; thiab nws yuav ua kom tej hav zoov zoo li lub vaj Edees, thiab nws tej tiaj suab puam zoo li tus Tswv lub vaj. Yuav nrhiav tau kev xyiv fab thiab kev nyob kaj siab lug hauv tej ntawd, thiab muaj lub suab hu nkauj thiab kev ua Vajtswv tsaug xwb.
- 4 Kuv cov neeg es, nej cia li hnov kuv hais; thiab cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog kuv, Au kuv haiv neeg es; vim kuv yuav rhawv ib txoj kev cai, thiab kuv yuav rawv kuv txoj kev txiav txim kom nyob zoo li lub teeb rau cov neeg tsis tu ncu a li.
- 5 Kuv txoj kev ncaj ncees los nyob ze lawm; kuv txoj kev cawm seeg twb tawm mus lawm, thiab kuv txhais caj npab yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg. Tej koog pov txwv yuav tos ntsoov kuv, thiab lawv yuav cia siab rau kuv txhais caj npab.
- 6 Tsa nej tej qhov muag ntsia rau saum tej nruab ntug, thiab ntsia rau saum lub ntiaj teb uas nyob hauv qab; vim tej nruab ntug yuav ploj mus yam li tej pa hluav taws, thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav qub mus yam li tej ris tsho; thiab lawv cov uas ua neej nyob hauv yuav tuag tib yam li ntawd. Tiam sis kuv txoj kev cawm seeg yuav muaj nyob tas mus li, thiab kuv txoj kev ncaj ncees yuav tsis muaj poob mus li.
- 7 Cia li mloog kuv hais, nej cov uas paub txoj kev ncaj ncees, cov neeg uas kuv tau sau kuv tej kev cai rau hauv nej tej siab lawm, nej tsis txhob txhawj txog tej neeg uas saib tsis taus nej, los sis nej tsis txhob ntshai txog lawv tej kev uas lawv thuum nej.
- 8 Vim tej npauj yuav noj lawv yam li ib ce ris tsho, thiab tej cua nab yuav noj lawv yam li tej rwb pag. Tiam sis kuv txoj kev ncaj ncees yuav nyob tas mus li, thiab kuv txoj kev cawm seeg yuav nyob ib tiam dhau mus rau ib tiam.

2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

- 9 Cia li tsim, cia li tsim dheev! Cia li muab lub zog los coj, Au tus Tswv txhais caj npab es; cia li tsim ib yam li txheej laus puag thaum ub. Koj tsis yog tus uas tau hlais Lahaj, thiab tau ua rau tus zaj raug mob los?
- 10 Koj tsis yog tus uas tau ua dej hiav txwv qhuav, cov dej uas tob heev; es tau rhawv ib txog kev puag hauv qab thu dej hiav txwv pub rau cov neeg uas koj tau cawm hla dhau mus los?
- 11 Yog li ntawd, cov neeg uas tus Tswv tau txhiv lawm yuav rov qab los, thiab los hu nkauj cuag tsi rau Xi-oos; thiab txoj kev xyiv fab thiab txoj kev dawb huv uas kav ib txhis yuav los rau saum lawv tej taub hau; thiab lawv yuav tau txais txoj kev xyiv fab thiab txoj kev kaj siab; txoj kev txom nyem thiab txoj kev quaj ntsuag yuav khiav tawm mus.
- 12 Kuv yog nws; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yog tus uas nplij nej tej siab tej ntsws. Saib seb, nej yog leej twg, es nej ho yuav ntshai neeg, cov uas txawj ploj txawj tuag, thiab yog neeg tej me nyuam, cov uas yuav raug muab ua kom zoo ib yam li tej nyom?
- 13 Thiab ho hnov qab tus Tswv uas yog tus tsim nej, es tau tsim lub ntuj, thiab tau tsim lub ntiaj teb no, thiab tau niaj hnuv ntshai, vim tus neeg tsim txom txoj kev ua kub ua tsiv, es zoo li nws twb npaj tau yuav ua kev puas tsuaj? Thiab tus neeg tsim txom txoj kev ua kub ua tsiv ho nyob qhov twg?
- 14 Tus neeg raug txhom uas luag coj lawm yuav khiav ceev ceev kom nws yuav dim, thiab nws yeej yuav tsis tuag nyob hauv lub qhov nkuaj, los sis nws tej zaub mov noj yeej yuav tsis tas li.
- 15 Tiam sis kuv yog tus Tswv uas yog nej tus Vajtswv, tus uas ua rau tej nplaim dej hiav txwv nrov; Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yog kuv lub npe.
- 16 Thiab kuv tau muab kuv tej lus tso rau hauv nej lub qhov ncauj, thiab tau muab nej npog rau hauv kuv txhais tes tus duab ntxoov ntxoo, xwv kom kuv thiaj tau tsim tej ntuj thiab tsim tej chaw tuav lub ntiaj teb, thiab hais rau Xi-oos tias: Saib seb, nej yog kuv cov neeg.
- 17 Cia li tsim, cia li tsim dheev, cia li sawv tsees sawv ntsug, Au Yeluxalees, cov uas tau haus tus Tswv lub khob uas npau taws ntawm nws txhais tes—nej tau haus tej uas tog rau hauv qab khob ntawm lub khob mob khob ntsaj—

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury— thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

18 Thiab tag nrho nws tej tub uas nws yug los tsis muaj leej twg yuav coj nws kev thiab kuj tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav los cab nws tes thiab, tag nrho cov tub uas nws yug hlob ntawd.

19 Ob tug tub no tau los rau koj, nkawd yuav tu siab rau koj—koj txoj kev puas tsuaj thiab puas ntsoog, thiab kev tshaib kev nqhis thiab rab ntaj—thiab los ntawm leej twg es kuv thiaj yuav nplij koj lub siab?

20 Koj tej tub tau mob tsis nco qab lawm, tsuas yog tshuav ob tug no xwb; lawv pw rau tom txhua txoj hau kev; zoo li ib tug heev nyuj qus uas nyob hauv nkuaj, lawv tau tag nrho tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws, uas yog koj tus Vajtsv txoj kev cem ntuas.

21 Yog li ntawd nim no cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog qhov no, nej cov uas raug kev kub ntxhov, thiab haus qaug, thiab tsis yog qaug cawv:

22 Koj tus Tswv hais li no, tus Tswv thiab koj tus Vajtsv twb thov rau nws cov neeg; saib seb, kuv tau muab lub khob mob khob ntsaj, uas ntim cov txo tog rau hauv qab khob ntawm kuv lub khob uas npau taws tshem tawm ntawm koj txhais tes mus lawm; koj yuav tsis tau haus nws ntxiv lawm.

23 Tiam sis kuv yuav muab nws tso rau hauv cov uas tsim kev kub ntxhov rau koj txhais tes; cov uas tau hais rau koj hais tias: Cia li pe, es cia peb hla mus—thiab koj tau pw ntog zoo li tej av thiab zoo li txoj kev cia lawv hla mus.

24 Cia li tsim, cia li tsim dheev, cia li muab nej lub zog los coj, Au Xi-oos es; cia li muab koj tej ris tsho uas zoo zoo nkauj coj los hnav, Au Yeluxalees, lub nroog dawb huv es; vim txij li no mus yuav tsis muaj leej twg uas tsis tau ua kev cai txiav thiab tsis huv los tau rau hauv koj ntxiv lawm.

25 Cia li nchos koj tus kheej ntawm tej hmoov av; cia li sawv, thiab zaum, Au Yeluxalees; tso koj tus kheej tawm ntawm tej hlua ntawm koj caj dab, Au tus ntxhais uas raug txhom ntawm Xi-oos es.

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

2 Nifais 9

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv tau nyeem tej no xwv kom nej yuav paub txog tus Tswv tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi nrog tsev neeg Ixayees txhua leej txhua tus huv tib si lawm—
- 2 Tias nws twb tau hais rau cov Neeg Yudais lawm, los ntawm nws tej yaj saub dawb huv tej ncauj, txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los, dhau ib tiam neeg mus rau ib tiam neeg, kom mus txog thaum lub sij hawm uas lawv yuav raug txum tim rov qab rau lub koom txoos uas tseeb tiag thiab mus cuag Vajtswv pab neeg; thaum uas lawv yuav raug sib sau los nyob ua ke rau hauv thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg, thiab yuav los ua noj ua haus thoob plaws rau hauv lawv tej av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, kuv hais tej no rau nej xwv kom nej yuav zoo siab, thiab tsa nej tej taub hau mus ib txhis li, vim tej koob hmoov uas tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav muab rau nej tej me nyuam.
- 4 Vim kuv paub hais tias nej coob leej, tau nrhiav los lawm ntau, kom paub tej xwm uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; yog li ntawd kuv paub tias nej yeej paub tias peb cev nqaij daim tawv yeej yuav tsum laus thiab tuag mus; txawm li ntawd los, ntawm peb cev nqaij daim tawv peb yeej yuav pom Vajtswv.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub tias nej yeej paub lawm hais tias ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv nws yuav ua nws tus kheej rau cov uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees pom, tim qhov chaw uas peb tau khiav tuaj lawm; vim tsim nyog tias nws yuav tsum tshwm sim nyob hauv lawv; vim yog ib qho uas tus Tsim Ntuj Tsim Teb uas muaj hwj chim yuav ywj nws tus kheej rau neeg, thiab tuag rau tej neeg sawv daws, xwv kom tib neeg txhua leej txhua rais los ywj rau ntawm nws.
- 6 Vim txoj kev tuag tau los rau neeg sawv daws txhua leej txhua tus, los ua kom tus Tsim Ntuj Tsim Teb uas muaj hwj chim lub tswv yim zoo uas tau npaj tiav lawm, yuav tsum muaj lub hwj chim ntawm kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los yuav tsum los rau noob neej vim yog txoj kev poob; thiab txoj kev poob tau los vim yog txoj kev txog kev txhaum; thiab vim noob neej tau rais los poob lawv tau raug ntiab khiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag.

2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

7 Yog li ntawd, nws yuav tsum muaj ib txog kev theej txhoj uas theej tag nrho li—yog tsis yog txoj kev theej txhoj uas theej tag nrho ces peb lub cev uas txawj ploj txawj tuag yuav peem tsheej tsis tau los mus ua lub cev uas tsis txawj ploj tsis txawj kawg li. Yog li ntawd, txoj kev txiav txim thawj zaug uas tau los rau noob neej yuav tsum muaj nyob mus tsis txawj kawg li. Thiab yog muaj li no, ces cev nqaij daim tawv no yeej yuav tsum tau pw lwj tsus thiab yuav ntsoog mus ua av, ces yuav sawv tsis tau li lawm.

8 Au Vajtswv txoj kev txawj ntse, nws txoj kev hlub tshua thiab txoj kev zoo! Vim saib seb, yog tias lub cev sawv tsis tau rov qab los lawm ces peb tej ntsuj plig yuav tsum rais los mus ywj rau ntawm tus tim tswv uas tau poob tawm ntawm Vajtswv tus uas nyob mus ib txhis lub xub ntiag, thiab rais los mus ua tus dab, uas yuav sawv tsis tau li lawm.

9 Thiab peb tej ntsuj plig yuav tsum tau rais los mus zoo li nws, thiab peb rais los mus ua tej dab, ua tej tim tswv rau tus dab, kom raug kaw nyob deb ntawm peb tus Vajtswv lub xub ntiag, thiab nrog leej txiv ntawm kev dag ntxias nyob, hauv txoj kev txom nyem, xws li nws tus kheej; muaj tseeb tiag, rau tus uas tau ntxias peb thawj nkawg niam txiv, tus uas tau hloov nws tus kheej tshwm los zoo ze li ib tug tim tswv ntawm kev kaj, thiab txhib kom noob neej tuav hauv tua neeg thiab ua txhua yam hauj lwj ntsiag twb to hauv kev tsaus ntuj.

10 Au peb tus Vajtswv txoj kev siab zoo zoo npaum li cas, nws tau npaj ib txoj kev rau peb khiav kom dim ntawm tus tsiaj dab qias neeg no tej rau tes; muaj tseeb tiag, tus tsiaj dab, txoj kev tuag thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus, uas kuv hu ua txoj kev tuag ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv, thiab kuj yog txoj kev tuag ntawm sab ntsuj plig.

11 Thiab vim txoj kev cawm ntawm peb tus Vajtswv, cov neeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, txoj kev tuag no, uas kuv tau hais txog lawm, uas yog ntiag teb li, yuav tso kom cov neeg tuag dim tau sawv los; txoj kev tuag ntawd yog lub qhov ntxa.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

12 Thiab txoj kev tuag uas kuv tau hais no, uas yog txoj kev tuag sab ntsuj plig, yuav xa nws cov tuag los; txoj kev tuag ntawm sab ntsuj plig yog ntuj txiag teb tsaus; yog li ntawd, txoj kev tuag thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav tsum xa lawv cov tuag los, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav tsum tau xa nws tej ntsuj plig uas raug kaw lawm los, thiab tej qhov ntxa yuav tsum xa lawv tej cev uas raug kaw lawm los, thiab tib neeg tej cev thiab tej ntsuj plig yuav raug txum tim rov los ua ke dua; thiab nws twb yog los ntawm Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.

13 Au peb tus Vajtswv lub tswv yim zoo npaum li cas! Vim tsis yog li ntawd mas, Vajtswv lub yeeb tsheej yuav tsum tau xa cov neeg ncaj ncees tej ntsuj plig los, thiab tej qhov ntxa yuav tau xa cov neeg ncaj ncees tej ntsuj plig los; thiab tej ntsuj plig thiab tej cev raug txum tim rov yuav los nyob ua ke li qub dua, thiab neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav rais los mus ua tau neeg tsis liam sij, thiab tsis txawj ploj tsis txawj tuag, thiab lawv yog cov neeg uas muaj sia nyob, es paub txhij txhua ib yam li thaum peb tseem muaj cev nqaij daim tawv, tsuas yog tias peb txoj kev paub yuav yog ib txog uas txhij tag nrho.

14 Yog li ntawd, peb yuav paub txhij tag nrho txog txhua txhia yam uas peb tau ua txhaum lawm, thiab peb tej kev tsis dawb huv, thiab peb tej kev txaj muag; thiab cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav paub txhij tag nrho txog lawv tej kev zoo siab, thiab lawv tej kev ncaj ncees, uas tau hnav qhov dawb huv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog muab txoj kev ncaj ncees lub tsho tshaj sab hnav.

15 Thiab nws yuav muaj tias thaum uas tib neeg txhua tus tau hla dhau txoj kev tuag thawj zaug no mus rau txoj sia lawm, kawg tias lawv tau rais los mus ua tau neeg tsis txawj ploj tsis txawj tuag lawm, lawv yuav tsum tau los rau ntawm Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv lub rooj txiav txim; thiab tom qab ntawd txoj kev txiav txim yuav los, ces lawv yuav raug txiav txim mus raws li Vajtswv txoj kev txiav txim dawb huv.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

16 Thiab tseeb tiag, li tus Tswv tseem muaj sia nyob, vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsvw tau hais li, thiab yog nws tej lus uas nyob mus ib txhis, uas tsis txawj ploj mus li, hais tias lawv cov uas ua neeg ncaj ncees yeej tseem yuav ua neeg ncaj ncees li qub; thiab lawv cov uas vuab tsuab yeej tseem yuav vuab tsuab li qub; yog li ntawd, lawv cov uas vuab tsuab yog tus dab thiab nws cov tim tswv; thiab lawv yuav raug ntiab mus rau hauv lub qhov cub uas cig kav ib txhis li, uas tau npaj rau lawv; thiab lawv txoj kev tsim txom yuav yog ib lub pas dej hluav taws thiab nplaim leej faj cig nroo ntws mus ib txhis thiab ib txhis thiab tsis muaj hnuv kawg li.

17 Au peb tus Vajtsvw lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev txim lij! Vim nws ua txhua txhia yam uas nws tau hais, thiab lawv tau tawm hauv nws lub qhov ncauj mus, thiab nws txoj kev cai yeej yuav tsum ua kom tiav li ntawd.

18 Tiam sis, saib seb, cov neeg ncaj ncees, Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv haiv neeg ntseeg, lawv cov uas tau ntseeg Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, lawv cov uas tau tiv lub ntiaj teb tej ntoo khaub lig, thiab tsis quav ntsej nws txoj kev txaj muag, lawv yuav tau txais Vajtsvw lub nceeg vaj los ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg, qhov uas yeej tau npaj cia rau lawv txij li puag thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los, thiab lawv txoj kev xyiv fab yuav muaj puv npo mus ib txhis li.

19 Au peb tus Vajtsvw, uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv txoj kev hluv uas tsim txiaj heev es! Vim nws tau cawm nws haiv neeg ntseeg dim ntawm tus tsiaj dab qias neeg uas yog tus dab, thiab txoj kev tuag, thiab ntuj txiaj teb tsaus, thiab lub pas dej hluav taws leej faj, uas yog txoj kev tsim txom tsis txawj kawg li.

20 Au peb tus Vajtsvw txoj kev dawb huv zoo npaum li cas! Vim nws paub ib puas tsav yam huv tib si, thiab tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas nws yuav tsis paub li.

21 Thiab nws los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb xwv kom nws yuav cawm tau noob neej txhua leej txhua tus yog tias lawv yuav mloog nws lub suab; vim saib seb, nws yuav nyiaj tej mob uas neeg sawv daws tsim txom nws, muaj tseeb tiag, yuav nyiaj tej mob tej nkeeg ntawm txhua tus neeg, tsis hais poj niam, txiv neej, los sis me nyuam yaus, cov uas yog Adas tsev neeg.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

- 22 Thiab nws tau nyiaj tej no xwv kom neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav tau txais txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, xwv kom sawv daws yuav tau los sawv ntsug ntawm nws lub xub ntiag nyob rau hauv hnuv uas txiav txim loj.
- 23 Thiab nws kom neeg txhua leej txhua tus huv tib si yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, thiab ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm nws lub npe, muaj kev ntseeg tag nrho rau hauv Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, los sis yog tsis li ces lawv yuav tsis raug cawm dim nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 24 Thiab yog hais tias lawv tsis hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg nws lub npe, thiab ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm nws lub npe, thiab nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg, ces lawv yuav tsum raug txim; vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv, Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, tau hais li ntawd.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, nws tau muab ib txoj kev cai; thiab yog qhov uas tsis tau muab kev cai qhov ntawd kuj tsis muaj kev rau txim; thiab yog tsis muaj kev rau txim ces yeej tsis muaj kev nyob txim; thiab qhov uas tsis muaj kev nyob txim Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv txoj kev hlub twb zam txim rau lawv, vim yog txoj kev theej txhoj; vim lawv tau raug dim los ntawm nws lub hwj chim.
- 26 Vim txoj kev theej txhoj yuav them rau nws txoj kev txim lij tej kev txiav txim rau txhua tus uas tsis tau muab txoj kev cai rau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav raug cawm dim ntawm tus tsiaj dab ntawd, txoj kev tuag thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus, thiab ntawm tus dab phem, thiab ntawm lub pas dej hluav taws leej faj, uas muaj kev tsim txom tsis txawj kawg; thiab lawv yuav raug txum tim rov rau tus Vajtswv tus uas tau muab pa rau lawv, uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv.
- 27 Tiam sis kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tus uas tau muaj txoj kev cai, muaj tseeb tiag, cov uas muaj Vajtswv tej lus txib tag nrho, uas zoo ib yam li peb, thiab muaj los tsis ceev tej kev cai ntawd, thiab nkim nws tej hnuv nyoog sim siab ua lwj ua liam, nws yuav raug txim phem heev!

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

28 Au tus uas phem lub tswv yim ntse ntawd! Au tib neeg txoj kev muaj plhus, txoj kev qaug zog, thiab txoj kev ruam es! Thaum uas lawv tau kawm paub lawv xav hais tias lawv txawj lawv ntse lawm, thiab lawv txawm tsis quav ntsej Vajtswv tej lus qhuab qhia li lawm, vim lawv muab tshuaj tseg cia ib sab, xav hais tias lawv paub lawv lawm, yog li ntawd, lawv tej kev txawj ntse yog kev ruam xwb thiab tej ntawd yuav pab tsis tau lawv li. Thiab lawv yeej yuav piam sij mus.

29 Tiam sis kev kawm txawj kawm ntse yog ib qho zoo yog lawv mloog Vajtswv tej lus qhuab qhia.

30 Tiam sis kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov neeg nplua nuj, cov uas nplua nuj rau tej khoom ntiaj teb. Vim thaum lawv nplua nuj lawv saib tsis taus cov neeg pluag, thiab lawv tsim txom cov neeg uas txo hwj chim, thiab lawv tej siab tej ntsws tsuas nyob nraim ntawm lawv tej nyiaj txiag; yog li ntawd, lawv tej nyiaj txiag yog lawv tus vajtswv. Thiab saib seb, lawv tej nyiaj txiag kuj yuav nrog lawv piam sij mus tib yam nkaus.

31 Thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg lag ntseg uas tsis kam mloog; vim lawv yuav piam sij mus.

32 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg dig muag uas tsis kam pom; vim lawv kuj yuav piam sij tib yam nkaus.

33 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg uas tsis muaj lub siab ntseeg, vim txoj kev paub ntawm lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees yuav ua rau lawv mob heev nyob hauv hnuv kawg.

34 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg dag, vim nws yuav raug pov mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.

35 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg tua neeg uas txhob txwm tua, vim nws yeej yuav tuag.

36 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tej neeg uas ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug, vim lawv yuav raug muab pov rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.

37 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov uas teev dab teev mlom, vim tus dab ntawm cov dab tag nrho yuav zoo siab kawg nkaus rau lawv.

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

38 Thiab, lo kawg no, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau txhua leej txhua tus uas tuag nyob hauv lawv tej kev txog kev txhaum; vim lawv yuav rov qab mus cuag Vajtswv, thiab yuav pom nws lub ntsej muag, thiab lawv tseem yuav nyob hauv lawv tej kev txog kev txhaum.

39 Au, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, nco ntsoov txoj kev phem heev uas yog tawm tsam tus Vajtswv Dawb Huv ntawd, thiab txoj kev phem heev uas yog mloog tej lus ntxias ntawm tus uas txawj txawj ntxias. Nco ntsoov tias, kev xav txog khoom ntiag teb yog txoj kev tuag, thiab kev xav txog tej uas yog sab ntsuj plig yog txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.

40 Au, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, cia li cuab pob ntseg mloog kuv tej lus. Nco ntsoov Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv tej kev tshav ntuj. Tsis txhob hais tias kuv tau qhia tej yam uas nyuaj heev rau nej; vim yog nej hais, ces yog nej yuav hais saib tsis taus qhov tseeb; vim kuv tsuas qhia tus uas Tsim nej tej lus xwb. Kuv paub hais tias tej lus tseeb mas yeej nyuaj kawg nkaus rau cov neeg tsis dawb huv txhua leej txhua tus; tiam sis cov neeg ncaj ncees yeej tsis ntshai tej ntawd li, vim lawv hlub txoj kev tseeb thiab yeej tsis tsee.

41 Au ces, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, cia li los cuag tus Tswv, uas yog Tus Dawb Huv. Nco ntsoov tias nws tej kev mas yog tej uas ncaj ncees. Saib seb, txoj kev uas rau neeg taug mas nqaim kawg, tiam sis nws mus ncaj nraim rau tus Tswv, thiab tus uas zov lub rooj vag yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; thiab nws tsis ntiav ib tug tub qhe zov li; thiab tsis muaj lwm txoj kev li tsuas yog mus ntawm lub rooj vag xwb; vim yuav dag ntxias tsis tau nws, vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yog nws lub npe.

42 Thiab cov uas khob qhov rooj, nws yuav qhib qhov rooj rau tus ntawd; tej neeg txawj ntse, thiab tej neeg kawm paub, thiab lawv cov uas nplua nuj, uas khav txiv vim lawv tej kev kawm, thiab lawv tej tswv yim, thiab lawv tej kev nplua nuj—muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yog cov uas nws yuav tsis quav ntsej; thiab tsuas yog lawv yuav muab tej no pov tseg mus xwb, thiab yuav tsum xav hais tias lawv yog neeg ruam rau ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag, thiab txo lawv tej hwj chim tiag tiag los, tsis yog li ntawd mas nws yuav tsis qhib qhov rooj rau lawv.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

43 Tiam sis tej neeg txawj ntse thiab tej neeg xyuam xim tej xwm yuav raug muab koj mus zais kom lawv tsis pom mus ib sim neej—muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev zoo siab ntawd uas tau npaj rau cov ntseeg.

44 Au, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es; nco ntsoov kuv tej lus. Saib seb, kuv hle kuv tej ris tsho, thiab kuv muab nchos rau nej pom; kuv thov Vajtswv uas yog kuv txoj kev cawm seeg kom nws muab nws lub qhov muag uas pom tas ib puas yam tsav saib kuv; yog li ntawd, thaum txog hnuv kawg nej yeej yuav paub, thaum uas neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav raug txiav txim rau lawv tej hauj lwm, hais tias Ixayees tus Vajtswv tau ua tim khawv tias kuv tau nchos nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tawm ntawm kuv mus lawm, thiab tias kuv yuav sawv ntsug ci ntsa iab ntawm nws xub ntiag, thiab kuv yuav tsis raug nej tej txim.

45 Au, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, tig txav kom deb ntawm nej tej kev txog kev txhaum; hle nws tej saw hlau uas khi nej khov khov kom plam; cia li los cuag tus Vajtswv uas yog nej qhov chaw cuab zog ntawm nej txoj kev cawm seeg.

46 Npaj nej tej ntsuj plig rau hnuv ci ntsa iab uas thaum cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav tau txais txoj kev txim lij, twb yog hnuv txiav txim, xwv kom nej yuav tsis nkaum nrog txoj kev ntshai; xwv kom nej yuav tsis nco txog nej tej kev txhaum huv tib si li, thiab yuav kom nej tau los qw nrov nrov hais tias: Au tus Tswv Vajtswv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus, koj txoj kev txiav txim mas ncaj ncees, ncaj ncees kawg—tiam sis kuv paub kuv txoj kev txhaum; kuv tau ua txhaum koj txoj kev cai, thiab kuv tej kev txhaum puav leej yog kuv li; thiab tus dab tau kuv lawm, xwv kom kuv yuav ua nws txoj kev txom nyem uas phem heev ib tug qhev.

47 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, puas tsim nyog kuv yuav tsa kom nej tsim rau ntawm tej yam xwm tiag tiag no los rau saum yaj no? Kuv puas yuav tsim txom nej tej ntsuj nplig yog hais tias nej tej siab yeej huv huv lawm? Kuv puas yuav qhia meej rau nej raws li txoj kev meej ntawm qhov tseeb yog nej yeej tsis muaj kev txhaum?

48 Saib seb, yog nej yeej dawb huv lawm ces kuv yeej yuav hais rau nej txog tej kev dawb huv thiab xwb; tiam sis xws li nej tsis dawb huv, es nej ho ntsia kuv zoo li ib tug xib hwb, ces nws yuav tsum tsim nyog tias kuv qhia nej txog lub nra ntawm txoj kev txog txhaum.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

49 Saib seb, kuv tus ntsuj plig ntxub tej kev txog kev txhaum, thiab kuv lub siab nyiam txoj kev ncaj ncees; thiab kuv yuav qhuas kuv tus Vajtswv lub npe uas dawb huv.

50 Cia li los, kuv cov kwv tij, txhua tus uas nqhis, nej cia li los rau ntawm cov dej; thiab tus uas tsis muaj nyiaj, cia li los muas thiab los noj; muaj tseeb tiag, cia li los muas kua txiv hmab thiab kua mis tsis yuav nyiaj thiab tsis yuav nqi li.

51 Yog li ntawd, tsis txhob siv nyiaj rau tej uas tsis tsim nqi, los sis txhob siv nej tej zog rau tej uas yuav tsis txaus nej siab. Cia li mob siab mloog kuv, thiab nco ntsoov tej lus uas kuv tau qhia lawm; thiab cia li los cuag Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, thiab cia siab rau tej uas yuav piam sij tsis tau, los sis tsis txawj lwj mus, thiab cia nej tej ntsuj plig nyob kaj siab rau tej khoom noj nplua mias.

52 Saib seb, cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, nco ntsoov nej tus Vajtswv tej lus; thaum nruab hnub cia li thov nws kom tsis tu ncuas, thiab thaum hmo ntuj cia li ua tsaug rau nws lub npe uas dawb huv. Cia nej tej siab tej ntsws zoo siab.

53 Thiab saib seb tus Tswv tej kev khi lus zoo npaum li cas, thiab nws txoj kev uas tau nqis los nrog noob neej nyob zoo kawg nkaus li; thiab vim nws txoj kev tshav ntuj, txoj kev zoo, thiab txoj kev hlub tshua, nws tau cog lus tseg rau peb tias peb tej noob yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj mus huv tib si, raws li sab cev nqaij daim tawv, tiam sis nws yuav tseg lawv; thiab nyob rau hauv ntau tiam neeg yav tom ntej lawv yuav rais los mus ua ib ceg neeg ncaj ncees rau tsev neeg Ixayees.

54 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv yuav qhia rau nej ntxiv; tiam sis cia tag kis tso kuv mam li hais cov lus uas kuv tshuav rau nej. Amees.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

2 Nifais 10

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Yakhauj, rov qhia rau nej dua, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, uas hais txog ceg neeg ncaj ncees uas kuv tau hais lawm.
- 2 Vim saib seb, tej lus cog tseg uas peb tau txais lawm yog tej lus cog tseg rau peb raws li sab cev nqaij daim tawv; yog li ntawd, li uas nws tau qhia rau kuv tias muaj coob leej ntawm peb tej me nyuam yuav piam sij rau sab cev nqaij daim tawv vim txoj kev tsis ntseeg, txawm li ntawd los, Vajtswv tseem yuav hlub tshua coob leej thiab; thiab peb tej me nyuam yuav raug txum tim rov los, xwv kom lawv yuav los rau qhov uas yuav muab kev paub txog qhov tseeb ntawm lawv tus Txhiv Dim rau lawv.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej lawm, nws tsim nyog tias tus Khetos—vim nag hmo tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias nws lub npe yuav tsum hu li no—yuav los rau hauv cov Neeg Yudais, los rau hauv cov uas ua phem heev dua li luag lwm tus nyob hauv ntiaj teb no; thiab lawv yuav muab nws ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig—vim Vajtswv yeej pom zoo li no, thiab yeej tsis muaj ib haiv neeg twg uas nyob hauv ntiaj teb no es yuav muab lawv tus Vajtswv ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig.
- 4 Vim yog hais tias tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj no tau ua rau hauv lwm haiv neeg ces lawv yeej yuav hloov siab lees txim, thiab paub hais tias nws yog lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 5 Tiam sis vim tej xib hwb cuav tej hauj lwm thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, lawv cov uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees yuav ua lawv tej caj dab tawv qhwb qhawv tsis kam lees yuav nws, es kom muab nws ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, vim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, tej kev puas tsuaj, tej kev tshaib kev nqhis, tej kab mob kev nkeeg, thiab tej kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog yuav los raug rau lawv; thiab lawv cov uas tsis raug puas tsuaj los yuav raug khiav ri niab mus rau txhua txhia haiv neeg huv tib si.
- 7 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li no: Thaum txog hnuv uas lawv yuav los ntseeg kuv, tias kuv yog tus Khetos, ces kuv yuav rov qab ceev tej lus uas kuv tau khi tseg rau lawv tej yawg koob tias lawv yuav raug txum tim rov los ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv, nyob rau hauv lub ntiaj teb no, rov mus rau tej av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg.

2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

- 8 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau nyob ri niab ntev heev lawm lawv yuav raug muab sau los ua ke dua, yuav los hauv tej koog pov txwv ntawm tej dej hiav txwv, thiab los hauv plaub ceg kaum ntuj los; thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tsim txiaj heev nyob ntawm kuv lub qhov muag, Vajtswv hais li ntawd, ntawm qhov uas yuav coj lawv los mus rau tej av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg.
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, Lwm Haiv Neeg tej vaj ntxwv yuav ua txiv qhuav tu yug rau lawv, thiab lawv tej niam vaj ntxwv yuav rais los ua lawv niam qhuav tu yug; yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tej lus cog tseg yog cov uas zoo kawg nkaus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, vim nws tau hais li, thiab leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm cam tau?
- 10 Tiam sis saib seb, thaj av no, Vajtswv tau hais tias, yuav yog ib thaj av uas cia ua nej qub txeeg qub teg, thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tau txais koob hmoov nyob rau saum thaj av no.
- 11 Thiab thaj av no yuav yog ib thaj av uas nyob ywj siab pub rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab yuav tsis muaj vaj ntxwv nyob saum thaj av no, tsa rau Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 12 Thiab kuv yuav txhawb thaj av no lub dag lub zog tawm tsam lwm haiv neeg huv tib si.
- 13 Thiab Vajtswv hais tias, tus uas tuaj tawm tsam Xi-oos tus ntawd yuav raug piam sij.
- 14 Vim tus uas tsa ib tug vaj ntxwv sawv tawm tsam kuv yuav raug piam sij, vim kuv, tus Tswv, uas yog tus vaj ntxwv saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, yuav los ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv, thiab kuv yuav ua lub teeb rau lawv cov uas mloog kuv tej lus mus ib txhis li.
- 15 Yog li ntawd, vim tej yam xwm no, kom kuv tej kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi rau noob neej yuav raug ua kom tiav, tias kuv yuav pab lawv thaum lawv tseem ua neej nyob, kuv yuav tsum ua kom tej hauj lwm ntsiag to ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj, tej neeg tua neeg, thiab tej kev phem kev qias puas tsuaj mus.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, tus uas tawm tsam Xi-oos, tag nrho cov Neeg Yudais thiab tag nrho Lwm Haiv Neeg, tag nrho cov neeg ua qhev thiab cov neeg dim txim, tag nrho poj niam thiab txiv neej, yuav piam sij; vim lawv yog cov tib neeg ntiaj teb uas ua phem ua qias; vim tus uas tsis tuaj kuv tog tus ntawd yeej tawm tsam kuv, peb tus Vajtswv hais li.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

- 17 Vim kuv yuav ua kom kuv tej lus uas kuv tau cog tseg rau noob neej, tias kuv yuav pab lawv thaum lawv tseem ua neej nyob no, tiav—
- 18 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, peb tus Vajtswv hais li no: Kuv yuav kom Lwm Haiv Neeg ua kom nej tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv muaj kev kub ntxhov; txawm li ntawd los, kuv yuav ua kom Lwm Haiv Neeg muaj siab mos siab muag, xwv kom lawv yuav zoo li leej txiv rau nej tej noob; yog li ntawd, Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tau txais koob hmoov thiab yuav raug suav nrog tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 19 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav tshwj thaj av no tseg cia rau nej tej noob, thiab rau lawv cov uas yuav los nrog nej tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv nyob, mus tas mus li, ua thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg; vim Vajtswv tau hais rau kuv tias nws yog thaj av uas zoo tshaj li lwm thaj av huv tib si, yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom txhua tus neeg uas nyob rau saum thaj av no teev tiam kuv, Vajtswv hais li.
- 20 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, peb pom tau tias peb tus Vajtswv uas muaj kev hlub tau qhia rau peb paub ntau yam txog tej xwm no kawg li, cia peb nco ntsoov txog nws, thiab muab peb tej kev txhaum tso pov tseg, thiab tsis txhob nyo peb tej taub hau, vim peb twb tsis raug ntiab tawm; txawm li ntawd los, peb tau raug tav tawm ntawm thaj av uas yog peb qub txeeg qub teg; tiam sis peb tau raug koj tuaj rau ib thaj av uas zoo dua lawm, vim tus Tswv tau muab tus dej hiav txwv ua peb txoj kev, thiab peb tau nyob rau saum ib lub koog pov txwv hauv dej hiav txwv.
- 21 Tiam sis tus Tswv tej lus cog tseg uas nws tau cog rau lawv cov uas nyob rau sau tej koog pov txwv mas tseem ceeb kawg nkaus li; yog li ntawd ib yam li nws hais tias tej koog pov txwv, mas nws yeej yuav tsum muaj ntau lub koog pov txwv dua li no, thiab peb cov kwv tij kuj tau txais nyob hauv cov koog pov txwv ntawd.
- 22 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau koj cov neeg hauv tsev neeg Ixayees khiav ib lub sij hawm dhau ib lub sij hawm, raws nraim li nws lub siab nyiam thiab nws pom zoo. Thiab nim no saib seb, tus Tswv yeej nco ntsoov txhua leej txhua tus uas tau ntshua lawm huv tib si, yog li ntawd nws kuj nco ntsoov txog peb thiab.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

- 23 Yog li ntawd, nej cia li zoo siab hlo, thiab nco ntsoov tias nej muaj kev ywj pheej ua dab tsi rau nej los tau—yuav xaiv txoj kev tuag uas kav mus ib txhis los sis xaiv txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.
- 24 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, cia li ua nej lub neej mus raws li Vajtswv nyiam, thiab tsis txhob ua mus raws li tus dab lub siab nyiam thiab mus raws li cev nqaij daim tawv; thiab nco ntsoov tias, tom qab uas nej ua li Vajtswv nyiam lawm, qhov uas nej raug cawm dim twb yog nyob hauv thiab dhau los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev zoo xwb.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los thov Vajtswv tsa nej sawv hauv txoj kev tuag, thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj thov Vajtswv tsa nej sawv hauv txoj kev tuag uas kav ib txhis, xwv kom nej yuav tau raug txais mus nyob rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj uas nyob mus ib txhis, xwv kom nej yuav qhuas nws los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev zoo. Ameen.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

2 Nifais 11

- 1 Thiab nim no, Yakhauj tau hais ntau yam xwm ntxiv rau kuv cov neeg nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd; txawm li ntawd los tsuas yog tej yam no xwb uas kuv tau muab sau tseg, vim tej uas kuv tau muab sau cia lawm kuv xav hais tias txaus lawm.
- 2 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, sau ntxiv txog Yaxayas tej lus, vim kuv zoo siab heev rau nws tej lus. Vim kuv yuav muab nws tej lus los piv rau kuv cov neeg, thiab kuv yuav xa tej lus no mus thoob plaws rau kuv tej me nyuam huv tib si, vim nws tau pom kuv tus Txhiv Dim lawm tiag, twb ib yam li kuv tau pom nws.
- 3 Thiab kuv tus kwv, Yakhauj, kuj tau pom nws ib yam li uas kuv tau pom nws; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav xa lawv tej lus mus rau kuv cov me nyuam mus xyaum kom lawv paub tseeb tias kuv tej lus muaj tseeb tiag. Yog li ntawd, los ntawm peb tug cov lus, Vajtswv tau hais tias, kuv yuav tsa qhov tseeb ntawm kuv lo lus. Txawm li ntawd los, Vajtswv tau xa ntau tus tim khawv ntxiv, thiab nws tau xyam qhia nws tej lus huv tib si.
- 4 Saib seb, kuv lub siab nyiam xyam qhov tseeb rau kuv cov neeg txog qhov uas tus Khetos yuav los tiag; rau qhov, vim yog lub ntsiab no thiaj li muaj Mauxes txoj kev cai; thiab txhua txhia yam huv tib si uas Vajtswv muab los rau noob neej txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los, yog tej cim uas qhia txog yam nws yuav ua.
- 5 Thiab kuv kuj txaus siab heev rau tus Tswv tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi tseg rau peb tej yawg koob; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv txaus siab heev rau nws txoj kev zoo, thiab nws txoj kev txim lij, thiab nws lub hwj chim, thiab nws txoj kev hlub uas muaj nyob hauv lub tswv yim tseem ceeb thiab nyob mus ib txhis ntawm txoj kev cawm dim los ntawm txoj kev tuag.
- 6 Thiab kuv txaus siab heev rau qhov tseeb rau kuv cov neeg tias tsuas yog tus Khetos los pab xwb mas noob neej txhua tus thiaj li yuav tsum piam sij.
- 7 Vim yog tsis muaj tus Khetos ces yeej tsis muaj Vajtswv; thiab yog tsis muaj Vajtswv ces yeej tsis muaj peb, vim yuav tsis muaj kev tsim lub qab ntuj no. Tiam sis nws muaj Vajtswv, thiab nws yog tus Khetos, thiab nws yeej yuav los thaum txog nws lub sij hawm lawm.

2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

8 Thiab nim no kuv sau Yaxayas ib txhia lus tseg cia, xwv kom kuv cov neeg leej twg tau pom tej lus no yuav txhawb nqa lawv tej siab tej ntsws thiab muaj kev zoo siab rau tib neeg sawv daws. Nim no cov no yog cov lus, thiab cia nej muab lawv piv rau nej thiab rau neeg txhua leej txhua tus.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

2 Nifais 12

- 1 Lo lus uas Amoj tus tub Yaxayas tau pom txog Yudas thiab Yeluxalees:
- 2 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv lub caij kawg, thaum lub roob ntawm tus Tswv lub tsev nyob yuav raug tsa rau saum tej ncov roob, thiab yuav raug tsa nyob siab dua li tej roob, thiab txhua haiv neeg yuav ntws los mus rau nws.
- 3 Thiab muaj neeg coob yuav mus thiab hais tias, nej cia li los, thiab cia peb nce mus rau saum tus Tswv lub roob, mus rau ntawm Yakhauj tus Vajtsv lub tsev; thiab nws yuav qhia rau peb txog nws tej kab tej ke, thiab peb yuav taug nws tej kev; vim txoj kev cai yeej yuav tawm hauv Xi-oos mus, thiab tus Tswv txoj lus yuav tuaj hauv Yeluxalees tuaj.
- 4 Thiab nws yuav txiav txim rau txhua haiv neeg, thiab yuav cem neeg coob leej ntau tus hnyav heev: thiab lawv yuav muab lawv tej ntaj los ntaus ua khais, thiab muab lawv tej hmuov los ntaus ua liag—ib haiv neeg yuav tsis tsa ntaj tawm tsam ib haiv neeg, thiab lawv yuav tsis kawm ua tsov ua rog ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.
- 5 Au Yakhauj tsev neeg, nej cia li los thiab cia peb mus kev hauv tus Tswv txoj kev kaj; muaj tseeb tiag, los los mas, vim nej txhua tus tau mus yuam kev lawm, txhua leej txhua tus nyias mus rau nyias tej kev phem.
- 6 Yog li ntawd, Au tus Tswv es, koj tau muab koj cov neeg, uas yog Yakhauj tsev neeg tso lam theeb puam, vim lawv tau coj lawv tej dab qhuas mus raws li cov neeg uas tuaj pem sab hnuv tuaj tej dab qhuas, thiab lawv mus mloog rau tej niag neeg uas txawj saib kab tes li cov neeg Filitees, thiab lawv zoo siab rau tej uas yog neeg pej kum teb tej me nyuam.
- 7 Lawv lub teb chaws kuj muaj nyiaj muaj kub nplua mias, lawv tej nyiaj txiag yeej tsis muaj qhov uas yuav tag ib zaug li; lawv lub teb chaws los kuj muaj nees puv npo, thiab lawv tej tsheb nees luag yeej tsis paub tas li.
- 8 Lawv lub teb chaws los kuj muaj mlom puv nkaus; lawv teev tiam tej uas lawv ob txhais tes ua, tej uas lawv tej ntiv tes tau ua.
- 9 Thiab tus neeg phem nws yeej tsis kam nyo taub hau, thiab tus neeg khav txiv nws yeej tsis kam txo nws lub hwj chim, yog li ntawd, yuav tsis zam txim rau nws.

2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

- 10 Au nej cov neeg uas phem es, cia li nkag mus rau hauv lub pob zeb, thiab cia li khiav nkaum rau hauv tej qhov taub, vim tus Tswv txoj kev uas sawv daws ntshai thiab lub yeeb koob ntawm nws lub hwj chim yuav nplawm nej.
- 11 Thiab yuav muaj tias tej neeg muaj plhus yuav raug txo hwj chim, thiab tej neeg khav txiv yuav raug kom nyo taub hau, thiab tus Tswv tib leej xwb thiaj yuav raug tsa kom siab hnuv ntawd.
- 12 Vim tsis ntev no hnuv uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv li yuav los rau txhua haiv neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, yuav los rau txhua leej txhua tus; muaj tseeb tiag, yuav los rau cov neeg khav txiv thiab cov neeg muaj plhus, thiab rau txhua tus uas khav txiv, thiab nws yuav raug txo hwj chim.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus Tswv hnuv yeej yuav los rau Lenpanoos tej ntoo ntshaub txhua tus huv tib si, vim lawv yog cov uas siab heev thiab tsis txo hwj chim hlo li; thiab yuav los rau Npasas tej ntoo ntseej txhua tus huv tib si;
- 14 Thiab yuav los rau tej roob siab siab txhua lub huv tib si, thiab yuav los rau txhua lub toj huv tib si, thiab yuav los rau txhua haiv neeg uas tsis txo hwj chim, thiab yuav los rau txhua txhia pab neeg;
- 15 Thiab yuav los rau txhua tus pej thuam uas siab, thiab yuav los rau txhua txhia tus ntsa laj kab;
- 16 Thiab yuav los rau txhua lub nkoj uas nyob hauv dej hiav txwv, thiab yuav los rau txhua lub nkoj nyob hauv Thasis, thiab yuav los rau txhua qhov chaw ntxim siab.
- 17 Thiab cov neeg muaj plhus yuav raug nyo taub hau, thiab cov neeg khav txiv yuav raug txo hwj chim; thiab tus Tswv tib leeg xwb thiaj yuav raug tsa kom siab hnuv ntawd.
- 18 Thiab nws yuav rhuav kom tej mlom puas tsuaj mus huv tib si.
- 19 Thiab lawv yuav tau mus rau hauv tej qhov tsua, thiab mus rau hauv tej qhov av, vim txoj kev ntshai ntawm tus Tswv yuav los rau saum lawv thiab yeeb koob ntawm nws lub hwj chim yuav los nplawm lawv, thaum uas nws sawv los co lub ntiaj teb no kom tshee hnyo.
- 20 Nyob rau hnuv ntawd neeg yuav muab nws tej mlom nyiaj, thiab nws tej mlom kub, uas nws tau ua coj los teev tiam, pov tseg rau tej tshwb liag thiab tej puav;

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

21 Yuav mus rau hauv tej pob zeb uas muaj chaw nrug, thiab mus rau saum tej ncov pob zeb uas ua pob caus, vim txoj kev uas neeg ntshai tus Tswv yuav los rau saum lawv thiab lub hwj chim ntawm nws lub yeeb koob yuav nplawm lawv, thaum uas nws sawv los co lub ntiaj teb no kom tshee hnyo.

22 Cia li tsum tsis txhob cia siab rau tib neeg, cov uas ua pa tawm ntawm nws qhov ntswg; vim nws puas muaj yam dab tsi uas tseem ceeb?

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

2 Nifais 13

- 1 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv, uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv, yuav muab tej khoom noj thiab khoom haus, zaub mov noj tag nrho, thiab tej dej haus huv tib si tshem tawm hauv Yeluxalees, thiab hauv Yudas—
- 2 Tus neeg muaj hwj chim, thiab tus neeg ua tsov ua rog, tus neeg txiav txim, thiab tus yaj saub, thiab tus neeg txawj ntse, thiab tus txwj laus neeg;
- 3 Tus thawj tub rog pawg tsib caug, thiab tus neeg ua nom ua tswv, thiab tus neeg pab cuam, thiab tus neeg uas txawj ua yees siv, thiab tus neeg uas txawj hais lus rau laj mej pej xeeb.
- 4 Thiab kuv yuav muab me nyuam rau lawv los ua lawv tej huab tais, thiab tej me nyuam mos yuav los kav lawv.
- 5 Thiab tej neeg yuav raug ib tug ua kom ib tug nyuaj siab, thiab txhua txhia leej yuav ua kom nws tej neeg zej zog muaj kev nyuaj siab; tus me nyuam yuav tsis ntshai tej laus, thiab tej laj mej pej xeeb sawv tawm tsam tej nom tej tswv.
- 6 Thaum muaj ib tug neeg yuav tuav nkaus nws tus kwv tij ntawm nws txiv tsev neeg, thiab yuav hais tias: Koj muaj ris tsho hnav, koj cia li los ua peb tus nom, thiab tsis txhob cia tej kev puas ntsoog no los rau hauv koj qab teg—
- 7 Nyob rau hnuv ntawd nws yuav tawv, hais tias: Kuv yuav tsis kam ua tus kho tib neeg; vim nyob hauv kuv lub tsev tsis muaj mov noj los sis tsis muaj ris tsho hnav; tsis txhob muab kuv ua tus nom kav cov neeg.
- 8 Vim Yeluxalees twb raug puas tsuaj lawm, thiab Yudas twb poob lawm, vim lawv tej nplaig thiab tej hauj lwm lawv ua, tau tawm tsam tus Tswv, kom twb qaug lub qhov muag ntawm nws lub yeeb koob.
- 9 Lawv tej ntsej muag twb ua tim khawv rau lawv, thiab tshaj lawv tej kev txhaum zoo ib yam li cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog Xaudoos, thiab lawv yeej zais tsis tau li. Lawv tej ntsuj plig yuav raug kev txom nyem, vim lawv tau muab nqe zog phem rov rau lawv!
- 10 Hais rau cov neeg ncaj ncees tias lawv yuav noj qab nyob zoo; vim lawv yuav tau noj tej txiv ntoo uas lawv ua.

2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

11 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov neeg phem, vim lawv yuav piam sij mus; vim lub nqi zog ntawm lawv tej tes yuav los raug rau lawv!

12 Thiab kuv cov neeg, tej me nyuam yog lawv tej neeg tsim kev nyuaj siab, thiab tej poj niam kav lawv. Au kuv cov neeg es, lawv cov uas koj nej ua kom nej ua txhaum thiab rhuav nej tej kev.

13 Tus Tswv twb sawv ntsug hais, thiab sawv los txiav txim rau cov neeg.

14 Tus Tswv yuav txiav txim rau nws tej txwj laus neeg thiab cov tub huab tais uas nyob hauv lawv; vim nej tau muab tej khoom tom tej neeg pluag tog vaj thiab tog tsev koj los noj tag nyob hauv nej tej tsev.

15 Tus Tswv uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Vajtswv hais tias, nej xav tau dab tsi? Nej muab kuv cov neeg ntaus ntsoog txaws, thiab zom tej neeg pluag tej ntsej muag.

16 Tus Tswv hais ntxiv, hais tias: Vim Xi-oos tej ntxhais mas khav txiv heev, thiab mus kev mas ncaj caj dab thiab tej qhov muag mas cus ciav rau ub rau no, thaum lawv mus kev mas mus mi muaj plus ntxiag, thiab lawv tej ko taw mas nrov nrib nreeb—

17 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav foom kom Xi-oos tej ntxhais khaus taub hau thiab hle tawv, thiab tus Tswv yuav pom tau lawv tej yam uas npog ntshis.

18 Nyob rau hnuv ntawd tus Tswv yuav muab lawv tej saw nyiaj saw kub uas nrov zoo nkauj, thiab tej kaus mom paj, thiab saw caj dab uas kheej li lub hli pov tseg;

19 Tej saw hlau thiab saw tes, thiab tej phuam npog ntsej muag;

20 Tej kaus mom nyiaj kaus mom kub, thiab tej saw uas koj ntawm tej kav ceg, tej saw khi taub hau, thiab tej txws rau tshuaj tsw qab, thiab tej kauj ntseg;

21 Tej nplhaib, thiab tej kauj ntswg;

22 Tej ce ris tsho uas muaj nuj nqis, thiab tej kaus mom huab tais, thiab tej tsho loj, thiab tej hnab rau nyiaj;

23 Tej tsom qhov muag, thiab tej ntaub uas zoo zoo, thiab tej phuam vas taub hau thiab caj dab, thiab tej phuam npog qhov muag.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and cauls, and round tires like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

24 Thiab yuav muaj tias, tej qhov uas tsw qab ces
yuav raug tsw phem tuaj; thiab qhov uas yog txoj siv,
yuav yog txoj hlua tuaj; qhov uas muaj plaub hau
ntev loo, yuav do hau tuaj; qhov uas yog ib lub ntiab
tsuj ntiab npuag, yuav yog ib lub niag ntiab seev tsaj;
qhov uas zoo nkauj, yuav yog qhov uas kub hnyiab.

25 Koj tej neeg yuav tuag rau hniav ntaj hniav riam
thiab koj tej neeg uas muaj dag muaj zog yuav raug
poob tsam.

26 Thiab nws tej neeg yuav quaj ntsuag thiab tau kev
txom nyem; thiab nws yuav nyob qhuav qhawv,
thiab yuav zaum tib pob rau hauv av.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell
there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent;
and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of
a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead
of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in
the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she
shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

2 Nifais 14

- 1 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd, xya tus poj niam yuav yuav ib tug txiv neej, es hais tias: Peb yuav noj peb zaub peb mov, thiab hnav peb tsoos peb tsho; tsuas yog cia peb hu mus raws li koj lub npe xwb xwv kom tshem tau peb txoj kev txaj muag ntawm peb mus.
- 2 Nyob rau hnuv ntawd tus Tswv ceg neeg yuav zoo nkauj heev thiab muaj yeeb koob; lub ntiaj teb tej txiv hmab txiv ntoo yuav loj hlob thiab ua zoo rau lawv cov ntawm Ixayees uas tau dim ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab yuav muaj tias, lawv cov uas tseg nyob rau hauv Xi-oos thiab tseem nyob rau hauv Yeluxalees yuav raug hu ua cov neeg dawb huv, txhua leej txhua tus uas raug sau cia lawm nrog cov tseem muaj sia nyob rau hauv Yeluxalees—
- 4 Thaum tus Tswv tau ntxuav Xi-oos tej ntxhais qhov vuab tsuab, thiab tau ntxuav Yeluxalees tej ntshav kom dawb huv tawm ntawm sawv daws uas nyob hauv los ntawm txoj kev txiav txim tus ntsuj plig thiab los ntawm txoj kev kub hnyiab tus ntsuj plig.
- 5 Thiab tus Tswv yuav tsim ib tau huab uas muaj pa hluav taws nyob rau thaum nruab hnuv thiab tsim ib tug nplaim hluav taws uas cig ntsa iab nyob rau thaum tsaus ntuj rau saum lub roob Xi-oos txhua qhov chaw nyob; vim nyob rau saum tag nrho Xi-oos tej yeeb koob yuav tsum muaj kev thaiv.
- 6 Thiab yuav muaj ib lub tsev ntaub kom muaj duab ntsoo los roos hnuv thaum kub kub, thiab yog ib qho chaw nkaum, thiab yog ib qho chaw nyob nkaum cua daj cua dub thiab nkaum nag.

2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

2 Nifais 15

- 1 Thiab thaum ntawd kuv yuav hu ib zaj nkauj uas kuv nyiam rau tus neeg uas kuv hlub, hais chwv txog nws lub vaj txiv hmab. Tus neeg kuv hlub muaj ib lub vaj txiv hmab nyob pem ib lub roob uas txi txiv zoo heev.
- 2 Thiab nws tau xov laj kab ncig, thiab tau sau tej pob zeb hauv tawm pov tseg, thiab tau muab cov txiv hmab uas zoo tshaj plaws coj los cog rau hauv, thiab tau tsa ib tug pej thuam rau hauv plawv, thiab kuj tau txua ib lub tshuab tso kua txiv hmab rau hauv thiab; thiab nws ntsia ntsoov tias nyaj yuav txi txiv hmab, thiab nws ho mus txi txiv hmab qus lawm.
- 3 Thiab nim no, Au cov neeg uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees, thiab cov neeg hauv Yudas, kuv thov nej txiav txim, rau kuv thiab kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.
- 4 Tshuav tej yam dab tsi uas kuv tsis tau ua es kuv yuav tsum ua ntxiv rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab? Yog li ntawd, cas thaum kuv ntsia ntsoov saib puas yuav txi txiv hmab nws ho mus txi txiv hmab qus.
- 5 Thiab nim no, cia li mus, kuv yuav qhia rau nej saib kuv yuav ua li cas rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab—Kuv yuav muab tus laj kab ntawd tshem mus, thiab nws yuav raug noj kom tas; thiab kuv yuav tsoo kom cov phab ntsa ntawd vau mus, thiab nws yuav raug tsuj kom tiaj;
- 6 Thiab kuv yuav rhuav kom nws puas tsuaj mus; nws yuav tsis raug muab yim tej ceg los sis raug nthua; tiam sis yuav muaj nroj muaj pos tuaj; kuv kuj yuav ua kom tej huab tsis txhob tso kom muaj nag los rau hauv li.
- 7 Vim Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv lub vaj txiv hmab yog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab cov neeg hauv Yudas yog nws cov txiv hmab; thiab nws nrhiav kev txiav txim, tiam sis tsuas muaj kev tsim txom; nrhiav kev ncaj ncees, tiam sis saib seb tsuas muaj kev quaj ntsuag.
- 8 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov uas pheej mus koom ib tse rau ib tse, mus txog thaum tsis muaj ib qho chaw li lawm, es kom lawv yuav raug muab pov rau hauv plawv ntiaj teb lawv tus kheej!
- 9 Ntawm kuv ob lub pob ntseg, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tau hais tias, ntawm qhov tseeb ntau lub tsev yuav khoom qhuav qhawv, thiab tej nroog loj thiab zoo nkauj yuav tsis muaj neeg nyob li.

2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

- 10 Muaj tseeb tiag, dav li kaum lub vaj txiv hmab
yuav zom tau ib thoob kua txiv hmab xwb, thiab cog
kaum thoob noob yuav muab tau ib thoob nplej xwb.
- 11 Kev txom nyem yuav los raug rau lawv cov uas
sawv ntxov ntxov thaum sawv ntxov, xwv kom lawv
yuav tau los haus dej haus cawv ntau, es haus kom
mus txog thaum tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv qaug dej qaug
caw!
- 12 Thiab tej raj, tej ncas, tej nruas, thiab tej raj nkauj
see, thiab tej dej tej caw los kuj muaj nyob hauv lawv
tej kev noj kev haus; tiam sis lawv tsis xav txog tus
Tswv txoj hauj lwm, thiab yeej tsis xav txog tej uas
nws txhais tes ua tau.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov neeg tau raug mus poob cev
qhev, vim lawv tsis muaj kev paub; thiab lawv tej
neeg txawj ntse tau raug tshaib plab, thiab lawv tej
pab coob coob tau qhuav rau kev nqhis dej.
- 14 Yog li ntawd, ntuj txiag teb tsaus tau ua kom nws
haj yam loj tuaj, thiab tau rua nws lub qhov ncauj
dav dav; thiab lawv tej yeeb koob, thiab lawv tej pab
coob coob, thiab lawv tej kev ci zoo nkauj, thiab nws
tus uas zoo siab, yuav nqis mus rau hauv ntuj txiag
teb tsaus.
- 15 Thiab tus neeg tsiv tsaim yuav raug txo kom qis,
thiab tus neeg nto moo yuav raug txo hwj chim, thiab
cov neeg uas muaj qhov muag cus ciav yuav raug txo
hwj chim.
- 16 Tiam sis tus Tswv uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus
Tswv yuav raug tsa sawv siab nyob rau hauv txoj kev
txiav txim, thiab Vajtswv uas dawb huv yuav raug ua
kom dawb huv nyob rau txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 17 Thaum ntawd tej yaj yuav noj zaub li lawv ib
txwm noj, tej chaw puas tsuaj puas ntsoog ntawm tej
uas rog yuav raug tej pej kum noj.
- 18 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas tsis tso
lawv tej kev txhaum tseg vim lawv txoj kev khav
theeb, thiab cab lawv tej kev txhaum ib yam li cab ib
lub tsheb uas twm luag;
- 19 Uas hais tias: Cia nws nrawm nroos ua nws txoj
hauj lwm, xwv kom peb yuav pom tej ntawd; thiab
cia Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv txoj kev qhuab qhia los
tsuag tsuag, xwv kom peb yuav paub tej ntawd.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and
the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning,
that they may follow strong drink, that continue un-
til night, and wine inflame them!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe,
and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the
work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of
his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, be-
cause they have no knowledge; and their honorable
men are famished, and their multitude dried up with
thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened
her mouth without measure; and their glory, and
their multitude, and their pomp, and he that re-
joiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and
the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of
the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judg-
ment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in
righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and
the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of
vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work,
that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy
One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may
know it.

20 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas hu qhov phem ua qhov zoo, thiab qhov zoo ua qhov phem, uas hu txoj kev tsaus ntuj ua txoj kev kaj, thiab hu txoj kev kaj ua txoj kev tsaus ntuj, thiab muab qhov iab ua qhov qab zib, thiab qhov qab zib ua qhov iab!

21 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov uas lawv xav hais tias lawv txawj thiab cov uas lawv xav hais tias lawv ntse!

22 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov muaj zog uas haus dej haus cawv heev, thiab rau tej neeg uas txawj muab tej cawv muaj zog sib tov;

23 Leej twg tso tej neeg phem dim vim lawv muab nqi zog rau nws, thiab nyiag tej neeg ncaj ncees txoj kev ncaj!

24 Yog li ntawd, ib yam li hluav taws kub tej quav nplej, thiab nplaim taws kub tej quav nyab npleg, lawv tej cag yuav raug lwj mus, thiab lawv tej paj yuav qhuav ntsws yaj tshaws li tej hmoov av; vim lawv tau muab tus Tswv uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv txoj kev cai pov tseg, thiab tau ntxub Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv txoj lus.

25 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws thiaj npau rau nws cov neeg, thiab nws tau xyab hlo nws txhais tes tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau nplawm lawv; thiab tej roob tau nphau, thiab lawv tej cev uas tau tuag lawm tau raug muab dua pov rau tom tej plawv kev. Rau tag nrho tej no nws txoj kev npau taws tseem tsis tau tsum thiab, tiam sis nws txhais tes tseem xyab li qub.

26 Thiab nws yuav tsa ib tug chij rau ntau haiv neeg uas nyob deb deb, thiab yuav xuav kom lawv cov uas nyob hauv qab ntuj kawg los; thiab saib seb, lawv yuav los nrawm heev kawg nkaus; yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav nkees los sis qaug kev li.

27 Yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav pw hauv txoj kev tuag los sis tsaug zog hlo li; thiab yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg tej ris tsho ntawm nws duav poob mus li, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg tej hlua khau tu hlo li;

28 Leej twg tej xub yuav ntse, thiab lawv txhua txhia rab hneev yeej nta tas lawm, thiab lawv tej taw nees yuav tawv npaum nkaus li tej zeb ntais, thiab lawv tej log yuav kiv zoo li tej kiv cua, lawv tej suab yuav nrov npaum li suab tsov ntxhuav.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

29 Lawv yuav nyooj zoo li tej thav tsov ntxhuav; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav nyooj, thiab yuav los nthos nkaus tus tsiaj, thiab yuav nqa hlo mus, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav cheem tau.

30 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd lawv yuav nyooj nroo ntws rau lawv yam li tej dej hiav txwv uas nrov nroo ntws; thiab yog tias lawv tsa muag ntsia rau thaj av, saib seb, yuav pom kev tsaus ntuj thiab kev nyuaj siab, thiab tej teeb uas ci saum nruab ntug los yuav tsaus mus thiab.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

2 Nifais 16

- 1 Nyob rau hauv xyoo uas vaj ntxwv Uxaiyas tuag, kuv kuj tau pom tus Tswv zaum saum ib lub rooj zaum uas siab thiab raug tsa sawv, thiab nws lub tsho nthuav suab yi lub tuam tsev.
- 2 Nyob rau sab saum lub rooj zaum muaj ob tug tim tswv sawv saud; ib tug muaj rau phab tis; nws muab ob phab npog nws lub ntsej muag, thiab nws muab ob phab npog nws ko taw, thiab nws muab ob phab ua tis ya.
- 3 Thiab ib tug thov rau ib tug, thiab hais tias: Dawb Huv, dawb huv, dawb huv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv; nws lub yeeb koob muaj puv nkaus rau lub ntiaj teb tag nrho.
- 4 Thiab tej ncej puab rooj tau txav thaum hnov nws lub suab thov, thiab lub tsev tau muaj pa taw puv nkaus.
- 5 Ces kuv txawm tau hais tias: Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau kuv lauj! vim kuv yuav raug puas tsuaj; vim kuv yog ib tug neeg uas muaj daim di ncauj tsis huv; thiab kuv nyob nrog tej neeg uas muaj di ncauj tsis huv; vim kuv lub qhov muag tau pom tus Vaj Ntxwv, uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv.
- 6 Ces ib tug tim tswv ceeb tsheej txawm tau ya plaws los rau kuv, muaj ib tug tswm ciab uas tseem cig nyob hauv nws txhais tes, uas nws tau muab ciaj rho tawm saum lub thaj los;
- 7 Thiab nws tau muab nws tso rau saum kuv qhov ncauj, thiab tau hais tias: Saib seb, qhov no tau chwv koj daim di ncauj; thiab koj tej kev tsis ncaj ncees twb raug muab pov tseg lawm, thiab koj tej kev txhaum twb raug ntxuav huv lawm.
- 8 Kuv kuj tau hnov tus Tswv lub suab, hais tias: Kuv yuav xa leej twg mus, thiab tus twg yuav mus rau peb? Ces kuv txawm teb hais tias: Kuv nyob qhov no; cia li xa kuv mus.
- 9 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Cia li mus thiab qhia rau cov neeg no hais tias—Nej mloog tiag tiag, tiam sis lawv tsis to taub; thiab nej pom tiag tiag, tiam sis lawv tsis paub xyov yog dab tsi.
- 10 Cia li ua kom cov neeg no tej siab rog, thiab ua kom lawv tej pob ntseg hnyav, thiab kaw lawv tej qhov muag—tsam lawv tej qhov muag ho pom kev, thiab lawv tej pob ntseg ho hnov, thiab lawv tej siab ho to taub, thiab yuav hloov siab tig rov los thiab raug kho zoo.

2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

- 11 Ces kuv teb hais tias: Tus Tswv es, yuav ntev npaum li cas? Thiab nws teb hais tias: Yuav mus txog rau thaum uas tej nroog puas tsuaj tas tsis muaj neeg nyob, thiab tej tsev tsis muaj neeg, thiab tej av yuav raug tsis muaj neeg nyob huv tib si;
- 12 Thiab tus Tswv tau tshem tib neeg mus nyob deb deb, vim nruab nrab ntawm thaj av no yuav raug muab tso tseg cia.
- 13 Tiam sis tseem yuav seem ib feem kaum, thiab lawv yuav rov qab los, thiab yuav raug puas tsuaj dua, ib yam li ib tug ntoo loj, thiab ib yam li ib tug ntoo ntseej uas luag muab ntov es lub hauv paus ho tuaj kaus dua tuaj; xwv kom tej noob dawb huv yuav tseg tau ua noob nyob rau hauv qhov ntawd.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

2 Nifais 17

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau lub sij hawm Ahas uas nws txiv yog Yauthas, uas nws txiv ho yog Uxaiyas, uas yog teb chaws Yudas tus vaj ntxwv, thiab Lexees, uas yog teb chaws Xilias tus vaj ntxwv, thiab Npekhas uas nws txiv yog Lemaliyas, uas yog Ixayees tus vaj ntxwv, tau nce mus rau pem Yeluxalees mus ua rog tawm tsam nws, tiam sis maj tsis yeej nws.
- 2 Thiab Daviv tseeg tau raug qhia hais tias: Xilias tau koom tes nrog Efala-is. Thiab nws lub siab tau tig lawm, thiab nws cov neeg tej siab, tib yam li tej ntoo uas cua ntsawj es tig lawm.
- 3 Ces tus Tswv tau hais rau Yaxayas hais tias: Koj thiab koj tus tub Xe-a-yasus, cia li mus ntsib Ahas ziang no, nyob rau tim tus kwj deg uas ntwms mus tshuam rau pem hau pas dej uas nyob hauv txoj kev ntawm tus neeg ntxhua ris tsho thaj teb;
- 4 Thiab hais rau nws hais tias: Koj yuav tsum ceev faj zoo, thiab nyob ntsiag to; tsis txhob ntshai, thiab tsis txhob pub plawv nres vim yog ob teg tsau uas ncho ncho pa no, vim yog txoj kev npau taws heev ntawm Lexees nrog Xilias, thiab ntawm Lemaliyas tus tub.
- 5 Vim yog Xilias, Efala-is, thiab Lemaliyas tus tub, tau ntaus tswv yim phem tawm tsam koj, hais tias:
- 6 Cia peb nce mus ntaus Yudas thiab mus tsim kev kub ntxhov rau nws, thiab cia peb muab tej nroog hauv los faib rau peb, thiab tsa kom muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv nyob rau hauv, muaj tseeb tiag, yawg Thanpis tus tub.
- 7 Ces tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais li no: Tej no yuav tsis sawv, thiab nws yuav tsis muaj tshwm sim.
- 8 Vim Damaxes yog Xilias lub taub hau, thiab tus thawj koj ntawm Damaxes yog Lexees; nyob rau hauv rau caum tsib xyoo mas Efala-is yuav tawg kom tsis muaj ib tug neeg li lawm.
- 9 Thiab Efala-is lub taub hau yog Xamalis, thiab tus thawj koj ntawm Xamalis yog Lemaliyas tus tub. Yog hais tias koj tsis ntseeg ces koj yeej yuav tu noob.
- 10 Tsis tas li ntawd xwb, tus Tswv tseem tau hais rau Ahas ntxiv, hais tias:
- 11 Thov tus Tswv uas yog koj tus Vajtswv kom nws muab ib lub cim rau koj; thov kom nws ua tej yam dab tsi rau hauv ntiag teb no, los sis ua tej yam dab tsi rau saum nruab ntug.

2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

- 12 Tiam sis Ahas hais tias: Kuv yuav tsis thov hlo li, thiab kuv yuav tsis sim tus Tswv li.
- 13 Thiab nws hais tias: Nim no nej cia li mloog, Au tsev neeg Daviv es; puas yog ib yam me me nej ua kom neeg qaug zog, tiam sis nej tseem yuav ua kom kuv tus Vajtswv qaug zog thiab los?
- 14 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv kiag yuav muab ib lub cim rau nej—Saib seb, ib tug nkauj xwb yuav xeeb tub, thiab yuav yug ib tug me tub, thiab yuav hu nws lub npe hu ua Emanu-es.
- 15 Nws yuav noj roj txiv hmab txiv ntoo nyoj thiab zib ntab, xwv kom nws yuav paub tsis lees yuav qhov phem thiab kom xaiv qhov zoo.
- 16 Ua ntej thaum tus me nyuam yuav paub tsis lees yuav qhov phem thiab xaiv qhov zoo, lub teb chaws uas nej ntxub yuav raug lawv tej vaj ntxwv muab tso pov tseg.
- 17 Tus Tswv yuav coj los rau koj, thiab rau koj cov neeg, thiab rau koj txiv tsev neeg, tej caij tej nyoog uas tsis tau los txog txij li lub caij uas Efala-is tau ncaim hauv Yudas, Axilias tus vaj ntxwv.
- 18 Thiab yuav muaj tau tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd uas tus Tswv yuav xuav rau tej muv uas nyob hauv txhua txhia qhov chaw hauv Iyiv teb chaws, thiab yuav xuav rau tej ntab uas nyob hauv teb chaws Axilias.
- 19 Thiab lawv yuav los, thiab lawv txhua txhia tus yuav los so rau hauv tej dawm uas tsis muaj neeg nyob, thiab los nyob hauv tej qhov tsua, thiab los nyob rau saum tej pos tag nrho, thiab nyob rau saum tej nroj tag nrho.
- 20 Nyob rau tib hnuv ntawd tus Tswv yuav muab ib tug chais hwj txwv los chais, lawv txhua tus uas nyob rau tom tej dej tuaj, los ntawm vaj ntxwv Axilias tej neeg, taub hau, thiab tej plaub ko taw; thiab kuj yuav chais tej plaub hwj txwv thiab.
- 21 Thiab yuav muaj tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd, ib tug txiv neej yuav yug ib tug thav nyuj thiab ob tug yaj;
- 22 Thiab nws yuav muaj tias, rau tej kua mis nyuj ntau uas lawv yuav muab nws yeej yuav noj roj txiv hmab txiv ntoo nyoj; vim roj txiv hmab txiv ntoo nyoj thiab zib ntab yog yam ua txhua txhia tus uas seem yuav noj nyob rau hauv lub teb chaws.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

23 Thiab nws yuav muaj tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd, txhua txhia qhov chaw uas muaj txhiab tsoob txiv hmab uas raug txhiab txhiab kis nyiaj laus, txhua txhia qhov ntawd tsuas yuav muaj ntoo pos thiab pos kaus ntsaj xwb.

24 Tej neeg yuav nqa hneev nqa xub mus tiv xwb, vim txhua thaj av yuav rais los mus ua ntoo pos thiab pos kaus ntsaj xwb.

25 Thiab yuav tsis muaj neeg tuaj rau tej toj uas tau muab hlau ncaws ib zaug lawm vim ntshai tej ntoo pos thiab tej pos kaus ntsaj; tiam sis yuav cia ua chaw tso txiv nyuj lawm xwb, thiab cia rau tsiaj rau txhuv tsuj lawm xwb.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

2 Nifais 18

- 1 Tsis tas li ntawd xwb, tus Tswv txoj lus tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj cia li mus nrhiav ib thooj ntawv, thiab muab neeg tej cwj mem sau rau saum thooj ntawv ntawd, uas hais txog Mahawj-salas-hajsawm-npas.
- 2 Thiab kuv tau nrhiav tej tim khawv uas muaj kev ntseeg los nrog kuv sau tej xwm txheej, tus pov thawj Ulias, thiab yawg Yenpelikhiyas tus tub Xekhalaiyas.
- 3 Thiab kuv tau mus cuag niam yaj saub; thiab nws tau xeeb tub thiab yug tau ib tug tub. Ces tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Hu nws lub npe ua: Mahawj-salas-hajsawm-npas.
- 4 Vim saib seb, tus me nyuam yuav tsis paub quaj tias, kuv niam, thiab kuv txiv, rau Damaxes tej kev nplua nuj thiab Xamalis tej khoom uas txeeb tau los yuav raug vaj ntxwv Axilias tuaj txeeb mus.
- 5 Tus Tswv rov qab hais rau kuv dua hais tias:
- 6 Npaum tias yog cov neeg no tsis kam lees yuav Silau-as tej dej uas ntws mus ntsiag to, thiab zoo siab rau Lexees thiab Lemaliyas tus tub;
- 7 Nim no yog li ntawd, saib seb, tus Tswv tau coj ntau tus dej ntws uas muaj zog heev los rau lawv, twb yog Axilias tus vaj ntxwv thiab tag nrho nws tej yeeb koob huv tib si; thiab nws yuav hla nws txhua tus kwj deg tuaj, thiab hla nws txhua tus kwj ha.
- 8 Thiab nws yuav hla hauv Yudas mus; nws yuav ntws puv nkaus thiab phwj mus, nws yuav puv mus kom txij caj dab; thiab nws tej tis uas xyab yuav puv mus rau nej tej ciam dej ciam av uas ntau, Au Emanu-es.
- 9 Cia li los koom ua ib pab, Au nej cov neeg sawv daws, thiab nej yuav raug tawg ntsoog ntxaws; thiab nej cov uas nyob tej teb chaws uas deb es cia li cuab pob ntseg; nej cia li npaj kom txhij, thiab nej yuav raug tawg ntsoog ntxaws; nej cia li npaj kom txhij, thiab nej yuav raug tawg ntsoog ntxaws.
- 10 Cia li tuaj sab laj ua ke, thiab nws yuav pab tsis tau dab tsi; hais lus, los nws yuav tsis muaj qab hau dab tsi; vim Vajtswwv nrog peb lawm.
- 11 Vim tus Tswv tau ceeb toom khov kho rau kuv li no, thiab tau qhia rau kuv tias kuv yuav tsum tsis txhob mus li cov neeg no mus, hais tias:
- 12 Nej tsis txhob hais tias, ib txog kev tuav hauv, rau tag nrho cov uas neeg no yuav hais hais tias, ib txog kev tuav hauv; thiab nej tsis txhob ntshai yam uas lawv ntshai, los sis txhawj.

2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

13 Qhuas Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tib leeg, thiab
cia nws ua tus uas nej ntshai, thiab cia nws ua tus uas
nej txhawj.

14 Thiab nws yuav ua qhov chaw uas tsis raug xwm
txheej rau nej nyob; tiam sis nws yuav ua ib lub pob
zeb uas luam neeg ko taw, thiab ib lub pob zeb tawm
tsam rau tag nrho ob tsev neeg Ixayees, yuav ua ib
rooj ntxiab thiab ib tug cuab rau cov neeg hauv
Yeluxalees.

15 Thiab coob leej ntau tus ntawm lawv cov no yuav
dawm taw thiab ntog, thiab raug lov npab lov tes
thiab mag ntxiab, thiab raug txhom mus.

16 Khi hlo lo lus tim khawv, zwm txoj kev cai ntawm
kuv cov ntseeg.

17 Thiab kuv yuav tos rau tus Tswv, tus uas tau nraim
nws lub ntsej muag rau Yakhauj tsev neeg, thiab kuv
yuav nrhiav nws.

18 Saib seb, kuv thiab cov me nyuam uas tus Tswv tau
muab rau kuv yog muab ua cov cim thiab muab rau
tej txuj ci tseem ceeb uas nyob hauv Ixayees uas los
ntawm Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv, tus uas nyob
saum lub Roob Xi-oos.

19 Thiab thaum uas lawv yuav hais rau nej hais tias:
Cia li mus nrhiav lawv tej uas txawj ua dab, thiab
mus nrhiav tej txiv neeb uas txawj ua neeb thiab ua
yaig—tiam sis puas tsim nyog ib tug neeg nrhiav lawv
tus Vajtswv rau cov uas tseem ua neej nyob kom
hnov xov los ntawm tej neeg tuag?

20 Rau txoj kev cai thiab rau lo lus tim khawv; thiab
yog hais tias lawv tsis hais raws li lo lus no, ces yeej
yog vim tsis muaj qhov kaj nyob hauv lawv li.

21 Thiab lawv yuav laj ua neej nyob dhau txoj kev
nyuaj siab thiab kev tshaib nqhis; thiab yuav muaj
tau tias thaum uas lawv yuav tshaib plab, lawv yuav
npau taws rau lawv tus kheej, thiab lawv yuav foom
lawv tus vaj ntxwv thiab lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab yuav
tsa muag ntsia puag saum ntuj.

22 Thiab lawv yuav ntsia rau hauv lub ntiab teb thiab
yuav pom teeb meem, pom kev mob lub siab tsaus
nti, thiab yuav raug ntiab mus rau txoj kev tsaus ntuj.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be
your fear, and let him be your dread.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of
stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the
houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabi-
tants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and
be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my dis-
ciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face
from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath
given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from
the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them
that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep
and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God
for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak
not according to this word, it is because there is no
light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and
hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they
shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse
their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold
trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall
be driven to darkness.

2 Nifais 19

- 1 Txawm li ntawd los, txoj kev tsaus ntuj yuav tsis heev npaum li nws txoj kev txim txom, thaum uas xub thawj mas nws maj mam tsim txom thaj av Xenpulus xwb, thiab thaj av Nethalis, thiab tom qab ntawd tau tsim txom hnyav dua raws Dej Hiav Txwv Liab mus dhau tus dej Yauladees hauv Kalilais uas yog qhov chaw uas muaj ntau haiv neeg tuaj nyob.
- 2 Cov neeg uas tau taug txoj kev tsaus ntuj tau pom ib txoj kev kaj uas tseem ceeb; lawv cov uas nyob rau hauv thaj av ntawm txoj kev tuag tus duab ntxoo, txoj kev kaj tau ci tuaj rau lawv.
- 3 Koj tau ua kom haiv neeg huaj vam coob, thiab tau ntxiv kom muaj kev zoo siab ntau tuaj—lawv muaj kev xyiv fab ib yam li thaum uas tej neeg sau qoob sau loo, thiab ib yam li tej neeg xyiv fab thaum uas lawv sib faib tej khoom uas lawv nyiag los.
- 4 Vim koj tau ua rau nws lub nra hnyav tawg, thiab muab tus pas saum nws xub pwg lov, uas yog nws tus yeeb ncuab tus pas.
- 5 Txhua txhia npluav rog ntawm tus tub rog yeej muaj lub suab quaj suab nyiav, thiab lawv tej ris tsho yeej tsuas ntshav tas; tiam sis tej no yuav nrog hluav taws kub thiab roj hlawv.
- 6 Vim ib tug me nyuam yuav yug los rau peb, yuav muab ib tug me tub rau peb; tej kev tswj hwm yuav nyob rau saum nws lub xub pwg; thiab nws lub npe yuav raug hu ua, tus Hwj Sawv Zoo, tus uas Taw kev, Vajtswv Tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj, Leej Txiv tus uas Kav Ib Txhis, tus Tub Vaj Ntxwv ntawm txoj kev Thaj Yeeb Nyab Xeeb.
- 7 Nws yuav los zaum saum Daviv lub rooj, nws txoj kev tswj hwm thiab kev thaj yeeb yuav muaj ntxiv zuj zus mus tsis muaj qhov kawg li, thiab nws yuav kav nws lub nceeg vaj hauv ntiaj teb no kom muaj qib muaj quas, thiab yuav tsim kom muaj kev txiav txim thiab kev ncaj ncees txij li no lawm yav tov uas mus ib txhis li. Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yuav ua tej no los ntawm nws txoj kev mob siab ua tiag.
- 8 Tus Tswv tau xa nws txoj lus los rau Yakhauj thiab nws tau kaj rau saum Ixayees.
- 9 Thiab txhua leej txhua tus yuav paub, txawm yog cov Efala-is thiab cov neeg uas nyob hauv Xamalis, uas khav theeb thiab siab hlob los yeej yuav paub huv si:

2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

- 10 Tej thwv cib raug poob mus, tiam sis peb yuav muab tej pob zeb txiav coj los ua tej tsev; tau ntov tej ntoo seb, tiam sis peb yuav muab tej ntoo ntshaub coj los pauv lawv.
- 11 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav npaj Lexees tej yeeb ncuab tuaj tawm tsam nws, thiab yuav muab nws tej yeeb ncuab ua ib ke;
- 12 Cov neeg Xilias yuav nyob ua ntej thiab cov neeg Filitees yuav nyob tom qab; thiab lawv yuav rua qhov ncauj nqos lum Ixayees. Vim tag nrho li no los nws txoj kev npau taws tseem tsis tau tig ntawm lawv mus thiab, tiam sis nws tseem ncav nws txhais tes rawv thiab.
- 13 Vim cov neeg tseem tsis tau tig los mus cuag nws, tus uas nplawm lawv, thiab lawv tsis tau nrhiv Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv.
- 14 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav ua ib hnuv txiav Ixayees lub taub hau thiab tus ko tw, tej ceg thiab tej ntsis.
- 15 Tus laus neeg, nws yog lub taub hau; thiab tus yaj saub uas qhia tej lus dag, nws yog tus ko tw.
- 16 Vim tej thawj coj ntawm cov neeg no ua rau lawv ua txhaum; thiab lawv cov uas raws cov neeg no yuav raug puas tsuaj.
- 17 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav tsis xyiv fab rau lawv tej tub hluas, thiab yuav tsis muaj kev hluv tshua txog lawv tej me nyuam uas tsis muaj txiv thiab tej poj ntsuam; vim lawv txhua leej txhua tus puav leej yog neeg tsis zoo thiab neeg ua phem, thiab txhua lub qhov ncauj puav leej hais lus ruam. Vim tag nrho li no los nws txoj kev npau taws tseem tsis tau tig ntawm lawv mus thiab, tiam sis nws tseem ncav nws txhais tes rawv thiab.
- 18 Vim txoj kev phem yuav kub hnyiab ib yam li tej hluav taws; nws yuav nqos tej pos kaus ntsaj thiab tej ntoo pos, thiab yuav kub tej hav zoov nuj xiab uas ntom nti kom du lug, thiab lawv yuav muaj pa hluav taws sawv sib ntswg zos nce toj.
- 19 Los ntawm Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv txoj kev chim siab heev thaj av yuav raug kub hnyiab dub nciab, thiab cov neeg yuav zoo li tej roj uas cia zes hluav taws; yuav tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg uas yuav tseg nws tus kwv tij li.

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

20 Thiab nws sab tes xis yuav mus muab thiab yuav raug tshaib plab; thiab nws yuav noj nrog nws sab tes laug thiab lawv yuav tsis tau txaus siab; lawv txhua leej txhua tus nyias yuav noj nyias tej nqaij ntawm nyias npab—

21 Manaxes, Efala-is; thiab Efala-is, Manaxes; nkawd yuav ua ke mus ntaus Yudas. Vim tag nrho li no los nws txoj kev npau taws tseem tsis tau tig ntawm lawv mus thiab, tiam sis nws tseem ncav nws txhais tes rawv thiab.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

2 Nifais 20

- 1 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas tsim tej kev cai uas tsis ncaj ncees, thiab rau cov neeg uas sau tej kev cai uas tsuj yuam uas lawv tau tsim;
- 2 Xwv kom lawv yuav muab tau tej neeg uas xav tau txoj kev txim lij seeb pov tseg, thiab txeeb kuv cov neeg pluag tej kev ywj siab, xwv kom lawv yuav nyiag tau tej poj ntsuam, thiab xwv kom lawv yuav nyiag tau tej me nyuam uas tsis muaj txiv!
- 3 Thiab nej yuav ua li cas nyob rau hnuv uas rau txim, thiab nyob rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas tuaj deb tuaj? nej yuav mus nrhiav kev pab ntwam leej twg? thiab nej yuav muab nej tej yeeb koob coj mus tso rau qhov twg?
- 4 Yog tsis muaj kuv ces lawv yeej yuav nyo hau nyob sab hauv tej neeg raug txim, thiab lawv yeej yuav raug tuag nyob sab hauv cov neeg uas luag tua. Vim tag nrho li no los nws txoj kev npau taws tseem tsis tau tig ntwam lawv mus, tiam sis nws tseem ncav tes rawv li qub thiab.
- 5 Au cov neeg Axilias es, lub zog ntwam kuv txoj kev npau taws, thiab tus pas uas nyob hauv lawv txhais tes yog lawv txoj kev npau taws.
- 6 Kuv yuav xa nws mus tawm tsam nrog haiv neeg uas phem, thiab tawm tsam nrog cov neeg uas kuv npau taws rau kuv yuav txib kom nws mus muab tej khoom uas lawv nyiag, thiab mus muab tej khoom uas lawv txeeb tau, thiab mus tsuj kom lawv zoo li tej av nkos tom tej kev.
- 7 Tiam sis nws yuav tsis yog li ntwawd, thiab nws lub siab kuj tsis xav li ntwawd thiab; tiam sis nyob hauv nws lub siab yog xav ua kom puas tsuaj thiab ua kom ntau haiv neeg ncaim deb mus, tsis yog tsawg.
- 8 Vim nws hais tias: Kuv tej tub vaj ntxwv tag nrho ua ke tsis yog tej vaj ntxwv los?
- 9 Khanaus tsis zoo ib yam li Khachemis los? Hamas tsis zoo ib yam li Aphas los? Xamalis tsis zoo ib yam li Damaxes los?
- 10 Ib yam li kuv txhais tes tau tsim tej teb chaws ua muaj mlom, thiab cov uas muaj mlom puab ntau tshaj li tej uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees thiab hauv Xamalis;
- 11 Es kuv tseem yuav tsis ua, ib yam li kuv tau ua rau Xamalis thiab nws tej mlom, thiab ua rau Yeluxalees thiab nws tej mlom no los?

2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

- 12 Yog li ntawd yuav muaj tau tias thaum uas tus Tswv tau ua tag nrho nws txoj hauj lwm rau saum Roob Xi-oos thiab rau Yeluxalees tiav lawm, Kuv yuav rau txim rau vaj ntxwv Axilias tej txiv uas muaj lub siab khav txiv, thiab lub yeeb koob ntawm nws txoj kev muaj plhus.
- 13 Vim nws hais tias: Los ntawm kuv txhais tes lub zog thiab los ntawm kuv lub tswv yim kuv tau ua tej yam xwm no; vim kuv yog neeg txawj ntse; thiab kuv tau txeeb tej neeg ciam dej ciam av, thiab tau nyiag lawv tej nyiaj txiag, thiab kuv tau ntaus yeej tej neeg zoo li ib tug neeg siab loj;
- 14 Thiab kuv txhais tes tau nrhiav tau tej neeg txoj kev nplua nuj zoo ib yam li ib lub zes noog; thiab zoo li ib tug neeg uas sau tej qe uas seem kuv tau sau ntiaj teb tag nrho; thiab tsis muaj ib tug twg li uas tau xyab txhais tis los sis tau rua lub qhov ncauj, los sis quaj hlo li.
- 15 Rab taus puas yuav khav tau rau tus neeg uas muab nws txiav ub txiav no? Rab kaw puas yuav khav tau rau tus neeg uas muab nws kaw mus kaw los? Tus pas puas yuav nplawm tau ntawm tej yog tias tsis muaj leej twg muab tus pas nplawm, los sis tus pas nrig puas yuav mus taus kev nws tus kheej yam li nws tsis yog ib tug pas ntoo!
- 16 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv, uas yog Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv, yuav coj tej kev huaj vam tawm ntawm lawv mus; thiab nyob hauv nws lub yeeb koob nws yuav zes kom muaj ib qho kub zoo li qhov hluav taws kub.
- 17 Thiab Ixayees txoj kev kaj yuav ciaj los mus ua ib lub qho cub, thiab nws Tus Dawb Huv yuav ua ib tug nplaim hluav taws, thiab yuav kub thiab yuav nqos nws tej pos kaus ntsaj thiab nws tej ntoo pos ib hnuv kom tag nrho;
- 18 Thiab nws tej hav zoov uas zoo nkauj yuav kub hnyiab mus, thiab nws thaj teb uas zoo zoo, tsis hais sab ntsuj plig los sis sab cev nqaij daim tawv; thiab lawv yuav zoo li thaum uas tus neeg tuav chij yoo es tsis nco qab lawm.
- 19 Thiab nws cov ntoo uas seem tshuav ntawm nws thaj hav zoov yuav tsis tshuav ntau lawm, tsawg kawg nkaus lawm uas me nyuam yaus twb suav txheeb lawv.

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

20 Thiab yuav muaj tau tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd, Ixayees cov noob uas seem tshuav, thiab Yakhauj tsev neeg cov uas khiav dim, yuav tsis vam khom rau tus uas ua kom lawv nyuaj siab, tiam sis yuav vam khom rau tus Tswv, uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, ntawm qhov tseeb.

21 Cov noob uas seem tshuav yuav rov qab los, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Yakhauj cov noob, yuav los mus cuag Vajtsv tus uas muaj hwj chim loj.

22 Vim txawm tias nej cov neeg Ixayees yuav muaj coob npaum li tej xuab zeb tom ntug dej los, yeej yuav muaj lawv cov noob uas seem tshuav rov qab los; txoj kev puas tsuaj uas tau tsim los yuav raug txoj kev ncaj ncees phwj rau.

23 Vim Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tau txiav txim siab tias yuav ua kom txhua txhia thaj av puas tsuaj mus.

24 Yog li ntawd, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv tus hais li no: Au kuv cov neeg uas nyob rau hauv Xi-oos es, tsis txhob ntshai cov neeg Axilias; nws yuav muab ib tug pas los nplawm nej, thiab yuav tsa nws tus pas nrig rau nej, ib yam li Iyiv tau ua.

25 Vim tias tsuas yog ib nyuag ntu xwb, thiab txoj kev chim siab yuav tu, thiab kuv txoj kev npau taws yuav nyob rau hauv lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj.

26 Thiab Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yuav txhib muab ib tug pas nplawm rau nws zoo li txoj kev raug tua tuag ntawm Midias uas nyob ntawm lub pob zeb Aulej; thiab ib yam li nws tau tsa nws tus pas rau saum tej dej hiav txwv ces nws yeej yuav tsa nws tus pas ib yam li ntawd rau cov neeg Iyiv.

27 Thiab yuav muaj tau tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd nws lub nra hnyav uas nyob saum nej caj dab yuav raug tshem mus, thiab yuav tshem nws tus quab uas nyob ntawm nej caj dab mus, thiab tus quab ntawd yuav raug rhuav kom puas tsuaj mus vim txoj kev uas nej tau raug xaiv lawm.

28 Nws tuaj rau hauv E-ais, nws yuav hla tuaj mus rau Mikoos; nws tau muab nws tej khoom nws nqa cia rau tim Mikhamas.

29 Lawv twb mus dhau txoj kev uas neeg hla hla lawm; lawv tau tsa lawv qhov chaw nyob rau tim Kinpas; Lames tau ntshai; cov neeg nyob hauv Xa-us lub nroog Kinpias tau khiav tas.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

30 Tsa lub suab kom nrov, Au Kalees tus ntxhais es;
ua kom nrov ncha mus txog La-isas, Au Anathos uas
txom nyem es.

31 Cov neeg nyob hauv Mamenas tau khiav tas lawm;
cov neeg uas nyob hauv Kenpees lawv tau sib sau
npaj yuav khiav.

32 Tiam sis nws yuav nyob rau tim lub zos Nob hnuv
ntawd; nws yuav co tes tsis yeem rau lub roob ntawm
Xi-oos tus ntxhais, uas yog Yeluxalees lub pov roob.

33 Saib seb, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tso kev
txhawj kev ntshai los txiav tej ceg kom tu; thiab cov
uas muaj ceg siab yuav raug txiav kom tu poob mus;
thiab cov neeg khav txiv yuav raug txo hwj chim.

34 Thiab nws yuav xuas hlau kab ntov tej hav zoov
uas tuab ntom nti kom vau, tus uas muaj hwj chim
loj yuav ua kom Lenpanoos vau mus.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to
be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim
gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall
shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of
Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the
bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall
be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests
with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

2 Nifais 21

- 1 Thiab yuav muaj ib tug ceg hlav tawm ntawm Tsexis tus kav los, thiab yuav muaj ib ceg hlav tawm ntawd nws tej cag tuaj.
- 2 Thiab tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig yuav los nyob saum nws, tus ntsuj plig uas muaj txoj kev txawj ntse thiab muaj txoj kev to taub, tus ntsuj plig uas ntuas lwm tus thiab muaj hwj chim, tus ntsuj plig uas muaj kev txawj ntse thiab yog tus ntsuj plig uas paub ntshai tus Tswv;
- 3 Thiab yuav ua kom nws to taub sai txog txoj kev ntshai tus Tswv; thiab nws yuav tsis txiav txim mus raws li nws lub qhov muag pom, thiab ua raws li nws lub pob ntseg tau hnov xwb.
- 4 Tiam sis nws yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg pluag nrog txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab yuav txiav txim ncaj rau neeg ntiaj teb cov uas txo hwj chim; thiab nws yuav xuas tus pas ntawm nws lub qhov ncauj nplawm lub ntiaj teb no, thiab muab cov pa ntawm nws daim di ncauj tua cov neeg phem.
- 5 Thiab kev ncaj ncees yuav yog nws daim siv sia ntawm nws duav, thiab kev mob siab rau ntseeg yuav yog nws daim siv sia ntawm nws ntsag.
- 6 Tus hma yuav los nrog tus me nyuam yaj nyob, thiab tus tsov txaij yuav pw nrog tus me nyuam tshis, thiab tus thav nyuj thiab tej thav tsov ntshuav thiab tej nyuj twm uas rog ua ib ke; thiab ib tug me nyuam yaus yuav coj lawv kev.
- 7 Thiab tus nyuj thiab tus dais yuav noj zaub ua ke; lawv tej me nyuam mos yuav da pw ua ke; thiab tus tsov ntshuav yuav noj quav nyab ib yam li tus heev nyuj.
- 8 Thiab tus me nyuam uas tseem noj mis yuav ua si ntawm lub qhov uas nab taug nyob, thiab tus me nyuam uas tso mis lawm yuav tso lawv tej tes rau saum nab raj kub sai lub qhov.
- 9 Lawv yuav tsis tom mob los sis tsis ua kom puas tsuaj, nyob tag nrho saum kuv lub roob dawb huv, vim kev paub tus Tswv yuav nrov mus thoob plaws hauv lub ntiaj teb no, ib yam li cov dej npog puv nkaus hiav txwv.
- 10 Thiab nyob rau hnub ntawd Tsexis yuav muaj ib tug cag, uas yuav ua ib tug chij sawv cev ntawm cov neeg; Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav nrhiav nws; thiab nws qhov chaw nyob yuav ci ntsa iab.

2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

- 11 Thiab yuav muaj tau tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd tus Tswv yuav rov qab cev nws txhais tes dua zaum ob los pab nws cov neeg tej noob uas seem tshuav kom zoo li qub, txij li puag tim Axilias, thiab tim Iyiv, thiab tim Patalaus, thiab tim Khuju, thiab tim Elaj, thiab tim Sinas, thiab tim Hamas, thiab los ntawm tej koog pov txwv hauv dej hiav txwv.
- 12 Thiab nws yuav tsa ib tug chij rau tej haiv neeg, thiab yuav sau Ixayees tej neeg uas raug ncaws tawm los ua ke, thiab sau cov neeg Yudas uas raug faib mus nyob thoob plaws plaub ceg kaum ntuj lawm los ua ke.
- 13 Efala-is tej kev sib khib kuj yuav ncaim mus, thiab Yudas tej yeeb ncuab yuav raug puas tsuaj mus; Efala-is yuav tsis khib Yudas, thiab Yudas yuav tsis thab Efala-is.
- 14 Tiam sis nkawd yuav ya mus rau saum Filitees tej xub pwg mus rau sab hnuv poob; nkawd yuav nyiag cov neeg uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj los ua ke; lawv yuav tso lawv tej tes rau saum Edoos thiab Mau-as; thiab Amoos tej me nyuam yuav mloog lawv lus.
- 15 Thiab tus Tswv yuav rhuav tus nplaig ntawm cov neeg Iyiv tej dej hiav txwv kom puas tsuaj huv tib si; thiab los ntawm nws tej cua muaj zog nws yuav nchos nws txais tes rau saum tus dej, thiab yuav muab nws ntaus rau hauv xya tus dej, thiab yuav cia neeg mus ko taw qhuav rau saud.
- 16 Thiab yuav muaj ib txoj kev loj rau nws cov neeg tej noob uas seem tshuav, los ntawm Axilias, zoo ib yam li tau muaj rau Ixayees nyob rau hauv hnuv uas nws tau tawm ntawm thaj av tim Iyiv los.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

2 Nifais 22

- 1 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd nej yuav hais tias: Au tus Tswv, kuv yuav qhuas koj; txawm tias koj tau npau taws rau kuv lawm los koj txoj kev npau taws twb ncaim mus lawm, thiab koj twb nplij kuv.
- 2 Saib seb, Vajtswv yog kuv txoj kev cawm seeg; kuv yuav cia siab, thiab yuav tsis ntshai; vim tus Tswv YEHAUVAS yog kuv lub zog thiab kuv zaj nkauj; nws kuj tau rais los mus ua kuv txoj kev cawm seeg.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, nej yuav daus cov dej tawm ntawm tej qhov dej cawm seeg nrog txoj kev xyiv fab hlo.
- 4 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd nej yuav hais tias: Qhuas tus Tswv, hu rau nws lub npe, tshaj tej uas nws ua rau cov neeg sawv daws, qhia hais tias nws lub npe yog lub uas raug tsa siab lawm.
- 5 Cia li hu nkauj rau tus Tswv; vim nws tau ua tej xwm txheej uas zoo kawg nkaus li; zaj no yeej paub thoob plaws nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb no.
- 6 Cia li quaj thiab qv nrov nrov, nej cov neeg ntawm Xi-oos; vim qhov tseem ceeb yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv twb nyob hauv nej nruab nrab.

2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord **JEHOVAH** is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

2 Nifais 23

- 1 Npanpiloos lub nra hnyav, uas yawg Amoj tus Yaxayas tau pom.
- 2 Cia li tsa ib tug chij rau saum lub roob siab, tsa suab qw rau lawv, co tes, es kom lawv yuav mus rau hauv tej neeg ua nom ua tswv tej rooj vag.
- 3 Kuv tau txib kuv tej neeg dawb huv, kuv kuj tau hu kuv tej neeg uas muaj hwj chim, vim kuv txoj kev npau taws yuav tsis nyob rau saum lawv cov uas zoo siab nyob hauv kuv txoj kev nyob siab.
- 4 Lub suab ntawm cov neeg uas nyob hauv tej roob zoo li ib pab neeg uas zoo heev, ib lub suab uas nrov heev es paub tsis meej ntawm tej haiv neeg cov teb chaws uas tau sib sau los ua ib ke, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yuav sau tej tub rog ntawm tej tshav rog los ua ke.
- 5 Lawv tuaj ntawm ib lub teb chaws uas deb heev tuaj, tuaj puag tim ntuj kawg tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv, thiab tej cuab yeej ua rog ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws, yuav rhuav kom tag nrho thaj av puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 6 Nej cia li quaj ntsuag, vim tus Tswv hnuv twb los txog lawm; nws yuav los zoo li ib txoj kev puas tsuaj uas yog los ntawm tus uas muaj hwj chim loj kawg nkaus los.
- 7 Yog li ntawd txhua txhais tes yuav yoob tsis nco qab, txhua tus neeg lub siab yuav yaj ua kua;
- 8 Thiab lawv yuav ntshai; kev mob nkeeg thiab kev nyuaj siab yuav los tuav lawv; lawv ib leeg yuav xav tsis thoo rau ib leeg; lawv tej ntsej muag yuav zoo li tej nplaim hluav taws.
- 9 Saib seb, tus Tswv hnuv los, ua nruj ua tsiv nrog txoj kev chim thiab npau taws heev, los ua kom thaj av tsis muaj neeg nyob; thiab nws yuav ua kom cov neeg uas muaj kev txhaum uas nyob hauv puas tsuaj tawm mus.
- 10 Vim tej hnuv qub saum ntuj thiab txhij txiv mim uas nyob saud yuav tsis ci; lub hnuv yuav tsaus zuj zus thaum nws tuaj, thiab lub hli yuav tsis ua kom nws ci.
- 11 Thiab kuv yuav rau txim rau lub ntiaj teb vim nws txoj kev phem, thiab rau cov neeg phem vim lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees; kuv yuav ua kom txoj kev muab hlob ntawm cov neeg khav txiv tu mus, thiab yuav txo cov neeg phem txoj kev khav txiv.

2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

- 12 Kuv yuav ua kom ib tug neeg muaj nqi dua li tej tseem kub; twb yuav yog ib tug neeg ua muaj nqi dua li tej kub ntawm Aufis.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav co saum nruab ntug, thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav txav tawm ntawm nws qhov chaw mus, nyob hauv Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws, thiab nyob hauv hnuab ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws heev.
- 14 Thiab nws yuav raug zoo li tus mos lwj uas raug luag raws, thiab zoo li tus yaj uas tsis muaj neeg quav ntsej; thiab lawv sawv daws yuav tig rov qab mus rau lawv cov neeg, thiab txhua txhia tus yuav khiav mus rau nws thaj av.
- 15 Txhua tus uas khav txiv yuav raug hno kom tshab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txhua tus uas koom nrog cov neeg phem yuav vau los ntawm hniav ntaj.
- 16 Lawv tej me nyuam kuj yuav raug lov ua tej dwb daim ntawm lawv tej qhov muag; lawv tej vaj tse yuav raug tub sab nyiaj thiab lawv tej poj niam yuav raug luag txhom.
- 17 Saib seb, kuv yuav txhib kom cov neeg Medias tuaj tawm tsam lawv, cov uas yuav tsis ntshaw nyiaj thiab kub, thiab lawv yuav tsis zoo siab rau tej ntawd.
- 18 Lawv tej hneev yuav raug tej tub hluas kom to ua tej dwb daim; thiab lawv yuav tsis muaj lub siab hlub rau tej me nyuam mos hauv plab; lawv tej qhov muag yuav tsis tseg tej me nyuam yaus.
- 19 Thiab Npanpiloos, lub yeeb koob ntawm tej teb chaws, tej hauj lwm zoo nkauj uas Tshaudis ua tau, yuav zoo li thaum Vajtsv ua rau lub nroog Xaudoos thiab Kaumaulas puas tsuaj.
- 20 Nws yuav tsis muaj neeg los nyob lawm, thiab nws yuav tsis muaj neeg nyob hauv ib tiam mus dhau ib tiam: thiab tej neeg Alanpias yuav tsis tuaj tsa tsev pheb suab ntaub rau ntawd; thiab tej neeg yug yaj yuav tsis cia lawv tej tsiaj so ntawd.
- 21 Tiam sis tej tsiaj qus tom tiaj suab puam yuav los da ntawd; thiab lawv tej vaj tse yuav muaj tej tsiaj phem nyob puv nkaus; thiab tej plas yuav los nyob ntawd, thiab tej sai yuav los dhia ntawd.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

22 Thiab tej tsiaj qus ntawm tej koog pov txwv yuav los quaj nyob rau hauv lawv tej vaj tse uas khoob lug, thiab tej zaj yuav los nyob hauv lawv tej tsev vaj ntxwv uas zoo nkauj; thiab nws lub caij los twb ze lawm, thiab nws hnuv yeej yuav tsis raug muab theem li. Vim kuv yuav ua kom nws puas tsuaj nrawm kawg nkaus; muaj tseeb tiag, vim kuv yuav muaj lub siab hlub rau kuv cov neeg, tiam sis cov neeg phem yuav piam sij.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

2 Nifais 24

- 1 Vim tus Tswv yuav muaj lub siab hlub rau Yakhauj, thiab thiaj tseem yuav xaiv Ixayees, thiab muab lawv mus nyob rau hauv lawv thaj av; thiab cov uas yog qhua yuav raug los koom nrog lawv, thiab lawv yuav npuab rau Yakhauj tsev neeg.
- 2 Thiab cov neeg yuav coj lawv thiab coj lawv los rau lawv tej chaw; muaj tseeb tiag, yuav tuaj deb puag tim ntuj kawg tuaj; thiab lawv yuav rov qab los rau lawv tej av uas tau cog lus cia lawm. Thiab tsev neeg Ixayees yuav tau tej av ntawd, thiab tus Tswv thaj av yuav raug cia rau tej tub qhe thiab ntshais qhev; thiab lawv yuav coj cov uas lawv tau txhom lawm mus rau qho uas lawv raug txhom los; thiab lawv yuav kav cov neeg uas tsim txom lawv.
- 3 Thiab yuav muaj tau tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd tus Tswv yuav pub koj so, ntawm koj txoj kev nyuaj siab, thiab ntawm koj txoj kev ntshai, thiab ntawm txoj kev ua qhev hnyav uas koj tau raug yuam ua.
- 4 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd, tias koj yuav muab zaj paj lug no nkaug Npanpiloos tus vaj ntawd, thiab hais tias: Cov neeg tsim txom ua li cas ho tsum lawm, lub nroog kub ho tsum lawm!
- 5 Tus Tswv tau muab cov neeg phem tus pas nrig lov lawm, thiab muab cov neeg kav teb kav chaw tej cwj dam lawm.
- 6 Nws tus uas tau ua kom cov neeg raug mob tsis tu ncuva nyob hauv txoj kev npau taws, nws tus uas tau kav tej haiv neeg nyob hauv txoj kev npau taws, twb raug tsim txom, thiab yuav tsis muaj leej twg cheem tau li.
- 7 Tag nrho lub ntiaj teb yuav nyob tiaj tus, thiab nyob ntsiag to; lawv yuav zoo siab pib hu nkauj.
- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, tej ntoo yuj zoo siab rau koj, thiab tej ntoo ntshaub ntawm Lenpanoos thiab, hais tias: Txij thaum koj tau poob hwj chim lawm tsis muaj tus neeg uas qaug lawm tuaj tawm tsam peb.
- 9 Ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas nyob puag sab hauv npaj siab tos ntsoov yuav ntsib koj thaum koj mus; nws tau txhib kom cov tuag sawv los rau koj, txhua tus nom tswv hauv ntiaj teb no; nws tau sawv ntawm lawv cov rooj zaum tag nrho cov vaj ntawd ntawm cov teb chaws.
- 10 Lawv tag nrho yuav tsa suab thiab hais rau koj hais tias: Puas yog koj tau qaug zog ib yam li peb thiab? Puas yog koj rais los zoo li peb lawm xwb?

2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

11 Koj lub me hwj chim twb raug muab txo nqis mus rau hauv qhov ntxa; tsis hnov koj tej suab raj nrov lawm; tej kas twb nkag rau koj sab hauv, thiab tej kas twb npog koj tas.

12 Koj tau poob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los li cas, Au Luxifaws, tus tub ntawm caij sawv ntxov! Puas yog koj tau raug tua poob los rau hauv av, uas tau ua rau tej haiv neeg qaug dag qaug zog!

13 Vim koj tau hais nyob hauv koj lub siab tias: Kuv yuav nce mus lawm saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, kuv yuav ua kom kuv lub rooj zaum siab dua li Vajtsv tej hnuv qub; kuv kuj yuav zaum rau saum lub roob ntawm txoj kev sib sau los ua ke, uas nyob rau sab ped;

14 Kuv yuav sawv mus rau tej huab sab saum; kuv yuav zoo li tus uas Siab Tshaj Plaws.

15 Tiam sis koj yuav raug txo nqis los mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus, mus rau tej sab ntawm lub qhov.

16 Lawv cov uas pom koj yuav ntsia qhov muag nruj nreem rau koj, thiab yuav xav rau koj, thiab yuav hais tias: No puas yog tus txiv neej uas tau ua rau lub ntiag teb no co ntxhov quav niab, uas tau nchos tej teb chaws?

17 Thiab tau ua rau lub qab ntuj no zoo li ib lub hav zoov, thiab tau rhuav tej nroog nyob hauv, thiab tsis tau kam qhib qhov rooj rau nws tej neeg raug txim?

18 Txhua txhia tus vaj ntxwv ntawm tej haiv neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv txhua leej txhua tus, pw hauv txoj kev tau zoo, lawv txhua leej txhua tus puav leej nyob hauv nws lub tsev.

19 Tiam sis koj tau raug muab txawb tawm ntawm koj lub ntxa zoo li ib ceg ntoo uas lwj ntsuav, thiab nrog rau cov noob uas tau raug muab tua, muab ntaj nkaug tshab, cov uas tau mus rau hauv lub qhov pob zeb; uas zoo ib yam li lub cev neeg tuag uas luag muab tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws.

20 Koj yuav tsis raug faus koom nrog lawv ua ke, vim koj tau rhuav koj thaj av thiab tau muab koj tej neeg tua pov tseg; cov neeg ua phem tej noob yuav tsis raug muaj lub meej yim ib zaug li.

21 Npaj txoj kev tua neeg rau nws tej me nyuam vim lawv cov yawg koob tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, xwv kom lawv yuav sawv tsis taus, thiab tsis tau thaj av ua lawv tug, thiab tsis muaj tej nroog nyob thoob plaws hauv lub qab ntuj no.

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

22 Vim kuv yuav sawv los tawm tsam lawv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, thiab txiav lub npe tawm ntawm Npanpiloos, thiab tej noob, thiab tub, thiab tub xeeb ntxwv, tus Tswv hais li.

23 Kuv kuj yuav muab nws ua ib qhov chaw nyob chaw txoos rau tej os dej nyob thiab tej pas dej; thiab kuv yuav muab rab khaub rhuab ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj los cheb nws, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.

24 Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tau cog lus ruaj, hais tias: Tseeb raws li kuv tau xav lawm ces nws yeej yuav muaj los; thiab raws li kuv tau npaj rau, ces nws yeej yuav muaj tseeb—

25 Tias kuv yuav coj cov neeg Axilias los rau hauv kuv thaj av, thiab nyob saum kuv tej roob yuav muab nws tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws; ces nws tus quab yuav ncaim ntawm lawv mus, thiab nws lub nra hnyav yuav ncaim ntawm lawv xub pwg mus.

26 Qhov no yog lub ntsiab uas tau npaj yuav ua rau lub ntiaj teb huv si; thiab qhov no yog txhais tes uas tau ncaiv tawm mus rau saum txhua haiv neeg.

27 Vim Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv tau npaj lawm, thiab leej twg yuav muaj cuab kav hloov tau? Thiab nws txhais tes twb xyab tawm lawm, thiab leej twg yuav tig tau nws rov qab?

28 Nyob rau hauv xyoo ua vaj ntxwv Ahas tuag yog lub nra hnyav no ntag.

29 Koj tsis txhob maj zoo siab, tag nrho nej cov neeg Filixatias, vim nws tus pas uas tau muab nplawm nej twb lov lawm; vim yuav tawm ib tug nab raj kub sai ntawm tus nab tej cag los, thiab nws tej me nyuam yuav yog ib tug nab ya uas tsiv kawg li.

30 Thiab thawj tug me nyuam yug ntawm cov neeg pluag yuav muaj noj, thiab tej neeg txom nyem yuav pw hauv txoj kev tsis muaj xwm txheej; thiab kuv yuav muab txoj kev tshaib plab los tua nej tej cag, thiab nws yuav tua nej tej noob uas seem tshuav.

31 Cia li cuab suab nyiav, Au rooj vag; cia li quaj, Au lub nroog; nej, tag nrho cov neeg Filixatias, uas tau ntshai tag; vim yuav muaj ib nthw pa hluav taws los pem hauv ntuj los, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib tug nyob hauv nws tej caij uas tau teem tseg.

32 Es thaum ntawd ho yuav teb dab tsi rau cov tub xaxov ntawm tej haiv neeg? Tias tus Tswv nrhiav tau Xi-oos lawm, thiab cov neeg pluag ntawm nws cov neeg yuav cia siab rau hauv nws.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

2 Nifais 25

- 1 Nim no kuv, Nifais, hais tej yam txog tej lus uas kuv tau sau, uas tau raug hais los ntawm Yaxayas lub qhov ncauj. Vim saib seb, Yaxayas tau hais ntau yam uas nyuaj rau kuv cov neeg ntau tus to taub; vim lawv tsis paub txog cov Neeg Yudais tej kev qhia txog tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej.
- 2 Vim kuv, Nifais, tsis tau qhia lawv ntau yam txog cov Neeg Yudais tej kev cai dab qhuas; vim lawv tej hauj lwm yog tej hauj lwm ntawm kev tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tej kev ua ub ua no yog kev ua ub ua no ntawm txoj kev qias.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, kuv sau rau kuv cov neeg, rau tag nrho txhua tus uas yuav txais tej no tom qab uas kuv sau, xwv kom lawv yuav paub Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim, uas yuav los rau saum txhua txhia haiv neeg, raws li txoj lus uas nws tau hais lawm.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, cia li mloog, Au kuv cov neeg, uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab cia li cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej lus; vim txawm tias Yaxayas tej lus tsis tshua meej rau nej los, txawm li ntawd los lawv yeej meej rau txhua txhia tus uas muaj tus ntsuj plig puv npo ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim. Tiam sis kuv qhia ib yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau nej, raws li tus ntsuj plig uas nyob hauv kuv; yog li ntawd kuv yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej raws li txoj kev qhia meej uas tau nrog kuv nyob txij li lub caij uas kuv tau tawm hauv Yeluxalees nrog kuv txiv tuaj lawm; vim saib seb, kuv tus ntsuj plig tau zoo siab nyob hauv txoj kev qhia meej rau kuv cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav kawm.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig zoo siab rau hauv Yaxayas tej lus, vim kuv tau tawm hauv Yeluxalees tuaj, thiab kuv lub qhov muag tau pom tej uas yog cov Neeg Yudais li, thiab kuv paub tias cov Neeg Yudais yeej to taub tej uas yog cov yaj saub li, thiab yeej tsis muaj dua lwm cov neeg uas to taub tej uas tau raug hais rau cov Neeg Yudais li lawv li, tsuas yuav yog tias lawv tau raug qhia mus raws li tej uas tau qhia rau cov Neeg Yudais lawm xwb.

2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

6 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv, Nifais, tsis tau qhia kuv tej me nyuam mus raws li tej uas tau qhia cov Neeg Yudais; tiam sis saib seb, kuv, tus kheej, tau nyob tim Yeluxalees, yog li ntawd kuv paub txog tej cheeb tsam ib puag ncig; thiab kuv tau piav rau kuv tej me nyuam txog Vajtswv txoj kev txiav txim, uas tau muaj rau cov Neeg Yudais, rau kuv tej me nyuam, raws li txhua yam huv tib si uas Yaxayas tau hais, thiab kuv tsis sau lawv cia.

7 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav pib ntxiv txog kuv tus kheej txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, raws li kuv txoj kev qhia meej; uas kuv paub tias tsis muaj neeg yuav muaj cuab kav ua kom tsis raug; txawm li ntawd los, nyob rau lub caij uas yuav muaj tshwm sim rau Yaxayas tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej neeg yeej yuav paub tseeb, nyob rau lub caij thaum uas lawv yuav muaj dhau los mus.

8 Yog li ntawd, cov no muaj nuj nqis rau tib neeg, thiab tus uas xav tias cov no tsis muaj nqis, kuv yuav hais rau lawv cov no nkaus xwb, thiab tsuas yuav hais tej lus no rau kuv cov neeg xwb; vim kuv paub tias lawv yuav muaj nuj nqis heev rau lawv nyob rau hauv hnuv nyoog kawg; vim nyob rau hnuv ntawd lawv yuav to taub lawv; yog li ntawd, rau qhov zoo rau lawv kuv thiaj tau sau lawv.

9 Thiab ib yam li ib tiam neeg tau raug puas tsuaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Yudais vim txoj kev tsis ncaj, ces lawv thiaj tau raug puas tsuaj ib tiam dhau ib tiam raws li lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; thiab lawv yeej tsis tau muaj ib tug uas raug puas tsuaj tsuas yog tej uas tus Tswv tej yaj saub tau qhia rau lawv lawm xwb.

10 Yog li ntawd, lawv twb tau raug qhia hais txog txoj kev puas tsuaj uas yuav los rau lawv, sai sai tom qab uas kuv txiv tau ncaim Yeluxalees lawm; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv; thiab raws li kuv txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej lawv tau raug puas tsuaj lawm, tsuas yog tshuav cov uas tau raug txhom koj mus ua qhev rau hauv Npanpiloos lawm xwb.

11 Thiab nim no kuv tau hais li no vim ntawm tus ntsuj plig uas nyob hauv kuv. Thiab txawm li ntawd los lawv tau raug cab koj mus lawm lawv yuav rov qab los dua, thiab tau thaj av ntawm Yeluxalees ua lawv tug; yog li ntawd, lawv yuav raug txum tim rov qab los rau ntawm thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg dua.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

- 12 Tiam sis, saib seb, lawv yuav muaj tsov muaj rog, thiab lus paj lus cua txog tsov rog; thiab txog thaum lub sij hawm tias Leej Txiv Tib Leeg Tub los, muaj tseeb tiag, lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb Leej Txiv, yuav los qhia nws tus kheej rau lawv nyob hauv cev nqaij daim tawv, saib seb, lawv yuav tsis lees yuav nws, vim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, thiab lawv txoj kev ua siab tawv qhwb qhawv, thiab lawv txoj kev uas ua caj dab tawv qhawv.
- 13 Saib seb, lawv yuav muab nws ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig; thiab tom qab uas nws tau raug muab tso rau hauv ib lub qhov ntxa pob zeb tau sij hawm puv peb hnuv lawm nws yuav sawv tawm hauv qhov tuag los, nrog txoj kev kho tau tej neeg muaj mob nyob hauv nws tej tis; thiab txhua tus cov uas yuav ntseeg nws lub npe yuav raug dim nyob rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj. Yog li ntawd, kuv tus ntsuj plig zoo siab yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog nws, vim kuv tau pom nws lub neej, thiab kuv lub siab yeej qhuas nws lub npe uas dawb huv.
- 14 Thiab saib seb yuav tau muaj tias tom qab uas tus Mexiyas tau sawv hauv qhov tuag los lawm, thiab tau qhia nws tus kheej rau nws cov neeg paub lawm, rau cov txawm yuav coob npaum cas uas yuav ntseeg nws lub npe paub lawm, saib seb, Yeluxalees yuav raug puas tsuaj dua; vim txoj kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas tawm tsam Vajtswv thiab cov neeg ntawm nws lub koom txoos.
- 15 Yog li ntawd, cov Neeg Yudais yuav raug tawg khiav ri niab mus txuam rau txhua haiv neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab Npanpiloos los kuj yuav raug puas tsuaj thiab; yog li ntawd, cov Neeg Yudais yuav raug ua kom tawg ri niab los ntawm lwm cov neeg.
- 16 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau raug tawg ri niab lawm, thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau rau txim rau lawv los ntawm lwm haiv neeg tau sij hawm ntaw tiam neeg lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav nqis dhau ib tiam neeg mus rau ib tiam neeg mus txog thaum lawv yuav raug yaum los ntseeg Khetos, Vajtswv tus Tub, thiab txoj kev theej txhoj uas theej tag nrho rau sawv daws—thiab thaum uas hnuv ntawd yuav los tias lawv yuav ntseeg Khetos, thiab teev tiam Leej Txiv los ntawm nws lub npe, nrog tej siab huv thiab tej tes huv si, thiab tsis txhob tos ntsoov ib zaug ntxiv rau lwm tus Mexiyas lawm, ces, nyob rau lub caij ntawd, hnuv ntawd yuav los tias tsim nyog heev uas lawv yuav tsum ntseeg tej no.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

17 Thiab tus Tswv yuav ncav nws txhais tes dua zaum ob los txum tim nws cov neeg ntawm lawv txoj kev poob zoo thiab txoj kev qaug kom zoo li qub. Yog li ntawd, nws yuav pib ua ib txog hauj lwm zoo kawg nkhaus uas xav tsis thoob thiab ib txog uas xav tsis tag rau ntawm tib neeg.

18 Yog li ntawd, nws yuav coj nws tej lus los rau lawv, yog tej lus uas yuav txiav txim rau lawv nyob rau thaum hnuv kawg, vim tej lus no yuav raug muab rau lawv ua txoj hau kev ntawm txoj kev yaum lawv ntawm tus Mexiyas tseeb, tus uas lawv tau tsis kam lees yuav; thiab rau txoj kev yaum ntawm lawv tias kom txhob tos ntxiv tias ib tug Mexiyas tseem yuav los, vim yuav tsis muaj ib tug los, tsuas yog yuav muaj tus Mexiyas cuav uas yuav dag ntxias cov neeg xwb; vim tsuas muaj tib tug Mexiyas uas tej yaj saub tau hais xwb, thiab tus Mexiyas ntawd yog tus uas yuav raug cov Neeg Yudais tsis kam lees yuav.

19 Vim raws li cov yaj saub tej lus, tus Mexiyas yuav los hauv rau pua xyoo txij li lub caij uas kuv txiv tau ncaim Yeluxalees; thiab raws li cov yaj saub tej lus, thiab raws li Vajtswv tim tswv lo lus thiab, nws lub npe yuav yog Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv tus Tub.

20 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij es, kuv tau qhia meej meej xwv kom nej thiaj tsis to taub yuam kev. Thiab ib yam li tus Tswv Vajtswv uas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob uas tau coj cov neeg Ixayees tawm tim lub teb chaws Iyiv los, thiab tau muab lub hwj chim rau Mauxes kom nws yuav tsum kho cov neeg tom qab uas lawv tau raug tej nab muaj taug tom, yog hais tias lawv yuav tsa qhov muag ntsia tus nab uas nws tau tsa sawv ntawm lawv xub ntiag, thiab kuj tau muab lub hwj chim rau nws xwv kom nws yuav ntaus tau lub pob zeb thiab dej yuav tawm hauv los; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias xws li tej yam no twb muaj tseeb, thiab ib yam li tus Tswv Vajtswv uas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, tsis muaj lwm lub npe nyob hauv qab ntuj no tsuas yog tus Yexus Khetos no xwb, tus uas kuv tau hais txog, uas neeg thiaj li yuav dim taus.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

- 21 Yog li ntawd, vim yam xwm no tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv thiaj tau cog lus rau kuv tias tej yam no uas kuv sau yuav tsum raug ceev thiab hwm tseg, thiab cev los rau kuv tej noob, ib tiam dhau ib tiam, xwv kom cov lus cog tseg yuav muaj tau puv npo rau Yauxej, xwv kom nws tej noob yuav tsis piam sij yog hais tias lub ntiaj teb no tseem yuav nyob.
- 22 Yog li ntawd, tej yam no yuav dhau ib tiam mus rau ib tiam ntev tau npaum li lub ntiaj teb yuav nyob; thiab lawv yuav mus raws li Vajtswv lub siab xav thiab lub siab nyiam; thiab cov haiv neeg uas yuav tau lawv yuav raug txiav txim raws li tej lus uas tau raug muab sau cia.
- 23 Vim peb rau siab ntso ua zoo sau, los yaum peb tej me nyuam, thiab peb cov kwv tij thiab, kom los ntseeg hauv Khetos, thiab rov los nrog Vajtswv sib raug zoo; vim peb paub hais tias twb yog los ntawm txoj kev zoo uas peb raug cawm dim, tom qab uas peb tau ua txhua txhia yam uas peb ua tau.
- 24 Thiab, txawm li ntawd los peb ntseeg hauv Khetos, peb coj Mauxes txoj kev cai, thiab cia siab ntsoov nrog txoj kev nyob khov kho rau Khetos, kom txog thaum uas txoj kev cai muaj tiav lawm.
- 25 Vim tias, yog rau qhov kawg no txoj kev cai thiaj raug muab; yog li ntawd txoj kev cai tau rais los tuag rau peb lawm, thiab peb tau raug ua kom muaj sia hauv Khetos vim peb txoj kev ntseeg; tsis tas li xwb peb coj txoj kev cai vim yog tej lus txib.
- 26 Thiab peb hais txog Khetos, peb zoo siab rau Khetos, peb qhia txog Khetos, peb qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog Khetos, thiab peb sau raws li peb tej kev tshaj tawm kev tshwm sim, xwv kom peb tej me nyuam yuav paub txog yam uas lawv yuav nrhiav los ntxuav lawv tej kev txhaum mus.
- 27 Yog li ntawd, peb hais txog txoj kev cai xwv kom peb tej me nyuam yuav paub txog txoj kev tuag ntawm txoj kev cai; thiab los ntawm txoj kev paub txog txoj kev tuag ntawm txoj kev cai, lawv yuav nrhiav mus rau txoj sia uas yog nyob hauv Khetos, thiab paub tias qhov uas muaj txoj kev cai yog rau qhov dab tsi. Thiab tom qab uas txoj kev cai muaj tiav los ntawm Khetos lawm, kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv tawm tsam nws thaum uas txoj kev cai twb tsis muaj nuj nqis lawm.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

28 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov neeg, nej yog cov neeg tawv ncauj; yog li ntawd, kuv tau qhia meej meej rau nej, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav tsis to taub yuam kev. Thiab tej lus uas kuv tau hais yuav sawv ua ib qho tim khawv rau nej; vim lawv yeej txaus qhia tau txoj kev yog txawm rau tus tib neeg twg; vim txoj kev tseeb yog ntseeg hauv Khetos thiab tsis txhob tsis kam lees nws; vim yog nej tsis kam lees nws ces kuj yog nej tsis kam lees yuav tej yaj saub thiab txoj kev cai.

29 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias txoj kev tseeb yog ntseeg hauv Khetos, thiab tsis txhob tsis kam lees nws; thiab Khetos yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum khoov teev nws, thiab teev nws kom tag nej lub dag lub zog, lub siab lub ntsws, thiab lub plab lub plawv, thiab tag nrho nej tus ntsuj plig; thiab yog hais tias nej ua li no nej yeej yuav tsis raug ntiab tawm.

30 Thiab, npaum li cas los yog hais tias nws yuav txaus ces, nej yuav tsum koj tej kev ua ub ua no thiab tej kab ke ntawm Vajtswv mus txog thaum txoj kev cai uas tau muab rau Mauxes lawm tiav tso.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

2 Nifais 26

- 1 Thiab tom qab uas Khetos sawv hauv qhov tuag los nws yuav ua kom nej pom nws tus kheej, kuv cov me nyuam, thiab kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es; thiab tej lus uas nws yuav hais rau nej yuav yog txoj kev cai uas nej yuav tsum coj.
- 2 Vim saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias kuv tau pom tias ntau tiam neeg yuav dhau mus, thiab yuav muaj tsov rog loj thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv kuv cov neeg.
- 3 Thiab tom qab uas tus Mexiyas los lawm yuav muaj tej cim muab rau kuv cov neeg ntawm nws txoj kev yug, thiab ntawm nws txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; thiab hnuv ntawd yuav phem thiab ntshai heev rau cov neeg phem, vim lawv yuav piam sij; thiab lawv piam sij vim lawv ntiab tej yaj saub tawm, thiab cov ntseeg, thiab muab pob zeb ntaus lawv, thiab muab lawv tua; yog li ntawd txoj kev quaj ntawm cov ntseeg tej ntshav yuav sawv nce tawm hauv av mus rau Vajtswv tawm tsam lawv.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, txhua tus uas khav txiv, thiab cov uas ua phem, hnuv uas yuav los ntawd yuav kub lawv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, vim lawv yuav zoo li tej quav nyab npleg.
- 5 Thiab lawv cov uas tua cov yaj saub, thiab cov ntseeg, tej qhov ntuj tob yuav muab lawv nqos mus, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li; thiab tej roob yuav los npog lawv, thiab tej khaub zeeg cua yuav nqa lawv mus, thiab tej vaj tse yuav vau los tsuam lawv thiab tsoo kom lawv tawg ua tej dwb daim thiab zom kom lawv ntsoog ua hmoov.
- 6 Thiab lawv yuav raug xob quaj xyuas, thiab xob tua, thiab av qeeg, thiab txhua txhia yam kev puas tsuaj, vim tej hluav taws ntawm txoj kev npau taws ntawm tus Tswv yuav hlawv tawm tsam lawv, thiab lawv yuav zoo li tej quav nyab npleg, thiab hnuv uas yuav los ntawd yuav hlawv lawv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.
- 7 Au txoj kev mob, thiab txoj kev tu siab ntawm kuv lub siab vim txoj kev poob ntawm txoj kev uas kuv cov neeg tuag! Vim kuv, Nifais, tau pom nws lawm, thiab qhov ntawd twb yuav luag ua rau kuv puas tsuaj nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag; tiam sis kuv yuav tsum quaj rau kuv tus Vajtswv: Koj tej kev mas yeej ncaj ncees.

2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Tiam sis saib seb, tej neeg ncaj ncees uas mloog cov yaj saub tej lus, thiab tsis ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, tiam sis nrhiav ntsoov rau Khetos nrog txoj kev nyob ruaj khov kho rau tej cim uas tau muab, txawm li txhua yam kev tsim txom huv tib si los—saib seb, lawv yog cov uas yuav tsis piam sij.
- 9 Tiam sis tus Tub ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees yuav tshwm sim rau lawv; thiab nws yuav kho lawv kom zoo, thiab lawv yuav muaj kev thaj yeeb nrog nws, mus txog thaum uas muaj peb tiam neeg yuav dhau mus, thiab muaj coob tus ntawm tiam neeg thib plaub yuav tuag mus nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 10 Thiab thaum tej xwm txheej no tau dhau mus tas lawm yuav muaj ib txoj kev puas tsuaj los rau kuv cov neeg sai heev; vim, txawm hais tias kuv tus ntsuj plig mob los, kuv twb pom tej ntawd lawm; yog li ntawd, kuv paub tias nws yeej yuav muaj los; thiab lawv yuav muab lawv tus kheej muag tsis rau nqi; vim, vim qhov nqi zog ntawm lawv txoj kev khav txiv thiab lawv txoj kev ruam lawv yuav tau sau txoj kev puas tsuaj; vim hais tias lawv zeem rau tus dab thiab xaiv tej hauj lwm tsaus ntuj dua li tej hauj lwm kaj, yog li ntawd lawv yuav tsum nqis mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.
- 11 Vim tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig yuav tsis nrog neeg nyob nraim. Thiab thaum tus Ntsuj Plig tsum tsis nrog neeg nyob lawm ces yuav muaj kev puas tsuaj los sai sai, thiab tej no ua rau kuv tus ntsuj plig tu siab heev.
- 12 Thiab yam li uas kuv tau hais txog txoj kev yaum cov Neeg Yudais, tias Yexus twb yog tus Khetos tiag, nws yeej tsim nyog tias Lwm Haiv Neeg kuj yuav tsum raug yaum tias Yexus yog tus Khetos thiab, Vajtswv tus nyob mus ib txhis;
- 13 Thiab tias nws yuav qhia nws tus kheej rau txhua leej txhua tus huv tib si uas ntseeg nws, los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim; muaj tseeb tiag, rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab txhua pab neeg, ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj, tej cim, thiab tej uas xav tsis tag, rau tib neeg raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg.
- 14 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau nej txog hnub kawg; txog lub caij thaum tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav cog tej xwm txheej no tawm los rau tib neeg.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

15 Tom qab uas kuv tej noob thiab kuv cov kwv tij tej noob yuav tau tso kev ntseeg tseg, thiab yuav tau raug nplawm los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, tom qab uas tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tau tsuam yeej tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau tsa laj kab tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau tsa ntsa loog tawm tsam lawv; thiab tom qab uas lawv yuav raug txo qes los rau hauv av, twb yuav mus txog thaum uas tsis muaj lawv lawm, tiam sis cov neeg ncaj ncees tej lus yuav raug sau cia, thiab neeg uas mob siab rau ntseeg tej lus thov Vajtswv yeej yuav raug hnov, thiab txhua txhia tus cov uas tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg yuav tsis hnov qab li.

16 Vim lawv cov uas yuav raug puas tsuaj yuav hais lus tawm hauv av los rau lawv cov no, thiab lawv tej lus hais yuav raug tawm qis ntawm tej plua tshauv los, thiab lawv tej suab yuav zoo li tus uas tau muaj tus ntsuj plig sib thooj; vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav muab lub hwj chim rau nws; xwv kom nws yuav ntxhi txog lawv, twb zoo ib yam li nws tawm hauv av los; thiab lawv tej lus yuav ntxhi tawm hauv tej plua av tuaj.

17 Vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li no tias: Lawv yuav tau sau tej xwm txheej uas tau raug ua nyob hauv lawv cia, thiab tej xwm txheej no yuav raug muab sau thiab foob cia rau hauv ib phau ntawv, thiab cov uas tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg yuav tsis muaj lawv, vim lawv nrhiav muab tej uas yog Vajtswv li rhuav pov tseg.

18 Yog li ntawd, ib yam li cov uas tau raug puas tsuaj twb raug puas tsuaj ceev ceev lawm; thiab tej neeg uas yog lawv cov neeg phem yuav raug zoo li tej npluag nplej uas raug cua ntsawj ya mus—muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais li no tias: Nws yeej yuav muaj sai, tib pliag—

19 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias, lawv cov uas tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg yuav raug tsim txom los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg txhais tes.

20 Thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav khav theeb rau lawv tej qhov muag tej kev muab hlob, thiab tau dawm ko taw, vim txoj kev muaj cav dawm lawv ko taw ntau, lawv thiaj tau tsa ntau lub koom txoos; txawm li ntawd los lawv tau muab Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab tej txuj ci tseem ceeb pov tseg, thiab lawv tau qhia lawv tus kheej txog lawv tej kev txawj ntse thiab lawv tej kev kawm, xwv kom lawv yuav tau nyiaj thiab zom tej neeg pluag tej ntsej muag.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

21 Thiab tau muaj ntau lub koom txoos tau tsa los kom muaj kev ntshaw, thiab kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab kev ntsub ntxaug.

22 Thiab kuj muaj kev tuav hauv ua phem, zoo ib yam li txheej thaum ub, raws li txoj kev tuav hauv ntawm tus dab, vim nws yeej yog tus tswv uas pib tej no huv tib si; muaj tseeb tiag, yog tus uas pib txoj kev tua neeg, thiab tej kev ua hauj lwm tsaus ntuj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws muab ib txoj hlua zooj los khi lawv caj dab cab lawv, mus txog thaum uas nws muab nws txoj hlua ruaj ruaj uas nyob tas mus li los khi lawv.

23 Vim saib seb, kuv cov mi kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv hais rau nej hais tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tsis ua hauj lwm tsaus ntuj.

24 Nws yeej tsis ua ib yam xwm txheej dab tsi tsuas yog yuav ua tej uas zoo rau lub ntiaj teb thiab txhua yam uas nyob hauv xwb; vim nws yeej hlub lub ntiaj teb, kawg nkaus tias nws tso nws tus kheej txoj sia xwv kom nws yuav coj tau neeg txhua tus mus cuag nws. Yog li ntawd, nws tsis tau hais ib tug li kom tsis txhob los mus txais yuav nws txoj kev cawm seeg.

25 Saib seb, nws puas tau hais rau leej twg, hais tias: Cia li khiav ntawm kuv mus? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Nws tsis tau hais li ntawd; tiam sis nws hais tais: Nej txhua tus uas nyob thoob plaws hauv qab ntuj khwb no cia li los cuag kuv, los yuav mis thiab zib ntab, uas yog cov tsis yuav nyiaj thiab tsis muaj nqi.

26 Saib seb, nws puas tau hais kom ib tug twg tias kom lawv yuav tsum khiav tawm hauv tej tsev sab laj mus, los sis khiav tawm hauv tej tsev teev tiam Vajtswv? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, nws yeej tsis tau hais li ntawd.

27 Nws puas tau hais kom ib tug twg tias kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob txais nws txoj kev cawm seeg? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, Nws tsis tau hais li ntawd; tiam sis nws tau muab txoj kev cawm seeg ntawd pub dawb dawb rau neeg txhua leej txhua tus; thiab nws tau txib nws cov neeg tias lawv yuav tsum yaum neeg txhua txhia tus kom hloov siab lees txim.

28 Saib seb, tus Tswv puas tau hais kom ib tug twg tias kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob txais yuav nws txoj kev zoo? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, Nws tsis tau hais li ntawd; tiam sis txhua txhia tus neeg yeej muaj cai sib txig zos, thiab tsis muaj leej twg raug txwv.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

29 Nws tau txib tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj tej xib hwb cuav; vim, saib seb tej xib hwb cuav txhais tias yog neeg qhuab qhia thiab tau npaj lawv tus kheej ua ib qho kaj rau lub ntiaj teb, xwv kom lawv yuav nplua nuj thiab tau ntiaj teb ntsej muag; tiam sis lawv tsis nrhiav txoj kev zoo ntawm Xi-oos.

30 Saib seb, tus Tswv tau txwv yam no; yog li ntawd, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau muab ib txoj lus txib tias neeg txhua tus yuav tsum muaj txoj kev siab hlub uas yog txoj kev hlub. Thiab yog lawv tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub ces lawv yeej tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi li. Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias lawv muaj txoj kev siab hlub lawv yeej yuav tsis pub kom Xi-oos tej tub ua hauj lwm piam sij.

31 Tiam sis cov tub ua hauj lwm uas nyob hauv Xi-oos yuav tsum ua hauj lwm rau Xi-oos; vim yog hais tias lawv ua hauj lwm yuav nyiaj lawv yuav tsum piam sij.

32 Thiab ntxiv dua, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau txib tias neeg yuav tsum tsis txhob tua neeg; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob dag; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua tub sab; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob muab tus Tswv uas yog lawv tus Vajtswv lub npe coj mus xyav ua si khuav; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ntshaw luag tug; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj kev ntxub; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis nrog lwm tus sib cav sib ceg; tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug; thiab tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua tej no ib yam li; vim yog leej twg ua tej no yeej yuav raug piam sij.

33 Vim yeej tsis muaj ib yam kev tsis ncaj ncees no los ntawm tus Tswv los li; vim nws tsuas ua tej uas zoo rau tib neeg xwb; thiab nws tsuas ua tej uas yooj yim to taub rau tib neeg xwb; thiab nws caw lawv txhua leej txhua tus kom los cuag nws thiab los txais yuav nws txoj kev tshav ntuj; thiab nws yeej tsis tau txwv ib tug twg uas los cuag nws, tsis hais neeg tawv dub thiab tawv dawb, tsis hais tus raug txim los tus tsis raug, tsis hais poj niam los txiv neej; thiab nws nco ntsoov txog cov tsis tau hnov nws; thiab txhua txhia tus zoo tib yam nkaus rau Vajtswv, tsis hais cov Neeg Yudais los yog Lwm Haiv Neeg.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

2 Nifais 27

- 1 Tiam sis, saib seb, nyob rau hauv hnub kawg, los sis nyob rau hauv Lwm Haiv Neeg lub caij—muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb txhua txhia haiv neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab kuj yog cov Neeg Yudais thiab, tsis hais cov uas yuav tuaj rau saum thaj av no thiab cov uas yuav nyob rau saum lwm thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob saum txhua thaj av hauv ntiaj teb no huv tib si, saib seb, lawv yuav raug qaug rau txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab txhua txhia yam kev qias—
- 2 Thiab thaum hnub ntawd los lawv yuav raug Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv los xyuas, nrog xob quaj thiab nrog av qeeg, thiab nrog ib lub suab nrov heev, thiab nrog cua daj cua dub, thiab nrog khaub zeeg cua, thiab nrog nplaim hluav taws leej faj.
- 3 Thiab txhua txhia haiv neeg uas tawm tsam Xi-oos, thiab cov uas ua kom nws muaj kev nyuaj siab, yuav raug zoo li ib zag npau suav uas pom thaum tsaus ntuj; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yeej yuav muaj li ntawd rau lawv, twb yuav zoo li rau ib tug neeg tshaib plab uas npau suav, thiab saib seb zoo li nws tau noj tiam sis nws tsim los no nws plab tseem qhuav qhawv; los sis yuav zoo li ib tug neeg nqhis dej uas tau npau suav, thiab saib seb zoo li nws tau haus dej tiam sis thaum nws tsim los no saib seb nws tsis nco qab lawm, thiab nws tus ntsuj plig tseem nqhis; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav muaj li ntawd rau tej neeg ntawm txhua txhia haiv neeg uas tseem pheed yuav tawm tsam nkaug Roob Xi-oos.
- 4 Vim saib seb, nej txhua tus uas ua kev tsis ncaj ncees, cia li nyob twj ywm thiab cia li ua zoo xav, vim nej yuav qw, thiab quaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav raug vwm tiam sis tsis yog qaug cawv, nej yuav vau koj vau kus tiam sis tsis yog haus cawv ntau.
- 5 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau hliv tus ntsuj plig uas tsaug zog heev rau nej. Vim saib seb, nej tau kaw nej tej qhov muag, thiab nej tau tsis lees yuav tej yaj saub; thiab nej tej nom tej tsw, thiab tej tub pom yav tom ntej nws tau muab zais vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 6 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav coj tej lus ntawm ib phau ntawv los rau nej, thiab lawv yuav yog tej lus ntawm lawv cov uas tau pw so hauv kev tuag lawm.

2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

- 7 Thiab saib seb phau ntawv yuav raug muab zwm; thiab nyob hauv phau ntawv yuav muaj ib qho kev tshwm sim los ntawm Vajtswv, txij li puag thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los mus rau thaum ntuj tag teb kawg.
- 8 Yog li ntawd, vim tej uas tau raug muab zwm cia lawm, tej uas tau raug muab zwm cia lawm yuav tsis raug muab koj los rau cov neeg thaum uas lawv tseem muaj kev phem thiab kev qias. Yog li ntawd phau ntawv yuav raug tsis pub rau lawv.
- 9 Tiam sis phau ntawv yuav raug muab rau ib tug txiv neej, thiab nws yuav muab tej lus ntawm phau ntawv, uas yog cov neeg uas tau pw so hauv av lawm tej lus, thiab nws yuav koj tej lus no mus rau lwmtus;
- 10 Tiam sis tej lus uas raug muab zwm lawm nws yuav tsum tsis txhob muab, thiab nws yuav tsum tsis txhob muab phau ntawv. Vim phau ntawv yuav raug muab zwm los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim, thiab tej kev tshwm sim uas raug muab zwm cia rau hauv lawm yuav tsum raug muab ceev rau hauv phau ntawv mus txog thaum tus Tswv lub sij hawm, uas lawv yuav tawm los; vim saib seb, lawv qhia txhua yam huv tib si txij li puag thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los mus txog rau thaum ntuj tag teb kawg.
- 11 Thiab hnuv ntawd yeej yuav los xwv kom tej lus ntawm phau ntawv uas tau raug muab zwm cia lawm yuav raug muab nyeem nyob puag saum tej ru tsev; thiab lawv yuav raug muab nyeem los ntawm Khetos lub hwj chim; thiab txhua yam tsav uas ib txwm tau tshwm sim rau tib neeg lawm yuav raug muab qhia rau tib neeg, thiab tej uas tseem yuav tshwm sim los mus txog thaum ntuj tag teb kawg.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum uas phau ntawv yuav raug muab rau tus txiv neej uas kuv tau hais, phau ntawv yuav tau raug muab zais ncaim ntawm neeg ntiaj teb lub qhov muag, xwv kom tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg lub qhov muag yuav pom nws tsuas yuav yog peb tug tim khawv thiaj li yuav pom nws xwb, los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim nrog nws tus uas tau raug muab phau ntawv rau xwb; thiab lawv yuav ua tim khawv txog qhov tseeb ntawm phau ntawv thiab txog tej xwm txheej uas nyob hauv.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

- 13 Thiab yuav tsis muaj dua lwm tus uas yuav pom phau ntawv no, tsuas yog qho tug uas raws li Vajtswv pom zoo thiaj li pom thiab los ua tim khawv txog nws tej lus pub rau tib neeg xwb; vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau hais tias cov neeg mob siab rau ntseeg tej lus yuav nrov zoo li tej uas los ntawm kev tuag lawm los.
- 14 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav pib koj tej lus ntawm phau ntawv ntawd tawm los; thiab nyob rau ntawm coob tus tim khawv li uas zoo rau nws tej qhov ncauj nws yuav tsa nws txoj lus; thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas tsis kam lees yuav Vajtswv txoj lus!
- 15 Tiam sis saib seb, yuav muaj tau tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav hais rau nws tus uas nws yuav muab phau ntawv rau hais tias: Koj tej lus no uas yog cov uas tsis muab zwm tseg thiab koj lawv mus rau lwm tus, xwv kom nws yuav tau koj mus qhia rau tus neeg txawj ntse hais tias; Kuv thov koj nyeem qhov no. Thiab tus neeg txawj ntse yuav teb hais tias: Koj phau ntawv los rau kuv, thiab kuv yuav nyeem lawv.
- 16 Thiab nim no, vim txoj kev xav tau yeeb koob ntawm lub ntiaj teb thiab xav nplua nuj lawv yuav hais li no, thiab yuav tsis yog rau Vajtswv lub yeeb koob.
- 17 Thiab tus txiv neej yuav hais tias: Kuv koj tsis tau phau ntawv los, vim nws twb raug muab zwm cia lawm.
- 18 Ces tus neeg txawj ntse yuav teb hais tias: Kuv nyeem tsis tau nws.
- 19 Yog li ntawd yuav muaj tau tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav rov qab muab phau ntawv thiab tej lus nyob hauv los rau nws tus uas tsis txawj ntse dua; thiab tus txiv neej uas tsis txawj ntse yuav hais tias: Kuv twb tsis txawj ntse.
- 20 Ces tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav hais rau nws hais tias: Cov neeg uas txawj ntse lawv yuav tsis nyeem tej lus no, rau qhov lawv tau tsis kam lees yuav tej lus no lawm, thiab kuv yuav muaj peev xwm ua tau kuv txoj hauj lwm; yog li ntawd koj yuav tsum nyeem tej lus uas kuv yuav muab rau koj.
- 21 Tsis txhob kov tej uas raug muab zwm cia lawm, vim kuv mam li koj lawv los thaum txog kuv lub sij hawm; vim kuv yuav ua kom tib neeg pom hais tias kuv yeej muaj cuab kav ua kuv txoj hauj lwm.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

22 Yog li ntawd, thaum uas koj tau nyeem tej lus uas kuv tau kom koj nyeem, thiab tau txais tej tim khawv uas kuv tau cog lus tseg rau lawm, ces koj yuav tsum rov qab muab phau ntawv mus zwm dua, thiab muab nws coj mus zais rau kuv, xwv kom kuv yuav hwm tau tej lus uas koj tsis tau nyeem tseg cia, mus txog thaum uas kuv yuav pom tias haum rau hauv kuv txoj kev txawj ntse uas yuav muab txhua yam tsav los qhia rau tib neeg.

23 Vim saib seb, kuv yog Vajtswv; thiab kuv yog ib tug Vajtswv uas muaj txuj ci tseem ceeb; thiab kuv yuav qhia rau lub ntiaj teb tias nag hmo kuv zoo li cas, hnuv no thiab mus ib txhis li kuv yeej yuav zoo li ntawd; thiab kuv tsuas ua hauj lwm rau tib neeg mus raws li lawv tej kev ntseeg xwb.

24 Thiab yuav tau muaj dua tias tus Tswv yuav hais rau nws tus uas yuav nyeem tej lus tias yuav tsum tau nyeem tej uas muab rau nws:

25 Vim npaum tias yog cov neeg no muab lawv lub qhov ncauj txav los ze kuv thiab muab lawv tej di ncauj hwm kuv, tiam sis lawv tau tshem lawv tej siab mus deb ntawm kuv, thiab lawv tej kev ntshai kuv yog raug qhia los ntawm neeg tej kev qhuab qhia—

26 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav pib ua ib txog hauj lwm zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thooob nyob hauv cov neeg no, muaj tseeb tiag, ib txog hauj lwm zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thooob thiab ib txog uas xav tsis tas li, vim txoj kev txawj ntse ntawm lawv cov neeg txawj ntse thiab cov neeg paub ntaub paub ntawv yuav piam sij, thiab txoj kev to taub ntawm lawv cov neeg ntse yuav raug muab zais.

27 Thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas nrhiav muab lawv tej lus uas lawv hais zais tob tsis pub tus Tswv paub! Thiab lawv tej hauj lwm yog nyob hauv qhov tsaus ntuj; thiab lawv hais tias: Leej twg yuav pom peb, thiab leej twg yuav paub? Thiab lawv kuj hais tias: muaj tseeb tiag, yog nej muab tej no ntseeb sab hauv tuaj sab nrauv ces yeej yuav pom zoo li tus neeg paub lauj kaub tej av. Tiam sis saib seb, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais tias, kuv yuav qhia rau lawv, tias kuv twb paub tag nrho lawv tej hauj lwm huv tib si. Vim tej hauj lwm puas yuav hais rau tus neeg uas ua tej hauj lwm ntawd tias, nws tsis yog tus tsim kuv? Los sis tej khoom uas raug kho puas yuav hais tau rau nws tus uas kho nws hais tias, nws tsis muaj kev to taub?

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

- 28 Tiam sis saib seb, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais tias: Kuv yuav qhia rau noob neej tias nws tshuav tsis ntev pes tsawg lawm uas Lenpanoos yuav raug muab pauv mus ua ib thaj teb uas zoo heev; thiab thaj teb uas zoo ntawd yuav raug suav hais tias yog ib thaj hav zoov.
- 29 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd cov neeg lag ntseg yuav hnov phau ntawv tej lus, thiab cov neeg dig muag tej qhov muag yuav pom tawm hauv qhov tsis tseeb los thiab tawm hauv qhov tsaus ntuj los.
- 30 Thiab cov neeg uas txo hwj chim yuav tau koob hmoov ntxiv, thiab lawv tej kev xyiv fab yuav nyob hauv tus Tswv, thiab cov pluag uas ua neej nrog luag nyob yuav xyiv fab hauv Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv.
- 31 Vim tseeb npaum li tus Tswv tseem muaj txoj sia nyob lawv yuav pom tias tus uas phem kawg nkaus yuav raug ua kom tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, thiab cov neeg uas pheej thuam lwm tus yuav raug puas tsuaj, thiab txhua tus uas nrhiav ntsoov txoj kev tsis ncaj yuav raug ntiab tawm mus;
- 32 Thiab lawv cov uas hais lus nkaug ib tug neeg tsis muaj txim tias nws muaj txim, thiab cuab ib rooj ntxiab rau nws tus uas tau qhuab ntawm lub rooj vag, thiab muab cov neeg ncaj ncees thawb rau ib sab rau qhov tsis muaj nuj nqis li.
- 33 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau hais li no, tus uas tau txhiv Anplaham, txog rau Yakhauj tsev neeg: Nim no Yakhauj yuav tsis txaj muag, thiab nim no nws lub ntsej muag yuav tsis daj li.
- 34 Tiam sis thaum nws pom nws tej me nyuam, txoj hauj lwm ntawm kuv txhais tes, nyob hauv nws nruab nrab, lawv yuav qhuas kuv lub npe, thiab qhuas Yakhauj Tus Dawb Huv, thiab yuav ntshai Ixayees tus Vajtswv.
- 35 Lawv cov uas tau ua txhaum nyob hauv sab ntsuj plig kuj yuav los mus to taub, thiab lawv cov uas yws yws yuav kawm lus qhuab qhia.

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

2 Nifais 28

- 1 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv tau hais rau nej, raws li tus Ntsuj Plig tau yuam kom kuv hais; yog li ntawd, kuv paub tias tej no yeej yuav muaj los xwb xwb li.
- 2 Thiab tej uas yuav raug muab sau tawm hauv phau ntawv los yuav raug muaj nuj nqis heev rau noob neej, thiab qhov tseem ceeb yog rau peb tej noob, uas yog ib cov noob seem los ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 3 Vim yuav tau muaj tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd cov koom txoos uas tau raug tsa, thiab tsis yog tsa rau tus Tswv, thaum uas muaj ib tug yuav hais rau lwm tus hais tias: Saib seb, kuv, kuv yog tus Tswv li; thiab lwm tus ho yuav teb tias: Kuv, kuv yog tus Tswv li; thiab txhua tus uas tau tsa tej koom txoos yuav hais li no, thiab tsis yog rau tus Tswv—
- 4 Thiab lawv yuav ib leeg cam ib leeg; thiab lawv cov pov thawj yuav ib leeg cam ib leeg, thiab lawv yuav qhia tej uas lawv kawm lawv, thiab tsis kam txais yuav tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas txawj muab kev qhia.
- 5 Thiab lawv tsis kam txais yuav Vajtswv lub hwj chim, uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv; thiab lawv hais rau cov neeg tias: Cuab pob ntseg mloog peb, thiab nej cia li mloog peb tej kev qhuab qhia; vim saib seb niaj hnuv nim no yeej tsis muaj Vajtswv, vim tus Tswv thiab tus Txhiv Dim tau ua nws txoj hauj lwm tiav lawm, thiab nws tau muab nws lub hwj chim rau tib neeg lawm;
- 6 Saib seb, nej cia li cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej kev qhuab qhia; yog lawv leej twg yuav hais tias muaj ib qho txuj ci tseem ceeb tau ua los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, cia li tsis txhob ntseeg; vim niaj hnuv nim no nws tsis yog tus Vajtswv uas muaj tej txuj ci tseem ceeb; nws twb tau ua nws txoj hauj lwm tiav lawm.
- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav muaj coob leej uas hais tias: Yeej meem noj, yeej meem haus, thiab cia li zoo siab, vim tag kis peb yuav tuag; thiab nws yuav zoo rau peb.

2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

8 Thiab kuj yuav muaj coob tug uas yuav hais tias: Yeej meem noj, yeej meem haus, thiab cia li zoo siab; txawm li ntawd los, yuav tsum ntshai Vajtswv—nws yuav tsis xav li cas rau tej kev txhaum me uas peb ua; muaj tseeb tiag, dag me ntsis, txhav luag lwm tus vim tej lus uas nws hais, khawb ib lub qhov rau ib tug neeg uas nyob ze nej; tej no ua yeej tsis ua cas li; thiab cia li ua ib puas tsav yam no, vim tag kis peb yuav tuag; thiab txawm tias peb txhaum los, Vajtswv yuav ntaus peb ob peb nplawg xwb, thiab thaum kawg peb yeej yuav raug dim los mus nyob rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.

9 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav muaj ntau tus uas yuav qhia zoo li no, tej lus cuav thiab tej lus tsis muaj qab hau thiab tej lus qhia uas vwm ntsuav, thiab yuav khav txiv ntxhias hauv lawv tej siab, thiab yuav zais lawv tej kev qhuab qhia ntawm Vajtswv kom tob; thiab lawv tej hauj lwm yuav nyob hauv kev tsaus ntuj.

10 Thiab cov ntseeg tej ntshav yuav quaj hu tawm hauv av los tawm tsam lawv.

11 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv txhua tus tau ncaim tawm ntawm txoj kev lawm; lawv tau rais los mus ua neeg ntseeg siab.

12 Vim txoj kev khav theeb, thiab vim tej xib hwb cuav, thiab tej lus qhuab qhia cuav, lawv tej koom txoos tau rais los mus ua ib co uas tsis ncaj tsis huv, thiab lawv tej koom txoos yog tej uas muaj muaj plhus; vim txoj kev khav theeb lawv thiaj li muaj muaj plhus.

13 Lawv nyiag ntawm tej neeg pluag vim tej chaw dawb huv zoo uas lawv muaj; lawv nyiag ntawm tej neeg pluag vim lawv tej tsuj tej npuag; thiab lawv tsim txom tej neeg uas txo hwj chim thiab tej neeg pluag tej siab tej ntsws, vim lawv txoj kev khav theeb lawv thiaj muaj muaj plhus.

14 Lawv ua caj dab txhav txhav thiab tsa taub hau siab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab vim txoj kev khav theeb, thiab txoj kev phem, thiab tej kev qias, thiab tej kev ua niam ntiav, lawv txhua txhia tus tau mus yuam kev lawm tsuas yog tshuav ob peb tug, cov uas lawv tus Khetos qab uas txo hwj chim xwb; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem raug luag coj, kom ntau ntau zaus lawv ua txhaum vim lawv tau raug qhia los ntawm neeg tej kev qhuab qhia.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

- 15 Au cov neeg txawj ntse, thiab paub ntaub paub ntawv, thiab cov neeg nplua nuj, uas muaj plhus los ntawm lawv tej siab khav theeb, thiab tag nrho cov uas qhia tej lus qhia cuav, thiab tag nrho cov uas ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug, thiab muab tus Tswv txoj kev yog pauv, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tus uas muaj hwj chim loj kawg nkaus hais tias, kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv lauj, vim lawv yuav raug muab pov nqis mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus!
- 16 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas saib cov neeg ncaj ncees tsis rau nqi thiab cem phem rau tej uas zoo, thiab hais tias tej ntawd tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi! Vim muaj hnuv yuav los txog uas tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav los xyuas cov neeg ntawm lub ntiaj teb sai sai; thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum uas lawv siav nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj lawv yuav piam sij.
- 17 Tiam sis saib seb, yog hais tias cov nyob hauv ntiaj teb yuav hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev phem thiab kev qias lawv yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li ntawd.
- 18 Tiam sis saib seb, lub koom txoos loj thiab txaus ntxub ntawd, uas yog tag nrho ntiaj teb tus niam ntiav, yuav tsum raug vau mus rau hauv av, thiab qhov vau ntawd yuav phem kawg nkaus.
- 19 Vim tus dab lub nceeg vaj yuav tsum raug tshee hnyo, thiab lawv cov uas nyob rau hauv nws tsim nyog yuav raug txhib kom los hloov siab lees txim, los sis tus dab yuav muab nws txoj saw hlau uas kav ib txhis li los txhom lawv khi, thiab lawv yuav raug txhib kom npau taws, thiab piam sij;
- 20 Vim saib seb, nyob rau hnuv ntawd, nws yuav tshum tib neeg tej siab, thiab txhib kom lawv npau taws tawm tsam tej uas zoo.
- 21 Thiab nws yuav nplij kom lwm tus zoo siab, thiab ntxias lawv mus rau txoj kev tau zoo thiab kev muaj hauv ntiaj teb no, kom lawv yuav hais tias; Txhua yam tsav yeej zoo kawg nyob hauv Xi-oos; muaj tseeb tiag, Xi-oos yeej huaj vam, txhua yam puav leej zoo—thiab li ntawd tus dab thiaj dag ntxias tau lawv tej ntsuj plig, thiab yuav maj mam coj lawv mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

- 22 Thiab saib seb, nws ntxias lwm cov lawm, thiab qhia rau lawv hais tias yeej tsis muaj ntuj txiag teb tsaus; thiab nws hais rau lawv tias: Kuv tsis yog dab, vim ib txwm yeej tsis muaj dab—thiab nws yuav ntxhi rau lawv tej pob ntseg li no, mus txog thaum uas nws muab nws txoj saw hlau uas dab tuag heev khi tau lawv, qhov ntawd lawv yuav nti tsis dim ib zaug li.
- 23 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb raug khi nrog txoj kev tuag, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus; thiab txoj kev tuag, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus, thiab tus dab, thiab txhua txhia tus uas raug mag lub voj hlua ntawd yuav tsum raug los sawv ntawm Vajtsv lub rooj zaum, thiab raug txiav txim mus raws li lawv tes hauj lwm, ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav tsum tau mus rau hauv qhov chaw uas tau npaj rau lawv lawm, twb yog ib lub pas dej hluav taws thiab leej faj, uas muaj kev tsim txom tsis txawj kawg li.
- 24 Yog li ntawd, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas tau zoo nyob hauv Xi-oos!
- 25 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas qw hais tias: Txhua txhia yam puav leej zoo!
- 26 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas mus cuab pob ntseg mloog rau neeg tej lus qhuab qhia, thiab tsis kam txais yuav Vajtsv lub hwj chim, thiab lub txiaj ntsim Vaj Ntsuj Plig tus Dawb Huv!
- 27 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas hais tias. Peb tau txais lawm, thiab peb tsis yuav ntxiv lawm!
- 28 Thiab thaum kawg, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau txhua txhia tus cov uas npau tshee hnyo, thiab npau taws vim Vajtsv txoj kev tseeb! Vim saib seb, nws tus uas raug tsa rau saum lub pob zeb yuav txais nws nrog txoj kev zoo siab; thiab nws tus uas tsa rau saum tej xuab zeb txheem ntshai nws yuav vau tshee hnyo.
- 29 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas yuav hais tias: Peb tau txais Vajtsv txoj lus lawm, thiab peb tsis xav tau Vajtsv txoj lus ntxiv lawm, vim peb muaj txaus lawm!

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

30 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li no:
Kuv yuav muab rau noob neej ib kab tag mam li ib
kab, ib zaj tag mam li ib zaj, me ntsis qhov no thiab
me ntsis qhov tod; thiab lawv cov uas mloog kuv tej
lus qhia, thiab cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej lus ntuas,
yuav tau txais koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav kawm kev
txawj ntse; vim rau nws tus uas tau txais kuv yuav
muab ntau ntxiv; thiab rau lawv cov uas yuav hais
tias, Peb muaj txaus lawm, tej uas lawv muaj yuav
raug muab tawm ntawm lawv mus.

31 Nws tus uas cia siab rau neeg, los sis cia siab rau
nws lub hwj chim, los sis tus uas yuav mloog rau
neeg tej lus qhuab qhia, yuav raug foom tsis zoo,
tsuas yog tias lawv tej lus qhuab qhia yuav yog tus Vaj
Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim muab xwb thiaj
yuav tsis raug foom.

32 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, Ib
Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li!
Vim txawm li ntawd los kuv yuav xyab kuv txhais caj
npab rau lawv ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv los, lawv yeej
yuav tsis lees paub kuv; txawm li ntawd los, kuv
yuav ua siab ntev hluv lawv, tus Tswv uas yog
Vajtswv hais li, yog hais tias lawv yuav hloov siab lees
txim thiab los mus cuag kuv; vim kuv txhais caj npab
yeej xyab rawv tas hnuv li, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus
Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li.

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give
unto the children of men line upon line, precept
upon precept, here a little and there a little; and
blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts,
and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn
wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more;
and from them that shall say, We have enough, from
them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or
maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the pre-
cepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by
the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of
Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out
mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny
me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith
the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me;
for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith
the Lord God of Hosts.

2 Nifais 29

- 1 Tiam sis saib seb, yuav muaj coob leej—nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum uas kuv yuav pib ua ib txoj hauj lwm zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob rau lawv, xwv kom kuv yuav nco txog kuv tej kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi rau noob neej, xwv kom kuv yuav tau tsa kuv txhais tes dua zaum ob los cawm kuv cov neeg, uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees;
- 2 Thiab, xwv kom kuv nco txog tej lus cog tseg uas kuv tau cog rau koj, Nifais, thiab rau koj txiv thiab, tias kuv yuav nco txog koj tej noob; thiab xwv kom tej lus ntawm koj tej noob yuav pib tawm ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj mus rau koj tej noob; thiab kuv tej lus yuav nrov ncha mus rau hauv lub qab ntuj no, ua ib tug hij rau kuv cov neeg, uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees;
- 3 Thiab vim kuv tej lus yuav nrov ncha mus—muaj coob tug ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav hais tias: Ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum! Ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum! Peb twb muaj ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum lawm, thiab muaj tsis taus Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum ntxiv lawm.
- 4 Tiam sis tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv hais li no: Au cov neeg ruam es, lawv yuav muaj ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum; thiab nws yuav pib tawm ntawm cov Neeg Yudais los, cov uas yog kuv haiv neeg sib khi lus txheej thaum ub. Thiab lawv tau ua tsaug dab tsi rau cov Neeg Yudais uas lawv tau txais phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum los ntawm lawv? Muaj tseeb tiag, Lwm Haiv Neeg ho xav li cas? Lawv puas nco qab txog tej teeb meem, thiab tej kev iab kev khwv, thiab tej kev mob kev nkeeg ntawm cov Neeg Yudais, thiab lawv tej kev rau siab ntseeg kuv, es thiaj coj tau txoj kev cawm seeg los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg?
- 5 Au nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg es, nej puas nco qab txog cov Neeg Yudais, uas yog kuv cov neeg sib khi lus txheej thaum ub? Nej yeej tsis nco qab txog hlo li; tiam sis nej tseem tau foom lawv thiab, thiab tau ntxub ntxaug lawv, thiab tsis tau nrhiav coj lawv rov qab los. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav rov qab muab ib puas yam tsav no los tso rau saum nej tej taub hau; rau qhov kuv tus uas yog tus Tswv tseem tsis tau hnov qab kuv haiv neeg.

2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

6 Nej cov neeg ruam, uas yuav hais tias: Ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum, peb twb tau ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum lawm, thiab peb tsis xav tau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum ntxiv lawm. Nej puas tau tau ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum uas tsis yog los ntawm cov Neeg Yudais los?

7 Nej tsis paub hais tias nws muaj ntau dua li ib haiv neeg no los? Nej tsis paub tias kuv, tus Tswv uas yog nej tus Vajtswv, tau tsim neeg txhua leej txhua tus, thiab kuv yeej nco txog lawv cov uas nyob saum tej koog pov txwv ntawm dej hiav txwv; thiab kuv kav puag saum ntuj thiab puag hauv ntiaj teb; thiab kuv coj kuv txoj lus los rau noob neej, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog rau txhua haiv neeg thooob plaws hauv ntiaj teb no los?

8 Yog li ntawd nej yws yws ua tus dab tsi, vim nej yuav tau txais kuv txoj lus ntau ntxiv? Nej puas paub hais tias cov lus tim khawv ntawm ob haiv neeg yog ib qhov lus tim khawv rau nej tias kuv yog Vajtswv, tias kuv nco txog ib haiv neeg tib yam li kuv nco txog lwm haiv neeg thiab? Yog li ntawd, kuv thiaj li hais tib co lus rau ib haiv neeg tib yam li hais rau lwm haiv neeg thiab. Thiab thaum uas ob haiv neeg yuav khiav ua ke cov lus tim khawv ntawm ob haiv neeg kuj yuav khiav ua ke tib yam nkaus li thiab.

9 Thiab kuv ua li no xwv kom kuv yuav ua tim khawv qhia tau mee rau coob tug tias nag hmo kuv zoo li cas, hnuv no, thiab ib txhis li kuv yeej yuav zoo li ntawd; thiab tias kuv hais kuv tej lus tawm tuaj mus raws li kuv lub siab nyiam. Thiab vim tias kuv tau hais ib lo lus lawm es nej yuav tsum tsis txhob xav hais tias kuv tsis muaj cuab kav hais lwm lo; vim kuv txoj hauj lwm tsis tau tas; thiab yuav tsis tau tas mus txog thaum tsis muaj neeg lawm, thiab txij li lub caij ntawd ntxiv mus thiab mus ib txhis li los yeej tsis txawj tas.

10 Yog li ntawd, vim tias nej muaj ib phau Vajlugkub Npaiv Npaum nej tsis txhob xav hais tias nws muaj tag nrho kuv tej lus; thiab nej tsis txhob xav hais tias kuv tsis tau kom muab sau ntau ntxiv.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

11 Vim kuv yuav txib txhua txhia tus neeg, tsis hais nyob sab hnub tuaj thiab sab hnub poob, thiab sab pem hauv ntuj los sis sab nram qab ntug, thiab nyob rau saum tej koog pov txwv ntawm dej hiav txwv, xwv kom lawv yuav sau tej lus uas kuv hais rau lawv; vim kuv yuav txiav txim rau neeg ntiaj teb tawm ntawm cov ntawv uas yuav raug muab sau cia, txhua txhia tus neeg raws li lawv tes hauj lwm, raws li tej uas tau muab sau tseg lawm.

12 Vim saib seb, kuv yuav hais rau cov Neeg Yudais thiab lawv yuav sau nws; thiab kuv kuj yuav hais rau cov Neeg Nifais thiab lawv yuav sau nws; thiab kuv kuj yuav hais rau lwm xeem neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, uas kuv tau koj khiav lawm, thiab lawv yuav sau nws; thiab kuv kuj yuav hais rau txhua txhia haiv neeg hauv ntiaj teb no thiab lawv yuav sau nws.

13 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias cov Neeg Yudais yuav tau muaj cov Neeg Nifais tej lus, thiab cov Neeg Nifais yuav tau muaj cov Neeg Yudais tej lus; thiab cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Yudais yuav tau muaj cov xeem neeg Ixayees uas tau ploj lawm tej lus; thiab Ixayees cov xeem neeg uas tau ploj lawm yuav tau muaj cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Yudais tej lus.

14 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias kuv cov neeg, cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, yuav raug sau los tsev los rau tej av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg; thiab kuv txoj lus kuj yuav raug sau los ua ib txog thiab. Thiab kuv yuav qhia rau lawv cov uas ntaus tawm tsam kuv txoj lus thiab tawm tsam kuv cov neeg, cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, paub tias kuv yog Vajtswv, thiab tias kuv tau sib khi lus nrog Anplaham tias kuv yuav nco qab ntsoov txog nws tej noob mus ib txhis li.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

2 Nifais 30

- 1 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov mi kwv tij uas kuv hluv es, kuv yuav hais rau nej; vim kuv, Nifais, yuav tsis cia nej xav tias nej yog neeg ncaj ncees dua li Lwm Haiv Neeg. Vim saib seb, tsuas yog nej yuav ceev Vajtswv tej lus txib xwb nej txhua tus thiaj yuav tsis raug piam sij tib yam; thiab vim tej lus uas tau hais lawm nej tsis txhob xav tias Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav raug puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 2 Vim saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias Lwm Haiv Neeg coob npaum li cas los yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim lawv yeej yog tus Tswv cov neeg sib khi lus; thiab cov Neeg Yudais coob npaum li cas los yog lawv tsis hloov siab lees txim lawv yuav raug ntiab khiav tawm mus; rau qhov tus Tswv yuav tsis sib khi lus nrog ib tug twg li tsuas yog nrog lawv cov uas hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg hauv nws tus Tub, tus uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv xwb.
- 3 Thiab nim no, kuv yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej me ntsis ntsig txog cov Neeg Yudais thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg. Vim tom qab phau ntawv uas kuv tau hais txog yuav tawm los, thiab raug muab sau rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab rov qab muab zwm cia rau tus Tswv dua lawm, yuav muaj coob leej uas yuav ntseeg tej lus uas tau muab sau; thiab lawv yuav koj tej ntawd tawm mus rau peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv uas seem tshuav.
- 4 Thiab tom qab ntawd peb tej noob uas seem tshuav yuav paub txog peb, seb peb tau tawm hauv Yeluxalees tuaj li cas, thiab tias lawv yog cov Neeg Yudais tej noob.
- 5 Thiab Yexus Khetos txoj moo zoo yuav raug tshaj mus rau lawv; yog li ntawd, lawv yuav raug txum tim rov qab paub txog lawv tej yawg koob, thiab kuj yuav paub txog Yexus Khetos, uas yog tej kev paub uas muaj nyob nrog lawv tej yawg koob.
- 6 Thiab tom qab ntawd lawv yuav zoo siab; vim lawv yuav paub tias nws yog ib txoj koob hmoov uas los ntawm Vajtswv txhais tes los rau lawv; thiab lawv tej kev tsaus ntuj uas plooj lawv qhov muag yuav pib poob ntawm lawv tej qhov muag mus; thiab yuav tsis muaj ntau tiam neeg uas yuav ploj tuag sai nyob rau hauv lawv, mus txog thaum uas lawv yuav ua tau neeg huv huv thiab ib cov neeg uas nyob kaj siab lug.

2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

- 7 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias cov Neeg Yudais uas tau tawg khiav ri niab kuj yuav pib ntseeg hauv Khetos thiab; thiab lawv yuav pib sib sau los ua ke rau saum tej npoo av; thiab coob npaum li cas los yog lawv yuav ntseeg hauv Khetos ces kuj yuav rais tau los mus ua ib cov neeg nyob kaj siab lug thiab.
- 8 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav pib ua nws txoj hauj lwm mus thoob plaws rau txhua txhia haiv neeg, txhua xeeb neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg sawv daws, kom koj tau txoj kev txum tim nws cov neeg rov qab los rau saum lub ntiaj teb.
- 9 Thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg pluag nrog txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab yuav txiav txim ncaj rau neeg ntiaj teb cov uas txo hwj chim. Thiab nws yuav xuas tus pas ntwm nws lub qhov ncauj nplawm lub ntiaj teb no; thiab muab cov pa ntwm nws daim di ncauj tua cov neeg phem.
- 10 Vim lub sij hawm yuav los sai kawg nkaus uas tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav ua kom muaj ib qhov kev sib faib loj heev nyob hauv lawv, thiab cov neeg phem yuav raug puas tsuaj; thiab nws yuav pab tseg nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, txawm yog yuav muaj tias, nws yuav tsum muab hluav taws los hlawv cov neeg phem kom puas tsuaj.
- 11 Thiab kev ncaj ncees yuav yog nws txoj siv sia ntwm nws duav, thiab kev mob siab rau ntseeg yuav yog nws txoj siv sia ntwm nws ntsag.
- 12 Thiab thaum ntawd tus hma yuav los nrog tus me nyuam yaj nyob; thiab tus tsov txaij yuav da pw nrog tus me nyuam tshis, thiab tus thav nyuj thiab tus thav tsov ntxhuav, thiab tej nyuj twm uas rog, los ua ke tag nrho, thiab ib tug me nyuam yaus yuav koj lawv kev.
- 13 Thiab tus nyuj thiab tus dais yuav noj zaub ua ke; lawv tej me nyuam mos yuav da pw ua ke; thiab tus tsov ntxhuav yuav noj tej quav nyab ib yam li tus heev nyuj.
- 14 Thiab tus me nyuam uas tseem noj mis yuav ua si ntwm lub qhov uas nab taug nyob, thiab tus me nyuam uas tso mis lawm yuav tso lawv tej tes rau saum nab raj kub sai lub qhov.
- 15 Lawv yuav tsis tom mob los sis tsis ua kom puas tsuaj nyob tag nrho saum kuv lub roob dawb huv; vim kev paub tus Tswv yuav nrov mus thoob plaws hauv lub ntiaj teb no, ib yam li cov dej npog puv nkaus dej hiav txwv.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

16 Yog li ntawd, txhua txhia yam ntawm txhua haiv neeg huv tib si yuav raug ua kom paub; muaj tseeb tiag, txhua yam tsav yuav raug ua kom paub rau noob neej.

17 Yuav tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas yuav zais tau nws tsuas muaj yuav raug muab qhib kom paub xwb; yuav tsis muaj ib txoj hauj lwm tsaus ntuj tsuas muaj yuav muab ua kom tawm hauv qhov pom kev xwb; thiab yuav tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas yuav raug muab zwm cia rau hauv ntiaj teb tsuas yog yuav muaj yuav muab qhib xwb.

18 Yog li ntawd, txhua txhia yam uas tau muab qhib rau noob neej paub yuav raug muab qhib nyob rau hnub ntawd; thiab tus Ntxwg Nyoog yuav tsis muaj hwj chim ntxias tau noob neej tej siab ntxiv lawm, yuav tsis muaj hwj chim mus ntev heev li. Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv tsum kuv tej lus hais.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

2 Nifais 31

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tsum kuv txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau nej, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub. Thiab kuv sau tsis tau tsuas sau tej xwm qho me ntsis cia xwb, tej uas kuv yeej paub tseeb tias yuav tsum muaj los; thiab kuv kuj tsuas sau kuv tus kwv Yakhaus tej lus qho me ntsis cia thiab xwb.
- 2 Yog li ntawd, tej yam uas kuv tau sau cia twb txaus kuv lawm, tsuas yog tshuav tej lus uas kuv yuav tsum hais txog txoj lus qhia qho me ntsis ntawm Khetos xwb; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav qhia rau nej meej meej, raws li txoj kev tseeb meej ntawm kuv txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej.
- 3 Vim kuv tus ntsuj plig zoo siab nyob hauv txoj kev tseeb meej; vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv ua hauv lwm rau noob neej zoo li no. Vim tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav muab qhov kaj rau txoj kev to taub; vim nws hais rau tib neeg raws li lawv yam lus, rau lawv txoj kev to taub.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej sawv daws nco qab ntsoov tias kuv tau hais rau nej lawm ntsig txog tus yaj saub ntawd uas tus Tswv tau qhia rau kuv, tus uas yuav muab Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj ua kev cai raus dej, tus uas yuav los ris neeg ntiaj teb tej kev txhaumus.
- 5 Thiab nim no, yog hais tias Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, nws twb yog ib tug dawb huv, es tseem yuav tau ua kev cai raus dej, kom tiav tau txhua txhia txoj kev ncaj ncees, Au ces, peb cov uas tsis dawb huv, haj yam tsim nyog rau peb los ua kev cai rau dej los pauj, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog los ntawm dej!
- 6 Thiab nim no, kuv yuav nug nej, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj tau ua txhua txhia txoj kev ncaj ncees tiav tau li cas thaum uas nws ua kev cai raus dej?
- 7 Nej puas paub tias nws yog ib tug dawb huv? Txawm tias nws yog ib tug dawb huv los, nws tseem ua qhia rau noob neej tias, raws li sab cev nqaj daim tawv nws tseem txo nws lub hwj chim rau Leej Txiv, thiab ua tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nws yuav mloog Leej Txiv lus los ntawm txoj kev uas coj raws li nws tej lus txib.
- 8 Yog li ntawd, tom qab uas nws tau ua kev cai raus dej tas lawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau nqis los rau saum nws zoo li ib tug nquab.

2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

- 9 Thiab qhov no qhia ntxiv dua rau noob neej txog qhov ncaj ntawm txoj kev, thiab txog qhov nqaim ntawm lub qhov rooj, uas lawv yuav tau nkag mus hauv, nws tau ua piv txwv rau lawv.
- 10 Thiab nws tau hais rau noob neej hais tias: Nej cia li lawv kuv qab. Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, peb puas yuav lawv tau Yexus qab yog hais tias peb tsis xav koj raws li Leej Txiv tej lus txib?
- 11 Thiab Leej Txiv tau hais tias: Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm kuv tus Tub uas kuv Hlub lub npe.
- 12 Thiab tus Tub lub suab kuj tau los rau kuv, hais tias: Nws tus uas ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv kuv lub npe, Leej Txiv yuav muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv rau nws, ib yam li rau kuv; yog li ntawd, cia li lawv kuv qab, thiab ua tej uas nej tau pom kuv ua lawm.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv paub tias yog nej yuav lawv Leej Tub qab, nrog tag nrho nej lub siab, tsis txhob lam ua txuj ua los sis lam dag rau Vajtswv, tiam sis mob siab ntso, hloov siab tso nej tej kev txhaum tseg, ua tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nej yeej txaus siab txais yuav Khetos lub npe rau saum nej, los ntawm txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej—muaj tseeb tiag, ntawm lawv ntshis nej tus Tswv thiab nej tus Cawm Seeg qab mus rau hauv dej, raws li nws txoj lus, saib seb, ces nej yuav tau txais tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; muaj tseeb tiag, ces txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej ntawm hluav taws thiab ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yuav los; thiab thaum ntawd nej yuav muaj peev xwm hais tau tej tim tswv yam lus, thiab qw qhuas rau Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv.
- 14 Tiam sis, saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, Leej Tub lub suab tau los rau kuv, hais tias: Tom qab uas nej tau hloov siab tso nej tej kev txog txhaum tseg lawm, thiab tau ua tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nej txaus siab koj raws li kuv tej lus txib, los ntawm kev ua kev cai raus dej, thiab tau txais txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm hluav taws thiab ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab muaj cuab kav hais tau ib yam lus tshiab, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tej tim tswv yam lus lawm, thiab tom qab uas tau txais ib puas yam tsav no lawm es nej tseem tsis lees yuav kuv, ces nws yuav zoo dua rau nej yog tias nej yeej tsis tau paub kuv li.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

- 15 Thiab kuv tau hnov ib lub suab los ntawm Leej Txiv los hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, tus kuv Hlub tej lus yeej muaj tseeb thiab txaus vam khom. Nws tus uas ntseeg kom mus txog thaum kawg, yuav raug cawm dim.
- 16 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv paub los ntawm tej no tias tsuas yog ib tug neeg yuav tsum ntseeg kom mus txog thaum kawg, ua raws li Vajtswv tus uas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob Leej Tub tus yam ntxwv xwb, nws yuav tsis raug cawm dim.
- 17 Yog li ntawd, cia li ua tej uas kuv tau qhia rau nej uas kuv tau pom tias nej tus Tswv thiab nej tus Txhiv Dim yuav ua; yog vim li no nws thiaj raug qhia los rau kuv paub, xwv kom nej yuav paub lub qhov rooj twg uas nej yuav tsum nkag. Vim lub qhov rooj uas nej yuav tsum nkag yog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej; thiab tom qab ntawd yuav los ib txoj kev zam nej tej kev txog kev txhaum los ntawm hluav taws thiab los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 18 Thiab thaum ntawd ces nej yuav nyob hauv txoj kev ti thiab nqaim no uas yuav coj mus rau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis; muaj tseeb tiag, nej tau nkag mus rau hauv los ntawm lub qhov rooj; nej tau uas raws nraim li Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub tej lus txib; thiab nej tau txais tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas ua tim khawv txog Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub, rau qhov uas ua tau kom cov lus cog tseg, uas nws tau cog tseg lawm tiav, tias yog nej nkag ntawm txoj kev yog mus ces nej yuav tau txais.
- 19 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, tom qab uas nej tau los rau hauv txoj kev ti thiab nqaim no lawm, kuv yuav nug tias seb txhua yam puas tau tiav? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, yeej tsis tau tiav; vim nej tsis tau los deb npaum li no yog tsis muaj Khetos txoj lus uas nrog txoj kev ntseeg nraim hauv nws, vam khom tag nrho rau tej hauj lwm zoo ntawm nws tus uas muaj hwj chim cawm tau.
- 20 Yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsum thawb mus lawm tom hauv ntej nrog txoj kev ntseeg khov kho hauv Khetos, muaj ib txoj kev cia siab uas ci kawg nkaus, thiab muaj ib txoj kev hlub ntawm Vajtswv thiab ntawm tib neeg sawv daws. Yog li ntawd, yog tias nej yuav thawb lawm tom hauv ntej, mloog nkaus rau Khetos tej lus, thiab tiv kom mus txog thaum kawg, saib seb, Leej Txiv hais li no tias: Nej yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

21 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, qhov no yog txoj kev; thiab yeej tsis muaj dua lwm txoj kev los sis lwm lub npe uas muaj nyob hauv qab ntuj no uas tib neeg yuav raug cawm dim tau mus nyob rau saum Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj. Thiab nim no, saib seb, qhov no yog Khetos txoj lus qhia, thiab thiaj yog tib txoj lus qhia uas tseeb ntawm Leej Txiv, thiab ntawm Leej Tub thiab ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas yog ib tug Vajtswv, uas tsis muaj qhov kawg li. Amees.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

2 Nifais 32

- 1 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv xav tias nej yuav xav ntsoov tej yam rau hauv nej nruab siab txog tej uas nej yuav tsum ua tom qab uas nej tau nkag mus rau hauv txoj kev. Tiam sis, saib seb, yog vim li cas nej thiaj xav ntsoov tej yam no rau hauv nej tej siab?
- 2 Nej puas tseem tsis nco qab tias kuv tau hais rau nej tias tom qab uas nej tau txais tus Vaj Ntsuj Plug Dawb Huv lawm nej yuav muaj cuab kav hais tau cov tim tswv yam lus no los? Thiab nim no, nej yuav hais cov tim tswv yam lus tau li cas tsuas yog los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv xwb?
- 3 Tej tim tswv hais lus los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim; yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj hais Khetos tej lus. Yog li ntawd, kuv tau hais rau nej tias, cia li noj Khetos tej lus; vim saib seb, Khetos tej lus yuav qhia nej txhua txhia yam tsav uas nej yuav tsum ua.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, nim no tom qab uas kuv tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, yog hais tias nej tsis to taub tej ntawd ces yeej vim yog nej tsis nug, thiab nej tsis khob; yog li ntawd, nej tsis tau raug coj los rau hauv qhov kaj, tiam sis yuav tsum raug piam sij nyob hauv qhov tsaus ntuj mus.
- 5 Vim saib seb, kuv hais rau nej ntxiv tias yog nej yuav nkag mus los ntawm txoj kev, thiab txais yuav tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, nws yuav qhia rau nej txhua txhia yam uas nej yuav tsum ua.
- 6 Saib seb, qhov no yog Khetos txoj lus qhia, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib txoj lus qhia ntxiv mus txog thaum uas nws yuav pub nws tus kheej ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv rau nej pom. Thiab thaum nws yuav pub nws tus kheej ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv rau nej pom, tej yam uas nws yuav hais rau nej nej yuav tsum mob siab ntso ua.
- 7 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, hais tsis tau ntxiv lawm; tus Ntsuj Plig cheem tsis pub kuv hais lawm, thiab kuv raug cia nyob quaj ntsuag vim yog txoj kev tsis ntseeg, thiab txoj kev phem, thiab txoj kev tsis lees yuav, thiab txoj kev tawv ncauj ntawm tib neeg; vim lawv yuav tsis nrhiav kev txawj ntse, thiab yeej tsis to taub txog txoj kev txawj ntse tseem ceeb, thaum uas muab rau lawv nyob hauv txoj kev tseeb meej twb meej li lo lus meej tau.

2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv paub tias nej tseem xav ntsoov nyob hauv nej tej siab; thiab nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav tsum hais txog tej yam no. Vim yog tias nej yuav mloog rau tus Ntsuj Plig uas qhia neeg thov Vajtswv ces nej yeej yuav paub tias nej yuav tsum thov Vajtswv; vim tus ntsuj plig phem yuav tsis qhia kom ib tug neeg thov Vajtswv li, tiam sis qhia nws tias kom nws yuav tsum tsis txhob thov Vajtswv.

9 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias nej yuav tsum thov Vajtswv txhua txhua lub sij hawm, thiab tsis txhob nkees; thiab nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua ib yam dab tsi rau tus Tswv tsuas yog ua ntej tshaj plaws nej yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm Khetos lub npe tso, xwv kom nws thiaj yuav tshwj saib tej uas nej ua ntawd rau nej, xwv kom tej uas nej ua ntawd yuav yog qhov zoo rau nej tej ntsuj plig.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

2 Nifais 33

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Nifais, tsis muaj cuab kav sau tas txhua yam tsav uas tau raug qhia nyob hauv kuv cov neeg; thiab kuv los tsis muaj zog hauv kev sau ntawv, li uas hais lus; vim thaum ib tug neeg hais lus los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim, lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yuav coj nws mus rau hauv noob neej tej siab.
- 2 Tiam sis saib seb, muaj coob leej uas tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv rau tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, xwv kom nws tsis muaj chaw nyob rau hauv lawv; yog li ntawd, lawv tau muab ntau yam pov tseg cov uas tau muab sau cia thiab suav tias yog tej yam uas tsis muaj nuj nqis.
- 3 Tiam sis kuv, Nifais, tau sau tej uas kuv tau sau, thiab kuv suav tias yog tej uas muaj nuj nqis heev, thiab qhov tseem ceeb rau kuv cov neeg. Vim kuv thov Vajtswv tsis tu ncu a li rau lawv thaum nruab hnuv, thiab hmo ntuj kuv tej kua muag tau ntxaum kuv lub tog hauv ncoo, vim yog lawv; thiab kuv quaj thov rau kuv tus Vajtswv nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab kuv paub tias nws yuav hnov kuv lub suab quaj.
- 4 Thiab kuv paub tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tshwj kuv tej kev thov Vajtswv tseg cia foom koob hmoov rau kuv cov neeg. Thiab tej lus uas kuv tau sau nyob hauv txoj kev qaug zog yuav raug ua kom muaj zog rau lawv; vim nws yuav yaum kom lawv ua zoo; nws qhia rau lawv paub txog lawv tej yawg koob; thiab nws qhia txog Yexus, thiab yaum lawv los ntseeg hauv nws, thiab ntseeg kom mus txog thaum kawg, uas yog txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.
- 5 Thiab nws hais hnyav tawm tsam kev txhaum, raws li txoj kev tseeb mee ntawm qhov tseeb; yog li ntawd, tsis muaj neeg yuav npau taws rau tej lus uas kuv tau sau cia lawm tsuas ntshai nws yog dab tus ntsuj plig li xwb.
- 6 Kuv qhuas hauv txoj kev tseeb mee; kuv qhuas hauv txoj kev tseeb; kuv qhuas hauv kuv tus Yexus, vim nws tau txhiv kuv tus ntsuj plig dim ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus.
- 7 Kuv muaj siab hlub pub rau kuv cov neeg, thiab muaj txoj kev ntseeg heev hauv Khetos tias nyaj kuv yuav ntsib ntau tus ntsuj plig uas tsis muaj qhov ceb nyob ntawm nws lub rooj txiav txim.

2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

- 8 Kuv muaj kev siab hlub rau cov Neeg Yudais—kuv hais tias cov Neeg Yudais, rau qhov kuv hais txog cov neeg uas kuv tawm ntawm lawv tuaj.
- 9 Kuv kuj muaj kev siab hlub rau Lwm Haiv Neeg. Tiam sis saib seb, tsis muaj ib yam no uas kuv cia siab rau tsuas yog lawv yuav rov sib raug zoo rau Khetos xwb, thiab nkag mus rau hauv lub rooj vag nqaim, thiab mus rau hauv txoj kev ti uas coj tau rau txoj sia, thiab rau siab ntso taug txoj kev mus kom txog thaum hnuv sim siab kawg.
- 10 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, thiab nrog rau cov Neeg Yudais, thiab tag nrho nej sawv daws uas nyob hauv qab ntuj no, cia li mloog tej lus no thiab ntseeg Khetos; thiab yog nej tsis ntseeg tej lus no los cia li ntseeg Khetos. Thiab yog nej yuav ntseeg Khetos ces nej yeej yuav ntseeg tej lus no, vim lawv yog Khetos tej lus, thiab nws tau muab lawv rau kuv; thiab lawv qhia neeg txhua tus tias kom lawv yuav tsum ua zoo.
- 11 Thiab yog tias lawv tsis yog Khetos tej lus, nej sim txiav txim seb—vim Khetos yuav qhia rau nej, nrog lub hwj chim thiab lub yeeb koob loj, hais tias lawv yog nws tej lus, thaum ntawm hnuv kawg; thiab nej thiab kuv yuav sawv tim ntsej tim muag ntawm nws lub rooj txiav txim; thiab nej yuav paub tias kuv twb tau raug nws txib kom sau tej xwm no, yog hais tias txhob suav kuv txoj kev qaug zog.
- 12 Thiab kuv thov Leej Txiv los ntawm Khetos lub npe kom peb coob leej, yog tias tsis tag nrho, yuav raug dim mus nyob hauv nws lub nceeg vaj hnuv tseem ceeb thiab hnuv kawg ntawd.
- 13 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, sawv daws txhua tus uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab tag nrho nej sawv daws hauv qab ntuj no, kuv hais rau nej ib yam li lub suab ntawm ib tug uas hu tawm hauv av tuaj: Mus zoo txog thaum hnuv tseem ceeb ntawd yuav los.
- 14 Thiab nej cov uas yuav tsis xav txais Vajtsvuv txoj kev zoo, thiab saib taus cov Neeg Yudais tej lus thiab, thiab kuv tej lus, thiab cov lus uas tseem yuav tawm ntawm Vajtsvuv tus Me Nyuam Yaj lub qhov ncauj los, saib seb, kuv hais ib los lus sib ncaim kav ib txhis rau nej, vim tej lus no yuav rau txim rau nej thaum txog hnuv kawg.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

15 Vim yam uas kuv zwm nyob hauv ntiaj teb no,
yuav raug coj los mus tawm tsam nej nyob rau
ntawm lub rooj txiav txim; vim tus Tswv tau txib kuv
li no, thiab kuv yuav tsum ua raws li. Ameen.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against
you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord com-
manded me, and I must obey. Amen.

Yakhauj Phau Ntawv

Nifais tus Kwv

Nws tej lus qhuab qhia rau nws cov kwv tij. Nws cam yeej ib tug txiv neej uas nrbiav ntseev Khetos txoj lus qhia. Ob peb lo lus txog Nifais cov neeg tej keeb kwm.

Yakhauj 1

- 1 Vim saib seb, tau muaj tias tsib caug thiab tsib xyoos tau dhau los lawm txij li lub sij hawm uas Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees; yog li ntawd, Nifais tau muab rau kuv, Yakhauj, ib txoj lus txib uas hais txog cov phiaj nqaim uas raug muab tej yam xwm no sau rau saud.
- 2 Thiab nws tau muab rau kuv, Yakhauj, ib txoj lus txib tias kuv yuav tsum muab ob peb yam ntawm tej xwm uas kuv tau xav hais tias muaj nuj nqis tshaj sau rau saum cov phiaj no; tias kuv yuav tsum sau me ntsis xwb, txog tej keeb kwm ntawm cov neeg no cov uas hu ua cov Neeg Nifais.
- 3 Vim nws tau hais tias nws cov neeg tej keeb kwm yuav tsum muab sau rau saum nws lwm cov phiaj, thiab tias kuv yuav tsum tsum kwm cov phiaj no thiab muab lawv cev nqis mus rau kuv tej xeeb leej xeeb ntawv, ib tiam dhau ib tiam.
- 4 Thiab yog tias muaj kev qhuab qhia uas dawb ceev, los sis kev tshwm sim uas tseem ceeb, los sis kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, kuv yuav tsum muab tej uas tseem ceeb ntawm tej no sau rau saum cov phiaj no, thiab sau txog lawv cov no ntau npaum li yuav sau tau, ua rau Khetos, thiab cia rau peb cov neeg.
- 5 Rau qhov vim yog txoj kev ntseeg thiab kev txhawj heev, nws yeej tau raug muab qhia tseeb rau wb txog wb cov neeg, tej xwm uas yuav tshwm sim rau lawv.
- 6 Thiab wb kuj tau muaj kev tshwm sim ntau, thiab tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau heev; yog li ntawd, wb tau paub txog Khetos thiab nws lub nceeg vaj lawm, uas yuav los.

The Book of Jacob

the Brother of Nephi

The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He foundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.

Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

- 7 Yog li ntawd wb thiaj tau rau siab ntso ua hauj lwm hauv wb cov neeg, xwv kom wb yuav yaum tau lawv los mus cuag Khetos, thiab los mus txais yuav Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, xwv kom lawv yuav nkag tau mus rau hauv nws qhov chaw so, tsam yuav muaj tej yam dab tsi uas nws yuav cog lus hauv nws txoj kev npau taws tias lawv yuav nkag tsis tau mus rau hauv, ib yam li lub caij sim siab thaum uas cov neeg Ixayees tseem nyob tom roob moj sab qhua es lawv tau npau taws tawm tsam tus Tswv.
- 8 Yog li ntawd, wb cia siab rau Vajtswv tias wb yuav muaj peev xwm yaum neeg txhua leej txhua tus kom tsis txhob ntseev siab tawm tsam Vajtswv, es ua kom nws npau taws, tiam sis kom neeg txhua leej txhua tus yuav ntseeg Khetos, thiab los ntsuas nws txoj kev tuag, thiab los kwv nws tus ntoo khaub lig thiab los nyiaj ntiaj teb txoj kev txaj muag; yog li ntawd, kuv, Yakhauj, tau txais ua kom kuv tus tij laugNifais txoj lus txib tiav.
- 9 Nim no Nifais pib laus lawm, thiab nws tau pom tias tsis ntev nws yuav tsum tuag; yog li ntawd, nws tau pleev roj tsa ib tug txiv neej los ua ib tug vaj ntxwv thiab los ua ib tug kav nws cov neeg nim no, raws li tej vaj ntxwv kev kav teb chaws.
- 10 Cov neeg tau hmov tshua Nifais heev kawg li, nws tau ua ib tug neeg tsum kwm zoo heev rau lawv, tau siv Lanpas rab ntaj tiv thaiv lawv, thiab tau ua hauj lwm tag nrho nws lub neej pab rau lawv txoj kev tau zoo nyob—
- 11 Yog li ntawd, cov neeg tau xav kom muaj chaw nco txog nws lub npe. Thiab leej twg uas yuav los kav tom qab uas dua nws lawm tau raug hu los ntawm cov neeg tias, Nifais thib ob, Nifais thib peb, thiab ntxiv mus, raws li tej vaj ntxwv kev kav teb chaws; thiab tej vaj ntxwv raug hu los ntawm cov neeg, lawv xav tau lub npe li cas los cia lawv.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais txawm tau tuag lawm.
- 13 Nim no cov neeg uas tsis yog cov Neeg Lamas ces yog cov Neeg Nifais; txawm li ntawd los, lawv raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, cov Neeg Yakhauj, cov Neeg Yauxej, cov Neeg Xaulas, cov Neeg Lamas, cov Neeg Lemu-ees, thiab cov Neeg Ixama-ees.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

- 14 Tiam sis kuv, Yakhouj, txij no mus yuav tsis saib lawv ib leeg txawv ib leeg los ntawm cov npe no, tiam sis kuv yuav hu cov uas nrhiav muab Nifais cov neeg ua kom puas tsuaj ua cov Neeg Lamas, thiab cov uas ua zoo rau Nifais kuv yuav hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, los sis Nifais cov neeg, raws li tej vaj ntxwv kev kav teb chaws.
- 15 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Nifais cov neeg, nyob hauv kev kav ntawm vaj ntxwv thib ob, tau pib muaj tej kev tawv hauv lawv tej siab, thiab tau koom tes yaum ua kev phem, zoo ib yam li Daviv thaum ub uas xav tau ntau tus poj niam thiab ntau tus niam yau, thiab kuj zoo ib yam li nws tus tub Xalaumoos.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tau pib nrhiav nyiaj nrhiav kub ntau, thiab tau pib ua neeg muab hlob tsawv hauv txoj kev khav txiv.
- 17 Yog li ntawd kuv, Yakhouj, tau muab cov lus no rau lawv thaum uas kuv tau qhia lawv nyob hauv lub tuam tsev, kuv tau xub xub txais hwj chim qhia los ntawm tus Tswv.
- 18 Vim kuv, Yakhouj, thiab kuv tus kwv Yauxej tau raug tshwj tseg tsa ua cov pov thawj thiab cov xib hwb ntawm cov neeg no, los ntawm Nifais txhais tes.
- 19 Thiab wb tau rau siab ua wb txoj hauj lwm rau tus Tswv, wb tau muab lub nra los ris, muab cov neeg tej kev txhaum tso rau saum wb taub hau yog hais tias wb tsis rau siab ntso muab Vajtswv txoj lus los qhia lawv; yog li ntawd, los ntawm txoj kev ua hauj lwm tag wb lub dag lub zog lawv cov ntshav yuav tsis los rau saum wb tej ris tsho; tsis yog li ntawd mas lawv cov ntshav yuav los rau saum wb tej ris tsho, thiab wb yuav tsis raug nrhiav pom tsis muaj qhov ceb nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Yakhauj 2

- 1 Tej lus uas Yakhauj, Nifais tus kwv, tau hais rau Nifais cov neeg tom qab uas Nifais tuag lawm:
- 2 Nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv, Yakhauj, raws li qhov ntiag tug hauj lwm uas kuv muaj los ntawm Vajtswv, los ua kom kuv txoj hauj lwm ruaj ntseg, thiab xwv kom kuv yuav tau ntxuav kuv tej ris tsho tawm ntawm nej tej kev txhaum, hnuv no kuv thiab tau tuaj rau hauv lub tuam tsev xwv kom kuv yuav tau tshaj Vajtswv txoj lus rau nej.
- 3 Thiab nej tus kheej yeej paub tias kuv yeej tau ib txwm rau siab ua kuv txoj hauj lwm uas kuv raug hu los ua; tiam sis hnuv no kuv txhawj nyuaj siab heev nrog rau txoj kev xav tau thiab mob siab pab nej tej ntsuj plig txoj kev tau zoo nyob dua li kuv tau ib txwm muaj.
- 4 Vim saib seb, los txog tav li no, nej tseem tau mloog tus Tswv txoj lus, uas kuv tau muab rau nej lawm.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, nej cia li mloog kuv, thiab paub tias los ntawm txoj kev pab ntawm tus Tsim ntuj thiab Tsim teb uas muaj hwj chim tag nrho kuv muaj cuab kav qhia nej txog nej tej kev xav, ua li cas nej ho pib ua kev txog txhaum, txoj kev txog txhaum uas pom txaus ntxub heev rau kuv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txaus ntxub rau Vajtswv.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, qhov ntawd ua rau kuv tus ntsuj plig nyuaj siab thiab ua rau kuv nkaum nrog txoj kev txaj muag rau ntawm tus Tsim kuv xub ntiag, xwv kom kuv yuav tsum ua tim khawv rau nej txog txoj kev phem ntawm nej tej siab.
- 7 Thiab qhov ntawd kuj ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav tsum siv tej lus tawv qhawv ntau txog nej, rau nej tej poj niam thiab me nyuam, coob leej uas muaj tej kev xav mos muag thiab coj dawb huv heev thiab zoo txaus nyiam rau Vajtswv, uas yog yam zoo rau Vajtswv;
- 8 Thiab kuv xav tias lawv tau txav los pem no los mloog Vajtswv txoj lus zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, txoj lus uas kho tau tej ntsuj plig raug mob kom zoo.

Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

9 Yog li ntawd, nws ua nra hnyav rau kuv tus ntsuj plig tias kuv yuav tsum raug yuam, vim txoj lus txib nruj uas kuv tau txais los ntawm Vajtswv, los ceeb toom nej raws li nej tej kev txhaum, los ua kom cov uas twb muaj mob lawm haj yam mob loj tuaj, tsis yog los nplij thiab kho lawv tej mob; thiab cov uas tsis tau raug mob, tsis yog yuav mloog Vajtswv txoj lus zoo tiam sis yuav muaj tej ntaj chob lawv tej siab thiab yuav mob lawv hlwb uas zoo.

10 Tiam sis, txawm tias txoj hauj lwmm ntawd hnyav heev, kuv yuav tsum tau ua raws li Vajtswv txoj lus txib nruj, thiab qhia rau nej txog nej tej kev phem thiab kev qias, nyob ntawm cov uas muaj siab huv huv xub ntiag, thiab ntawm cov uas siab tawg tag, thiab nyob ntawm Vajtswv tus uas muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus lub qhov muag uas pom tas ib puas tsav yam.

11 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav tsum qhia rau nej qhov tseeb raws li qhov tseeb meej ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus. Vim saib seb, thaum kuv thov tus Tswy, ces txoj lus tau los rau kuv li no, hais tias: Yakhauj, tag kis koj cia li nce mus rau hauv lub tuam tsev, thiab tshaj txoj lus uas kuv yuav muab rau koj rau cov neeg no.

12 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov mi kwv tij, qhov no yog txoj lus uas kuv qhia rau nej paub, tias nej muaj coob leej tau pib nrhiav kub, thiab nrhiav nyiaj, thiab nrhiav txhua txhia yam quav tooj quav hlau uas muaj nqis, uas nyob hauv thaj av no, uas yog thaj av uas cog lus rau nej thiab rau nej tej noob, uas muaj ntau yam siv tsis tas.

13 Thiab txhais tes pab tau luag nyav rau nej heev kawg li, nej thiaj tau txais txoj kev muaj nplua mias ntau heev; thiab vim nej ib txhia tau txais ntau dua li nej tej kwv tij nej tej siab thiaj tau khav txiv ntxhwb ntxhais, thiab ua caj dab tawv qhawv thiab tsa taub hau siab vim nej tej ris tsho uas kim kim, thiab nej tsim txom nej tej kwv tij vim nej xav hais tias nej zoo dua li lawv.

14 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi kwv tij, nej puas xav hais tias Vajtswv pom zoo nej ua tej no? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, nws yeej tsis pom zoo li. Tiam sis nws yuav rau txim rau nej, thiab yog hais tias nej tseem pheej ua tej no ntxiv nws tej kev txiav txim yuav tsum los rau nej sai kawg nkaus li.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

- 15 Au kheev lam nws qhia tau rau nej paub tias nws muaj peev xwm chob tau nej, thiab los ntawm nws lub qhov muag ib ntsia nej nws muaj peev xwm nplawm nej vau mus rau hauv av!
- 16 Au kheev lam nws ua kom nej dim ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj thiab txoj kev phem no. Thiab, Au kheev lam nej mloog rau nws tej lus txib, thiab tsis txhob cia txoj kev khav txiv ntawm nej tej siab no ua kom nej tej ntsuj plig puas tsuaj!
- 17 Xav txog nej tej kwv tij ib yam li nej xav txog nej tus kheej, thiab zeem kom paub txhua txhia tus thiab cia nej tej khoom pub dawb, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj ib yam li nej.
- 18 Tiam sis ua ntej uas nej nrhiav txoj kev nplua nuj, nej yuav tsum nrhiav Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj tso.
- 19 Thiab tom qab uas nej tau muaj ib txoj kev cia siab nyob hauv Khetos lawm nej yuav tau txais kev nplua nuj, yog nej nrhiav tej ntawd; thiab nej tsuas yuav nrhiav tej ntawd cia ua qhov zoo—muab ris tsho rau tej neeg liab qab hnav, thiab pub rau tej neeg tshaib plab noj, thiab tso tej neeg raug txhom kom dim, thiab pab tej neeg muaj mob thiab tej neeg txom nyem kom dim pa.
- 20 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi kwv tij, kuv tau hais rau nej ntsig txog txoj kev khav txiv; thiab nej cov uas tau ua rau nej tej neeg zej zog raug kev txom nyem, thiab tau tsim txom nws vim nej tau khav txiv nyob hauv nej tej siab, txog tej khoom uas Vajtswv tau muab rau nej, nej ho yuav hais tau li cas?
- 21 Nej tsis xav hais tias tej yam ntawd ntxim ntxub rau tus uas tau tsim sawv daws no los? Thiab ib tug neeg twg yeej muaj nuj nqis nyob ntawm nws lub qhov muag ib yam li lw m tus. Thiab neeg sawv daws puav leej los ntawm av los; nws tau tsim lawv los rau tib txoj hau kev, xwv kom lawv yuav coj nws tej kev cai thiab ua kom nws tau yeeb koob mus ib txhis.
- 22 Thiab nim no kuv xaus zaj lus hais rau nej txog txoj kev khav txiv no. Thiab yog tias kuv yuav tsis tau hais rau nej txog ib txoj kev txhaum uas phem dua, ces kuv lub siab yeej yuav zoo siab heev mus li vim yog nej.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

- 23 Tiam sis Vajtsv txoj lus hnyav rau kuv vim yog nej tej kev txhaum uas phem dua. Vim saib seb, tus Tswv hais li no: Cov neeg no tau pib loj zuj zus hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees; lawv tsis to taub tej vajlugkub li, vim lawv nrhiav kev rov zam rau lawv tus kheej rau tej kev ua txhaum kev sib daj sib deev, vim tej xwm uas tau muab sau tseg uas hais txog Daviv, thiab nws tus tub Xalaumoos.
- 24 Saib seb, Daviv thiab Xalaumoos yeej tau muaj ntau tus poj niam thiab ntau tus niam yau tiag, uas yog yam txaus ntxub rau kuv, tus Tswv hais li.
- 25 Yog li ntawm, tus Tswv hais tias, kuv tau coj cov neeg no tawm ntawm thaj av ntawm Yeluxalees mus, los ntawm kuv txhais caj npab lub hwj chim, xwv kom kuv yuav tsa tau ib ceg neeg ncaj ncees rau kuv los ntawm Yauxej caj ces.
- 26 Yog li ntawd, kuv, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv yuav tsis cia cov neeg no ua li lawv cov thaum ub lawm.
- 27 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov mi kwv tij, cia li hnov kuv tej lus, thiab cia li mloog tus Tswv txoj lus: Vim yuav tsum tsis muaj ib tug txiv neej twg hauv nej uas yuav muaj ntau dua li ib tug poj niam; thiab nws yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj ib tug niam yau hlo li;
- 28 Vim kuv, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtsv, zoo siab rau tej poj niam uas coj dawb huv. Thiab tej kev ua plees ua yi yog ib txoj kev qias rau kuv; Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li ntawd.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, cov neeg no yuav tsum coj kuv tej lus txib, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, los sis kuv yuav foom tsis zoo rau thaj av rau lawv.
- 30 Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais tias, yog tias kuv xav tsa ib cov noob rau kuv, kuv mam li txib kuv cov neeg; tsis yog li ntawd mas lawv yuav tsum cuab pob ntseg rau tej yam no.
- 31 Vim saib seb, kuv, tus Tswv, tau pom txoj kev nyuaj siab, thiab tau hnov kuv cov neeg tej ntxhais tej suab quaj ntsuag nyob hauv thaj av Yeluxalees, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nyob hauv txhua txhia thaj av ntawm kuv cov neeg, vim yog tej kev phem thiab kev qias ntawm lawv cov txiv.
- 32 Thiab Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais tias, Kuv yuav tsis cia kom cov neeg no tej ntxhais uas zoo, uas kuv tau coj tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj, muaj kev quaj tuaj rau kuv nkaug cov txiv neej ntawm kuv cov neeg, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

33 Vim lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob txhom coj kuv cov neeg tej ntxhais mus vim lawv tej siab mos siab muag, tsis yog li ntawd mas kuv yuav los xyuas lawv nrog ib qho kev foom uas mob heev, twb yog mus rau kev puas tsuaj; vim lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua txhaum kev sib daj sib deev, zoo li lawv cov thaum ub, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.

34 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov mi kwv tij, nej yeej paub tias tej lus txib no tau raug muab rau peb txiv, Lihais; yog li ntawd, nej yeej tau paub tej no ua ntej los lawm; thiab nej tau los rau hauv txoj kev rau txim loj; vim nej tau ua tej xwm no uas yog yam nej tsim nyog yuav tsum tsis txhob tau ua.

35 Saib seb, nej tau ua tej kev tsis ncaj ncees phem dua li cov Neeg Lamas, peb cov kwv tij. Nej tau ua rau nej tej poj niam uas siab zoo tej siab ntsws tawg tas, thiab tau ua tej kev cia siab ntawm nej tej me nyuam ploj lawm, vim yog nej tej yam ntxwv phem uas nej ua rau lawv; thiab lawv tej kev siab quaj nrov nce mus rau Vajtswv nkaug nej. Thiab vim Vajtswv txoj lus nruj, uas tau nqis los nkaug nej, ntau lub siab tau tuag lawm, tau raug chob ua mob tob heev.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

Yakhauj 3

- 1 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv, Yakhauj, yuav hais rau nej cov uas muaj lub siab huv huv. Ntsia ntsoov Vajtswv nrog nej tej siab ruaj khov kho, thiab thov rau nws nrog nej tej kev ntseeg heev, thiab nws yuav nplij nej thaum nej muaj kev txom nyem, thiab nws yuav ris nej tej teeb meem, thiab yuav xa txoj kev rau txim nqis los rau cov uas nrhiav nej txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 2 Au tag nrho nej cov uas muaj lub siab huv huv es, cia li tsa nej tej taub hau thiab txais yuav Vajtswv txoj lus uas zoo, thiab cia li niaj hnub nco ntsoov khaws nws txoj kev hlub; vim nej yuav tau zoo siab tas mus li, yog nej tej siab yuav nyob ruaj khov kho ntawm nws, mus ib txhis.
- 3 Tiam sis, kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nej cov uas tsis muaj lub siab huv huv, cov uas hnub no muaj kev vuab tsuab rau Vajtswv; vim tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li thaj av yuav raug foom tsis zoo rau nej; thiab cov Neeg Lamas, uas tsis vuab tsuab li nej, txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem raug foom ib qho kev foom uas mob heev, yuav los tsim kev kub ntxhov rau nej mus rau kev puas tsuaj.
- 4 Thiab lub caij nyoog yuav los sai sai, tias tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, yog tsis li ces lawv yuav txeeb tau thaj av uas yog nej qub txeeg qub teg, thiab tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav coj cov neeg ncaj ncees hauv nej tawm khiav mus.
- 5 Saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas uas yog nej cov kwv tij, cov uas nej ntxub vim yog lawv tej kev vuab tsuab thiab txoj kev foom uas tau los rau lawv tej tawv nqaij, tseem ncaj ncees dua li nej; vim lawv tseem tsis tau hnub qab Vajtswv txoj lus txib uas tau muab rau peb txiv lawm—tias lawv yuav tsum muaj tib tug poj niam xwb, thiab lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj niam yau hlo li, thiab yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj kev ua txhaum kev plees kev yi nyob hauv lawv li.
- 6 Thiab nim no, lawv tseem mob siab coj txoj lus txib no; yog li ntawd, vim txoj kev mloog lus no, es tau coj txoj lus txib no, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv yuav tsis ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, tiam sis yuav ua zoo rau lawv; thiab muaj ib hnub lawv yuav rais los mus ua tau ib cov neeg uas tau koob hmoov.

Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

- 7 Saib seb, lawv tej txiv hlub lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej poj niam hlub lawv tej txiv; thiab lawv tej txiv thiab lawv tej poj niam hlub lawv tej me nyuam; thiab lawv tej kev tsis ntseeg thiab lawv tej kev ntsub ntxaug nej twb yog vim lawv tej poj koob yawm txwv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees xwb; yog li ntawd nej ho yuav zoo dua li lawv npaum li cas, nyob ntawm nej tus Tsim Ntuj Tsim Teb uas muaj hwj chim lub qhov muag?
- 8 Au kuv cov mi kwv tij es, kuv ntshai tias tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim ntawm nej tej kev txog txhaum xwb, tsis yog li ntawd ces lawv tej tawv nqaij tseem yuav dawb dua li nej tej, thaum nej raug coj nrog lawv los mus rau ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj zaum.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, ib txoj lus txib uas kuv muab rau nej, uas yog Vajtswv txoj lus, tias nej yuav tsum tseg tsis txhob thuam lawv lawm vim lawv muaj tej tawv nqaij dub; thiab nej tsis txhob thuam lawv vim lawv tej kev vuab tsuab; tiam sis nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov nej tus kheej tej kev vuab tsuab, thiab nco ntsoov tias lawv tej kev vuab tsuab tau muaj los, yog vim lawv tej poj koob yawm txwv xwb.
- 10 Yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsum nco txog nej tej me nyuam, nej ua cas ua tau rau lawv tej siab ntsws nyuaj vim yog tus yam ntxwv uas nej tau ua rau lawv; thiab kuj yuav tsum nco qab ntsoov tias, vim yog nej tej kev vuab tsuab, nej yuav coj tau nej tej me nyuam mus rau kev puas tsuaj, thiab nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg lawv tej kev txog txhaum yuav raug poob rau saum nej tej taub hau.
- 11 Au kuv cov mi kwv tij es, cia li mloog rau kuv tej lus; tsa nej tej ntsuj plig sawv ua zoo; nchos nej tus kheej xwv kom nej yuav tsim ntawm tus dab ntub ntawm txoj kev tuag; thiab hle nej tus kheej kom xoob ncaim ntawm tej kev mob kev nkeeg ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus xwv kom nej yuav tsis rais los ua tau tej tim tswv rau tus dab, es raug muab pov mus rau hauv lub pas hluav taws uas muaj nplaim leej faj uas yog txoj kev tuag zaum ob.
- 12 Thiab nim no kuv, Yakhouj, tau hais ntau yam ntxiv rau Nifais cov neeg, tau ceeb toom lawv tawm tsam kev ua nkauj ua nraug thiab kev xav tau daj tau deev, thiab txhua txhia yam kev txog txhaum, qhia rau lawv txog tej nqi zog phem ntawm tej kev txog txhaum no.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

13 Thiab muaj ib feem puas ntawm tej uas tau tshwm sim rau cov neeg no, cov uas nim no tau pib muaj coob, tsis muaj peev xwm muab sau rau saum cov phiaj no; tiam sis muaj lawv ntau yam uas tau raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj dav, thiab lawv tej kev ua tsov ua rog, thiab lawv tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab lawv tej vaj ntxwv tej kev kav teb kav chaw.

14 Cov phiaj no hu ua Yakhauj cov phiaj, thiab cov phiaj no yog Nifais txhais tes ua. Thiab kuv tau xaus hais tej lus no.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

Yakhauj 4

- 1 Nim no saib seb, tau muaj tias kuv, Yakhauj, tau qhuab qhia lus ntau rau kuv cov neeg, (thiab kuv tsis muaj cuab kav sau tas tiam sis tsuas sau kuv tej lus qho me ntsis xwb, vim yog txoj kev nyuaj muab peb tej lus sau rau saum cov phiaj) thiab peb paub tias tej yam uas peb sau rau saum cov phiaj yuav tsum nyob mus ntxiv;
- 2 Tiam sis tej yam dab tsi los xij yog peb muab sau rau saum ib yam dab tsi yeej yuav tsum piam sij thiab ploj mus tsuas yog nyob rau saum cov phiaj xwb thiaj li yuav nyob; tiam sis peb muaj cuab kav sau qho yuav nyuag lo lus rau saum cov phiaj, kom yuav muab tau rau peb tej me nyuam, thiab kuj rau peb cov mi kwv tij uas peb hlub, ib qho kev paub me me txog peb, los sis txog lawv tej poj koob yawm txwv—
- 3 Nim no peb zoo siab heev nyob rau hauv tej no; thiab peb rau siab ntso ua hauv lwm los sau tej lus no rau saum cov phiaj, cia siab ntsoov tias peb cov mi kwv tij uas peb hlub thiab peb tej me nyuam yuav tau txais cov lus no nrog tej siab ua tsaug ntxaws, thiab xyuas tej ntawd xwv kom lawv yuav kawm nrog txoj kev xyiv fab tsis yog txoj kev nyuaj siab, thiab tsis thuam txog lawv thawj nkawg niam txiv.
- 4 Vim, vim yog lub ntsiab no peb thiaj tau sau tej yam no, xwv kom lawv yuav paub tias peb tau paub txog Khetos, thiab peb tau muaj kev cia siab rau nws lub yeeb koob ntau pua xyoo ua ntej nws yuav nqis los; thiab tsis yog peb tus kheej tau muaj kev cia siab txog nws lub yeeb koob xwb, tiam sis tag nrho cov yaj saub dawb huv uas nyob ua ntej peb thiab.
- 5 Saib seb, lawv tau ntseeg Khetos thiab tau teev tiam Leej Txiv nyob hauv nws lub npe, thiab peb los kuj teev tiam Leej Txiv nyob hauv nws lub npe thiab. Thiab yog vim lub ntsiab no peb thiaj coj Mauxes txoj kev cai, tej no tau taw ntsoov peb tej ntsuj plig rau nws; thiab yog vim li no txoj kev cai raug ua dawb huv rau peb rau txoj kev ncaj ncees, twb zoo ib yam li Anplaham tau muaj nyob hauv hav zoov kom ua raws li Vajtswv tej kev cai ntawm kev muab nws tus tub Ixaj tua txi, uas yog ib lub cim zoo li ntawm Vajtswv thiab nws Tib Leeg Tub.

Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Yog li ntawd, peb nrhiav tej yaj saub, thiab peb muaj ntau yam kev tshwm sim thiab muaj tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; thiab vim tau muaj tag nrho tej lus tim khawv no peb tau txais ib txoj kev cia siab, thiab peb txoj kev ntseeg yuav rais los mus tsis tshee, kawg tias peb muaj cuab kav tuav Yexus lub npe hais thiab tej ntoo, los sis tej roob, los sis tej nplaim dej hiav txwv puav leej mloog peb lus.

7 Txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv qhia rau peb txog peb txoj kev qaug zog xwv kom peb yuav paub tias twb yog los ntawm nws txoj kev zoo, thiab nws txoj kev los nrog noob neej nyob, es peb thiaj muaj hwj chim ua tej yam xwm no.

8 Saib seb, tus Tswv tej hauj lwm yog tej uas loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob. Nws tej txuj ci tib neeg yuav nrhiav tsis tau; thiab tib neeg yeej tsis muaj peev xwm nrhiav tau tag nrho nws tej kev li. Thiab tsis muaj ib tug tib neeg twg yuav paub txog nws tej kev tsuas yog yuav raug qhia rau nws xwb; yog li ntawd, cov kwv tij, txhob muab Vajtswv tej kev tshwm sim saib tsis muaj nqis.

9 Vim saib seb, los ntawm nws txoj lus lub hwj chim tib neeg tau los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb, lub ntiaj teb uas yog raug tsim los ntawm nws txoj lus lub hwj chim. Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias Vajtswv muaj peev xwm hais lus es cia li muaj tau lub ntiaj teb tuaj, thiab hais lus es cia li tsim muaj tib neeg, Au ces ua li cas thiaj li yuav tsis muaj cuab kav txib lub ntiaj teb, los sis txib nws tej tes tej hauj lwm nyob saum lub ntiaj teb, raws li nws lub siab xav thiab siab nyiam?

10 Yog li ntawd, cov kwv tij, tsis txhob nrhiav yuav qhuab ntuas tus Tswv, tiam sis txais lus qhuab ntuas los ntawm nws txhais tes. Vim saib seb, nej tus kheej twb paub hais tias nws qhuab ntuas ntawm txoj kev txawj ntse, thiab ntawm txoj kev txim lij, thiab ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua, rau saum nws tej hauj lwm tag nrho.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

11 Yog li ntawd, cov kwv tij uas hlub tshua, cia li los nrog nws sib raug zoo los ntawm Khetos, uas yog nws Tib Leeg Tub txoj kev theej txhoj, thiab nej yuav tau txais ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los raws li lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los uas nyob hauv Khetos, thiab cia muab rau Vajtswv yam li Khetos thawj thawj cov txiv ntoo, uas muaj kev ntseeg, thiab tau txais ib txoj kev cia siab zoo ntawm lub yeeb koob uas nyob hauv nws ua ntej nws los yug ua neeg.

12 Thiab nim no, cov uas hlub tshua, txhob xav tsis thoob tias cas kuv qhia tej xwm no rau nej; yog vim li cas thiaj yuav tsis qhia txog Khetos txoj kev theej txhoj, thiab txais yuav txoj kev paub meej tag nrho ntawm nws, zoo ib yam li txais yuav txoj kev paub ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los thiab lub ntiaj teb uas tseem yuav los?

13 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, nws tus uas yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, cia nws yeej meem qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej raws li tib neeg txoj kev to taub; vim tus Ntsuj Plig hais qhov tseeb thiab tsis dag. Yog li ntawd, nws hais txog tej uas lawv yeej muaj tiag, thiab txog tej uas lawv yeej yuav muaj tiag; yog li ntawd, tej yam no tau raug ua rau peb paub tseeb, rau peb tej ntsuj plig txoj kev cawm seej. Tiam sis saib seb, peb tsis yog cov uas ua tim khawv txog tej xwm no xwb; vim Vajtswv kuj tau hais tej xwm no rau cov yaj saub txheej thaum ub lawm thiab.

14 Tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Yudais tau yog ib cov neeg tawv ncauj; thiab lawv tau thuam tej lus ntawm qhov tseeb meej, thiab tau tua tej yaj saub, thiab tau nrhiav tej yam uas lawv tsis to taub. Yog li ntawd, vim yog lawv txoj kev dig muag, uas yog txoj kev dig muag uas tau los ntawm txoj kev uas pheej nrhiav tej uas dhau kev cai, lawv yuav tsum raug poob; vim Vajtswv tau muab nws txoj kev tseeb meej rho tawm ntawm lawv mus lawm, thiab tau coj ntau yam uas tsis yooj yim to taub los rau lawv, vim yog lawv xav tau tej ntawd. Thiab vim yog lawv pheej xav tau tej ntawd Vajtswv thiaj tau ua tej ntawd, xwv kom lawv yuav dawm ko taw.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

15 Thiab nim no kuv, Yakhauj, tau raug tus Ntsuj Plig
coj ntxiv mus rau txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los
yav tom ntej; vim kuv paub los ntawm tej kev ua hauj
lwm ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv, tias los
ntawm cov Neeg Yudais txoj kev poob rau kev
txhaum lawv yuav tsis kam lees yuav lub pob zeb uas
lawv yuav tsa tau thiab kom muaj qhov chaw tiv
thawj ruaj khov uas tsis txob tsis txhawj.

16 Tiam sis saib seb, raws li hauv vajlugkub, lub pob
zeb no yuav rais los mus ua lub tseem ceeb, thiab lub
kawg, thiab yog tib qhov chaw tiv thawj uas ruaj tiag
xwb, uas yog qhov chaw uas cov Neeg Yudais tsa tau
rau saud.

17 Thiab nim no, cov uas kuv hlub tshua, lawv cov no
yuav ua tau li cas, tom qab uas tau tsis lees yuav qhov
chaw tiv thawj ruaj, muaj peev xwm tsa lawv rau
saum nws, xwv kom nws yuav rais los mus ua lub
taub hau ntawm lawv tej ces kaum?

18 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv yeej
yuav tsis zais txoj txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog no
rau nej li; ntshe ho yog muaj tej yam dab tsi ua rau
kuv txoj kev ruaj kho uas nyob hauv tus Ntsuj Plig
tshee hnyo, thiab dawm kuv ko taw vim yog kuv txoj
kev txhawj nej xwb.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto
prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the
Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the
Jews they will reject the stone upon which they
might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone
shall become the great, and the last, and the only
sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that
these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can
ever build upon it, that it may become the head of
their corner?

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this
mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get
shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble
because of my over anxiety for you.

Yakhauj 5

- 1 Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, nej tsis nco qab tias nej tau nyem tus yaj saub Xinos tej lus lawm los, uas nws tau hais rau tsev neeg Ixayees, hais li no:
- 2 Cia li mloog, Au nej cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees es, thiab cia li mloog kuv, tus uas yog tus Tswv ib tug yaj saub, tej lus.
- 3 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv hais li no tias, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, kuv yuav muab nej piv rau li ib tsob ntoo ntseej nyeg, uas ib tug txiv neej tau muab thiab coj mus tu nyob hauv nws lub vaj txiv hmab; thiab nws tau loj tuaj, thiab ciaj los mus ua tsob ntoo txwj ntoo laus, thiab tau pib lwj mus.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tswv vaj txiv hmab tau tawm mus xyuas, thiab nws tau pom tias nws tsob ntoo ntseej tau pib lwj lawm; thiab nws tau hais tias: Kuv yuav muab nws yim, thiab khawb av ncig nws, thiab ywg dej rau nws, xwv kom nws yuav hlaw tau tej ceg mos thiab zooj tuaj, thiab nws yuav tsis tuag.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau mus yim tsob ntoo, thiab tau khawb av ncig nws, thiab tau mus ywg dej rau nws raws li nws tej lus.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau ntau hnuv lawm tsob ntoo ntseej tau pib hlaw ob peb tug ceg mos thiab zooj tuaj; tiam sis saib seb, lub ntsis ntawm tsob ntoo ho tau pib yuav tuag mus.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tswv ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab tau pom tsob ntoo, thiab nws tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe tias: Nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab heev uas kuv yuav xiam tsob ntoo no mus; yog li ntawd, cia li mus thiab mus rho ib tsob ntoo ntseej qus tej ceg, thiab coj lawv los rau kuv ntawm no; thiab peb yuav rho tej ceg nyeg uas tab tom yuav qhuav mus no pov tseg, thiab peb yuav muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub xwv kom lawv yuav raug kub hnyiab mus.
- 8 Thiab saib seb, tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab hais tias, kuv muab ntau tus ntawm cov ceg uas mos thiab zooj no coj mus, thiab kuv yuav coj lawv mus txuas rau qhov twg los xij uas kuv xav coj mus txuas; thiab nws tsis ua li cas txawm tias tsob ntoo no tej cag yuav piam sij mus, nyaj kuv yuav tshwj tau tej txiv ntawm tsob ntoo no rau kuv tus kheej; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav coj tej ceg uas mos thiab zooj no, thiab kuv yuav muab lawv coj mus txuas rau qhov twg los xij uas kuv xav coj mus txuas.

Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

- 9 Koj cia li koj tej ceg ntawm tsob ntoo ntseej qus, thiab koj lawv los txuas rau hauv, los pauv cov ceg nyeg tej qub chaw; thiab cov no uas yog cov uas kuv tau muab txiav pov tseg lawm kuv yuav muab pov rau hauv qhov cub thiab muab lawv hlavy, xwv kom lawv thiaj li yuav tsis sw tej av ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab ntawd tus tub qhe tau ua raws nkaus li tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tej lus, thiab tau muab tej ceg ntawm tsob ntoo ntseej qus koj los txuas rau.
- 11 Thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais tias cov ntoo yuav tsum raug khawb av los npoog, thiab raug yim, thiab raug ywg dej rau, hais rau nws tus tub qhe hais tias: Nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab heev uas yuav xiam tsob ntoo no mus; yog li ntawd kom tej zaum kuv yuav tshwj tau tsob ntoo no tej cag kom lawv txhob piam sij, xwv kom kuv yuav tshwj tau lawv tseg cia rau kuv tus kheej, kuv tau ua tej yam no.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, koj cia li mus; saib xyuas tsob ntoo, thiab tu nws, raws li kuv tej lus.
- 13 Thiab cov ceg no kuv yuav muab koj mus tso rau qhov chaw uas qis tshaj plaws ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, qhov twg los nyob ntawm kuv, nws tsis ua li cas rau koj; thiab kuv ua li no xwv kom kuv yuav tseg tau tej ceg nyeg ntawm tsob ntoo rau kuv tus kheej; thiab xwv kom kuv thiaj yuav tseg tau tsob ntoo tej txiv cia rau kuv tus kheej cia rau lub caij yuav los; vim nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab heev uas kuv yuav xiam tsob ntoo thiab tej txiv ntawm tsob ntoo no mus.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab ntawd tau ncaim mus lawm, thiab tau koj tej ceg qub ntawm tsob ntoo ntseej nyeg mus zais rau hauv tej chaw uas qis tshaj plaws ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab, muab ib txhia koj mus tso rau ib qho thiab muab ib txhia koj mus tso rau lwm qhov, raws li nws lub siab xav thiab siab nyiam.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias ib lub sij hawm ntev tau dhau mus lawm, thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe hais tias: Los, cia wb nqis mus rau hauv lub vaj txiv hmab, xwv kom wb thiaj tau ua hauj lwm nyob rau hauv lub vaj txiv hmab.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab, thiab nws tus tub qhe thiab, tau nqis mus rau hauv lub vaj txiv hmab mus ua hauj lwj. Thiab tau muaj tias tus tub qhe tau hais rau nws tus tswv hais tias: Saib seb, ntsia ntawm no; saib tsob ntoo seb.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau ntsia thiab tau pom tsob ntoo uas tau muab cov ceg ntseej qus koj los txuas rau; thiab nws tau pib loj hlob tuaj thiab tau pib txi txiv. Thiab nws tau pom tias tsob ntoo loj zoo nkauj; thiab cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo los kuj zoo ib yam li cov txiv ib txwm txi.
- 18 Thiab nws tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Saib seb, tej ceg ntawm tsob ntoo qus tau muaj peev xwm nqus tau dej los ntawm tsob ntoo no tej cag, uas tej cag ntawd tau koj dag zog ntau los; thiab vim yog lub dag zog ntau ntawm tsob ntoo no tej cag, cov ceg qus thiaj tau txi txiv ntoo nyeg. Nim no, yog hais tias wb tsis tau muab cov ceg no los txuas rau, ces ntshe tsob ntoo ntawd twb raug piam sij lawm. Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv yuav khaws tau txiv ntoo ntau cia, uas yog tsob ntoo no tau txi; thiab cov txiv ntawd kuv yuav tseg cia rau kuv tus kheej rau lub caij yuav los.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Los, cia wb mus rau hauv tej qhov chaw uas qis tshaj plaws ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab saib seb tej ceg nyeg ntawm tsob ntoo puas yuav tsis tau txi txiv ntau ib yam thiab, xwv kom kuv yuav khaws tau tsob ntoo ntawd tej txiv cia rau kuv tus kheej rau lub caij yuav los.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau mus rau ntawm qhov uas tus tswv tau muab tej ceg nyeg ntawm tsob ntoo zais lawm, thiab nws tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Ntsia cov no seb; thiab tus tub qhe tau pom thawj thawj ceg tias nws tau txi txiv ntau; thiab nws kuj tau pom tias yog ib qho uas zoo. Thiab nws hais rau tus tub qhe tias: De cov txiv ntawm thawj ceg ko, thiab khaws nws cia rau lub caij yuav los, xwv kom kuv yuav tseg tau nws cia rau kuv tus kheej; vim saib seb, nws hais tias, kuv tau tu nws los ntev npaum li no lawm, thiab nws tau txi tau txiv ntau.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tub qhe hais rau nws tus tswv tias: Yog vim li cas koj thiaj tuaj cog tsob ntoo no rau ntawm no los sis tus ceg ntawm tsob ntoo? Vim saib seb, nws yog qhov chaw uas phem tshaj plaws nyob rau hauv koj lub vaj txiv hmab tag nrho huv tib si li.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

- 22 Thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab hais rau nws tias: Tsis txhob ntuas kuv; kuv yeej paub lawm tias nws yog ib thaj av uas tsis zoo; yog li ntawd, kuv hais rau koj tias, kuv tau tu nws ntev npaum li no, thiab koj pom tias nws tau txi txiv ntau.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe tias: Ntsia ntawm no seb; saib seb kuv kuj tau cog dua lwm tus ceg ntawm tsob ntoo thiab; thiab koj paub tias thaj av no haj yam tsis zoo npaum li thawj thaj. Tiam sis, saib tsob ntoo seb kuv tau tu nws ntev npaum li no, thiab nws tau txi txiv ntau heev; yog li ntawd, cia li sau tej txiv no, thiab khaws nws cia rau lub caij yuav los, xwv kom kuv yuav tseg tau tej txiv ntawd rau kuv tus kheej.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab rov qab hais rau nws tus tub qhe dua tias: Ntsia ntawm no seb, thiab saib dua lwm tus ceg thiab, uas kuv tau cog; saib seb kuv kuj tau tu nws tib yam thiab, thiab nws tau txi txiv.
- 25 Thiab nws tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Ntsia ntawm no thiab saib tus ceg uas yog tus kawg. Saib seb, tus ceg no kuv tau muab cog rau hauv qhov av zoo; thiab kuv tau tu nws ntev npaum li no; thiab tsuas yog ib ceg ntawm tsob ntoo thiaj tau txi txiv nyeg xwb, thiab lwm ces tau txi txiv qus; saib seb, kuv tau tu tsob ntoo no ib yam nkaus li lwm tsob.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Cia li muab tej ceg uas tsis txi tej txiv zoo txiav, thiab muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub.
- 27 Tiam sis saib seb, tus tub qhe tau hais rau nws tias: Cia wb muab nws yim, thiab khawb av los npoog nws, thiab tu nws kom ib nyuag ntev ntxiv, xwv tej zaum nws yuav txi tau tej txiv zoo rau koj, xwv kom koj yuav khaws tau nws cia rau lub caij yuav los.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab thiab tus tub qhe ntawm tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab txawm tau tu tag nrho tej txiv ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab huv tib si.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias ib lub sij hawm ntev tau dhau mus lawm, thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe hais tias: Los, cia wb nqis mus rau hauv lub vaj txiv hmab, xwv kom wb thiaj tau ua hauj lwm hauv lub vaj txiv hmab dua. Vim saib seb, lub caij lub nyoog los txog ze lawm, thiab qhov kawg yuav los sai sai; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav tsum tau khaws tej txiv ntoo, cia rau lub caij yuav los, rau kuv tus kheej.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab thiab tus tub qhe txawm tau nqis mus rau hauv lub vaj txiv hmab; thiab nkawd tau los mus rau ntawm tsob ntoo uas tej ceg nyeg tau lov lawm, thiab tau muab tej ceg qus koj los txuas rau; thiab saib seb txhua txhia yam txiv tau txi ncw hna duav nkaus tsob ntoo.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau saj cov txiv, txhua txhia mus li nws thib, thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais tias: Saib seb wb tau tu tsob ntoo no ntev npaum li no, thiab kuv tau khaws tej txiv ntau cia rau kuv tus kheej rau lub caij yuav los.
- 32 Tiam sis saib seb, zaum no nws tau txi txiv ntau heev, thiab nws tsis muaj ib lub uas yuav zoo li. Thiab saib seb, muaj txhua txhia yam txiv phem; thiab nws pab tsis tau kuv dab tsi li, txawm tias wb tau muab zog tag nrho rau; thiab nim no nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav xiam tsob ntoo no mus.
- 33 Thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Wb yuav ua li cas rau tsob ntoo, xwv kom kuv yuav rov qab tseg tau cov txiv zoo ntawm tsob ntoo rau kuv tus kheej dua?
- 34 Thiab tus tub qhe tau hais rau nws tus tswv tias: Saib seb, vim koj tau muab tej ceg ntoo ntseej qus koj los txuas rau lawv tau pab tej cag, es lawv thiaj ciaj sia nyob thiab lawv thiaj tsis tau piam sij; yog li ntawd koj pom hais tias lawv tseem zoo.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe tias: Tsob ntoo pab tsis tau kuv dab tsi li, thiab tej cag ntawd los pab tsis tau kuv tus dab tsi yog tias nws yuav txi tej txiv phem xwb.
- 36 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv paub tias tej cag yeej zoo, thiab kuv tau tseg lawv cia rau lub ntsiab ntawm kuv tus kheej; thiab vim lawv muaj zog heev lawv thiaj tau txi txiv zoo, los ntawm tej ceg qus.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

37 Tiam sis saib seb, tej ceg qus tau loj hlob tuaj thiab tau ntxoov tej cag ntawm tsob ntoo; thiab vim tias tej ceg qus tau ntxoov tej cag ntawm tsob ntoo lawm nws thiaj tau txi tej txiv phem ntau; thiab vim tias nws tau txi tej txiv phem ntau heev koj pom tias nws pib yuav piam sij mus; thiab tsis ntev nws yuav rais los mus siav, xwv kom nws yuav raug muab pov rau hauv qhov cub, tsuas yog tias wb yuav tsum ua tej yam dab tsi rau nws kom cawm tau nws tseg xwb.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau nws tus tub qhe tias: Cia wb nqis mus rau hauv qhov chaw uas qis tshaj plaws nyob hauv lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab saib seb tej ceg nyeg puas txi tej txiv phem thiab.

39 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau nqis mus rau hauv qhov chaw uas qis tshaj plaws hauv lub vaj txiv hmab. Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd pom tias tej txiv ntawm tej ceg nyeg kuj tau rais los mus tsis zoo lawm thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, thawj cov ceg thiab cov ceg thib ob thiab cov ceg nav thiab; thiab lawv tag nrho tau rais los mus kis mob huv tib si lawm.

40 Thiab cov txiv ntoo qus ntawm tus ceg nav tau kov yeej tus ceg uas tau txi txiv zoo ntawm tsob ntoo, twb mus txog thaum uas tus ceg tau qhuav mus thiab tuag lawm.

41 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau los kua muag, thiab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Kuv yuav tsim nyog tau ua dab tsi rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab ntxiv?

42 Saib seb, kuv paub lawm tias tag nrho tej txiv hauv lub vaj txiv hmab tau rais los mus tsis zoo tas lawm, tsuas tshuav cov no xwb. Thiab nim no cov no uas yog cov uas twb tau txi cov txiv zoo ib zaug lawm los kuj tau rais los mus tsis zoo lawm thiab; thiab nim no txhua txhia tsob ntoo uas nyob hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab tsis zoo ua tus dab tsi lawm tsuas yog yuav raug muab ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub lawm xwb.

43 Thiab saib seb tsob ntoo kawg no, uas tej ceg tau qhuav mus lawm, kuv tau muab cog rau hauv ib qho av uas zoo; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog qhov chaw uas kuv paub tias zoo tshaj dua li lwmm qhov av uas nyob hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.

44 Thiab koj tau pom tias kuv kuj tau ntov tej ntoo uas ntxoov thaj av no, xwv kom kuv yuav tau muab tsob ntoo no cog rau ntawm qhov no.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

45 Thiab koj tau pom tias muaj ib txhia ceg ntawd tau txi tej txiv zoo, thiab muaj ib txhia ntawd ho txi tej txiv qus; thiab vim tias kuv tsis tau txiav tej ceg ntawd thiab tsis tau muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub, saib seb, lawv tau ntxoov tej ceg uas zoo ua rau lawv tau qhuav mus lawm.

46 Thiab nim no, saib seb, txawm tias tag nrho tej uas wb tau tu rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab los, tej ntoo ntawd tseem tau rais los mus tsis zoo lawm thiab, ces lawv tau txi tej txiv uas tsis zoo; thiab kuv tau cia siab tias yuav tau cov no tseg, cia rau kuv tus kheej rau lub caij yuav los. Tiam sis, saib seb, lawv tau rais los zoo li tej ntoo ntseej qus, thiab lawv tsis muaj nqis dab tsi lawm tsuas yog yuav raug muab txiav kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub xwb; thiab qhov ntawd ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav tau xiam lawv mus.

47 Tiam sis kuv yuav tsim nyog tau ua dab tsi ntxiv hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab? Puas yog kuv tau tub nkeeg kuv txhais tes, es tsis tau tu lub vaj ntawd? Tsis yog li ntawd, kuv twb tau tu nws, thiab kuv tau khawb av ncig nws, thiab kuv tau yim nws, thiab kuv tau muab chiv rau nws lawm; thiab kuv tau xyab kuv txhais tes yuav luag tas hnuv rau, thiab qhov kawg twb los txog ze lawm. Thiab nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav tau muab tag nrho cov ntoo hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab ntov pov tseg, thiab muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub xwv kom lawv yuav raug kub hnyiab mus. Leej twg yog tus uas tau ua rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab kis tau kab mob kev nkeeg?

48 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tub qhe tau hais rau nws tus Tswv tias: Puas yog txoj kev khav theeb ntawm koj lub vaj txiv hmab—tsis yog tej ceg ntawd tau hnyav yeej tej cag uas zoo lawm los? Thiab vim yog tej ceg tau hnyav yeej tej cag ntawd, saib seb lawv tau hlob nrawm dua li tej cag lub zog, tau muab tej zog mus rau lawv tus kheej. Saib seb, kuv hais tias, qhov no tsis yog qhov uas ua rau tej ntoo hauv koj lub vaj txiv hmab tau rais los kis mob tas los?

49 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Cia wb mus thiab muab cov ntoo ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab ntov kom vau thiab muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub, xwv kom lawv thiaj li yuav tsis hnyav tej av hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, vim kuv twb tau ua ib puas tsav yam lawm. Kuv tseem yuav ua tau li cas ntxiv rau kuv lub vaj txiv hmab thiab?

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

50 Tiam sis, saib seb, tus tub qhe tau hais rau tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tias: Cia nws nyob ib nyuag ntev me ntsis tso.

51 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav cia nws nyob ib nyuag ntev me ntsis tso, vim nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav xiam cov ntoo hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab mus.

52 Yog li ntawd, cia wb muab cov ceg no uas kuv tau muab cog rau hauv tej chaw uas qis tshaj hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab cia wb muab lawv txuas rov rau tej ntoo uas tau txiav lawv los; thiab cia wb muab tej ceg uas muaj tej txiv iab tshaj txiav pov tseg, thiab muab tej ceg ib txwm ntawm tsob ntoo coj los txuas rau tej ntawd qhov chaw.

53 Thiab kuv yuav ua li no xwv kom tsob ntoo thiaj li yuav tsis piam sij, kom, tej zaum, kuv yuav tseg tau tej cag ntawm tsob ntoo rau kuv tus kheej tau siv.

54 Thiab, saib seb, tej cag ntawm tej ceg nyeg ntawm tsob ntoo uas kuv tau muab cog rau qhov twg lawm los haj tseem muaj sia; yog li ntawd, xwv kom kuv yuav tseg tau lawv cia rau kuv tus kheej tau siv thiab, kuv yuav txiav tsob ntoo no tej ceg, thiab kuv yuav muab lawv coj mus txuas rau lawv. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav muab tsob niam ntoo tej ceg txuas rau lawv, xwv kom kuv yuav tseg tau tej cag rau kuv tus kheej, kom thaum uas lawv yuav muaj zog txaus tej zaum lawv yuav txi txiv zoo rau kuv, thiab kuv tseem yuav muaj yeeb koob nyob hauv tej txiv ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.

55 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau muab tej ceg ib txwm ntawm tsob ntoo uas tau rais los mus ua ntoo qus, thiab tau muab txuas rau tsob ntoo nyeg, uas kuj tau rais los mus ua ntoo qus lawm thiab.

56 Thiab nkawd kuj tau muab tej ceg ntawm tej ntoo nyeg uas tau rais los mus ua ntoo qus, thiab tau muab txuas rau lawv tsob niam ntoo.

57 Thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau tus tub qhe tias: Tsis txhob muab tej ceg qus txiav tawm ntawm tej ntoo, tsuas yog txiav tej uas iab tshaj xwb; thiab hauv cov ntawd koj yuav muab lawv txuas rau raws li uas kuv tau hais lawm.

58 Thiab wb yuav rov tu tej ntoo ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab dua, thiab wb yuav yim tej ceg ntawd; thiab wb yuav muab tej ceg uas qhuav lawm, uas yuav tsum piam sij mus, thiab muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov cub.

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

- 59 Thiab kuv ua li no xwv, tej zaum, tej cag ntawd yuav muaj taus zog tuaj vim yog lawv txoj kev zoo; thiab vim yog txoj kev muab tej ceg hloov, xwv kom cov zoo yuav kov yeej cov phem.
- 60 Thiab vim tias kuv tau tseg tej ceg ib txwm thiab tej cag ntawd, thiab vim tias kuv tau muab tej ceg ib txwm rov qab los txuas rau lawv tsob niam ntoo, thiab tau tseg lawv tsob niam ntoo ntawd tej cag, kom, tej zaum, tej ntoo hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab yuav txi dua tej txiv zoo; thiab kom kuv yuav muaj kev xyiv fab ntxiv rau tej txiv hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab, tej zaum, kom kuv yuav tau xyiv fab kawg nkaus tias kuv tau tseg tej cag thiab tej ceg ntawm thawj cov txiv—
- 61 Yog li ntawd, cia li mus, thiab hu tej tub mab tub qhe, xwv kom peb yuav rau siab ntso ua hauj lwmm tag peb lub dag lub zog rau lub vaj txiv hmab, kom peb yuav npaj tau txoj kev, kom kuv yuav muaj cov txiv nyeg dua tuaj, cov txiv nyeg uas yog cov zoo thiab cov uas qab tshaj plaws dua li lwmm cov txiv huv tib si.
- 62 Yog li ntawd, cia peb mus pib thiab ua hauj lwmm kom tag peb dag peb zog zaum kawg no, vim saib seb qhov kawg los txog ze lawm, thiab zaum no yog zaum kawg uas kuv yuav yim kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.
- 63 Txuas tej ceg rau; pib tej tom kawg xwv kom lawv yuav tau los ua thawj, thiab cov tom thawj ho yuav tau los ua qab, thiab khawb av npoog rau cov ntoo, tag nrho cov laus thiab cov mos, cov thawj thiab cov nav; thiab cov nav thiab cov thawj, xwv kom tag nrho sawv daws yuav raug tu ib zaug ntxiv rau zaum kawg.
- 64 Yog li ntawd, khawb av los npoog lawv, thiab yim lawv, thiab rau chiv rau lawv ib zaug ntxiv, rau zaum kawg, vim qhov kawg los txog ze lawm. Thiab yog tias cov ceg uas txuas thaum kawg no yuav loj hlob, thiab txi tau cov txiv nyeg, ces nej yuav tsum npaj txoj kev rau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav loj hlob.
- 65 Thiab thaum uas lawv pib loj hlob lawm nej yuav tsum muab tej ceg uas txi txiv iab tshem mus, raws li tej ceg zoo tej zog thiab qhov txi loj ntawm lawv; thiab nej yuav tsum tsis txhob muab tej ceg phem ua tib zaug tshem mus kom tag nrho huv tib si, nyob tsam tej cag ntawd ho yuav muaj zog dhau rau cov uas muab los txuas, thiab cov uas muab los txuas ntawd ho yuav piam sij, thiab kuv yuav xiam tej ntoo ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab mus.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

- 66 Vim nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias kuv yuav tsum xiam tej ntoo ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab mus; yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum muab tej phem tshem mus raws li cov zoo yuav loj tuaj, xwv kom tej cag thiab tej ntsis yuav muaj zog sib npaug zos, mus txog thaum uas cov zoo yuav kov yeej tau cov phem, thiab cov phem raug ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis sw tej av ntawm kuv lub vaj; thiab kuv yuav cheb tej phem tawm ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab mus zoo li ntawd.
- 67 Thiab kuv yuav muab tej ceg ntawm tsob ntoo nyeg rov qab los txuas rau tsob ntoo nyeg dua;
- 68 Thiab kuv yuav muab tej ceg ntawm tsob ntoo nyeg txuas rau tej ceg nyeg ntawm tsob ntoo; thiab kuv yuav koj lawv rov los ua ke dua zoo li ntawd, xwv kom lawv yuav txi tau cov txiv uas ib txwm txi dua, thiab lawv yuav los ua ib tsob lawm xwb.
- 69 Thiab cov phem yuav raug muab pov tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav raug muab pov tawm hauv tej av ntawm kuv lub vaj txiv hmab huv tib si mus; vim saib seb, kuv tsuas yuav yim kuv lub vaj txiv hmab zaum no xwb.
- 70 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau xa nws tus tub qhe; thiab tus tub qhe tau mus thiab tau ua raws li tus Tswv tau txib nws, thiab tau koj lwm cov tub qhe; thiab lawv tsis muaj coob.
- 71 Thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia li mus, thiab ua hauj lwm hauv lub vaj txiv hmab, nrog nej lub dag lub zog. Vim saib seb, zaum no yog zaum kawg uas kuv yuav tu kuv lub vaj txiv hmab; vim qhov kawg twb ze lawm, thiab lub caij twb los sai sai lawm; thiab yog tias nej ua hauj lwm nrog nej lub dag lub zog nrog kuv nej yuav muaj kev xyiv fab nyob hauv tej txiv uas kuv yuav khaws tseg rau kuv tus kheej thaum lub caij uas yuav los txog sai sai no.
- 72 Thiab tau muaj tias tej tub qhe tau mus thiab ua hauj lwm nrog lawv lub dag lub zog; thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab los kuj nrog lawv ua hauj lwm tib yam nkaus; thiab lawv tau koj tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tej lub txib nyob hauv txhua txhia yam huv tib si.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their mights; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

73 Thiab txawm tau pib muaj dua tej txiv ntoo ib txwm nyob hauv lub vaj txiv hmab; thiab cov ceg ib txwm tau pib loj hlob thiab loj zoo heev li; thiab cov ceg qus tau pib raug txiav tawm thiab raug muab pov tseg; thiab lawv tau ceev tej cag thiab tej ntsis ntawd kom xwm yeem, raws li lawv tej zog uas lawv muaj.

74 Thiab lawv txawm tau rau siab ua hauj lwm tag nrho lawv lub dag lub zog, raws li tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tej lus txib, twb ua mus txog thaum uas cov phem tau raug muab pov tseg tawm ntawm lub vaj txiv hmab mus, thiab tus Tswv tau tshwj tseg cia rau nws tus kheej, tej ntoo uas tau rais los mus txi cov txiv ib txwm dua; thiab lawv tau rais los mus zoo li ib lub cev; thiab tej txiv los xwm yeem; thiab tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau tshwj tseg cia rau nws tus kheej cov txiv uas ib txwm txi, uas yog cov uas qab tshaj plaws rau nws txij puag thaum chiv keeb los.

75 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas tus Tswv vaj txiv hmab tau pom tias nws cov txiv tau zoo lawm, thiab tau pom tias nws lub vaj txiv hmab tsis phem ntxiv lawm, nws tau hu nws cov tub qhe los ua ke, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, vim peb tau tu kuv lub vaj txiv hmab zaum kawg no; thiab nej pom tias kuv tau ua tiav raws li kuv xav ua; thiab kuv tau tshwj cov txiv uas ib txwm, tseg cia, tias nws twb zoo, twb zoo ib yam li puag thaum chiv keeb. Thiab nej tau koob hmoov kawg; vim rau qhov nej tau rau siab ua hauj lwm nrog kuv nyob hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab tau coj kuv tej lus txib, thiab coj tau cov txiv ib txwm rov qab los rau kuv dua, kom kuv lub vaj txiv hmab thiaj tsis xiam ntxiv lawm, thiab muab cov phem pov tseg, saib seb nej yuav tau kev xyiv fab mus ib txhis nrog kuv vim yog tej txiv hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab.

76 Vim saib seb, kuv yuav tseg tej txiv hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab ntev heev cia rau kuv tus kheej rau lub caij, uas yuav los sai sai no; thiab yog zaum kawg uas kuv tau tu kuv lub vaj txiv hmab, thiab tau yim nws, thiab tau khawb av los npoog nws, thiab tau rau chiv rau nws; yog li ntawd kuv yuav khaws cov txiv cia rau kuv tus kheej, kom ntev, raws li uas kuv tau hais lawm.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

77 Thiab thaum lub sij hawm uas tej txiv phem ho
yuav los rau hauv kuv lub vaj txiv hmab dua, ces kuv
yuav ua kom cov phem thiab cov zoo raug muab sau
los ua ke; thiab kuv yuav tshwj cov zoo cia rau kuv
tus kheej, thiab kuv yuav muab cov phem pov rau
hauv lawv qhov chaw. Thiab ces lub caij thiab qhov
kawg los; thiab kuv yuav ua kom kuv lub vaj txiv
hmab raug hluav taws kub hnyiab mus.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall
again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the
good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I
preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away
into its own place. And then cometh the season and
the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned
with fire.

Yakhauj 6

- 1 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej tias kuv yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, saib seb, qhov no yog kuv txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj tom ntej ntag—tias tej yam uas tus yaj saub Xinos no tau hais, txog tsev neeg Ixayees, ntawm qhov uas nws tau muab lawv piv rau ib tsob ntoo ntseej nyeg, yuav tsum muaj xwb xwb li.
- 2 Thiab hnuv uas nws yuav tsa nws txhais tes dua zaum ob los cawm nws cov neeg, yog hnuv uas, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog zaum kawg, uas cov tub qhe ntawm tus Tswv yuav tau tawm, mus tu thiab yim nws lub vaj txiv hmab nrog nws lub hwj chim; thiab tom qab ntawd ces qhov kawg yuav los sai sai.
- 3 Thiab lawv tau koob hmoov kawg, cov uas tau rau siab ntso ua hauj lwm nyob hauv nws lub vaj txiv hmab; thiab lawv tau raug foom tsis zoo kawg, cov uas yuav raug ntiab tawm mus rau hauv lawv tus kheej tej chaw! Thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav raug hluav taws kub.
- 4 Thiab peb tus Vajtswv ua zoo rau peb kawg li, vim nws nco ntsoov txog tsev neeg Ixayees, tag nrho tej cag thiab tej ceg; thiab nws ncav ntsoov nws txhais tes rau lawv tas hnuv li; thiab lawv yog ib cov neeg tawv ncauj thiab yog ib cov neeg cam ncauj; tiam sis txhua txhia tus uas tsis ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv yuav raug cawm dim mus nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv muab tej lus tseeb koj los thov nej tiag tiag kom nej yuav hloov siab lees txim, thiab nrog lub siab uas muaj lub ntsiab puv npo los, thiab muab siab npuab Vajtswv ib yam li nws muab siab npuab nej. Thiab thaum uas nws txhais tes hlub tseem cev tuaj rau nej nyob rau hauv qhov kaj ntawm nruab hnuv, nej cia li tsis txhob ua nej tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, hnuv no, yog nej yuav hnov nws lub suab, nej tsis txhob ua nej tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv; vim ua li cas nej yuav tuag?
- 7 Vim saib seb, tom qab uas nej tau raug tu los ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus zoo tag hnuv lawm, nej tseem yuav txi cov txiv phem, kom nej yuav tsum tau raug muab ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub thiab los?

Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

- 8 Saib seb, nej puas yuav tsis kam lees yuav tej lus no? Nej puas yuav tsis kam lees yuav tej yaj saub tej lus; thiab nej puas yuav tsis kam lees yuav tag nrho tej lus uas tau hais txog Khetos, tom qab uas tau muaj coob tus tau hais txog nws; thiab tsis kam yuav Khetos txoj lus zoo, thiab Vajtsv lub hwj chim, thiab lub txiaj ntsim Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab tso tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tseg, thiab ua saib tsis taus lub tswv yim tseem ceeb uas tau npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau npaj rau nej lawm?
- 9 Nej tsis paub tias yog nej yuav ua tej no, ces lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim thiab ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, uas nyob hauv Khetos, yuav coj nej los sawv nrog txoj kev txaj muag thiab kev muaj txim phem heev nyob ntawm Vajtsv lub rooj txiav txim?
- 10 Thiab raws li lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees, vim kev ncaj ncees tsis muaj leej twg muaj cuab kav tsis kam lees, nej yuav tsum raug mus rau hauv lub pas dej hluav taws thiab leej faj, uas muaj nplaim cig tsis paub tuag, thiab uas muaj pa hluav taws sawv mus ib txhis thiab ib txhis, lub pas dej hluav taws thiab leej faj uas yog kev tsim txom uas tsis muaj qhov kawg li.
- 11 Au ces, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hluv es, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim mog, thiab cia li nkag mus rau hauv lub qhov rooj nqaim mog, thiab kam tiag mus twj ywm rau hauv txoj kev nqaim, mus txog thaum uas nej yuav tau txais txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.
- 12 Au cia li ua neeg ntse; kuv tseem yuav hais tau dab tsi ntxiv thiab?
- 13 Thaum kawg no, kuv thov kom nej noj qab nyob zoo, mus txog thaum kuv yuav ntsib nej ntawm Vajtsv lub rooj txiav txim, uas yog lub rooj txiav txim uas yuav ua rau cov neeg phem muaj kev txhawj kev ntshai heev. Amees.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Yakhauj 7

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas ob peb xyoos tau dhau mus lawm, tau muaj ib tug txiv neej tuaj nyob nrog cov Neeg Nifais, tus uas muaj lub npe hu ua Sawmlaj.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau pib qhuab qhia nyob hauv cov neeg, thiab tshaj tawm rau lawv tias yuav tsis muaj Khetos. Thiab nws tau qhia ntau yam uas tsis tseeb ntxias rau cov neeg; thiab nws tau ua li no xwv kom nws yuav ntseeg tau txoj lus qhia ntawm Khetos.
- 3 Thiab nws tau rau siab ua hauj lwm xwv kom nws yuav ntxias koj tau cov neeg tej siab mus, kawg tias nws tau ntxias koj tau ntau tus tej siab lawm; thiab nws paub ntsoov tias kuv, Yakhauj, tau muaj kev ntseeg Khetos tus uas yuav los, nws tau nrhiav caij nyoog ntau zaus uas nws yuav tuaj ntsib kuv.
- 4 Thiab nws tau kawm, ces nws tau paub txog cov neeg yam lus zoo heev; yog li ntawd, nws muaj peev xwm siv ntau yam uas tsis tseeb ntxias, thiab muaj hwj chim ntau ntawm txoj kev hais lus, raws li tus dab lub hwj chim.
- 5 Thiab nws tau vam tias yuav rhuav kuv txoj kev ntseeg, txawm hais tias kuv twb tau pom ntau yam kev tshwm sim thiab ntau yam ntawm tej xwm txheej no; vim kuv yeej tau pom tej tim tswv lawm tiag, thiab lawv tau los pab rau kuv. Thiab kuv kuj tau hnov kiag tus Tswv lub suab hais rau kuv ntawm tej lo lus, ib lub sij hawm dhau ib lub sij hawm; yog li ntawd, thiaj tsis muaj peev xwm ntxias tau kuv.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tuaj cuag kuv, thiab nws tau hais lus rau kuv zoo li no, hais tias: Tij laug Yakhauj es, kuv tau nrhiav ntau lub caij nyoog kawg uas kuv yuav hais lus rau koj; vim kuv tau hnov thiab kuj paub tias koj tawm mus ncig ntau heev, mus qhuab qhia tej uas koj hu hais tias txoj moo zoo, los sis Khetos txoj lus qhuab qhia.

Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

- 7 Thiab koj tau coj cov neeg no coob tug mus kom lawv hloov txoj kev yog ntawm Vajtswv, thiab tsis coj Mauxes txoj kev cai uas yog txoj kev yog; thiab muab Mauxes txoj kev cai ntseev mus teev tiam ib tug neeg uas koj hais tias yuav los ntau pua xyoo yav tom ntej no. Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv, Sawmlaj, hais rau koj paub tias qhov no mas yog saib tsis taus Vajtswv kiag li; vim yeej tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg yuav paub txog tej yam zoo li ntawd; vim nws tsis muaj peev xwm qhia tau tej uas yuav muaj los. Thiab Sawmlaj tau cam kuv zoo li no.
- 8 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig los rau hauv kuv lub siab, kawg tias kuv tau ua rau nws ntsiag tag nrho ntawm nws tej lus huv tib si.
- 9 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Koj yuav tsis kam lees yuav Khetos tus uas yuav los los? Thiab nws tau hais tias: Yog hais tias muaj ib tug Khetos, kuv yeej yuav kam lees yuav nws; tiam sis kuv paub tias yeej tsis muaj Khetos li, yeej tsis tau muaj dua li, thiab yeej yuav tsis muaj mus ib txhis li.
- 10 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg tej vajlugkub? Thiab nws teb tias, kuv ntseeg.
- 11 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Ces koj twb tsis to taub tej vajlugkub ntawd; vim tej vajlugkub ntawd puav leej ua tim khawv txog Khetos. Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias yeej tsis muaj ib tug yaj saub twg uas tau sau, los sis tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, tsuas yog lawv tau hais txog tus Khetos no xwb.
- 12 Thiab tsis tas li no xwb—nws tau ua rau kuv paub, vim kuv tau hnov thiab tau pom; thiab nws kuj tau ua rau kuv paub los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim; yog li ntawd, kuv paub tias yog tsis muaj txoj kev theej txoj ces tib neeg sawv daws yuav tsum xiam mus.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Sim ua ib lub cim los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim rau kuv saib soj, uas koj paub txog ntau ua luaj no nam.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

- 14 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yog dab tsi es kuv yuav ntxias Vajtswv kom nws ua ib lub cim rau koj paub txog tej uas koj twb paub tias muaj tseeb no? Tiam sis koj tseem tsis lees yuav nws, vim koj yog tus dab li. Txawm li ntawd los, tsis yog yuav ua li kuv lub siab xav; tiam sis yog Vajtswv yuav rau txim qhuab koj, cia qhov ntawd ua ib lub cim rau koj tias nws yeej muaj hwj chim, tag nrho saum ntuj thiab hauv ntiaj teb no; thiab kuj yuav ua ib lub cim rau koj tias Khetos yeej yuav los. Thiab Au tus Tswv es, ua raws li koj lub siab nyiam, thiab tsis txhob ua li kuv lub siab nyiam.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas kuv, Yakhouj, tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, tus Tswv lub hwj chim tau los rau saum nws, kawg tias ua rau nws vau rau hauv pem teb. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau raug luag pub mov tu nws tau sij hawm ntau hnuv.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau cov neeg tias: Tag kis nej cia li sib sau tuaj ua ke, vim kuv yuav tuag; yog li ntawd, kuv xav hais lus rau cov neeg ua ntej kuv yuav tuag.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis cov neeg coob coob tau tuaj sib sau ua ke; thiab nws tau hais lus tseeb meej rau lawv thiab tau tig tej uas nws tau qhia lawv lawm, thiab tau lees txim tias tus Khetos, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim, thiab kev qhuab qhia ntawm tej tim tswv yeej muaj tiag.
- 18 Thiab nws tau hais lus tseeb meej rau lawv, tias nws tau raug tus dab lub hwj chim ntxias lawm. Thiab nws tau hais txog ntuj txiag teb tsaus, thiab ntawm kev nyob mus ib txhis, thiab ntawm txoj kev rau txim uas nyob tas mus li.
- 19 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Kuv ntshai tsam kuv tau ua txhaum txoj kev txhaum uas yuav zam tsis tau txim li, vim kuv tau dag rau Vajtswv lawm; vim kuv tau tsis lees tias muaj Khetos, thiab kuv tau hais tias kuv ntseeg tej vajlugkub; thiab tej ntawd yeej ua tim khawv tseeb txog nws tiag. Thiab vim yog kuv tau dag rau Vajtswv li ntawd kuv ntshai heev kawg tias tsam kuv zaj yuav phem heev kawg li; tiam sis kuv thov lees txim rau Vajtswv.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau hais tej lus no tas lawm nws tsis muaj peev xwm hais tau ntxiv lawm, thiab nws txawm tau tuag lawm.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

- 21 Thiab thaum cov neeg coob coob ntawd tau ua tim khawv tias nws tau hais tej yam no thaum uas nws twb yuav luag tuag, lawv txawm tau ceeb loj kawg nkaus li; npaum tias Vajtswv lub hwj chim tau los rau saum lawv, thiab lawv tau raug ua kom tsis muaj zog li uas lawv tau qaug rau hauv pem teb.
- 22 Nim no, tej no ua rau kuv, Yakhauj, zoo siab, vim kuv tau thov tej ntawd ntawm kuv Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej; vim nws tau hnov kuv lub suab quaj thiab tau teb kuv tej lus thov.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias Vajtswv txoj kev thaj yeeb thiab txoj kev hlub raug rov qab txum tim dua los nyob hauv cov neeg; thiab lawv tau tshawb nrhiav tej vajlugkub, thiab tsis mloog tus txiv neej phem no tej lus ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias tau ntaus tswv yim ntau yam los npo thiab coj cov Neeg Lamas txum tim rov qab los paub txog qhov tseeb; tiam sis tag nrho txhua yam puav leej tsis muaj qab hau huv tib si, vim lawv nyiam kev tsov kev rog thiab kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, thiab lawv tau muaj ib txoj kev ntxub nyob mus ib txhis rau peb, cov uas yog lawv cov kwv tij. Thiab lawv tau nrhiav ua kom peb puas tsuaj tsis tu ncuu li los ntawm lawv tej khoom ua rog lub hwj chim.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, Nifais cov neeg thiaj tau ua chaw tiv thaiv tawm tsam lawv nrog lawv tej khoom ua rog, thiab cia siab ntsoov rau ntawm lawv tus Vajtswv thiab qhov chaw vam khom ntawm txoj kev cawm seeg; yog li ntawd, lawv tseem tau rais los mus uas cov uas kov yeej lawv tej yeeb ncuab thiab.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Yakhauj, tau pib laus lawm; thiab phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm cov neeg no tau muaj ceev rau hauv Nifais lwm cov phiaj, yog li ntawd, kuv kaw phau ceev xwm txheej no, qhia hais tias kuv tau sau raws li kuv txoj kev txawj ntse uas kuv paub zoo tshaj, los hais tias lub sij hawm tau dhau mus nrog peb, thiab peb lub neej txoj sia tau los dhau mus yam nkaus li nws yog ib zag npau suav rau peb xwb, peb tau ua ib co neeg twj cuab thiab ib co neeg ua dab tsi ua tiag tiag, ua neeg loj leeb, raug ntiab tawm ntawm Yeluxalees, tau yug nyob hauv txoj kev txom nyem, nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab raug peb cov kwv tij ntxub, uas tau ua kom muaj tsov muaj rog thiab muaj kev sib cav sib ceg; yog li ntawd, peb tau tu siab tag peb lub neej li.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

27 Thiab kuv, Yakhauj, tau pom tias tsis ntev no kuv
yuav tsum tau nqis mus rau hauv kuv lub qhov ntxa;
yog li ntawd, kuv tau hais rau kuv tus tub Enos tias:
Coj cov phiaj no mus. Thiab kuv tau qhia rau nws tej
yam uas kuv tus tij laugNifais tau txib kuv, thiab nws
tau cog lus tias nws yuav ua raws li tej lus txib ntawd.
Thiab kuv tau sau tag kuv txoj kev sau ntawv rau
saum cov phiaj, uas yog txoj kev sau ntawv uas
tsawg; thiab kuv thov ncaim nej cov uas yuav nyeem
mus, cia siab ntsoov tias kuv cov kwv tij coob tug
yuav nyeem kuv tej lus. Cov kwv tij es, thov Vajtswv
nrog nej nyob mog.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my
grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take
these plates. And I told him the things which my
brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised
obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of
my writing upon these plates, which writing has
been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping
that many of my brethren may read my words.
Brethren, adieu.

Enos Phau Ntawv

- 1 Saib seb, tau muaj tias kuv, Enos, paub ntsoov tias kuv txiv nws yog ib tug neeg zoo—rau qhov nws tau qhuab qhia kuv nyob hauv nws yam lus, thiab nws kuj tau muab tus Tswv tej kev xyaum kawm thiab kev ceeb toom qhuab qhia kuv raws li lus qhuab qhia—thiab kuv tus Vajtswv lub npe tau koob hmoov vim yog tej yam ntawd—
- 2 Thiab kuv yuav qhia nej txog txoj kev sib ntswg yos uas kuv muaj rau Vajtswv, ua ntej uas kuv tau txais txoj kev zam txim rau kuv tej kev txog txhaum.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv tau mus tua tsiaj qus nyob rau hauv hav zoov; thiab tej lus uas kuv nquag nquag tau hnov kuv txiv hais txog txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, thiab txoj kev xyiv fab ntawm cov ntseeg, tau tog mus tob rau hauv kuv lub siab.
- 4 Thiab kuv tus plig tau tshaib nqhis; thiab kuv tau txhos caug ua ntej ntawm tus uas Tsim kuv lub xub ntiag, thiab kuv tau quaj rau nws ntawm kev thov tag zog thiab thov pab rau kuv tus kheej tus ntsuj plig; thiab kev txo hwj chim kuv tau quaj thov nws tas hnuv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum uas tsaus ntuj lawm los kuv tseem tsa kuv lub suab siab xwv kom nws mus txog puag saum ntuj.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj ib lub suab los rau kuv, hais tias: Enos, koj tej kev txog txhaum raug muab zam rau koj lawm, thiab koj yuav tau koob hmoov.
- 6 Thiab kuv, Enos, paub lawm tias Vajtswv yeej dag tsis taus; yog li ntawd, kuv tej kev txhaum raug muab cheb pov tseg lawm.
- 7 Thiab kuv tau hais tias: Tus Tswv es, ua li cas es thiaj ua tau tiav li ntawd?
- 8 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, tus uas yav tas los koj ib txwm tsis tau hnov los sis pom dua li. Thiab ntau xyoo yuav dhau mus ua ntej nws tus kheej yuav tshwm sim los ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv; yog li ntawd, cia li mus, koj txoj kev ntseeg tau ua rau koj huv lawm.
- 9 Nim no, tau muaj tias thaum kuv tau hnov tej lus no lawm kuv tau pib xav qhov tau txoj kev pab rau kuv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Nifais; yog li ntawd, kuv tau nchuav tag nrho kuv lub siab tawm rau Vajtswv pub rau lawv.

The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

- 10 Thiab thaum kuv tseem sib ntswg yos nyob hauv tus ntsuj plig li no, saib seb, tus Tswv lub suab tau rov qab los rau hauv kuv lub siab dua, hais tias: Kuv yuav mus xyuas koj cov kwv tij raws li lawv tej kev rau siab koj kuv tej lus txib. Kuv tau muab thaj av no rau lawv, thiab nws yog ib thaj av uas dawb huv; thiab kuv tsis foom phem rau nws li tsuas yog ntshe rau txoj kev uas tsis ncaj ncees xwb; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav mus xyuas koj cov kwv tij raws li uas kuv tau hais lawm; thiab kuv yuav koj lawv tej kev txog txhaum nqis los nrog kev quaj ntsuag kua muag los rau saum lawv tus kheej tej taub hau.
- 11 Thiab tom qab kuv, Enos, tau hnov tej lus no lawm, kuv txoj kev ntseeg tau pib tsis tsee li nyob rau ntawm tus Tswv; thiab kuv tau muaj ntau txoj kev sib ntswg yos thov pab kuv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kuv tau thov thiab ua hauj lwm nrog tag nrho txoj kev rau siab lawm, tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Kuv yuav muab rau koj raws li tej uas koj xav tau, vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg.
- 13 Thiab nim no saib seb, qhov no yog yam uas kuv xav tau ntawm nws—tias yog yuav raug muaj tias, kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, yuav poob mus rau hauv kev txog txhaum, thiab yog muaj dab tsi es ho yuav raug puas tsuaj mus, thiab cov Neeg Lamas ho yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj, kom tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv ceev kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, ib phau ceev xwm txheej tseg; twb yuav yog los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txhais ncaj npab dawb huv, xwv kom yuav koj tau phau no los rau ib hnub twg tom ntej no rau cov Neeg Lamas, kom, tej zaum, lawv ho raug koj los mus rau txoj kev cawm seeg—
- 14 Vim tam sim no peb tej kev sib ntswg yos tsis muaj qab hau dab tsi nyob rau hauv txoj kev koj lawv rov qab los rau txoj kev ntseeg tseeb tiag. Thiab lawv tau cog lus nyob hauv lawv txoj kev npau taws tias, yog tias ua tau, lawv yuav rhuav peb tej ceev xwm txheej thiab peb kom puas tsuaj mus, thiab tag nrho peb tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai thiab.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

- 15 Yog li ntawd, vim kuv paub ntsoov tias tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv muaj taus peev xwm ceev peb tej ceev xwm txheej tseg, kuv tau quaj thov rau nws tsis tu ncu a li, vim nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Yam dab tsi uas koj yuav thov nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg, ntseeg ntsoov tias koj yuav tau txais los ntawm Khetos lub npe, koj yeej yuav tau txais nws xwb.
- 16 Thiab kuv tau muaj kev ntseeg, thiab kuv tau quaj thov rau Vajtswv kom nws yuav ceev cov ceev xwm txheej tseg; thiab nws tau khi lus nrog kuv tias nws yuav coj cov no tawm mus rau cov Neeg Lamas thaum txog nws lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg.
- 17 Thiab kuv, Enos, paub tias nws yuav muaj raws nraim li cov lus khi uas nws tau khi tseg; yog li ntawd kuv tus ntsuj plig thiaj tau so.
- 18 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj tej yawg koob los kuj tau thov kuv tej yam no thiab; thiab nws yuav raug ua kom tiav rau lawv raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg; vim lawv txoj kev ntseeg zoo tib yam li koj li thiab.
- 19 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias kuv, Enos, tau mus ncig rau hauv Nifais cov neeg, qhia ntsis txog tej xwm uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab ua tim khawv txog tej xwm uas kuv tau hnov thiab tau pom.
- 20 Thiab kuv ua tim khawv tias Nifais cov neeg tau kub siab lug nrhiav coj cov Neeg Lamas rov qab los txum tim rau txoj kev ntseeg tseeb uas nyob hauv Vajtswv. Tiam sis peb tej hauj lwm puav leej tau tsis muaj qab hau dab tsi li; lawv tej kev ntxub ntxaug tau raug nyob khov kho, thiab lawv tau raug lawv tej qub siab phem coj lawv ces lawv tau rais los qus, thiab tsiv tsaim, thiab neeg nyiam ua kom muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, pe dab pe mlom heev thiab muaj kev vuab tsuab puv npo; noj nqaij tsiaj qus; nyob tsev pheb suab ntaub, thiab ua loj leeb ncig hauv tej hav zoov es hnav tawv tsiaj luv luv npog lawv tej puab tais thiab lawv tej taub hau chais do dus; thiab lawv tej txuj ci uas lawv txawj yog tua hneev nti, thiab siv liag, thiab siv taus. Thiab lawv muaj coob leej yeej tsis noj dab tsi li tsuas yog noj nqaij nyoos xwb; thiab lawv tau npaj siab nrhiav ntshis rhuav kom peb puas tsuaj tsis tu ncu a li.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

21 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais cov neeg tau ua liaj ua teb, thiab cog ib puas yam tsav qoob loos, thiab txiv hmab txiv ntoo, thiab yug tej pab tsiaj txhu, thiab tej niag pab tsiaj tuaj kub txhua txhia yam huv tib si, thiab tshis, thiab sai, thiab kuj muaj nees coob tug thiab.

22 Thiab tau muaj coob tug yaj saub nyob nrog peb. Thiab cov neeg tau ua ib co neeg tawv ncauj, to taub nyuaj heev.

23 Thiab tsis muaj dab tsi li tsuas yog tej kev tsis zoo heev lawm xwb, qhuab qhia thiab kev qhia ntsis tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog kev tsov kev rog, thiab kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab kev puas tsuaj puas ntsoog, thiab ceeb toom rau lawv tsis tu ncuu txog txoj kev tuag, thiab qhov ncuu ntev ntawm txoj kev nyob mus ib txhis li, thiab tej kev txiav txim thiab lub hwj chim ntawm Vajtswv, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no—pheed txhib kom koj tau lawv tsis tu ncuu rau ntawm txoj kev ntshai tus Tswv. Kuv hais tias tej no tsis muaj dab tsi tshuav lawm, thiab txoj kev qhuab qhia tseeb meej uas tseem ceeb heev, yuav koj tau lawv zam dhau txoj kev nqis nrawm nroos mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj. Thiab kuv txawm sau txog lawv zoo li no.

24 Thiab kuv tau pom kev tsov kev rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas nyob rau hauv kuv lub neej.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pib laus lawm, thiab ib puas thiab xya caum thiab cuaj xyoos tau dhau mus lawm txij li lub caij uas peb txiv Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees.

26 Thiab kuv tau pom tias tsis ntev kuv yuav tsum tau nqis mus rau hauv kuv lub qhov ntxa, tau raug Vajtswv lub hwj chim kom kuv yuav tsum qhuab qhia thiab hais tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg no, thiab tshaj tawm txoj lus raws li qhov tseeb uas nyob hauv Khetos. Thiab kuv tau tshaj tawm nws nyob tag nrho hauv kuv lub neej, thiab tau zoo siab nyob hauv txoj lus no tshaj dua li tej uas nyob hauv ntiaj teb no.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

Thiab tsis ntev no kuv yuav mus rau kuv qhov
chaw so, uas yog nrog kuv tus Txhiv Dim; vim kuv
paub tias kuv yuav tau so nyob hauv nws. Thiab kuv
yuav zoo siab nyob rau hnuv uas thaum kuv lub cev
uas txawj ploj txawj tuag yuav pauv ua lub tsis txawj
ploj tsis txawj tuag, thiab yuav sawv ntawm nws xub
ntiag; ces kuv yuav pom nws lub ntsej muag nrog
txoj kev zoo siab, thiab nws yuav hais rau kuv tias:
Los ntawm kuv no, koj tus uas tau koob hmoov
lawm, muaj ib qhov chaw tau npaj tseg cia rau koj
lawm nyob rau hauv kuv Txiv tej chaw nyob. Amees.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is
with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall
rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall
put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then
shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto
me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place pre-
pared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

Yaloos Phau Ntawv

- 1 Nim no saib seb, kuv, Yaloos, sau ob peb lo lus raws li kuv txiv, Enos, txoj lus txib, xwv kom yuav ceev tau peb tej keeb kwm tseg.
- 2 Thiab li uas tias cov phiaj no nqaim, thiab li uas cov phiaj no ho raug txhob txwm muab sau cia pab peb cov kwv tij Lamas, yog li ntawd, nws tsim nyog tias kuv yuav tsum sau ib qho me me; tiam sis kuv yuav tsis sau txog kuv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej los sis txog kuv tej kev tshwm sim. Vim kuv tseem yuav muaj peev xwm sau yam dab tsi ntxiv tej uas li kuv tej yawg koob tau sau lawm? Vim lawv tseem tsis tau ua kom paub txoj kev npaj ntawm txoj kev cawm seeg los? Kuv hais rau nej tias, twb tau lawm; thiab qhov no kuv xav tias txaus lawm.
- 3 Saib seb, nws tsim nyog tias muaj ntau yam yuav tsum ua kom tiav nyob hauv cov neeg no, vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab tej ntsws, thiab txoj kev lag ntseg ntawm lawv tej pob ntseg, thiab txoj kev dig muag ntawm lawv tej siab, thiab txoj kev uas ua lawv tej caj dab tawv qhwb qhawv; txawm li ntawd los, Vajtswv tseem hlub lawv kawg li, thiab tseem tsis tau muab lawv cheb tawm saum thaj av mus.
- 4 Thiab muaj ntau tus nyob hauv peb uas tau muaj tej kev tshwm sim ntau, vim lawv tsis tau tawv ncauj tag tus. Thiab txawm yog pes tsawg tus los yog tsis tawv ncauj thiab muaj kev ntseeg, yeej muaj kev phooj ywg ze nrog tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas ua rau kom noob neej paub, raws li lawv tej kev ntseeg.
- 5 Thiab nim no, saib seb, ob puas xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab Nifais cov neeg tau peem tsheej muaj zog nyob hauv thaj av. Lawv rau siab ntso koj Mauxes txoj kev cai thiab hnub caiv dawb huv rau tus Tswv. Thiab lawv tsis tau hais lus phem thiab ua phem; thiab lawv kuj tsis tau hais lus saib tsis taus. Thiab tej kev cai ntawm thaj av tau nruj heev kawg li.
- 6 Thiab lawv raug khiav mus nyob qhov ub qhov no ntau rau saum thaj av, thiab cov Neeg Lamas los kuj tib yam. Thiab lawv tau muaj coob tshaj dua li lawv cov uas yog Neeg Nifais; thiab lawv nyiam tua neeg thiab nyiam haus ntshav tsiaj.

The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tuaj tawm tsam peb, cov uas yog Neeg Nifais ntau zaus, kom sib tua rog. Tiam sis peb cov vaj ntxwv thiab peb cov thawj koj yog ib co neeg muaj hwj chim nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg ntawm tus Tswv; thiab lawv tau qhia tus Tswv tej kev rau cov neeg; yog li ntawd, peb tau tiv thaiv cov Neeg Lamas thiab tau cheb lawv tawm ntawm peb tej av mus, thiab tau pib ua kom peb tej nroog muaj zog ntxiv tuaj, los sis qhov chaw twg uas yog peb qub txeeg qub teg.

8 Thiab peb tau huaj vam heev, thiab tau ri mus rau saum thaj av, thiab tau rais los mus muaj kub, thiab muaj nyiaj, thiab muaj tej khoom muaj nuj nqis, thiab muaj tej khoom zoo nkauj uas muab ntoo ua, muaj vaj tse, thiab muaj khoom tshuab, thiab kuj muaj hlau thiab tooj liab, thiab tooj dag thiab kab, ua txhua txhia yam twj tes txhua yam los khawb av, thiab tsov rog tej khoom siv—muaj tseeb tiag, tej xub muaj hau ntse, thiab raj ntim xub, thiab xub nkaug, thiab hmuv nkaug, thiab ua txhua yam uas npaj rau tsov rog.

9 Thiab tau npaj li no tos cov Neeg Lamas, lawv tsis huaj vam tawm tsam peb. Tiam sis tus Tswv txoj lus tau raug tshawb pom tias muaj tseeb, tej uas nws tau hais rau peb tej yawg koob, hais tias: Npaum li uas nej yuav koj kuv tej lus txib nej yeej yuav huaj vam taus nyob rau hauv thaj av.

10 Ib yam tias tus Tswv tej yaj saub tau ceeb toom ua ntej rau Nifais cov neeg, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus, tias yog lawv tsis koj tej lus txib, tiam sis yuav qaug mus rau hauv kev txog txhaum, lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj ncaim tawm saum thaj av mus.

11 Yog li ntawd, tej yaj saub, thiab tej pov thawj, thiab tej xib hwb, tau mob siab ua hauj lwm, ua tag nrho siab ntev txhawb ntuas kom cov neeg rau siab; qhuab qhia Mauxes txoj kev cai, thiab lub ntsiab uas tau txhob txwm muab nws los; yaum ntsoov lawv kom tos ntsoov rau tus Mexiyas, thiab ntseeg tias nws yuav los ib yam li tias nws twb tau los lawm. Thiab lawv cov no thiaj tau qhia li no rau lawv.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias los ntawm txoj kev ua li no lawv cov no tau ceev cov neeg no dhau ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj nyob rau saum thaj av; vim lawv tau muab lawv tej siab npuab nrog txoj lus, pheej txhib lawv rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias ob puas thiab peb caug thiab yim xyoo tau dhau mus—hauv lub caij muaj tsov muaj rog, thiab kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab kev tawg pab tawg pawg, rau ib lub sij hawm ntev loo.

14 Thiab kuv, Yaloos, tsis sau ntxiv lawm, vim cov phiaj los nqaim. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, nej muaj cuab kav mus rau Nifais lwm cov phiaj; vim saib seb, tej xwm txheej ntawm peb tej kev tsov kev rog tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj ntawd, raws li cov vaj ntxwv tej kev sau, los sis cov uas lawv tau kom sau.

15 Thiab kuv muab cov phiaj no rau kuv tus tub Oonis txhais tes, xwv kom lawv yuav raug ceev raws li kuv cov yawg koob tej lus txib.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Oonis Phau Ntawv

- 1 Saib seb, tau muaj tias kuv, Oonis, tau raug kuv txiv, Yaloos, txib tias kuv yuav tsum sau qho me ntsis rau saum cov phiaj no, kom ceev tau peb tej keeb kwm tseg—
- 2 Yog li ntawd, nyob rau hauv kuv lub neej, kuv xav kom nej paub tias kuv tau sib tua ntau nrog ntaj riam kom ceev tau kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, kom tsis txhob poob mus rau lawv tej yeeb ncuab, cov Neeg Lamas tes. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tus kheej yog ib tug neeg phem, thiab kuv tsis tau koj tus Tswv tej kev cai thiab tej lus txib li kuv yuav tsum tau ua.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias ob puas thiab xya caum thiab rau xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab peb tau muaj ntau lub caij uas muaj kev thaj yeeb; thiab peb tau muaj ntau lub caij uas muaj tsov rog thiab nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog hnyav. Muaj tseeb tiag, thaum kawg, ob puas thiab yim caum thiab ob xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab kuv tau ceev cov phiaj no raws li kuv tej yawg koob tej lus txib; thiab kuv tau muab lawv rau kuv tus tub Amaloo. Thiab kuv tsum tsis sau lawm.
- 4 Thiab nim no kuv, Amaloo, sau tej yam dab tsi los xij uas kuv sau, uas tsis ntau, rau hauv kuv txiv phau ntawv.
- 5 Saib seb, tau muaj tias peb puas thiab nees nkaum xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab feem phem zog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tau raug puas tsuaj lawm.
- 6 Vim tus Tswv yuav tsis cia, tom qab uas nws tau koj lawv tawm ntawm lub nroog Yeluxalees thiab tau ceev thiab tau tsum kwm lawv dim txoj kev poob mus rau lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes, muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav tsis cia kom tej lus yuav tsis txhob raug tshawb pom tias muaj tseeb, tej uas nws tau hais rau peb tej yawg koob, hais tias: Npaum ib yam tias yog nej tsis koj kuv tej lus txib nej yuav tsis huaj vam nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau los xyuas lawv hauv kev txiav txim hnyav, txawm li ntawd los, nws tau cia cov neeg ncaj ncees xwv kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij, tiam sis tau koj lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau cev cov phiaj rau kuv tus kwv Khemis.

The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 Nim no kuv, Khemis, sau qho me ntsis uas kuv sau, rau hauv tib phau ntawv nrog kuv tus tij laug; vim saib seb, kuv tau pom qhov kawg uas nws tau sau, uas nws tau sau nws qhov ntawd nrog nws txhais tes kiag; thiab nws tau sau nws nyob rau hauv hnuv uas nws tau cev lawv rau kuv. Thiab peb ceev cov ceev xwm txheej li no, vim nws yog raws li peb cov yawg koob tej lus txib. Thiab kuv tsum tsis sau lawm.

10 Saib seb, kuv, Apinadoos, yog Khemis tus tub. Saib seb, tau muaj tias kuv tau pom tsov rog thiab kev sib cav sib ceg ntau nyob nruab nrab ntawm kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, thiab cov Neeg Lamas; thiab kuv, nrog kuv rab ntaj, tau muab cov Neeg Lamas ntau tus txoj sia txo ntawm txoj kev tiv thaiv kuv cov kwv tij.

11 Thiab saib seb, phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm cov neeg no raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj uas tej vaj ntxwv tau, raws li tej tiam neeg; thiab kuv tsis paub ib qho kev tshwm sim li tsuas yog tej uas tau muab sau cia lawm xwb, thiab tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; yog li ntawd, tej uas raug muab sau yeej txaus lawm. Thiab kuv tsum tsis sau lawm.

12 Saib seb, kuv yog Amalej, Apinadoos tus tub. Saib seb, kuv yuav hais rau nej tej yam txog Mauxiyas, tus uas tau muab ua vaj ntxwv saib thaj av Xalahelas; vim saib seb, nws tau raug tus Tswv ceeb toom tias nws yuav tsum khiav tawm ntawm thaj av Nifais mus, thiab coob npaum li yuav coob tau uas yuav mloog rau tus Tswv lub suab yuav tsum ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av nrog nws thiab, mus rau hauv hav zoov—

13 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ua raws nraim li tus Tswv tau txib nws. Thiab lawv tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av mus rau hauv hav zoov, coob npaum li yuav coob tau uas yuav mloog rau tus Tswv lub suab; thiab lawv raug coj los ntawm ntau txoj kev qhuab qhia thiab ntau txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej. Thiab lawv raug qhia kom txhob ua phem tsis tu ncuu los ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus; thiab lawv tau raug coj los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txhais caj npab, dhau hauv hav zoov, mus txog thaum lawv tau los nqis mus rau hauv thaj av uas hu ua thaj av Xalahelas.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

- 14 Thiab lawv nrhiav ntsib ib pab neeg, cov uas hu ua cov neeg Xalahelas. Nim no, tau muaj kev zoo siab heev nyob hauv cov neeg Xalahelas; thiab Xalahelas los kuj zoo siab kawg nkaus li thiab, vim yog tus Tswv tau xa cov neeg Mauxiyas nrog cov phiaj tooj dag uas muaj cov Neeg Yudais phau ceev xwm txheej.
- 15 Saib seb, tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tau nrhiav ntsib tias cov neeg Xalahelas tau tawm tim Yeluxalees tuaj thaum lub caij uas Xedekhiyas, vaj ntxwv Yudas teb chaws, tau raug txhom cab mus rau hauv Npanpiloos.
- 16 Thiab lawv tau tsiv nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab tau raug tus Tswv txhais tes coj hla cov dej loj, mus rau hauv thaj av uas Mauxiyas tau nrhiav ntsib lawv; thiab lawv tau nyob ntawd txij li lub caij ntawd los.
- 17 Thiab nyob rau lub caij uas Mauxiyas nrhiav tau lawv, lawv tau rais los huaj vam coob kawg li lawm. Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem tau muaj ntau npluav rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg hnyav heev, thiab tau poob tsam los ntawm ntaj riam ib lub caij dhau ib lub caij; thiab lawv tej lus tau sib txuam tsis zoo tas; thiab lawv tau coj tsis tau tej ceev xwm txheej nrog lawv; thiab lawv tsis lees txog tias muaj tus uas Tsim lawv; thiab Mauxiyas, thiab Mauxiyas cov neeg, kuj tsis muaj peev xwm to taub lawv.
- 18 Tiam sis tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tau ua kom lawv yuav raug qhia nyob hauv nws yam lus. Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau raug qhia nyob hauv Mauxiyas yam lus lawm, Xalahelas tau muab ib zag keeb kwm txog nws tej yawg koob, raws li nws lub cim zeeb; thiab lawv raug muab sau cia, tiam sis tsis yog nyob hauv cov phiaj no.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg Xalahelas, thiab cov neeg Mauxiyas, tau sib sau ua ib ke; thiab Mauxiyas tau raug tsa ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv Mauxiyas lub caij, tau muaj ib lub pob zeb loj muaj kev kos ntawv rau saud raug coj los rau nws; thiab nws tau txhais tej kev kos ntawv ntawd los ntawm lub txiaj ntsim thiab hwj chim ntawm Vajtswv.
- 21 Thiab lawv muab ib zag txog ib tug neeg hu ua Khauli-athumaws, thiab txoj kev luag tua nws cov neeg. Thiab Khauli-athumaws tau raug nrhiav tau los ntawm cov neeg Xalahelas; thiab nws tau nrog lawv nyob tau sij hawm li cuaj lub hlis.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

22 Nws kuj qhia me ntsis lus txog nws tej yawg koob. Thiab nws thawj nkawg niam txiv tau tawm tim tus pej thuam tuaj, thaum lub sij hawm tus Tswv ua rau cov neeg nyias hais nyias ib yam lus; thiab tus Tswv txoj kev txiav txim hnyav tau poob rau saum lawv raws li nws tej kev txiav txim, uas ncaj ncees; thiab lawv tej pob txha tso ua sab ua sua nyob rau hauv thaj av ntuj pem ub.

23 Saib seb, kuv, Amalej, tau yug nyob rau hauv Mauxiyas lub caij; thiab kuv tau nyob pom nws tuag; thiab Npeyamis, nws tus tub, tau los nyob nws qhov chaw kav mus.

24 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau pom, nyob rau hauv vaj ntxwv Npeyamis lub caij, ib npluav rog hnyav heev thiab muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau heev nyob ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas. Tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais tau txais ntau zaus kev tawm tsam yeej lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau caum lawv tawm ntawm thaj av Xalabelas mus.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau pib laus lawm; thiab, tsis muaj ib tug tub ki li, thiab paub tias vaj ntxwv Npeyamis yog ib tus neeg ncaj ncees rau tus Tswv, yog li ntawd, kuv yuav muab cov phiaj no rau nws, ntuas ntsoov kom neeg txhua tus los cuag Vajtswv, Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, thiab ntseeg hauv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab hauv tej kev tshwm sim, thiab hauv cov tim tswv tej kev qhuab qhia, thiab hauv txiaj ntsim ntawm txoj kev hais lwm yam lus, thiab hauv txiaj ntsim ntawm txoj kev txawj txhais lus, thiab nyob hauv txhua txhia yam uas zoo; vim tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas zoo li tsuas yog nws los ntawm tus Tswv los xwb; thiab yam uas phem yeej yog los ntawm tus dab los.

26 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv xav kom nej yuav cia li los cuag Khetos, tus uas yog Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv, thiab los txais nws txoj kev cawm seeg, thiab lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj kev txhiv dim. Muaj tseeb tiag, cia li los cuag nws, thiab muab tag nrho nej tej siab tej ntsws txi pub rau nws, thiab ua kev yoo mov thiab thov Vajtswv tsis txhob tu ncu, thiab tiv kom mus txog thaum kawg; thiab ib yam li tus Tswv muaj txoj sia nyob nej yeej yuav dim xwb.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

- 27 Thiab nim no kuv yuav hais me ntsis txog cov uas tau nce mus rau hauv hav zoov rov qab mus rau thaj av Nifais; vim tau muaj ib co neeg coob heev uas xav tau thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg.
- 28 Yog li ntawd, lawv tau nce mus rau pem tej hav zoov. Thiab lawv tus thawj vim yog ib tug neeg muaj zog thiab muaj hwj chim, thiab ib tug neeg tawv ncauj, yog li ntawd nws tau ua kom muaj ib qho kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv lawv; thiab lawv tau raug tua tuag tag huv tib si li, tsuas tshuav tsib caug leej, nyob hauv hav zoov lawm xwb, thiab lawv tau rov qab los dua rau nram thaj av Xalahelas.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv kuj tau coj lwm cov neeg coob, thiab lawv tau rov mus dua rau hauv hav zoov.
- 30 Thiab kuv, Amalej, muaj ib tug kwv, tus uas kuj tau nrog lawv mus thiab; thiab txij li ntawd los kuv tsis paub txog lawv li lawm. Thiab kuv twb yuav mus pw rau hauv kuv lub qhov ntxa; thiab cov phiaj no los puv lawm. Thiab kuv tsum kuv txoj kev hais lus.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

Maumoos cov Lus

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, npaj tab tom yuav muab phau ceev xwm txheej uas kuv tau ua rau hauv kuv tus tub Maulaunais txhais tes, saib seb kuv tau ua tim khawv rau yuav luag txhua txhia yam kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais.
- 2 Thiab nws yog ntau pua xyoo tom qab Khetos txoj kev nqis los uas kuv yuav muab cov ceev xwm txheej no rau hauv kuv tus tub txhais tes; thiab kuv xav tias nws yuav ua tim khawv tag nrho txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg. Tiam sis thov Vajtswv pub kom nws yuav cawm tau lawv, xwv kom nws yuav sau tej yam txog lawv, thiab tej yam txog Khetos, xwv kom tej zaum muaj ib hnub qhov ntawd yuav pab tau lawv.
- 3 Thiab nim no, kuv hais tej yam txog tej uas kuv tau sau lawm; vim tom qab uas kuv tau sau cov ntsiab lus tawm ntawm Nifais cov phiaj, nqis mus txog tus vaj ntxwv Npeyamis no txoj kev kav teb kav chaw, tus uas Amalej tau hais txog, kuv tau tshawb nyob hauv cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab rau hauv kuv txhais tes, thiab kuv tau nrhiav pom cov phiaj no, uas ntim tau zaj me no uas hais txog cov yaj saub, txij li Yakhauj nqis los mus txog tus vaj ntxwv Npeyamis no txoj kev kav teb kav chaw, thiab kuj ntim Nifais ntau cov lus thiab.
- 4 Thiab tej uas nyob rau saum cov phiaj no ua rau kuv zoo siab, vim yog tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog Khetos txoj kev nqis los; thiab kuv tej yawg koob tau paub tias ntau yam ntawd twb tau muaj tag lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj paub tias ntau npaum li tej uas tau qhia yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog peb nqis los txog lub sij hawm no tau muaj tag lawm thiab, thiab ntau npaum li uas yuav muaj mus lawm yav tom ntej yeej yuav tsum muaj los tseeb tiag—
- 5 Yog li ntawd, kuv tau xaiv tej yam no, los ua kom kuv phau ceev xwm txheej tag rau saum lawv, kuv phau ceev xwm txheej uas seem tshuav kuv yuav muab tawm ntawm Nifais cov phiaj mus; thiab kuv tsis muaj peev xwm sau puas tsav yam txog kuv cov neeg.

The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

- 6 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav coj cov phiaj no, uas ntim tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tej kev tshwm sim, thiab muab lawv cia nrog kuv phau ceev xwm txheej uas seem tshuav, vim lawv yog cov uas muaj nuj nqis rau kuv; thiab kuv paub lawv yeej yuav muaj nuj nqis rau kuv cov kwv tij.
- 7 Thiab kuv ua li no rau ib lus ntsiab tseem ceeb; vim li no nws tau ntxhi rau kuv, raws li tej hauj lwm ntawm tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv. Thiab nim no, kuv tsis paub txhua txhia yam; tiam sis tus Tswv paub ib puas yam tsav tag nrho uas yuav muaj los; yog li ntawd, nws ua hauj lwm nyob hauv kuv kom ua raws li nws lub siab xav.
- 8 Thiab kuv txoj kev thov rau Vajtswv yog ntsig txog kuv cov kwv tij, xwv kom lawv yuav rov qab los paub txog Vajtswv ib zaug dua, muaj tseeb tiag, txog Khetos txoj kev txhiv dim; xwv kom lawv yuav rov qab ua ib cov neeg ntxim nyiam ib zaug dua.
- 9 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, ua mus kom tiav kuv phau ceev xwm txheej, uas kuv muab ntawm Nifais cov phiaj; thiab kuv ua nws raws li txoj kev paub thiab txoj kev to taub uas Vajtswv tau muab rau kuv.
- 10 Yog li ntawd, tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amalej tau muab cov phiaj no rau vaj ntxwv Npeyamis txhais tes lawm, nws tau coj lawv thiab muab lawv cia nrog lwm cov phiaj, uas muaj tej ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab cev nqis los ntawm tej vaj ntxwv, ib tiam neeg dhau rau ib tiam neeg los txog rau lub sij hawm vaj ntxwv Npeyamis.
- 11 Thiab lawv tau raug muab cev nqis los ntawm vaj ntxwv Npeyamis, ib tiam neeg los rau ib tiam neeg los txog thaum uas lawv tau poob los rau hauv kuv tes. Thiab kuv, Maumoos, thov rau Vajtswv kom lawv yuav raug ceev tseg txij li lub sij hawm no mus lawm yav tom ntej. Thiab kuv paub tias lawv yeej yuav raug ceev tseg; vim muaj tej yam tseem ceeb heev tau muab sau rau saum lawv, tawm ntawm tej uas kuv cov neeg thiab lawv tej kwv tij yuav raug txiav txim nyob rau hnuv tseem ceeb thiab hnuv kawg, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus uas tau sau tseg lawm.
- 12 Thiab nim no, hais txog tus vaj ntxwv Npeyamis no—nws tau muaj tej yam kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv nws cov neeg.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog kuj tau nqis tawm pem thaj av Nifais tuaj, ua rog tawm tsam nws cov neeg. Tiam sis saib seb, vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau sau nws tej tub rog los ua ib ke, thiab nws tau sawv tawm tsam lawv; thiab nws tau tiv thaiv nrog lub dag lub zog ntawm nws tus kheej txhais caj npab, nrog Lanpas rab ntaj.
- 14 Thiab nyob hauv lub zog ntawm tus Tswv lawv tau tiv thaiv tawm tsam lawv tej yeeb ncuab, mus txog thaum uas lawv tua tau ntau txhiab leej cov Neeg Lamas. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tiv thaiv tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas mus txog thaum uas lawv tau raws lawv tawm ntawm txhua txhia thaj av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau muaj ntau tus Khetos cuav, thiab lawv tej qhov ncauj tau raug kaw, thiab lawv tau raug txim raws li lawv tej kev muaj txim;
- 16 Thiab tom qab uas tau muaj cov yaj saub cuav, thiab cov neeg qhuab qhia cuav thiab tej xib hwb cuav nyob hauv cov neeg, thiab tag nrho tej no tau raug txim raws li lawv tej kev muaj txim; thiab tom qab uas tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntau thiab tej kev tawg pab tawg pawg ntau rau cov Neeg Lamas, saib seb, tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Npeyamis, nrog kev pab los ntawm cov yaj saub dawb huv cov uas nyob nrog nws cov neeg—
- 17 Vim saib seb, vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau yog ib tug neeg dawb huv, thiab nws tau kav nws cov neeg nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees; thiab tau muaj ntau tus neeg dawb huv nyob hauv thaj av, thiab lawv tau hais Vajtswv txoj lus nrog hwj chim thiab nrog kev nrog cai; thiab lawv tau siv ntau yam lus ntse vim yog cov neeg txoj kev tawv ncauj—
- 18 Yog li ntawd, nrog txoj kev pab ntawm cov no, vaj ntxwv Npeyamis, los ntawm txoj kev ua hauj lwm nrog tag nrho lub dag lub zog ntawm nws lub cev thiab tej peev xwm ntawm nws lub siab tag nrho, thiab cov yaj saub los kuj ib yam, tau rov tsim tau txoj kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv thaj av ib zaug dua.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

Mauxiyas Phau Ntawv

Mauxiyas 1

- 1 Thiab nim no tsis tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntxiv nyob thoob plaws hauv thaj av Xalabelas, nyob thoob plaws cov neeg uas yog vaj ntxwv Npeyamis li, xws li ntawd vaj ntxwv Npeyamis thiaj tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuva nyob tag nrho hauv nws lub neej uas seem tshuav.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau muaj peb leeg tub; thiab nws tau hu lawv cov npe ua Mauxiyas, thiab Hilolas, thiab Hilamas. Thiab nws tau kom tias lawv yuav tsum raug qhia tag nrho txog lawv tej yawg koob yam lus hais, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav rais los mus ua cov neeg to taub; thiab xwv kom lawv yuav paub txog tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau hais los ntawm lawv cov yawg koob tej qhov ncauj, uas tau coj los rau lawv los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes.
- 3 Thiab nws kuj tau qhia lawv txog cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, hais tias: Kuv cov tub, kuv xav kom nej nco ntsoov tias yog tsis muaj cov phiaj no, uas muaj cov ceev xwm txheej no thiab cov lus txib no, ces ntshe peb twb tau txom nyem lawm nyob hauv txoj kev tsis paub txog, lub sij hawm no los, yeej tsis paub txog Vajtswv tej txuj ci uas neeg tsis paub txog.
- 4 Vim nws muaj tsis tau tias peb txiv, Lihais, yuav muaj cuab kav nco tau tag nrho tej yam no, uas tau qhia lawv rau nws cov me nyuam, tsuas yog los ntawm txoj kev pab ntawm cov phiaj no xwb; vim nws tau raug qhia nyob hauv cov neeg Iyiv yam lus yog li ntawd nws muaj peev xwm nyeem tau cov ntawv no, thiab qhia lawv rau nws cov me nyuam, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav muaj peev xwm qhia tej ntawd rau lawv cov me nyuam, thiab ua tau Vajtswv tej lus txib tiav, nqis los txog ntua lub sij hawm no.

The Book of Mosiah

Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

5 Kuv hais rau nej, kuv cov mi tub es, yog tsis muaj tej no, uas tau muab ceev thiab tshwj tseg los ntawm Vajtswv txhais tes, xwv kom peb yuav tau nyeem thiab to taub txog nws tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog, thiab muaj nraim nws tej lus txib nyob ntawm peb tej qhov muag, ces peb tej yawg koob los ntshe twb tso kev ntseeg tseg lawm, thiab peb yuav tau zoo li peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, cov uas tsis paub ib yam dab tsi txog tej yam no li, los sis twb yuav tsis ntseeg tej ntawd thaum lawv raug qhia txog tej ntawd, vim yog lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, uas yog cov tsis yog.

6 Au kuv cov mi tub es, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov tias tej lus hais no muaj tseeb, thiab cov ceev xwm txheej no los kuj muaj tseeb. Thiab saib seb, thiab Nifais cov phiaj, uas muaj cov ceev xwm txheej thiab peb cov yawg koob tej lus hais txij li lub sij hawm lawv tau ncaim Yeluxalees los txog nim no, thiab lawv yeej muaj tseeb; thiab peb yeej paub tau txog lawv txoj kev tseeb vim peb muaj lawv nyob ntawm peb tej qhov muag.

7 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi tub es, kuv xav kom nej yuav nco ntsoov mob siab nrhiav lawv, xwv kom qhov ntawd yuav pab tau nej; thiab kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum koj Vajtswv tej lus txib, xwv kom nej yuav huaj vam nyob hauv thaj av raws li cov lus cog tseg uas tus Tswv tau cog rau peb cov yawg koob lawm.

8 Thiab vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau qhia ntau yam ntxiv rau nws cov tub, uas tsis tau muab sau rau hauv phau ntawv no.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau qhia nws cov tub tas lawm, ces nws tau laus lawm, thiab nws pom tias tsis ntev no nws yuav tsum mus rau txoj kev uas tag nrho neeg ntiaj teb mus; yog li ntawd, nws tau xav tias tsim nyog nws yuav tsum muab lub teb chaws tso rau nws ib tug tub.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

- 10 Yog li ntawd, nws tau kom koj Mauxiyas los rau nws; thiab cov lus no yog cov uas nws tau hais rau Mauxiyas, hais tias: Kuv tus mi tub, kuv xav kom koj tshaj tawm thoob plaws rau thaj av no thoob plaws rau cov neeg no, los sis cov neeg Xalahelas, thiab Mauxiyas cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av, kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav sib sau tuaj ua ib ke; vim tag kis kuv yuav tshaj rau kuv cov neeg no tawm ntawm kuv tus kheej lub qhov ncauj tias koj yog ib tug vaj ntxwv thiab ib tug kav saum cov neeg no, cov uas tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv tau muab rau wb.
- 11 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv yuav muab ib lub npe rau cov neeg no, tias los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav txawv dhau tag nrho cov neeg uas tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv tau koj tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj; thiab kuv ua li no vim lawv tau ua ib co neeg uas rau siab koj tus Tswv tej lus txib.
- 12 Thiab kuv muab ib lub npe rau lawv uas yuav tsis raug rho tawm ib zaug li, tsuas ntshai yog los ntawm txoj kev txog txhaum xwb.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv hais rau koj ntxiv dua, tias yog tus Tswv cov neeg uas tau koob hmoov npluas mias no yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txog txhaum, thiab rais los mus ua ib co neeg phem thiab ib co neeg deev luag poj luag txiv, ces tus Tswv yuav muab lawv tshem tawm, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav rais los tsis muaj zog zoo li lawv cov kwv tij; thiab nws yuav tsum kwm lawv ntxiv los ntawm nws lub hwj chim uas piv tsis tau thiab zoo kawg nkaus li uas nws tau tsum kwm peb tej yawg koob los txog lub sij hawm no.
- 14 Vim kuv hais rau koj tias, yog nws tsis tau ncav nws txhais caj npab rau hauv txoj kev tsum kwm peb tej yawg koob lawv yuav tsum tau poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes, thiab rais los ua cov neeg raug tsim ntawm lawv txoj kev ntxub.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamias tau hais cov lus no rau nws tus tub tas lawm, ces nws tau muab hauj lwm saib xyuas tag nrho txhua yam dej num ntawm lub teb chaws rau nws.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

16 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd xwb, nws kuj tau muab hauj lwm saib xyuas cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog rau nws; thiab Nifais cov phiaj thiab; thiab, Lanpas rab ntaj thiab, thiab lub pob los sis lub coj kev, uas tau coj peb tej yawg koob dhau hauv hav zoov, uas tus Tswv txhais tes tau npaj xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav raug coj, txhua txhia tus raws li txoj kev xyuam xim mloog lus thiab rau siab uas lawv tau muab rau nws.

17 Yog li ntawd, thaum lawv tsis muaj kev ntseeg lawv tsis tau huaj vam los sis vam meej nyob hauv lawv txoj kev tsiv, tiam sis lawv tau raug tav rov qab, thiab tau coj Vajtsv txoj kev tsis zoo los rau saum lawv; thiab yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tau raug kev tshaib kev nqhis thiab tej kev txom nyem mob heev, tau txhib lawv hauv txoj kev nco txog lawv tej hauj lwm.

18 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tau mus thiab tau ua li nws txiv tau kom nws ua, thiab tau tshaj tawm rau tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav sib sau tuaj ua ke, mus rau pem lub tuam tsev mus mloog tej lus uas nws txiv yuav hais rau lawv.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

Mauxiyas 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas Mauxiyas tau ua tiav li nws txiv tau txib nws ua lawm, thiab tau tshaj tawm thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av, xwv kom cov neeg thoob plaws hauv thaj av sib sau tuaj ua ke, kom lawv yuav mus lawm pem lub tuam tsev mus mloog tej lus uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis yuav hais rau lawv.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj ib pab neeg coob heev, twb coob heev li ces lawv txawm tsis suav lawv; vim lawv tau huaj vam heev kawg li thiab tau muaj coob heev nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 3 Thiab lawv kuj tau coj lawv tej tsiaj txhu thawj cov me nyuam, xwv kom lawv yuav coj tuaj ua tau kev cai txi thiab hlawv tej khoom txi raws li Mauxes txoj kev cai;
- 4 Thiab xwv kom lawv yuav tau ua tsaug rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, tus uas tau coj lawv tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees, thiab tus uas tau cawm lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes, thiab tau tsa tej neeg ncaj ncees los ua lawv tej xib hwb, thiab ib tug neeg ncaj ncees los ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv thiab, tus uas tau tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tus uas tau qhia lawv coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, xwv kom lawv yuav zoo siab thiab muaj kev hlub puv npo rau Vajtswv thiab tib neeg sawv daws.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau tuaj txog ntawm lub tuam tsev lawm, lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub rau ib puag ncig, txhua tus txiv neej raws li nws tsev neeg, uas muaj nws tus poj niam, thiab nws tej tub, thiab nws tej ntxhais, thiab lawv tej tub, thiab lawv tej ntxhais, txij li tus hlob nqis mus rau tus yau, txhua tsev neeg nyob nrug lwm tsev neeg.
- 6 Thiab lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub ncig lub tuam tsev, txhua tus txiv neej muab nws lub qhov rooj tsev pheb suab ntaub tig rau lub tuam tsev, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav nyob hauv lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub thiab hnov tej lus uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis yuav hais rau lawv;

Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

7 Vim cov neeg coob heev li uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tsis muaj cuab kav tuaj tau saum lub tuam tsev tej ntsa loog qhia lawv, yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau kom tsa ib tug pej thuam, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nws cov neeg yuav hnov tej lus uas nws yuav hais rau lawv.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tuaj saum tus pej thuam pib hais lus rau nws cov neeg; thiab lawv ib txhia tsis tau hnov nws cov lus vim yog qhov coob heev ntawm cov neeg; yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau kom muab cov lus uas nws tau hais lawm sau thiab xa mus rau cov uas tsis hnov nws lub suab, xwv kom lawv yuav tau txais nws cov lus thiab.

9 Thiab cov no yog tej lus uas nws tau hais thiab tau kom muab sau cia, hais tias: Kuv cov mi kwv tij, tag nrho nej cov uas tau sib sau tuaj ua ke, nej cov uas hnov tau kuv tej lus uas kuv yuav hais rau nej hnov no; vim kuv tsis tau txib nej tuaj ntawm no tuaj ua li tsis muaj nuj nqis rau tej lus uas kuv yuav hais, tiam sis kom nej yuav cuab pob ntseg rau kuv, thiab cuab nej tej pob ntseg xwv kom nej yuav hnov, thiab qhib nej tej siab tej ntsws xwv kom nej yuav to taub, thiab qhib nej tej hlwb xwv kom Vajtswv tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog yuav qhib los rau nej pom.

10 Kuv tsis tau txib kom nej tuaj ntawm no xwv kom nej yuav ntshai kuv, los sis xwv kom nej yuav xav tias kuv tus kheej yog ib tug uas zoo dua li ib tug neeg uas txawj ploj txawj tuag.

11 Tiam sis kuv zoo tib yam li nej, uas raug ywj rau tag nrho tej kev tsis muaj peev xwm nyob hauv lub cev thiab nruab siab; tiam sis kuv tau raug cov neeg no xaiv, thiab tau raug kuv txiv tsa, thiab raug tus Tswv txhais tes kam tias kuv yuav tsum ua tus uas kav thiab ua ib tug vaj ntxwv rau saum cov neeg no; thiab tau raug ceev thiab tsom kwm los ntawm nws lub hwj chim uas tsis muaj dab tsi piv tau, los pab nej kom tag nrho lub siab lub ntsws, lub plab lub plawv thiab lub dag lub zog uas tus Tswv tau muab rau kuv.

12 Kuv hais rau nej tias ib yam li kuv tau kam muab kuv lub neej ua hauj lwm rau nej, twb los txog lub sij hawm no, thiab tsis tau nrhiav kub los sis nyiaj los sis ib yam dab tsi uas yog nyiaj txiag los ntawm nej li.

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

- 13 Thiab kuv tsis tau cia kom nej raug muab kaw rau hauv tsev raug txim uas tsaus ntuj nti, los sis cia kom nej ib leeg ua ib leeg qhev, los sis cia kom nej tua neeg, los sis ua lim hiam, los sis ua tub sab tub nyiag, los sis deev luag poj luag txiv; thiab kuv twb tsis tau cia kom nej ua txhaum ib yam kev phem dab tsi li, thiab tau qhia kom nej yuav coj tus Tswv tej lus txib, nyob tag nrho ib puas tsav yam uas nws tau txib nej—
- 14 Thiab, kuv tus kheel kiag, twb tau siv kuv txhais tes kiag los ua hauj lwm xwv kom kuv yuav pab tau nej, thiab xwv kom nej yuav tsis raug sau se hnyav, thiab xwv kom yuav tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi los rau saum nej uas tau ua rau nej tiv tsis taus—thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas kuv tau hais los no, nej sawv daws yog cov ua tim khawv hnuv no.
- 15 Tiam sis, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv tsis tau ua tej yam no xwv kom kuv yuav tau ntsej muag, thiab kuv tsis qhia tej yam no xwv kom los ntawm tej ntawd kuv yuav tau ntxo nej; tiam sis kuv qhia nej tej yam no xwv kom nej yuav paub tias kuv muaj cuab kav teb tau ib qho kev paub tseeb rau Vajtswv hnuv no.
- 16 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias vim kuv tau hais rau nej tias kuv tau siv kuv lub neej ua hauj lwm rau nej, kuv tsis xav tau ntsej muag, vim kuv tsuas tau ua hauj lwm rau Vajtswv xwb.
- 17 Thiab saib seb, kuv qhia nej tej yam no xwv kom nej yuav kawm tau kev txawj ntse; xwv kom nej yuav kawm tau tias thaum nej ua hauj lwm rau nej tej neeg nruab ze ces nej tsuas ua hauj lwm rau nej tus Vajtswv xwb.
- 18 Saib seb, nej tau hu kuv ua nej tus vaj ntxwv; thiab yog tias kuv, tus uas nej hu ua nej tus vaj ntxwv, ua hauj lwm pab nej, ces puas tsim nyog nej ib leeg ua hauj lwm pab ib leeg thiab?
- 19 Thiab kuj saib seb, yog tias kuv, tus uas nej hu ua nej tus vaj ntxwv, uas tau siv nws lub neej ua hauj lwm pab nej, thiab tseem tau ua hauj lwm pab Vajtswv, tau tsim nyog txais kev ua tsaug los ntawm nej, Au nej haj yam tsim nyog nej yuav tsum ua nej tus Vaj Ntxwv saum ntuj ceeb tsheej tsaug!
- 20 Kuv hais rau nej, kuv cov mi kwv tij, hais tias yog nej yuav los ua tsaug thiab qhuas kom tag nrho tej uas nej tej ntsuj plig muaj hwj chim tuav, rau Vajtswv tus uas tau tsim nej, thiab tau ceev thiab tau tsum kwv nej, thiab tau ua kom nej zoo siab, thiab tau pub kom nej ib leeg yuav nrog ib leeg nyob muaj kev thaj yeeb—

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

- 21 Kuv hais rau nej tias yog nej yuav ua hauj lwm rau nws tus uas tau tsim nej txij li thaum chiv keeb los, thiab tsom kwm nej ib hnub dhau ib hnub, qiv txoj pa rau nej, xwv kom nej yuav cial sia thiab mus taus ub taus no thiab ua tau raws li nej lub siab xav, thiab twb tau txhawb nqa nej ib ntus dhau ib ntus—kuv hais tias, txawm yog nej yuav ua hauj lwm rau nws kom tag nrho nej tej siab huv tib si los nej tseem tsuas yog cov tub qhe tsis muaj nqis.
- 22 Thiab saib seb, ib puas tsav yam uas nws xav kom nej ua tsuas yog coj nws tej lus txib xwb; thiab nws tau cog lus rau nej tias yog nej yuav coj nws tej lus txib nej yuav huaj vam nyob rau hauv thaj av; thiab nws tsis hloov tej uas nws tau hais lawm ib zaug li; yog li ntawd, yog nej coj nws tej lus txib nws yeej yuav foom koob hmoov rau nej thiab ua kom nej vam meej.
- 23 Thiab nim no, ntawm qhov thib ib, nws tau tsim nej, thiab pub nej txoj sia rau nej, es nej thiaj tshuav nws nqi.
- 24 Thiab thib ob, nws tsuas xav kom nej yuav ua raws li nws tau txib nej; vim yog tias nej ua li ntawd, nws yuav foom koob hmoov kiag rau nej; thiab yog li ntawd nws tau them rau nej lawm. Thiab nej tseem tshuav nws nqi, thiab yeej tshuav, thiab yuav tshuav, mus ib txhiab thiab ib txhis li; yog li ntawd, nej yuav muaj plhus rau yam dab tsi?
- 25 Thiab nim no kuv nug tias, nej puas hais tau dab tsi ywj siab txog nej tus kheej? Kuv teb nej tias, Tsis tau. Nej twb tsis muaj cuab kav hais tias nej muaj nuj nqis dua li tej hmoov av hauv pem teb; li ntawd los nej tau raug tsim los ntawm tej hmoov av ntawm lub ntiaj teb; tiam sis saib seb, nws kuj yog tus uas tau tsim nej li thiab.
- 26 Thiab kuv, kuv kiag, tus uas nej hu ua nej tus vaj ntxwv, twb tsis zoo dua nej sawv daws; vim kuv kuj yog los ntawm tej hmoov av los thiab. Thiab nej pom tias kuv los laus lawm, thiab twb yuav tso lub cev uas txawj ploj txawj tuag no rov mus rau nws niam av.
- 27 Yog li ntawd, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej tias kuv tau pab nej, ua lub neej nrog ib txoj kev paub tseeb rau Vajtswv, yog li ntawd lub sij hawm no kuv tau kom nej sib sau tuaj ua ke, xwv kom kuv yuav tsis raug liam, thiab kom nej cov ntshav yuav tsis los rau saum kuv, thaum kuv yuav los sawv raug txiav txim ntawm Vajtswv rau tej uas nws tau txib kuv ntsig txog nej.

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

28 Kuv hais rau nej tias kuv tau kom nej tuaj sib sau ua ke xwv kom kuv yuav tau ntxuav kuv tej ris tsho tawm ntawm nej cov ntshav, nyob rau lub caij no thaum kuv twb yuav nqis mus rau hauv kuv lub qhov ntxa, xwv kom kuv yuav nqis mus ntawm kev thaj yeeb, thiab kom kuv tus ntsuj plig uas tsis txawj ploj tsis txawj tuag yuav tau koom nrog pab hu nkauj uas nyob saum ub hu nkauj qhuas txog Vajtswv tus uas ncaj ncees.

29 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv hais rau nej tias kuv tau kom nej sib sau tuaj ua ib ke, xwv kom kuv yuav tau tshaj tawm rau nej tias kuv ua tsis taus nej tus xib hwb thiab tus vaj ntxwv ntxiv lawm;

30 Vim lub sij hawm no los, kuv lub cev twb tshee hnyo heev kawg li rau thaum uas kuv sim hais lus rau nej; tiam sis tus Tswv Vajtswv tau txhawb nqa kuv, thiab tau cia kuv hais lus rau nej, thiab tau txib kom kuv yuav tsum tshaj tawm rau nej hnuv no, tias kuv tus tub Mauxiyas yog ib tug vaj ntxwv thiab ib tug saib xyuas kav nej.

31 Thiab nim no, kuv cov mi kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum ua li nej tau ua los txog nim no. Ib yam li nej tau coj kuv tej lus txib, thiab kuj coj kuv txiv tej lus txib, thiab tau huaj vam, thiab tau raug ceev tsis tau poob mus rau nej tej yeeb ncuab tes, twb ib yam nkaus yog tias nej yuav coj kuv tus tub tej lus txib, los sis Vajtswv tej lus txib uas yuav muab rau nej los ntawm nws, nej yuav huaj vam nyob hauv thaj av, thiab nej tej yeeb ncuab yuav tsis muaj hwj chim dab tsi rau saum nej hlo li.

32 Tiam sis, Au kuv cov neeg es, xyuam xim mog ntshai tsam ho muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv nej, thiab nej ho xaiv mus mloog tus ntsuj plig phem lus, tus uas kuv txiv Mauxiyas tau hais txog.

33 Vim saib seb, muaj ib qho kev txom nyem uas tau muab foom rau nws tus uas xaiv mus mloog tus ntsuj plig ntawd lus; vim yog nws xaiv mus mloog nws lus, thiab nyob thiab tuag hauv nws tej kev txhaum, tib yam li nws rov haus kev puas tsuaj rau nws tus kheej; vim nws yuav tau txais txoj kev rau txim uas nyob mus ib txhis los ua nws nqi zog, tau ua txhaum Vajtswv txoj kev cai tsis raws li nws txoj kev paub.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

- 34 Kuv hais rau nej, tias tsis muaj ib tug twg uas nyob hauv nej, tsuas yog tshuav nej tej me nyuam me uas tsis tau qhia txog tej yam no xwb, leej twg tsis tau paub tias nej tshuav Leej Txiv saum ntuj ceeb tsheej nqis dab tsi mus ib txhis li, muab tag nrho tej uas nej muaj thiab nej yog huv tib si rau nws; thiab kuj raug qhia txog cov ceev xwm txheej uas muaj tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas cov yaj saub dawb huv tau hais lawm, twb nqis los txog lub sij hawm uas peb txiv, Lihais, tau ncaim Yeluxalees;
- 35 Thiab, tag nrho ib puas tsav yam uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais los txog niaj hnuv nim no thiab. Thiab saib seb, lawv kuj tau hais tej uas tus Tswv tau txib kom lawv hais; yog li ntawd, lawv thiaj yog tej uas ncaj thiab tseeb.
- 36 Thiab nim no, kuv hais rau nej, kuv cov mi kwv tij, tias tom qab uas nej tau paub thiab tau raug qhia tej yam no huv tib si lawm, yog tias nej yuav ua txhaum thiab ua tsis raws li tej uas tau hais lawm, ces nej rho nej tus kheej tawm ntawm tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig, kom nws yuav tsis muaj chaw nyob hauv nej los koj nej nyob hauv tej kev txawj ntse xwv kom nej yuav tau koob hmoov, vam meej, thiab raug tsom kwm—
- 37 Kuv hais rau nej, tias tus neeg uas ua li no, tib yam nkaus li tab meeg sawv tawm tsam Vajtswv; yog li ntawd nws xaiv mloog tus ntsuj plig phem lus, thiab rais los mus ua ib tug yeeb ncuab rau tag nrho tej uas ncaj ncees huv tib si; yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tsis muaj chaw nyob hauv nws, vim nws tsis nyob hauv tej tuam tsev uas tsis dawb huv.
- 38 Yog li ntawd yog tus neeg ntawd tsis hloov siab lees txim, thiab nyob thiab tuag li ib tug yeeb ncuab rau Vajtswv, ces txoj kev tu plaub ntug ncaj ncees saum ntuj yuav tsa kom nws tus ntsuj plig uas tsis txawj tuag los paub tseeb txog nws txoj kev txhaum, uas ua kom nws txav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag, thiab ua nws lub hauv siab muaj kev txhaum puv npo, thiab kev mob kev nkeeg, thiab kev nyuaj siab ntshov plawv, uas zoo li ib lub cub tawg ua tsis txawj tuag, uas muaj nplaim sawv mus ib txhiab thiab ib txhis li.
- 39 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej, tias kev zam txim tsis muaj rau tus neeg ntawd; yog li ntawd nws qhov txim kawg yog tiv txoj kev tsim txom uas tsis muaj qhov kawg ib zaug li.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

40 Au, tag nrho nej cov neeg laus huv tib si es, thiab nej cov neeg hluas, thiab nej cov me nyuam me uas to taub kuv tej lus, vim kuv tau hais yooj yim heev rau nej xwv kom nej yuav to taub, kuv thov Vajtsv kom nej tsim los rau txoj kev nco txog qhov txaus ntshai heev ntawm cov uas tau poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum.

41 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej yuav xav txog qhov tau koob hmoov thiab zoo siab ntawm cov uas koj Vajtsv tej lus txib. Vim saib seb, lawv tau koob hmoov rau txhua txhia yam, tsis hais sab cev nqaij daim tawv los sis sab ntsuj plig; thiab yog lawv yuav tuav rawv kev ntseeg mus kom txog thaum kawg lawv yuav raug txais mus rau hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav nrog Vajtsv nyob hauv qhov chaw uas muaj kev zoo siab uas tsis muaj qhov kawg li. Au nco ntsoov mog, nco ntsoov tias tej no yeej muaj tseeb tiag; vim tus Tswv Vajtsv tau hais li.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

Mauxiyas 3

- 1 Thiab ntxiv kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej mloog, vim kuv muaj qee yam ntxiv hais rau nej; vim saib seb, kuv muaj tej yam qhia rau nej txog tej uas yuav muaj los.
- 2 Thiab tej yam uas kuv yuav qhia nej tau ua rau kuv paub los ntawm Vajtswv ib tug tim tswv. Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Sawv; thiab kuv tau tsim, thiab pom nws sawv ntsug ntawm kuv xub ntiag.
- 3 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Sawv, thiab mloog cov lus uas kuv yuav qhia koj; vim saib seb, kuv los qhia txoj moo zoo ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab heev li rau koj.
- 4 Vim tus Tswv tau hnov koj tej lus thov, thiab tau ntsuas koj txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab tau xa kuv los tshaj rau koj kom koj yuav zoo zoo siab; thiab kom koj yuav tshaj rau koj cov neeg, kom lawv yuav muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo thiab.
- 5 Vim saib seb, lub sij hawm yuav los, thiab tshuav ncuat sis deb lawm, tus uas muaj hwj chim, tus Tswv uas muaj hwj chim loj tshaj plaws uas kav, tus uas tau nyob, thiab nyob ib txhiab ib txhis mus rau ib txhiab ib txhis, yuav nqis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los nrog noob neej nyob, thiab yuav los nyob hauv ib lub tsev av, thiab yuav tawm mus xyuas tib neeg, ua tej txuj ci loj uas tseem ceeb, ib yam li kho tej neeg muaj mob, tsa tej neeg tuag, ua kom tej neeg ceg tawv mus taus kev, cov neeg dig muag lawv rov txais pom kev, thiab cov neeg lag ntseg rov hnov lus, thiab kho txhua yam kab mob kev nkeeg.
- 6 Thiab nws yuav ntiab tej dab tawm, los sis tej ntsuj plig phem uas nyob hauv tib neeg tej siab.
- 7 Thiab xyuas seb, nws yuav raug tej kev dag ntxias, thiab kev mob ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv, kev tshaib, kev nqhis, thiab kev sab lim, twb tshaj dua li neeg yuav nyiaj taus, tsuas tshuav qhov tuag xwb; vim saib seb, ntshav tawm hauv txhua lub qho hws los, nws txoj kev txom nyem rau nws cov neeg tej kev phem thiab kev qias yuav hnyav heev.
- 8 Thiab nws yuav hu ua Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv tus Tub, lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb Leej Txiv, Tus Tsim tag nrho ib puas tsav yam txij puag thaum chiv keeb los; thiab nws niam yuav hu ua Maivliag.

Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 Thiab xyuas seb, nws yuav los rau nws cov neeg, xwv kom txoj kev cawm seeg yuav los tau rau noob neej los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg hauv nws lub npe; thiab tom qab ib puas tsav yam li no los lawv tsuas xav tias nws yog ib tug txiv neej xwb, thiab hais tias nws muaj dab, thiab yuav nplawm nws, thiab yuav muab nws ntsia rau saum ntoo khaub lig.
- 10 Thiab hnuv peb nws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; thiab saib seb, nws sawv txiav txim rau lub ntiaj teb; thiab saib seb, tau ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no xwv kom ib txoj kev txiav txim ncaj ncees yuav muaj los tau rau noob neej tej me nyuam.
- 11 Vim saib seb, thiab nws cov ntshav kuj theej rau tej kev txog txhaum ntawm cov uas tau poob vim Adas txoj kev txhaum, cov uas tau tuag lawm es tsis paub Vajtswv lub siab nyiam txog lawv, los sis cov uas tau ua txhaum tsis paub tog twg.
- 12 Tiam sis kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas paub tias nws tawm tsam rau Vajtswv! Vim txoj kev cawm seeg yuav tsis los rau ib tug uas ua li ntawd tsuas yog dhau los ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg hauv tus Tswv Yexus Khetos xwb.
- 13 Thiab tus Tswv Vajtswv tau xa nws tej yaj saub dawb huv los rau tag nrho noob neej huv tib si, los tshaj tej yam no rau txhua xeeb neeg, txhua haiv neeg, thiab txhua yam lus, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd cov uas yuav ntseeg tias Khetos yuav los, cov ntawd yuav tau txais kev zam txim rau lawv tej kev txog txhaum, thiab yuav zoo siab nrog txoj kev zoo siab heev kawg li, twb zoo tib yam li nws tau los nrog lawv nyob lawm.
- 14 Tiam sis tus Tswv Vajtswv tau pom tias nws cov neeg yog ib co neeg tawv ncauj, thiab nws tau tsa ib txoj kev cai rau lawv, uas yog Mauxes txoj kev cai.
- 15 Thiab ntau lub cim, thiab ntau yam uas xav tsis thoob, thiab ntau hom cim, thiab ntau yam piv txwv uas nws tau ua rau lawv pom, txog nws txoj kev nqis los; thiab tej yaj saub dawb huv los kuj tau qhia rau lawv txog nws txoj kev nqis los thiab; thiab lawv tseem tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv, thiab tsis to taub tias Mauxes txoj kev cai tsis muaj tus qab hau dab tsi tsuas yog los ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm nws cov ntshav xwb.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

- 16 Thiab txawm yog tias tej me nyuam yaus muaj peev xwm ua tau txhaum los lawv yuav tsis raug cawm dim; tiam sis kuv hais rau koj tias lawv tau koob hmoov; vim saib seb, vim yog Adas, los sis los ntawm kev hauv lub ntiaj teb, lawv poob, twb yog li ntawd Khetos cov ntshav theej rau lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 17 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv hais rau koj, tias yuav tsis muaj dua lwm lub npe los sis lwm txoj kev los sis lwm hom cuab yeej uas txoj kev cawm seeg yuav los tau rau noob neej, tsuas yog nyob hauv thiab dhau los ntawm Khetos lub npe, tus Tswv uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj tshaj plaws xwb.
- 18 Vim saib seb nws txiav txim, thiab nws txoj kev txiav txim yeej ncaj; thiab tus me nyuam mos yuav tsis piam sij yog nws tuag thaum tseem mos liab; tiam sis tej tib neeg rov haus kev puas tsuaj rau lawv tus kheej tsuas yog lawv yuav txo hwj chim thiab rais los mus ua li tej me nyuam yaus xwb, thiab ntseeg tias txoj kev cawm seeg tau los, thiab tab tom los, thiab yuav los, nyob hauv thiab los ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm Khetos, tus Tswv uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj Tshaj Plaws cov ntshav.
- 19 Vim tus neeg ntiaj teb yog ib tug yeeb ncuab rau Vajtswv, thiab tau yog txij li thaum Adas poob los lawm, thiab yuav yog, mus ib txhiab thiab ib txhis, tsuas yog nws zwm rau tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tej kev tshoov siab xwb, thiab tso tus neeg ntiaj teb tseg thiab los ua ib tug neeg tshiab dawb huv dhau los ntawm tus Tswv Khetos txoj kev theej txhoj, thiab rais los mus ua li ib tug me nyuam yaus, mloog lus, siab dawb siab zoo, txo hwj chim, ua siab ntev, muaj kev hluv puv npo, txaus siab ua ib puas tsav yam uas tus Tswv pom tsim nyog kom nws ua, ib yam nkaus li ib tug me nyuam yaus txaus siab rau nws txiv.
- 20 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv hais rau koj, tias lub sij hawm yuav los thaum txoj kev paub txog tus Cawm Seeg yuav nthuav mus thoob plaws rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeeb neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

- 21 Thiab saib seb, thaum lub sij hawm ntawd los, yuav tsis muaj ib tug twg uas nrhiav tsis muaj txim nyob ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag, tsuas tshuav tej me nyuam yaus me xwb, tsuas yog los ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab muaj kev ntseeg hauv tus Tswv Vajtswv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj Tshaj Plaws lub npe xwb.
- 22 Thiab txawm yog lub sij hawm no los, thaum koj yuav tau qhia koj cov neeg tej yam uas tus Tswv koj tus Vajtswv tau txib koj lawm, txawm yog thaum ntawd los tseem nrhiav pom lawv muaj txim nyob ntawm Vajtswv lub qhov muag, tsuas yog ua raws li tej lus uas kuv tau hais rau koj lawm xwb.
- 23 Thiab nim no kuv tau hais tej lus uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau txib kuv lawm.
- 24 Thiab tus Tswv hais li no tias: Lawv yuav sawv ua tim khawv tseeb rau cov neeg no, nyob rau hauv hnuv txiav txim; lawv yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm qhov ntawd, txhua txhia tus neeg raws li nws tes hauj lwm, txawm lawv yog zoo, los sis txawm lawv yog phem.
- 25 Thiab yog tias lawv yog qhov phem lawv yuav raug coj mus pom qhov phem ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum thiab qias, uas ua kom lawv ploj ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus rau txoj kev txom nyem thiab txoj kev tsim txom uas tsis muaj kawg li, lawv yuav tawm ntawm qhov ntawd rov qab los tsis tau li; yog li ntawd lawv tau haus kev puas tsuaj rau lawv tus kheej.
- 26 Yog li ntawd, lawv tau haus tawm ntawm Vajtswv lub khob npau taws, uas yog kev ncaj ncees uas tshem tsis tau tawm ntawm lawv mus dua li qhov uas Adas yuav tsum poob vim yog nws txoj kev noj lub txiv uas txwv tsis pub noj; yog li ntawd, kev zam txim muaj tsis tau rau lawv ib zaug ntxiv lawm.
- 27 Thiab lawv txoj kev tsim txom yuav zoo li ib lub pas dej hluav taws thiab leej faj, uas tus nplaim cig tsis txawj tuag li, thiab nws cov pa hluav taws sawv mus ib txhiab thiab ib txhis tsis kawg li. Tus Tswv tau txib kuv li no. Amees.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Mauxiyas 4

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau hais cov lus uas Vajtswv tus tim tswv tau qhia rau nws tas lawm, nws tau tsa muag ntsia ib puag ncig rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab pom lawv tau vau rau hauv av, vim txoj kev ntshai ntawm tus Tswv tau los rau saum lawv.
- 2 Thiab lawv tau pom lawv tus kheej nyob hauv lawv txoj kev ntiaj teb, uas twb tsis tsim txiaj li tej plua av. Thiab lawv sawv daws ua ib lub suab qw nrov nrov, hais tias: Au thov muaj kev hlub tshua lauj, thiab muab Khetos cov ntshav theej txhoj xwv kom peb yuav tau txais txoj kev zam txim ntawm peb tej kev txhaum, thiab kom peb tej siab yuav dawb huv; vim peb ntseeg Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub, tus uas tau tsim lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav; tus uas yuav nqis los nrog noob neej nyob.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau hais cov lus no tas lawm tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau los rau saum lawv, thiab lawv txawm muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo, tau txais ib txoj kev zam lawv tej txim, thiab tau muaj kev thaj yeeb hauv nruab siab, vim yog txoj kev ntseeg heev uas lawv tau muaj nyob hauv Yexus Khetos tus uas yuav los, raws li tej lus uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau hais rau lawv lawm.
- 4 Thiab vaj ntxwv Npeyamis rov qhib nws lub qhov ncauj dua thiab tau pib hais rau lawv, hais tias: Kuv cov mi phooj ywg thiab kuv cov mi kwv tij, kuv xeem mi neeg thiab kuv cov neeg es, kuv xav kom nej rov mloog dua, xwv kom nej yuav hnov thiab to taub kuv cov lus tseem tshuav uas kuv yuav hais rau nej.
- 5 Vim saib seb, yog txoj kev paub ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev zoo nyob rau lub sij hawm no tau tsa nej los paub txog nej tej kev tsis muaj qab hau, thiab nej tej kev tsis muaj nuj nqis thiab txoj kev poob—

Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

6 Kuv hais rau nej, yog nej tau los paub txog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, thiab nws lub hwj chim uas piv tsis tau, thiab nws txoj kev txawj ntse, thiab nws lub siab ntev, thiab nws ua siab ntev nyiaj rau noob neej; thiab, txoj kev theej txhoj uas tau npaj txij thaum chiv keeb los lawm thiab, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd txoj kev cawm seeg yuav los rau nws tus uas yuav muab nws lub siab ntseeg rau hauv tus Tswv, thiab yuav rau siab ntso coj nws tej lus txib, thiab coj tsis tu ncu a nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg mus kom kawg nws txoj sia, kuv hais txog txoj sia ntawm lub cev uas txawj ploj txawj tuag—

7 Kuv hais, tias tus neeg no yog tus uas yuav tau txais txoj kev cawm seeg, los ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj uas tau npaj txij thaum chiv keeb rau tib neeg sawv daws tag nrho, cov uas tau muaj txij li thaum Adas txoj kev poob, los sis cov ziag no, los sis cov uas tseem yuav muaj, mus txog thaum lub ntiaj teb kawg.

8 Thiab qhov no yog txoj kev uas txoj kev cawm seeg los. Thiab tsis muaj dua lwm txoj kev cawm seeg tsuas yog txoj uas tau hais txog no xwb; thiab tsis muaj ib txoj kev twg uas neeg yuav dim taus tsuas yog tib txoj kev uas kuv tau qhia rau nej lawm xwb.

9 Cia li ntseeg Vajtswv; ntseeg tias muaj nws, thiab tias nws tsim tag nrho ib puas yam tsav, tag nrho saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb; ntseeg tias nws muaj tej kev txawj ntse tag nrho huv tib si, thiab muaj tag nrho tej hwj chim, tag nrho saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb; ntseeg tias tib neeg yeej tsis to taub tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas tus Tswv muaj peev xwm to taub.

10 Thiab ntxiv, ntseeg tias nej yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum thiab tso lawv pov tseg, thiab cia li txo nej tej hwj chim rau Vajtswv; thiab ua siab tseeb tiag thov kom nws yuav zam nej lub txim; thiab nim no, yog hais tias nej ntseeg tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no nej yuav tsum ua lawv.

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

- 11 Thiab kuv rov hais rau nej dua ib yam li kuv tau hais ua ntej lawm, tias xws li nej tau los paub txog Vajtsv lub yeeb koob, los sis yog tias nej tau paub txog nws txoj kev zoo thiab tau saj nws txoj kev hlub, thiab tau txais ib txoj kev zam txim rau nej tej kev txhaum lawm, uas tau ua kom nej tej ntsuj plig muaj kev xyiv fab ntau heev cuag li, txawm npaum li los kuv xav kom nej yuav nco ntsoov, thiab nyob nraim hauv txoj kev nco txog, Vajtsv txoj kev tshav ntuj, thiab nej tej kev tsis tsim txiaj, thiab nws txoj kev zoo thiab txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj rau nej, cov uas tsis muaj nqis, thiab txo nej tej hwj chim uas kev txo tej hwj chim qis, niaj hnub hu ntsoov tus Tswv lub npe, thiab sawv khov kho hauv txoj kev ntseeg ntawm qhov uas yuav los, uas tau hais los ntawm tim tswv lub qhov ncauj.
- 12 Thiab saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias yog nej ua qhov no nej yuav zoo siab tas mus li, thiab yuav muaj Vajtsv txoj kev hlub puv npo, thiab niaj hnub tau ib txoj kev zam nej tej kev txhaum; thiab nej yuav loj hlob nyob hauv txoj kev paub ntawm nws tus uas tau tsim nej lub yeeb koob, los sis nyob hauv txoj kev paub ntawm qhov uas ncaj thiab tseeb.
- 13 Thiab nej yuav tsis muaj ib lub siab ua kom lwm tus raug mob, tiam sis yuav nyob kaj siab lug, thiab muab rau txhua tus tib neeg raws li tej uas yog nws ntiag tug.
- 14 Thiab nej yuav tsis cia kom nej tej me nyuam raug tshaib plab, los sis liab qab; thiab nej yuav tsis cia kom lawv ua txhaum Vajtsv tej kev cai, thiab tsis sib ntau thiab tsis sib ceg nrog lwm tus, thiab tsis pe hawm tus dab, tus uas yog txoj kev txhaum tus tswv, los sis tus uas yog tus ntsuj plig phem uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais txog lawm, nws tus uas yog ib tug yeeb ncuab rau tag nrho tej uas ncaj ncees.
- 15 Tiam sis nej yuav qhia lawv taug hauv tej kev tseeb thiab kev tiag tiag; nej yuav qhia kom lawv ib leeg hlub ib leeg, thiab ib leeg pab ib leeg.
- 16 Thiab ntxiv, nej tus kheej los yuav pab cov uas xav tau nej kev pab; nej yuav faib tej khoom nej muaj rau nws tus uas xav tau pab; thiab nej yuav tsis cia tus neeg thov khawv thov nej yam tsis muaj txiaj ntsim li, thiab ntiab nws tawm mus kom piam sij.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

- 17 Tej zaum nej yuav hais tias: Tus neeg ntawd tau koj kev txom nyem los rau nws tus kheej; yog li ntawd kuv yuav cia kuv txhais tes nyob twj ywm, thiab yuav tsis muab kuv tej zaub mov rau nws, thiab tsis faib kuv tej khoom rau nws xwv kom nws yuav tsis muaj, vim nws tej kev raug txim yeej ncaj ncees lawm—
- 18 Tiam sis kuv hais rau nej, Au neeg es, leej twg uas ua li no tus ntawd muaj txim loj uas yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim; thiab tsuas yog nws yuav hloov siab ntawm qhov uas nws tau ua lawm xwb tsis li mas nws yuav piam sij mus ib txhis li, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib qho chaw nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj li.
- 19 Vim saib seb, tsis yog peb txhua tus puav leej yog neeg thov khawv los? Tsis yog peb txhua tus vam khom rau tib tug, uas yog Vajtswv, rau tag nrho txhua yam uas peb muaj, tag nrho rau tej zaub mov thiab tej ris tsho, thiab rau tej kub, thiab rau tej nyiaj, thiab rau txhua txhia yam kev nplua nuj uas peb muaj txhua nrho los?
- 20 Thiab saib seb, lub sij hawm no los, nej tseem tau hu ntsoov nws lub npe, thiab thov ib txoj kev zam nej tej kev txhaum. Thiab nws puas tau cia kom nej thov yam tsis muaj qab hau li? Tsis yog li ntawd; nws tau hliv nws tus Ntsuj Plig los rau saum nej, thiab tau ua kom nej tej siab muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo, thiab tau ua kom nej tej qhov ncauj qos ua nej tsis muaj peev xwm nrhiav tau lus hais, ntau kawg nkaus li yog nej txoj kev xyiv fab.
- 21 Thiab nim no, yog hais tias Vajtswv, tus uas tau tsim nej, tus uas nej cia siab rau nej txoj sia thiab rau tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas nej muaj thiab nej yog, twb pub rau nej txhua yam uas nej thov uas ncaj ncees, nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg, ntseeg ntsoov tias nej yuav tau txais, Au ces, nej yuav tsum ib leeg pub tej khoom uas nej muaj rau ib leeg.
- 22 Thiab yog hais tias nej txiav txim rau tus neeg uas thov nej tej khoom xwv kom nws yuav tsis piam sij, thiab rau txim rau nws, ces nej tej kev raug txim yuav ncaj npaum li cas ntxiv rau txoj kev uas nej tsis faib nej tej khoom, uas tsis yog nej li tiam sis yog Vajtswv li, tus uas nej txoj sia los yog nws li thiab; thiab txawm li los nej twb tsis tau thov, thiab hloov siab lees txim rau tej uas nej tau ua lawm.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

- 23 Kuv hais rau nej tias, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tus neeg ntawd, vim nws tej khoom yuav piam sij nrog nws mus; thiab nim no, kuv hais tej no rau cov uas nplua nuj raws li rau tej khoom hauv lub ntiaj teb no.
- 24 Thiab ntxiv, kuv hais rau cov neeg pluag, nej cov uas tsis muaj thiab tiam sis twb muaj txaus siv, xwv kom nej yuav nyob ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv; kuv hais tag nrho nej cov uas tsis kam pab cov neeg thov khawv, vim nej tsis muaj; kuv xav kom nej hais hauv nej tej siab tias: Kuv tsis muab rau qhov kuv tsis muaj, tiam sis yog kuv muaj kuv yeej yuav muab.
- 25 Thiab nim no, yog tias nej hais li no nyob hauv nej tej siab nej yuav nyob tsis muaj txim, tsis li ntawd mas nej raug txim; thiab nej txoj kev raug txim yog ib txoj ncaj ncees vim nej mus ntshaw tej uas nej tsis tau txais.
- 26 Thiab nim no, rau qhov tseem ceeb ntawm tej uas kuv tau hais rau nej lawm—ntawd yog, rau qhov tseem ceeb ntawm txoj kev coj ntsoov txoj kev zam txim ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv, xwv kom nej yuav nyob mus tsis muaj txim ntawm Vajtswv—kuv xav kom nej yuav faib nej tej khoom rau cov neeg pluag, txhua tus tib neeg raws li tej uas nws muaj, ib yam li pub cov neeg tshaib plab noj, muab khaub ncaws rau cov neeg liab qab hnab, saib xyuas cov neeg muaj mob thiab pab kom lawv dim pa, tag nrho sab ntsuj plig thiab sab cev nqaij daim tawv, raws li lawv tej kev xav tau.
- 27 Thiab saib xyuas kom tag nrho txhua txhia yam no tiav los ntawm txoj kev txawj ntse thiab kev muaj txheej txheem; vim nws tsis tsim nyog tias ib tug neeg yuav khiav nrawm dua li qhov nws muaj lub zog. Thiab ntxiv, tsim nyog tias nws yuav rau siab, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nws yuav yeej qhov nqe zog; yog li ntawd, txhua yam tsav yuav tsum ua tiav los ntawm kev muaj txheej txheem.
- 28 Thiab kuv xav kom nej yuav nco ntsoov, tias nej leej twg qiv txais ntawm nws tej neeg zej zog nws yuav tsum xa yam uas nws tau txais ntawd rov qab, raws li uas nws tau sib cog lus, los sis tsis li ntawd nej yuav ua txhaum; thiab tej zaum nej yuav ua kom nej tej neeg zej zog ua txhaum thiab.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

29 Thiab thaum kawg no, kuv tsis muaj peev xwm qhia nej tag nrho txhua yam uas nej ua yuav txhaum; vim muaj ntau txoj kev thiab ntau hom, twb muaj ntau heev uas kuv tsis muaj peev xwm suav lawv txheeb.

30 Tiam sis kuv muaj peev xwm qhia nej npaum li no, tias yog nej tsis xyuas nej tus kheej, thiab nej tej kev xav, thiab nej tej lus, thiab tej uas nej ua, thiab ceev Vajtsvw tej lus txib, thiab nyob nraim hauv txoj kev ntseeg uas nej tau hnov txog txoj kev uas peb tus Tswv yuav los, kom mus txog thaum nej txoj sia kawg, nej yuav tsum piam sij. Thiab nim no, Au neeg es, nco ntsoov, thiab tsis txhob piam sij.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

Mauxiyas 5

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau hais li no rau nws cov neeg tas lawm, nws tau xa xov mus rau lawv, xav paub saib nws cov neeg puas ntseeg tej lus uas nws tau hais rau lawv lawm.
- 2 Thiab lawv sawv daws qw ua ib lub suab hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, peb ntseeg tag nrho tej lus uas koj tau hais rau peb; thiab peb, kuj paub txog lawv tej kev tseeb thiab tiag, vim yog tus Tswv uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj Tshaj Plaws tus Ntsuj Plig, uas tau ua ib qhov kev pauv loj nyob hauv peb, los sis nyob hauv peb tej siab, xwv kom peb tsis muaj siab xav ua phem ntxiv lawm, tiam sis ua zoo kom tsis tu ncuu mus li.
- 3 Thiab peb, peb tus kheej, los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev zoo uas nyob mus ib txhis, thiab tej uas nws tus Ntsuj Plig tau qhia, kuj tau pom ntau txog yam uas yuav muaj los; thiab yog nws tsim nyog, peb muaj peev xwm qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tag nrho txhua yam huv tib si.
- 4 Thiab nws yog txoj kev ntseeg uas peb tau muaj nyob hauv tej yam uas peb tus vaj ntxwv tau hais rau peb es thiaj tau coj peb los rau txoj kev to taub no, los ntawm qhov ntawd peb thiaj zoo siab heev nrog txoj kev xyiv fab cuag tsi.
- 5 Thiab peb txaus siab mus rau ib txog kev sib khi lus nrog peb tus Vajtswv los ua li nws siab nyiam, thiab ua raws li nws tej lus txib nyob hauv ib puas yam tsav uas nws yuav txib peb ua, tag nrho peb lub neej uas seem tshuav, xwv kom peb yuav tsis coj txoj kev tsim txom uas tsis muaj qhov kawg ib zaug li los rau peb tus kheej, ib yam li tus tim tswv tau hais lawm, xwv kom peb yuav tsis haus tawm ntawm Vajtswv lub khob npau taws.
- 6 Thiab nim no, cov lus no yog cov uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis xav hnov los ntawm lawv; thiab yog li ntawd nws tau hais rau lawv: Nej tau hais tej lus uas kuv xav tau; thiab txoj kev khi lus uas nej tau khi yog ib qhov kev khi lus uas ncaj ncees.

Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

- 7 Thiab nim no, vim yog lo lus sib cog uas nej tau cog nej yuav raug hu ua Khetos cov me nyuam, nws tej tub, thiab nws tej ntxhais; vim saib seb, hnuv no nws tau ua nej txiv ntawm sab ntsuj plig; vim nej hais tias nej tej siab tau hloov dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg nyob ntawm nws lub npe; yog li ntawd, nej thiaj yug los ntawm nws thiab tau peem tsheej los ua nws tej tub thiab nws tej ntxhais.
- 8 Thiab los hauv qab lub taub hau no nej raug ua kom nyob ywj pheej, thiab tsis muaj lwm lub taub hau uas yuav ua tau rau nej nyob ywj pheej. Tsis muaj lwm lub npe uas yuav ua kom txoj kev cawm seeg los tau; yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej txaus siab txais yuav Khetos lub npe, tag nrho nej cov uas tau sib khi lus nrog Vajtswv tias nej yuav tsum mloog lus mus kom txog thaum kawg nej txoj sia.
- 9 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tus uas ua li no yuav raug nrhiav pom nyob ntawm Vajtswv sab tes xis, vim nws yuav paub lub npe uas nws raug hu; vim nws yuav raug hu los ntawm Khetos lub npe.
- 10 Thiab nim no yuav muaj tias, leej twg los xij uas tsis ris Khetos lub npe rau saum nws ces yuav tsum raug hu dua lwm lub npe; yog li ntawd nws yuav nrhiav pom nws tus kheej nyob ntawm Vajtswv sab tes laug.
- 11 Thiab kuv kuj xav kom nej nco ntsoov, tias qhov no yog lub npe uas kuv tau hais tias kuv yuav muab rau nej uas yuav tsis muab tshem tawm ib zaug hlo li, tsuas yog los ntawm txoj kev txog txhaum xwb; yog li ntawd, ceev faj kom nej txhob ua txhaum, xwv kom lub npe tsis txhob raug rho tawm hauv nej tej siab mus.
- 12 Kuv hais rau nej, kuv xav kom nej yuav nco ntsoov ceev lub npe tau sau lawm nyob nraim hauv nej tej siab, xwv kom nej tsis raug nrhiav pom nyob ntawm Vajtswv sab tes laug, tiam sis kom nej hnov thiab paub lub suab los ntawm qhov uas nej yuav raug hu, thiab, lub npe los ntawm qhov uas nws yuav hu nej.
- 13 Vim ib tug tib neeg ua li cas thiaj yuav paub tau tus Tswv uas nws tsis tau ua hauj lwm rau, thiab tus uas yog ib tug qhua rau nws, thiab nyob deb ntawm tej kev xav thiab ntawm tej uas nws lub siab nyiam?

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

14 Thiab ntxiv tias, ib tug tib neeg puas lam muab tus zag uas yog nws tej neeg zej zog li, thiab ceev nws tseg? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Yeej tsis muab; nws twb yuav tsis cia tus no nrog nws pab tsiaj noj zaub, tiam sis yuav lawv kom nws khiav mus, thiab ntiab nws tawm mus. Kuv hais rau nej, tias nej twb yuav zoo li ntawd yog tias nej tsis paub lub npe uas nej raug hu.

15 Yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej yuav nyob khov kho thiab tsis txav li, ua tej hauj lwm zoo tas mus li, xwv kom Khetos, tus Tswv Vajtswv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj Tshaj Plaws, yuav zwm nej cia ua nws li, xwv kom nej yuav raug coj mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, xwv kom nej yuav muaj txoj kev cawm seeg uas nyob mus ib txhis thiab txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, dhau los ntawm txoj kev txawj ntse, thiab lub hwj chim, thiab txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab txoj kev hlub ntawm nws tus uas tau tsim ib puas yam tsav, nyob saum ntuj thiab hauv ntiaj teb no, tus uas yog Vajtswv rau tag nrho saum ib puas tsav yam. Amees.

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Mauxiyas 6

- 1 Thiab nim no, vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau xav tias nws tsim nyog tias, tom qab uas tau hais rau cov neeg tas lawm, nws yuav tsum sau tag nrho tej npe ntawm cov uas tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus nrog Vajtswv lawm tias yuav coj nws tej lus txib.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis muaj ib tug kiag, tsuas yog tshuav tej me nyuam yaus, cov uas tsis tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus thiab tsis tau ris Khetos lub npe rau saum lawv xwb.
- 3 Thiab ntxiv, tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau hais tag ib puas yam tsav no, thiab tau tsa nws tus tub Mauxiyas ua ib tug saib xyuas thiab ib tug vaj ntxwv rau nws cov neeg, thiab tau muab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav kev coj txog lub teb chaws rau nws, thiab kuj tau tsa tej pov thawj los qhia cov neeg, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav hnov thiab paub Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab txhib kom lawv nco txog qhov kev lav lus uas lawv tau lav lawm, nws tau tso cov neeg coob coob ntawd mus, thiab lawv tau rov qab, txhua txhia tus, nrog raws li lawv tsev neeg, mus rau tom lawv tej tsev.
- 4 Thiab Mauxiyas tau pib kav nyob hauv nws txiv qhov chaw. Thiab nws tau pib kav thaum nws hnuv nyoog muaj peb caug xyoo, suav tag nrho, kwv yees li plaub puas thiab xya caum rau xyoo txij li lub caij uas Lihais ncaim Yeluxalees.
- 5 Thiab vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau nyob peb xyoo thiab nws tau tuag lawm.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau taug tus Tswv tej kev, thiab tau coj nws tej kev txiav txim thiab nws tej kev cai, thiab tau coj nws tej lus txib nyob tag nrho hauv ib puas yam tsav uas tus Tswv tau txib nws.
- 7 Thiab vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau ua nws cov neeg kom lawv yuav tsum ua liaj ua teb. Thiab nws tus kheej los, kuj tau ua liaj ua teb thiab, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nws yuav tsis rais los ua lub nra hnyav rau nws cov neeg, kom nws yuav ua raws nraim li uas nws txiv tau ua lawm nyob hauv txhua txhia yam. Thiab tsis tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob tag nrho hauv nws cov neeg tau ncu a li peb xyoos.

Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

Mauxiyas 7

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias tom qab vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncu tau peb xyoos lawm, nws tau xav paub txog cov neeg uas tau nce mus nyob hauv thaj av Lihais-Nifais, los sis nyob hauv lub nroog Lihais-Nifais; vim nws cov neeg tsis tau hnov dab tsi los ntawm lawv hlo li txij li lub sij hawm uas lawv tau ncaim ntawm thaj av Xalahelas mus lawm; yog li ntawd, lawv tau ua rau nws nkees nrog rau lawv tej kev tso dag.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau kom lawv kaum rau leej txiv neej uas muaj zog nce mus lawm pem thaj av Lihais-Nifais, mus noog txog lawv tej kwv tij.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis lawv tau pib nce mus, muaj ib tug Amoos nrog lawv mus thiab, nws yog ib tug neeg muaj dag thiab muaj zog, thiab yog Xalahelas ib tug xeeb ntxwv; thiab nws kuj yog lawv tus thawj koj.
- 4 Thiab nim no, lawv tsis tau paub txoj kev uas lawv yuav mus rau hauv hav zoov nce mus pem thaj av Lihais-Nifais; yog li ntawd lawv tau xyuam khuav ntau hnuv nyob rau hauv hav zoov, twb muaj plaub caug hnuv uas lawv tau xyuam khuav.
- 5 Thiab thaum lawv tau xyuam khuav tau plaub caug hnuv lawv tau los txog ib lub roob, uas nyob sab pem toj ntawm thaj av Sailos, thiab lawv tau rub lawv cov tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob qhov ntawd.
- 6 Thiab Amoos tau koj nws peb tug kwv tij, thiab lawv cov npe yog Amalej, Helees, thiab Heem, thiab lawv tau nqis mus rau hauv thaj av Nifais.
- 7 Thiab saib seb, lawv tau ntsib cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Nifais tus vaj ntxwv, thiab nyob hauv thaj av Sailos; thiab lawv tau raug vaj ntxwv cov tub zov rooj vag koos vij vog, thiab tau raug koj mus, thiab tau raug khi, thiab tau raug koj mus kaw hauv qhov taub.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau raug kaw tau ob hnuv lawm lawv tau raug rov qab koj los rau vaj ntxwv, thiab lawv tej hlua tau raug muab daws; thiab lawv tau sawv ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag, thiab tau cia, los sis tau hais, kom lawv yuav tsum teb cov lus nug uas nws yuav nug lawv.

Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

9 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv yog Leehais, Nau-as tus tub, Nau-as yog Xeenas tus tub, tus uas tau tawm pem thaj av Xalahelas tuaj txais thaj av no, uas yog lawv tej yawg koob thaj av, tus uas raug muab ua ib tug vaj ntxwv los ntawm cov neeg lub suab.

10 Thiab nim no, kuv xav paub qhov uas nej tau tuaj ze lub nroog tej ntsa loog tsis ntshai kiag li, thaum kuv tus kheej, nyob rooj vag sab nraud twb yuav tau nrog kuv cov tub zov rooj vag?

11 Thiab nim no, vim qhov no kuv thiaj tau cia nej nyob xwb, xwv kom kuv yuav tau nug nej, tsis li ces kuv twb kom kuv cov tub zov rooj vag muab nej tua lawm. Nej muaj cai hais tau lus lawm.

12 Thiab nim no, thaum Amoos tau pom tias nws tau raug cia hais lus lawm, nws tau txav zog mus thiab tau khoov ntshis rau vaj ntxwv; thiab sawv dua los nws tau hais tias: Au vaj ntxwv es, kuv ua Vajtswv tsaug kawg nkaus uas hnuv no kuv tseem muaj sia nyob, thiab tseem raug cia los hais lus; thiab kuv yuav ua tib zoo hais nrog txoj kev muaj peev xwm;

13 Vim kuv paub tseeb tias yog koj tau paub kuv koj yuav tsis tau cia kom kuv tau raug sia tej hlua no. Vim kuv yog Amoos, thiab yog Xalahelas ib tug xeeb ntxwv, thiab tau tawm nram thaj av Xalahelas tuaj nrhiav txog peb cov kwv tij, cov uas Xeenas tau coj tawm ntawm thaj av ntawd.

14 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias tom qab uas Leehais tau hnov Amoos cov lus lawm, nws tau zoo siab heev, thiab tau hais tias: Nim no, kuv paub tseeb tias kuv cov kwv tij uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob. Thiab nim no, kuv yuav zoo siab; thiab tag kis kuv yuav ua kom kuv cov neeg yuav zoo siab thiab.

15 Vim saib seb, peb tau nyob hauv kev ua qhev rau cov Neeg Lamas, thiab raug sau se uas yog ib qho se uas hnyav kawg li. Thiab nim no, saib seb, peb cov kwv tij yuav coj peb tawm ntawm peb txoj kev ua qhev, los sis tawm ntawm cov Neeg Lamas txhais tes, thiab peb mam ua lawv tej tub qhe; vim nws zoo tshaj rau peb ua cov Neeg Nifais qhev dua li them se rau cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

16 Thiab nim no, vaj ntxwv Lee-hais tau txib nws cov tub zov rooj vag kom lawv tsis txhob khi Amoos los sis nws cov kwv tij ntxiv lawm, tiam sis tau ua kom lawv mus rau tim lub roob uas nyob sab pem toj ntawm Sailos, thiab coj lawv cov kwv tij los rau hauv lub nroog, xwv los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav noj thiab haus, thiab so lawv tus kheej los ntawm tej hauj lwm ntawm lawv txoj kev tuaj; vim lawv tau raug kev txom nyem ntau yam; lawv tau yoo tshaib yoo nqhis, thiab sab lim.

17 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias nyob rau tag kis vaj ntxwv Lee-hais tau xa ib tsab xov thoob plaws rau nws cov neeg, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav sib sau lawv ua ke mus rau tom lub tuam tsev tuaj mloog cov lus uas nws yuav hais rau lawv.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau sib sau tuaj ua ke lawm nws tau hais rau lawv li no, hais tias: Au nej, kuv cov neeg, tsa nej tej taub hau thiab nyob kom zoo; vim saib seb, lub sij hawm twb los txog lawm, los sis twb tsis tshuav ncuab deb lawm, thaum peb yuav tsis ua peb tej yeeb ncuab qhev ntxiv lawm, txawm tias peb tau sib zog nrhiav kev ntau, los pab tsis tau dab tsi; li ntawd los kuv cia siab tias tseem tshuav ib txoj kev daws uas tseem yuav ua tau.

19 Yog li ntawd, cia li tsa nej tej taub hau, thiab zoo siab, thiab muab nej txoj kev cia siab rau hauv Vajtswv, nyob hauv tus Vajtswv tus uas yog Anplaham thiab Ixaj thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtswv; thiab kuj yog tus Vajtswv uas tau coj cov neeg Ixayees tawm ntawm Iyiv teb chaws los, thiab tau ua kom lawv mus ko taw hla Dej Hiav Txwv Liab saum av qhuav, thiab muab manas pub lawv noj xwv kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij nyob rau hav zoov; thiab nws tau ua ntau yam ntxiv rau lawv.

20 Thiab ntxiv, tib tug Vajtswv ntawd tau coj peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees, thiab tau ceev thiab tsom kwm nws cov neeg los txog nim no; thiab saib seb, vim nws yog peb tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tej kev qias es nws thiaj tau coj peb los rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev xwb.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

21 Thiab nej tag nrho yog tim khawv hnuv no, tias Xeenas, tus uas tau raug tsa los ua vaj ntxwv rau cov neeg no, vim nws xav tau thaj av ntawm nws tej yawg koob los ua qub txeeq qub teg heev, yog li ntawd thiaj tau raug lauj taw los ntawm vaj ntxwv Lamas txoj kev haub thiab kev ntxias, tus uas tau nkag rau kev sib yeem nrog vaj ntxwv Xeenas, thiab tau muab ib feem teb chaws ntawm thaj av mus rau nws tes, los sis twb yog lub nroog Lihais-Nifais, thiab lub nroog Sailos; thiab tej av uas nyob ib cheeb tsam ntawd—

22 Thiab nws tau ua tag nrho tej no, rau lub ntsiab ntawm txoj kev coj nws cov neeg mus rau hauv txoj kev ua tauj los sis mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev. Thiab saib seb, nyob rau lub sij hawm no peb them se rau cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv, txog qhov uas muab ib nrab ntawm peb tej pob kws, thiab peb tej nplej, thiab tag nrho peb tej noob qoob noob loos txhua txhia yam, thiab ib nrab ntawm peb tej yaj thiab peb tej tsiaj txhu uas yug tshiab; thiab ib nrab ntawm tag nrho txhua yam uas peb muaj los sis yog peb li cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv yuam kom peb muab, los sis yuav peb txoj sia.

23 Thiab nim no, qhov no tsis yog ib qho hnyav heev los? Thiab qhov no, peb txoj kev txom nyem, tsis loj los? Nim no saib seb, peb muaj kev yuav tau nyuaj siab npaum li cas diam.

24 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, ntau kawg li tej kev uas peb yuav tau nyuaj siab rau; vim saib seb peb cov kwv tij tau muaj pes tsawg leej uas tau raug tua, thiab lawv tej ntshav tau nrog tsis muaj nuj nqis, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees.

25 Vim yog hais tias cov neeg no tsis tau poob mus rau kev txog txhaum tus Tswv yuav tsis tau cia kom txoj kev phem loj no los rau lawv. Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau tsis mloog rau nws tej lus; tiam sis tsuas tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv lawv, twb ntau kawg nkaus tias lawv tau muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog nyob hauv lawv tus kheej.

26 Thiab lawv tau muab tus Tswv ib tug yaj saub tua; muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib tug neeg tau xaiv los ntawm Vajtswv, tus uas tau qhia rau lawv txog lawv tej kev phem thiab kev qias, thiab tau qhia txog ntau yam uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, muaj tseeb tiag, twb hais txog Khetos txoj kev yuav los.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

- 27 Thiab vim nws tau hais rau lawv tias Khetos twb yog tus Vajtswv, Leej Txiv ntawm tag nrho txhua yam, thiab tau hais tias nws yuav los yug zoo li ib tug neeg, thiab yuav yog tus yam ntxwv li uas neeg raug tsim nyob thaum chiv keeb; los sis ua lwm yam lus, nws tau hais tias neeg tau raug tsim zoo li Vajtswv, thiab hais tias Vajtswv yuav nqis los rau hauv noob neej, thiab los txais yuav cev nqaij daim tawv thiab roj ntsha rau nws, thiab yuav mus rau saum lub ntiaj teb—
- 28 Thiab nim no, vim nws tau hais li no, lawv txawm tau muab nws tua; thiab lawv tau ua ntau yam ntxiv uas tau coj Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws nqis los rau saum lawv. Yog li ntawd, leej twg yuav xav tias lawv raug ua qhev, thiab tias lawv tau raug tej kev txom nyem uas mob heev?
- 29 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau hais tias: Kuv yuav tsis pab kuv cov neeg hnuv uas lawv nyob hauv lawv txoj kev txog txhaum; tiam sis kuv yuav ua kom lawv txoj kev cov nyom xwv kom lawv yuav huaj vam tsis taus; thiab tej kev ua ub ua no yuav zoo li ib yam cav dawm taw rau lawv.
- 30 Thiab nws, hais ntxiv tias: Yog kuv cov neeg yuav tseb txoj kev vuab tsuab lawv yuav tau sau tej tsis muaj nqis ntawd nyob hauv cua daj cua dub; thiab qhov nqis ntawm qhov ntawd yog toj taug.
- 31 Thiab nws hais ntxiv tias: Yog kuv cov neeg yuav tseb txoj kev vuab tsuab lawv yuav tau sau tej cua uas tuaj pem sab hnuv tuaj, uas yuav coj txoj kev puas tsuaj los sai sai.
- 32 Thiab nim no, saib seb, tus Tswv tej lus cog tseg twb muaj tiav lawm, thiab nej twb raug nplawm thiab raug txom nyem lawm.
- 33 Tiam sis yog nej yuav tig rov qab nrog lub siab puv npo mus cuag tus Tswv, thiab muab nej txoj kev cia siab rau nws, thiab ua hauj lwm kom tag nrho siab ntsws rau nws, yog nej ua li no, nws yuav, raws li nws lub siab nyiam thiab siab xav, coj nej tawm ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

Mauxiyas 8

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas vaj ntxwv Leehais tau hais rau nws cov neeg tag lawm, vim nws tau hais ntau yam rau lawv thiab tsuas yog muaj ob peb yam kuv thiaj tau muab sau rau hauv phau ntawv no xwb, nws tau qhia rau nws cov neeg tag nrho txhua yam txog lawv cov kwv tij uas nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas.
- 2 Thiab nws tau kom Amoos sawv ntsug rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab qhia rau lawv tag nrho tej uas tau tshwm sim rau lawv tej kwv tij txij li lub sij hawm uas Xeenas tau ncaim ntawm thaj av mus txog rau lub sij hawm uas nws tus kheej tau tawm ntawm thaj av tuaj lawm.
- 3 Thiab nws kuj tau qhia rau lawv txog tej lus kawg uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau qhia lawv, thiab tau piav tej ntawd rau vaj ntxwv Leehais cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav to taub tag nrho tej lus uas nws tau hais.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no lawm, vaj ntxwv Leehais tau tso cov neeg coob coob mus, thiab tau kom lawv txhua tus rov qab mus tom lawv tsev.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nws kom muab cov phiaj uas ntim nws cov neeg phau ceev xwm txheej txij li lub caij uas lawv tau ncaim thaj av Xalahelas, koj los rau Amoos, xwv kom nws nyeem lawv.
- 6 Nim no, tom qab kiag uas Amoos tau nyeem phau ceev xwm txheej tag lawm, vaj ntxwv tau thov nws xav paub saib nws puas muaj cuab kav txhais tej lus, thiab Amoos tau qhia nws tias nws tsis muaj cuab kav.
- 7 Thiab tus vaj ntxwv tau hais rau nws tias: Vim txoj kev nyuaj siab rau kuv cov neeg tej kev txom nyem, kuv tau kom kuv cov neeg plaub caug peb leeg taug kev mus lawm tom hav zoov, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd tej zaum lawv yuav nrhiav tau thaj av Xalahelas, xwv kom peb yuav tshwm rau peb cov kwv tij kom koj peb dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.

Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

- 8 Thiab lawv tau ploj rau hauv hav zoov tau ntau hnuv, tiam sis lawv tseem tau rau siab, thiab nrhiav tsis tau thaj av Xalabelas tiam sis tseem tau rov qab los rau thaj av no, tom qab uas tau mus rau hauv ib thaj av uas muaj dej ntau, tau nrhiav ntsib ib thaj av uas muaj neeg tej pob txha, thiab pob txha tsiaj qus, thiab kuj muaj tej tsev uas piam lawm txhua yam, tau nrhiav ntsib ib thaj av uas tau muaj neeg nyob cov uas coob npaum li cov neeg Ixayees.
- 9 Thiab rau ib qho tim khawv tias tej uas lawv tau hais muaj tseeb lawv tau coj nees nkaum plaub daim phiaj uas ntim lus sau puv nkaus, thiab lawv yog tseem kub.
- 10 Thiab saib seb, lawv kuj tau coj tej phiaj npog hauv siab, uas loj dav, thiab lawv yog tooj dag thiab yog tooj liab, thiab yog tej uas zoo kawg nkaus.
- 11 Thiab ntxiv, lawv tau coj tej ntaj los, thiab tej ko ntaj tau piam tas lawm, thiab tej hniav ntaj tau khub xeb tuab; thiab twb tsis muaj ib tug twg nyob hauv thaj av uas muaj peev xwm txhais tau yam lus los sis tej ntawv sau uas nyob saum cov phiaj. Yog li ntawd kuv hais rau koj tias: Koj txhais puas tau?
- 12 Thiab kuv hais rau koj ntxiv tias: Koj puas paub muaj leej twg uas yuav txhais tau? Vim kuv xav xav kom cov ceev xwm txheej no raug muab txhais ua peb yam lus; vim, tej zaum, lawv yuav muab rau peb ib txoj kev paub txog ib cov noob ntawm cov neeg uas tau puas tsuaj tas lawm, los ntawm cov uas tej ceev xwm txheej no tau los; los sis; tej zaum, lawv yuav muab ib qho kev paub rau peb txog cov neeg uas tau puas tsuaj tag lawm no; thiab kuv xav xav paub txog yam uas ua rau lawv puas tsuaj.
- 13 Nim no Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yeej muaj cuab kav qhia koj, Au vaj ntxwv, txog ib tug txiv neej uas muaj peev xwm txhais tau cov ceev xwm txheej; vim nws muaj tej yam uas nws muaj cuab kav saib, thiab txhais tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej uas yog txheej thaum ub; thiab nws yog ib qho txiaj ntsim los ntawm Vajtswv. Thiab tej yam ntawd hu ua cov txhais lus, thiab tsis muaj neeg muaj cuab kav ntsia tau rau hauv lawv tsuas yog nws raug txib xwb, ntshai nws yuav nrhiav tej uas tsis tsim nyog nws nrhiav thiab nws yuav piam sij. Thiab tus uas raug txib los ntsia hauv lawv, tus ntawd yog hu tib yam ua tus neeg pom tau.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

- 14 Thiab saib seb, tus vaj ntxwv ntawm cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Xalahas yog tus neeg uas raug txib ua tej yam no, thiab tus uas muaj lub txiaj ntsim siab no los ntawm Vajtswv.
- 15 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais tias tus neeg pom tau yog ib tug loj dua li ib tug yaj saub.
- 16 Thiab Amoos tau hais tias tus neeg pom tau yog tus neeg txais kev tshwm sim thiab kuj yog ib tug yaj saub thiab; thiab tsis muaj neeg muaj tau ib lub txiaj ntsim loj dua no, tsuas yog ntshe nws tau Vajtswv lub hwj chim xwb, uas tsis muaj leej twg muaj; tiam sis ib tug neeg yeej muaj tau hwj chim loj muab rau nws los ntawm Vajtswv.
- 17 Tiam sis ib tug neeg pom tau muaj peev xwm paub txog tej yam uas tag los lawm, thiab kuj paub txog tej yam uas yuav muaj los, thiab los ntawm lawv tag nrho txhua yam yuav raug ua kom paub, los sis, yog cia, tej yam uas nraim nkoos yuav raug ua kom paub, thiab tej yam uas muab zais lawm yuav raug los rau qhov ncaj kev, thiab tej uas tsis tau paub txog yuav raug ua kom paub los ntawm lawv, thiab tej yam kuj yuav raug ua kom paub los ntawm lawv uas yog tsis li ces yeej yuav paub tsis tau.
- 18 Li no Vajtswv tau muab ib qho cuab yeej xwv kom neeg, los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, yuav ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj; yog li ntawd nws thiaj rais los mus ua ib qho zoo heev li rau nws tej neeg zej zog.
- 19 Thiab nim no, thaum Amoos tau hais tej lus no tag lawm tus vaj ntxwv tau zoo siab kawg li, thiab tau ua Vajtswv tsaug, hais tias: Paub tseeb tias ib qho txuj ci tseem ceeb uas neeg paub tsis txog nyob hauv cov phiaj no, thiab tej txhais lus no tau raug npaj tseeb los rau lub ntsiab ntawm txoj kev nthuav tawm tag nrho tej txuj ci tseem ceeb li ntawd uas neeg paub tsis txog rau noob neej.
- 20 Au tus Tswv tej hauj lwmm mas zoo kawg nkaus, thiab nws yuav nrog nws cov neeg nyiaj ntev npaum li cas ntxiv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab noob neej tej kev taub mas tsis pom kev thiab tsis thoob tsib li; vim lawv tsis nrhiav txoj kev txawj ntse, thiab lawv tsis xav cia nws ua tus kav lawv!
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv zoo li ib pab yaj qus uas khiav tawm ntawm tus neeg yug yaj mus, thiab khiav ri niab, thiab raug caum, thiab raug tej tsiaj qus tom hav zoov dua noj.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he cometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

XEENAS PHAU CEEV XWM TXHEEṽ—Ib zag txog nws cov neeg, txij li lub sij hawm laʋw tau ncaim thaj av Xalabelas mus txog rau lub sij hawm uas laʋw tau raug coj tawm ntaʋm cov Neeg Lamas tes.

Mauxiyas 9

- 1 Kuv, Xeenas, tau raug qhuab qhia tag nrho ntawm cov Neeg Nifais yam lus, thiab tau muaj ib txoj kev paub txog thaj av Nifais, los sis txog thaj av uas yog peb tej yawg koob thawj qub txeeg qub teg, thiab tau raug xa mus pem cov Neeg Lamas li ib tug tub nyiag xov kom kuv yuav paub tau txog ntawm lawv tej tub rog, xwv kom peb tej tub rog yuav tuaj tau rau saum lawv thiab ua kom lawv puas tsuaj—tiam sis thaum kuv tau pom tej uas zoo nyob nrog lawv kuv tau xav tias yuav tsum tsis txhob ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 2 Yog li ntawd, kuv tau nrog kuv cov kwv tij sab laj nyob tom hav zoov vim kuv xav kom peb tus thawj coj ua ib txog kev sib yeem nrog lawv; tiam sis vim nws yog ib tug neeg nruj neeg tsiv thiab nyiam tua neeg tau txib tias kuv yuav tsum raug tua pov tseg; tiam sis kuv tau raug tso dim los ntawm txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau; vim txiv tawm tsam txiv, thiab kwv tij tawm tsam kwv tij, mus txog thaum peb cov tub rog feem coob tau raug puas tsuaj tas nyob rau hauv hav zoov; thiab peb tau rov qab los, peb cov uas tsis raug tua, mus rau thaj av Xalahelas, los qhia zaj dab neeg ntawd rau lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam.
- 3 Thiab tsis tas li, vim kuv vam xav tau peb tej yawg koob thaj av los ua qub txeeg qub teg heev, thiaj tau sau cov neeg uas xav nce mus muab thaj av coob npaum li yuav coob tau, thiab tau rov pib tsiv dua mus rau hauv hav zoov nce mus rau pem thaj av; tiam sis peb tau raug kev tshaib nqhis thiab kev txom nyem heev; vim peb tau qeeb hnya nco txog tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv.
- 4 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab uas xyuam khuav tau ntau hnuv nyob hauv hav zoov lawm peb tau rub peb cov tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob rau ntawm qhov chaw uas peb cov kwv tij tau raug tua, uas nyob ze rau peb tej yawg koob thaj av.

THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv rov qab tau nrog kuv cov neeg plaub tug mus rau hauv lub nroog, mus rau hauv vaj ntxwv, xwv kom kuv yuav paub txog vaj ntxwv tus cwj pwm, thiab xwv kom kuv yuav paub saib kuv puas yuav nrog kuv cov neeg mus tau rau hauv thiab txais thaj av los nrog kev thaj yeeb.
- 6 Thiab kuv tau mus rau hauv vaj ntxwv, thiab nws tau khi lus nrog kuv tias kuv muaj tau thaj av Lihais-Nifais, thiab thaj av Sailos.
- 7 Thiab nws kuj tau txib kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum tawm ntawm thaj av mus, thiab kuv thiab kuv cov neeg tau mus rau hauv thaj av xwv kom peb yuav tau nws.
- 8 Thiab peb tau pib ua vaj tse, thiab kho lub nroog tej ntsa loog, muaj tseeb tiag, twb kho lub nroog Lihais-Nifais tej ntsa loog, thiab lub nroog Sailos.
- 9 Thiab peb tau pib ncaws ua teb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb nrog tag nrho txhua yam noob, nrog tej noob pob kws, thiab txhuv liab, thiab nplej ua mov ci, thiab nrog noob nias, thiab nrog noob se-as, thiab nrog tag nrho txhua yam noob txiv ntoo; thiab peb tau pib huaj vam thiab vam meej nyob hauv thaj av.
- 10 Nim no nws tau yog vaj ntxwv Lamas txoj kev haub thiab txoj kev ntxias, coj kuv cov neeg mus rau hauv txoj kev ua tauj ua qhev, qhov ntawd nws thiaj tau muab thaj av tso es kom peb thiaj tau nws.
- 11 Yog li ntawd tau muaj tias, tom qab uas peb tau nyob rau hauv thaj av tau ncu a li kaum ob xyoos lawm vaj ntxwv Lamas tau pib txhawj, ntshai tsam muaj ib yam dab tsi yuav ua rau kuv cov neeg muaj zog tuaj nyob hauv thaj av, thiab tsam lawv yuav tsis muaj hwj chim kov yeej lawv thiab coj lawv los rau hauv txoj kev ua tauj ua qhev.
- 12 Nim no lawv yog ib pab neeg tub nkeeg thiab pe dab pe mlom; yog li ntawd lawv tau xav coj peb los mus rau hauv txoj kev ua tauj ua qhev, xwv kom lawv yuav tau zoo nyob dawb los ntawm tej hauj lwm uas peb tej tes ua; muaj tseeb tiag, xwv kom lawv yuav tau noj tej yaj uas nyob tom peb tej liaj.
- 13 Yog li ntawd tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Lamas tau pib txhib nws cov neeg xwv kom lawv yuav sib ntaus nrog kuv cov neeg; yog li ntawd tau pib muaj tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg nyob rau hauv thaj av.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

- 14 Vim, nyob rau xyoo kaum peb ntawm kuv txoj kev kav nyob hauv thaj av Nifais, deb nyob rau thaj av Sailos sab nram hav, thaum kuv cov neeg tseem tab tom ywg dej thiab pub lawv tej pab tsiaj, thiab ncaws lawv tej teb, muaj cov tub rog Lamas coob heev tau tuaj rau saum lawv thiab tau pib tua lawv, thiab txeeb lawv tej pab tsiaj, thiab tej pob kws uas nyob tom lawv tej teb.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau khiav, tag nrho cov uas tsis raug txhom, los rau hauv lub nroog Nifais, thiab tau hu kom kuv pab thaiv.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau muab hneev, thiab xub, ntaj thiab liag, thiab qws, thiab hneev nti roj hmab, thiab tag nrho txhua yam cuab yeej ua rog uas peb muaj peev xwm tsim tau rau lawv, thiab kuv thiab kuv cov neeg tau mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas ua rog.
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv tus Tswv lub zog peb tau mus ua rog tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas; ces kuv thiab kuv cov neeg tau quaj tag zog rau tus Tswv xwv kom nws yuav coj peb dim ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes, vim peb tau tsim rau txoj kev nco txog txoj kev coj dim ntawm peb tej yawg koob.
- 18 Thiab Vajtswv tau hnov peb tej kev quaj thiab tau teb peb tej lus thov; thiab peb tau mus nrog nws lub hwj chim; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, thiab nyob rau hauv ib hnuv thiab ib hmos peb tau tua peb txhiab thiab plaub caug peb leeg; peb tau tua lawv mus txog thaum uas peb tau raws lawv tawm ntawm peb thaj av.
- 19 Thiab kuv, tus kheej, nrog kuv txhais tes kiag, tau pab faus lawv cov neeg tuag. Thiab saib seb, rau peb txoj kev tu siab thiab quaj ntsuag loj, peb cov kwv tij tau raug tuag ob puas thiab xya caum cuaj leeg.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

Mauxiyas 10

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov pib kho lub teb chaws dua thiab peb tau rov pib nyob muaj kev thaj yeeb hauv thaj av dua. Thiab kuv tau kom tias yuav tsum ua cuab yeej tua rog txhua yam, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd kuv yuav muaj tej cuab yeej rau kuv cov neeg rau lub sij hawm thaum cov Neeg Lamas yuav rov qab tuaj ua rog tawm tsam kuv cov neeg dua.
- 2 Thiab kuv tau tso tub zov rooj vag zov ib ncig thaj av, xwv kom cov Neeg Lamas yuav tsis tuaj ntsiag to rau saum peb thiab ua kom peb puas tsuaj; thiab li no kuv tau zov kuv cov neeg thiab kuv tej pab tsiaj, thiab ceev lawv tsis pub kom poob mus rau peb tej yeeb ncuab tes.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau peb tej yawg koob thaj av tau ntau xyoo, muaj tseeb tiag, tau ncuab li nees nkaum thiab ob xyoos.
- 4 Thiab kuv tau kom cov txiv neej yuav tsum ua liaj ua teb, thiab cog tag nrho txhua yam noob thiab tag nrho txhua yam txiv xyoo txiv ntoo.
- 5 Thiab kuv tau kom cov poj niam yuav tsum saws maj saws ntuag, thiab rau siab ua dej num, thiab ua hauj lwm, thiab ua tag nrho tej ntaub zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab khaub ncaws txhua yam, xwv kom peb yuav tau hnav npog peb tej kev liab qab; thiab peb tau vam meej li no nyob hauv thaj av—peb tau muaj kev thaj yeeb li no tsis tu ncuab nyob rau hauv thaj av tau ncuab li nees nkaum thiab ob xyoos.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Lamas tau tuag lawm; thiab nws tus tub tau pib los kav nws qhov chaw. Thiab nws tau pib txhib nws cov neeg kom sawv tawm tsam kuv cov neeg; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib npaj ua rog, thiab nce tuaj ua rog tawm tsam kuv cov neeg.
- 7 Tiam sis kuv tau xa kuv tej tub nyiag xov tawm mus ncig thaj av Seloos, xwv kom kuv yuav nrhiav paub lawv tej kev npaj tos, xwv kom kuv yuav zov tau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tuaj tawm tsam rau kuv cov neeg thiab ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.

Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau nce tuaj rau sab pem toj ntawm thaj av Sailos, nrog lawv cov tub rog coob, tej txiv neej uas muaj hneev, thiab xub, thiab ntaj, thiab liag, thiab pob zeb, thiab hneev nti roj hmab; thiab lawv tau muab lawv tej taub hau chais kom do dus; thiab lawv hnav tej tawv tsiaj ncig lawv tej ntsag.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau kom tias kuv cov neeg tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam yaus mus nkaum rau hauv hav zoov; thiab kuv kuj tau kom tias tag nrho kuv cov neeg laus uas tseem tuav tau riam phom, thiab kuj tag nrho kuv cov neeg hluas uas muaj cuab kav tuav riam phom, yuav tsum sib sau tuaj ua ke mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas; thiab kuv tau muab lawv tso rau lawv qhov chaw, txhua tus txiv neej raws li nws hnuv nyoog.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas; thiab kuv, kuv kiag, hauv kuv hnuv nyoog laus, tseem tau nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau nce mus ntawm tus Tswv lub zog mus ua rog.
- 11 Nim no, cov Neeg Lamas tsis paub dab tsi txog tus Tswv, los sis txog nws lub zog li, yog li ntawd lawv tsuas cia siab rau lawv tus kheej tej zog. Tiam sis lawv kuj yog ib cov neeg muaj zog, yog txog ntawm tib neeg tej zog.
- 12 Lawv tau yog ib co neeg qus, thiab tsiv heev, thiab ib cov neeg nyiam tua neeg, ntseeg lawv cov yawg koob tej kev coj noj coj ua, uas yog li no—Ntseeg tias lawv tau raug raws tawm ntawm daim av Yeluxalees tuaj vim yog lawv cov yawg koob tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, thiab tias lawv tau raug lawv cov kwv tij muab coj yuam kev nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua, thiab lawv kuj raug muab coj yuam kev thaum tab tom hla dej hiav txwv;
- 13 Thiab ntxiv, tias lawv tau raug muab coj yuam kev thaum nyob hauv thaj av uas yog lawv thawj qhov qub txeeg qub teg, tom qab lawv tau hla dej hiav txwv, thiab tag nrho ib puas tsav yam no vim yog tias Nifais tau muaj kev ntseeg coj tus Tswv tej lus txib dua—yog li ntawd nws tau koob hmoov los ntawm tus Tswv, vim tus Tswv tau hnov nws tej lus thov thiab tau teb lawv, thiab nws tau coj lawv txoj kev tsiv nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

- 14 Thiab nws cov kwv tij tau npau taws rau nws vim lawv tsis to taub tus Tswv tej kev ua dej ua num; lawv kuj tau npau rau nws thaum nyob saum cov dej vim lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv rau tus Tswv.
- 15 Thiab ntxiv, lawv tau npau taws rau nws thaum lawv tau tuaj txog rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, vim lawv tau hais tias nws tau muab txoj kev kav cov neeg tawm ntawm lawv tes; thiab lawv tau nrhiav tua nws.
- 16 Thiab ntxiv, lawv tau npau taws rau nws vim nws tau ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov raws li tus Tswv tau txib nws, thiab tau coj cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muaj sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, tias lawv tau hais tias nws tau nyiag ntawm lawv.
- 17 Thiab li no lawv thiaj tau qhia lawv tej me nyuam tias kom lawv ntxub lawv, thiab tias kom lawv tua lawv, thiab tias kom lawv ua tub sab nyiag thiab ua lim hiam rau lawv, thiab ua ib puas yam tsav uas lawv ua tau los rhuav lawv cov no; yog li ntawd lawv muaj ib txoj kev ntxub uas nyob mus ib txhis rau Nifais tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv.
- 18 Vim yog qhov no kiag ntag vaj ntxwv Lamas thiaj tau, los ntawm nws txoj kev haub, thiab txoj kev dag ntxias, thiab nws tej lus cog tseg, tau lauj kuv taw, ces kuv tau coj kuv cov neeg no nce los rau hauv thaj av no, xwv kom lawv yuav rhuav tshem lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tau raug ntau xyoo no nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 19 Thiab nim no kuv, Xeenas, tom qab uas tau qhia tag nrho tej yam no rau kuv cov neeg txog cov Neeg Lamas tas lawm, kuv tau txhawb lawv zog kom mus ua rog nrog lawv lub dag zog, muab lawv txoj kev cia siab rau hauv tus Tswv; yog li ntawd, peb tau nrog lawv sib ceg, tim ntsej tim muag.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov qab raws lawv tawm ntawm peb thaj av dua; thiab peb tau tua lawv tuag neeg coob kawg nkaus, twb coob heev li uas peb twb tsis suav lawv.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov qab los rau hauv peb thaj av dua, thiab kuv cov neeg tau rov pib zov lawv tej yaj dua, thiab ncaws lawv tej av dua.
- 22 Thiab nim no kuv, tau laus lawm, tau tso lub teb chaws rau kuv cov tub ib tug; yog li ntawd, kuv tsis hais ntxiv lawm, thiab thov tus Tswv foom koob hmoov rau kuv cov neeg. Amees.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

Mauxiyas 11

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Xeenas tau muab lub teb chaws tso rau Nau-as, ib tug ntawm nws cov tub; yog li ntawd No-as tau pib kav hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab nws tsis tau taug nws txiv tej kev.
- 2 Vim saib seb, nws tsis tau koj Vajtswv tej lus txib, tiam sis nws tau taug raws li nws tus kheej lub siab xav. Thiab nws tau muaj ntau tus poj niam thiab niam yau. Thiab nws tau kom nws cov neeg ua kev txog txhaum, thiab ua tej uas txaus ntxub nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau ua niam ntiav thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav kev phem.
- 3 Thiab nws tau tsub se ib feem tsib ntawm tag nrho txhua yam lawv muaj, ib feem tsib ntawm lawv tej kub thiab ntawm lawv tej nyiaj, thiab ib feem tsib ntawm lawv tej hlau xiv, thiab ntawm lawv tej tooj liab, thiab ntawm lawv tej tooj dag thiab lawv tej kab; thiab ib feem tsib ntawm lawv tej thav tsiaj; thiab kuj ib feem tsib ntawm tag nrho lawv tej qoob loos.
- 4 Thiab nws tau ua tag nrho ib puas tsav yam no los pab nws tus kheej, thiab nws tej poj niam thiab nws tej niam yau; thiab nws tej pov thawj, thiab lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej niam yau; nws tau hloov lub teb chaws tej kev noj nyob xws li no.
- 5 Vim nws rho tawm tag nrho cov pov thawj uas tau raug xaiv tsa los ntawm nws txiv, thiab tau xaiv tsa cov tshiab los pauv lawv tej chaw, cov uas ua lawv tej siab ntsws muaj plhus ntxiag.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab xws li no lawv tau raug pab cuam nyob hauv lawv txoj kev tub nkeeg, thiab hauv lawv tej kev pe dab pe mlom, thiab hauv lawv tej kev ua niam ntiav, los ntawm tej se uas vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau tsub rau saum nws cov neeg; xwv li no cov neeg tau ua hauj lwm hnyav kawg nkaus pab txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj pib rais los mus pe dab pe mlom, vim lawv tau raug ntxias los ntawm vaj ntxwv thiab tej pov thawj tej lus dag thiab tsis muaj qab hau; vim lawv tau hais tej uas ntxias dag rau lawv.

Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau ua tej tsev zoo nkauj thiab dav ntau lub; thiab nws tau muab lawv tsab zam nrog tej ntoo uas zoo, thiab tag nrho txhua yam muaj nuj nqis, uas yog kub, thiab nyiaj, thiab hlau, thiab tooj dag, thiab hlau xiv, thiab tooj liab;
- 9 Thiab nws kuj tau ua rau nws ib lub tsev huab tais dav heev, thiab ib lub rooj huab tais nyob rau hauv nruab nrab qhov ntawd, tag nrho puav leej yog ntoo zoo thiab yog muab tsab zam nrog kub thiab nyiaj thiab nrog tej yam uas muaj nuj nqis.
- 10 Thiab nws kuj tau kom nws cov neeg ua hauj lwm yuav tsum ua tag nrho txhua yam hauj lwm zoo nyob hauv lub tuam tsev tej ntsa loog, kom yog tej ntoo zoo, thiab tooj liab, thiab tooj dag.
- 11 Thiab tej rooj zaum uas tau tseg cia rau cov pov thawj hlob, uas nyob siab tshaj li lwm cov rooj zaum, nws tau muab tsab zam nrog tseem kub; thiab nws tau kom ua ib daig txiag txij neeg hauv siab rau ntawm lawv xub ntiag, xwv kom lawv yuav tau muab lawv tej cev thiab tej caj npab so rau saud thaum lawv hais tej lus dag thiab tsis muaj qab hau rau nws cov neeg.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ua ib tug pej thuum nyob ze ntawm lub tuam tsev; muaj tseeb tiag, ib tug pej thuum siab heev, twb siab kawg nkaus tias nws muaj peev xwm sawv rau saum qhov kawg ntawd thiab saib pom tag nrho thaj av Sailos, thiab kuj pom thaj av Seloos, uas yog qhov uas cov Neeg Lamas nyob; thiab nws muaj peev xwm ntsia tag nrho rau tej av ib puag ncig.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau kom ua ntau lub tsev nyob rau hauv thaj av Sailos; thiab nws tau kom ua ib tug pej thuum loj rau ntawm lub roob uas nyob sab pem toj ntawm thaj av Sailos, uas tau yog ib qhov chaw nyob rau Nifais tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv nyob rau lub sij hawm lawv tau khiav tawm ntawm thaj av; thiab nws tau ua li no nrog tej kev nplua nuj uas nws tau muab los ntawm txoj kev them se ntawm nws cov neeg.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau muab nws lub siab tso rau nws tej kev nplua nuj, thiab nws siv nws lub sij hawm heev ua phem nrog nws tej poj niam thiab niam yau nyob; thiab nws tej pov thawj los kuj tau siv lawv tej sij hawm nrog tej niam ntiav.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ua vaj txiv hmab
thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av; thiab nws tau txua
tshuab tsuam cawv txiv hmab, thiab tau ua cawv txiv
hmab nplua mias; thiab yog li ntawd nws tau rais los
mus ua ib tug neeg quav cawv, thiab nws cov neeg los
tib yam.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau pib tuaj
tawm tsam nws cov neeg, rau cov uas tej pawg me,
thiab tua lawv nyob tom lawv tej teb, thiab thaum
lawv tseem tab tom zov lawv tej pab tsiaj.
- 17 Thiab vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau xa tej tub zov rooj vag
mus ncig thaj av kom lawv txhob tuaj; tiam sis nws
tsis tau xa neeg txaus, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj
tawm tsam lawv thiab tau tua lawv, thiab tau raws
lawv tej tsiaj ntau tus tawm hauv thaj av mus; cov
Neeg Lamas tau pib rhuav tshem lawv, thiab siv lawv
txoj kev ntxub rau saum lawv li no.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau xa nws
tej tub rog mus tawm tsam lawv, thiab lawv tau raug
raws khiav rov qab mus, los sis lawv tau raws lawv
khiav rov qab ib ntus; yog li ntawd, lawv tau zoo siab
hlo rov qab vim tej khoom lawv txeeb tau.
- 19 Thiab nim no, vim txoj kev yeej loj zaum no lawv
tau ua lawv tej siab ntsws muaj plhus ntxiag; lawv
tau khav txog lawv tus kheej lub zog, hais tias lawv
tsib caug leej twb kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas txhiab
leej; thiab lawv tau khav li no, thiab tau nyiam txo
ntshav, thiab txoj kev ua kom lawv tej kwv tij ntshav
nrog, thiab qhov no los vim yog txoj kev phem
ntawm lawv tus vaj ntxwv thiab tej pov thawj.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib tug txiv neej nrog
lawv nyob uas muaj npe hu ua Anpinadais; thiab
nws tau mus rau hauv lawv, thiab tau pib qhia tej uas
yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, hais tias: Saib seb, tus
Tswv hais li no, thiab nws tau txib kuv li no, hais
tias, Cia li mus thiab hais rau cov neeg no, tus Tswv
hais li no—Kev txom nyem los raug rau cov neeg no,
vim kuv tau pom lawv tej kev qias, thiab lawv tej kev
phem, thiab lawv tej kev ua niam ntiav; thiab tsuas
yog lawv hloov siab lees txim xwb kuv yuav rau txim
rau lawv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards
round about in the land; and he built wine-presses,
and made wine in abundance; and therefore he be-
came a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to
come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and
to slay them in their fields, and while they were tend-
ing their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land
to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient
number, and the Lamanites came upon them and
killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the
land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and
to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies
against them, and they were driven back, or they
drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned
rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were
lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in
their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand
against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they
did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding
of the blood of their brethren, and this because of
the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among
them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth
among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold,
thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded
me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus
saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have
seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and
their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit
them in mine anger.

- 21 Thiab tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig mus cuag tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv xwb, tsis li ces, saib seb, kuv yuav muab lawv mus rau hauv lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv yuav raug coj mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev; thiab lawv yuav raug kev tsim txom los ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes.
- 22 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias lawv yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab yog ib tug Vajtswv muaj khib, los xyuas rau tej kev tsis ncaj ncees ntawm kuv cov neeg.
- 23 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tsuas yog cov neeg no yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov qab mus cuag tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv xwb, tsis li ces lawv yuav raug coj mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev; thiab yuav tsis muaj leej twg yuav cawm tau lawv li, tsuas yog tus Tswv Vajtswv tus uas muaj hwj chim loj kawg nkaus xwb.
- 24 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav tau muaj tias thaum uas lawv yuav quaj thov kuv yuav hnov lawv tej lus thov qeeb; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav cia kom lawv raug nplawm los ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab.
- 25 Thiab tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim nyob hauv txoj kev muab hnab tsaj los npua thiab tsuab tshauv los nphoo, thiab sib sib zog quaj thov rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv xwb, tsis li ces kuv yuav tsis hnov lawv tej lus thov, los sis kuv yuav tsis coj lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej kev txom nyem; thiab tus Tswv hais li no, thiab nws tau txib kuv li no.
- 26 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Anpinadais tau hais tej lus no rau lawv tas lawm lawv tau npau taws rau nws, thiab tau nrhiav txo nws txoj sia; tiam sis tus Tswv tau pab nws dim ntawm lawv tes.
- 27 Nim no thaum vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau hnov tej lus uas Anpinadais tau hais rau cov neeg, nws kuj npau taws thiab; thiab nws tau hais tias: Anpinadais yog leej twg, es kuv thiab kuv cov neeg yuav tsum raug txiav txim los ntawm nws, los sis tus Tswv yog leej twg, es yuav coj txoj kev txom nyem loj li ntawd los rau kuv cov neeg?
- 28 Kuv txib nej mus coj Anpinadais los ntawm no, xwv kom kuv yuav muab nws tua, vim nws tau hais tej yam no xwv kom nws yuav txhib kom kuv cov neeg ib leeg npau taws rau ib leeg, thiab ua kom muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv kuv cov neeg; yog li ntawd kuv yuav muab nws tua pov tseg.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

29 Nim no cov neeg tej qhov muag tau dig tas lawm;
yog li ntawd lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb
qhawv rau Anpinadais tej lus, thiab lawv tau nrhiav
txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus yuav txhom nws.
Thiab vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau ua nws lub siab tawv
qhwb qhawv rau tus Tswv txoj lus, thiab nws tsis tau
hloov siab lees txim ntawm nws tej kev ua phem.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; there-
fore they hardened their hearts against the words of
Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to
take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against
the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his
evil doings.

Mauxiyas 12

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab tau ncuu li ob xyoos Anpinadais tuaj nrog lawv nyob pauv khaub ncaws ntsej muag, xwv kom lawv tsis paub nws, thiab tau pib qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej nyob hauv lawv, hais tias: Tus Tswv tau txib kuv li no, hais tias—Anpinadais es, cia li mus thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau kuv cov neeg, vim lawv tau ua lawv tej siab ntsws tawv qhwb qhawv rau kuv tej lus; lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev ua phem li; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav los xyuas lawv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws heev kuv yuav los xyuas lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tej kev qias.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem raug rau tiam neeg no! Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Xyab koj txhais tes thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej hais tias: Tus Tswv hais li no, yuav tau muaj tias tiam neeg no, vim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, yuav raug coj mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev, thiab yuav raug ntaus ntawm plhu; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav raug neeg raws, thiab yuav raug tua; thiab tej dav noj nyuj uas nyob saum nruab ntug, thiab tej dev, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tej tsiaj qus, yuav dua lawv tej nqaij noj.
- 3 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as txoj sia yuav muaj nuj nqis ib yam li ib ce ris tsho uas nyob hauv ib lub rooj qhov txos uas kub heev; vim nws yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv.
- 4 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias kuv yuav ua kom kuv cov neeg no raug tej kev txom nyem heev, muaj tseeb tiag, yuav raug kev tshaib plab thiab kev mob teb hlob; thiab kuv yuav ua kom lawv yuav quaj tag hnuv.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav ua kom lawv yuav muaj nra hnyav rau saum lawv nraub qaum; thiab lawv yuav raug cab mus zoo li ib tug luj ruam.
- 6 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias kuv yuav xa lawg los rau lawv, thiab tej lawg ntawd yuav ntaus lawv; thiab lawv kuj yuav raug tej cua sab hnuv tuaj nplawm; thiab tej kab ntsaum kuj yuav ua kom lawv tej av muaj teeb meem, thiab noj lawv tej noob qoob noob loos.

Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

7 Thiab lawv yuav raug kev txom nyem los ntawm tej kev mob teb hlob—thiab kuv yuav ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no vim yog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tej kev qias.

8 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ces kuv yuav rhuav kom lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb mus; tiam sis lawv yuav tseg ib phau ceev xwm txheej cia rov tom lawv qab, thiab kuv yuav tsom kwm lawv rau lwm haiv neeg uas yuav tau nyob hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv twb yuav ua li no xwv kom kuv yuav qhia tau cov neeg no tej kev qias rau lwm haiv neeg. Thiab Anpinadais tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam nkaug cov neeg no.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau npau taws rau nws; thiab lawv tau txhom nws thiab muab nws khi cab mus rau vaj ntxwv, thiab tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tias: Saib seb, peb tau coj ib tug txiv neej tuaj rau koj tus uas tau qhia tej kev phem uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntsig txog koj cov neeg, thiab tau hais tias Vajtswv yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.

10 Thiab nws kuj tau qhia tej kev phem uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntsig txog koj txoj sia, thiab tau hais tias koj txoj sia yuav raug zoo li ib ce ris tsho uas nyob hauv ib lub rooj qhov txos uas kub heev.

11 Thiab ntxiv, nws tau hais tias koj yuav zoo li tej quav nyab npleg, twb zoo li tej quav nyab npleg qhuav tom teb, uas raug tej tsiaj qus khiav saud thiab tsuj hauv lawv tej qab xib taws.

12 Thiab ntxiv, nws tau hais tias koj yuav zoo li tej paj pos tawg, uas, thaum nws tawg nra lawm, yog cua tuaj ntsawj, nws yuav raug ntsawj mus rau saum thaj av. Thiab nws tau ua txuj tias tus Tswv tau hais tej ntawd. Thiab nws tau hais tias tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no yuav los rau koj tsuas yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, thiab tej no yuav muaj los vim yog koj tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.

13 Thiab nim no, Au vaj ntxwv es, muaj yam phem loj tus dab tsi uas koj tau ua lawm, los sis yam kev txhaum loj tus dab tsi uas koj cov neeg tau ua txhaum, es kom peb yuav raug Vajtswv rau txim los sis txiav txim los ntawm tus txiv neej no?

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

- 14 Thiab nim no, Au vaj ntxwv es, saib seb, peb tsis muaj txim tus dab tsi, thiab koj, Au vaj ntxwv es, tsis tau ua txhaum; yog li ntawd, tus txiv neej no tau dag ntsig txog koj lawm, thiab nws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej tsis muaj qab hau.
- 15 Thiab saib seb, peb muaj dag muaj zog, peb yuav los tsis tau mus ua qhev, los sis raug txhom mus los ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab koj tau vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av, thiab koj kuj tseem yuav vam meej ntxiv.
- 16 Saib seb, ntawm no yog tus txiv neej ntawd, peb koj nws tuaj rau koj tes; koj ua rau nws raws li koj nyiam.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as tau kom Anpinadais yuav tsum raug pov rau hauv qhov taub; thiab nws tau txib kom cov pov thawj yuav tsum sib sau tuaj ua ke kom nws yuav tau sab laj nrog lawv saib nws yuav ua dab tsi rau Anpinadais.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tias: Coj nws los ntawm no xwv kom peb yuav tau nug nws; thiab vaj ntxwv tau txib kom koj nws los rau lawv.
- 19 Thiab lawv tau pib nug nws, xwv kom lawv yuav ua kom nws tws lus, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav muaj tej yam los liam nws; tiam sis nws tau teb lawv yam tsis zais li, thiab tau teb tag nrho lawv tej lus nug, muaj tseeb tiag, rau lawv txoj kev yoob; vim nws tau teb tag nrho lawv tej lus nug, thiab tau ua rau lawv ntsiag tag nrho ntawm lawv tej lus.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv muaj ib tug tau hais rau nws tias: Muaj lub ntsiab li cas tej lus uas raug muab sau cia lawm, thiab tej uas peb tej yawg koob tau qhia lawm, hais tias:
- 21 Zoo nkauj cuag cas nyob saum tej roob rau tej ko taw ntawm nws tus uas koj tej moo zoo los; uas yuav tsim txoj kev thaj yeeb; uas yuav koj tej moo zoo ntawm qhov zoo; uas tsim txoj kev cawm seeg; uas hais rau Xi-oos tias, Koj tus Vajtswv kav;
- 22 Koj tej neeg zov xyuas yuav tsa lawv tej suab; lawv yuav hu nkauj nrog tej suab ua ke; vim lawv yuav pom qhov muag rau qhov muag thaum tus Tswv yuav koj Xi-oos rov qab los;
- 23 Cia li tawg plho los rau hauv txoj kev xyiv fab; cia li hu nkauj ua ke, nej tej chaw uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm Yeluxalees; vim tus Tswv tau nplij nws cov neeg, nws tau txhiv Yeluxalees;

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

24 Tus Tswv tau hle nws txhais npab dawb huv rau ntawm txhua haiv neeg lub qhov muag, thiab tag nrho hauv qab ntuj kawg yuav pom peb tus Vajtsv txoj kev cawm dim?

25 Thiab nim no Anpinadais tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej cov uas yog pov thawj, thiab ua txuj qhia cov neeg no, thiab kom to taub txog tus ntsuj plig txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab tseem xav paub los ntawm kuv saib tej yam no muaj lub ntsiab dab tsi los?

26 Kuv hais rau nej tias, kev txom nyem raug rau nej vim txoj kev ntxeev tus Tswv tej kev! Vim yog nej to taub tej yam no nej twb tsis tau qhia lawv; yog li ntawd, nej tau ntxeev tus Tswv tej kev.

27 Nej tsis tau muab nej tej siab siv rau txoj kev to taub; yog li ntawd, nej tseem tsis tau ntse. Yog li ntawd, nej qhia yam dab tsi rau cov neeg no?

28 Thiab lawv tau hais tias: Peb qhia Mauxes txoj kev cai.

29 Thiab nws hais rau lawv ntxiv tias: Yog nej qhia Mauxes txoj kev cai vim li cas nej ho tsis koj nws? Vim li cas nej ho cia nej tej siab rau saum tej kev nplua nuj? Vim li cas nej ho ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug thiab siv nej tej dag zog nrog niam ntiaiv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ua kom cov neeg no ua txhaum, xwv kom tus Tswv muaj num xa kuv los qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej nkaug cov neeg no, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib qho kev phem loj heev nkaug rau cov neeg no?

30 Nej tsis paub tias kuv hais qhov tseeb no los? Muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej paub tias kuv hais qhov tseeb; thiab tsim nyog nej ntshai tshee hnyo rau Vajtsv.

31 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias nej yuav raug txim vim nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, vim nej tau hais tias nej qhia Mauxes txoj kev cai. Thiab nej paub txog Mauxes txoj kev cai tus dab tsi? Kev cawm seeg puas yog los ntawm Mauxes txoj kev cai? Nej hais li cas?

32 Thiab lawv tau teb thiab tau hais tias txoj kev cawm seeg twb tau los ntawm Mauxes txoj kev cai.

33 Tiam sis nim no Anpinadais tau hais rau lawv tias: Kuv paub tias yog nej koj Vajtsv tej lus txib nej yeej yuav dim; muaj tseeb tiag, yog nej koj tej lus txib uas tus Tswv tau muab rau Mauxes saum lub roob Xinais, hais tias:

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

- 34 Kuv yog tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv, tus uas tau coj nej tawm ntawm teb chaws Iyiv, tawm ntawm lub tsev raug txim.
- 35 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj lwm tus Vajtswv ua ntej kuv.
- 36 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob puab mlom rau nej, los sis ib yam dab tsi uas zoo li tej uas nyob saum ntuj, los sis tej uas nyob puag hauv nruab tiv txwv.
- 37 Nim no Anpinadais tau hais rau lawv tias, Nej puas tau ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau, nej tsis tau ua. Thiab nej puas tau qhia cov neeg no tias lawv yuav tsum ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau, nej tsis tau qhia.

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

Mauxiyas 13

- 1 Thiab nim no thaum vaj ntxwv tau hnov tej lus no, nws tau hais rau nws cov pov thawj tias: Coj tus neeg no mus, thiab muab nws tua; vim muaj tus xwm txheej tus dab tsi uas peb yuav ua nrog nws, vim nws yog ib tus neeg vwm.
- 2 Thiab lawv tau txav zog mus thiab npaj txhom nws; tiam sis nws tau tiv thaiv lawv, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias:
- 3 Tsis txhob tuav kuv, vim Vajtswv yuav rau txim rau nej yog nej tso nej tej tes rau saum kuv, vim kuv tsis tau muab txoj xov xwm uas tus Tswv tau xa kuv tuaj qhia; thiab kuv twb tsis tau qhia nej tej uas nej nug kom kuv qhia; yog li ntawd, Vajtswv yuav tsis cia kuv raug puas tsuaj nyob rau lub sij hawm no.
- 4 Tiam sis kuv yuav tsum ua kom tej lus txib uas Vajtswv tau txib kuv lawm kom tiav; thiab vim kuv tau qhia nej qhov tseeb nej thiaj npau taws rau kuv. Thiab ntxiv, vim kuv tau hais Vajtswv txoj lus nej thiaj tau txiav txim rau kuv tias kuv yog neeg vwm.
- 5 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Anpinadais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov neeg thiaj tsis muaj cuab kav cev lawv tej tes rau nws, vim tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau nyob saum nws; thiab nws lub ntsej muag ci ntsa iab heev kawg nkaus li, twb ib yam li Mauxes thaum uas nyob saum lub roob Xinais, lub sij hawm thaum tab tom nrog tus Tswv sib tham.
- 6 Thiab nws tau hais lus nrog lub hwj chim thiab txoj cai los ntawm Vajtswv; thiab nws tau hais nws tej lus ntxiv, hais tias:
- 7 Nej pom tias nej tsis muaj hwj chim tua kuv, yog li ntawd kuv yuav hais kom kuv cov xov xwm tas. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv paub tias nws hlais nej mus rau puag hauv nruab siab vim kuv qhia nej qhov tseeb txog nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv tej lus ua rau nej xav tsis thoob thiab ntshai, thiab ua rau nej npau taws.
- 9 Tiam sis kuv qhia kom kuv tej xov xwm tas; thiab tom qab ntawd nws tsis ua li cas txawm kuv yuav mus qhov twg los xij, yog nws muaj tau tias kuv tseem raug dim.
- 10 Tiam sis kuv qhia nej npaum li no, yam uas nej ua rau kuv, tom qab no, yuav yog ib yam cim thiab ib tug xyw ntawm tej uas yuav muaj los.

Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

- 11 Thiab nim no kuv nyeem rau nej Vajtswv tej lus txib uas seem tshuav, vim kuv paub tias lawv tsis tau raug muab sau rau hauv nej tej siab; kuv paub tias nej tau kawm thiab tau qhia txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees feem ntau ntawm nej lub neej.
- 12 Thiab nim no, nej nco tias kuv tau hais rau nej tias: Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob puab mlom rau nej, los sis ib yam dab tsi uas zoo li tej uas nyob saum ntuj, los sis tej uas nyob puag hauv nruab tiv txwv, los sis tej uas nyob hauv dej uas nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb sab hauv.
- 13 Thiab ntxiv: Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob pe lawv, los sis tsis txhob tu lawv; vim kuv tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv yog ib tug Vajtswv uas khib heev, los xyuas tej kev tsis ncaj ncees ntawm tej yawg koob rau saum tej me nyuam, mus rau tiam peb thiab tiam plaub neeg ntawm lawv cov uas ntxub kuv;
- 14 Thiab qhia ntsis txoj kev hlub tshua rau lawv txhiab txhiab tus uas hlub kuv thiab coj kuv tej lus txib.
- 15 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob muab tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv lub npe coj mus xyav ua si khuav; vim tus Tswv yuav tsis suav rau tus uas coj nws lub npe mus hais ua dog ua dig tias tsis muaj txim.
- 16 Nco ntsoov hnuv caiv, ceev nws kom dawb huv.
- 17 Nej yuav ua hauj lwm rau hnuv, thiab ua tag nrho nej tej hauj lwm;
- 18 Tiam sis hnuv xya, hnuv caiv ntawm tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv, nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua ib yam hauj lwm dab tsi, nej, los sis nej tej tub, los sis nej tej ntxhais, nej tej tub qhe, los sis nej tej ntxhais qhev, los sis nej tej tsiaj txhu, los sis tej qhua uas nyob sab hauv nej tej vaj tse;
- 19 Vim tus Tswv tau tsim lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb no, thiab dej hiav txwv, thiab tag nrho tej uas nyob hauv nyob rau hauv rau hnuv; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov rau hnuv caiv, thiab ua kom nws dawb huv.
- 20 Nej yuav tsum hwm nej niam thiab nej txiv, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav muaj sia ua neej nyob ntev hauv lub teb chaws uas tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv muab pub rau nej.
- 21 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob tua neeg.
- 22 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob deev luag poj luag txiv. Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua tub sab tub nyiag.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

- 23 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua tim khawv tsis tseeb nkaug nej tej neeg zej zog.
- 24 Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ntshaw nej tej neeg zej zog tej vaj tej tsev, nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ntshaw nej tej neeg zej zog tej poj tej sev, los sis nws tej tub qhev, los sis nws tej ntxhais qhev, los sis nws tej nyuj, los sis nws tej zag, los sis ib yam dab tsi uas yog nej tej neeg zej zog li.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas Anpinadais tau hais cov lus no tag lawm ces nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej puas tau qhia rau cov neeg no tias lawv yuav tsum mob siab ua tag nrho tej yam no huv tib si thiaj li yuav coj tau tej lus txib no?
- 26 Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau qhia; vim yog nej tau qhia, ces tus Tswv yuav tsis tau kom kuv tuaj thiab qhia tej kev phem uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog cov neeg no.
- 27 Thiab nim no nej tau hais tias txoj kev cawm seeg los ntawm Mauxes txoj kev cai los. Kuv hais rau nej tias tsim nyog nej yuav coj Mauxes txoj kev cai tib yam; tiam sis kuv hais rau nej, tias yuav muaj ib lub caij los uas tsis tsim nyog coj Mauxes txoj kev cai ntxiv li lawm.
- 28 Thiab tsis tas li ntawd, kuv hais rau nej tias, txoj kev cawm seeg tsis yog yuav los ntawm txoj kev cai xwb; thiab yog hais tias nws tsis yog txoj kev theej txhoj, uas Vajtswv tus kheej yuav ua rau nws cov neeg tej kev txog txhaum thiab kev tsis ncaj ncees, ces lawv yuav zam tsis dhau txoj kev piam sij, txawm tias muaj Mauxes txoj kev cai.
- 29 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias nws tsim nyog yuav tsum muaj ib txoj kev cai muab rau cov neeg Ixayees, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib txoj kev cai uas nruj heev; vim lawv tau yog ib cov neeg tawv ncauj, ua kev tsis ncaj ncees nrawm, thiab nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qeeb;
- 30 Yog li ntawd thiaj tau muaj ib txoj kev cai muab rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib txoj kev cai ntawm tej kev ua thiab ntawm tej kab ke, yog ib txoj kev cai uas lawv tau raug coj nruj ib hnub dhau ib hnub, pab kom lawv nco txog Vajtswv thiab lawv tej dej num rau nws.
- 31 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, tag nrho tej yam no yog tej cim ntawm tej uas yuav muaj los.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

32 Thiab nim no, lawv puas to taub txoj kev cai? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis to taub, tsis yog lawv tag nrho to taub txoj kev cai; thiab qhov no yog vim lawv tej siab ntsws pheej lawv qhwb qhawv; vim lawv tsis to taub tias tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg uas yuav dim tau tsuas yog dhau los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev txhiv dim xwb.

33 Vim saib seb, Mauxes tsis tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau lawv txog txoj kev nqis los ntawm tus Mexiyas, thiab tias Vajtswv yuav txhiv nws cov neeg no los? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho tej yaj saub uas tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txij li thaum lub ntiaj teb tau pib muaj—lawv tsis tau hais ntau los sis tsawg txog tej yam no los?

34 Lawv tsis tau hais tias Vajtswv tus kheej yuav nqis los nrog noob neej nyob, thiab los yug ua tib neeg, thiab tawm mus nrog lub hwj chim loj nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb no los?

35 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tsis tau hais tias nws yuav rhawv kom tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag lawm, thiab tias nws, tus kheej, yuav tsum raug kev nyuaj siab thiab kev txom nyem no los?

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mauxiyas 14

- 1 Muaj tseeb tiag, Yaxayas tau hais tias: Leej twg tau ntseeg peb tej kev tshaj tawm, thiab tus Tswv txhais caj npab tau taw rau leej twg?
- 2 Vim nws yuav loj hlob ntawm nws zoo li ib tsob nroj mos, thiab zoo li ib tug cag uas tawm hauv tej av qhuav tuaj; nws tsis muaj qauv los sis tsis muaj kev zoo nkauj; thiab thaum peb pom nws tsis muaj ib qho zoo nkauj uas peb xav tau nws li.
- 3 Nws raug tib neeg tsis quav ntsej thiab tsis lees yuav; yog ib tug neeg uas muaj kev nyuaj siab, thiab paub txog kev tu siab; thiab peb nraim peb tej ntsej muag rau nws; nws tau raug tsis quav ntsej, thiab peb xav tsis txog nws.
- 4 Nws tau tiv peb tej kev nyuaj siab, thiab ris peb tej kev txom nyem tiag li; tiam sis peb tseem tau ntxiv mob rau nws raug mob, raug txim los ntawm Vajtswv, thiab raug kev txom nyem.
- 5 Tiam sis nws tau raug mob rau peb tej kev txog txhaum, nws raug doog ntshav rau peb tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; txoj kev qhuab ntuas ntawm peb txoj kev thaj yeeb twb nyob rau saum nws; thiab nrog nws tej tawv nqaij txaij peb raug kho zoo.
- 6 Peb tag nrho, zoo li tej yaj, uas tau mus yuam kev lawm; peb txhua tus tau tig mus rau nws tus kheej txoj kev; thiab tus Tswv tau muab tag nrho peb tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tso rau saum nws.
- 7 Nws tau raug nyuaj siab, thiab nws tau raug txom nyem, tiam sis nws twb tsis qhib nws lub qhov ncauj; nws raug coj yam li tus me nyuam yaj mus rau tus neeg tua yaj, thiab yam li ib tug yaj ruam uas coj mus rau nws tej neeg laws tawv yaj es nws thiaj tsis qhib nws lub qhov ncauj.
- 8 Nws tau raug coj tawm hauv qhov taub thiab hauv kev txiav txim; thiab leej twg yuav tshaj nws tiam neeg? Vim nws tau raug faib tawm ntawm lub teb chaws ntawm cov neeg muaj sia; vim tej kev txog txhaum ntawm kuv cov neeg nws thiaj tau raug tuag.
- 9 Thiab nws tau mus rau nws lub qhov ntxa nrog cov neeg phem, thiab nrog cov neeg nplua nuj nyob hauv nws txoj kev tuag; vim nws tsis tau ua phem dab tsi, thiab tsis muaj ib lo lus dag ntxias nyob hauv nws lub qhov ncauj.

Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

10 Tiam sis qhov ntawd zoo tus Tswv siab kom nws doog ntshav; nws tau muab nws tso rau hauv txoj kev nyuaj siab; thaum nej yuav muab nws tus kheej txi rau txoj kev txhaum nws yuav pom nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, nws yuav ua kom nws lub neej ntev, thiab tus Tswv txoj kev zoo siab yuav huaj vam nyob hauv nws tes.

11 Nws yuav pom txoj kev txom nyem ntawm nws tus kheej, thiab yuav raug txaus siab; los ntawm nws txoj kev txawj ntse kuv tus tub qhe ncaj ncees yuav kho tau ntau tus kom ncaj; vim nws yuav ris lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.

12 Yog li ntawd kuv puas yuav faib ib qho rau nws nrog tus uas muaj hwj chim, thiab nws yuav faib tej ntawd rau cov uas muaj zog; vim nws tau nchuav nws tus kheej rau hauv txoj kev tuag; thiab nws tau raug suav nrog cov neeg ua txhaum; thiab nws tau ris ntau tus tej kev txog txhaum, thiab ua kev pab rau tej neeg ua txog txhaum.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

Mauxiyas 15

- 1 Thiab nim no Anpinadais tau hais rau lawv tias: Kuv xav kom nej to taub tias Vajtswv tus kheej yuav nqis los nrog neeg nyob, thiab yuav los txhiv nws cov neeg.
- 2 Thiab vim nws nyob ua neej ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv nws yuav raug hu ua Vajtswv Leej Tub, thiab vim tau ywj lub cev nqaij daim tawv ua raws li Leej Txiv lub siab nyiam, thiaj yog Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub—
- 3 Yog Leej Txiv, vim nws tau xeeb los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim, thiab yog Leej Tub, vim ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv; yog li ntawd thiaj peem tsheej los mus ua Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub—
- 4 Thiab nkawd yog tib tug Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag, yog kias tus Leej Txiv uas Muaj Txoj Sia Nyob Mus Ib Txhis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiab teb no.
- 5 Thiab li no cev nqaij daim tawv tau raug ywj rau tus Ntsuj Plig, los sis muab Leej Tub rau Leej Txiv, uas yog tib tug Vajtswv, yuav tiv txoj kev haub ntxias, thiab yuav tsis kam qaug mus rau txoj kev haub ntxias, tiam sis cia nws tus kheej raug thuam, thiab nplawm, thiab ntiab tawm, thiab nws cov neeg tsis yuav.
- 6 Thiab tom qab ib puas yam tsav no, tom qab ua ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb loj nyob hauv tib neeg, nws yuav raug coj, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav zoo ib yam li Yaxayas tau hais tias, coj ib yam li ib tug yaj ruam los rau tus neeg laws tawv yaj, ces nws thiaj tsis qhib nws lub qhov ncauj li.
- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb yuav tau raug coj mus ntsia saum ntoo khaub lig, thiab raug tua, cev nqaij daim tawv rais los mus ywj rau txoj kev tuag, Leej Tub lub siab nyiam raug nqos mus rau ntawm Leej Txiv lub siab nyiam.
- 8 Thiab li no Vajtswv tu txoj kev tuag tej hlua, tau kov yeej txoj kev tuag; muab hlo lub hwj chim rau Leej Tub ua kev pab rau noob neej—

Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

- 9 Tau nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, muaj ntsoov siab mos siab muag puv npo; muaj ntsoov kev hlub tshua rau noob neej puv npo; sawv nrees nruab nrab ntawm lawv thiab txoj kev txim lij; tau tu txoj kev tuag tej hlua, tau ris lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab lawv tej kev txog txhaum rau saum nws, tau txhiv lawv dim, thiab tau ua raws li txoj kev txim lij tej kev xav tau.
- 10 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej, leej twg yuav tshaj tawm nws tiam neeg? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias thaum nws tus kheej tau raug txi rau txoj kev txog txhaum nws yuav pom nws tej noob. Thiab nim no nej yuav hais li cas? Thiab leej twg yuav yog nws tej noob?
- 11 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias tag nrho cov uas tau hnov cov yaj saub tej lus, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov yaj saub dawb huv uas tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tus Tswv txoj kev nqis los—Kuv hais rau nej, tias tag nrho cov uas tau hnov lawv tej lus, thiab tau ntseeg tias tus Tswv yuav txhiv nws cov neeg dim, thiab tau tos ntsoov rau hnuv uas yuav zam lawv tej kev txog txhaum ntawd, kuv hais rau nej tias, cov no yog nws cov xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, los sis lawv yog cov uas yuav tau Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj los ua lawv tug.
- 12 Vim cov no yog lawv cov uas nws tau ris lawv tej kev txog txhaum; lawv cov no yog cov uas nws tau tuag rau, tau txhiv lawv dim ntawm lawv tej kev txog txhaum. Thiab nim no, lawv tsis yog nws tej noob los?
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab puas yog tej yaj saub, txhua txhia tus uas tau qhib nws lub qhov ncauj qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, uas tsis tau poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txog txhaum, kuv hais tag nrho cov yaj saub dawb huv txij puag thaum lub ntiaj teb chiv? Kuv hais rau nej tias lawv yog nws tej noob.
- 14 Thiab cov no yog lawv cov uas tau tsim kev thaj yeeb, cov uas tau coj tej moo zoo ntawm qhov zoo, cov uas tau tsim txoj kev cawm seeg; thiab tau hais rau Xi-00s tias: Koj tus Vajtswv kav!
- 15 Thiab Au lawv tej ko taw zoo nkauj npaum li cas nyob saum tej roob!
- 16 Thiab ntxiv, tej ko taw zoo nkauj npaum li cas nyob saum tej roob rau ntawm lawv cov uas tseem tab tom tsim txoj kev thaj yeeb!

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

17 Thiab ntxiv, zoo nkauj npaum li cas nyob saum tej roob rau tej ko taw ntawm lawv cov uas yuav tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob yav tom ntej, muaj tseeb tiag, txij lub caij no mus thiab mus ib txhis li!

18 Thiab saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, tsis tag li no xwb. Vim Au tej ko taw zoo nkauj cuag cas nyob saum tej roob rau nws tus uas coj tej moo zoo los, uas yog tus tsim txoj kev thaj yeeb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tus Tswv, tus uas tau txhiv nws cov neeg dim; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tus uas tau pub txoj kev cawm seeg rau nws cov neeg;

19 Vim yog tias tsis yog los ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim uas nws tau ua rau nws cov neeg, uas tau raug npaj txij li puag thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los ces, kuv hais rau nej tias, yog tsis yog li no ces, tib neeg sawv daws tus yuav tsum raug piam sij.

20 Tiam sis saib seb, txoj kev tuag tej hlua yuav raug tu, thiab Leej Tub yuav kav, thiab muaj hwj chim rau saum cov tuag; yog li ntawd, nws ua kom muaj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag.

21 Thiab muaj ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, twb yog thawj thawj txoj kev uas sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov uas tau nyob tas lawm, thiab cov tseem nyob ziag no, thiab cov uas tseem yuav nyob, kom mus txog thaum Khetos txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los—vim li no nws yuav raug hu li ntawd.

22 Thiab nim no, txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm tag nrho cov yaj saub, thiab tag nrho cov uas tau ntseeg lawv tej lus, los sis tag nrho cov uas tau coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, yuav sawv los ntawm thawj zaug kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; yog li ntawd, lawv yog thawj txog kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.

23 Lawv raug sawv los nrog Vajtswv tus uas tau txhiv lawv dim nyob; yog li ntawd lawv muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis dhau los ntawm Khetos, tus uas tau tu txoj kev tuag tej hlua.

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

24 Thiab cov no yog cov uas tau muaj feem nyob hauv txoj kev sawv hauv thawj qhov tuag rov qab los; thiab cov no yog lawv cov uas tau tuag ua ntej Khetos los, nyob hauv lawv tej kev tawv ncauj, tsis tau muaj txoj kev cawm seeg tshaj tawm rau lawv. Thiab xws li no tus Tswv coj txoj kev txum tim rov qab los ntawm cov no; thiab lawv muaj feem nyob rau hauv thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, los sis muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, tau raug txhiv dim los ntawm tus Tswv.

25 Thiab tej me nyuam yaus kuj tau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis thiab.

26 Tiam sis saib seb, thiab cia li ntshai, thiab cia li tshee hnyo rau Vajtswv, vim tsim nyog nej yuav tsum tshee hnyo; vim tus Tswv yuav tsis txhiv ib tug twg uas ntseeb siab tawm tsam nws thiab tuag nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum; muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho cov uas tau piam sij nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum txij li thaum lub ntiaj teb chiv los, cov uas tau ntseeb siab hlo tawm tsam Vajtswv, cov uas tau paub Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab tsis coj lawv; cov no yog lawv cov uas yuav tsis muaj feem nyob hauv thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.

27 Yog li ntawd puas tsim nyog nej cia li tshee hnyo? Vim txoj kev cawm seeg yuav tsis los rau ib tug twg uas zoo li ntawd; vim tus Tswv tsis tau txhiv ib tug twg uas zoo li ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus Tswv txhiv tsis tau tus uas zoo li ntawd; vim nws tsis muaj cuab kav tsis lees nws tus kheej; vim nws tsis muaj cuab kav tsis lees txais txoj kev txim lij thaum nws muaj nws txoj cai.

28 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias lub sij hawm yuav los xwv kom tus Tswv txoj kev cawm seeg yuav raug tshaj tawm rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg.

29 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv es, koj tej neeg zov xyuas yuav tsa lawv tej suab; lawv yuav hu nkauj nrog tej suab ua ke; vim lawv yuav pom qhov muag rau qhov muag thaum tus Tswv yuav coj Xi-oos rov qab los;

30 Cia li tawg plho los rau hauv txoj kev xyiv fab; cia li hu nkauj ua ke, nej tej chaw uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm Yeluxalees; vim tus Tswv tau nplij nws cov neeg, nws tau txhiv Yeluxalees.

31 Tus Tswv tau thws nws txhais npab dawb huv rau ntawm txhua haiv neeg lub qhov muag, thiab tag nrho hauv qab ntuj kawg yuav pom peb tus Vajtswv txoj kev cawm dim.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

Mauxiyas 16

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias tom qab uas Anpinadais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm nws tau xyab nws txhais tes thiab hais tias: Lub sij hawm yuav los thaum uas tag nrho sawv daws yuav pom tus Tswv txoj kev cawm seeg; thaum txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab neeg yuav pom ntawm qhov muag tim qhov muag thiab yuav lees txim rau Vajtswv tias nws tej kev txiav txim mas ncaj ncees.
- 2 Thiab thaum ntawd cov neeg phem yuav raug ntiab tawm, thiab lawv yuav raug ua kom quaj nrov nrov, thiab nyiav, thiab quaj, thiab tom lawv tej hniav qees; thiab li no los vim yog lawv tsis mloog tus Tswv lub suab; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tsis txhiv lawv.
- 3 Vim lawv yog neeg ntiav teb thiab phem li dab, thiab tus dab muaj hwj chim kav lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tus nab txwj nab laug uas tau dag ntxias peb thawj nkawg niam txiv, uas yog qhov uas ua rau nkawd poob; uas tau yog qhov uas ua rau tib neeg sawv daws rais los mus ua neeg ntiav teb, ua raws li cev nqaij daim tawv nyiam, phem li dab, paub qhov phem tawm ntawm qhov zoo, cia lawv tus kheej ywj rau tus dab.
- 4 Yog li ntawd tib neeg sawv daws tau yuam kev; thiab saib seb, lawv yuav tau yuam kev tas mus li yog tias Vajtswv tsis tau txhiv nws cov neeg dim ntawm lawv txoj kev yuam kev thiab txoj kev poob.
- 5 Tiam sis nco ntsoov tias nws tus uas tseem pheej nyob hauv nws tus kheej lub neej ntiav teb, thiab mus raws li txoj kev txhaum tej kev thiab ntxeev siab tawm tsam Vajtswv, tseem nyob hauv nws txoj kev poob thiab tus dab tseem muaj hwj chim tag nrho kav nws. Yog li ntawd, nws yog zoo li uas tsis tau ua muaj txoj kev txhiv dim li, ua ib tug yeeb ncuab rau Vajtswv; thiab tus dab los kuj yog ib tug yeeb ncuab rau Vajtswv thiab.
- 6 Thiab nim no yog tias Khetos tsis tau los rau hauv lub ntiav teb, hais txog tej uas tseem yuav los li lawv twb tau los tas lawm, ces yeej yuav tsis muaj txoj kev txhiv dim hlo li.
- 7 Thiab yog tias Khetos tsis tau sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, los sis tsis tau tu txoj kev tuag tej hlua es kom lub qhov ntxa tsis txhob muaj kev yeej, thiab kom txoj kev tuag tsis txhob muaj taug, ces yeej yuav muaj tsis taus txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los hlo li.

Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

8 Tiam sis muaj ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, yog li ntawd lub qhov ntxa tsis muaj kev yeej, thiab txoj kev lwj siab ntawm txoj kev tuag twb raug nqos lawm nyob hauv Khetos.

9 Nws yog qhov kaj thiab yog txoj sia ntawm lub ntiaj teb; muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib qho kaj uas tsis muaj kawg li, qhov uas tsaus tsis tau li; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj yog ib txoj sia uas tsis muaj qhov kawg ib zaug li, xwv kom muaj tsis taus txoj kev tuag ntxiv lawm.

10 Txawm yog cev nqaj daim tawv uas txawj ploj tuag no los yuav ciaj mus ua cev nqaj daim tawv uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, thiab lub cev uas txawj lwj no yuav ciaj mus uas lub uas tsis txawj lwj, thiab yuav raug coj los mus sawv ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiav txim, los txiav txim ntawm nws raws li lawv tej dej num txawm lawv zoo los sis txawm lawv phem—

11 Yog tias lawv zoo, ces mus rau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm txoj sia uas tsis muaj qhov kawg thiab txoj kev zoo siab; thiab yog tias lawv phem, ces mus rau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm txoj kev raug txim uas tsis muaj qhov kawg, yog raug coj mus rau tus dab, tus tau kav lawv ywj siab, uas yog txoj kev raug txim—

12 Uas tau mus raws li lawv tus kheej siab ntiaj teb nyiam thiab xav; ib txwm tsis tau mus thov tus Tswv thaum uas tej caj npab ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua tseem ncav rau lawv; vim tej caj npab ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua tau ncav rau lawv, thiab lawv tsis kam txais; lawv tau raug ceeb toom txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tiam sis lawv tseem tsis kam ncaim ntawm tej ntawd mus; thiab lawv tau raug txib kom hloov siab lees txim thiab tiam sis lawv tseem tsis kam hloov siab lees txim.

13 Thiab nim no, puas tsim nyog nej tshee hnyo thiab hloov siab lees txim tawm ntawm nej tej kev txog txhaum, thiab nco ntsoov tias tsuas yog nyob hauv thiab dhau ntawm Khetos xwb nej thiaj li yuav dim tau?

14 Yog li ntawd, yog nej qhia Mouxes txoj kev cai, qhia thiab tias nws yog ib lub cim ntawm tej yam uas yuav muaj los—

15 Qhia lawv tias txoj kev txhiv dim los dhau ntawm tus Tswv Khetos, tus uas yog kiag Leej Txiv tus uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis. Amees.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

Mauxiyas 17

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Anpinadais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, vaj ntxwv tau txib cov pov thawj kom muab nws txhom thiab kom nws yuav tsum raug muab tua.
- 2 Tiam sis tau muaj ib tug nyob hauv lawv uas muaj npe hu ua Amas, nws kuj yog Nifais ib tug xeeb ntxwv. Thiab nws yog ib tug neeg hluas, thiab nws ntseeg tej lus uas Anpinadais tau hais, vim nws tau paub txog txoj kev tsis ncaj uas Anpinadais tau ua tim khawv txog nkaug lawv; yog li ntawd nws tau pib thov vaj ntxwv kom nws tsis txhob npau taws rau Anpinadais, tiam sis kom cia nws tawm mus nrog kev thaj yeeb.
- 3 Tiam sis vaj ntxwv haj yam npau taws heev, thiab tau kom Amas raug ntiab tawm ntawm lawv mus, thiab tau xa nws cov tub qhe raws nws kom lawv muab nws tua.
- 4 Tiam sis nws tau khiav ua lawv ntej thiab tau mus nkaum nws tus kheej xwv kom lawv nrhiav tsis tau nws. Thiab nws tau mus nkaum tau ntau hnuv tau sau tag nrho tej lus uas Anpinadais tau hais.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau kom nws cov tub zov nyas los vij Anpinadais thiab txhom nws; thiab lawv muab nws khi thiab muab nws pov rau hauv qhov taub.
- 6 Thiab tom qab peb hnuv, uas tau sab laj nrog nws cov pov thawj, nws tau kom coj Anpinadais rov qab los ntawm nws.
- 7 Thiab nws tau hais rau nws tias: Anpinadais, peb nrhiav tau ib txoj kev liam txim nkaug koj, thiab koj tsim nyog tuag.
- 8 Vim koj tau hais tias Vajtswv tus kheej yuav nqis los nrog noob neej nyob; thiab nim no, vim qhov no koj yuav raug muab tua tsuas yog koj yuav thim tag nrho tej lus phem uas koj tau hais txog kuv thiab kuv cov neeg lawm xwb.
- 9 Nim no Anpinadais tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv hais rau koj, kuv yuav tsis thim tej lus uas kuv tau hais rau koj txog cov neeg no, vim lawv yeej muaj tseeb; thiab xwv kom koj yuav paub qhov tseeb ntawm lawv kuv thiaj tau cia kuv tus kheej kom kuv tau poob rau hauv koj tes.

Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

- 10 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav tiv kom mus txog thaum tuag, thiab kuv yuav tsis thim kuv tej lus, thiab tej lus ntawd yuav sawv ua ib qho tim khawv nkaug nej. Thiab yog nej muab kuv tua nej yuav txo cov ntshav uas tsis muaj txim, thiab qhov no kuj yuav sawv ua ib qho tim khawv nkaug nej nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 11 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv Nau-as twb yuav luag tso nws, vim nws tau ntshai Anpinadais tej lus; vim nws tau ntshai tias tsam Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim yuav los rau saum nws.
- 12 Tiam sis cov pov thawj tau tsa lawv tej suab nkaug nws, thiab tau pib liam nws hais tias: Nws tau saib tsis taus tus vaj ntxwv. Yog li ntawd tus vaj ntxwv tau raug txhib kom npau taws rau nws, thiab nws tau muab nws rau luag xwv kom nws yuav raug muab tua.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ntes nws thiab tau muab nws khi, thiab muab tw taws los nplawm nws daim tawv nqaij, muaj tseeb tiag, twb mus txog thaum tuag.
- 14 Thiab nim no thaum tej nplaim taws tau pib kub nws, nws tau quaj rau lawv hais tias:
- 15 Saib seb, ib yam li uas nej tau ua rau kuv, ces yuav tau muaj tias nej tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv yuav ua kom ntau tus yuav raug tej mob uas kuv raug, twb yuav yog tej mob ntawm txoj kev tuag ntawm hluav taws; thiab tej no los yog vim lawv ntseeg hauv txoj kev cawm seeg ntawm tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 16 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias nej yuav raug txhua yam kab mob kev nkeeg vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej yuav raug nplawm txhua txhia sab, thiab yuav raug raws khiav thiab tawg ri niab mus rau ub rau no, twb yuav zoo ib yam li ib pab tsiaj qus uas raug tej tsiaj qus thiab heev raws khiav.
- 18 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd nej yuav raug raws tua, thiab nej yuav raug ntes los ntawm nej tej yeeb ncuab tes, thiab ces nej yuav raug txom nyem, ib yam li kuv raug, txoj kev mob ntawm txoj kev tuag ntawm hluav taws.
- 19 Vajtswv ua pauj rau cov uas ua rau nws cov neeg puas tsuaj li no. Au Vajtswv es, txais kuv tus ntsuj plig lauj.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

20 Thiab nim no, thaum Anpinadais tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, nws tau ntshau ntshov, tau raug kev tuag los ntawm hluav taws; muaj tseeb tiag, tau raug muab tua pov tseg vim nws tsis kam tso Vajtswv tej lus txib tseg, tau muab qhov tseeb ntawm nws cov lus ntaus cim cia los ntawm nws txoj kev tuag.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Mauxiyas 18

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias Amas, tus uas tau khiav tawm ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov tub qhe, tau hloov siab lees nws tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, thiab tau mus ntsiag to rau hauv cov neeg, thiab tau pib qhia Anpinadais tej lus—
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, txog tej uas yuav muaj los, thiab kuj qhia txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm tus tuag lawm, thiab txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm cov neeg, uas yuav tau raug rhawv kom muaj dhau los ntawm lub hwj chim, thiab tej kev txom nyem, thiab Khetos txoj kev tuag, thiab nws txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los thiab txoj kev sawv nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 3 Thiab coob npaum li yuav coob tau uas xav hnov nws cov lus nws txawm tau qhia rau. Thiab nws tau qhia rau lawv ntsiag to, xwv kom vaj ntxwv yuav tsis paub txog tej no. Thiab coob tug tau ntseeg nws tej lus.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias txhua txhia tus uas tau ntseeg nws tau mus rau tom qhov chaw uas hu ua Maumoos, uas tau txais nws lub npe los ntawm tus vaj ntxwv, uas nyob ntawm tej ciam dej ciam av ntawm thaj av uas raug tej tsiaj qus dhia puas tsuaj tag, los ntawm tej sij hawm los sis tej caij.
- 5 Nim no, nyob ntawm Maumoos tau muaj ib lub pas dej huv huv, thiab Amas tau mus tid, nyob ze ntawm cov dej tau muaj ib koog me nyuam ntoo me, qhov uas nws tau mus nkaum nws tus kheej thaum nruab hnuv nraim ntawm vaj ntxwv tej kev nrhiav.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias txhua txhia tus uas ntseeg nws tau mus mloog nws tej lus rau tid.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau ntau hnuv lawm txawm tau muaj ib pab neeg coob tau sib sau tuaj ua ke rau ntawm qhov chaw Maumoos, tuaj mloog Amas tej lus. Muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho sawv daws cov uas ntseeg nws tej lus tau sib sau ua ke, mloog nws. Thiab nws tau qhia lawv, thiab tau qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab txoj kev txhiv dim, thiab txoj kev ntseeg tus Tswv rau lawv.

Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, ntawm no yog cov dej Maumoos (vim lawv thiaj tau raug hu li ntawd) thiab nim no, li uas nej xav los rau hauv Vajtswv pab, thiab raug hu ua nws cov neeg, thiab ib leeg txaus siab ris ib leeg tej nra, xwv kom lawv thiaj li yuav sib;
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txaus siab nyuaj siab nrog cov uas nyuaj siab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nplij cov uas xav tau txoj kev nplij siab, thiab sawv ua Vajtswv tej tim khawv rau txhua lub caij nyoog thiab rau tag nrho txhua txhia yam, thiab nyob tag nrho txhua qhov chaw uas nej yuav nyob, kom mus txog thaum tuag, xwv kom nej yuav raug txhiv dim los ntawm Vajtswv, thiab raug suav nrog cov uas nyob hauv thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, xwv kom nej yuav tau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis—
- 10 Nim no kuv hais rau nej tias, yog tias qhov no yog yam uas nej tej siab xav tau, ces nej tseem yuav muaj dab tsi thaiv qhov uas ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv tus Tswv lub npe, kom ua ib qhov tim khawv rau nws tias nej tau khi ib lo lus sib khi nrog nws, tias nej yuav ua hauj lwm rau nws thiab koj nws tej lus txib, xwv kom nws yuav nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig nplua mias rau ntxiv saum nej?
- 11 Thiab nim no thaum cov neeg tau hnov tej lus no, lawv tau npuaj lawv tej tes rau kev xyiv fab, thiab qw hais tias: Qhov no yog qhov uas peb tej siab xav tau.
- 12 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas txawm tau koj Helas, nws yog thawj tug, thiab tau mus thiab tau sawv rau hauv cov dej, thiab quaj thov, hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, nchuav koj tus Ntsuj Plig los rau saum koj tus tub qhe, xwv kom nws yuav ua txoj hauj lwm no nrog lub siab dawb huv.
- 13 Thiab thaum nws tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau los nyob saum nws, thiab nws tau hais tias: Helas, kuv muab koj ua kev cai raus dej, muaj cai los ntawm Vajtswv tus uas Muaj Hwj Chim Loj Kawg Nkaus, kom ua ib qho tim khawv tias koj tau nkag rau ib qho kev sib khi lus los ua hauj lwm rau nws mus txog thaum koj tuag li ntawm sab cev nqaij daim tawv; thiab thov kom tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig nchuav los rau saum koj; thiab thov kom nws pub txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis rau koj, dhau los ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm Khetos, tus uas nws tau npaj txij li thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los lawm.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

- 14 Thiab tom qab uas Amas tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, tag nrho Amas thiab Helas nkawd raug faus ntais rau hauv dej; thiab nkawd tau sawv thiab tau tawm zoo siab hlo hauv dej los, uas muaj tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo.
- 15 Thiab ntxiv, Amas tau coj lwm tus, thiab tau mus zaum ob rau hauv cov dej, thiab muab nws ua kev cai raus dej raws li thawj tug, tsuas yog nws tsis tau muab nws tus kheej raus rau hauv cov dej ntxiv lawm xwb.
- 16 Thiab nws tau muab txhua tus uas tau mus rau ntawm qhov chaw Maumoos ua kev cai raus dej zoo li no; thiab lawv muaj kwv yees ncuia li ob puas thiab plaub leeg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv cov dej Maumoos, thiab muaj tus Tswv txoj kev zoo puv npo.
- 17 Thiab lawv tau raug hu ua Vajtswv lub koom txoos, los sis Khetos lub koom txoos, txij li lub sij hawm ntawd los. Thiab tau muaj tias txhua tus uas tau ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab txoj cai tau raug muab ntxiv rau nws lub koom txoos.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas, tau muaj cai los ntawm Vajtswv, tau tsa tej pov thawj; twb tsa ib tug pov thawj rau ib pab uas muaj tsib caug leej nws tau tsa los qhuab qhia rau lawv, thiab qhia lawv txog tej yam ntawm Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 19 Thiab nws tau txib lawv tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob qhia ib yam dab tsi tsuas yog tej yam uas nws tau qhia lawm xwb, thiab tej uas tau hais los ntawm cov yaj saub dawb huv tej qhov ncauj xwb.
- 20 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb tau txib lawv tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob qhuab qhia dab tsi tsuas yog qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev ntseeg hauv tus Tswv, tus uas tau txhiv nws cov neeg lawm xwb.
- 21 Thiab nws tau txib lawv tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ib leeg rau ib leeg, tiam sis lawv yuav tsum ntsia tom ntej nrog tib lub qhov muag, muaj tib txoj kev ntseeg thiab tib txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej, muab lawv tej siab los koom ua ke hauv txoj kev ua pab ua pawg thiab hauv txoj kev ib leeg hlub ib leeg.
- 22 Thiab li no nws tau txib kom lawv qhuab qhia. Thiab xws li no lawv tau rais los ua Vajtswv cov me nyuam.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

- 23 Thiab nws tau txib lawv tias lawv yuav tsum hwm hnuv cai, thiab ceev nws kom dawb huv, thiab txhua txhia hnuv lawv kuj yuav tsum ua tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tsaug.
- 24 Thiab nws kuj tau txib lawv tias cov pov thawj uas nws tau tsa yuav tsum siv lawv tej tes ua hauj lwm yug lawv.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj ib hnuv nyob hauv txhua txhua lub lim tiam tau muab tshwj tseg cia xwv kom lawv yuav sib sau ua ke qhia cov neeg, thiab teev tiam tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab ntxiv, nquag tuaj sib sau ua ke npaum li lawv muaj hwj chim ua tau.
- 26 Thiab kom cov pov thawj tsis txhob tos rau cov neeg rau lawv txoj kev pab; tiam sis rau lawv tej hauj lwm lawv yuav tsum tau txais Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, xwv kom lawv yuav loj hlob muaj zog nyob hauv sab Ntsuj Plig, muaj Vajtswv txoj kev txawj ntse, xwv kom lawv yuav qhia nrog Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab txoj cai.
- 27 Thiab ntxiv Amas tau txib tias cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos yuav tsum sib faib lawv tej khoom, txhua tus raws nraim li qhov uas nws tau muaj; yog tus uas ho muaj nplua mias nws yuav tsum tau faib ntau zog; thiab ntawm tus uas muaj tsawg, tsuas thov kom muab tsawg; thiab yuav tsum muab rau tus uas nws tsis muaj.
- 28 Thiab li no lawv yuav tsum faib lawv tej khoom raws li lawv lub siab thiab qhov xav tau zoo rau Vajtswv, thiab rau cov pov thawj uas ho txom nyem, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab rau txhua tus uas xav tau, uas liab qab.
- 29 Thiab nws tau hais li no rau lawv, vim tau raug Vajtswv txib; thiab lawv tau ua mus ncaj nraim rau ntawm tus Tswv, ib leeg faib rau ib leeg tsis hais sab cev nqaij daim tawv los sis sab ntsuj plig raws li lawv tej kev xav tau thiab xav yuav.
- 30 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no tau ua nyob hauv Maumoos, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob ntawm cov dej Maumoos, nyob hauv cov hav zoov uas nyob ze cov dej Maumoos; muaj tseeb tiag, qhov chaw Maumoos, cov dej Maumoos, tej hav zoov Maumoos, zoo nkauj cuag cas rau lawv cov uas muaj lub qhov muag uas tau los paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim nyob ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau koob hmoov cuag cas, vim lawv yuav hu nkauj qhuas nws mus ib txhis li.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

31 Thiab tej yam no tau ua tiav nyob ntawm tej ciam dej ciam av ntawm thaj av, xwv kom vaj ntxwv yuav tsis paub txog tej yam no.

32 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv, tau nrhiav pom ib qho kev txawv txav nyob hauv cov neeg, tau xa nws cov tub qhe mus soj lawv. Yog li ntawd nyob rau hnuv uas lawv tau sib sau tuaj ua ke mloog tus Tswv txoj lus lawv txawm raug nrhiav tau rau vaj ntxwv paub.

33 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv tau hais tias Amas tau txhib kom cov neeg sawv tawm tsam nws; yog li ntawd nws tau xa nws cov tub rog mus ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas thiab tus Tswv cov neeg tau raug ceeb toom txog vaj ntxwv cov tub rog txoj kev tuaj; yog li ntawd lawv tau nqa lawv tej tsev pheeb suab ntaub thiab coj lawv tej tsev neeg thiab tau ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov.

35 Thiab lawv tau muaj ze li plaub puas thiab tsib caug leej.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

Mauxiyas 19

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv cov tub rog tau rov qab los, tau mus nrhiav tus Tswv cov neeg tsis pom dab tsi.
- 2 Thiab nim no saib seb, vaj ntxwv tej tub rog tsawg, vim nws tau tsawg tuaj, thiab tau pib muaj kev sib faib ntawm cov neeg uas tseem nyob.
- 3 Thiab feem uas tsawg tau pib hais lus tawm tsam rau vaj ntxwv, thiab tau pib muaj kev sib cav sib ceg hnyav nyob hauv lawv.
- 4 Thiab nim no tau muaj ib tug txiv neej nyob hauv lawv uas muaj npe hu ua Khede-oos, thiab nws tau yog ib tug txiv neej muaj zog thiab ib tug yeeb ncuab rau vaj ntxwv, yog li ntawd nws tau rho nws rab ntaj, thiab tau cog lus nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws tias nws yuav muab vaj ntxwv tua.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau nrog vaj ntxwv sib tawm tsam; thiab thaum vaj ntxwv tau pom tias nws kov yuav yeej nws, nws tau tso tes plhuav thiab khiav thiab mus rau saum tus pej thuum uas nyob ze lub tuam tsev.
- 6 Thiab Khede-oos tau raws nws qab thiab tseem yuav luag mus rau saum tus pej thuum mus muab vaj ntxwv tua, thiab vaj ntxwv tau tsa nws qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig mus rau lub nroog Seloos, thiab saib seb, tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas twb tuaj nyob hauv tej ciam ntawm daim av.
- 7 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv quaj qw nrov nrov nyob hauv txoj kev mob ntawm nws lub siab, hais tias: Khede-oos, txhob tua kuv, vim cov Neeg Lamas twb tuaj rau saum peb lawm, thiab lawv yuav ua kom peb puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav ua kom kuv cov neeg puas tsuaj.
- 8 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv twb tsis txhawj txog nws cov neeg npaum li nws txhawj txog nws tus kheej txoj sia; txawm li ntawd los, Khede-oos tseem tau tseg nws txoj sia.
- 9 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau txib cov neeg tias kom lawv yuav tsum khiav ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas, thiab nws tus kheej tau mus ua ntej lawv, thiab lawv tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov, nrog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau caum lawv, thiab txhom tau lawv, thiab tau pib muab lawv tua.

Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

- 11 Nim no tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau txib lawv tias tag nrho cov txiv neej yuav tsum tso lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam tseg, thiab khiav ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas.
- 12 Nim no tau muaj ntau leej uas tsis kam tso lawv tseg, tiam sis yeem nyob thiab piam sij nrog lawv. Thiab cov seem tshuav ces tau ncaim lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam thiab tau khiav lawm.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov uas tau nyob nrog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam tau kom lawv tej ntxhais uas zoo nkauj yuav tsum sawv tom hauv ntej thiab thov cov Neeg Lamas xwv kom lawv tsis txhob muab lawv tua.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau muaj kev hlub rau lawv, vim lawv tau raug zoo siab nrog txoj kev zoo nkauj ntawm lawv cov poj niam.
- 15 Yog li ntawd cov Neeg Lamas tau tseg lawv txoj sia, thiab tau txhom lawv thiab tau cab lawv rov qab los rau thaj av Nifais, thiab muab thaj av rau lawv ua noj ua haus, yog hais tias lawv yuav muab vaj ntxwv Nau-as mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes, thiab muab lawv tej khoom, ib nrab kiag ntawm tag nrho tej uas lawv muaj, ib nrab ntawm lawv tej kub, thiab lawv tej nyiaj dawb, thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom uas muaj nuj nqis, thiab li no lawv yuav tsum tau them se rau cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv xyoos dhau xyoos.
- 16 Thiab nim no tus vaj ntxwv cov tub muaj ib tug nyob nrog lawv cov uas tau raug txhom, uas npe hu ua Leehais.
- 17 Thiab nim no Leehais tau xav kom nws txiv tsis txhob raug puas tsuaj; txawm li ntawd los, Leehais yeej tsis hnov qab txog nws txiv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, nws tus kheej yog ib tug neeg ncaj.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias Khede-ooos tau xa neeg mus rau hauv hav zoov ntsiag to, mus nrhiav vaj ntxwv thiab cov uas tau nrog nws. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ntsib cov neeg hauv hav zoov, tag nrho tsuas yog tus vaj ntxwv thiab nws cov pov thawj xwb.
- 19 Nim no lawv tau cog lus rau hauv lawv tej siab tias lawv yuav rov qab los rau hauv thaj av Nifais, thiab yog tias lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam raug tua lawm, thiab cov uas tau nrog lawv nyob thiab, ces lawv yuav nrhiav pauj txiaj ntsig, thiab nrog lawv piam sij mus thiab.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

20 Thiab tus vaj ntxwv tau txib lawv tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob rov qab; thiab lawv tau npau taws rau tus vaj ntxwv, thiab tau ua kom nws yuav tsum raug rau txoj kev tuag ntawm hluav taws.

21 Thiab lawv kuj tau yuav luag txhom cov pov thawj thiab muab lawv tua, thiab lawv tau khiav ua ntej lawv lawm.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tseem yuav luag rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Nifais, thiab lawv tau ntsib Khede-oos cov neeg. Thiab Khede-oos cov neeg tau qhia rau lawv tag nrho tej uas tau muaj rau lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam lawm; thiab tias cov Neeg Lamas tau pub lawv ua noj ua haus hauv thaj av los ntawm txoj kev them se rau cov Neeg Lamas ib nrab ntawm tag nrho tej uas lawv muaj.

23 Thiab cov neeg tau qhia rau Khede-oos cov neeg tias lawv tau muab tus vaj ntxwv tua lawm, thiab nws cov pov thawj tau khiav ncaim deb lawv mus rau hauv hav zoov lawm.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau sib ntsib tas lawm, lawv tau rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Nifais, zoo siab hlo, vim lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam tsis tau raug tua; thiab lawv tau qhia rau Khede-oos yam uas lawv tau ua rau tus vaj ntxwv.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau lav lus rau lawv, tias nws cov neeg yuav tsis muab lawv tua.

26 Thiab Leehais, tus uas tau yog vaj ntxwv tus tub, tus uas cov neeg tau muab lub teb chaws rau nws kav, tau lav lus rau cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tias nws cov neeg yuav tsum them se rau nws, ib nrab kiag ntawm tag nrho tej uas lawv muaj.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias Leehais tau pib txhim tsa lub teb chaws thiab tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv nws cov neeg.

28 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau tso tej tub zov kev rau ib puag ncig thaj av, xwv kom nws yuav ceev tau Leehais cov neeg nyob hauv thaj av, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab nws tau muab cov se uas nws tau txais ntawm cov Neeg Nifais los yug nws cov tub zov kev.

29 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv Leehais tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncu a nyob hauv nws lub teb chaws tau ncu a li ob xyoos, uas cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau thab lawv los sis nrhiav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

Mauxiyas 20

- 1 Nim no tau muaj ib qho chaw nyob hauv Seloos uas cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais tau sib sau ua ke hu nkauj, thiab dhia muas caum, thiab ua kom lawv zoo siab.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib hnuv lawv muaj ib pab uas tsawg tau sib sau ua ke hu nkauj thiab dhia muas caum.
- 3 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov pov thawj, tau txaj muag rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Nifais, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj ntshai tias cov neeg yuav muab lawv tua, yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tsis kam rov qab mus rau lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam.
- 4 Thiab tau nyob rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau nrhiav pom cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais, lawv tau nkaum thiab ntsia lawv;
- 5 Thiab thaum lawv tsuas tuaj ob peb leeg ua ke dhia muas caum xwb, lawv tau tawm ntawm lawv tej chaw tsiv nkaum los thiab txhom lawv thiab cab lawv mus rau hauv hav zoov; muaj tseeb tiag, nees nkaum thiab plaub leeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais lawv tau coj mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas nrhiav pom tias lawv tej ntxhais tau ploj lawm, lawv tau npau taws rau Leehais cov neeg, vim lawv tau xav tias nws yog Leehais cov neeg ntag.
- 7 Yog li ntawd lawv tau xa lawv cov tub rog mus; muaj tseeb tiag, vaj ntxwv tus kheej kiag tau mus ua ntej nws cov neeg; thiab lawv tau nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais mus ua kom Leehais cov neeg puas tsuaj.
- 8 Thiab nim no Leehais tau tuaj saum tus pej thuum pom lawv, nws twb tau pom tag nrho lawv tej kev npaj ua rog; yog li ntawd nws tau sib sau nws cov neeg ua ke, thiab tau nkaum tos lawv nyob hauv tej nras thiab hauv tej hav zoov.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj txog, ces Leehais cov neeg tau pib tawm ntawm lawv tej chaw nkaum tos los rau saum lawv, thiab tau pib muab lawv tua.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias npluav rog tau rais los mus ua ib qho mob kawg nkaus, vim lawv tau sib tua zoo li tej tsov ntxhuav tom lawv tej tsiaj noj.

Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Leehais cov neeg tau pib raws cov Neeg Lamas khiav ua ntej lawv; tiam sis lawv twb tsis coob npaum li ib nrab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas. Tiam sis lawv tau tiv thaiv rau lawv txoj sia, thiab rau lawv tej poj niam, thiab rau lawv tej me nyuam; yog li ntawd lawv tau siv lawv tus kheej mus ua thiab lawv tau tawm tsam yam li tej zaj.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau nrhiav pom cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv nyob nrog lawv cov neeg tuag; tiam sis nws tseem tsis tau tuag, tau raug mob thiab raug muab tso tseg rau hauv av, vim nrawm heev li yog txoj kev khiav ntawm nws cov neeg.
- 13 Thiab lawv tau coj nws thiab tau qhwv nws tej mob, thiab tau coj nws los cuag Leehais, thiab tau hais tias: Saib seb, nov yog cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv; nws tau txais raug ib qho mob tau qaug nrog lawv cov neeg tuag, thiab lawv tau tso nws cia; thiab saib seb, peb tau coj nws los rau koj; thiab nim no cia peb muab nws tua.
- 14 Tiam sis Leehais tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob tua nws, tiam sis coj nws los ntawm no xwv kom kuv tau pom nws. Thiab lawv tau coj nws los. Thiab Leehais tau hais rau nws tias: Yam xwm tus dab tsi es nej tau nce tuaj ua rog rau kuv cov neeg? Saib seb, kuv cov neeg tsis tau rhuav tej lus uas kuv tau lav rau koj; yog li ntawd, yog vim li cas koj thiaj li rhuav tej lus uas koj tau lav rau kuv cov neeg?
- 15 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv tau hais tias: Kuv tau rhuav tej lus tau lav rau qhov koj cov neeg tau nyiag kuv cov neeg tej ntxhais; yog li ntawd, nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws kuv thiaj tau kom kuv cov neeg nce tuaj ua rog tawm tsam koj cov neeg.
- 16 Thiab nim no Leehais tsis tau hnov dab tsi txog tej xwm no hlo li; yog li ntawd nws tau hais tias: Kuv yuav tshawb hauv kuv cov neeg thiab yog leej twg tau ua tej no yuav tsum raug piam sij. Yog li ntawd nws tau kom muaj ib qho kev tshawb nrhiav nyob hauv nws cov neeg.
- 17 Nim no thaum Khede-oos tau hnov tej no, nws yog vaj ntxwv tus thawj tub rog, nws tau txav zog mus thiab tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tias: Kuv thov koj txhob rawm maj, thiab tsis txhob tshawb cov neeg no, thiab tsis txhob liam tej no rau lawv.
- 18 Vim koj tsis nco qab txog koj txiv cov pov thawj, uas cov neeg no tau nrhiav ua kom puas tsuaj? Thiab tsis yog lawv nyob tom hav zoov los? Thiab lawv tsis yog cov uas tau nyiag cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais los?

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

- 19 Thiab nim no, saib seb, thiab qhia rau vaj ntxwv tej yam no, xwv kom nws yuav qhia nws cov neeg xwv kom yuav daws tau lawv kev npau taws rau peb; vim saib seb lawv twb tab tom npaj tuaj tawm tsum peb; thiab saib seb peb kuj tsis muaj coob.
- 20 Thiab saib seb, lawv tuaj nrog lawv tej tsoom tub roq coob; thiab tsuas yog vaj ntxwv yuav daws lawv kev npau taws rau peb xwb, yog tsis li ces peb yuav tsum piam sij xwb.
- 21 Vim tsis yog Anpinadais tej lus muaj puv npo los, tej uas nws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej nkaug peb—thiab tag nrho tej no vim yog peb tsis mloog tus Tswv tej lus, thiab tig ncaim ntawm peb tej kev tsis ncaj ncees?
- 22 Thiab nim no cia peb daws vaj ntxwv kev chim, thiab peb ua kom tau li tej lus uas peb tau lav rau nws; vim nws zoo tshaj tawm tias peb yuav raug ua qhev dua li peb yuav tsis muaj peb txoj sia; yog li ntawd, cia peb tsum rau txoj kev ua nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau no.
- 23 Thiab nim no Leehais tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tag nrho tej yam uas txog nws txiv, thiab cov pov thawj uas tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau ua qhov uas txhom cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais mus rau lawv.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv raug daws kev chim rau nws cov neeg; thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia peb mus cuag kuv cov neeg, tsis txhob nqa ntaj riam; thiab kuv lav ib lo lus rau koj tias kuv cov neeg yuav tsis tua koj cov neeg.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau raws vaj ntxwv qab, thiab tau tawm mus cuag cov Neeg Lamas tsis nqa ntaj riam li. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ntsib cov Neeg Lamas; thiab cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau nyo hau rau lawv, thiab tau thov kev zam rau Leehais cov neeg.
- 26 Thiab thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom Leehais cov neeg, tias lawv tsis muaj ntaj riam, lawv tau muaj kev hlub rau lawv thiab tau raug daws kev chim rau lawv, thiab tau nrog lawv tus vaj ntxwv rov qab mus rau tom lawv thaj av hauv txoj kev thaj yeeb.

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

Mauxiyas 21

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Leehais thiab nws cov neeg tau rov qab mus rau tom lub nroog Nifais, thiab tau rov qab pib nyob hauv thaj av muaj kev thaj yeeb dua.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau ntau hnuv lawm cov Neeg Lamas raug pib txhib chim nkaug cov Neeg Nifais dua, thiab lawv tau pib tuaj rau hauv tej ciam ciam ntawm thaj av ib puag ncig.
- 3 Nim no lawv tsis kam tua lawv, vim yog tej lus lav tseg uas lawv tus vaj ntxwv tau lav rau Leehais lawm; tiam sis lawv pheej ntaus Leehais cov neeg tej plhu, thiab siv cai rau saum lawv; thiab tau pib muab tej nra hnyav rau saum lawv tej nraub qaum, thiab tsav lawv ib yam li lawv tsav ib tug luj ruam—
- 4 Muaj tseeb tiag, tau ua tag nrho tej no xwv kom tus Tswv txoj lus yuav muaj tiav los.
- 5 Thiab nim no cov Neeg Nifais tej kev kub ntxhov muaj hnyav, thiab yeej tsis muaj kev uas lawv yuav dim tau ntawm lawv tej tes, vim cov Neeg Lamas tau vij lawv txhua txhia sab.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau pib yws yws rau vaj ntxwv vim lawv tej kev kub ntxhov; thiab lawv tau pib xav mus tawm tsam rog nrog lawv. Thiab lawv tau xeeb txob vaj ntxwv heev nrog lawv tej lus yws; yog li ntawd nws tau pub rau lawv kom lawv mus ua raws li lawv tej kev xav.
- 7 Thiab lawv tau sib sau tuaj ua ke dua, thiab hnav lawv tej ris tsho tua rog, thiab tau tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas mus raws kom lawv khiav tawm ntawm lawv thaj av mus.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau kov yeej lawv, thiab tau tav lawv rov qab, thiab tau tua lawv ntau leej.
- 9 Thiab nim no tau muaj ib qho kev nyuaj siab thiab kev quaj ntsuag kua muag los loj nyob hauv Leehais cov neeg, tej poj ntsuam quaj ntsuag rau lawv tej txiv, tej tub thiab tej ntxhais quaj ntsuag rau lawv txiv, thiab tej kwv tij quaj ntsuag rau tej kwv tij.
- 10 Nim no tau muaj poj ntsuam coob heev nyob hauv thaj av, thiab lawv tau quaj heev ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv, vim txoj kev ntshai heev txog cov Neeg Lamas tau los rau saum lawv.

Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tej kev quaj tsis tu ncuu tau txhib Leehais cov neeg uas seem tshuav kom npau taws rau cov Neeg Lamas; thiab lawv tau rov qab mus ua rog dua, tiam sis lawv raug muab tav rov qab los dua, raug poob tsam ntau.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau rov mus dua uas yog zaum peb, thiab tau raug ib yam nkaus li qub; thiab cov uas tsis raug tuag tau rov qab los dua rau tom lub nroog Nifais.
- 13 Thiab lawv tau txo lawv hwj chim mus ti nkaus hauv tej plua av, muab lawv tus kheej ywj rau tus quab ua tauj ua qhev, cia lawv tus kheej raug ntaus, thiab raug tav mus rau ub rau no, thiab raug ris nra hnyav, raws li lawv tej yeeb ncuab siab nyiam.
- 14 Thiab lawv twb tau txo lawv hwj chim qis hauv kev txo hwj chim; thiab lawv tau quaj thov heev kawg rau Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau quaj tag hnuv li rau lawv tus Vajtswv xwv kom nws yuav coj lawv dim ntawm lawv tej kev txom nyem.
- 15 Thiab nim no tus Tswv hnov lawv tej lus quaj thov qeeb vim yog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv tau hnov lawv tej lus quaj thov, thiab tau pib ua rau cov Neeg Lamas tej siab kom mos muag ces lawv tau pib txo kom lawv tej nra hnyav sib me ntsis tuaj; tiam sis tus Tswv tsis tau pom zoo coj lawv dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau maj mam pib vam meej nyob hauv thaj av, thiab tau pib cog noob qoob loos nplua mias ntau ntxiv, thiab yug tej pab tsiaj, thiab tsiaj txhu, ces lawv thiaj tsis tau nyiaj tshaib yoo nqhis.
- 17 Nim no tau muaj ib co poj niam coob, coob dua li muaj txiv neej; yog li ntawd vaj ntxwv Leehais tau txib tias txhua tus txiv neej yuav tsum tau faib kev pab rau tej poj ntsuam thiab lawv tej me nyuam, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij nrog kev tshaib; thiab lawv tau ua li no vim yog lawv cov neeg coob uas tau raug tuag lawm.
- 18 Nim no Leehais cov neeg tau sau ua ib ke ntau npaum li yuav ua tau, thiab tau saib xyuas lawv tej qoob loos thiab lawv tej pab tsiaj;
- 19 Thiab tus vaj ntxwv twb tsis kam nws tus kheej nyob sab ntsa loog sab nraud, tsuas yog nws coj nws tej tub zov nyas nrog nws xwb, ntshai ntshis tias tsam muaj tej yam dab tsi es tsam nws ho poob mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

- 20 Thiab nws tau kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum zov thaj av ib puag ncig, saib los ntawm tej yam dab tsi es lawv thiaj txhom tau cov pov thawj uas tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov, cov uas tau nyiag cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais, thiab uas tau txob ib qho kev puas tsuaj loj los rau saum lawv.
- 21 Vim lawv tau xav txhom lawv xwv kom lawv yuav tau rau txim rau lawv; vim lawv tau los rau hauv thaj av Nifais thaum tsaus ntuj, thiab tau ris lawv tej qoob loos thiab lawv tej khoom muaj nuj nqis ntau yam mus lawm; yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tau zov tos lawv.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis tau muaj kev sib thab nyob nrub nrab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thiab Leehais cov neeg ntxiv lawm, mus txog ntua thaum lub sij hawm uas Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av.
- 23 Thiab tus vaj ntxwv tau nyob sab rooj vag sab nraud ntawm lub nroog nrog nws tus tub zov kev, tau nrhiav pom Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij; thiab xav tias lawv yog Nau-as cov pov thawj yog li ntawd nws tau kom lawv raug txhom thiab khi, thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov taub. Thiab yog tias lawv yog Nau-as cov pov thawj ces ntshe nws twb yuav tau ua kom lawv raug muab ua kom tuag.
- 24 Tiam sis thaum uas nws nrhiav pom tias lawv tsis yog, tiam sis lawv yog nws cov kwv tij, thiab tau tuaj nram thaj av Xalahelas tuaj, nws tau xyiv fab heev kawg nkaus li.
- 25 Nim no vaj ntxwv Leehais tau xa, ua ntej Amoos tuaj, ib pab neeg tsawg mus nrhiav thaj av Xalahelas; tiam sis lawv nrhiav tsis tau nws, thiab lawv tau poob zoo rau tom hav zoov.
- 26 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv nrhiav tau ib thaj av uas muaj neeg nyob; muaj tseeb tiag, ib thaj av uas tau muaj pob txha qhuav npog saud; muaj tseeb tiag, ib thaj av uas tau muaj neeg nyob thiab tau raug puas tsuaj tas lawm; thiab lawv, tau xav tias nws yog thaj av Xalahelas, tau rov qab los rau thaj av Nifais, tau los txog tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av ua ntej ob peb hnuv Amoos tuaj.
- 27 Thiab lawv tau coj ib phau ceev xwm txheej nrog lawv los, twb yog ib phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm cov neeg uas lawv nrhiav tau tej pob txha; thiab nws tau raug muab sau rau saum tej phiaj quav hlau.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

28 Thiab nim no Leehais rov qab xyiv fab dua thaum kawm paub los ntawm Amoos lub qhov ncauj tias vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas muaj ib qho txiaj ntsim los ntawm Vajtswv, los ntawm qhov ntawd nws muaj peev xwm txhais tau tej lus sau li ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab Amoos los kuj zoo siab tib yam thiab.

29 Tiam sis Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau muaj kev tu siab vim coob coob leej ntawm lawv cov kwv tij tau raug tua lawm;

30 Thiab tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as thiab nws cov pov thawj tseem tau ua kom cov neeg ua ntau yam kev txog txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tawm tsam Vajtswv; thiab lawv kuj tau tu siab rau Anpinadais txoj kev tuag; thiab rau Amas txoj kev ncaim thiab cov neeg uas tau nrog nws mus lawm, cov uas tau tsa Vajtswv ib lub koom txoos dhau los ntawm Vajtswv lub zog thiab lub hwj chim, thiab kev ntseeg rau tej lus uas Anpinadais tau hais lawm.

31 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau nyuaj siab rau lawv txoj kev ncaim mus, vim lawv tsis paub tias lawv tau khiav ua qhov twg lawm. Nim no lawv yuav tau zoo siab hlo koom nrog lawv, vim lawv tus kheej los twb tau khi ib lo lus nrog Vajtswv ua hauj lwm rau nws thiab coj nws tej lus txib.

32 Thiab nim no txij li thaum Amoos tuaj, vaj ntxwv Leehais kuj tau khi ib lo lus nrog Vajtswv, thiab kuj muaj coob leej ntawm nws cov neeg thiab, yuav ua hauj lwm rau nws thiab coj nws tej lus txib.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Leehais thiab coob leej ntawm nws cov neeg tau xav ua kev cai raus dej; tiam sis tsis tau muaj leej twg uas nyob hauv thaj av uas muaj txoj cai los ntawm Vajtswv. Thiab Amoos tsis kam ua yam no, xav tias nws tus kheej yog ib tug tub qhe tsis tsim nyog.

34 Yog li ntawd lub sij hawm ntawd lawv tsis tau tsa ib lub koom txoos rau lawv, tos ntsoov rau tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig. Nim no lawv tau xav rais los mus zoo li Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij, cov uas tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov.

35 Lawv tau xav ua kev cai raus dej kom ua ib qho tim khawv thiab ua ib qho pov thawj tias lawv txaus siab ua hauj lwm rau Vajtswv nrog tag nrho lawv tej siab; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tau ncuab lub sij hawm; thiab ib zag txog lawv txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej mam muab nyob tom qab no.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

36 Thiab nim no tag nrho Amoons, thiab nws cov
neeg, thiab vaj ntxwv Leehais thiab nws cov neeg tej
kev kawm, yog yuav coj lawv dim tawm ntawm cov
Neeg Lamas tes thiab tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev
qhev.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people,
and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver them-
selves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from
bondage.

Mauxiyas 22

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amoos thiab vaj ntxwv Leehais tau pib sab laj nrog cov neeg saib lawv yuav ua li cas thiaj coj tau lawv dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev; thiab lawv kuj tau kom tag nrho cov neeg yuav tsum sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke; thiab lawv tau ua li no xwv kom lawv yuav tau lub suab ntawm cov neeg txog qhov xwm ntawd.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv nrhiav tsis tau kev yuav coj lawv dim tau ntawm txoj kev ua qhev, tsuas yog yuav coj lawv tej poj niam thiab me nyuam, thiab lawv tej pab tsiaj, thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu, thiab lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub, thiab ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov; vim cov Neeg Lamas muaj coob heev, nws yuav mus tsis tau yog Leehais cov neeg yuav tawm tsam nrog lawv, xav tias coj lawv dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev los ntawm rab ntaj.
- 3 Nim no tau muaj tias Khede-oos tau mus thiab tau sawv ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Nim no Au vaj ntxwv es, koj twb tau mloog kuv tej lus ntau zaus los txog nim no thaum uas peb tseem tau nrog peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas sib ceg.
- 4 Thiab nim no Au vaj ntxwv es, yog tias koj nrhiav tsis pom tias kuv yog ib tug tub qhe tsis tsim nqi, los sis yog koj tau mloog kuv tej lus hlo li los txog nim no, thiab lawv tau yog kev pab rau koj, yog li ntawd kuv xav kom koj yuav mloog rau kuv cov lus zaum no, thiab kuv yuav ua koj tus tub qhe thiab coj cov neeg no tawm ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.
- 5 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau cia rau nws kom nws hais lus. Thiab Khede-oos tau hais rau nws tias:
- 6 Saib seb txoj kev tom qaum tsev, mus nraum sab ntsa loog, uas nyob ntawm lub nroog sab nraud. Cov Neeg Lamas, los sis cov Neeg Lamas cov tub zov kev, qaug cawv thaum tsaus ntuj; yog li ntawd cia peb xa xov mus rau tag nrho cov neeg no kom lawv sau lawv tej tsiaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu los ua ke, xwv kom lawv yuav tav lawv cov no mus rau hauv hav zoov thaum tsaus ntuj.
- 7 Thiab kuv yuav mus raws li koj lo lus txib thiab them se cawv txiv hmab zaum kawg rau cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv yuav qaug cawv; thiab peb yuav mus txoj kev uas tsis muaj neeg paub uas nyob sab laug ntawm lawv lub yeej thaum lawv qaug cawv thiab tsaug zog lawm.

Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

- 8 Ces li no peb yuav mus nrog peb tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam, peb tej tsiaj, thiab peb tej tsiaj txhu mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab peb yuav khiav mus rau ib cheeb tsam thaj av Sailos.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau mloog rau Khede-oos tej lus.
- 10 Thiab vaj ntxwv Leehais tau kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum sau lawv tej tsiaj ua ke; thiab nws tau xa se cawv txiv hmab mus rau cov Neeg Lamas; thiab nws kuj xa cawv txiv hmab ntau ntxiv, zoo li ib qho khoom plig rau lawv; thiab lawv tau haus tej cawv uas vaj ntxwv Leehais tau xa mus rau lawv yam qhuas ntxhais.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Leehais cov neeg tau khiav thaum tsaus ntuj mus rau hauv hav zoov nrog lawv tej tsiaj thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu, thiab lawv tau mus rau ib cheeb tsam ntawm thaj av Sailos hauv hav zoov, thiab tau lem lawv txoj kev mus rau thaj av Xalahelas, yog raug coj los ntawm Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij.
- 12 Thiab lawv tau nqa tag nrho lawv tej kub, thiab tej nyiaj dawb, thiab lawv tej khoom uas muaj nuj nqis, tej uas lawv yuav ris taus, thiab lawv tej khoom noj nrog lawv, mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab lawv rau siab ntso lawv txoj kev tsiv.
- 13 Thiab tom qab uas tau ntau hnuv nyob hauv hav zoov lawm lawv tau los txog hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau koom nrog Mauxiyas cov neeg, thiab tau rais los ua cov zwm rau nws.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tos txais lawv nrog txoj kev xyiv fab; thiab nws kuj tau txais lawv tej ceev xwm txheej, thiab tej ceev xwm txheej uas Leehais cov neeg nrhiav tau.
- 15 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau nrhiav pom tias Leehais cov neeg tau khiav tawm ntawm thaj av thaum tsaus ntuj lawm, ces lawv tau xa ib pab tub rog mus rau hauv hav zoov mus caum lawv;
- 16 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau caum lawv tau ob hnuv lawm, lawv tsis muaj cuab kav taug lawv tej hneev taw ntxiv lawm; yog li ntawd lawv tau poob zoo nyob hauv hav zoov.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

Ib zag txog Amas thiab tus Tswv cov neeg, uas tau raug raws khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov los ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov neeg.

Mauxiyas 23

- 1 Nim no Amas, tau raug tus Tswv ceeb toom tias vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov tub rog yuav tuaj tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau ua kom nws cov neeg paub, yog li ntawd lawv tau sau lawv tej pab tsiaj los ua ke, thiab tau muab lawv tej qoob loos, thiab tau ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov ua ntej vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov tub rog.
- 2 Thiab tus Tswv tau txhawb lawv lub dag lub zog, xwv kom vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov neeg yuav tsis muaj peev xwm tuaj caum tau lawv rhuav kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab lawv tau khiav yim hnub mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau los txog ib thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib thaj av zoo nkauj heev thiab zoo nyob heev, ib thaj av uas muaj dej huv huv.
- 5 Thiab lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub, thiab tau pib ua liaj teb, thiab tau pib ua vaj tse; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau nquag, thiab tau ua hauj lwm tas zog mus li.
- 6 Thiab cov neeg tau xav kom Amas ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv, vim nws cov neeg tau nyiam nws.
- 7 Tiam sis nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, nws tsis tsim nyog tias peb yuav tsum muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv; vim tus Tswv tau hais li no: Nej yuav tsum tsis txhob saib ib tug siab dua li lwm tus, los sis ib tug tsis txhob xav tias nws zoo dua li lwm tus; yog li ntawd kuv hais rau nej tias tsis tsim nyog tias nej yuav tsum muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv.
- 8 Txawm li ntawd los, yog nws mus tau tias nej yuav muaj tej neeg ncaj ncees tsis tu ncuu los ua nej tej vaj ntxwv nws yeej zoo rau nej muaj tau ib tug vaj ntxwv.
- 9 Tiam sis nco qab ntsoov txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as thiab nws cov pov thawj; thiab kuv tus kheej tau raug mag hauv ib roog ntxiab, thiab tau ua ntau yam uas qias nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag, uas tau ua rau kuv hloov siab lees txim mob heev;

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.

Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

- 10 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab uas muaj ntau yam kev txom nyem, tus Tswv tau hnov kuv tej lus quaj thov, thiab tau teb kuv tej lus thov, thiab tau muab kuv ua ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv nws tes coj nej coob leej los paub txog nws qhov tseeb.
- 11 Txawm li ntawd los, qhov no kuv tsis tau khav, vim kuv tsis tsim nyog yuav khav txog kuv tus kheej.
- 12 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias, nej tau raug kav tsis ncaj los ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as, thiab tau ua tauj ua qhev rau nws thiab nws cov pov thawj, thiab tau raug coj mus rau hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees los ntawm lawv; yog li ntawd nej tau raug khi nrog txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees tej hlua.
- 13 Thiab nim no thaum nej tau raug coj dim los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim tawm ntawm tej hlua no; muaj tseeb tiag, twb tawm ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as thiab nws cov neeg tes, thiab kuj dim ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees tej hlua, yog li ntawd kuv xav kom nej yuav nyob ruaj nrees hauv txoj kev ywj siab no uas nej tau raug ua kom nyob ywj siab, thiab kom nej tsis txhob cia siab rau ib tug neeg twg los ua ib tug vaj ntxwv kav nej.
- 14 Thiab tsis txhob cia siab rau ib tug twg los ua nej tus xib hwb los sis tus qhuab qhia, tsuas yog nws yog ib tug neeg ntawm Vajtswv, taug ntshis nws tej kev thiab coj nws tej lus txib xwb.
- 15 Amas tau qhia nws cov neeg li no, tias txhua tus neeg yuav tsum hlub nws tej kwv tij zej zog ib yam li nws tus kheej, xwv kom tsis txhob muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv lawv.
- 16 Thiab nim no, Amas tau yog lawv tus pov thawj hlob, nws tau yog tus tsim lawv lub koom txoos.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis muaj leej twg txais tau txoj cai los tshaj tawm los sis qhuab qhia tsuas yog los ntawm Vajtswv dhau los ntawm nws xwb. Yog li ntawd nws tau tsa tag nrho lawv cov pov thawj thiab tag nrho lawv tej xib hwb; thiab tsis tau tsa ib tug twg tsuas yog lawv cov uas yog neeg ncaj ncees xwb.
- 18 Yog li ntawd lawv tau saib xyuas lawv cov neeg, thiab tau qhia lawv tej yam txog txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pib huaj vam heev nyob rau hauv thaj av; thiab lawv tau hu thaj av ua Helas.

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau zeej noob thiab huaj
vam heev nyob hauv thaj av Helas; thiab lawv tau ua
ib lub nroog, uas lawv tau muab hu ua nroog Helas.

21 Txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv pom tias tsim nyog
qhuab qhia nws cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, nws sim
lawv tej kev ua siab ntev thiab lawv tej kev ntseeg.

22 Txawm li ntawd los—tus uas muab nws txoj kev
cia siab tso rau nws tus ntawd yuav raug tsa sawv
nyob rau hnuv kawg. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav
muaj li rau cov neeg no.

23 Vim saib seb, kuv qhia rau nej paub tias lawv tau
raug coj mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev, thiab
tsis muaj leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm tso tau lawv
dim tiam sis tsuas yog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsv
xwb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Anplaham thiab Ixaj
thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtsv.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tso lawv dim, thiab
tau ua rau lawv pom nws lub hwj chim uas loj kawg
nkaus, thiab lawv tej kev zoo siab mas ntau kawg li.

25 Vim saib seb, tau muaj tias thaum lawv tseem
nyob hauv thaj av Helas, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv
lub nroog Helas, thaum tseem tab tom ua teb ib ncig,
saib seb ib pab tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau
tuaj nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av.

26 Nim no tau muaj tias Amas cov kwv tij tau khiav
ntawm lawv tej teb, thiab tau sib sau tuaj ua ke rau
hauv lub nroog Helas; thiab lawv tau txhawj ntshai
heev vim txoj kev cov Neeg Lamas tshwm tuaj.

27 Tiam sis Amas tau tawm mus thiab tau sawv nrog
lawv, thiab yaum lawv tias kom lawv tsis txhob
txhawj ntshai, tiam sis lawv yuav tsum nco ntsoov
tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsv thiab nws yeej yuav pab
lawv.

28 Yog li ntawd lawv tau tsum lawv tej kev ntshai,
thiab tau pib quaj thov rau tus Tswv kom nws yuav
nplij cov Neeg Lamas tej siab, xwv kom lawv yuav
tseg lawv, thiab lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me
nyuam txoj sia.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau nplij cov Neeg
Lamas tej siab. Thiab Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau
tawm mus thiab coj lawv tus kheej mus rau hauv
lawv tes; thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau txais thaj av
ntawm Helas ua lawv tug.

30 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog, uas tau raws
vaj ntxwv Leehais cov neeg qab, tau poob zoo rau
hauv hav zoov tau ntau hnuv.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and
prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they
built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his peo-
ple; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him
the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and
thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were
brought into bondage, and none could deliver them
but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of
Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and
he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and
great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in
the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while
tilling the land round about, behold an army of the
Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled
from their fields, and gathered themselves together
in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened
because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and
exhorted them that they should not be frightened,
but that they should remember the Lord their God
and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to
cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of
the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their
wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the
hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren
went forth and delivered themselves up into their
hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the
land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had fol-
lowed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost
in the wilderness for many days.

31 Thiab saib seb, lawv nrhiav tau vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov pov thawj, nyob hauv ib qho chaw uas lawv hu ua Amuloos; thiab lawv tau pib muab thaj av Amuloos ua lawv tug thiab tau pib ua liaj teb.

32 Nim no tus thawj coj ntawm cov pov thawj npe hu ua Amuloos.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias Amuloos tau thov cov Neeg Lamas; thiab nws kuj tau xa lawv tej poj niam, uas yog cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais, mus thov lawv cov nus, xwv kom lawv tsis txhob ua kom lawv cov txiv puas tsuaj.

34 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau muaj kev hlub rau Amuloos thiab nws cov kwv tij, thiab tsis tau ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, vim yog lawv tej poj niam.

35 Thiab Amuloos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau koom nrog cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tau yos nyob hauv hav zoov nrhiav thaj av Nifais thaum lawv nrhiav pom thaj av Helas, uas Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij nyob.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau cog lus rau Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tias, yog lawv yuav qhia txoj kev uas coj mus rau thaj av Nifais rau lawv ces lawv yuav pub lawv txoj sia thiab txoj kev ywj siab rau lawv.

37 Tiam sis tom qab uas Amas tau qhia txoj kev uas coj mus rau thaj av Nifais rau lawv tas lawm cov Neeg Lamas txawm tsis ceev lawv tej lus cog; tiam sis lawv tso tub zov kev rau ib puag ncig thaj av Helas, zov Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij.

38 Thiab lawv cov uas seem tshuav tau mus rau tom thaj av Nifais; thiab ib feem ntawm lawv tau rov qab mus rau thaj av Helas, thiab kuj tau coj cov tub zov nyas uas raug tseg rau hauv thaj av tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam nrog lawv.

39 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau pub rau Amuloos kom nws ua ib tug vaj ntxwv thiab ib tug kav rau saum nws cov neeg, uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Helas; txawm li ntawd los nws yuav tsis muaj hwj chim ua dab tsi uas tsis raws li cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv lub siab nyiam.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

Mauxiyas 24

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Amuloos raug cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tej qhov muag nyiam; yog li ntawd, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau pub rau nws thiab nws cov kwv tij kom lawv yuav xaiv tsa tej xib hwb rau nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, rau saum cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Seloos, thiab hauv thaj av Sailos, thiab hauv thaj av Amuloos.
- 2 Vim cov Neeg Lamas tau tag nrho cov thaj av no los ua lawv tug; yog li ntawd, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau xaiv tsa vaj ntxwv kav tag nrho tej thaj av no huv tib si.
- 3 Thiab nim no cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv lub npe hu ua Lamas, raug hu mus raws li nws txiv lub npe; thiab yog li ntawd nws thiaj hu ua vaj ntxwv Lamas. Thiab nws tau ua vaj ntxwv kav ib co neeg coob.
- 4 Thiab nws tau xaiv tsa xib hwb los ntawm Amuloos cov kwv tij nyob rau txhua thaj av uas nws cov neeg nyob; thiab yog li no Nifais yam lus thiaj tau pib raug muab qhia nyob thooob plaws hauv cov Neeg Lamas.
- 5 Thiab lawv yog ib cov neeg ib leeg ua phooj ywg rau ib leeg; txawm li ntawd los lawv tsis paub Vajtswv; thiab Amuloos cov kwv tij los yeej tsis qhia lawv ib yam dab tsi txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab tsis qhia Mauxes txoj kev cai; lawv kuj tsis qhia Anpinadais tej lus rau lawv thiab;
- 6 Tiam sis lawv tau qhia lawv kom lawv yuav tsum khaws lawv tej phau ceev xwm txheej, thiab tias kom lawv ib leeg yuav sau ntawv rau ib leeg.
- 7 Thiab li no cov Neeg Lamas tau pib nplua nuj, thiab tau pib ib leeg ua luam rau ib leeg thiab tau pib loj hlob zoo, thiab tau pib ua ib cov neeg txawj ntxias thiab txawj ntse, yog rau txoj kev txawj ntse ntawm lub ntiaj teb, muaj tseeb tiag, ib cov neeg txawj dag ntxias heev, nyiam ua txhua yam kev phem thiab tub sab, tsuas yog tseg kiag hauv lawv cov kwv tij xwb.
- 8 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amuloos tau pib siv cai rau saum Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij, thiab tau pib tsim txom nws, thiab ua kom nws cov me nyuam yuav tsum tsim txom lawv cov me nyuam.

Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

- 9 Vim Amuloos tau paub Amas, tias nws tau yog vaj ntxwv cov pov thawj ib tug, thiab nws yog tus uas ntseeg Anpinadais tej lus thiab tau raug raws tawm ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag, thiab yog li ntawd nws tau npau taws rau nws; nws raug ywj rau ntawm vaj ntxwv Lamas, tiam sis nws tseem tau siv cai rau saum lawv, thiab muab tej hauj lwm rau lawv, thiab tso tej neeg saib hauj lwm zov lawv.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tej kev txom nyem hnyav heev li uas lawv tau pib quaj sib sib zog thov Vajtswv.
- 11 Thiab Amuloos tau txib lawv tias lawv yuav tsum tsum lawv tej kev quaj thov; thiab nws tau tso tub zov kev zov lawv saib xyuas lawv, tias yog nrhiav pom leej twg hu Vajtswv yuav tsum raug ua kom tuag.
- 12 Thiab Amas thiab nws cov neeg thiaj tsis tsa lawv tej suab rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, tiam sis tau nchuav lawv tej siab tej ntsws rau nws; thiab nws twb paub txog tej kev xav ntawm lawv tej siab.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev txom nyem, hais tias: Cia li tsa nej tej taub hau thiab cia li zoo siab, vim kuv paub txog tej lus sib khi uas nej tau khi rau kuv lawm; thiab kuv yuav sib khi lus nrog kuv cov neeg thiab coj lawv dim ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 14 Thiab kuv kuj yuav ua rau tej nra uas nyob saum nej tej xub pwg kom yooj yim, xwv kom nej yuav tsis hnov tias lawv nyob saum nej nraub qaum, thaum uas nej tseem poob cev qhev; thiab kuv yuav ua li no xwv kom nej yuav sawv ua tim khawv rau kuv txij li no mus, thiab xwv kom nej yuav paub tseeb tias kuv, tus Tswv uas yog Vajtswv, yeej los saib xyuas kuv cov neeg thaum lawv muaj kev txom nyem.
- 15 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tej nra hnyav uas raug tso saum Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau raug ua kom sib; muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv tau txhawb lawv lub dag lub zog ces lawv thiaj ris tau lawv tej nra hnyav sib sib, thiab lawv tau kam ua zoo siab hlo thiab ua siab ntev nyiaj rau tag nrho tej uas tus Tswv lub siab nyiam.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv txoj kev ntseeg thiab lawv txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj ntau kawg li ces tus Tswv lub suab tau rov qab los rau lawv dua, hais tias: Cia li zoo siab hlo, vim tag kis kuv yuav coj nej tawm ntawm txoj kev ua tauj ua qhev.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put taskmasters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

- 17 Thiab nws tau hais rau Amas tias: Koj yuav tsum ua cov neeg no ntej, thiab kuv yuav mus nrog koj thiab koj cov neeg no tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 18 Nim no tau muaj tias Amas thiab nws cov neeg tau sau lawv tej tsiaj ua ke thaum tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tej qoob loos thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb sau lawv tej pab tsiaj los ua ke tag nrho sij hawm ib hmos li.
- 19 Thiab thaum sawv ntxov tus Tswv tau ua kom muaj ib qho kev tsaug zog heev los rau cov Neeg Lamas, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho lawv tej neeg saib hauj lwm tau tsaug zog looj lom.
- 20 Thiab Amas thiab nws cov neeg tau ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab thaum lawv tau tsiv mus tau ib hnuv lawm lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub rau hauv ib lub dawm, thiab lawv tau hu ua lub dawm Amas, vim nws tau koj lawv kev hauv hav zoov.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nyob rau hauv lub dawm Amas lawv tau nchuav lawv tej kev ua tsaug rau Vajtswv vim nws tau hlub tshua rau lawv, thiab tau ua yooj yim rau lawv tej nra hnyav, thiab tau koj lawv dim tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev, vim lawv tau nyob hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev, thiab yeej tsis muaj leej twg yuav tso tau lawv dim tsuas yog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv xwb.
- 22 Thiab lawv ua tsaug rau Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho lawv tej txiv neej thiab tag nrho lawv tej poj niam thiab tag nrho lawv tej me nyuam uas txawj hais lus tau tsa lawv tej suab qhuas lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 23 Thiab nim no tus Tswv tau hais rau Amas tias: Koj maj thiab koj thiab cov neeg no tawm ntawm thaj av no, vim cov Neeg Lamas tau tsim lawm thiab tau caum koj qab; yog li ntawd koj cia li tawm ntawm thaj av no mus, thiab kuv yuav cheem cov Neeg Lamas rau ntawm lub dawm no xwv kom lawv yuav tuaj caum cov neeg no tsis tau ntxiv lawm.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ncaim tawm ntawm lub dawm mus lawm, thiab pib lawv txoj kev tsiv rau hauv hav zoov.
- 25 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau mus rau hauv hav zoov tau kaum ob hnuv lawm lawv tau los txog hauv thaj av Xalahas; thiab vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas kuj tau tos txais lawv nrog txoj kev xyiv fab.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

Mauxiyas 25

- 1 Thiab nim no vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau kom tag nrho cov neeg yuav tsum tuaj sib sau ua ke.
- 2 Nim no tsis muaj coob leej uas yog Nifais cov me nyuam, los sis tsis muaj coob leej cov uas yog Nifais tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv li, cov neeg hauv Xalahelas, uas yog Mules cov xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv, thiab cov uas tau nrog nws tuaj rau hauv hav zoov.
- 3 Thiab tsis muaj Nifais cov neeg thiab Xalahelas cov neeg coob npaum li cov Neeg Lamas; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb tsis muaj ntau li ib nrab.
- 4 Thiab nim no tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais tau tuaj sib txoos ua ke, thiab tag nrho cov neeg Xalahelas los ib yam, thiab lawv tau sib sau ua ke ua ob pab.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tau nyeem, thiab raug ua kom nyeem, Xeenas cov ceev xwm txheej rau nws cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau nyeem Xeenas cov neeg tej ceev xwm txheej, txij li lub sij hawm lawv tau ncaim thaj av Xalahelas mus txog thaum lawv tau rov qab los.
- 6 Thiab nws kuj tau nyeem txog Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij zaj, thiab tag nrho lawv tej kev txom nyem, txij li lub sij hawm thaum lawv ncaim thaj av Xalahelas mus txog lub sij hawm lawv tau rov qab los.
- 7 Thiab nim no, thaum Mauxiyas tau nyeem tej ceev xwm txheej tag lawm, nws cov neeg uas tau nyob hauv thaj av tau muaj kev tau tej plhaw thiab xav tsis thoob li.
- 8 Vim lawv tsis paub yuav xav li cas; vim thaum lawv tau pom cov uas tau raug tso dim ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev lawv tau muaj kev xyiv fab heev puv npo.
- 9 Thiab ntxiv, thaum lawv xav txog lawv cov kwv tij uas raug tua los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas lawv tau muaj kev tu siab puv npo, thiab twb tau poob ntau lub kua muag rau kev txom nyem.
- 10 Thiab ntxiv, thaum lawv xav txog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, thiab nws lub hwj chim uas tau coj Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tawm ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tes thiab ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev, lawv tau tsa lawv tej suab thiab ua Vajtswv tsaug.

Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

- 11 Thiab ntxiv, thaum lawv xav txog cov Neeg Lamas, uas yog lawv cov kwv tij, txog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab kev uas qias, lawv tau muaj kev mob thiab kev nkeeg puv npo rau txoj kev xav kom lawv tus kheej zoo.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias cov me nyuam ntawm Amuloos thiab nws cov kwv tij, cov uas tau coj cov Neeg Lamas tej ntxhais los ua poj niam, tau tsis nyiam rau tej uas lawv txiv tau ua, thiab lawv yuav tsis hu npe mus raws li lawv ntxiv lawm, yog li ntawd lawv tau yuav Nifais lub npe los rau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav raug hu ua Nifais cov me nyuam thiab kom raug suav nrog cov uas hu ua cov Neeg Nifais.
- 13 Thiab nim no Xalahelas cov neeg tau los nrog cov Neeg Nifais, thiab ua li no los vim yog lub teb chaws tsis tau muab rau leej twg tiam sis tsuas yog rau cov uas yog Nifais xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv xwb.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Mauxiyas tau hais lus thiab nyeem rau cov neeg tas lawm, nws tau xav kom Amas yuav tsum los hais lus rau cov neeg thiab.
- 15 Thiab Amas tau hais rau lawv, thaum lawv sib txoos ua ke nyob hauv ib pab coob coob, thiab nws tau mus rau ib pab dhau ib pab, qhuab qhia rau cov neeg txog kev hloov siab lees txim thiab kev ntseeg tus Tswv.
- 16 Thiab nws tau yaum Leehais thiab nws cov kwv tij tej neeg, tag nrho cov uas tau raug coj dim ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev, kom lawv nco ntsoov tias nws twb yog tus Tswv uas tau tso lawv dim.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amas tau qhia cov neeg ntau yam lawm, thiab tau tsum hais lus rau lawv lawm, vaj ntxwv Leehais tau xav ua kev cai raus dej; thiab tag nrho nws cov neeg los xav tau heev tias kom lawv raug muab ua kev cai raus dej thiab.
- 18 Yog li ntawd, Amas tau mus rau hauv dej thiab tau muab lawv ua kev cai raus dej; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau muab lawv ua kev cai raus dej mus raws li nws tau ua rau nws cov kwv tij nyob rau hauv cov dej Maumoos; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txhua tus uas nws tau muab ua kev cai raus dej tau los zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos; thiab qhov no los vim yog lawv tej kev ntseeg rau Amas tej lus.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau pub rau Amas kom nws ua kom muaj tej koom txoos thoob plaws hauv thaj av Xalabelas; thiab pub nws muaj hwj chim tsa cov pov thawj thiab cov xib hwb rau txhua lub tsev koom txoos.
- 20 Nim no tau ua li no vim tau muaj neeg coob heev uas ib tug xib hwb yuav kav lawv tag nrho tsis tag; thiab lawv los twb tsis muaj peev xwm hnov tau Vajtswv txoj lus tag nrho nyob rau hauv ib qhov chaw sab laj.
- 21 Yog li ntawd lawv tau txoos lawv tuaj ua ke rau txawv pab pawg, uas hu ua tej tsev koom txoos; txhua lub tsev koom txoos muaj lawv tej pov thawj thiab lawv tej xib hwb, thiab txhua tus pov thawj qhuab qhia txoj lus raws li nws raug muab los rau nws los ntawm Amas lub qhov ncauj.
- 22 Thiab li no, txawm tias tau muaj ntau lub tsev koom txoos los lawv yog tib lub koom txoos xwb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Vajtswv lub koom txoos; vim yeej tsis tau qhia dab tsi rau hauv tag nrho tej tsev koom txoos tsuas yog kev hloov siab lees txim thiab kev ntseeg hauv Vajtswv xwb.
- 23 Thiab nim no tau muaj xya lub tsev koom txoos nyob hauv thaj av Xalabelas. Thiab tau muaj tias cov uas xav muab Khetos, los sis Vajtswv lub npe los ris rau saum lawv, lawv tau los koom Vajtswv tej tsev koom txoos;
- 24 Thiab lawv tau raug hu ua Vajtswv cov neeg. Thiab tus Tswv tau nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig los rau saum lawv, thiab lawv tau koob hmoov, thiab huaj vam nyob hauv thaj av.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

Mauxiyas 26

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias tau muaj coob leej ntawm tiam hluas uas tsis to taub vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tej lus, tseem yog me nyuam yaus thaum lub sij hawm nws tau hais rau nws cov neeg; thiab lawv tsis ntseeg lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai.
- 2 Lawv tsis ntseeg yam uas tau hais txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag, thiab lawv kuj tsis ntseeg txog txoj kev Khetos yuav los.
- 3 Thiab nim no vim lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg lawv thiaj tsis muaj peev xwm to taub Vajtswv txoj lus; thiab lawv tej siab tau tawv qhwb qhawv.
- 4 Thiab lawv tsis kam ua kev cai raus dej; thiab lawv kuj tsis kam koom nrog lub koom txoos. Thiab lawv tau yog ib cov neeg uas nrug nyob raws li lawv tej kev ntseeg, thiab tau ua twj ywm li ntawd mus li, twb nyob hauv lawv txoj kev txhaum thiab kev ntiaj teb; vim lawv tsis kam hu rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 5 Thiab nim no nyob hauv Mauxiyas txoj kev kav teb kav chaw lawv twb tsis muaj coob li ib nrab ntawm Vajtswv cov neeg; tiam sis vim txoj kev tsis sib haum ntawm cov kwv tij lawv tau rais los muaj coob ntxiv tuaj.
- 6 Vim tau muaj tias lawv tau coj yuam kev coob leej nrog lawv tej lus dag ntxias, cov uas nyob hauv koom txoos, thiab tau ua kom lawv ua txhaum ntau yam; yog li ntawd tau rais los tsim nyog tias cov uas tau ua txhaum, uas nyob hauv lub koom txoos, yuav tsum raug ntuas los ntawm lub koom txoos.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau raug coj los rau cov pov thawj, thiab tau coj los rau cov pov thawj los ntawm cov xib hwb; thiab cov pov thawj tau coj lawv los rau Amas, tus uas yog tus pov thawj hlob.
- 8 Nim no vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas twb tau muab txoj cai rau Amas kav lub koom txoos.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tsis tau paub txog lawv; tiam sis tau muaj coob tug tim khawv nkaug lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, cov neeg tau sawv thiab tau ua tim khawv txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees coob heev.
- 10 Nim no twb tsis tau muaj ib yam zoo li no tshwm sim rau hauv lub koom txoos li, yav tas los lawm; yog li ntawd Amas tau ntxhov siab, thiab nws tau kom lawv yuav tsum raug coj mus cuag vaj ntxwv.

Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

- 11 Thiab nws tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tias: Saib seb, nov yog coob leej uas peb tau koj tuaj rau koj, cov uas tau raug lawv cov kwv tij ntxo; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau raug koj tuaj ntawm ntau yam kev tsis ncaj ncees. Thiab lawv tsis kam hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; yog li ntawd peb tau koj lawv tuaj rau koj, xwv kom koj yuav txiav txim rau lawv raws li lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 12 Tiam sis vaj ntxwv Mauxyias tau hais rau Amas tias: Saib seb, kuv tsis txiav txim rau lawv; yog li ntawd kuv muab lawv rau hauv koj tes los txiav txim.
- 13 Thiab nim no Amas tau ntxhov siab dua; thiab nws thiaj tau mus thiab thov tus Tswv saib nws yuav ua li cas txog yam xwm no, vim nws tau ntshai tias tsam nws yuav ua txhaum nyob ntawm Vajtswv lub qhov muag.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau nchuav tag nrho nws lub siab rau Vajtswv lawm, tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau nws hais tias:
- 15 Koj tau koob hmoov, Amas, thiab lawv cov uas tau ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv cov dej Maumoos los tau koob hmoov. Koj tau koob hmoov vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg heev rau kuv tus tub qhe Anpinadais tej lus xwb.
- 16 Thiab lawv tau koob hmoov vim yog lawv tej kev ntseeg heev rau tej lus uas koj tau hais rau lawv xwb.
- 17 Thiab koj tau koob hmoov vim koj tau tsa ib lub koom txoos nyob hauv cov neeg no; thiab lawv yuav raug loj hlob, thiab lawv yuav yog kuv cov neeg.
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, cov neeg no uas txaus siab ris kuv lub npe tau koob hmoov; vim lawv yuav raug hu los ntawm kuv lub npe; thiab lawv yog kuv li.
- 19 Thiab vim koj tau nug kuv txog cov uas ua txhaum, koj tau koob hmoov.
- 20 Koj yog kuv tus tub qhe; thiab kuv khi lus rau koj tias koj yuav tau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis; thiab koj yuav ua hauj lwm rau kuv thiab tawm mus nyob hauv kuv lub npe, thiab yuav sau kuv cov yaj los ua ke.
- 21 Thiab nws tus uas yuav hnov kuv lub suab yuav yog kuv tus yaj; thiab koj yuav txais nws los rau hauv lub koom txoos, thiab kuv kuj yuav txais nws tib yam.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

- 22 Vim saib seb, lub no yog kuv lub koom txoos; tus uas ua kev cai raus dej yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim. Thiab tus uas koj txais yuav tsum ntseeg hauv kuv lub npe; thiab kuv yuav zam txim dawb paug rau nws.
- 23 Vim tus uas tau ris lub ntiaj teb no tej kev txog txhaum twb yog kuv; vim tus uas tsim lawv twb yog kuv; thiab kuv twb yog tus uas pub rau tus uas ntseeg mus txog thaum kawg ib qhov chaw nyob ntawm kuv sab xis.
- 24 Vim saib seb, lawv yuav raug hu los ntawm kuv lub npe; thiab yog lawv paub kuv lawv yeej yuav tawm los, thiab yuav muaj ib qho chaw nyob mus ib txhis ntawm kuv sab xis.
- 25 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias thaum suab raj nrov zaum ob thaum ntawd lawv cov uas ib txwm tsis paub kuv yuav tau tawm los thiab yuav sawv ntawm kuv xub ntiag.
- 26 Thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav paub tias kuv yog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, tias kuv yog lawv tus Txhiv Dim; tiam sis lawv yuav tsis raug txhiv kom dim.
- 27 Thiab thaum ntawd kuv yuav lees rau lawv tias kuv yeej ib txwm tsis paub lawv; thiab lawv yuav ncaim mus rau hauv lub qhov cub uas cig mus ib txhis uas tau npaj rau tus dab thiab nws cov tim tswv.
- 28 Yog li ntawd kuv hais rau koj, tias nws tus uas pheej tsis hnov kuv lub suab, koj tsis txhob txais rau hauv kuv lub koom txoos tib yam, vim kuv yuav tsis txais nws nyob rau thaum hnuv kawg.
- 29 Yog li ntawd kuv hais rau koj tias, Cia li mus; thiab tus uas ua txhaum rau kuv, koj yuav tsum txiav txim rau nws raws li tej kev txhaum uas nws tau ua lawm; thiab yog tias nws lees nws tej kev txhaum rau koj thiab kuv, thiab hloov siab lees txim tiag tiag ntawm nws lub siab, koj yuav tsum zam txim rau nws, thiab kuv los kuj yuav zam txim rau nws thiab.
- 30 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab npaum li kuv cov neeg yuav nquag hloov siab lees txim kuv yuav zam txim rau lawv tej kev txhaum uas lawv ua rau kuv.
- 31 Thiab nej ib leeg kuj yuav tsum zam txim rau ib leeg rau nej tej kev txhaum; vim kuv hais tseeb rau koj tias, tus uas tsis zam txim rau nws tej kwv tij zej zog tej kev txhaum thaum nws hais tias nws hloov siab lees txim, tus ntawd tab tom coj nws tus kheej los mus raug txim tib yam nkaus.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whosoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

- 32 Nim no kuv hais rau koj tias, Cia li mus; thiab tus uas tsis kam hloov siab lees txim rau nws tej kev txog txhaum tsis txhob suav tus ntawd nrog kuv cov neeg; thiab yam no yuav tsum raug koj txij li lub sij hawm no mus.
- 33 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau hnov tej lus no nws tau muab lawv sau cia xwv kom nws yuav tau lawv, thiab xwv kom nws yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.
- 34 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau mus thiab tau txiav txim rau cov uas tau raug txhom ua kev tsis ncaj ncees, raws li tus Tswv txoj lus.
- 35 Thiab cov uas tau hloov siab ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum thiab tau lees tej txim ntawd, nws tau muab lawv los xyaw nrog lub koom txoos cov neeg;
- 36 Thiab cov uas tsis kam lees lawv tej kev txhaum thiab tsis hloov siab ntawm lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, tus ntawd raug tsis muab xyaw nrog lub koom txoos cov neeg, thiab lawv tej npe tau raug nrho tawm.
- 37 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau koj kav tag nrho tej xwm txheej ntawm lub koom txoos; thiab lawv tau pib rov qab muaj kev thaj yeeb thiab vam meej heev nyob hauv tej dej num ntawm lub koom txoos, taug kev ceev faj zoo rau tus Tswv, txais coob leej, thiab ua kev cai raus dej rau coob leej.
- 38 Thiab nim no Amas thiab nws cov phooj ywg ua hauj lwm uas saib xyuas lub koom txoos tau ua tag nrho tej yam no, rau siab mus kev ntawm txhua yam zoo, qhia Vajtswv txoj lus nyob hauv txhua yam, tiv qees txhua yam kev txom nyem, thaum raug cov uas tsis zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos tsim txom.
- 39 Thiab lawv tau ntuas lawv cov kwv tij; thiab lawv kuj tau raug ntuas, txhua tus los ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus, raws li nws tej kev txog txhaum, los sis rau tej kev txhaum uas nws tau ua, raug Vajtswv txib kom thov Vajtswv tsis txhob tso tseg li, thiab ua tsaug rau tag nrho txhua txhia yam.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

Mauxiyas 27

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tej kev tsim txom uas tau ua rau lub koom txoos los ntawm cov tsis ntseeg tau rais los huaj vam loj heev ua rau cov ntseeg pib yws yws, thiab yws rau lawv cov thawj coj txog tej xwm txheej; thiab lawv tau yws rau Amas. Thiab Amas tau piav tej teeb meem rau lawv tus vaj ntxwv, Mauxiyas. Thiab Mauxiyas tau sab laj nrog nws cov pov thawj.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau xa ib co lus tshaj mus thoob plaws rau thaj av ib puag ncig tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj ib tug tsis ntseeg tsim txom ib tug twg uas zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj ib lo lus txib nruj thoob plaws tag nrho cov koom txoos tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj tej kev tsim txom nyob hauv lawv, es yuav tsum muaj kev xwm yeem rau txhua tus neeg;
- 4 Tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob cia txoj kev khav theeb los sis kev muab hlob los thab lawv txoj kev thaj yeeb; tias txhua tus neeg yuav tsum saib nws tej kwv tij zej zog ib yam li nws tus kheej, siv lawv tus kheej tej tes ua hauj lwm los yug lawv.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho lawv tej pov thawj thiab tej xib hwb yuav tsum siv lawv tus kheej tej tes ua hauj lwm los yug lawv, nyob tag nrho hauv txhua lub caij tsuas yog thaum muaj mob, los sis thaum xav tau kev pab heev xwb; thiab thaum ua tej yam no, lawv tau muaj Vajtswv txoj kev zoo.
- 6 Thiab tau pib muaj kev thaj yeeb ntau nyob hauv thaj av; thiab cov neeg tau pib muaj coob heev, thiab tau pib khiav ri niab mus deb rau saum lub ntiaj teb daim av, muaj tseeb tiag, mus rau sab ped thiab sab nrad, rau sab hnuv tuaj thiab sab hnuv poob, tau ua tej nroog loj thiab tej zos nyob thoob plaws tag nrho txhua ceg ntawm thaj av.
- 7 Thiab tus Tswv tau los xyuas lawv thiab tau ua kom lawv huaj vam, thiab lawv tau rais los mus ua ib haiv neeg coob thiab nplua nuj.
- 8 Nim no Mauxiyas cov tub yog ib co ntawm cov tsis ntseeg; thiab Amas ib tug tub los kuj nrog lawv, nws hu ua Amas, raws li nws txiv; txawm li ntawd los, nws tau rais los ua ib tug neeg phem thiab pe dab pe mlom heev. Thiab nws yog ib tug neeg muaj lus ntau, thiab tau hais tej lus dag ntxias ntau rau cov neeg; yog li ntawd nws tau coj cov neeg coob leej mus ua raws li nws tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.

Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

- 9 Thiab nws tau rais los ua ib qho uas khaum kev heev rau txoj kev huaj vam ntawm Vajtswv lub koom txoos; nyiag koj tej neeg tej siab tej ntsws mus; tau ua muaj kev sib cav cov nyom nyob hauv cov neeg; tau muab sij hawm rau Vajtswv tus yeeb ncuab siv nws lub hwj chim rau saum lawv.
- 10 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tab tom mus ncig rhuav Vajtswv lub koom txoos, vim nws tau mus ncig ntsiag to nrog Mauxiyas cov tub nrhiav ua kom lub koom txoos puas tsuaj, thiab mus koj tus Tswv cov neeg kom mus yuam kev, mus tsis raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib, los sis vaj ntxwv tej—
- 11 Thiab ib yam li uas kuv tau hais rau nej lawm, thaum lawv tseem tab tom mus ncig tawm tsam Vajtswv, saib seb, tus Tswv tus tim tswv tau tshwm sim los rau lawv; thiab nws tau nqis los zoo li nyob hauv ib tau huab; thiab nws tau hais lus zoo li ib lub suab xob quaj, uas tau ua rau ntiag teb co qeeg nkaws rau ntawm qhov uas lawv sawv;
- 12 Thiab lawv tau ceeb xav tsis tag li, ua rau lawv qaug rau hauv av, thiab tsis to taub tej lus uas nws tau hais rau lawv.
- 13 Txawm li ntawd los nws tau hu lawv dua hais tias: Amas, cia li sawv thiab sawv los, vim yog vim li cas koj thiaj li tsim txom Vajtswv lub koom txoos? Vim tus Tswv tau hais tias: Lub no yog kuv lub koom txoos, thiab kuv yuav txhim tsa nws; thiab yuav tsis muaj yam dab tsi rhuav tshem nws tau, tsuas yog ntshai kuv cov neeg tej kev txog txhaum xwb.
- 14 Thiab tus tim tswv, rov qab hais dua tias: Saib seb, tus Tswv tau hnov nws cov neeg tej lus thov, thiab kuj hnov tej lus thov ntawm nws tus tub qhe, Amas, tus uas yog koj txiv; vim nws tau thov nrog tej kev ntseeg ntau heev txog koj xwv kom koj yuav raug koj los mus paub qhov tseeb; yog li ntawd, vim lub ntsiab no kuv thiaj tau los ua kom koj paub txog Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab txoj cai, xwv kom nws tej tub qhe tej lus thov yuav raug teb raws li lawv tej kev ntseeg.
- 15 Thiab nim no saib seb, koj puas yuav muaj peev xwm tsis ntseeg Vajtswv lub hwj chim? Vim saib seb, tsis yog kuv lub suab ua rau av tshee qeeg nkaws los? Thiab koj puas muaj peev xwm tsis pom kuv nyob ntawm koj xub ntiag? Thiab kuv twb yog raug Vajtswv xa los.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

16 Nim no kuv hais rau koj tias: Cia li mus, thiab nco ntsoov koj tej yawg koob tej kev ua poob cev qhev nyob hauv thaj av Helas, thiab nyob hauv thaj av Nifais; thiab nco ntsoov saib tej uas nws tau ua rau lawv lawm loj npaum li cas; vim lawv twb raug ua poob cev qhev, thiab nws tau tso lawv dim. Thiab nim no kuv hais rau koj, Amas, cia li mus, thiab tsis txhob nrhiav ua kom lub koom txoos puas tsuaj ntxiv lawm, xwv kom lawv tej lus thov yuav raug teb, thiab li no txawm tias koj yuav ua kom koj tus kheej raug ntiab tawm.

17 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tej lus no yog cov lus kawg uas tus tim tswv tau hais rau Amas, thiab nws tau ncaim mus lawm.

18 Thiab nim no Amas thiab cov uas tau nrog nws rov qab tau vau rau hauv av dua, vim lawv txoj kev xav tsis tag ntau heev li; vim lawv tau pom tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv ntawm lawv qhov muag kiag; thiab nws lub suab nrov cuag suab xob quaj, uas tau ua lub ntiaj teb co qeeg nkaws; thiab lawv paub lawm tias tsis yog dab tsi li tsuas yog Vajtswv lub hwj chim xwb thiaj ua tau lub ntiaj teb co qeeg nkaws thiab ua nws tshee qeeg nkaws zoo li nws twb yuav tawg faib ua ob peb daig.

19 Thiab nim no Amas txoj kev xav tsis tag ntau heev li ces ua rau nws cia li rais los mus ruam hais tsis tau lus, ces nws qhib tsis tau nws lub qhov ncauj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau rais los mus qaug zog, kawg tias nws txav tsis tau nws tej tes; yog li ntawd nws tau raug cov ua nrog nws tuaj muab nqa, thiab ev nws yam qaug qev, mus txog thaum nws raug muab tso rau ntawm nws txiv xub ntiag.

20 Thiab lawv tau qhia rau nws txiv tag nrho txhua yam uas tau tshwm sim los rau lawv lawm; thiab nws txiv tau zoo siab, vim nws paub lawm tias nws yog Vajtswv lub hwj chim.

21 Thiab nws tau kom ib pab neeg coob coob yuav tsum tuaj sib sau ua ke xwv kom lawv yuav ua tim khawv yam uas tus Tswv tau ua rau nws tus tub, thiab kuj rau cov uas nrog nws.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

- 22 Thiab nws tau kom cov pov thawj yuav tsum sib sau tuaj ua ke; thiab lawv pib yoo mov, thiab thov tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv xwv kom nws yuav qhib Amas lub qhov ncauj, xwv kom nws yuav hais tau lus, thiab xwv kom nws tej caj npab tej ceg yuav txais tau lawv tej zog—xwv kom cov neeg tej qhov muag yuav raug qhib kom pom kev thiab paub txog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo thiab lub yeeb koob.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau yoo mov thiab tau thov Vajtswv tau ncuaj li ob hnuv ob hmos lawm, Amas tej caj npab tej ceg tau txais lawv tej zog, thiab nws tau sawv ntsug thiab tau pib hais lus rau lawv, qhia lawv kom cia li zoo siab:
- 24 Vim, nws tau hais tias, kuv tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm kuv tej kev txog txhaum, thiab tau raug tus Tswv txhiv dim; saib seb kuv tau yug los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig.
- 25 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv hais tias: Tsis txhob xav tsis tag tias tib neeg sawv daws, muaj tseeb tiag, tej txiv neej thiab tej poj niam, tag nrho txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus thiab cov neeg sawv daws, yuav tsum yug dua tshiab; muaj tseeb tiag, yug los ntawm Vajtswv, pauv tawm ntawm lawv tej kev ntiab teb thiab ntawm txoj kev poob, los rau ib qho chaw ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees, raug Vajtswv txhiv dim, ciaj los mus ua nws tej tub thiab tej ntxhais;
- 26 Thiab li ntawd lawv rais los mus ua neeg tshiab; thiab tsuas yog lawv ua li no xwb, yog tsis li ces lawv tsis muaj ntiag tug nyob mus rau Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 27 Kuv hais rau nej tias, tsuas yog li no xwb, tsis li ces lawv yuav tsum raug ntiab khiav tawm; thiab kuv paub li no, vim kuv twb tau zoo li raug ntiab tawm.
- 28 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab tau ntsib kev txom nyem ntau, hloov siab lees txim yuav luag tuag, nyob hauv txoj kev zam txim tus Tswv tau pom zoo rub kuv tawm ntawm ib txoj kev kub hnyiab uas nyob mus ib txhis, thiab kuv tau yug los ntawm Vajtswv.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

29 Kuv tus ntsuj plig tau raug txhiv dim los ntawm txoj kev iab thiab tej kev raug khi ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees. Kuv tau nyob hauv lub qhov uas tsaus ntuj tshaj plaws li; tiam sis nim no kuv pom Vajtswv txoj kev kaj uas zoo kawg nkaus. Kuv tus ntsuj plig tau raug tsim txom nrog txoj kev tsim txom uas nyob mus ib txhis; tiam sis kuv raug pab rub dim, thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tsis muaj mob ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.

30 Kuv tau tsis kam lees kuv tus Txhiv Dim, thiab tau xyeeb tej uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais lawm; tiam sis nim no lawv yuav pom ua ntej tias nws yuav los, thiab nws yuav nco ntsoov txhua tus neeg uas nws tau tsim lawm, nws tus kheej yuav ua kom neeg sawv daws paub nws.

31 Muaj tseeb tiag, txhua lub hauv caug yuav tsum tau txhos, txhua tus nplaig yuav tau lees rau nws. Muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog thaum hnuv kawg, thaum txhua tus neeg yuav sawv los txiav txim ntawm nws, ces lawv yuav lees tias nws yog Vajtswv; ces lawv, cov uas ua neej nyob hauv ntiaj teb no uas tsis yuav Vajtswv, yuav lees tias txoj kev txiav txim ntawm txoj kev rau txim uas nyob mus ib txhis yeej ncaj rau saum lawv; thiab lawv yuav qeeg, thiab tshee hnyo, thiab caws rau hauv qab ntawm nws lub qhov muag uas nrhiav pom tag ib puas yam tsav.

32 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau pib mus qhia cov neeg txij li lub sij hawm no mus, thiab cov uas tau nrog Amas thaum lub sij hawm tus tim tswv tau tshwm sim los rau lawv, tau mus ncig thoob plaws rau txhua thaj av, tshaj tawm rau cov neeg tag nrho txog tej xwm uas lawv tau hnov thiab tau pom, thiab qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus hauv ntau txoj kev txom nyem, raug tsim txom heev los ntawm cov uas tsis ntseeg, raug lawv ntau tus ntaus.

33 Tiam sis txawm tias tag nrho tej no los, lawv tseem tau faib ntau yam kev nplij siab rau cov ntseeg, ua kom lawv tej kev ntseeg ruaj khov kho, thiab ntuas kom lawv ua siab ntev nyiaj thiab ua tiag tiv coj Vajtswv tej lus txib.

34 Thiab plaub tug ntawm lawv yog Mauxiyas cov tub; thiab lawv cov npe yog Amoos, thiab Aloos, thiab Oonaws, thiab Heenais; cov no yog cov npe ntawm Mauxiyas cov tub.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

35 Thiab lawv tau mus ncig thoob plaws rau tag nrho hauv thaj av Xalahas, thiab rau tag nrho cov neeg uas vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas kav, rau siab ntso npaj kho tag nrho tej uas lawv tau ua rhuav piam rau cov ntseeg lawm, lees txim tag nrho lawv tej kev txog txhaum, thiab tshaj tawm tag nrho tej uas lawv tau pom, thiab piav tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tej vajlugkub rau tag nrho cov uas xav hnov lawv.

36 Thiab xws li no lawv tau yog ib co cuab yeej nyob hauv tus Tswv tes uas coj ntau leej los paub txog qhov tseeb, muaj tseeb tiag, los paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim.

37 Thiab lawv tau koob hmoov kawg! Vim lawv tau tshaj tawm kev thaj yeeb; lawv tau tshaj tawm txoj moo zoo ntawm qhov zoo; thiab lawv kuj tau tshaj rau cov neeg tias tus Tswv yog tus kav.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

Mauxiyas 28

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Mauxiyas cov tub tau ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no lawm, lawv tau coj ib co neeg tsis coob nrog lawv thiab rov qab mus cuag lawv txiv, tus vaj ntxwv, thiab tau xav kom nws yuav pub rau lawv kom lawv yuav, nrog cov uas lawv tau xaiv lawm, nce mus lawm pem thaj av Nifais xwv kom lawv yuav tau qhia tej uas lawv tau hnov thiab lawv yuav muab Vajtswv txoj lus rau lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas—
- 2 Xwv kom tej zaum lawv yuav coj tau lawv los paub txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab qhia rau lawv ntseeg txog txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees ntawm lawv tej yawg koob; thiab kom tej zaum lawv yuav kho tau lawv tej kev uas lawv ntxub rau cov Neeg Nifais, xwv kom lawv kuj yuav raug coj los muaj kev zoo siab nyob hauv tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, xwv kom lawv yuav rais los ib leeg ua phooj ua ywg rau ib leeg, thiab xwv kom yuav tsis muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntxiv nyob tag nrho rau hauv thaj av uas tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tau muab rau lawv lawm.
- 3 Nim no lawv tau xav tias txoj cawm seeg yuav tsum raug muab qhia rau txhua txhia tus paub, vim lawv tiv tsis taus tias neeg ib tug ntsuj plig twg yuav raug piam sij; muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev xav uas ib tug ntsuj plig twg yuav tau nyiaj txoj kev tsim txom uas nyob mus ib txhis tau ua rau lawv qeeg thiab tshee hnyo.
- 4 Thiab xws li no tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau ua hauj lwm rau saum lawv, vim lawv yog cov neeg txhau uas phem tshaj plaws. Thiab tus Tswv tau pom hauv nws txoj kev hlub tshua uas tsis muaj qhov kawg tseg lawv txoj sia; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tau nyiaj kev mob ntau ntawm sab ntsuj plig vim yog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, raug kev txom nyem ntau thiab ntshai kawg tias tsam lawv yuav raug ntiab khiav mus ib txhis li.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau thov lawv txiv tau ntau hnuv xwv kom lawv yuav tau nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais.
- 6 Thiab vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau mus thiab nug tus Tswv saib nws puas yuav cia nws tej tub nce mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas mus qhia txoj lus.

Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

- 7 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau Mauxiyas hais tias: Cia lawv nce mus, vim muaj coob leej yuav ntseeg lawv tej lus, thiab lawv yuav tau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis; thiab kuv yuav koj koj tej tub dim ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tes.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauxiyas tau pub lawv mus thiab ua raws li lawv tau thov.
- 9 Thiab lawv tau mus rau hauv hav zoov nce mus qhuab qhia txoj lus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas; thiab kuv yuav sau ib zag txog tej uas lawv ua tom qab no mus.
- 10 Nim no vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tsis muaj ib tug uas yuav muab lub teb chaws tso rau kav, vim nws cov tub tsis muaj ib tug uas yuav kam txais lub teb chaws.
- 11 Yog li ntawd nws tau muab cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog, thiab Nifais cov phiaj, thiab tag nrho tej uas nws tau muab ceev thiab tshwj tseg cia raws li Vajtsv tej lus txib, tom qab uas tau muab txhais thiab tau muab ua kom raug muab sau tej ceev xwm txheej uas nyob saum cov phiaj kub uas cov neeg Leehais nrhiav tau, uas Leehais txhais tes tau koj tuaj rau nws;
- 12 Thiab nws tau ua li no los vim yog nws cov neeg txoj kev pheed xav paub; vim lawv xav paub tshaj qhov ntsuas tau txog cov neeg uas tau raug puas tsuaj lawm.
- 13 Thiab nim no nws tau txhais lawv los ntawm kev siv ob lub pob zeb uas tau muab nruab rau nraum lub tsom qhov muag ob lub cheeb.
- 14 Nim no tej yam no tau raug npaj txij li puag thaum chiv keeb los lawm, thiab tau cev nqis dhau ib tiam mus rau ib tiam, rau txoj kev txhais tej lus;
- 15 Thiab lawv tau raug ceev thiab tshwj tseg cia los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, xwv kom nws yuav nrhiav pom tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tej kev qias ntawm nws cov neeg rau txhua tus uas yuav ua neej nyob hauv thaj av;
- 16 Thiab tus uas muaj tej yam no raug hu ua tus pom yav tom ntej, mus raws li sij hawm puag thaum ub.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

- 17 Nim no tom qab uas Mauxiyas tau txhais tej ceev xwm txheej no tas lawm, saib seb, nws tau qhia ib zag txog cov neeg uas tau raug puas tsuaj tas lawm, txij li lub sij hawm uas lawv tau raug puas tsuaj rov mus txog thaum tseem puab tus pej thuam siab siab, thaum lub sij hawm tus Tswv muab cov neeg nyias hais nyias ib yam lus thiab lawv tau tawg khiav ri niab mus deb rau thooob plaws saum lub ntiaj teb, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txij li lub sij hawm ntawd rov mus txog rau thaum tsim Adas.
- 18 Nim no zaj no tau ua rau Mauxiyas cov neeg nyuaj siab heev, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau muaj kev tu siab piv nkaus; txawm li ntawd los nws kuj ua rau lawv paub ntau, ntawm qhov uas lawv tau zoo siab.
- 19 Thiab zaj no yuav muab sau txij li no mus; vim saib seb, nws twb tsim nyog tias neeg sawv daws yuav tsum paub tej uas tau muab sau rau hauv zaj no.
- 20 Thiab nim no, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej lawm, tom qab uas vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau ua tej no tas lawm, nws tau muab cov phiaj toog, thiab tag nrho tej uas nws tau khaws tseg, thiab tau muab lawv cob rau Amas, tus uas yog Amas tus tub; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov ceev xwm txheej, thiab cov txhais lus, thiab tau muab tej ntawd rau nws, thiab tau txib nws kom nws yuav tsum ceev thiab tsom kwm lawv, thiab kom ceev ib phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm cov neeg, cev lawv nqis dhau ib tiam neeg rau ib tiam neeg, ib yam li lawv tau raug muab cev nqis dhau los txij lub caij uas Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

Mauxiyas 29

- 1 Nim no thaum Mauxiyas tau ua li no tag lawm nws tau xa xov mus thooob plaws hauv thaj av huv tib si, rau tag nrho hauv cov neeg, xav paub lawv kev xav yuav xav tau seb tus twg yuav tsim nyog ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg lub suab tau los, hais tias: Peb xav kom koj tus tub Aloos los ua peb tus vaj ntxwv thiab peb tus thawj coj.
- 3 Nim no Aloos twb tau nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais lawm, yog li ntawd vaj ntxwv tsis muaj peev xwm muab tau lub teb chaws cob rau nws; thiab Aloos los kuj tsis kam txais lub teb chaws los kav; thiab Mauxiyas cov tub los yeej tsis muaj ib tug uas yuav txaus siab los kav lub teb chaws.
- 4 Yog li ntawd vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau xa xov mus rau cov neeg dua; muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb sau ib colus xa mus rau cov neeg. Thiab cov no yog tej lus uas tau sau, hais tias:
- 5 Saib seb, Au nej uas yog kuv cov neeg es, los sis kuv cov kwv tij es, vim kuv saib nej rau nqi zoo li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum xav txog qhov xwm txheej uas nej tau raug hu los ntaus tswv yim—vim nej xav muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv.
- 6 Nim no kuv tshaj tawm rau nej tias nws tus uas muaj cai ncaj nraim txais tau lub teb chaws tsis kam txais, thiab tsis txaus siab los kav lub teb chaws.
- 7 Thiab nim no yog hais tias yuav muab lwm tus los hloov nws chaw, saib seb kuv ntshai tias yuav muaj kev sib cav sib ceg sawv nyob hauv nej. Thiab leej twg yuav paub tsuas yog kuv tus tub xwb, tus uas lub teb chaws yog nws li, yuav npau taws thiab ntxias cov neeg no ib txhia lawv nws qab, uas yuav ua kom muaj tsov muaj rog thiab kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv nej, qhov uas yuav ua kom muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau thiab muab tus Tswv txoj kev pauv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav ua kom coob leej tej ntsuj plig puas tsuaj mus.
- 8 Nim no kuv hais rau nej tias cia peb ua neeg txawj ntse thiab xav txog tej yam no, vim peb tsis muaj cai yuav ua kom kuv tus tub puas tsuaj mus, thiab peb kuj tsis muaj ib qho cai yuav rhuav lwm tus yog nws ho raug xaiv los pauv nws qhov chaw.

Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

- 9 Thiab yog kuv tus tub yuav tig rov qab mus rau nws txoj kev khav theeb thiab tej uas tsis muaj qab hau nws yeej yuav nco qab txog tej uas nws tau hais lawm, thiab los pom sam nws txoj cai rau lub teb chaws, uas yuav ua kom nws thiab cov neeg no ua kev txog txhaum ntau.
- 10 Thiab nim no cia peb ua neeg txawj ntse thiab ntsia yav tom hauv ntej rau tej yam no, thiab ua tej uas yuav ua kom muaj kev thaj yeeb rau cov neeg no.
- 11 Yog li ntawd kuv yuav ua nej tus vaj ntxwv hauv kuv lub neej uas tseem tshuav; txawm li ntawd los, cia peb xaiv tsa cov neeg txiav txim, los txiav txim rau cov neeg no raws li peb txoj kev cai; thiab peb yuav kho ua tshiab rau cov neeg no tej kev noj nyob, vim peb yuav xaiv tsa tej neeg txawj ntse los ua cov neeg txiav txim, cov uas yuav txiav txim rau cov neeg no raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.
- 12 Nim no cia ib tug neeg raug Vajtswv txiav txim yuav zoo dua li neeg txiav txim, vim Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim mas yeej ncaj tas mus li, tiam sis neeg tej kev txiav txim mas yeej tsis ncaj tas mus li.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, yog hais tias mus tau es nej yuav muaj cov neeg ncaj ncees los ua nej tej vaj ntxwv, cov uas yuav txhim kho Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab txiav txim rau cov neeg no raws li nws tej lus txib, muaj tseeb tiag, yog nej yuav muaj neeg los ua nej tej vaj ntxwv uas yuav ua tau ib yam li kuv txiv Npeyamis tau ua rau cov neeg no lawm—Kuv hais rau nej tias, yog muaj zoo li no tas mus li xwb ces nws yuav tsim nyog tias nej yuav tsum muaj vaj ntxwv los kav nej tas mus li.
- 14 Thiab kuv tus kheej kiag los twb tau ua hauj lwm tag lub dag lub zog thiab lub hwj chim uas kuv tau muaj, los qhia nej txog Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab tsim kev thaj yeeb thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av, xwv kom tsis txhob muaj kev tsov kev rog los sis kev sib cav sib ceg, tsis muaj ua tub sab tub nyiag, thiab tsis muaj kev ua lim hiam, thiab tsis muaj kev tua neeg, thiab tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi txog txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees;
- 15 Thiab leej twg tau ua kev tsis ncaj ncees, kuv tau rau txim rau nws raws li txoj kev txhaum uas nws tau ua txhaum, raws li txoj kev cai uas peb tej yawg koob tau muab rau peb lawm.
- 16 Nim no kuv hais rau nej tias, vim tej neeg tag nrho yeej tsis ncaj nws tsis tsim nyog tias nej yuav muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv los sis coob tus vaj ntxwv los kav nej.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

- 17 Vim saib seb, kev tsis ncaj ncees ntau npaum li cas yog ib tug vaj ntxwv phem tau ua txhaum, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kev puas tsuaj loj npaum li cas!
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, nco ntsoov txog vaj ntxwv Nau-as, nws txoj kev phem thiab nws txoj kev qias, thiab nws cov neeg tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias. Saib seb txoj kev puas tsuaj loj npaum li cas tau los rau lawv; thiab kuj yog vim lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees lawv tau raug koj los mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 19 Thiab yog tus uas tsim lawv, uas paub tag nrho ib puas tsav yam, tsis tau los rhuav tshuam thiab qhov no los vim yog lawv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim tiag tiag, ces lawv yeej tseem nyob hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev los txog nim no.
- 20 Tiam sis saib seb, nws tau koj lawv dim vim lawv tau txo hwj chim rau nws; thiab vim lawv tau quaj tas zog thov rau nws nws thiaj tau koj lawv dim ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev; thiab xws li no tus Tswv ua hauj lwm nrog nws lub hwj chim nyob rau tag nrho txhua txhia yam hauv noob neej, ncav nws txhais caj npab hlub rau lawv cov uas cia siab rau nws.
- 21 Thiab saib seb, nim no kuv hais rau nej, nej tsis muaj peev xwm rho tau tus vaj ntxwv phem tawm ntawm nws lub rooj zaum tsuas yog yuav muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntau rau xwb, thiab muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau.
- 22 Vim saib seb, nws muaj nws tej phooj ywg hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, thiab nws ceev nws tej tub zov kev nyob ib puag ncig nws; thiab nws dua tej kev cai ntawm cov uas kav ncaj ncees ua ntej nws; thiab nws muab Vajtswv tej lus txib tsuj tuaj hauv qab xib taws;
- 23 Thiab nws ua dua tej kev cai tshiab, thiab xa lawv mus rau nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev cai uas ua raws li nws tus kheej tej kev phem; thiab yog leej twg tsis ua raws li nws tej kev cai nws ua kom raug puas tsuaj; thiab leej twg tawm tsam nws nws yuav xa nws cov tub rog mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv, thiab yog nws ua tau nws yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj; thiab ib tug vaj ntxwv tsis ncaj ncees yuav hloov tag nrho tej kev ncaj ncees li no.
- 24 Thiab nim no saib seb kuv hais rau nej, nws tsis tsim nyog tias tej kev qias li ntawd yuav los rau saum nej.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

- 25 Yog li ntawd, nej cia li xaiv los ntawm cov neeg no tej suab, cov txiav txim, xwv kom nej yuav raug txiav txim raws li tej kev cai uas peb tej yawg koob tau muab rau nej, uas yog cov ncaj ncees, thiab yog cov uas tus Tswv txhais tes tau muab rau lawv lawm.
- 26 Nim no nws tsis nquag muaj tias cov neeg tej suab yuav xav tau ib yam dab tsi uas tsis raws li qhov uas yog; tiam sis nws nquag muaj rau cov neeg feem tsawg pheed xav tau qhov uas tsis yog; yog li ntawd nej yuav tau koj raws li qhov no thiab ua kom nws yog nej txoj kev cai—los ua nej tej hauj lwm los ntawm cov neeg tej suab.
- 27 Thiab yog thaum lub sij hawm los es cov neeg tej suab ho xaiv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, ces yog lub caij uas Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim yuav los rau nej; muaj tseeb tiag, thaum ntawd yog lub sij hawm uas nws yuav los xyuas nej nrog txoj kev puas tsuaj loj ib yam li uas nws twb tau los xyuas thaj av no lawm.
- 28 Thiab nim no yog nej muaj cov neeg txiav txim, thiab lawv tsis txiav txim rau nej raws li txoj kev cai uas tau muab, nej muaj peev xwm ua kom lawv yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm tus neeg txiav txim siab zog.
- 29 Yog nej tej neeg txiav txim uas siab zog tsis txiav txim ncaj, nej yuav kom nej cov neeg txiav txim qes zog ib cov tuaj sib sau ua ke, thiab lawv yuav txiav txim rau nej cov neeg txiav txim siab zog, raws li cov neeg tej suab.
- 30 Thiab kuv txib kom nej ua tej yam no nyob hauv txoj kev ntshai tus Tswv; thiab kuv txib kom nej ua tej yam no, thiab kom nej tsis txhob muaj vaj ntxwv; xwv kom yog cov neeg no ua kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees lawv yuav raug txais rov qab los rau saum lawv tej taub hau.
- 31 Vim saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, neeg ntau leej tej kev txhaum tau raug muaj los ntawm lawv tej vaj ntxwv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; yog li ntawd lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tau raug txais rov qab los rau saum lawv cov vaj ntxwv tej taub hau.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

32 Thiab nim no kuv xav tias txoj kev tsis xwm yeem no yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj nyob rau hauv thaj av no lawm, qhov tseem ceeb yog nyob hauv kuv cov neeg no; tiam sis kuv xav kom thaj av no yog ib thaj av uas muaj kev txim lij, thiab kom txhua tus neeg yuav zoo siab rau tej uas nws ua tau thiab tej kev muaj cai li lwm tus, ntev npaum li tus Tswv pom hum tias peb yuav nyob thiab muaj thaj av ua peb ntiag tug, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav ntev npaum li peb tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tseem yuav nyob rau saum thaj av.

33 Thiab vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tseem tau sau ntau yam ntxiv rau lawv, nthuav hlo rau lawv tag nrho tus vaj ntxwv ncaj ncees tej kev nyuaj siab thiab tej teeb meem, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho tej kev txhawj ntawm sab ntsuj plig rau lawv cov neeg, thiab tag nrho cov neeg tej kev yws rau lawv tus vaj ntxwv; thiab nws tau piav tag nrho ib puas yam tsav rau lawv.

34 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias tej yam no yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj; tiam sis lub nra yuav tsum los rau tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws, xwv kom txhua tus neeg yuav ris nws feem.

35 Thiab nws kuj tau nthuav rau lawv tag nrho tej kev tsis zoo uas lawv tau ua hauj lwm nyob hauv qab, los ntawm uas cia ib tug vaj ntxwv tsis ncaj ncees kav lawv;

36 Muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho nws tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab tej kev qias, thiab tag nrho tej kev tsov kev rog, thiab kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab tej kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, thiab txoj kev ua tub sab tub nyiag, thiab txoj kev lim hiam, thiab txoj kev ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug, thiab txhua yam kev tsis ncaj ncees uas tsis muaj peev xwm muab hais ib yam zuj zus—qhia rau lawv tias tej yam no yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj, tias lawv twb tsis raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.

37 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias, tom qab uas vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau xa tej yam no mus rau cov neeg lawv tau raug yaum paub txog qhov tseeb ntawm nws cov lus.

38 Yog li ntawd lawv tau tso lawv tej kev xav yuav ib tug vaj ntxwv, thiab tau rais los cia siab heev tias kom txhua tus neeg yuav tsum muaj tug sib npaug zos thoob plaws hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txhua tus neeg tau kam txaus siab teb rau nws tus kheej tej kev txog txhaum.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

39 Yog li ntawd, tau muaj tias lawv tau txoos lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke tej pab pawg thoob plaws hauv thaj av, tuaj pov lawv tej suab txog qhov uas saib cov twg yuav los ua lawv cov neeg txiav txim, los txiav txim rau lawv raws li txoj kev cai uas tau muab rau lawv; thiab lawv tau zoo siab heev vim yog txoj kev txim lij uas tau muab pub rau lawv.

40 Thiab lawv tau loj hlob muaj zog nyob hauv txoj kev hlub rau Mauxiyas; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau saib nws tsim txiaj dua li lwm tus neeg; vim lawv tsis tau ntsia nws zoo li ib tug nom uas nrhiav kom nplua nuj, muaj tseeb tiag, rau txoj kev nplua nuj uas ua puas tsuaj rau tus ntsuj plig; vim nws tsis tau kom lawv them nyiaj rau nws, los sis tsis tau nyiam kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; tiam sis nws tau tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv thaj av, thiab nws tau pub rau nws cov neeg tias lawv yuav tsum raug coj dim ntawm txhua yam kev poob cev qhev; yog li ntawd lawv tau saib nws tsim txiaj, muaj tseeb tiag, tshaj qhov yuav ntsuas tau.

41 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau xaiv tsa cov neeg txiav txim los kav lawv, los sis los txiav txim rau lawv raws li txoj kev cai; thiab lawv tau ua li no thoob plaws rau txhua thaj av.

42 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau raug xaiv los ua thawj tug thawj tub txiav txim, nws kuj yog tus pov thawj hlob thiab, nws txiv tau muab txoj hauj lwm rau nws, thiab muab nws ua tus saib xyuas txog tag nrho tej kev ua dej num ntawm lub koom txoos.

43 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau mus raws li tus Tswv tej kev, thiab nws tau coj nws tej lus txib, thiab nws tau txiav txim ncaj ncees; thiab tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuu thoob plaws hauv thaj av.

44 Thiab li no cov neeg txiav txim tau pib kav thoob plaws txhua qhov hauv thaj av Xalabelas, nyob tag nrho hauv cov neeg uas hu ua cov Neeg Nifais; thiab Amas yog thawj tug thiab thawj tub txiav txim.

45 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nws txiv tau tuag, muaj yim caum thiab ob xyoos, tau ua neej nyob kom Vajtsvuj tej lus txib muaj puv npo.

46 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauxiyas kuj tau tuag lawm thiab, nyob rau hauv peb caug peb xyoos ntawm nws txoj kev kav, muaj rau caum thiab peb xyoos; uas suav tag nrho, tsib puas thiab cuaj xyoos txij li lub sij hawm Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

47 Thiab tag li no rau txoj kev kav ntawm cov Neeg
Nifais tej vaj ntxwv; thiab tag li no rau Amas lub
neej, tus uas nrhiav tsim lawv lub koom txoos.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the
people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma,
who was the founder of their church.

Amas Phau Ntawv

Amas tus Tub

Ib zaj txog Amas, tus uas yog Amas tus tub, thawj tug thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim rau cov Neeg Nifais, thiab kuj yog tus pov thawj blob rau lub Koom Txoos. Ib zaj txog cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, thiab txog tej kev tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg hauv cov neeg. Thiab ib zaj txog ib npluav rog nyob nruab nrab cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas thiab, raws li phau ceev xwm txheej ntarwm Amas, thawj tug thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim.

Amas 1

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias nyob hauv thawj xyoos ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, txij li lub sij hauv no mus lawm yav tom ntej, vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas tau mus txoj kev uas tag nrho neeg ntiaj teb mus, tau ua ib lub neej tsim nyog, mus ncaj ncees rau ntawm Vajtswv, tsis tseg leej twg kav nws qhov chaw; tiam sis nws tau tsim tej kev cai, thiab tej no raug cov neeg txais yuav; yog li ntawd lawv tau raug yuam kom ua raws li tej kev cai uas nws tau tsim.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv thawj xyoos ntawm Amas txoj kev kav nyob hauv lub rooj txiav txim, tau muaj ib tug txiv neej raug coj tuaj rau nws txiav txim, ib tug txiv neej uas loj, thiab tau muaj suab npe nrov rau nws txoj kev muaj zog heev.
- 3 Thiab nws tau mus ncig hauv cov neeg, qhia rau lawv tej uas nws tau hais tias yog Vajtswv txoj lus, tawm tsam lub koom txoos; tau tshaj tawm rau cov neeg tias txhua tus pov thawj thiab xib hwb yuav tsum rais los mus muaj suab npe; thiab lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob ua hauj lwm nrog lawv tej tes, tiam sis cov neeg yuav tsum yug lawv.
- 4 Thiab nws kuj tau ua tim khawv rau cov neeg tias tib neeg sawv daws yuav raug cawm dim nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg, thiab tias kom lawv tsis txhob ntshai los sis tsee, tiam sis lawv yuav tsa lawv tej taub hau thiab zoo siab; vim tus Tswv tau tsim neeg txhua tus, thiab kuj tau txhiv neeg txhua tus dim; thiab, nyob thaum kawg, neeg txhua tus yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.

The Book of Alma

the Son of Alma

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.

Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau qhia tej yam no ntau heev kawg tias ntau leej tau ntseeg nws tej lus, twb muaj coob leej heev kawg tias lawv tau pib koom tes nrog nws thiab muab nyiaj rau nws.
- 6 Thiab nws tau pib muaj plhus khav nyob hauv nws lub siab, thiab hnav tej ris tsho uas kim heev, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab twb tau pib tsim ib lub koom txoos raws li nws txoj kev qhuab qhia.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tab tom mus, qhuab qhia rau cov uas ntseeg nws txoj lus, nws tau ntsib ib tug txiv neej uas tau zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib tug ntawm lawv cov xib hwb; thiab nws tau pib cav nrog nws heev, xwv kom nws yuav coj tau lub koom txoos cov neeg mus; tiam sis tus txiv neej tau cam nws, muab Vajtswv tej lus los ceeb toom nws.
- 8 Nim no tus txiv neej ntawd lub npe yog Khede-oos; thiab nws tau yog tus uas yog ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv Vajtswv txhais tes uas tau coj Leehais cov neeg dim tawm ntawm txoj kev poob cev qhev.
- 9 Nim no, vim Khede-oos tau cam nws nrog Vajtswv tej lus nws tau npau taws rau Khede-oos, thiab tau rho nws rab ntaj thiab tau pib muab nws tua. Nim no Khede-oos tau laus heev lawm, yog li ntawd nws tau tsis muaj peev xwm thaiv tau nws tej kev ntaus, yog li ntawd nws tau raug tua los ntawm rab ntaj.
- 10 Thiab tus txiv neej uas tau muab nws tua tau raug cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos txhom thiab tau coj tuaj rau Amas, tuaj txiav txim raws li txoj kev txhaum uas nws tau ua.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau sawv ntsug ntawm Amas xub ntiag thiab thov rau nws tus kheej yam tsis ntshai dab tsi li.
- 12 Tiam sis Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, zaum no yog thawj zaug uas xib hwb cuav tau sawv muaj nyob rau hauv cov neeg no. Thiab saib seb, koj tsis yog muaj txhaum ntawm xib hwb cuav xwb, tiam sis tseem tau siv ntaj yuam; thiab yog muaj xib hwb cuav raug yuam nyob hauv cov neeg no nws yuav qhia qhov tseeb txog tag nrho lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 13 Thiab koj tau ua tus neeg ncaj ncees nqaij nuag ntshav nrog, muaj tseeb tiag, ib tug txiv neej uas tau ua ntau yam zoo nyob hauv cov neeg no; thiab yog peb cia koj txoj sia ces nws cov ntshav yuav los rau saum peb rau txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

- 14 Yog li ntawd koj yuav raug txim tuag, raws li txoj kev cai uas Mauxiyas uas yog peb tus vaj ntxwv kawg tau muab rau peb; thiab nws tau raug txais yuav los ntawm cov neeg no; yog li ntawd cov neeg no yuav tsum ua raws li txoj kev cai.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau coj nws mus; thiab nws lub npe yog Nihos; thiab lawv tau cab nws mus rau saum lub ncov roob Meethais, thiab nyob qhov ntawd nws tau raug yuam, los sis tias ua kom paub, nyob nruab nrab ntawm ntuj thiab ntiaj teb, tias yam uas nws tau qhia rau cov neeg tsis raws li Vajtswv txoj lus; thiab nyob qhov ntawd nws tau raug txoj kev tuag ua ib tug neeg txhaum.
- 16 Txawm li ntawd los, qhov no tsis tau ua kom tas txoj kev nthuav ntawm tej xib hwb cuav thoob hauv thaj av; vim tau muaj coob leej uas nyiam tej yam tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb, thiab lawv tau tawm mus qhuab qhia tej lus qhia cuav; thiab lawv tau ua li no rau tej kev nplua nuj thiab tau ntsej tau muag.
- 17 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tsis kam dag, yog tej ntawd raug paub, vim ntshai txog txoj kev cai, vim cov neeg dag tau raug txim; yog li ntawd lawv ua txuj qhuab qhia raws li lawv tej kev ntseeg; thiab nim no txoj kev cai thiaj tsis muaj hwj chim dab tsi rau ib tug neeg twg rau nws txoj kev ntseeg.
- 18 Thiab lawv tsis kam ua tub sab, vim ntshai txog txoj kev cai, vim cov ua li ntawd tau raug txim; thiab lawv kuj tsis kam ua tub nyiag, los sis tua neeg, vim nws tus uas tua neeg yuav raug rau txim tuag.
- 19 Tiam sis tau muaj tias leej twg uas tsis zwm rau Vajtswv lub koom txoos tau pib tsim txom cov uas tau zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos, thiab tau ris Khetos lub npe rau saum lawv.
- 20 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau tsim txom lawv, thiab muab txhua yam lus hais kom mob lawv, thiab li no los vim yog lawv tej kev txo hwj chim; vim lawv tsis tau khav txiv nyob hauv lawv tej qhov muag, thiab vim lawv tau faib Vajtswv txoj lus, ib leeg rau ib leeg, tsis yuav nyiaj txiag thiab tsis muaj nqi li.
- 21 Nim no tau muaj ib txoj kev cai nruj nyob hauv cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos, tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj ib tug neeg twg, uas zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos, yuav sawv thiab tsim txom cov uas tsis zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos, thiab tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj kev tsim txom nyob hauv lawv li.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

- 22 Txawm li ntawd los, tseem tau muaj coob leej nyob hauv lawv uas tau pib khav txiv, thiab tau pib nrog lawv tej yeeb ncuab sib ceg npau taws, twb mus txog thaum sib ntaus; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv ib leeg xuas lawv tej nrig ntaus ib leeg.
- 23 Nim no qhov no yog nyob hauv xyoo ob ntawm Amas txoj kev kav, thiab nws tau yog ib qho uas muaj kev kub ntxhov heev rau lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau yog kev sim siab ntau nrog rau lub koom txoos.
- 24 Vim coob leej tej siab tau tawv qhwb qhawv, thiab lawv tej npe tau raug rho tawm, xwv kom lawv yuav raug tsis nco qab txog ib zaug ntxiv nyob rau hauv Vajtswv haiv neeg. Thiab kuj tau muaj coob leej tau thim lawv tus kheej ntawm lawv mus.
- 25 Nim no qhov no tau yog ib qho kev sim siab loj rau cov uas tau sawv khov kho hauv txoj kev ntseeg; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tseem nyob khov kho thiab tsis txav nyob hauv txoj kev coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab lawv tau ua siab ntev nyiaj tej kev tsim txom ntau uas tau los tsuam lawv.
- 26 Thiab thaum cov pov thawj tau tso lawv txoj hauj lwm tseg es mus faib Vajtswv txoj lus rau cov neeg, cov neeg los kuj tau tso lawv tej hauj lwm tseg es los mloog Vajtswv txoj lus thiab. Thiab thaum cov pov thawj tau muab Vajtswv txoj lus rau lawv tas lawm lawv tau rov qab mus rau siab ntso ua lawv tej hauj lwm; thiab cov pov thawj, tsis tau saib nws tus kheej zoo dua li cov neeg tuaj mloog nws, vim tus kws qhuab qhia tsis zoo dua li tus uas mloog, thiab tus xib hwb los yeej tsis zoo dua li tus uas kawm; thiab yog li ntawd lawv txhua tus puav leej sib txig, thiab txhua tus puav leej ua hauj lwm, txhua tus neeg raws li nws lub zog.
- 27 Thiab lawv tau faib lawv tej khoom, txhua tus neeg raws li tej uas nws muaj, rau cov neeg pluag, thiab cov neeg txom nyem, thiab cov neeg muaj mob, thiab cov muaj kev nyuaj siab; thiab lawv tsis hnab tej ris tsho uas kim kim, tiam sis lawv tseem huv thiab txaus nyiam.
- 28 Thiab li no lawv tau txhim tsa lub koom txoos tej dej num; thiab li no lawv tau pib rov muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuab dua, txawm tias lawv tau muaj kev tsim txom txhua yam.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

29 Thiab nim no, vim txoj kev nyob ruaj nrees ntawm lub koom txoos lawv tau pib nplua nuj heev, tau muaj tag nrho txhua txhia yam uas lawv xav tau nplua mias—muaj tej pab yaj thiab tsiaj txhu, thiab txhua yam tsiaj uas rog nplua mias, thiab kuj muaj noob qoob loos nplua mias, thiab muaj kub, thiab muaj nyiaj dawb, thiab tej yam uas muaj nuj nqis, thiab paj nplua mias thiab muaj ntaub yaj pwm, thiab txhua yam ntaub uas zoo.

30 Thiab li no, nyob rau hauv lawv txoj kev huaj vam, lawv tsis tau ntiab ib tug twg uas liab qab, los sis tus uas tshaib plab, los sis tus uas nqhis dej, los sis tus uas muaj mob, los sis tus uas tsis tau kev pab; thiab lawv tsis tau muab lawv tej siab tso rau tej kev nplua nuj; yog li ntawd lawv ua siab dawb rau txhua tus, tsis hais tus laus thiab tus hluas, tsis hais tus ua qhev thiab tus tsis ua, tsis hais tus txiv neej thiab tus poj niam, tsis hais tus nyob sab nraum lub koom txoos los sis nyob hauv lub koom txoos, pab txhua tus neeg ib yam li cov neeg txom nyem.

31 Thiab li no lawv tau huaj vam thiab rais los mus ua cov neeg nplua nuj tshaj li cov uas tsis zwm rau hauv lawv lub koom txoos.

32 Vim cov uas tsis zwm rau hauv lawv lub koom txoos tau cia lawv tus kheej mus ua neeb ua yaig, thiab pe dab pe mlom los sis tub nkeeg, thiab taug xaiv, thiab ntshaw luag tug thiab muaj kev sib cav sib ceg; hnab tej ris tsho kim kim; khav theeb ntxiag nyob ntawm lawv tej qhov muag; pheej tsim txom neeg, neeg pheej dag, pheej tub sab, pheej nyiag, pheej ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug, thiab pheej tua neeg, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav kev phem; txawm li ntawd los, txoj kev cai tau raug muab yuam rau saum cov uas tau ua txhaum nws, ntau npaum li uas yuav ua tau.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias los ntawm txoj kev siv txoj kev cai rau lawv, txhua tus txiv neej tau nyiaj kev txom nyem raws li tej uas nws tau ua lawm, lawv tau rais los mus nyob ntsiag twb to, thiab tsim kam ua txhaum ib yam kev phem dab tsi uas luag yuav paub; yog li ntawd, tau muaj kev thaj yeeb ntau nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais mus txog xyoo tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Amas 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum pib xyoo tsib ntawm lawv txoj kev kav tau pib muaj ib qho kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv cov neeg; vim ib tug txiv neej, hu ua Alixais, nws yog ib tug neeg txawj dag ntxias heev, muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib tug neeg txawj ntse mus raws li kev txawj ntse hauv lub ntiaj teb, nws tau mus raws tus txheej txheem ntawm tus txiv neej uas tau xuas ntaj tua Khede-oos, tus uas tau raug tuag raws li txoj kev cai—
- 2 Nim no tus Alixais no, los ntawm nws txoj kev txawj ntxias, tau coj neeg coob leej raws nws qab; coob kawg nkaus tias lawv tau pib muaj zog heev; thiab lawv tau pib rau siab ntso tsim Alixais los ua ib tug vaj ntxwv rau cov neeg.
- 3 Nim no qhov no tau ncha rau cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos, thiab kuj rau tag nrho cov uas tsis tau raws Alixais tej kev dag ntxias; vim lawv tau paub lawm tias raws li lawv txoj kev cai tej yam zoo li ntawd yuav tsum raug tsa los ntawm cov neeg lub suab.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, yog nws yuav mus tau tias Alixais yuav tau cov neeg lub suab, nws, twb yog ib tug txiv neej phem, ces yuav nyiag lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab tej kev muaj cib fim ntawm lub koom txoos; vim qhov ntawd yog qhov uas nws txhob txwm ua rhuav Vajtswv lub koom txoos.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau sib sau tuaj ua ke thoob plaws hauv thaj av, txhua tus neeg raws li nws lub tswv yim, seb yuav nrog los sis tawm tsam Alixais, nyob rau hauv tej pab pawg, tau muaj kev sib cam ntau thiab ib leeg tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg npau taws xav tsis thoob rau ib leeg.
- 6 Thiab xws li no lawv tau sib sau ua ke tuaj tawm lawv tej suab txog yam xwm ntawd; thiab tau muab lawv tso rau ntawm cov tub txiav txim xub ntiag.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg lub suab tau los tawm tsam Alixais, kom nws tsis tau raug muab ua vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg.
- 8 Nim no qhov no tau ua rau cov neeg uas tawm tsam nws xyiv fab heev; tiam sis Alixais tau txhib cov uas nyiam nws kom npau taws nkaug cov uas tsis nyiam nws.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv sib sau ua ke, thiab tau tsa Alixais ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv.

Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

- 10 Nim no thaum Alixais tau ua vaj ntxwv kav lawv lawm nws tau txib kom lawv yuav tsum mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij; thiab nws tau ua li no xwv kom nws yuav tau yuam lawv los raws nws qab.
- 11 Nim no cov neeg Alixais tau raug hu los ntawm Alixais lub npe, tau hu ua cov neeg Alixais thiab cov uas seem tshuav raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, los sis Vajtswv cov neeg.
- 12 Yog li ntawd cov Neeg Nifais tau paub txog tej uas cov neeg Alixais yuav ua, thiab yog li ntawd lawv tau npaj tos ntsib lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau npaj nqa ntaj, nrog, thiab liag, thiab hneev, thiab xub, thiab pob zeb, thiab hneev nti roj hmab, thiab nrog tag nrho tej cuab yeej ua rog, txhua txhia yam.
- 13 Thiab li no lawv tau npaj tos ntsib cov neeg Alixais nyob rau thaum lub sij hawm lawv tuaj. Thiab tau tsa tej nom peb, thiab tej nom peb uas siab zog, thiab tej thawj nom peb, raws li cov neeg uas lawv muaj.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Alixais tau npaj rau nws cov neeg tag nrho tej cuab yeej ua rog txhua txhia yam; thiab nws kuj tau tsa tej nom tswv thiab tej thawj coj rau nws cov neeg, los coj lawv mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg Alixais tau tuaj rau saum lub roob Anihus, uas tau nyob sab hnuv tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos, uas tau ntws los ntawm thaj av Xalahelas, thiab lawv tau pib ua rog nrog cov Neeg Nifais nyob qhov ntawd.
- 16 Nim no Amas, tau yog tus thawj tub txiav txim thiab tus tswv xeev ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, yog li ntawd nws tau nce nrog nws cov neeg mus, muaj tseeb tiag, nrog nws cov nom peb, thiab cov thawj nom peb, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob tom hauv ntej ntawm nws cov tub rog, ua rog tawm tsam cov neeg Alixais.
- 17 Thiab lawv tau pib tua cov neeg Alixais nyob saum lub roob sab hnuv tuaj ntawm Xidoos. Thiab cov neeg Alixais tau tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Nifais muaj zog heev, kawg tias cov Neeg Nifais coob leej tau qaug ntawm cov neeg Alixais xub ntiag.
- 18 Txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv tseem tau ua kom cov Neeg Nifais txhais tes muaj dag zog, uas lawv tua tau cov neeg Alixais coob leej heev, ces lawv tau pib khiav ntawm lawv mus.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau caum cov neeg Alixais qab tag nrho hnub ntawd, thiab tau tua lawv coob leej heev, kawg tias cov neeg Alixais tau raug tua kaum ob txhiab tsib puas peb caug thiab ob leeg; thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau raug tua rau txhiab tsib puas rau caum thiab ob leeg.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amas caum tsis tau cov neeg Alixais ntxiv lawm nws tau kom nws cov neeg rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob rau hauv lub hav Khede-oos, lub hav tau hu raws li Khede-oos uas tau raug Nihos xuas ntaj tua; thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob rau hauv lub hav hmo ntawd.
- 21 Thiab Amas tau xa neeg mus ua tub sab raws cov neeg Alixais uas seem tshuav qab, kom nws yuav paub txog lawv tej tswv yim npaj ua ntej thiab lawv tej tswv yim ua hauj lwm ntsiag to, xwv kom nws yuav npaj tau nws tus kheej thaiv ntawm lawv, xwv kom nws yuav tshwj tau nws cov neeg kom tsis txhob puas tsuaj.
- 22 Nim no cov uas nws tau xa tawm mus soj xyuas cov neeg Alixais lub yeej yog hu ua Xelas, thiab Anaws, thiab Meethais, thiab Leehawj; cov no yog lawv cov uas tau tawm nrog lawv cov neeg mus soj xyuas cov neeg Alixais lub yeej.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis lawv tau rov qab los rau hauv cov Neeg Nifais lub yeej maj heev, tau xav tsis thoob, thiab muaj kev ntshai ntau heev, hais tias:
- 24 Saib seb, peb tau raws cov neeg Alixais lub yeej qab, thiab rau peb txoj kev poob siab heev, nyob hauv thaj av Mainoos, saum toj thaj av Xalahelas, nyob hauv txoj mus rau tom thaj av Nifais, peb tau pom ntau pab tub rog Lamas coob heev; thiab saib seb, cov neeg Alixais tau koom nrog lawv;
- 25 Thiab lawv tab tom tawm tsam peb cov kwv tij nyob hauv thaj av ntawd; thiab lawv tau khiav lawv cov no nrog lawv tej tsiaj, thiab lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam, mus rau tom peb lub nroog; thiab yog peb tsis tsuag ces lawv yuav tuaj txeeb tau peb lub nroog, thiab peb tej txiv, thiab peb tej poj niam, thiab peb tej me nyuam yuav raug tua.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau yaws lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub thiab tau ncaim tawm ntawm lub hav Khede-oos mus rau tom lawv lub nroog, uas yog lub nroog Xalahelas.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

- 27 Thiab saib seb, thaum lawv tseem tab tom hla tus dej Xidoos, cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais, coob heev, yuav luag npaum li tej xuab zeb nram ntug dej hiav txwv, tau tuaj tawm tsam lawv kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 28 Txawm li ntawd los, cov Neeg Nifais tau raug ntxiv dag ntxiv zog los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, tau mob siab thov nws kom nws yuav cawm lawv dim tawm ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes, yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau hnov lawv tej lus quaj thov, thiab tau ntxiv dag zog rau lawv, thiab cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais tau qaug rau lawv.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau nrog Alixais sib tawm tsam nrog ntaj, tim ntsej tim muag; thiab nkawd tau ib leeg nrog ib leeg sib tawm tsam yam hnyav kawg li.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas, uas tau yog Vajtswv ib tug neeg, uas tau muaj txoj kev ntseeg ntau, tau quaj thov, hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, thov hlub thiab tseg kuv txoj sia, xwv kom kuv yuav ua tau ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv koj tes los cawm thiab tshwj cov neeg tseg.
- 31 Nim no thaum Amas tau hais cov lus no tag lawm nws tau rov qab tawm tsam nrog Alixais dua; thiab nws tau muaj zog tuaj, kawg tias nws tau muab nws rab ntaj tua tau Alixais.
- 32 Thiab nws kuj tau tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv; tiam sis cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau khiav rov qab ntawm Amas mus thiab tau xa nws cov tub rog los tawm tsam nrog Amas.
- 33 Tiam sis Amas, nrog nws cov tub rog, tau tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv cov tub rog mus txog thaum uas nws tau tua thiab tau raws lawv rov qab.
- 34 Thiab li no nws tau ua kom txhob muaj dab tsi nyob saum tej av, los sis tus ntug dej, uas nyob sab hnub poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos, tau pov cov Neeg Lamas tej cev uas tau raug tua rau hauv cov dej Xidoos, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nws cov neeg thiaj yuav muaj chaw hla thiab tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais nyob rau sab hnub poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tag nrho tau hla tus dej Xidoos tag lawm cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais tau pib khiav ntawm lawv mus, txawm tias lawv muaj coob leej heev uas suav tsis tas li.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

36 Thiab lawv tau khiav ntawm cov Neeg Nifais mus rau tom hav zoov uas nyob sab hnuv poob thiab sab ped, uas nyob dhau ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av puag tim ub lawm; thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau raws lawv qab tag lawv lub zog, thiab tau tua lawv.

37 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug ntsib txhua txhia sab, thiab raug tua thiab raws, mus txog thaum lawv tau khiav ri niab mus rau sab hnuv poob, thiab rau sab ped, mus txog thaum lawv tau mus txog hav zoov, uas hu ua Hawmos; thiab nws yog feem hav zoov uas muaj tej tsiaj qus thiab tej tsiaj noj nqaij coob nyob.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias coob tug tau tuag nyob hauv hav zoov vim lawv tej qhov txhab, thiab tau raug cov tsiaj qus thiab tej dav qhuav saum nruab ntug noj; thiab lawv tej pob txha tau raug nrhiav pom, thiab tau raug muab tum tsheej pawg rau saum av.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

Amas 3

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais uas tsis tau raug tua los ntawm tej ntaj riam sib rog, tom qab uas tau muab cov uas raug tua faus tas—nim no cov uas raug tua tsis tau suav, vim lawv muaj coob leej heev—tom qab uas lawv tau faus lawv cov tuag tas lawm tag nrho lawv tau rov qab los rau tom lawv tej av, thiab lawv tej tsev, thiab lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam.
- 2 Nim no coob leej poj niam thiab me nyuam tau raug ntaj riam tua, thiab ntau tus ntawm lawv tej yaj thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu los tib yam; thiab lawv muaj ntau daim teb uas muaj noob qoob loos tau raug puas tsuaj, vim lawv raug neeg coob heev tsuj vau liam tas.
- 3 Thiab nim no thaum cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais coob coob leej uas tau raug tua nyob ntawm tus ntug dej Xidoos tau raug muab pov rau hauv cov dej Xidoos tas lawm; thiab saib seb lawv tej pob txha nyob puag hauv dej hiav txwv, thiab lawv ntau heev li.
- 4 Thiab paub tau cov neeg Alixais tawm ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, vim lawv tau kos cim liab rau ntawm lawv hauv pliaj mus raws li cov Neeg Lamas; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tsis tau muab lawv tej taub hau chais zoo li cov Neeg Lamas.
- 5 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas tej taub hau tau muab chais do dus; thiab lawv liab qab, tsuas yog muaj tawv tsiaj uas vas lawv tej puab tais, thiab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, uas vas lawv me ntsis, thiab lawv tej hneev, thiab lawv tej xub, thiab lawv tej pob zeb, thiab lawv tej hneev nti roj hmab, thiab lwm yam.
- 6 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tej tawv nqaij tsaus, raws li lub cim uas tau muab rau saum lawv tej yawg koob, uas tau yog ib qho kev foom tsis zoo rau lawv vim yog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab lawv tej kev ntxeev siab tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij, uas yog Nifais, Yakhauj, thiab Yauxej, thiab Xam, cov uas tau yog neeg ncaj ncees thiab dawb huv.
- 7 Thiab lawv cov kwv tij tau nrhiav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tau raug foom tsis zoo; thiab tus Tswv Vajtswv thiaj tau ntaus ib lub cim rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, rau saum Lamas thiab Lemu-ees, thiab kuj rau saum Ixama-ees cov tub, thiab tej poj niam Ixama-ees.

Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

- 8 Thiab tau ua qhov no xwv kom lawv tej noob yuav zoo txawv ntawm lawv tej kwv tij tej noob, kom los ntawm qhov ntawd tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav tshwj tau nws cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis sib xyaw thiab ntseeg tej kev li kev cai uas tsis yog uas yuav qhia tseeb txog lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias txhua tus uas tau muab nws tej noob mus xyaw nrog cov Neeg Lamas tej tau coj tib txoj kev foom tsis zoo los rau nws tej noob.
- 10 Yog li ntawd, txhua tus uas tau cia nws tus kheej raug cov Neeg Lamas coj mus tau muab hu nyob hauv lub npe ntawd, thiab tau muaj ib lub cim muab rau nws.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias txhua tus uas tsis ntseeg li cov Neeg Lamas txoj kev li kev cai, tiam sis tau ntseeg cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau coj tawm ntawm daim av Yeluxalees tuaj, thiab li lawv tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai, uas yog txoj yog, cov uas tau ntseeg Vajtswv tej lus txib thiab coj lawv, tau raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, los sis Nifais cov neeg, txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus—
- 12 Thiab twb yog lawv cov uas tau ceev cov ceev xwm txheej uas yog qhov tseeb ntawm lawv cov neeg, thiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas cov neeg.
- 13 Nim no peb yuav rov qab tig mus rau cov neeg Alixais, vim lawv los kuj muaj ib lub cim kos rau lawv thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau kos lub cim rau lawv tus kheej, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib lub cim liab rau saum lawv hauv pliaj.
- 14 Yog li ntawd Vajtswv txoj lus tau muaj puv npo, vim cov no yog tej lus uas nws tau hais rau Nifais tias: Saib seb, kuv tau foom tsis zoo rau cov Neeg Lamas, thiab kuv yuav tso ib lub cim rau lawv xwv kom lawv thiab lawv tej noob yuav faib tawm ntawm koj thiab koj tej noob, txij li lub sij hawm no lawm yav tom ntej thiab mus ib txhis li, tsuas yog lawv hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv txoj kev phem thiab tig los cuag kuv xwv kom kuv yuav muaj kev hlub tshua rau lawv.
- 15 Thiab ntxiv: Kuv yuav tso ib lub cim rau tus uas muab nws tej noob mus do xyaw nrog koj tej kwv tij, kom lawv yuav raug foom tsis zoo tib yam.
- 16 Thiab ntxiv: Kuv yuav tso ib lub cim rau tus uas yuav ntaus tawm tsam koj thiab koj tej noob.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingled his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

- 17 Thiab ntxiv, Kuv hais rau nws tus uas ncaim ntwam koj mus yuav tsis raug hu ua koj cov noob ib zaug ntxiv lawm; thiab kuv yuav foom koob hmoov rau koj, thiab cov uas yuav raug hu ua koj cov noob, txij no mus lawm yav tom ntej thiab mus ib txhis li; thiab cov no yog tej lus cog tseg ntwam tus Tswv rau Nifais thiab rau nws tej noob.
- 18 Nim no cov neeg Alixais tsis tau paub tias lawv tau tab tom ua kom Vajtsvuj tej lus tiav thaum lawv tau pib kos cim rau saum lawv tej hauv pliaj; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tau tab meeg ntseev siab tawm tsam Vajtsvuj; yog li ntawd nws tsim nyog tias txoj kev foom tsis zoo yuav tsum poob los rau lawv.
- 19 Nim no kuv xav kom nej pom tias lawv tau koj txoj kev foom tsis zoo los rau lawv tus kheej; thiab txhua tus neeg uas raug foom tsis zoo los kuj koj nws txoj kev rau txim los rau nws tus kheej.
- 20 Nim no tau muaj tias tsis ntau hnuv tom qab npluav rog uas tau tawm tsa nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas, los ntwam cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Alixais, tau muaj dua cov Neeg Lamas lwm pab tub rog tuaj tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg, nyob hauv tib qho chaw uas thawj pab tub rog tau ntsib cov neeg Alixais.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib pab tub rog raug xa mus raws lawv tawm ntwam lawv thaj av.
- 22 Nim no Amas tus kheej tau raug mob thiaj tsis tau nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas zaum no;
- 23 Tiam sis nws tau xa ib pab tub rog coob mus tawm tsam lawv; thiab lawv tau nce mus thiab tau tua cov Neeg Lamas ntau leej, thiab tau raws lawv cov uas seem tshuav tawm ntwam lawv thaj av tej ciam teb mus.
- 24 Thiab ces lawv tau rov qab los dua thiab tau pib tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av, tsis muaj teeb meem nrog lawv tej yeeb ncuab ntxiv tau ib ntus.
- 25 Nim no tag nrho txhua yam tsav no tau ua tiav, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho tej tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg no tau pib thiab tau xaus nyob hauv xyoo thib tsib ntwam cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

26 Thiab nyob rau hauv ib xyoos tau muaj ntau txhiab leej tau raug xa mus rau lub ntiaj teb uas nyob mus ib txhis, xwv kom lawv yuav tau sau lawv tej nqi zog raws li lawv tej hauj lwm, tsis hais lawv yuav zoo los sis tsis hais lawv yuav phem, sau txoj kev zoo siab nyob mus ib txhis los sis txoj kev txom nyem nyob mus ib txhis, raws li tus ntsuj plig uas lawv tau xaiv raws ntseeg, tsis hais nws yog ib tug ntsuj plig zoo los sis ib tug phem.

27 Vim txhua tus neeg yeej yuav tau txais tej nqi zog ntawm tus uas nws xaiv raws ntseeg, thiab qhov no yog raws li tej lus ntawm tus ntsuj plig uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; yog li ntawd cia kom nws muaj raws li qhov tseeb. Thiab li no thiaj li xaus xyoo thib tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Amas 4

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, tsis tau muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg los sis tsovg rog nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas;
- 2 Tiam sis cov neeg tau raug kev nyuaj siab, muaj tseeb tiag, raug nyuaj siab heev vim txoj kev uas lawv tej kwv tij tau ploj lawm, thiab vim txoj kev ploj ntawm lawv tej yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu, thiab vim txoj kev ploj ntawm lawv tej teb uas muaj qoob loos uas raug tsuj lwj liam thiab puas tsuaj los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.
- 3 Thiab lawv tej kev nyuaj tau loj heev kawg tias txhua tus tau txom nyem siab; thiab lawv tau ntseeg tias nws yog Vajtswv xa tej kev txiav txim los rau lawv vim yog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias; yog li ntawd lawv tau raug ua tsim dheev nco txog lawv txoj hauj lwm.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau pib txhim tsa lub koom txoos zoo dua ntxiv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntau leej tau ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv cov dej Xidoos thiab tau raug koom rau Vajtswv lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm Amas txhais tes, tus uas tau raug tsa ua pov thawj hlob rau saum lub koom txoos cov neeg, los ntawm nws txiv Amas txhais tes.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav tau muaj kwv yeas ncuu li peb txhiab tsib puas leej uas tau sib sau lawv tus kheej los rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos thiab tau ua kev cai raus dej. Thiab xws li no tau xaus xyoo thib xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg; thiab tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuu nyob tag nrho hauv lub sij hawm ntawd.

Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

6 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos tau pib muaj plhus, vim yog lawv tej kev nplua nuj heev, thiab lawv tej paj uas zoo, thiab lawv tej ntaub yaj pwm, thiab vim yog lawv tej yaj coob thiab tsiaj txhu, thiab lawv tej kub thiab lawv tej nyiaj dawb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam khoom muaj nuj nqis, uas lawv tau los ntawm lawv txoj kev ua hauj lwm hnyav; thiab nyob hauv tag nrho tej yam no lawv tau muab hlob nyob ntawm lawv tej qhov muag, vim lawv tau pib hnav tej ris tsho uas kim kim.

7 Nim no qhov no yog qhov uas ua rau Amas muaj kev nyuaj siab heev, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab rau ntaw tus cov neeg uas Amas tau tsa ua xib hwb, thiab tej pov thawj, thiab kev txwj laug rau lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv coob leej tau tu siab heev rau txoj kev phem uas lawv tau pom pib muaj nyob hauv lawv cov neeg.

8 Vim lawv tau pom thiab ntsia nrog txoj kev tu siab heev tias cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos tau pib muab hlob nyob ntawm lawv tej qhov muag, thiab tau tso lawv tej siab rau saum tej kev nplua nuj thiab rau saum tej khoom tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiag teb, xwv kom lawv tau pib nyiam thuam, ib leeg rau ib leeg, thiab lawv tau pib tsim txom cov uas tsis ntseeg raws li lawv tej siab xav thiab siab nyiam.

9 Thiab li no, nyob hauv xyoo thib yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav no, tau pib muaj kev sib cav sib ceg heev hauv cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, tau muaj tej kev ntshaw luag tug, thiab kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab kev xav ua kom lwm tus puas tsuaj, thiab tej kev tsim txom, thiab kev khav theeb, uas tseem khav theeb tshaj cov uas tsis tau zwm rau Vajtswv lub koom txoos.

10 Thiab xws li no tau xaus xyoo thib yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav; thiab txoj kev phem ntawm lub koom txoos tau yog ib ya cav dawm taw loj rau cov uas tsis tau zwm rau lub koom txoos; thiab xws li no lub koom txoos tau pib poob nws txoj kev huaj vam.

11 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib cuaj, Amas tau pom txoj kev phem ntawm lub koom txoos thiab nws kuj tau pom lub koom txoos tus yam ntxwv tau pib koj cov uas tsis ntseeg ib qho kev qias mus rau ib qho, xws li no yuav tab tom koj txoj kev puas tsuaj los rau cov neeg.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau pom kev tsis xwm yeem heev nyob hauv cov neeg, muaj ib txhia tau khav theeb nrog lawv txoj kev muaj plhus, ntxub lwm tus, tig lawv tej nraub qaum rau cov neeg txom nyem thiab cov neeg liab qab thiab cov uas tshaib plab, thiab cov uas nqhis dej, thiab cov uas muaj mob thiab raug txom nyem.
- 13 Nim no qhov no tau yog ib qho ua kom muaj kev quaj ntsuag nyob hauv cov neeg, thaum uas lwm tus ho txo lawv tej hwj chim, tseem pab cov txom nyem uas xav tau lawv txoj kev pab, xws li faib lawv tej khoom rau cov neeg pluag thiab cov txom nyem, pub rau cov tshaib plab noj, thiab nyiaj tag nrho ib puas yam tsav kev txom nyem, vim txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, tus uas yuav los raws li tus ntsuj plig uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej;
- 14 Ntsia ntsoov tom ntej rau hnub ntawd, xws li ntawd thiaj tau txais txoj kev zam txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum; tau muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo vim yog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag, raws li lub siab xav thiab lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev cawm dim ntawm Yexus Khetos los ntawm txoj kev tuag tej hlua.
- 15 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas, tau pom tej kev txom nyem ntawm cov neeg txo hwj chim uas lawv Vajtsvwn qab, thiab tej kev tsim txom ntau uas tau raug tsuam lawv los ntawm nws cov neeg uas seem tshuav, thiab thaum pom tag nrho lawv tej kev tsis xwm yeem, tau pib nyuaj siab heev; txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tsis tau tso nws tseg.
- 16 Thiab nws tau xaiv ib tug txiv neej txawj ntse uas nyob hauv cov txwj laug ntawm lub koom txoos, thiab tau muab hwj chim rau nws raws li cov neeg tej suab, kom nws yuav muaj hwj chim tsa tej kev cai raws li tej kev cai uas tau muab lawm, thiab siv lawv raws li tej kev phem thiab tej kev txhaum ntawm cov neeg.
- 17 Nim no tus txiv neej no npe hu ua Nifaihas, thiab nws tau raug tsa ua thawj tub txiav txim; thiab nws tau zaum hauv rooj txiav txim los txiav txim thiab kav cov neeg.
- 18 Nim no Amas tsis tau pub nws ua txoj hauj lwm pov thawj hlob rau lub koom txoos, tiam sis nws tseem cia txoj hauj lwm pov thawj hlob rau nws tus kheej; tiam sis nws tau muab lub rooj txiav txim rau Nifaihas.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

19 Thiab nws tau ua li no xwv kom nws tus kheej yuav tau tawm mus rau hauv nws cov neeg, los sis rau hauv Nifais cov neeg, xwv kom nws yuav tau qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau lawv, txhib kom lawv nco txog lawv txoj hauj lwm, thiab xwv kom nws yuav rub tau los qis, tag nrho tej kev khav theeb thiab kev dag ntxias thiab tag nrho tej kev sib cav sib ceg uas nyob nrog nws cov neeg, los ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus, tsis pom ib txoj kev twg uas nws yuav pab tau lawv tsuas yog yuav ua tim khawv huv huv tawm tsam lawv xwb.

20 Thiab yog li ntawd thaum pib xyoo thib cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, Amas tau muab lub rooj txiav txim rau Nifaihas, thiab cia tag nrho nws tus kheej rau lub pov thawj hwj siab ntawm Vajtswv tus txheej txheem dawb huv, ua tim khawv txog txoj lus, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm kev tshwm sim thiab kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Tej lus uas Amas, tus Pov Thawj Hlob raws li Vajtswv tus txbeej txbeem dawb huv, tau hais rau cov neeg nyob hauv lawv tej nroog thiab tej zos thoob plaws rau thaj av.

Amas 5

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau pib koj Vajtswv txoj lus rau cov neeg, thaum chiv thawj nyob hauv thaj av Xalabelas, thiab mus ntawd mus thoob plaws rau txhua thaj av.
- 2 Thiab cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau hais rau cov neeg nyob hauv lub koom txoos uas tau txhim tsa nyob hauv lub nroog Xalabelas, raws li nws phau ceev xwm txheej, hais tias:
- 3 Kuv, Amas, tau raug tsa los ntawm kuv txiv, Amas, los ua ib tug pov thawj hlob rau Vajtswv lub koom txoos, nws tau muaj hwj chim thiab txoj cai los ntawm Vajtswv los ua tej yam no, saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias nws tau pib tsim ib lub koom txoos nyob hauv thaj av uas nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Nifais; muaj tseeb tiag, thaj av uas tau hu ua thaj av Maumoos; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau ua kev cai raus dej rau nws cov kwv tij nyob hauv cov dej Maumoos.
- 4 Thiab saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, lawv tau raug koj dim ntawm vaj ntxwv Nau-as cov neeg xib teg, los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev hlub thiab lub hwj chim.
- 5 Thiab saib seb, tom qab ntawd, lawv tau raug koj mus ua qhev los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tes nyob hauv hav zoov; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, lawv tau poob cev qhev, thiab tus Tswv kuj rov tau tso lawv dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev ib zaug ntxiv los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus; thiab peb tau raug koj tuaj rau hauv thaj av no, thiab qhov no peb tau pib txhim tsa Vajtswv lub koom txoos thoob plaws hauv thaj av no thiab.
- 6 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, kuv cov kwv tij, nej cov uas zwm rau lub koom txoos no, nej puas tseem nco qab ntsoov txog txoj kev poob cev qhev ntawm nej tej yawg koob? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej puas nco qab ntsoov txog nws txoj kev hlub tshua thiab txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj rau lawv? Thiab ntxiv, nej puas nco qab ntsoov txog tias nws tau cawm lawv tej ntsuj plig dim ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus?

The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.

Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Saib seb, nws tau hloov lawv tej siab tej ntsws, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau tsa lawv tsim ntawm ib tug dab ntub hnyav, thiab lawv sawv los mus cuag Vajtswv. Saib seb, lawv tau nyob hauv plawv ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tej ntsuj plig tau raug zes los ntawm lub teeb ntawm txoj lus uas kav ib txhis; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug txoj kev tuag tej hlua khi ib puag ncig, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus txoj saw hlau, thiab ib txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis tau tos ntsoov lawv.
- 8 Thiab nim no kuv thov nug nej, kuv cov mi kwv tij, lawv puas raug puas tsuaj? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis raug, lawv tsis raug.
- 9 Thiab kuv nug ntxiv, txoj kev tuag tej hlua puas tau tu, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej saw hlau uas khi lawv ib puag ncig, tej ntawd puas tau xooob? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Muaj tseeb tiag, tej ntawd tau xooob lawm, thiab lawv tej ntsuj plig tau loj hlob tuaj, thiab lawv tau hu nkauj txoj kev hlub uas txhiv dim. Thiab kuv hais rau nej tias lawv tau dim lawm.
- 10 Thiab nim no kuv thov nug nej tias yam dab tsi ua rau lawv dim? Muaj tseeb tiag, yam dab tsi ua rau lawv muaj kev cia siab rau txoj kev cawm seeg? Yam dab tsi ua tau rau lawv xooob ntawm txoj kev tuag tej hlua, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej saw hlau?
- 11 Saib seb, kuv muaj peev xwm qhia nej—tsis yog kuv txiv Amas tau ntseeg tej lus uas Anpinadai lub qhov ncauj tau hais los? Thiab nws tsis yog ib tug yaj saub dawb huv los? Tsis yog nws tau hais Vajtswv tej lus, thiab kuv txiv Amas tau ntseeg tej ntawd los?
- 12 Thiab raws li nws txoj kev ntseeg tau muaj ib qho kev hloov loj nyob tuaj hauv nws lub siab. Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias qhov no yog tseeb tag huv tib si.
- 13 Thiab saib seb, nws tau qhuab qhia txoj lus rau nej tej yawg koob, thiab kuj tau muaj ib qho kev hloov loj nyob tuaj hauv lawv tej siab thiab, thiab lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim thiab tso lawv tej kev ntseeg siab rau hauv qhov tseeb thiab rau Vajtswv tus uas muaj sia nyob. Thiab saib seb, lawv muaj siab ntseeg mus txog thaum kawg; yog li ntawd lawv tau dim lawm.
- 14 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv thov nug nej, kuv cov kwv tij ntawm lub koom txoos, nej puas tau yug sab ntsuj plig los ntawm Vajtswv? Nej puas tau txais nws tus meej yim rau saum nej tej ntsej muag? Nej puas tau raug txoj kev hloov loj no nyob hauv nej tej siab?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

- 15 Nej puas muaj kev ntseeg nyob hauv txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm nws tus uas tau tsim nej lawm? Nej puas tos ntsoov nrog lub qhov muag ntseeg, thiab ntsia lub cev uas txawj ploj tuag no sawv los mus nyob qhov tsis txawj ploj tuag, thiab lub cev uas txawj lwj no sawv los mus ua lub cev uas tsis txawj lwj, los sawv ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag los txiav txim raws li tej uas tau ua los lawm nyob hauv lub cev uas txawj ploj tuag?
- 16 Kuv hais rau nej tias, nej puas xav tau hauv nej tus kheej tias nej hnov tus Tswv lub suab, hais rau nej, nyob rau hnuv ntawd tias: Cia li los ntawm kuv nej cov uas tau koob hmoov, vim saib seb, nej tej hauj lwm tau yog tej hauj lwm uas ncaj ncees nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb no?
- 17 Los sis nej puas xav rau nej tus kheej tias nej muaj cuab kav dag tus Tswv nyob rau hnuv ntawd, thiab hais tias—Tus Tswv es, peb tej hauj lwm tau yog tej hauj lwm ncaj ncees nyob rau hauv lub ntiaj teb—thiab kom nws yuav cawm nej no los?
- 18 Los sis tsis li ntawd, nej puas xav rau nej tus kheej tau raug coj los rau ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiav txim nrog nej tej ntsuj plig uas muaj puv npo txoj kev txhaum thiab kev nyuaj siab, es tseem nco txog tag nrho nej tej kev txhaum, muaj tseeb tiag, nco tseeb heev txog tag nrho nej tej kev phem, muaj tseeb tiag, nco txog tias nej tau tawm tsam Vajtswv tej lus txib?
- 19 Kuv hais rau nej tias, nej puas yuav muaj peev xwm ntsia tau Vajtswv nyob rau hnuv ntawd uas muaj lub siab huv huv thiab tej tes dawb huv? Kuv hais rau nej tias, nej puas muaj cuab kav ntsia tau, es muaj Vajtswv tus meej yim yees rau saum nej tej ntsej muag?
- 20 Kuv hais rau nej tias, nej puas muaj peev xwm xav tias yuav dim thaum nej muab nej tus kheej rais los ywj rau tus dab kav lawm?
- 21 Kuv hais rau nej tias, nej yuav paub nyob rau hnuv ntawd tias nej yuav dim tsis tau; vim yuav tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg dim tau tsuas yog nws tej ris tsho yuav raug ntxhua kom dawb xwb; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tej ris tsho yuav tsum huv mus txog thaum lawv dawb huv tsis muaj ib qho tsuas, dhau los ntawm nws tus uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais txog cov ntshav, tus uas yuav los txhiv nws cov neeg dim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum.

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

- 22 Thiab nim no kuv thov nug nej, kuv cov mi kwv tij, nej txhua tus yuav xav li cas, yog nej yuav tau sawv ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiav txim, es nej tej ris tsho tau tsuas ntshav thiab txhua yam kev vuab tsuab neeg? Saib seb txhua yam no yuav ua tim khawv nkaug nej dab tsi?
- 23 Saib seb lawv yuav tsis ua tim khawv tias nej yog neeg tua neeg no los, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tias nej muaj txhaum rau txhua yam kev phem no los?
- 24 Saib seb, kuv cov mi kwv tij, nej puas xav tias ib tug neeg zoo li no yuav muaj ib qho chaw zaum nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj, nrog Anplaham, nrog Ixaj, thiab nrog Yakhouj, thiab tag nrho cov yaj saub dawb huv, uas tej ris tsho tau dawb huv thiab tsis muaj qhov ceb, huv huv thiab dawb no los?
- 25 Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis muaj li; tsuas ntshai nej ho muab tus Tsim peb ua ib tug neeg dag txij thaum chiv keeb los lawm xwb, los sis cia tias nws yog ib tug neeg dag txij thaum chiv keeb los, nej yeej tsis muaj peev xwm xav tias cov neeg zoo li ntawd muaj tau chaw nyob rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj; tiam sis lawv yuav raug ntiab tawm vim lawv yog tej me nyuam ntawm tus dab lub nceeg vaj.
- 26 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, kuv cov mi kwv tij, yog nej tau raug ib qho kev hloov siab, thiab yog nej tau xav hu zaj nkauj txoj kev hlub uas txhiv dim, kuv yuav nug tias, nej puas xav li ntawd nim no?
- 27 Nej puas tau taug kev, es ceev nej tus kheej kom txhob muaj qhov thuam tau rau ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag? Nej puas muaj cuab kav hais tias, yog nej raug hu kom tuag nyob lub sij hawm no, nyob hauv nej tus kheej, tias nej tau txo hwj chim txaus nkaus lawm? Tias nej tej ris tsho tau raug dawb huv thiab tau ua kom dawb dhau los ntawm Khetos cov ntshav, tus uas yuav los txhiv nws cov neeg dim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum?
- 28 Saib seb, nej puas tau tso txoj kev khav theeb tseg lawm? Kuv hais rau nej tias, yog nej tsis tau tso nej tseem tsis tau npaj ntsib Vajtswv. Saib seb nej yuav tsum npaj nrawm nroos; vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj yuav los sai sai, thiab tus uas zoo li ntawd yuav tsis tau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

- 29 Saib seb, kuv hais tias, puas muaj ib tug twg uas nyob hauv nej uas tsis tau tso txoj kev ntshaw luag tug tseg? Kuv hais rau nej tias tus zoo li ntawd tseem tsis tau npaj; thiab kuv xav kom nws cia li npaj nrawm nroos, vim lub sij hawm los txog ze lawm, thiab nws tsis paub tias thaum twg lub sij hawm yuav los; vim tus zoo li ntawd yuav nrhiav pom muaj txim.
- 30 Thiab kuv hais rau nej ntxiv, puas muaj ib tug nyob hauv nej uas saib tsis taus nws tus kwv tij, los sis tsub tej kev tsim txom rau nws?
- 31 Kev txom nyem cia li raug tus zoo li no, vim nws tsis tau npaj, thiab lub sij hawm los txog lawm tias nws yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim los sis nws yuav tsis muaj peev xwm dim tau!
- 32 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tag nrho nej cov uas yog neeg ua hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees; cia li hloov siab lees txim, cia li hloov siab lees txim, vim tus Tswv Vajtswv tau hais li ntawd!
- 33 Saib seb, nws xa ib qho kev caw los rau noob neej txhua tus, vim txhais caj npab hlub tau cev tuaj rau lawv, thiab nws hais tias: Cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab kuv yuav txais nej.
- 34 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws hais tias: Cia li los ntawm kuv thiab nej yuav tau noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav tau noj tej mov thiab haus tej dej ntawm txoj sia ywj siab;
- 35 Muaj tseeb tiag, cia li los cuag kuv thiab koj tej hauj lwm ncaj ncees los, thiab nej yuav tsis raug ntov kom vau thiab pov rau hauv hluav taws—
- 36 Vim saib seb, vim lub sij hawm los txog lawm leej twg uas tsis txi tej txiv zoo, los sis leej twg uas tsis ua tej hauj lwm ncaj ncees, tus ntawd tau ua kom muaj kev quaj thiab kev nyiav.
- 37 Au nej cov uas ua hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees es; nej cov uas muaj plhus rau tej khoom tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb, nej cov uas tau khav tias paub tej kev ncaj ncees tiam sis tseem tau yuam kev, ib yam li tej yaj uas tsis muaj tswv, txawm tias tus yug yaj tau hu nej thiab tseem pheej hu nej, tiam sis nej yuav tsis mloog nws lub suab!

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

- 38 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias tus tswv yug yaj zoo twb hu nej; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws twb hu nej nyob hauv nws lub npe kiag, uas yog Khetos lub npe; thiab yog nej yuav tsis mloog tus tswv yug yaj zoo lub suab, rau lub npe uas nej raug hu, saib seb, nej tsis yog tus tswv yug yaj zoo tej yaj.
- 39 Thiab nim no yog nej tsis yog tus tswv yug yaj zoo tej yaj, nej yog pab yaj twg? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias tus dab yog nej tus tswv yug yaj, thiab nej yog nws pab; thiab nim no, leej twg muaj cuab kav tias qhov no tsis yog? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, leej twg tsis lees tej no ces nws yog ib tug neeg dag thiab yog tus dab ib tug me nyuam.
- 40 Vim kuv hais rau nej tias txhua yam uas zoo yeej los ntawm Vajtswv los, thiab txhua yam uas phem yeej los ntawm tus dab los.
- 41 Yog li ntawd, yog ib tug tib neeg ua tej hauj lwm zoo nws yeej mloog tus tswv yug yaj zoo lub suab, thiab nws yeej raws tus ntawd qab; tiam sis tus uas ua hauj lwm phem, tus ntawd ciaj los mus ua dab ib tug me nyuam, vim nws mloog tus ntawd lub suab, thiab raws nws qab.
- 42 Thiab tus uas ua tej no yuav tsum tau txais nws tej nqi zog ntawm nws; yog li ntawd, nws yuav txais txoj kev tuag los ua nws qhov nqi zog, rau tej uas xib rau txoj kev ncaj ncees, uas tuag lawm rau txhua yam hauj lwm uas zoo.
- 43 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej mloog kuv, vim kuv hais nyob hauv tej dag zog ntawm kuv tus ntsuj plig; vim saib seb, kuv tau hais rau nej tseeb xwv kom nej yuav tsis ua yuam kev, los sis tau hais raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.
- 44 Vim kuv tau raug hu los hais li no, raws li Vajtswv tus txheej txheem dawb huv, uas nyob hauv Yexus Khetos; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau raug txib los sawv ua tim khawv rau cov neeg no txog tej uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais txog tej uas yuav muaj los.
- 45 Thiab tsis tas li no xwb. Nej tsis xav tias kuv paub txog tej no kuv tus kheej xwb? Saib seb, kuv ua tim khawv rau nej tias kuv yeej paub tias tej yam uas kuv tau hais no yeej tseeb. Thiab nej ho xav li cas tias kuv ho paub txog qhov tseeb ntawm tej no?

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

46 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias lawv raug ua rau kuv paub los ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv. Saib seb, kuv tau yoo mov thiab thov Vajtswv tau ntau hnuv xwv kom kuv yuav paub txog tej no kuv tus kheej. Thiab nim no kuv twb paub kuv tus kheej lawm tias lawv muaj tseeb; vim tus Tswv Vajtswv tau muab lawv ua rau kuv paub los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; thiab qhov no yog tus ntsuj plig ntawm kev tshwm sim uas nyob hauv kuv.

47 Thiab ntxiv, kuv hais rau nej tias nws tau raug muab ua tshwm sim los rau kuv paub li no, tias tej lus uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais lawm yeej tseeb, twb raws ib yam li tus ntsuj plig uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas nyob hauv kuv, uas kuj yog los ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig txoj kev qhia kom paub.

48 Kuv hais rau nej, tias kuv paub kuv tus kheej tias yam dab tsi uas kuv yuav tsum hais rau nej, txog tej uas yuav muaj los, yeej muaj tseeb; thiab kuv hais rau nej, tias kuv paub tias Yexus Khetos yeej yuav los, muaj tseeb tiag, Leej Tub, Leej Txiv Tib Leeg Tub, uas muaj kev hlub puv npo, thiab kev zam txim, thiab kev tseeb. Thiab saib seb, nws yog tus uas yuav los tshem neeg ntiaj teb tej kev txog kev txhaum, muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev txhaum ntawm neeg txhua tus uas ntseeg khov kho hauv nws lub npe.

49 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias qhov no yog tus txheej txheem uas kuv raug hu los ua, muaj tseeb tiag, los qhuab qhia rau kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txhua tus uas nyob hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, los qhuab qhia rau sawv daws, tag nrho cov laus thiab cov hluas, tag nrho cov raug txim thiab cov tsis raug; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej cov muaj hnuv nyoog, thiab cov muaj hnuv nyoog ib nrab, thiab tiam neeg uas tseem yuav sawv tuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, tshaj rau lawv tias lawv yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim thiab yug dua tshiab.

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

50 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais li no: Cia li tso tej kev txog kev txhaum tseg, nej sawv daws tag nrho hauv lub ntiaj teb no, vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj twb los yuav txog sai; muaj tseeb tiag, Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los ntawm nws lub yeeb koob, hauv nws lub zog, yeej huam, hwj chim, thiab kev kav teb chaws. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv cov mi kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv hais rau nej, tias tus Ntsuj Plig hais tias: Saib lub yeeb koob ntawm tus Vaj Ntxwv uas kav tag nrho lub ntiaj teb; thiab Vaj Ntxwv ntuj ceeb tsheej kuj yuav ci rau tag nrho noob neej sai sai no.

51 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig kuj hais rau kuv ntxiv tias, muaj tseeb tiag, ua ib lub suab quaj qw rau kuv, hais tias: Cia li mus thiab hais rau cov neeg no hais tias—Cia li hloov siab lees txim, vim tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim nkaus nkaus xwb yog tsis li nej yuav tsis tau ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj los ua nej tug.

52 Thiab kuv hais rau nej ntxiv, tus Ntsuj Plig hais tias: Saib seb rab taus twb muab tso rau ntawm lub hauv paus ntoo; yog li ntawd txhua tus ntoo uas tsis txi txiv zoo yuav raug muab ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv hluav taws, muaj tseeb tiag, cub hluav taws uas tua tsis tuag, twb yog cub hluav taws uas cig tas mus li. Saib seb, thiab nco ntsoov, Tus Dawb Huv tau hais li ntawd.

53 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv hais rau nej tias, nej puas yuav cam tau tej lus hais no; muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas muaj cuab kav tso tej no rau ib sab, thiab muab Tus Dawb Huv tsuj rau hauv nej qab xib taws; muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas yuav muaj cuab kav khav nyob hauv nej tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas tseem pheej yuav hnav qees tej ris tsho kim kim thiab muab nej tej siab rau tej khoom tsis muaj nuj nqis hauv ntiaj teb, rau nej tej kev nplua nuj?

54 Muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas tseem pheej xav tias nej ib tug zoo dua li ib tug; muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas tseem pheej tsim txom nej tej kwv tij, uas txo lawv tej hwj chim thiab taug Vajtswv tus txheej txheem dawb huv qab, qhov uas lawv tau raug coj los rau lub koom txoos no, tau ua kom dawb huv los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab lawv twb coj tej hauj lwm uas haum rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim—

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

- 55 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej puas tseem pheej yuav tig nej tej nraub qaum rau cov neeg pluag, thiab txom nyem, thiab tsis pub nej tej khoom rau lawv?
- 56 Thiab thaum kawg, tag nrho nej cov uas tseem pheej ua phem, kuv hais rau nej tias cov no yog cov uas yuav raug ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv hluav taws tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim nrawm nroos xwb.
- 57 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias, tag nrho nej cov uas xav raws tus tswv yug yaj zoo lub suab, nej cia li tawm hauv cov neeg phem los, thiab nej cia li nrug, thiab tsis txhob tuav lawv tej khoom tsis dawb huv; thiab saib seb, lawv tej npe yuav raug rho tawm, kom cov neeg phem tej npe tsis txhob nyob nrog cov neeg ncaj ncees tej npe, xwv kom Vajtswv txoj lus yuav tiav, uas hais tias: Cov neeg phem tej npe tsis txhob muab txuam nrog kuv cov neeg tej npe;
- 58 Vim cov neeg ncaj ncees tej npe yuav raug muab sau cia hauv phau ntawv uas muaj txoj sia, thiab kuv yuav pub ib qho qub txeeg qub teg rau lawv nyob ntawm kuv sab xis. Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, nej tseem muaj dab tsi yuav hais tawm tsam qhov no? Kuv hais rau nej tias, yog nej hais lus tawm tsam nws, yuav tsis ua li cas, vim Vajtswv txoj lus yuav tsum muaj kom tiav.
- 59 Vim tus tswv yug yaj twg uas nyob hauv nej uas tau muaj ntau tus yaj es tsis saib lawv, xwv kom tej hma yuav nkag los tsis tau thiab tom nws tej yaj? Thiab saib seb, yog ib tug hma nkag los rau hauv nws pab yaj nws yuav tsis raws tus hma ntawd kom khiav los? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tom qab ntawd, yog nws ua tau nws yuav ua kom tus hma no puas tsuaj.
- 60 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias tus tswv yug yaj zoo yeej hu nej; thiab yog nej yuav mloog nws lub suab nws yuav coj nej los rau hauv nws pab, thiab nej yog nws cov yaj; thiab nws txib nej tias nej tsis txhob cia tus hma nyaum nkag los rau hauv nej, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav tsis puas tsuaj.
- 61 Thiab nim no kuv, Amas txib nej nyob hauv yam lus ntawm nws tus uas tau txib kuv lawm, kom nej yuav tsum mob siab ceev tej lus uas kuv tau hais rau nej.

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

62 Kuv hais li ib txoj kev cai rau nej cov uas zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos; thiab rau cov uas tsis tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos kuv hais raws li ib txoj kev caw, hais tias: Cia li los thiab ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav yog cov neeg ua noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia thiab.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

Amas 6

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amas tau xaus hais lus rau cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos, uas tau txhim tsa nyob hauv lub nroog Xalahelas tas lawm, nws tau tsa tej pov thawj thiab tej kev txwj laug, los ntawm txoj kev tso tes saum taub hau raws li Vajtswv tus txheej txheem, los coj thiab saib xyuas lub koom txoos.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias cov uas tsis tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos uas tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum lawv tau raug ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab tau raug txais los rau hauv lub koom txoos.
- 3 Thiab kuj tau muaj tias cov uas tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos uas tsis tau hloov siab ntawm lawv tej kev phem thiab tsis txo lawv tej hwj chim rau Vajtswv—kuv hais txog cov uas tau khav theeb hauv lawv tej siab—cov ntawd tau raug xyeej tib yam, thiab lawv tej npe tau raug rho tawm, xwv kom lawv tej npe tsis txhob tau nyob nrog cov uas ncaj ncees.
- 4 Thiab xws li no lawv tau pib txhim tsa tus txheej txheem lub koom txoos nyob rau hauv lub nroog Xalahelas.
- 5 Nim no kuv xav kom nej to taub tias Vajtswv txoj lus tau raug qhuab qhia dawb rau sawv daws, xwv kom tsis muaj leej twg yuav txeeb tau lawv txoj kev muaj cib fim sib sau ua ke tuaj mloog Vajtswv txoj lus.
- 6 Txawm li ntawd los Vajtswv cov me nyuam tau raug txib tias kom lawv yuav tsum nquag nquag sib sau tuaj ua ke, thiab koom txoj kev yoo mov thiab rau siab thov Vajtswv pab rau cov uas tsis paub Vajtswv tej ntsuj plig.
- 7 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau tsim tej kev cai no tas lawm nws tau ncaim lawv mus, muaj tseeb tiag, tau ncaim lub koom txoos uas nyob hauv lub nroog Xalahelas, thiab tau mus rau pem sab hnuv tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos, rau hauv lub hav Khede-oos, ib lub nroog uas raug tsim nyob qhov ntawd, uas raug hu ua lub nroog Khede-oos, uas nyob hauv lub hav uas hu ua Khede-oos, uas hu raws tus txiv neej uas raug Nihos xuas ntaj tua.

Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 Thiab Amas tau mus thiab tau pib tshaj tawm
Vajtswv txoj lus rau lub koom txoos uas tau txhim tsa
nyob hauv Khede-oos lub hav, raws li txoj kev
tshwm sim tseeb ntawm txoj lus uas nws tej yawg
koob tau hais lawm, thiab raws li tus ntsuj plig uas
qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas nyob
hauv nws, raws li cov lus pov thawj ntawm Yexus
Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub, tus uas yuav los txhiv nws
cov neeg dim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab los
ntawm tus txheej txheem dawb huv uas nws tau raug
hu. Thiab nws tau raug sau li ntawd tiag. Amees.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of
God unto the church which was established in the
valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the
truth of the word which had been spoken by his fa-
thers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which
was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus
Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem
his people from their sins, and the holy order by
which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

*Amas tej lus uas nws tau hais rau cov neeg nyob hauv
Kbede-oos, raws li nws phau ceev xwm txbeej.*

Amas 7

- 1 Saib seb kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, pom tias kuv tau raug cia tuaj rau nej, yog li ntawd kuv sim siv kuv yam lus hais rau nej; muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj kiag, pom tau tias nws yog thawj zaug uas kuv tau hais rau nej los ntawm tej lus ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj, kuv tau raug nyob nruj rau lub rooj txiav txim, tau muaj ntau yam hauj lwm uas kuv tuaj tsis tau rau nej.
- 2 Thiab kuv twb yuav tsis tau tuaj rau lub sij hawm no yog tias lub rooj txiav txim tsis tau muab rau lwm tus, los kav kuv qhov chaw; thiab tus Tswv nyob hauv txoj kev muaj siab hlub heev tau pub kom kuv yuav tsum tuaj rau nej.
- 3 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau tuaj cia siab heev thiab xav heev tias kuv yuav ntsib nej tau txo hwj chim rau Vajtswv, thiab nej tau thov nws txoj kev hlub tsis tu ncu, kom kuv yuav nrhiav pom tias nej tsis muaj txim nyob ntawm nws xub ntiag, kom kuv yuav nrhiav pom tias nej tsis nyob hauv txoj kev nyuaj phem uas peb cov kwv tij tau nyob nyob hauv Xalahelas.
- 4 Tiam sis thov kom Vajtswv lub npe tau koob hmoov, vim nws tau ua rau kuv paub, muaj tseeb tiag, tau muab rau kuv txoj kev xyiv fab heev uas paub txog tias lawv raug txhim tsa dua nyob hauv nws txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 5 Thiab kuv cia siab, raws li Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv, tias kuv kuj yuav tsum muaj kev xyiv fab rau nej; txawm li ntawd los kuv tsis xav kom kuv txoj kev xyiv fab rau nej yuav tsum los ntawm tej kev txom nyem thiab nyuaj siab heev uas kuv tau muaj rau cov kwv tij nyob tom Xalahelas, vim saib seb, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab tau los rau lawv tom qab uas tau raug txoj kev txom nyem thiab nyuaj siab heev.

*The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in
Gideon, according to his own record.*

Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv cia siab tias nej yuav tsis zoo li nej tej kwv tij uas nyob hauv txoj kev uas tsis ntseeg kiag li; kuv cia siab tias nej yuav tsis khav theeb ntxhais nyob hauv nej tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv cia siab tias nej yuav tsis muab nej tej siab tso rau tej kev nplua nuj thiab tej khoom tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv cia siab tias nej yuav tsis teev dab teev mlom, tiam sis nej yuav teev tiam tus Vajtswv tseeb thiab tus uas muaj txoj sia nyob, thiab nej yuav tos ntsoov rau txoj kev zam txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum, nrog txoj kev ntseeg uas kav ib txhis, uas yuav muaj los.

7 Vim saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias yuav muaj ntau yam yuav los; thiab saib seb, muaj ib yam uas tseem ceeb dua txhua yam huv tib si—vim saib seb, lub sij hawm tshuav tsis deb ncuu lawm tias tus Txhiv Dim yuav los thiab nyob nrog nws cov neeg.

8 Saib seb, kuv tsis tau hais tias nws yuav los nyob hauv peb thaum lub caij uas nws tseem nyob hauv nws cev nqaij daim tawv; vim saib seb, tus Ntsuj Plig tsis tau hais rau kuv tias yuav yog li no. Nim no ib yam li tej yam no kuv los tsis paub; tiam sis kuv yeej paub npaum li no, tias tus Tswv Vajtswv yeej muaj hwj chim ua tau tag nrho ib puas tsav yam uas raws li nws txoj lus.

9 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais npaum li no rau kuv, hais tias: Hais rau cov neeg no, hais tias—Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab cia li npaj tus Tswv txoj kev, thiab cia li taug nws txoj kev, uas ncaj; vim saib seb, ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj twb los txog lawm, thiab Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los rau saum lub ntiaj teb.

10 Thiab saib seb, nws yuav yug los ntawm Maivliag, nyob hauv Yeluxalees uas yog thaj av ntawm peb tej yawg koob, nws yuav yog ib tug nkauj xwb uas tsis tau deev hluas li, yog ib tug ntxhais uas muaj nuj nqis heev thiab raug xaiv cia lawm, tus uas yuav raug roos thiab xeeb tub los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim, thiab yuav yug ib tug me tub, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Vajtswv Leej Tub.

11 Thiab nws yuav mus, raug tej kev mob nkeeg thiab tej kev txom nyem thiab tej kev dag ntxias txhua yam; thiab ua li no xwv kom txoj lus thiaj yuav muaj puv npo li uas tau hais tias nws yuav ris nws cov neeg tej kev mob thiab tej kev nkeeg.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

- 12 Thiab nws yuav ris txoj kev tuag, xwv kom nws yuav txo tau txoj kev tuag tej hlua uas khi nws cov neeg kom xoob; thiab nws yuav ris lawv tej kev qaug dag qaug zog, kom nws lub siab thiaj li yuav muaj puv nkaus kev hlub tshua, raws li cev nqaj daim tawv, xwv kom nws yuav paub pab nws cov neeg raws li ntawm cev nqaj daim tawv raws li lawv tej kev qaug dag qaug zog.
- 13 Nim no tus Ntsuj Plig paub tag nrho txhua yam; txawm li ntawd los Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav raug raws li ntawm cev nqaj daim tawv kom nws yuav ris tau nws cov neeg tej kev txog kev txhaum, xwv kom nws yuav tshem tau lawv tej kev txhaum tawm raws li lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj kev txhiv dim; thiab nim no saib seb, qhov no yog cov lus tim khawv uas nyob hauv kuv.
- 14 Nim no kuv hais rau nej tias nej yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, thiab yug dua tshiab; vim tus Ntsuj Plig tau hais tias yog nej tsis yug dua tshiab nej yuav tsis tau ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj ua nej tug; yog li ntawd cia li los thiab ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, kom nej yuav raug ntxuav tawm ntawm nej tej kev txhaum, kom nej yuav muaj kev ntseeg nyob hauv Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj, tus uas yuav tshem lub ntiaj teb tej kev txog kev txhaum, tus uas muaj hwj chim pab kom dim thiab ntxuav tau tag nrho tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tawm tau.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej tias cia li los thiab tsis txhob ntshai, thiab tso txhua yam kev txhaum tseg, tej uas pheej tab kaum nej, uas pheej khi nej kom vau rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, cia li los thiab tawm mus, thiab qhia rau nej tus Vajtswv tias nej txaus siab los hloov siab lees txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum thiab nkag rau txoj kev khi lus nrog nws los coj nws tej lus txib, thiab ua tim khawv qhov ntawd rau nws hnuv no los ntawm txoj kev nqes mus rau hauv cov dej ua kev cai raus dej.
- 16 Thiab tus uas ua li no, thiab coj Vajtswv tej lus txib txij no mus, tus ntawd yuav nco qab ntsoov tias kuv tau hais rau nws, muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav nco qab ntsoov tias kuv tau hais rau nws lawm, nws yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, raws li cov lus tim khawv ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas tau ua tim khawv nyob hauv kuv.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

17 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, nej puas ntseeg tej no? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub tias nej yeej ntseeg tej ntawd; thiab qhov kuv ho paub tias nej yeej ntseeg lawv yog los ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv. Thiab nim no vim nej tej kev ntseeg muaj zog txog qhov ntawd, muaj tseeb tiag, txog tej uas kuv tau hais lawm, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab ntau kawg li.

18 Vim ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej txij li thaum chiv thawj los, uas kuv xav tau tias nej tsis tau nyob hauv txoj kev nyuaj phem li nej tej kwv tij, txawm li ntawd los kuv tau nrhiav pom tias kuv tej kev xav tau raug txaus siab lawm.

19 Vim kuv paub tias nej yeej taug tej kev ncaj ncees; kuv paub tias nej nyob hauv txoj kev uas coj mus rau Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub tias nej yeej tab tom ua nws txoj kev kom ncaj.

20 Kuv paub tias nws tau ua rau nej paub, los ntawm cov lus tim khawv ntawm nws txoj lus; tias nws taug tsis tau tej kev com kawb; thiab nws tsis pauv ncaim ntawm tej uas nws tau hais lawm; los sis nws yuav tsis tig ntawm sab xis mus rau sab laug hlo li, los sis ntawm qhov uas yog mus rau qhov uas tsis yog; yog li ntawd, nws txoj kev yog txoj uas ncig nyob mus ib txhis.

21 Thiab nws yuav tsis nyob hauv tej tuam tsev uas tsis dawb huv; thiab tsis muaj tej vuab tsuab los sis ib yam dab tsi uas tsis huv yuav txais tau mus rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; yog li ntawd kuv hais rau nej tias lub sij hawm yuav los, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yuav yog thaum hnuv kawg, tias nws tus uas vuab tsuab yeej yuav tseem nyob hauv nws txoj kev vuab tsuab.

22 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv tau hais tej yam no rau nej kom kuv yuav tsa tau nej los nco txog nej txoj hauv lwm rau Vajtswv, xwv kom nej yuav mus tsis muaj qhov thuam tau rau nws, xwv kom nej yuav lawv tau Vajtswv tus txheej txheem dawb huv qab, tom qab uas nej tau txais lawm.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

- 23 Thiab nim no kuv xav kom nej yuav txo hwj chim, thiab zam rau lwm tus thiab muaj siab mos siab muag; qhia yooj yim; muaj kev ua siab ntev puv npo thiab ua siab ntev nyiaj; mob siab rau txhua yam; rau siab coj Vajtswv tej lus txib txhua lub caij nyoog; thov txhua txhia yam uas nej xav tau, tag nrho sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig; nco ntsoov ua Vajtswv tsaug rau txhua yam uas nej tau txais.
- 24 Thiab kom pom tias nej muaj kev ntseeg, kev cia siab, thiab kev sib hlub, thiab tom qab ntawd ces nej yeej yuav niaj hnuv xav ua tej hauj lwm uas zoo.
- 25 Thiab thov tus Tswv foom koob hmoov rau nej, thiab ceev nej tej ris tsho kom tsis txhob muaj ceb tsuas, xwv kom thaum kawg nej yuav raug coj mus zaum nrog Anplaham, Ixaj, thiab Yakhauj, thiab cov yaj saub dawb huv uas tau nyob txij li thaum lub ntiav teb chiv los, kom nej tej ris tsho tsis txhob muaj qhov ceb ib yam li lawv tej ris tsho uas tsis muaj qhov ceb, nyob hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj tsis tawm mus ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.
- 26 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv tau hais tej lus no rau nej raws li tus Ntsuj Plig uas ua tim khawv hauv kuv; thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig yeej zoo siab heev, vim yog nej txoj kev rau siab heev thiab cuab pob ntseg rau kuv txoj lus.
- 27 Thiab nim no, thov kom Vajtswv txoj kev thaj yeeb los rau saum nej, thiab rau saum nej tej vaj tse thiab tej av, thiab rau saum nej tej yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu, thiab tag nrho ib puas tsav yam uas nej muaj, nej tej poj niam thiab nej tej me nyuam, raws li nej tej kev ntseeg thiab tej hauj lwm zoo, txij li lub sij hawm no mus thiab mus ib txhis li. Thiab kuv tau hais li ntawd tiag. Ameen.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

Amas 8

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau rov qab los tom Khede-oos thaj av los, tom qab uas tau qhia cov neeg Khede-oos ntau yam uas tsis muaj peev xwm muab sau cia, tau txhim tsa tus txheej txheem ntawm lub koom txoos ib yam li nws twb tau ua nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau rov qab los rau hauv nws lub tsev nyob hauv Xalahelas los so ntawm tej hauj lwm uas nws tau ua lawm.
- 2 Thiab xws li no tau xaus xyoo thib cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum pib xyoo thib kaum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, Amas tau ncaim ntawm qhov ntawd thiab tau mus ncig rau hauv thaj av Milej, nyob sab hnuv poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos, nyob sab hnuv poob tom tej ciam hav zoov.
- 4 Thiab nws tau pib qhia cov neeg nyob hauv thaj av Milej raws li Vajtsv tus txheej txheem dawb huv, uas nws tau raug hu; thiab nws tau pib qhia cov neeg thoob plaws txhua thaj av hauv Milej.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau tuaj rau nws thoob plaws ntawm txhua tus ciam dej ciam av ntawm thaj av uas nyob ib sab tom hav zoov. Thiab lawv tau ua kev cai raus dej thoob plaws txhua thaj av;
- 6 Ces thaum uas nws tau ua nws txoj hauj lwm nyob hauv Milej tag lawm nws tau ncaim qhov ntawd mus, thiab tau mus peb hnuv ncig mus rau sab pem toj ntawm thaj av Milej; thiab nws tau los rau ib lub nroog uas hu ua Amonaihas.
- 7 Nim no nws yog raws li kev li kev cai uas Nifais cov neeg tis npe rau lawv tej av thiab tej nroog, thiab lawv tej zej zog, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho rau lawv tej zej zog me, raws lub npe ntawm nws tus uas xub xub nyob hauv lawd; thiab thaj av Amonaihas thiaj tau tis ib yam li ntawd.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau tuaj rau hauv lub nroog Amonaihas nws tau pib qhuab qhia Vajtsv txoj lus rau lawv.
- 9 Nim no Dab Ntxwg Nyoo tau tuav cov neeg ntawm lub nroog Amonaihas tej siab tej ntsws ruaj heev; yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam mloog Amas tej lus.

Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

- 10 Txawm li ntawd los Amas tau ua hauj lwm ntau nyob hauv sab ntsuj plig, sib ntswg nrog Vajtsv nyob hauv txoj kev thov Vajtsv heev, xwv kom nws yuav nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig rau saum cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog; xwv kom nws thiaj yuav cia Amas muab lawv ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 11 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv, hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, peb paub tias koj yog Amas; thiab peb paub tias koj yog tus pov thawj hlob rau lub koom txoos uas koj tau txhim tsa nyob ntau qhov chaw ntawm thaj av, raws li koj txoj kev li kev cai; thiab peb tsis yog neeg ntawm koj lub koom txoos, thiab peb tsis ntseeg tej kev li kev cai ruam li ntawd.
- 12 Thiab nim no peb paub tias vim peb tsis yog neeg ntawm koj lub koom txoos peb paub tias koj tsis muaj hwj chim rau saum peb; thiab koj tau muab lub rooj txiav txim rau Nifaihas lawm; yog li ntawd koj tsis yog tus thawj tub txiav txim rau peb lawm.
- 13 Nim no thaum cov neeg tau hais li no lawm, thiab tau tawm tsam nws tej lus tag nrho, thiab tau thuam nws, thiab nto qaub ncaug rau nws, thiab tau ua kom nws yuav tsum raug ntiab tawm ntawm lawv lub nroog mus, nws tau ncaim tawm ntawm qhov ntawd thiab tau ncig mus rau lub nroog uas hu ua Aloos.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tab tom mus tid, tau raug tsuam hnyav nrog txoj kev nyuaj siab, tiv qees txoj kev txom nyem thiab kev mob ntau ntawm sab ntsuj plig, vim txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog Amonaihas, tau muaj tias thaum Amas tseem raug tsuam hnyav nrog txoj kev nyuaj siab, saib seb tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv tau tshwm sim rau nws, hais tias:
- 15 Koj tau koob hmoov, Amas; yog li ntawd, cia li tsa koj lub taub hau thiab cia li zoo siab, vim koj muaj qhov zoo heev los zoo siab; vim koj tau mob siab koj Vajtsv tej lus txib txij li lub sij hawm uas koj tau txais koj thawj tsab xov los ntawm nws. Saib seb, kuv yog nws tus uas tau koj tsab xov ntawd los rau koj.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

- 16 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau raug xa los txib kom koj rov qab mus rau lub nroog Amonaihas, thiab rov qhuab qhia dua rau cov neeg ntawm lub nroog; muaj tseeb tiag, qhuab qhia rau lawv. Muaj tseeb tiag, hais rau lawv tias, tsuas yog lawv hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 17 Vim saib seb, lub sij hawm no lawv kawm kom lawv yuav rhuav koj cov neeg txoj kev ywj siab, (vim tus Tswv tau hais li no) uas tsis raws li tej lus txib, thiab tej kev txiav txim, thiab tej lus txib uas nws tau muab rau nws cov neeg.
- 18 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amas tau txais nws tsab xov los ntawm tus Tswv tus tim tswv lawm nws tau rov qab nrawm nroos mus rau tom thaj av Amonaihas. Thiab nws tau mus lwm txoj kev nkag mus rau hauv lub nroog, muaj tseeb tiag, mus txoj kev uas nyob rau sab nram hav ntawm lub nroog Amonaihas.
- 19 Thiab thaum uas nws tau nkag mus rau hauv lub nroog nws tau tshaib plab heev, thiab nws tau hais rau ib tug txiv neej tias? Koj puas kam muab ib yam dab tsi rau Vajtswv tus tub qhe uas txo hwj chim noj?
- 20 Thiab tus txiv neej tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yog ib tug Neeg Nifais, thiab kuv paub tias koj yog Vajtswv ib tug yaj saub dawb huv, vim koj yog tus neeg uas tus tim tswv tau hais nyob hauv ib txoj kev ua yog toog pom tias: Koj yuav tau txais. Yog li ntawd, cia li nrog kuv mus lawm tom kuv tsev thiab kuv yuav faib kuv tej zaub mov rau koj; thiab kuv paub tias koj yuav yog ib qho koob hmoov rau kuv thiab kuv tsev neeg.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tus txiv neej tau txais nws mus rau hauv nws tsev; thiab tus txiv neej yog hu ua Amulej; thiab nws tau nqa mov mog thiab nqaj thiab muab tso rau ntawm Amas xub ntiag.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau noj mov mog thiab tau tsau; thiab nws tau foom koob hmoov rau Amulej thiab nws tsev neeg, thiab nws tau ua Vajtswv tsaug.
- 23 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau noj tag thiab tau tsau lawm nws tau hais rau Amulej tias: Kuv yog Amas, thiab yog tus pov thawj hlob saib xyuas Vajtswv lub koom txoos thoob plaws hauv thaj av.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

24 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau raug hu tuaj qhuab qhia Vajtsv w txoj lus rau hauv tag nrho cov neeg no, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; thiab kuv tau tuaj nyob hauv thaj av no thiab lawv tsis kam txais kuv, tiam sis lawv muab kuv ntiab tawm thiab kuv twb yuav luag tig kuv lub nraub qaum rau thaj av no mus ib txhis.

25 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau raug txib tias kuv yuav tsum rov qab tuaj dua thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg no, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ua tim khawv nkaug lawv txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.

26 Thiab nim no, Amulej, vim koj tau pub kuv noj thiab tau coj kuv los tsev, koj tau koob hmoov; vim kuv tau tshaib plab heev, vim kuv tau yoo mov tau ntau hnuv.

27 Thiab Amas tau nyob nrog Amulej tau ntau hnuv ua ntej nws pib qhuab qhia rau cov neeg.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau pib ua tej kev tsis ncaj ncees loj heev ntxiv tuaj.

29 Thiab txoj lus tau los rau Amas hais tias: Cia li mus; thiab hais rau kuv tus tub qhe Amulej, cia li mus thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg no, hais tias—Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, vim tus Tswv tau hais li no, tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd kuv yuav los saib xyuas cov neeg no nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav tsis tig kuv txoj kev npau taws heev mus li.

30 Thiab Amas tau mus, thiab Amulej thiab, mus rau hauv cov neeg, mus tshaj tawm Vajtsv w tej lus rau lawv; thiab nkawd tau muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo.

31 Thiab nkawd tau hwj chim uas tau muab rau nkawd, kawg tias lawv tsis muaj cuab kav ceev nkawd rau hauv tej qhov taub; thiab tsis muaj ib tug neeg twg uas yuav muaj peev xwm tua tau nkawd; txawm li ntawd los nkawd tsis tau siv nkawd tej hwj chim mus txog thaum nkawd raug khi thiab raug muab pov rau hauv qhov taub. Nim no, tau ua li no xwv kom tus Tswv yuav qhia nws lub hwj chim dhau los ntawm nkawd.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau mus ncig thiab tau pib qhuab qhia thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg, raws li tus ntsuj plig thiab lub hwj chim uas tus Tswv tau muab rau nkawd.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

Amas tej lus, thiab Amulej tej lus, uas tau tsbaj tarwm rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv tsbaj av Amonaihas. Thiab nkawd kuj raug pov rau hauv qhov taub, thiab carwm dim los ntawm Vajtswv lub bwj chim tseem ceeb uas nyob hauv nkawd, raws li Amas pbau ceev xwm txbeej.

Amas 9

- 1 Thiab ntxiv, kuv, Amas, tau raug Vajtswv txib tias kuv yuav tsum koj Amulej thiab mus ncig thiab qhuab qhia ntxiv rau cov neeg no, los sis cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog Amonaihas, tau muaj tias thaum kuv tau pib qhuab qhia rau lawv, lawv tau pib cav nrog kuv, hais tias:
- 2 Koj yog leej twg? Koj xav tias peb yuav ntseeg cov lus pov thawj ntawm ib tug neeg, txawm tias nws yuav qhuab qhia rau peb tias lub ntiaj teb yuav txawj kawg no los?
- 3 Nim no lawv tsis to taub tej lus uas nkawd tau hais; vim lawv tsis tau paub tias lub ntiaj teb yuav kawg.
- 4 Thiab lawv kuj tau hais tias: Peb yuav tsis ntseeg koj tej lus txawm tias koj yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej tias ib hnub xwb lub nroog loj no yuav raug puas tsuaj tag.
- 5 Nim no lawv tsis tau paub tias Vajtswv muaj peev xwm ua tej yam hauj lwm zoo uas xav tsis thoob li ntawd, vim lawv yog ib co neeg siab tawv thiab tawv ncauj.
- 6 Thiab lawv tau hais tias: Vajtswv yog leej twg, es ho tsis xa tus muaj hwj chim tshaj li ib tug neeg los rau cov neeg no, los tshaj tawm qhov tseeb rau lawv ntawm tej yam xwm loj thiab xav tsis thoob no?
- 7 Thiab lawv tau sawv los cev tes rau kuv; tiam sis saib seb, lawv tsis ua. Thiab kuv tau sawv yam tsis ntshai kiag tshaj tawm rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau ua tim khawv yam tsis ntshai rau lawv hais tias:
- 8 Saib seb, Au nej cov uas phem thiab tiam neeg tsis ncaj es, ua li cas nej yuav hnov qab nej tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai; muaj tseeb tiag, ua li cas nej yuav hnov qab Vajtswv tej lus txib sai ua luaj li.
- 9 Nej tsis nco qab txog peb tus yawg koob, Lihais, tau raug koj tawm ntawm Yeluxalees los ntawm Vajtswv txhais tes los? Nej tsis nco qab tias tag nrho lawv tau raug nws koj dhau hauv tej hav zoov no los?

The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.

Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

- 10 Thiab nej yuav hnov qab sai ua luaj tias nws tau cawm peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes pes tsawg zaus lawm thiab tshwj lawv tseg kom tsis txhob puas tsuaj, los ntawm lawv cov kwv tij kiag tej tes?
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yog tsis yog rau nws lub hwj chim uas tsis muaj dab tsi piv tau, thiab nws txoj kev zam txim, thiab nws txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj rau peb, ces peb twb raug zam tsis tau kev puas tsuaj nyob hauv lub ntiag teb ntev ua ntej lub caij no lawm, thiab tej zaum tau raug mus nyob hauv qhov chaw tsis zoo thiab txom nyem uas tsis muaj qhov kawg li lawm.
- 12 Saib seb, nim no kuv hais rau nej tias nws tau hais kom nej hloov siab lees txim; thiab tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb, tsis li ces nej yuav tsis muaj ntiag tug nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj tau. Tiam sis saib seb, tsis tas li no xwb—nws tau txib kom nej hloov siab lees txim, los sis nws yuav ua kom nej puas tsuaj tag huv tib si tawm ntawm lub ntiag teb no mus; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los xyuas nej nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws, thiab nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws heev nws yuav tsis tig mus li.
- 13 Saib seb, nej tsis nco cov lus uas nws tau hais rau Lihais, hais tias: Npaum tias nej yuav koj kuv tej lus txib, nej yuav vam meej nyob hauv thaj av no los? Thiab ntxiv tau hais tias: yog nej tsis koj kuv tej lus txib nej yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus.
- 14 Nim no kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov, tias vim cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau koj Vajtswv tej lus txib, lawv tau raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus. Nim no peb pom tias tus Tswv txoj lus tau muaj tseeb tiag nyob hauv tej yam no, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau raug txiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag, txij li thaum chiv thawj ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum nyob hauv thaj av.
- 15 Txawm li ntawd los kuv hais rau nej, tias yuav muaj kev zam taus ntau dua rau lawv nyob rau hnuv txiav txim dua li rau nej, yog tias nej tseem nyob hauv nej tej kev txog kev txhaum, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav muaj kev zam taus ntau dua rau lawv nyob hauv lub neej no dua li rau nej, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb.

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

- 16 Vim muaj ntau lo lus cog tseg uas tau muab cev mus rau cov Neeg Lamas; vim nws yog tej kev li kev cai ntawm lawv tej yawg koob uas tau ua kom lawv pheej nyob hauv lawv txoj kev tawv ncauj; yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav zam txim rau lawv thiab cia lawv nyob hauv thaj av ntxiv mus.
- 17 Thiab nyob rau ib lub sij hawm lawv yuav raug coj los mus ntseeg nws txoj lus, thiab paub txog lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai uas tsis yog; thiab lawv coob tug yuav dim, vim tus Tswv yuav zam txim rau txhua tus uas hu nws lub npe.
- 18 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias yog nej tsis tseg nej tej kev phem ces nej txoj sia yuav tsis cia ntev nyob rau hauv thaj av, vim cov Neeg Lamas yuav raug xa tuaj tawm tsam nej, thiab yog tias nej tsis kam hloov siab lees txim lawv yuav tuaj thaum ib lub sij hawm uas nej tsis paub, thiab nej yuav raug xyuas los ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj kom tu noob nrho; thiab nws yuav muaj raws li tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws heev.
- 19 Vim nws yuav tsis cia nej ua neej nyob hauv nej txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, ua kom nws cov neeg puas tsuaj. Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis yog li ntawd; nws yeej yeem cia kom cov Neeg Lamas ua kom tag nrho nws cov neeg uas hu ua Nifais cov neeg puas tsuaj huv tib si mus, yog tias lawv yuav poob taus mus rau hauv kev txog thiab kev txhaum, tom qab uas tau muab qhov kaj ntau thiab kev paub ntau rau lawv los ntawm tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv;
- 20 Muaj tseeb tiag, tom qab uas tau yog ib co neeg uas tau koob hmoov los ntawm tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, tom qab uas tau koob hmoov tshaj dua li lwm haiv neeg, lwm xeeb neeg, lwm yam lus, los sis lwm cov neeg; tom qab uas tau muaj tag nrho ib puas tsav yam ua rau lawv paub, raws li lawv siab xav, thiab lawv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab tej kev thov Vajtswv, ntawm tej uas tau muaj los lawm, thiab tseem tab tom muaj, thiab tej uas yuav muaj los;
- 21 Tau raug saib xyuas los ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig; tau hais lus nrog tej tim tswv, thiab tau raug tus Tswv lub suab hais lus rau; thiab tau muaj tus ntsuj plig ua qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab tus ntsuj plig qhia kev tshwm sim, thiab ntau yam txiaj ntsig, thiab kev pub txawj hais lwm yam lus, thiab kev pub txoj kev qhuab qhia, thiab lub txiaj ntsim Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab kev pub txawj txhais lus;

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

22 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tom qab uas tau raug Vajtswv coj dim ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees, los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes; tau raug cawm dim ntawm kev tshaib, thiab ntawm kev mob nkeeg, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kab mob kev nkeeg; thiab lawv tau loj muaj zog nyob hauv kev ua rog, xwv kom lawv thiaj tsis raug puas tsuaj; tau raug coj tawm ntawm kev poob cev qhev ib lub sij hawm dhau ib lub sij hawm, thiab tau raug ceev thiab hwm tseg los txog nim no; thiab lawv tau raug vam meej mus txog thaum lawv nplua nuj nyob hauv txhua yam—

23 Thiab nim no saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, yog tias cov neeg no, cov uas tau txais koob hmoov ntau heev los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, yuav ua txhaum tsis raws li qhov kaj thiab txoj kev paub uas lawv tau muaj, kuv hais rau nej tias yog yuav yog li qhov no, tias yog lawv yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum, ces cov Neeg Lamas yuav tiv tau ntau dua li lawv.

24 Vim saib seb, cov lus cog tseg ntawm tus Tswv tau muab cev mus rau cov Neeg Lamas, tiam sis lawv tsis yog rau nej yog nej ua txhaum; vim tus Tswv tsis tau cog lus ncaj nraim thiab ruaj khov, tias yog nej yuav ntseeb siab tawm tsam nws ces nej yuav raug puas tsuaj huv tib si tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb mus no los?

25 Thiab nim no vim qhov no, xwv kom nej yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj, tus Tswv tau xa nws tus tim tswv los saib xyuas nws cov neeg ntau tus, tshaj tawm rau lawv tias lawv yuav tsum mus ncig thiab hais nrov nrov rau cov neeg no, hais tias: Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj nyob ze lawm;

26 Thiab tsis ntau hnuv txij no mus Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los nyob hauv nws lub yeeb koob; thiab nws lub yeeb koob yuav yog lub yeeb koob ntawm Leej Txiv Tib Leej Tub, uas muaj puv npo kev zoo, kev ncaj, thiab kev tseeb, muaj puv npo kev siab ntev, kev hlub tshua, thiab kev ua siab ntev nyiaj, hnov nws cov neeg tej lus thov nrawm thiab teb lawv tej lus thov.

27 Thiab saib seb, nws yuav los txhiv cov uas yuav ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg nws lub npe.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

28 Yog li ntawd, nej cia li npaj tus Tswv txoj kev, vim lub sij hawm los txog lawm tias neeg txhua tus yuav tau sau ib qho nqi zog ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm, raws li tej uas lawv tau ua los lawm—yog lawv tau ua ncaj ncees lawv yuav tau sau txoj kev cawm seeg ntawm lawv tej ntsuj plig, raws li lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev cawm dim ntawm Yexus Khetos; thiab yog lawv ua phem lawv yuav sau txoj kev raug txim ntawm lawv tej ntsuj plig, raws li lub hwj chim thiab kev raug txhom ntawm tus dab.

29 Nim no saib seb, qhov no yog tus tim tswv lub suab, hais nrov nrov rau cov neeg.

30 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, vim nej yog kuv cov kwv tij, thiab nej yuav tsum raug hlub, thiab nej yuav tsum ua tej hauj lwm uas tsim nyog rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, pom tau tias nej tej siab tau tawv heev tawm tsam Vajtsv txoj lus, thiab tau pom tias nej yog ib co neeg tau yuam kev thiab tau poob lawm.

31 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum kuv, Amas, tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, saib seb, cov neeg tau npau taws rau kuv vim kuv tau hais rau lawv tias lawv tau yog ib cov neeg siab tawv thiab tawv ncauj.

32 Thiab vim kuv kuj tau hais rau lawv tias lawv tau yog ib co neeg yuam kev thiab tau poob lawm lawv tau npau taws rau kuv, thiab tau nrhiav kev cev lawv tej tes rau kuv, xwv kom lawv yuav tau muab kuv pov rau hauv qhov taub.

33 Tiam sis tau muaj tias tus Tswv tsis tau pub tias lawv yuav tsum txhom tau kuv lub sij hawm no thiab muab kuv pov rau hauv qhov taub.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias Amulej tau mus thiab tau sawv nres nroos, thiab tau pib qhuab qhia rau lawv thiab. Thiab nim no Amulej tej lus tsis tau muab sau tag nrho tseg, txawm li ntawd los nws cov lus ib txhia tau muab sau rau hauv phau ntawv no.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivity of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

Amas 10

- 1 Nim no cov no yog tej lus uas Amulej tau qhuab qhia rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Amonaihas, hais tias:
- 2 Kuv yog Amulej; kuv yog tus tub ntawm Khidaunas, tus uas ho yog tus tub ntawm Ixama-ees, uas ho yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Aminadais; thiab nws tau yog tib tug Aminadais uas tau txhais cov ntawv uas nyob ntawm lub tuam tsev lub ntsa loog, uas tau raug sau los ntawm Vajtswv tus ntiv tes.
- 3 Thiab Aminadais ho yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Nifais, uas ho yog tus tub ntawm Lihais, uas tau tawm tim thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj, tus uas tau yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Manaxes, tus uas ho yog Yauxej tus uas tau muab muag mus rau Iyiv los ntawm nws cov kwv tij txhais tes tus tub.
- 4 Thiab saib seb, kuv kuj yog ib tug neeg uas muaj suab npe nyob tag nrho hauv cov neeg uas paub kuv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab saib seb, kuv muaj tej kwv tij neej tsa thiab tej phooj ywg coob, thiab kuv kuj tau muaj kev nplua nuj heev los ntawm kuv txhais tes uas ua hauj lwm hnyav.
- 5 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab ib puas yam tsav no, kuv ib txwm tsis tau paub txog tus Tswv tej kev, thiab nws tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog thiab lub hwj chim uas zoo kawg nkaus pes tsawg. Kuv tau hais tias kuv ib txwm tsis tau paub ntau txog tej yam no; tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau hais tsis yog, vim kuv tau pom ntau txog nws tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog thiab nws lub hwj chim uas zoo kawg nkaus; muaj tseeb tiag, twb pom txoj kev tshwj cov neeg no txoj sia.
- 6 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv tseem tau ua kuv lub siab tawv qhawv, vim kuv tau raug hu ntau zaus thiab kuv tsis kam mloog li; yog li ntawd kuv tau paub txog tej yam no, tiam sis kuv tau tsis xav paub; yog li ntawd kuv tau mus ntxeev siab tawm tsam Vajtswv, nyob hauv txoj kev phem ntawm kuv lub siab, mus txog hnuv thib plaub ntawm lub xya hli no, uas nyob hauv xyoo thib kaum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

7 Thaum kuv tseem tab tom ncig mus saib ib tug kwv tij txheeb ze, saib seb tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv tau tshwm sim rau kuv thiab tau hais tias: Amulej es, cia li rov qab lawm tom koj lub tsev, vim koj yuav tau yug tus Tswv ib tug yaj saub; muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib tug neeg dawb huv, uas yog ib tug neeg raug xaiv los ntawm Vajtswv; vim nws tau yoo mov tau ntau hnuv los vim yog cov neeg no tej kev txhaum, thiab tau tshaib plab heev, thiab koj yuav tsum txais nws los rau hauv koj tsev thiab yug nws, thiab nws yuav foom koob hmoov rau koj thiab koj tsev neeg; thiab tus Tswv tej koob hmoov yuav los nyob saum koj thiab koj tsev neeg.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau mloog li tus tim tswv lub suab, thiab tau rov qab ncaj qha los rau kuv tsev. Thiab thaum kuv tab tom los ntawd kuv tau pom tus neeg uas tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Koj yuav tsum txais mus rau hauv koj lub tsev—thiab saib seb nws twb yog tib tug txiv neej no uas tau hais rau nej txog tej yam uas yog Vajtswv li.

9 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias nws yog ib tug neeg dawb huv; yog li ntawd kuv paub tias nws yog ib tug neeg dawb huv vim tau hais los ntawm Vajtswv ib tug tim tswv.

10 Thiab ntxiv, kuv paub tias tej uas nws tau ua tim khawv yeej muaj tseeb; vim saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias ib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj sia nyob, nws yeej tau xa nws tus tim tswv los ua tej yam no rau kuv paub; thiab nws tau ua li no thaum uas tus Amas no tseem nyob tom kuv tsev.

11 Vim saib seb, nws tau foom koob hmoov rau kuv tsev neeg, nws tau foom koob hmoov rau kuv, thiab kuv tej poj niam, thiab kuv tej me nyuam, thiab kuv txiv thiab kuv tej kwv tij neej tsa; muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb tau foom koob hmoov tag nrho rau kuv tej kwv tij neej tsa, thiab tus Tswv txoj koob hmoov tau los nyob saum peb raws li tej lus uas nws tau hais lawm.

12 Thiab nim no, thaum Amulej tau hais tej lus no tas lawm cov neeg tau pib xav tsis thoob, tau pom tias tau muaj ntau dua li ib tug tim khawv uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej uas lawv raug liam, thiab kuj txog tej uas yuav muaj los, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas nyob hauv nkawd.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

- 13 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv muaj ib txhia uas tau xav nug nkawd, xwv kom los ntawm lawv tej kev ntxias lawv yuav cuab tau nkawd tej lus, xwv kom lawv yuav nrhiav tau tim khawv nkaug nkawd, xwv kom lawv yuav tau coj nkawd mus rau lawv cov neeg txiav txim kom nkawd yuav raug txiav txim raws li txoj kev cai, thiab kom nkawd yuav raug muab tua los sis pov rau hauv qhov taub, raws li txoj kev txhaum uas lawv muaj peev xwm ua kom muaj los sis ua tim khawv nkaug nkawd.
- 14 Nim no nws yog cov neeg uas tau nrhiav ua kom nkawd puas tsuaj, uas yog cov neeg hais kev cai, uas raug ntiav thiab tsa los ntawm cov neeg los tswj txoj kev cai nyob lub sij hawm uas lawv muaj plaub, los sis thaum muaj plaub txog tej kev txhaum ntawm cov neeg rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim.
- 15 Nim no cov neeg hais kev cai no tau kawm tag nrho tej kev haub thiab kev ntxias ntawm cov neeg; thiab qhov no yuav ua kom lawv muaj txuj ci nyob hauv lawv tej hauj lwm.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pib nug Amulej, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav ua kom nws tej lus sib chab sib chaws, los sis kom tsis raws li tej lus uas nws yuav tsum hais.
- 17 Nim no lawv tsis tau paub tias Amulej yeej paub txog lawv tej tswv yim. Tiam sis tau muaj tias thaum lawv pib nug nws, nws tau paub txog lawv tej kev xav, thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Au nej cov neeg phem thiab tiam niag neeg tsis ncaj es, nej cov neeg hais kev cai thiab cov neeg siab phem es, vim nej tab tom ua tus dab txoj hauj lwm; vim nej tab tom cuab ntxiab thiab cuam koob kom mag Vajtswv tej neeg dawb huv.
- 18 Nej tab tom npaj kev yuav ua kom cov neeg ncaj nces tej kev mus nkhaus, thiab coj Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws nqis los rau nej tej taub hau, kom mus txog thaum cov neeg no yuav raug puas tsuaj tas huv tib si.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

- 19 Muaj tseeb tiag, Mauxiyas tau hais meej, tus uas yog peb tus vaj ntxwv kawg tau hais lawm, thaum nws yuav luag tso lub teb chaws, tsis muaj leej twg uas yuav muab tso rau, tau kom cov neeg no yuav tsum raug kav los ntawm lawv tej suab—muaj tseeb tiag, nws yeej tau hais meej tias yog lub sij hawm yuav los tias cov neeg no lub suab yuav xaiv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, ntawd yog tias, yog lub sij hawm yuav los tiag cov neeg no yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum, lawv yuav siav rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 20 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej tias tus Tswv yeej yuav txiav txim zoo txog nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; nws yeej qhuab qhia zoo rau cov neeg no, los ntawm nws tej tim tswv tej suab tias: Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, hloov siab lees txim, vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj nyob ze lawm.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yeej qhuab qhia zoo, los ntawm nws tej tim tswv tej suab tias: Kuv yuav nqis los rau hauv kuv cov neeg, nrog txoj kev txij lim thiab txoj kev ncaj ncees nyob hauv kuv tes.
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv hais rau nej tias yog tsis yog rau cov neeg ncaj ncees tej kev thov Vajtswv, cov uas nim no nyob hauv thaj av, ces nim no nej twb raug xyuas los ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj huv tib si lawm; tiam sis nws yuav tsis yog los ntawm dej nyab, ib yam li cov neeg thaum Nau-as tseem ua neej nyob, tiam sis nws yuav yog los ntawm kev tshaib, thiab los ntawm kev mob nkeeg, thiab ntawm ntaj.
- 23 Tiam sis nws yog los ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees tej kev thov Vajtswv nej thiaj li raug tseg; nim no yog li ntawd, yog nej yuav ntiab cov neeg ncaj ncees tawm hauv nej mus ces tus Tswv txhais tes yuav tsis nyob twj ywm; tiam sis nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws heev nws yuav tawm los tawm tsam nej; ces nej yuav raug tsim txom los ntawm kev tshaib, thiab kev mob nkeeg, thiab los ntawm tej ntaj; thiab lub caij nyoog twb los yuav txog ze lawm tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb.
- 24 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias cov neeg tau npau taws heev ntxiv rau Amulej, thiab lawv tau qw nrov nrov, hais tias: Tus neeg no tau hais lus phem tawm tsam peb tej kev cai uas ncaj ncees, thiab peb cov tub hais kev cai txawj ntse uas peb tau xaiv.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

- 25 Tiam sis Amulej tau ncav hlo nws txhais tes, thiab hais muaj zog dua rau lawv, hais tias: Au nej cov neeg phem thiab tiam niag neeg tsis ncaj es, vim li cas Dab Ntxwg Nyoog thiaj tuav tau nej tej siab ruaj ua luaj li ko? Vim li cas nej thiaj cia nej tus kheej rau nws xwv kom nws yuav muaj hwj chim kav nej, los npog nej tej qhov muag, kom nej yuav tsis to taub tej lus uas tau hais, raws li lawv qhov tseeb?
- 26 Vim saib seb, kuv puas tau ua tim khawv nkaug nej txoj kev cai? Nej tsis to taub; nej hais tias kuv tau hais nkaug tej txoj kev cai; tiam sis kuv twb tsis tau, tiam sis kuv tau hais zoo raws li nej txoj kev cai, rau nej txoj kev yuav raug txim xwb.
- 27 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg no tau pib npaj los ntawm cov neeg tsis ncaj ncees ntawm nej tej neeg hais kev cai thiab nej tej neeg txiav txim.
- 28 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amulej tau hais tej lus no cov neeg qw tawm nkaug nws, hais tias: Nim no peb paub tias tus neeg no yog tus dab ib tug me nyuam, vim nws tau dag rau peb; vim nws tau hais nkaug peb txoj kev cai. Thiab ziang no nws ho hais tias nws tsis tau hais nkaug no.
- 29 Thiab ntxiv, nws tau hais phem nkaug peb tej neeg hais kev cai, thiab peb cov neeg txiav txim.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg hais kev cai tau muab tso rau hauv lawv tej siab tias lawv yuav tsum nco ntsoov tej no nkaug nws.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj ib tug nyob hauv lawv uas npe hu ua Xi-elas. Nim no nws yog tus uas liam Amulej thiab Amas heev tshaj, nws tau yog ib tug txawj tshaj ntawm lawv, uas muaj hauj lwm ntau ua heev nyob hauv cov neeg.
- 32 Nim no qhov tseem ceeb ntawm cov neeg hais kev cai no yog kom nplua nuj; thiab lawv tau nplua nuj raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

Amas 11

- 1 Nim no nyob hauv Mauxiyas txoj kev cai txhua tus neeg uas yog ib tug neeg txiav txim ntawm txoj kev cai, los sis cov uas tau tsa los ua cov neeg txiav txim, yuav tsum tau txais nqi zog raws li lub sij hawm uas lawv tau ua hauv lwm txiav txim rau cov uas raug coj los rau lawv txiav txim.
- 2 Nim no yog ib tug neeg tau tshuav lwm tus nqi, thiab nws tsis kam them tej uas nws tshuav nqi, nws yuav raug yws mus rau cov neeg txiav txim; thiab tus neeg txiav txim yuav siv cai, thiab tau xa tej tub ceev xwm mus coj tus neeg ntawd tuaj rau nws; thiab nws yuav txiav txim tus neeg ntawd raws li txoj kev cai thiab tej tim khawv uas tau raug coj tuaj nkaug nws, thiab li no tus neeg yuav raug yuam kom them tej uas nws tshuav nqi, los sis lwg nws tej khoom, los sis raug ntiab tawm ntawm cov neeg zoo li ib tug tub sab thiab ib tug tub nyiag.
- 3 Thiab tus neeg txiav txim tau txais nws tej nqi zog raws li nws lub sij hawm—ib hnuv ib xinai kub, los sis ib xihav nyiaj dawb, uas npaum li ib xinai kub; thiab qhov no raws li txoj kev cai uas tau muab lawm.
- 4 Nim no cov no yog cov npe txawv ntawm lawv cov kub, thiab ntawm lawv cov nyiaj dawb, raws li lawv tus nqi. thiab tej npe tau raug muab los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, vim lawv tsis tau suav nyiaj li cov Neeg Yudais uas nyob tim Yeluxalees; thiab lawv kuj tsis tau ntsuas li cov Neeg Yudais; tiam sis lawv txoj kev suav thiab lawv txoj kev ntsuas txawv, ua raws li cov neeg tej siab thiab tej kev nyiam, nyob hauv txhua txhua tiam neeg, los txog thaum cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, lawv tau raug tsa los ntawm vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas.
- 5 Nim no txoj kev suav nyiaj yog li no—ib xinai kub, ib xi-oo kub, ib sas kub, thiab ib linas kub.
- 6 Ib xinas nyiaj dawb, ib anaws nyiaj dawb, ib exilas nyiaj dawb, thiab ib oothais nyiaj dawb.
- 7 Ib xinas nyiaj dawb npaum li ib xinai kub, thiab rau ib qho luj noob txhuv liab, thiab kuj rau ib qho luj ntawm txhua yam noob.
- 8 Nim no ib xi-oo kub yog ob npaug nqi ntawm ib xinai.
- 9 Thiab ib sas kub yog ob npaug tus nqi ntawm ib xi-oo.
- 10 Thiab ib linas kub raug nqi ntawm lawv tag nrho.

Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 Thiab ib anaws nyiaj dawb muaj nqi ib yam li ob xinas.

12 Thiab ib exilas nyiaj dawb muaj nqi ib yam li plaub xinas.

13 Thiab ib oothais muaj nqi npaum li lawv tag nrho.

14 Nim no qhov no yog tus nqi tsawg dua ntawm lawv cov nyiaj—

15 Ib sinploos yog ib nrab ntawm ib xinas; yog li ntawd, ib sinploos npaum li ib nrab ntawm ib qho kev luj noob txhuv liab.

16 Thiab ib sinplas yog ib nrab ntawm ib sinploos.

17 Thiab ib lias yog ib nrab ntawm ib sinplas.

18 Nim no qhov no yog lawv cov lej, raws li lawv cov nyiaj.

19 Nim no ib eethi-oos kub npaum li peb sinploos.

20 Nim no, nws tau yog lub ntsiab uas kom nplua nuj, vim lawv tau txais lawv tej nqi zog raws li lawv txoj hauj lwm, yog li ntawd, lawv tau txhib cov neeg kom sawv tawm tsam, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev thiab kev phem, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj hauj lwm ntau ntxiv, xwv kom lawv yuav tau nyiaj raws li tej plaub uas tau raug coj tuaj rau lawv; yog li ntawd lawv tau txhib cov neeg kom nkaug Amas thiab Amulej.

21 Thiab tus Xi-elas no tau pib nug Amulej, hais tias: Koj puas yuav teb kuv ob peb lo lus uas kuv yuav nug koj? Nim no Xi-elas tau yog ib tug neeg uas txawj ntxias heev ntawm tus dab, xwv kom nws yuav ua kom tej uas zoo puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd, nws tau nug Amulej tias: Koj puas yuav teb tej lus uas kuv yuav nug koj?

22 Thiab Amulej tau teb nws tias: Teb tau, yog nws yuav raws li tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig, uas nyob hauv kuv; vim kuv yuav tsis hais dab tsi uas tsis raws li tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig. thiab Xi-elas tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, ntawm no yog rau oothais nyiaj dawb, thiab kuv yuav muab cov no tag nrho rau koj yog tias koj yuav tsis lees tias muaj ib tug Tswj Ntuj Tswj Teb.

23 Nim no Amulej tau hais tias: Au koj tus uas yog me nyuam ntuj txiag teb tsaus es, vim li cas koj thiaj ntxias kuv? Koj puas paub tias cov neeg ncaj nees yeej tsis mloog rau tej lus ntxias zoo li ntawd?

24 Koj ntseeg hais tias tsis muaj Vajtswv no los? Kuv hais rau koj tias, Tsis yog li ntawd, koj yeej paub hais tias yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv, tiam sis koj hlub kev nplua nuj dua li nws.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a Leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

25 Thiab nim no koj tau dag rau ntawm Vajtswv rau kuv. Koj tau hais rau kuv tias—Saib rau lub oothais no saib, uas yog cov muaj nqis heev, kuv yuav muab rau koj—thaum koj twb xav tau nws nyob hauv koj lub siab tsis pub lawv rau kuv; thiab nws tsuas yog koj kev xav kom kuv txhob lees qhov tseeb thiab Vajtswv tus muaj txoj sia nyob, xwv kom koj yuav tau qhov rhuav kuv. Thiab nim no saib seb, vim qhov phem loj no koj yuav tau koj qhov nqi zog.

26 Thiab Xi-elas tau hais rau nws tias: Koj hais tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv tseeb thiab muaj txoj sia nyob no los?

27 Thiab Amulej tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv tseeb thiab muaj txoj sia nyob.

28 Nim no Xi-elas tau hais tias: Puas muaj ntau dua li ib tug Vajtswv?

29 Thiab nws tau teb tias, Tsis muaj.

30 Nim no Xi-elas tau hais rau nws ntxiv tias: Li cas koj ho paub tau?

31 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Ib tug tim tswv tau ua lawv rau kuv paub.

32 Thiab Xi-elas tau hais dua ntxiv tias: Leej twg yog tus uas yuav los? Puas yog Vajtswv Leej Tub?

33 Thiab Amulej tau hais rau nws tias, Muaj tseeb tiag.

34 Thiab Xi-elas tau hais ntxiv tias: Nws puas yuav cawm nws cov neeg nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum? Thiab Amulej tau teb thiab hais rau nws tias: Kuv hais rau koj tias nws yuav tsis cawm, vim twb muaj tsis taus rau nws tso nws txoj lus tseg.

35 Nim no Xi-elas tau hais rau cov neeg tias: Xav kom nej nco ntsoov tej yam no; vim nws tau hais tias tsuas muaj ib tug Vajtswv xwb; tiam sis nws ho hais tias Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los, tiam sis nws yuav tsis cawm nws cov neeg—ib yam li nws tau muaj cai txib Vajtswv.

36 Nim no Amulej rov hais dua rau nws tias: Saib seb koj tau dag, vim koj hais tias kuv tau hais ib yam li kuv tau muaj cai txib Vajtswv vim kuv tau hais tias nws yuav tsis cawm nws cov neeg nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

37 Thiab kuv hais rau koj ntxiv dua tias nws tsis muaj peev xwm cawm lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum; vim kuv tsis muaj cuab kav tsis lees nws txoj lus, thiab nws tau hais tias tsis muaj ib yam tsis huv yuav muab tau ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj ua nws tug; yog li ntawd, nej yuav dim tau li cas, tsuas yog nej yuav tau ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj los ua nej tug xwb? Yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsis muaj cuab kav dim tau nyob hauv nej tej kev txhaum.

38 Nim no Xi-elas hais dua rau nws tias: Vajtsvw Leej Tub puas yog Leej Txiv tus uas muaj Txoj Sia Nyob Mus Ib Txhis li?

39 Thiab Amulek tau hais rau nws tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yog Leej Txiv tus uas muaj Txoj Sia Nyob Mus Ib Txhis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb tiag, thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas nyob hauv lawv; nws yog tus pib thiab tus kawg, tus thawj thiab tus nav;

40 Thiab nws yuav los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb los txhiv nws cov neeg; thiab nws yuav los ris tej kev txog txhaum ntawm cov uas ntseeg nws lub npe; thiab cov no yog lawv cov uas yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, thiab txoj kev cawm seeg yuav tsis los rau lwm tus twg li.

41 Yog li ntawd cov neeg phem tseem yuav nyob ib yam li uas tsis tau muaj dua kev txhiv dim, tsuas yog txoj kev tuag tej hlua yuav raug ua kom xoob xwb; vim saib seb, muaj hnuv yuav los tias tag nrho sawv daws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los thiab sawv ntawm Vajtsvw xub ntiag, thiab raug txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.

42 Nim no, muaj ib txog kev tuag uas hu ua kev tuag sab cev nqaij daim tawv; thiab Khetos txoj kev tuag yuav ua kom txoj kev tuag sab cev nqaij daim tawv no tej hlua xoob, xwv kom sawv daws yuav raug sawv hauv txoj kev tuag sab cev nqaij daim tawv no rov qab los.

43 Tus ntsuj plig thiab lub cev yuav raug los ua ke dua nyob hauv lub cev uas zoo kawg nkaus; tej tes taw thiab tej pob qij txha yuav raug rov txum tim qab los nyob zoo li qhov qub, twb yuav zoo ib yam li peb nyob lub sij hawm tam sim no; thiab peb yuav raug coj los mus sawv ntawm Vajtsvw xub ntiag, paub ib yam li peb paub ziag no, thiab muaj kev nco zoo txog tag nrho peb tej kev txhaum.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

44 Nim no, qhov kev txum tim rov qab los no yuav los rau tag nrho sawv daws, tag nrho cov laus thiab cov hluas, tag nrho cov raug txim thiab cov tsis raug, tag nrho poj niam thiab txiv neej, tag nrho neeg phem thiab neeg ncaj ncees; thiab ib txoj plaub hau saum lawv tej taub hau los twb yuav tsis ploj; tiam sis txhua txhia yam yuav rov qab los rau lawv tej qub chaw li qub, ib yam li ziang no, los sis nyob hauv lub cev, thiab yuav raug coj thiab raug hu los teb saum lub rooj txiav txim ntawm Khetos tus uas yog Leej Tub, thiab Vajtswv tus uas yog Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas yog tib tug Vajtswv uas muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, los txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm, saib lawv zoo los sis lawv phem.

45 Nim no, saib seb, kuv tau hais rau koj txog txoj kev tuag ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv uas txawj ploj txawj tuag, thiab kuj txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv uas txawj ploj txawj tuag. Kuv hais rau koj tias lub cev uas txawj ploj tuag no yuav raug sawv los mus ua lub cev uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, qhov ntawd yog ncaim ntawm txoj kev tuag, twb yog ncaim ntawm kev tuag thawj zaug los mus rau txoj sia, kom lawv yuav tsis tuag ib zaug ntxiv lawm; lawv tej ntsuj plig los koom ua ke nrog lawv tej cev, tsis sib faib ib zaug li lawm; yog li ntawd tag nrho lub cev yuav peem tsheej los rau sab ntsuj plig thiab lub cev uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis pom kev txawj ploj tuag ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.

46 Nim no, thaum Amulej tau xaus tej lus no cov neeg tau pib muaj kev xav tsis thoob, thiab Xi-elas kuj tau pib tshee. Thiab li no tau xaus Amulej tej lus, los sis kuv tsuas tau sau tag nrho li no xwb.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

Amas 12

- 1 Nim no Amas, pom tias Amulej tej lus tau ua rau Xi-elas ntsiag to, vim nws tau pom tias Amulej txhom tau nws hauv nws txoj kev dag thiab kev ntxias ua kom nws puas tsuaj, thiab tau pom tias nws tau pib tshee hnyo nyob hauv txoj paub txog nws txoj kev txhaum, nws tau rua nws lub qhov ncauj thiab tau pib hais rau nws, thiab txhawb Amulej tej lus, thiab piav tej yam ntawd mus ntxiv, los sis piav tej vajlugkub ntxiv tej uas Amulej tau ua lawm.
- 2 Nim no tej lus uas Amas tau hais rau Xi-elas tau raug hnov los ntawm cov neeg uas nyob ib puag ncig; vim cov neeg coob heev, thiab qhov no yog cov uas nws hais:
- 3 Nim no Xi-elas, pom tias koj tau mag nyob hauv koj txoj kev dag thiab kev haub ntxias, vim koj tsis tau dag rau neeg xwb tiam sis koj tseem tau dag rau Vajtswv thiab; vim saib seb, nws paub tag nrho koj tej kev xav, thiab koj pom tias koj tej kev xav raug ua rau peb paub los ntawm nws tus ntsuj plig;
- 4 Thiab koj pom tias peb paub tias koj txoj hauv kev uas npaj tseg tau yog ib txog hauv kev uas ntse heev, ib yam li tus dab txoj kev uas ntse heev, kom dag thiab ntxias cov neeg no xwv kom koj yuav muaj peev xwm tshum lawv nkaug peb, cem peb thiab ntiab peb tawm—
- 5 Nim no qhov no yog ib txoj kev uas npaj tseg ntawm koj tus yeeb ncuab, thiab nws tau siv nws lub hwj chim nyob hauv koj. Nim no kuv xav kom koj yuav tsum nco ntsoov tias yam kuv hais rau koj kuv hais rau sawv daws.
- 6 Thiab saib seb kuv hais rau nej sawv daws tias qhov no yog ib rooj ntxiab ntawm tus yeeb ncuab, uas nws tau cuab txhom cov neeg no, kom nws yuav coj tau nej mus rau hauv nws qab kev tswj hwm, xwv kom nws yuav khi tau nej nrog nws tej saw hlau, xwv kom nws yuav khi tau nej qaug rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis, raws li lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj kev txhom tau.

Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

7 Nim no thaum Amas tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, Xi-elas tau pib tshee heev kawg ntxiv, vim nws tau raug yaum ntau thiab ntau ntxiv los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim; thiab nws kuj tau raug yaum vim tias Amas thiab Amulej tau muaj ib qho kev paub txog nws, nws twb tau raug yaum tias nkawd tau paub tej kev xav thiab tej kev txhob txwm ntawm nws lub siab; vim hwj chim tau raug muab rau nkawd kom nkawd yuav paub txog tej yam no raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej.

8 Thiab Xi-elas tau pib nug nkawd yam kub siab lug, xwv kom nws yuav paub ntxiv txog Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj. Thiab nws tau hais rau Amas tias: Qhov no txhais li cas yam uas Amulej tau hais txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag, tias sawv daws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los, tag nrho tus ncaj thiab tus tsis ncaj, thiab yuav raug coj los sawv ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm?

9 Thiab nim no Amas tau pib piav tej yam no rau nws, hais tias: Nws twb raug muab rau ntau leej paub Vajtswv tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog; txawm li ntawd los lawv raug tso rau hauv qab ib txoj kev cai nruj tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob muab faib tsuas yog raws li nws txoj lus feem uas nws tau pub rau tib neeg xwb, raws li txoj kev mloog lus thiab rau siab uas lawv muab rau nws.

10 Thiab yog li ntawd, tus uas yuav ua nws lub siab tawv, tus ntawd yuav tau txais txoj lus qhov uas tsawg dua; thiab tus uas tsis ua nws lub siab tawv, rau nws yuav raug muab qhov ntau dua ntawm txoj lus, mus txog thaum raug muab rau nws paub Vajtswv tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog mus txog thaum nws paub lawv thoob plaws.

11 Thiab lawv cov uas yuav ua lawv tej siab tawv, yuav muab qhov tsawg zog ntawm txoj lus rau lawv kom mus txog thaum lawv tsis paub dab tsi kiag txog nws tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog; thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav raug txhom coj mus los ntawm tus dab, thiab raug coj los ntawm nws siab nyiam nqis mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj. Nim no qhov no yog qhov txhais ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej saw hlau.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

- 12 Thiab Amulej tau hais tseeb txog txoj kev tuag, thiab raug sawv tawm ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv uas txawj ploj tuag no mus rau qhov uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, thiab raug koj mus rau ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiav txim, kom txiav txim raws li peb tej hauj lwm.
- 13 Ces yog tias peb tej siab tau tawv qhwb qhawv, muaj tseeb tiag, yog peb tau ua peb tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv rau txoj lus, kawg tias tau nrhiav tsis pom nws nyob hauv peb, thaum ntawd ces peb yuav tau qhov phem heev, vim thaum ntawd peb yuav raug txim.
- 14 Vim peb tej lus yuav rau txim rau peb, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho peb tej hauj lwm yuav rau txim rau peb; peb yuav tsis raug nrhiav pom tsis muaj qhov ceb; thiab peb tej kev xav kuj yuav rau txim rau peb thiab; thiab nyob hauv qhov phem heev no peb yuav tsis kav ntsia mus rau peb tus Vajtswv; thiab peb yuav zoo siab yog tias peb ua tau kom tej pob zeb thiab tej roob vau los tsuam peb es muab peb zais ncaim ntawm nws xub ntiag.
- 15 Tiam sis qhov no ua tsis tau li; peb yuav tsum txav los thiab sawv ntawm nws xub ntiag nyob hauv nws lub yeeb koob, thiab hauv nws lub hwj chim, thiab hauv nws lub zog, lub yeej huam, thiab txoj kev kav, thiab lees rau peb tej kev txaj muag uas kav ib txhis tias tag nrho nws tej kev txiav txim yeej ncaj ncees; tias nws yeej ncaj nyob tag nrho hauv nws tej hauj lwm, thiab tias nws yeej hlub tshua rau noob neej, thiab tias nws muaj hwj chim cawm tau neeg txhua tus uas ntseeg hauv nws lub npe thiab txi tau txiv rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 16 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias thaum ntawd ces muaj ib qho kev tuag los, twb yog txoj kev tuag zaum ob, uas yog txoj kev tuag sab ntsuj plig; ces yog lub sij hawm uas tus uas yuav tuag nyob hauv nws tej kev txhaum, ib yam li txoj kev tuag ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv, kuj yuav tuag sab ntsuj plig thiab; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav tuag raws li tej yam uas muaj nyob rau hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inso-much that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

- 17 Ces yog lub sij hawm thaum uas lawv tej kev tsim txom yuav raug zoo ib yam li ib lub pas dej hluav taws leej faj, uas tus nplaim sawv siab mus ib txhiab thiab ib txhis; thiab ces yog lub sij hawm uas lawv yuav raug khi saw hlau vau rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis, raws li lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev txhom ntawm Dab Ntxwg Nyoog, nws ua tau ywj nws siab rau lawv.
- 18 Thaum ntawd, kuv hais rau koj tias, lawv yuav nyob zoo li tsis tau muaj kev txhiv dim li; vim lawv tsis muaj cuab kav raug txhiv dim raws li Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij; thiab lawv yuav tuag tsis taus, vim tsis muaj qhov tuag ntxiv lawm.
- 19 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau xaus hais cov lus no lawm, cov neeg haj yam xav tsis thoob;
- 20 Tiam sis muaj ib tug hu ua Anthi-aunas, uas yog ib tug thawj tswj hwm ntawm lawv, tau txav los thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Qhov uas koj tau hais lawm yog dab tsi, hais tias tib neeg yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los thiab yuav raug hloov ntawm lub cev uas txawj tuag no mus rau lub cev uas tsis txawj tuag, xwv kom tus ntsuj plig yuav tsis txawj tuag ib zaug li lawm?
- 21 Vajlugkub txhais li cas, qhov uas hais tias Vajtswv tau tso Chelunpees thiab ib rab ntaj nplaim taws rau sab hnub tuaj ntawm lub vaj Edees, nyob tsam peb thawj nkawg niam txiv yuav nkag mus thiab noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia, thiab yuav nyob ntev dhawv mus ib txhis? Thiab xws li no peb pom tias yuav tsis muaj tau sij hawm ib zaug kom nkawd yuav nyob tas mus ib txhis.
- 22 Nim no Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Qhov no yog tej uas kuv tau yuav luag piav, nim no peb pom tias Adas tau poob los ntawm txoj kev noj cov txiv uas tau txwv, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus; thiab li no peb pom, tias los ntawm nws txoj kev poob, tib neeg sawv daws thiaj tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg yuam kev thiab poob lawm.
- 23 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias yog nws ua tau rau Adas kom noj cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia nyob lub sij hawm ntawd, yuav tsis tau muaj txoj kev tuag, thiab txoj lus yuav tsis tau muaj ntsiab dab tsi, uas ua rau Vajtswv yog ib tug neeg dag, vim nws tau hais tias: Yog koj noj koj yeej yuav tuag tiag.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

24 Thiab peb pom tias txoj kev tuag tau los rau tib neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev tuag uas Amulej tau hais txog, uas yog txoj kev tuag sab cev nqaij daim tawv; txawm li ntawd los twb tau muaj ib lub sij hawm pub rau tib neeg kom nws yuav hloov siab lees txim; yog li ntawd lub neej no tau rais los mus ua lub caij sim siab; ib lub sij hawm los npaj ntsib Vajtswv; ib lub sij hawm los npaj rau qhov uas tsis muaj qhov kawg uas wb tau hais lawm, uas yog tom qab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag.

25 Nim no, yog tias tsis yog rau txoj hau kev uas npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau npaj txij thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los, ces yuav tsis tau muaj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag; tiam sis tau muaj ib txoj hau kev uas tau npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim lawm, uas yuav coj kom muaj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag, qhov uas twb tau hais lawm.

26 Thiab nim no saib seb, yog nws ua tau tias peb thawj nkawg niam txiv tau mus thiab tau noj cov txiv ntawm tsoob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia ces nkawd yeej yuav tau raug nyuaj siab mus ib txhis, tsis muaj caij npaj; thiab li no txoj hau kev uas npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim yuav tau raug swb, thiab Vajtswv txoj lus yuav tau raug tsis muaj qab hau dab tsi, tsis muaj kuab li lawm.

27 Tiam sis saib seb, nws tsis tau yog li ntawd; tiam sis twb tau teem lawm kom tib neeg yuav tsum tuag; thiab tom qab txoj kev tuag, lawv yuav tsum raug los rau txoj kev txiav txim, twb yog tib txoj kev txiav txim uas wb tau hais, uas yog qhov kawg.

28 Thiab tom qab uas Vajtswv tau teem kom tej yam no yuav tsum los rau tib neeg lawm, saib seb, ces nws tau pom tias tsim nyog tib neeg yuav tsum paub txog tej uas nws tau teem rau lawv lawm;

29 Yog li ntawd nws tau xa tej tim tswv los tham nrog lawv, cov uas tau ua kom tib neeg pom txog nws lub yeeb koob.

30 Thiab txij li lub sij hawm ntawd los lawv tau pib hu nws lub npe; yog li ntawd Vajtswv tau tham nrog tib neeg, thiab tau ua rau lawv paub txoj hau kev uas npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau raug npaj txij thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los; thiab qhov no nws tau ua rau lawv paub raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg thiab kev hloov siab lees txim thiab lawv tej hauj lwm dawb huv.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

- 31 Yog li ntawd, nws tau muab tej lus txib rau lawv, lawv tau xub ua txhaum thawj cov kev cai zoo li tej uas yog sab cev nqaij daim tawv, thiab tau ciaj los mus zoo li Vajtswv, paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem, tso lawv tus kheej nyob hauv ib qhov chaw ua neej, los sis raug tso rau hauv ib qho chaw ua neej tau raws li lawv tej siab xav thiab siab nyiam, txawm yuav ua phem los sis ua zoo—
- 32 Yog li ntawd Vajtswv tau muab tej lus txib rau lawv, tom qab uas tau ua rau lawv paub txog txoj hau kev uas npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim, tias kom lawv tsis txhob ua phem, kev raug txim ntawm qhov ntawd yog txoj kev tuag zaum ob, uas tau yog ib txoj kev tuag kav ib txhis rau tej qhov uas ncaj ncees; vim rau cov no txoj hau kev uas npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim yuav muaj tsis tau hwj chim, vim tej hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev txim lij yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj tau, raws li Vajtswv txoj kev zoo tshaj plaws.
- 33 Tiam sis Vajtswv tau hu tib neeg, nyob hauv nws Leej Tub lub npe, (qhov no yog txoj hau kev uas tau npaj tseg ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim) hais tias: Yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tsis ua nej tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv, ces kuv yuav muaj kev zam txim rau nej, dhau los ntawm kuv Tib Leeg Tub;
- 34 Yog li ntawd, tus uas yuav hloov siab lees txim, thiab tsis ua nws lub siab tawv, nws yuav muaj cai tau kev zam txim dhau ntawm kuv Tib Leeg Tub, mus rau txoj kev zam txim rau nws tej kev txhaum; thiab cov no yuav tau nkag mus rau hauv kuv qhov chaw so.
- 35 Thiab tus uas yuav ua nws lub siab tawv thiab yuav ua tsis ncaj ncees, saib seb, kuv cog lus nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws tias nws yuav tsis tau nkag mus rau hauv kuv qhov chaw so.
- 36 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias yog nej yuav ua nej tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv nej yuav nkag tsis tau rau hauv tus Tswv qhov chaw so; yog li ntawd nej txoj kev phem yuav thab kom nws npau taws xwv kom nws yuav xa nws txoj kev npau taws nqis los rau nej ib yam li kev thab kom npau taws thawj zaug, muaj tseeb tiag, raws li nws txoj lus nyob rau txoj kev thab kom npau taws zaum tas los zoo ib yam li thawj zaug, mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj kav ib txhis ntawm nej tej ntsuj plig; yog li ntawd, raws li nws txoj lus, rau txoj kev tuag kawg, ib yam li thawj zaug.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

37 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, pom tias peb paub tej yam no, thiab lawv yeej muaj tseeb, cia peb hloov siab lees txim, thiab tsis txhob ua peb tej siab tawv, xwv kom peb yuav tsis thab kom tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv npau taws rub nws txoj kev npau taws nqis los rau saum peb nyob hauv nws cov lus txib qhov ob no uas nws tau muab rau peb; tiam sis cia peb nkag mus rau hauv Vajtswv qhov chaw so, uas tau npaj raws li nws txoj lus lawm.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

Amas 13

- 1 Thiab ntxiv, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv yuav thov coj nej tej hlwb mus kom txog lub sij hawm thaum uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau muab tej lus txib no rau nws cov me nyuam; thiab kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov tias tus Tswv Vajtswv tau tsa tej pov thawj, mus raws li nws tus txheej txheem dawb huv, uas tau mus raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm nws Leej Tub, los qhia tej yam no rau cov neeg.
- 2 Thiab cov pov thawj ntawd tau raug tsa raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm nws Leej Tub, ntawm ib tug yam ntxwv uas kom los ntawm qhov ntawd cov neeg yuav paub saib lawv yuav ua li cas npaj tos nws Leej Tub rau txoj kev txhiv dim.
- 3 Thiab qhov no yog raws li qhov uas lawv tau raug tsa—tau raug hu thiab npaj txij thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los raws li Vajtswv txoj kev paub ua ntej, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg heev thiab tej hauj lwm zoo; nyob hauv thawj qhov chaw tau raug tso kom xaiv qhov zoo los sis qhov phem; yog li ntawd lawv tau xaiv qhov zoo, thiab xyaum muaj txoj kev ntseeg loj heev, tau raug hu nrog ib txoj hauj lwm dawb huv, muaj tseeb tiag, nrog txoj hauj lwm dawb huv ntawd uas tau raug npaj nrog, thiab raws li, ib txoj kev txhiv dim tau npaj rau cov ntawd.
- 4 Thiab li no lawv tau raug hu los rau txoj hauj lwm dawb huv no vim yog lawv tej kev ntseeg, thaum lwm tus tseem yuav tsis txais Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig vim yog lawv txoj kev ua siab tawv thiab tej kev dig ntawm lawv tej siab, thaum, yog tias tsis yog rau qhov no lawv yuav tau muaj ntiag tug zoo heev ib yam li lawv cov kwv tij thiab.
- 5 Los sis qhov zoo kawg, thaum chiv thawj lawv tau zoo ib yam li lawv cov kwv tij; yog li no txoj hauj lwm dawb huv no tau raug npaj txij thaum tsim lub ntiaj teb los rau cov uas yuav tsis ua lawv tej siab tawv, tau raug nyob hauv thiab dhau los ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm Tib Leeg Tub, tus uas tau npaj—
- 6 Thiab li no tau raug hu los ntawm txoj hauj lwm dawb huv no, thiab tau tsa rau lub pov thawj hwj hlob ntawm tus txheej txheem dawb huv ntawm Vajtswv, los qhia nws tej lus txib rau noob neej, kom lawv kuj yuav tau nkag mus rau hauv nws qhov chaw so thiab—

Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

- 7 Lub pov thawj hwj hlob no tau raug muaj raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm nws Leej Tub, uas yog tus txheej txheem muaj txij puag thaum tsim ntiaj teb los; los sis ua lwm yam lus hais, tau tsis muaj hnub pib los sis tsis muaj xyoo kawg, tau raug npaj ib txhiab ib txhis mus tag nrho rau ib txhiab ib txhis, raws li nws txoj kev paub ua ntej txog txhua yam—
- 8 Nim no lawv tau raug tsa mus zoo li no—tau raug hu nrog ib txoj hauj lwm dawb huv, thiab raug tsa nrog ib txoj kev tsa dawb huv, thiab lawv tau muaj lub pov thawj hwj hlob ntawm tus txheej txheem dawb huv, uas yog txoj kev hu, thiab txoj kev tsa, thiab lub pov thawj hwj hlob, uas tsis muaj qhov pib los sis qhov kawg—
- 9 Lawv tau rais los ua cov pov thawj hlob mus ib txhis zoo li no, raws li Leej Tub tus txheej txheem, Tib Leeg Tub ntawm Leej Txiv, tus uas tsis muaj hnub pib los sis tsis muaj xyoo kawg, tus uas muaj kev zoo puv npo, muaj kev txij lim, thiab qhov tseeb. Thiab yeej muaj li ntawd tiag. Amees.
- 10 Nim no, ib yam li kuv tau hais txog tus txheej txheem dawb huv, los sis lub pov thawj hwj hlob no, tau muaj ntau leej uas tau raug tsa thiab rais los ua Vajtswv cov pov thawj hlob; thiab nws tau vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg heev thiab txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab lawv txoj kev ncaj ncees rau Vajtswv, lawv tau xaiv hloov siab lees txim thiab ua hauj lwm ncaj ncees dua li kom piam sij.
- 11 Yog li ntawd lawv tau raug hu raws li tus txheej txheem dawb huv no, thiab raug ua kom dawb huv, thiab lawv tej ris tsho tau raug ntxhua dawb dhau ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov ntshav.
- 12 Nim no lawv, tom qab tau raug ua kom dawb huv los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, tau ua lawv tej ris tsho kom dawb, tau huv huv thiab tsis muaj qhov ceb rau ntawm Vajtswv, ntsia tsis taus txoj kev txhaum tsuas yog nrog kev ntxub xwb; thiab tau muaj coob, coob heev kawg li, uas tau ua huv huv thiab tau nkag mus rau hauv tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qhov chaw so.
- 13 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum txo nej hwj chim rau Vajtswv, thiab txi taus txiv rau ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, xwv kom nej thiaj yuav tau nkag mus rau hauv qhov chaw so ntawd thiab.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

14 Muaj tseeb tiag, txo nej hwj chim yam li cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub sij hawm Mekixedes, tus uas kuj yog ib tug pov thawj hlob raws li tib tug txheej txheem uas kuv tau hais txog no, tus uas kuj tau txais lub pov thawj hlob rau nws mus ib txhis li.

15 Thiab nws tau yog tib tug Mekixedes no tus uas Anplaham tau them ib feem kaum rau; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tus yawg koob Anplaham tau them ib feem kaum ntawm txhua yam uas nws muaj.

16 Nim no tej kab ke no tau muab raws li no, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd cov neeg yuav tos ntsoov rau Vajtswv Leej Tub, nws tau yog ib lub cim ntawm nws tus txheej txheem, los sis qhov ntawd yog nws tus txheej txheem, thiab qhov no xwv kom lawv yuav tos ntsoov nws rau txoj kev zam lawv lub txim, xwv kom lawv yuav nkag tau mus rau hauv tus Tswv qhov chaw so.

17 Nim no tus Mekixedes no yog ib tug vaj ntxwv kav thaj av Xalees; thiab nws cov neeg tau loj hlob nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab txoj kev qias; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tag nrho tau mus yuam kev; lawv tau muaj tag nrho txhua yam kev phem;

18 Tiam sis Mekixedes tau siv txoj kev ntseeg heev, thiab tau txais txoj hauj lwm ntawm lub pov thawj hwj hlob raws li Vajtswv tus txheej txheem dawb huv, tau qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau nws cov neeg. Thiab saib seb, lawv tau hloov siab lees txim; thiab Mekixedes tau tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av thaum nws tseem ua neej nyob; yog li ntawd nws tau raug hu ua tub vaj ntxwv ntawm txoj kev thaj yeeb, vim nws tau yog Xalees tus vaj ntxwv; thiab nws tau kav hauv qab nws txiv.

19 Nim no, tau muaj ntau tus ua ntej nws, thiab kuj tau muaj ntau tus tom qab, tiam sis tsis tau muaj ib tug yuav zoo dua; yog li ntawd, lawv tau hais txog nws ntau dua.

20 Nim no kuv tsis tas yuav hais txog qhov ntawd ntxiv; yam uas kuv tau hais lawm nyaj yuav txaus lawm. Saib seb, tej vajlugkub twb nyob ntawm nej xub ntiag; yog nej yuav nrog lawv sib ntswg nws yuav ua rau nej tus kheej muaj kev puas tsuaj.

21 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau hais tej lus no rau lawv tas lawm, nws tau cev nws txhais tes rau lawv thiab qw nrog ib lub suab nrov nrov hais tias: Nim no yog lub sij hawm hloov siab lees txim, vim hnuv cawm seeg los ze lawm;

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus Tswv lub suab, los ntawm tej tim tswv tej qhov ncauj, yuav tshaj nws tawm rau txhua haiv neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, yuav tshaj nws tawm, kom lawv yuav muaj txoj moo zoo ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab heev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yuav tshaj tawm tej moo zoo no rau tag nrho hauv nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, mus rau lawv cov uas raug tawg ri niab mus rau lwm teb chaws nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb; yog li ntawd lawv tau los rau peb.
- 23 Thiab lawv tau raug ua rau peb paub tseeb, xwv kom peb yuav to taub, xwv kom peb tsis yuam kev; thiab li no los vim peb yog neeg loj leeb nyob hauv ib thaj av txawv; yog li ntawd, peb tau koob hmoov ntau, vim peb tau muaj tej moo zoo no tshaj tawm rau peb nyob rau hauv peb txhua txhia ces kaum vaj txiv hmab.
- 24 Vim saib seb, tej tim tswv tab tom tshaj nws tawm rau ntau leej nyob rau lub sij hawm no nyob hauv peb thaj av; thiab qhov no yog rau lub ntsiab ntawm txoj kev npaj noob neej tej siab los txais nws txoj lus nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum nws los nyob hauv nws lub yeeb koob.
- 25 Thiab nim no peb tsuas tos mloog tej xov xwm zoo siab uas tau tshaj tawm rau peb los ntawm tej tim tswv tej qhov ncauj, txog nws txoj kev los; vim lub sij hawm yuav los, peb tsis paub tias yuav sai npaum li cas. Cia siab rau Vajtswv tias nws yuav yog thaum kuv tseem ua neej nyob; tiam sis txawm nws yuav muaj sai los sis qeeb, kuv yeej yuav zoo siab nyob hauv nws.
- 26 Thiab qhov ntawd yuav ua rau cov neeg ncaj thiab dawb huv paub, los ntawm cov tim tswv tej qhov ncauj, nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum nws los, xwv kom peb tej yawg koob tej lus yuav muaj puv npo, raws li tej uas lawv tau hais txog nws, uas tau raug raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas nyob hauv lawv.
- 27 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv vam puag hauv kuv nruab siab tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, nrog kev txhawj uas twb mob, tias nej yuav mloog rau kuv tej lus, thiab muab nej tej kev txhaum pov tseg, thiab tsis txhob laug sij hawm rau hnuv uas nej hloov siab lees txim;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

28 Tiam sis nej yuav tsum txo nej tej hwj chim rau tus Tswv, thiab hu nws lub npe dawb huv, thiab xyuas thiab thov tsis tu ncu, kom nej yuav tsis raug ntxias tshaj qhov uas nej tiv taus, thiab xwv kom yuav raug tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv coj, rais los mus ua neeg txo hwj chim, siab dawb siab zoo, zam rau lwm tus, ua siab ntev, muaj kev hlub puv npo thiab muaj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj huv tib si;

29 Muaj kev ntseeg rau tus Tswv; muaj txoj kev cia siab tias nej yuav tau txais txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis; muaj Vajtswv txoj kev hlub nyob hauv nej tej siab tas mus li, xwv kom nej yuav raug tsa sawv nyob hauv hnuv kawg thiab nkag mus rau hauv nws qhov chaw so.

30 Thiab thov tus Tswv pub txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau nej, xwv kom nej tsis txhob coj nws txoj kev npau taws nqis los rau nej, xwv kom nej tsis txhob raug khi los ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej saw hlau, xwv kom nej tsis txhob raug txoj kev tuag zaum ob.

31 Thiab Amas tau hais ntau yam lus ntxiv rau cov neeg, uas tsis tau muab sau rau hauv phau ntawv no.

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

Amas 14

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau xaus hais rau cov neeg lawm lawv ntau leej tau ntseeg nws tej lus, thiab tau pib hloov siab lees txim, thiab nrhiav tej vajlugkub.
- 2 Tiam sis lawv feem coob tau xav tias lawv yuav ua kom Amas thiab Amulej puas tsuaj; vim lawv tau npau taws rau Amas, vim yog qhov tseeb meej ntawm nws tej lus rau Xi-elas; thiab lawv kuj tau hais tias Amulej tau dag rau lawv, thiab tau saib tsis taus lawv txoj kev cai thiab saib tsis taus lawv tej neeg hais kev cai thiab tej neeg txiav txim.
- 3 Thiab lawv kuj tau npau rau Amas thiab Amulej; thiab vim lawv tau ua tim khawv tseeb meej heev nkaug lawv tej kev phem, lawv tau nrhiav muab nkawd tua ntsiag to.
- 4 Tiam sis tau muaj tias lawv tsis tau ua; tiam sis lawv tau txhom nkawd thiab tau muab cov hlua khov khov los khi nkawd, thiab tau coj nkawd mus cuag tus thawj tub txiav txim ntawm thaj av.
- 5 Thiab cov neeg tau tawm mus thiab tau ua tim khawv nkaug nkawd—tau ua tim khawv tias nkawd tau saib tsis tau txoj kev cai, thiab lawv tej tub hais kev cai thiab tej neeg txiav txim ntawm thaj av, thiab tag nrho tej neeg uas tau nyob hauv thaj av; thiab kuj tau ua tim khawv tias tau muaj tiam sis ib tug Vajtswv xwb, thiab tias nws yuav xa nws Leej Tub los rau hauv cov neeg, tiam sis nws yuav tsis cawm kom lawv dim; thiab ntau yam zoo li no uas cov neeg tau ua tim khawv nkaug Amas thiab Amulej. Nim no tau ua li no nyob ntawm tus thawj tub txiav txim ntawm thaj av xub ntiag.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias Xi-elas tau xav tsis thoob rau tej lus uas tau hais lawm; thiab nws kuj tau paub txog tej kev dig ntawm tej siab, uas nws tau ua nyob hauv cov neeg los ntawm nws tej lus dag; thiab nws lub siab tau pib raug tsim txom los ntawm txoj kev paub txog nws tus kheej txoj kev txhaum; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau pib raug ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej kev mob vij ib puag ncig.

Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau pib qw rau cov neeg, hais tias: Saib seb, kuv muaj kev txhaum, thiab cov txiv neeg no tsis muaj qhov ceb rau Vajtswv. Thiab nws tau pib thov rau nkawd txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus; tiam sis lawv tau tsawm nws, hais tias: Puas yog tus phem muab tau koj lawm thiab? Thiab lawv tau nto qaub ncaug rau nws, thiab muab nws ntiab tawm ntawm lawv mus, thiab kuj tag nrho cov uas tau ntseeg tej lus uas Amas thiab Amulej tau hais. Thiab lawv tau muab lawv cov no ntiab tawm, thiab txib neeg txawb pob zeb rau lawv.

8 Thiab lawv tau coj lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam tuaj ua ke, thiab leej twg tau ntseeg los sis tau raug qhia kom ntseeg Vajtswv txoj lus lawv tau kom lawv yuav tsum raug muab pov rau hauv hluav taws, thiab lawv kuj tau coj lawv tej ceev xwm txheej uas tau muaj tej vajlugkub dawb huv, thiab kuj tau muab lawv pov rau hauv hluav taws thiab, kom lawv yuav raug kub hnyiab thiab puas tsuaj los ntawm hluav taws.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau coj Amas thiab Amulej, thiab tau cab nkawd mus rau tom qhov chaw uas tua cov neeg ntseeg, xwv kom nkawd yuav ua tim khawv rau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov uas tau raug hluav taws kub.

10 Thiab thaum Amulej tau pom tej kev mob ntawm tej poj niam thiab me nyuam uas tau raug hluav taws kub, kuj tau mob nws thiab; thiab nws tau hais rau Amas hais tias: Wb yuav ua tim khawv rau qhov kev phem no tau li cas? Yog li ntawd cia wb xyab wb tej tes, thiab siv Vajtswv lub hwj chim uas nyob hauv wb, thiab cawm lawv kom dim ntawm tej nplaim taws.

11 Tiam sis Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Tus Ntsuj Plig txwv kuv kom kuv tsis txhob xyab kuv txhais tes; vim saib seb tus Tswv tau txais lawv mus rau nws tus kheej, nyob hauv lub yeeb koob; thiab nws yeej cia kom lawv yuav ua tej yam no, los sis kom cov neeg yuav ua tej yam no rau lawv, raws li lawv txoj kev siab tawv, xwv kom tej kev txiav txim uas nws yuav siv rau lawv nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws yuav ncaj ncees; thiab cov neeg tsis muaj txim tej ntshav yuav sawv ua ib qho tim khawv nkaug lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab quaj nrov nrov nkaug lawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.

12 Nim no Amulej tau hais rau Amas hais tias: Saib seb, tej zaum lawv kuj yuav muab wb hlawv thiab.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

- 13 Thiab Amas tau hais tias: Cia nws muaj raws li tus Tswv lub siab xav. Tiam sis, saib seb, wb txoj hauj lwm tseem tsis tau tas; yog li ntawd lawv yuav tsis muab wb hlawv.
- 14 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum tej cev ntawm lawv cov uas tau muab pov rau hauv hluav taws, thiab cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab pov nrog lawv tau kub hnyiab tas lawm, tus thawj tub txiav txim ntawm thaj av tau los thiab tau sawv ntawm Amas thiab Amulej xub ntiag, thaum uas nkawd tseem raug khi; thiab nws tau xuas ncuav pias rau nkawd plhu, thiab tau hais rau nkawd hais tias: Tom qab uas neb tau pom li no lawm, neb puas tseem yuav qhuab qhia rau cov neeg no ntxiv, tias lawv yuav raug muab pov rau hauv lub pas dej hluav taws thiab leej faj?
- 15 Saib seb, neb pom tias neb tsis muaj hwj chim cawm cov uas tau muab pov rau hauv hluav taws; thiab Vajtswv los kuj tsis tau cawm lawv vim lawv ntseeg neb txoj kev ntseeg. Thiab tus neeg txiav txim tau rov xuas ncuav pias rau nkawd plhu dua, thiab nug hais tias: Neb muaj dab tsi yuav hais rau neb tus kheej?
- 16 Nim no tus neeg txiav txim no tau nyob hauv tus txheej txheem thiab txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Nihos, tus uas tau tua Khede-oos.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas thiab Amulej tsis teb nws dab tsi li; thiab nws tau ntaus nkawd dua, thiab tau muab nkawd rau cov tub ceev xwm coj mus pov rau hauv qhov taub.
- 18 Thiab thaum nkawd tau raug pov rau hauv qhov taub tau peb hnuv lawm, tau muaj ntau tus neeg hais kev cai, thiab tej neeg txiav txim, thiab tej pov thawj, thiab tej xib hwb, uas txawj hauj lwm ntawm Nihos; thiab lawv tau tuaj rau hauv qhov taub tuaj saib nkawd, thiab lawv tau nug nkawd txog ntau lo lus; tiam sis nkawd tsis teb lawv dab tsi li.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias tus neeg txiav txim tau sawv ntawm nkawd xub ntiag, thiab tau hais tias: Yog vim li cas neb thiaj tsis teb cov neeg no tej lus? Neb puas paub tias kuv muaj hwj chim muab neb pov rau hauv tej nplaim hluav taws? Thiab nws tau kom nkawd hais lus; tiam sis nkawd tsis teb dab tsi hlo li.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ncaim thiab nyias mus nyias, tiam sis tag kis rov qab tuaj dua; thiab tus neeg txiav txim kuj tau rov qab xuas ncuav pias rau nkawd tej plhu dua. Thiab coob tug kuj tau txav los, thiab tau ntaus nkawd, hais tias: Neb puas yuav rov qab sawv dua thiab txiav txim rau cov neeg no, thiab nrhiav plaub rau peb txoj kev cai? Yog neb muaj hwj chim loj npaum ntawd vim li cas neb ho tsis cawm neb tus kheej?

21 Thiab lawv tau hais ntau yam zoo li ntawd rau nkawd, tom lawv hniav qees rau nkawd, thiab nto qaub ncaug rau nkawd, thiab hais tias: Peb yuav zoo li cas thaum peb raug txim?

22 Thiab ntau yam zoo li no, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv hais tag nrho ib puas yam tsav zoo li no rau nkawd; thiab li no lawv tau thuam nkawd tau ntau hnuv. Thiab lawv tau tsis pub zaub mov rau nkawd xwv kom nkawd yuav tshaib plab, thiab tsis pub dej kom nkawd yuav nqhis dej; thiab lawv kuj tau muab nkawd tej ris tsho ntawm nkawd mus kom nkawd yuav liab qab; thiab li no nkawd tau raug xuas hlua khov khov khi, thiab raug kaw hauv qhov taub.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab nkawd tau raug txom nyem tau ntau hnuv lawm, (thiab nws tau yog hnuv kaum ob, nyob hauv lub kaum hli ntuj, nyob hauv xyoo thib kaum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg) ces tus thawj tub txiav txim rau thaj av Amonaihas thiab lawv cov xib hwb coob tug thiab lawv tej neeg hais kev cai tau mus rau hauv lub qhov taub uas Amas thiab Amulej tau raug hlua khi.

24 Thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim tau sawv ntawm nkawd xub ntiag, thiab tau rov ntaus nkawd dua, thiab tau hais rau nkawd tias: Yog nej muaj Vajtsvub lub hwj chim cia li cawm neb tus kheej ntawm tej hlua no, thiab tom qab ntawd peb yuav ntseeg tias tus Tswv yuav ua kom cov neeg no puas tsuaj raws li neb tej lus.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv sawv daws tau txav mus thiab ntaus nkawd, hais tib co qub lus, mus txog tus kawg; thiab thaum tus kawg tau hais lus rau nkawd tas lawm Vajtsvub lub hwj chim tau los rau saum Amas thiab Amulej, thiab nkawd tau sawv thiab tau sawv ntsug.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

26 Thiab Amas tau hu, hais tias: Wb tseem yuav nyiaj tej kev txom nyem heev no ntev npaum li cas os tus Tswv es? Au tus Tswv, muab lub zog rau wb raws li wb txoj kev ntseeg uas nyob hauv Khetos, kom muaj kev dim. Thiab nkawd tau tu cov hlua uas khi nkawd; thiab thaum cov neeg tau pom qhov no, lawv tau pib khiav, vim txoj kev ntshai ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj tau los rau saum lawv.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ntshai kawg ces lawv tau vau rau hauv av, thiab mus tsis txog sab qhov rooj sab nraud ntawm lub qhov taub; thiab av tshee heev kawg li, thiab tej phab ntsa qhov taub tau faib ua ob sab, ces tej ntawd txawm tau vau rau hauv av; thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim, thiab tej neeg hais kev cai, thiab tej pov thawj, thiab tej xib hwb, uas tau ntaus Amas thiab Amulej, tau raug tua los ntawm txoj kev vau ntawm qhov ntawd.

28 Thiab Amas thiab Amulej tau tawm hauv qhov taub los, thiab nkawd tsis tau raug mob dab tsi; vim tus Tswv tau pub hwj chim rau nkawd, raws li nkawd txoj kev ntseeg uas nyob hauv Khetos. Thiab nkawd tau tawm plaws hauv qhov taub ncaj qha los; thiab tej hlua uas tau khi nkawd tau plam tas; thiab lub qhov taub tau vau rau hauv av, thiab txhua tus uas nyob hauv tej ntsa loog sab hauv puav leej raug tuag, tsuas tshuav Amas thiab Amulej xwb; thiab nkawd tau tawm ncaj qha mus rau hauv lub nroog.

29 Nim no cov neeg tau hnov ib lub suab loj tau khiav ua ke tej pwb pawg tuaj kom paub txog qhov xwm ntawd; thiab thaum lawv tau pom Amas thiab Amulej tau tawm tom qhov taub los, thiab tej phab ntsa tod tau vau rau hauv av, lawv tau raug ntshai kawg li, thiab tau khiav ntawm Amas thiab Amulej mus zoo li ib tug tshis khiav nrog nws tus me nyuam tawm ntawm ob tug tsov ntxhuav; thiab lawv tau khiav ntawm Amas thiab Amulej mus zoo li no.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Amas 15

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas thiab Amulej tau raug txib kom ncaim tawm ntawm lub nroog ntawd; thiab nkawd tau ncaim, thiab tau tawm los mus rau hauv thaj av Xidoos; thiab saib seb, qhov ntawd nkawd tau pom tag nrho cov neeg uas tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Amonaihas, cov uas tau raug ntiab tawm thiab muab pob zeb ntaus, vim lawv tau ntseeg Amas tej lus.
- 2 Thiab nkawd tau piav rau lawv tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas tau tshwm sim rau lawv tej poj niam thiab me nyuam, thiab kuj txog nkawd tus kheej, thiab txog nkawd lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev cawm dim.
- 3 Thiab Xi-elas kuj tau mob pw nyob tom Xidoos, ua npaws kub, uas tau mob los ntawm tej kev txom nyem ntawm nws saib vim yog nws txoj kev phem, vim nws tau xav tias tsis muaj Amas thiab Amulej lawm; thiab nws tau xav tias nkawd tau tuag lawm vim yog nws txoj kev tsis ncaj. Thiab txoj kev txhaum loj no, thiab nws lwm yam kev txhaum ntau, tau tsim txom nws lub siab mus txog thaum nws tau rais los mus mob heev kawg li, tsis muaj txoj kev cawm dim li; yog li ntawd nws tau pib kub heev nrog ib qho hluav taws kub.
- 4 Nim no, thaum uas nws tau hnov tias Amas thiab Amulej tau nyob hauv thaj av Xidoos, nws lub siab tau pib rov muaj zog tuaj; thiab nws tau xa ib tsab xov tam sim ntawd mus rau nkawd, xav kom nkawd los cuag nws.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau mus tam sim, ua kiag raws li tsab xov uas nws tau xa mus rau nkawd; thiab nkawd tau mus rau hauv tsev mus cuag Xi-elas; thiab nkawd nrhiav tau nws saum nws lub txaj, tau mob, tau ua npaws kub tsis muaj zog kiag li; thiab nws lub siab los kuj tau mob heev kawg nkaus li vim yog nws tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; thiab thaum nws tau pom nkawd nws tau xyab hlo nws txhais tes, thiab tau thov nkawd kom nkawd kho nws.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau tuav nkaus nws tes, tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg Khetos lub hwj chim uas coj mus rau txoj kev cawm seeg?
- 7 Thiab nws tau teb thiab hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv ntseeg tag nrho ib puas yam tsav lus uas koj tau qhia lawm.

Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

8 Thiab Amas tau hais tias: Yog koj ntseeg hauv txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm Khetos ces koj yeej zoo taus.

9 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv ntseeg raws nraim li koj tej lus.

10 Thiab tom qab ntawd Amas tau quaj thov rau tus Tswv hais tias: Au tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv es, thov hlub tus txiv neej no, thiab kho nws raws li nws txoj kev ntseeg uas nyob hauv Khetos.

11 Thiab thaum Amas tau hais tej lus no tas, Xi-elas tau sawv tsees, thiab tau pib mus kev; thiab tau ua zoo li no rau txoj kev xav tsis thoob heev ntawm cov neeg tag nrho; thiab txoj kev paub ntawm qhov no tau mus thoob plaws rau txhua thaj av hauv Xidoos.

12 Thiab Amas tau muab Xi-elas ua kev cai raus dej rau tus Tswv; thiab nws tau pib txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus qhuab qhia rau cov neeg.

13 Thiab Amas tau tsa ib lub koom txoos nyob hauv thaj av Xidoos, thiab tau tsa tej pov thawj thiab tej xib hwb nyob hauv thaj av, muab ua kev cai raus dej rau tus Tswv cov uas xav ua kev cai raus dej.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muaj coob; vim lawv tau tuaj tag nrho hauv ib cheeb tsam ib ncig Xidoos tuaj, thiab tau ua kev cai raus dej.

15 Tiam sis rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Amonaihas, lawv tseem ua ib co neeg siab tawv thiab tawv ncauj; thiab lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum, tseem muab tag nrho Amas thiab Amulej tej hwj chim txiaj ntsig rau tus dab; vim lawv tau yog Nihos tej tub txawg tub ntse, thiab tsis tau ntseeg txoj kev hloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum.

16 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas thiab Amulej, Amulej tau tso tag nrho nws tej kub, thiab tej nyiaj dawb, thiab nws tej khoom muaj nuj nqis, uas muaj nyob hauv thaj av Amonaihas, rau Vajtswv txoj lus, nws tau raug tsis lees yuav los ntawm cov uas tau yog nws tej phooj ywg ib zaug thiab kuj los ntawm nws txiv thiab nws tej kwv tij neej tsa;

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

17 Yog li ntawd, tom qab uas Amas tau tsa lub koom txoos nyob hauv Xidoos, tau pom ib txoj kev ris siab loj, muaj tseeb tiag, tau pom tias cov neeg tau ris siab rau txoj kev khav theeb ntawm lawv tej siab, thiab tau pib txo lawv tej hwj chim rau Vajtswv, thiab tau pib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke rau lawv tej chaw dawb huv teev tiam Vajtswv ntawm lub thaj, xyuas ntsoov thiab thov Vajtswv tsis tu ncu, kom lawv yuav raug cawm dim ntawm Dab Ntxwg Nyoog, thiab ntawm txoj kev tuag, thiab ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj—

18 Nim no ib yam li kuv tau hais lawm, Amas tau pom tag nrho tej yam no, yog li ntawd nws tau coj Amulej thiab tau los rau thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau coj nws mus rau tom nws lub tsev, thiab tau pab nws hauv nws tej kev txom nyem, thiab txhawb nws lub dag lub zog nyob hauv tus Tswv.

19 Thiab li no tau kawg xyoo thib kaum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Amas 16

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib kaum ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, nyob rau hnuv xiab tsib ntawm lub ob hlis, tau muaj kev thaj yeeb ntau nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas, tau tsis muaj rog los sis tej kev sib cav sib ceg tau ob peb xyoos, mus txog thaum hnuv xiab tsib ntawm lub ob hlis ntuj nyob rau hauv xyoo thib kaum ib, tau muaj ib npluav rog tshaj tawm hnov thoob plaws hauv thaj av.
- 2 Vim saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau tuaj tom hav zoov rau hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av, mus rau hauv lub nroog Amonaihas, thiab tau pib tua cov neeg thiab rhuav lub nroog puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias, ua ntej cov Neeg Nifais txhij tau tub rog txaus caum lawv tawm ntawm thaj av, lawv tau ua rau cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog Amonaihas puas tsuaj tas, thiab ib co uas tau nyob ib ncig ntawm tej ciam teb Nau-as, thiab tau txhom ib txhia mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 4 Nim no tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau xav pab tso cov uas tau raug cab mus kaw nyob hauv hav zoov.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, nws tus uas tau raug tsa ua thawj saib xyuas rau cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog, (thiab nws lub npe yog Xaulas, thiab nws tau muaj ob tug tub, Lihais thiab Ahas)—Nim no Xaulas thiab nws ob tug tub, paub tias Amas tau yog tus pov thawj hlob rau lub koom txoos, thiab tau hnov tias nws tau muaj tus ntsuj plig uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, yog li ntawd lawv tau mus cuag nws thiab tau xav kom nws qhia saib tus Tswv puas xav kom lawv mus rau hauv hav zoov nrhiav lawv cov kwv tij, cov uas tau raug cov Neeg Lamas txhom.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas tau thov tus Tswv txog qhov ntawd. Thiab Amas tau rov qab los thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas yuav hla tus dej Xidoos nyob ntawm hav zoov sab nram hav, dhau nram tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Meethais. Thiab saib seb nej yuav ntsib lawv nrad, uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos, thiab nyob qhov ntawd tus Tswv yuav koj nej cov kwv tij uas tau raug cov Neeg Lamas txhom lawm los rau nej.

Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Xaulas thiab nws cov tub tau hla tus dej Xidoos, nrog lawv tej tub rog, thiab tau mus dhau nram tej ciam teb ntawm Meethais mus rau tom hav zoov sab nram hav, uas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos.
- 8 Thiab lawv tau tuaj tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau tawg ri niab thiab raug raws mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab lawv tau coj lawv cov kwv tij uas tau raug cov Neeg Lamas txhom, thiab lawv cov uas tau raug txhom tsis muaj ib tug twg tau raug ploj li. Thiab lawv tau raug lawv cov kwv tij coj los mus nyob hauv lawv tej av.
- 9 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau raug raws tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab cov neeg hauv Amonaihas tau raug puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, txhua tus neeg muaj sia uas yog neeg Amonaihas tau raug puas tsuaj, thiab lawv lub nroog loj, uas lawv tau hais tias Vajtswv yuav ua tsis tau kom puas tsuaj, vim nws txoj kev loj.
- 10 Tiam sis saib seb, tib hnuv xwb nws twb tsis muaj ib tug neeg nyob lawm; thiab tej neeg tuag tau raug dev thiab tej tsiaj qus hauv hav zoov noj.
- 11 Txawm li ntawd los, tom qab uas tau ntau hnuv lawm lawv tej cev uas tuag lawm tau raug muab tum tsheej pawg rau saum tej av, thiab lawv tau muab npoog tej qho av ntiav ntiav. Thiab nim no tej pa ntawd tsw lwj heev kawg nkaus li kawg tias cov neeg tsis kam mus nyob hauv thaj av Amonaihas tau ntau xyoo. Thiab nws tau raug hu ua qhov chaw tsis muaj neeg nyob ntawm Nihos; vim lawv tau yog Nihos tej tub txawg tub ntse, uas tau raug tua; thiab lawv tej av tseem tsis tau muaj neeg nyob.
- 12 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau tuaj ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais ntxiv mus txog xyoo thib kaum plaub ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab xws li no Nifais cov neeg tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuva tau peb xyoos nyob hauv txhua thaj av.
- 13 Thiab Amas thiab Amulej tau tawm mus qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau cov neeg nyob hauv lawv tej tuam tsev, thiab nyob hauv tej chaw dawb huv, thiab kuj nyob hauv lawv tej tsev sab laj, uas tau raug tsim raws li cov Neeg Yudaic tej.
- 14 Thiab txhua tus uas xav hnov nkawd tej lus, nkawd tau faib Vajtswv txoj lus rau lawv, tsis xaiv leej twg ntsej muag, tsis tu ncuva li.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

- 15 Thiab Amas thiab Amulej tau tawm mus li no, thiab kuj tau muaj ntau leej ntxiv cov uas tau raug xaiv rau txoj hauj lwm, mus qhia txoj lus thoob plaws txhua thaj av. Thiab txoj kev tsim lub koom txoos tau nthuav dav mus thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av, nyob tag nrho txhua thaj tsam ib ncig huv tib si, nyob tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Nifais.
- 16 Thiab tsis tau muaj kev tsis xwm yeem nyob hauv lawv; tus Tswv tau nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig rau saum thaj av tag nrho los npaj noob neej tej cim xeeb, los sis los npaj lawv tej siab los txais txoj lus uas yuav raug qhia nyob hauv lawv rau lub caij thaum nws nqis los—
- 17 Xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tawv rau txoj lus, xwv kom lawv tsis txhob tsis ntseeg, thiab mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, tiam sis kom lawv yuav tau txais txoj lus nrog txoj kev xyiv fab, thiab zoo ib yam li ib tug ceg raug txuas rau tsoob txiv hmab tseeb, kom lawv yuav tau nkag mus rau hauv tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qhov chaw so.
- 18 Nim no cov pov thawj uas tau tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg tau qhuab qhia tawm tsam tag nrho tej kev dag, thiab tej kev ntxias, thiab tej kev ntshaw, thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab kev xav ua kom lwm tus puas tsuaj, thiab tej kev hais lus phem, thiab kev tub sab, kev tub nyiag, kev lim hiam, kev tua neeg, kev deev luag poj luag txiv, thiab tag nrho txhua yam ntawm kev ua dev ua npua, qhia nrov nrov tias tej yam no yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj—
- 19 Qhia ntshis tej uas yuav tsum muaj los tsis ntev no; muaj tseeb tiag, qhia ntshis Vajtswv Leej Tub txoj kev los, nws tej kev raug txom nyem thiab txoj kev tuag, thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag.
- 20 Thiab coob tug ntawm cov neeg tau nug txog qhov chaw uas Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los; thiab lawv tau raug qhia hais tias nws yuav tshwm sim rau lawv tom qab uas nws sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; thiab cov neeg tau hnov qhov no nrog txoj kev xyiv fab thiab zoo plawv heev.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

21 Thiab nim no tom qab uas lub koom txoos tau raug tsim nyob thoob plaws txhua thaj av tag lawm—tau kov yeej tus dab, thiab tus Tswv txoj lus tau raug qhuab qhia nyob hauv nws txoj kev huv huv rau hauv txhua thaj av, thiab tus Tswv tau nchuav nws tej koob hmoov rau cov neeg—ces xws li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum plaub ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Ib zag txog Mauxiyas cov tub, uas tau tsis kam kav lub teb chaws es yeem mus qhia Vajtswv txoj lus, thiab tau nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais qhuab qhia rau cov Neeg Lamas; lawv tej kev txom nyem thiab txoj kev carwm dim—raws li Amas phau ceev xwm txheej.

Amas 17

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amas tab tom taug kev ntawm thaj av Khede-oos mus lawm sab nram hav, mus rau thaj av Meethais, saib seb, rau nws txoj kev xav tsis thoob, nws tau ntsib Mauxiyas cov tub tab tom taug kev mus rau tom thaj av Xalanelas.
- 2 Nim no Mauxiyas cov tub no tau nrog Amas ua ke lub caij thaum tus tim tswv tau tshwm sim thawj zaug rau nws; yog li ntawd Amas tau xyiv fab heev uas tau pom nws cov kwv tij, thiab yam uas tau ntxiv rau nws txoj kev zoo siab, lawv tseem tau yog nws cov kwv tij nyob hauv tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau loj hlob muaj zog nyob hauv txoj kev paub ntawm qhov tseeb; vim lawv tau yog neeg ruaj ntawm txoj kev to taub thiab lawv tau rau siab nrhiav vajlugkub, xwv kom lawv yuav paub Vajtswv txoj lus.
- 3 Tiam sis tsis tas li no xwb; lawv tau muab lawv tus kheej thov Vajtswv thiab yoo mov heev; yog li ntawd lawv tau muaj tus ntsuj plig uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab tus ntsuj plig ntawm kev tshwm sim, thiab thaum lawv qhia, lawv qhia nrog hwj chim thiab nrog cai ntawm Vajtswv.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau qhia Vajtswv txoj lus tau ncuab li kaum plaub xyoos nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas, ua tau vam meej heev nyob hauv txoj kev coj tau ntau leej los paub txog qhov tseeb; muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm lawv tej lus ntau leej tau raug coj los rau ntawm Vajtswv lub thaj, los hu nws lub npe thiab lees lawv tej kev txhaum rau nws.
- 5 Nim no tej no yog tej uas tau tshwm sim rau lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev mus ncig, vim lawv tau muaj kev txom nyem ntau; lawv tau raug kev txom nyem ntau, tsis hais cev nqaj daim tawv thiab hauv cim xeeb, xws li kev tshaib, kev nqhis thiab kev lim, thiab kev ua hauj lwm ntau nyob hauv sab ntsuj plig.

An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.

Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

6 Nim no cov no yog lawv tej kev tau mus: Tau ncaim lawv txiv, Mauxiyas, nyob hauv thawj xyoos ntawm cov neeg txiav txim; tau tsis kam kav lub teb chaws uas lawv txiv tau xav muab rau lawv, thiab cov neeg los kuj xav li no thiab;

7 Txawm li ntawd los lawv tau ncaim ntawm thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau coj lawv tej ntaj, thiab lawv tej hmuov, thiab lawv tej hneev, thiab lawv tej xub, thiab lawv tej hneev roj hmab; thiab lawv tau ua li no kom lawv yuav nrhiav tau nqajj rau lawv tus kheej thaum nyob tom hav zoov.

8 Thiab lawv tau ncaim mus rau tom hav zoov li nrog lawv cov neeg uas lawv tau xaiv, nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais, qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau cov Neeg Lamas.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ncig mus ntau hnub nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab lawv tau yoo mov ntau thiab thov Vajtswv ntau xwv kom tus Tswv yuav pub rau lawv ib qho ntawm nws tus Ntsuj Plig mus nrog lawv, thiab nrog lawv nyob, xwv kom lawv yuav ua tau ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv Vajtswv tes mus coj lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, yog nws yuav ua tau, kom paub txog qhov tseeb, kom paub txog txoj kev phem ntawm lawv cov yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, uas tau tsis yog lawm.

10 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau los saib xyuas lawv nrog nws tus Ntsuj Plig, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia li txhob txhawj. Thiab lawv tau tsis txhawj.

11 Thiab tus Tswv kuj tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia li mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas, nej cov kwv tij, thiab mus qhia kuv txoj lus; tiam sis nej yuav tsum ua siab ntev hauv txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj thiab tej kev txom nyem, xwv kom nej yuav ua tau yam ntxwv zoo rau lawv pom nyob hauv kuv, thiab kuv yuav ua kom nej yog ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv kuv txhais tes mus rau txoj kev cawm seeg ntawm coob leej.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauxiyas cov tub tej siab, thiab cov uas tau nrog lawv, tau muaj peev xwm tawm mus rau cov Neeg Lamas mus qhuab qhia rau lawv txog Vajtswv txoj lus.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau mus txog hauv tej ciam teb ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thaj av, ces lawv tau sib faib thiab ib leej tau ncaim ib leeg, ntseeg tus Tswv tias lawv yuav sib ntsib dua thaum kawg ntawm lawv txoj kev sau qoob loo; vim lawv tau xav tias txoj hauj lwm uas lawv tau pib tseem ceeb heev.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

- 14 Thiab nws yeej tseem ceeb heev tiag, vim lawv tau qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau ib cov neeg qus, thiab tawv thiab nyaum; ib co neeg uas nyiam tua cov Neeg Nifais, thiab nyiag thiab ua lim hiam rau lawv; thiab lawv tej siab tau tso rau saum tej kev nplua nuj, los sis rau saum kub, thiab nyiaj dawb, thiab tej pob zeb uas muaj nqis; li ntawd los lawv tseem tau nrhiav kom muaj tej yam no los ntawm txoj kev tua neeg thiab kev ua lim hiam, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tau khwv nrog lawv tej tes rau tej yam no.
- 15 Yog li ntawd lawv tau yog ib co neeg tub nkeeg heev, coob leej uas tau teev tej mlom, thiab Vajtswv txoj kev foom tsis zoo tau poob los rau saum lawv vim yog lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai; txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv tej lus cog tseg tseem tau muab cev rau lawv yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, yog vim qhov no es Mauxiyas cov tub thiaj tau txais txoj hauj lwv ua, xwv kom tej zaum lawv yuav coj tau lawv los rau hauv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; xwv kom tej zaum lawv yuav coj tau lawv los paub txoj kev txhiv dim.
- 17 Yog li ntawd lawv tau sib faib ib leeg ncaim ib leeg, thiab tau tawm mus rau hauv lawv, txhua tus nyias mus nyias, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus thiab lub hwj chim uas tau muab rau nws.
- 18 Nim no Amoos yog tus thawj nyob hauv lawv, los sis tias nws tau muab kev pab rau lawv, thiab nws tau ncaim ntawm lawv mus, tom qab uas tau muab kev pab rau lawv raws li lawv tej yam hauj lwv, tau faib Vajtswv txoj lus rau lawv, los sis foom koob hmoov rau lawv ua ntej nws ncaim; thiab li no lawv tau nyias ncaim mus nyias thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av.
- 19 Thiab Amoos tau mus rau tom thaj av Ixama-ees, thaj av tau raug hu raws li Ixama-ees cov tub, uas kuj tau rais los mus ua cov Neeg Lamas.
- 20 Thiab thaum Amoos tau nkag mus rau hauv thaj av Ixama-ees, cov Neeg Lamas tau txhom nws thiab tau muab nws khi, raws li lawv kev cai khi cov Neeg Nifais txhua tus uas tau poob rau hauv lawv tes, thiab cab lawv mus rau vaj ntxwv; thiab li ntawd nyob ntawm vaj ntxwv siab saib muab lawv tua, los sis cia lawv raug txim, los sis muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov taub, los sis muab lawv ntiab tawm ntawm nws thaj av, raws li nws siab xav thiab siab nyiam.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

- 21 Thiab Amoos tau raug cab li no los rau vaj ntxwv tus uas kav thaj av Ixama-ees; thiab nws lub npe yog Lamaunais; thiab nws tau yog Ixama-ees ib tug xeeb ntxwv.
- 22 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau nug Amoos saib puas yog nws xav nyob hauv thaj av nrog cov Neeg Lamas, los sis nrog nws cov neeg.
- 23 Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv xav nyob nrog cov neeg no ib ntus; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tej zaum mus txog hnuv kuv tuag.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau zoo siab heev nrog Amoos, thiab tau kom daws nws tej hlua; thiab nws tau xav kom Amoos yuav nws ib tug ntxhais ua poj niam.
- 25 Tiam sis Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Tsis yuav, tiam sis kuv yuav ua koj tus tub qhe. Yog li ntawd Amoos tau rais los mus ua ib tug tub qhe rau vaj ntxwv Lamaunais. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau raug tso nrog lwm cov tub qhe mus zov Lamaunais tej yaj, raws li cov Neeg Lamas txoj kev cai.
- 26 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau ua hauj lwm rau vaj ntxwv tau peb hnuv lawm, thaum uas nws tseem nrog lwm cov tub qhe Neeg Lamas tab tom tawm mus nrog lawv tej yaj mus rau qhov chaw uas muaj dej, uas tau hu ua qhov dej Xinpus, thiab tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas tau coj lawv tej yaj tuaj rau qhov no, xwv kom lawv yuav tau dej—
- 27 Yog li ntawd, thaum Amoos thiab vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe tab tom tav lawv tej yaj tuaj rau qhov chaw uas muaj dej no, saib seb, ib pab Neeg Lamas, uas tau tuaj nrog lawv tej yaj rau nram dej, tau sawv thiab raws Amoos thiab vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe tej yaj khiav, thiab lawv tau raws cov yaj kawg tias lawv tau khiav mus ntau txoj kev.
- 28 Nim no vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe tau pib yws yws, hais tias: Nim no vaj ntxwv yuav muab peb tua, ib yam li nws tau tua peb cov kwv tij lawm vim lawv tej yaj tau raug raws khiav los ntawm cov neeg phem no. Thiab lawv tau pib quaj heev kawg li, hais tias: Saib seb, twb ua peb tej yaj khiav tas lawm.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

- 29 Nim no lawv tau quaj vim yog txoj kev ntshai raug muab tua. Nim no thaum Amoos tau pom qhov no nws lub siab tau puv npo nyob hauv nws nrog txoj kev xyiv fab; vim, nws tau hais tias, kuv yuav ua tawm kuv lub hwj chim rau kuv cov phooj ywg tub qhe no, los sis lub hwj chim uas nyob hauv kuv, coj kom tau cov yaj no rov qab los rau vaj ntxwv, xwv kom kuv yuav yeej kuv cov phooj ywg tub qhe no tej siab, kom kuv yuav coj lawv los ntseeg kuv tej lus.
- 30 Thiab nim no, tej no yog cov uas Amoos tau xav, thaum nws tau pom tej kev kub ntxhov ntawm cov uas nws tau xav tias nws cov kwv tij.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais nws tej lus rub yaum lawv, tias: Kuv cov kwv tij, cia li zoo siab thiab cia peb mus nrhiav cov yaj, thiab peb yuav sau lawv los ua ke thiab coj lawv rov qab mus rau ntawm qhov chaw uas muaj dej; thiab li ntawd peb yuav ceev tau tej yaj rau vaj ntxwv thiab nws yuav tsis muab peb tua.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau mus nrhiav tej yaj, thiab lawv tau lawv Amoos qab, thiab lawv tau maj nrawm nroos kawg nkaus li thiab tau caum tau vaj ntxwv tej yaj, thiab tau sau lawv rov qab los ua ke dua rau ntawm qhov chaw uas muaj dej.
- 33 Thiab cov neeg ntawd tau rov qab sawv raws lawv cov yaj dua; tiam sis Amoos tau hais rau nws cov kwv tij tias: Cia li ua voj voog ib ncig cov yaj kom lawv tsis txhob khiav; thiab kuv mus thiab tawm tsam nrog cov neeg no uas tau raws peb cov yaj tawg khiav.
- 34 Yog li ntawd, lawv tau ua ib yam li Amoos tau txib lawv, thiab nws tau tawm mus thiab sawv cav nrog lawv cov uas tau sawv ntawm cov dej Xinpus; thiab lawv tau muaj coob tsis tsawg.
- 35 Yog li ntawd lawv tsis tau ntshai Amoos, vim lawv tau xav tias ib tug ntawm lawv cov neeg yeej tua tau nws raws li lawv siab xav, vim lawv tsis tau paub tias tus Tswv tau cog lus rau Mauxiyas tias nws yuav cawm nws cov tub tawm ntawm lawv tes; thiab lawv los tsis tau paub ib yam dab tsi txog tus Tswv li; yog li ntawd lawv tsuas zoo siab hlo ua kom lawv cov kwv tij puas tsuaj xwb; thiab vim yog qhov no lawv thiaj tau sawv raws vaj ntxwv tej yaj kom tawg khiav.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

36 Tiam sis Amoos tau sawv thiab tau pib muab nws rab hneev roj hmab txawb pob zeb rau lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau tua pob zeb muaj hwj chim heev rau hauv lawv; thiab nws tau tua lawv ib txhia li no kawg tias lawv tau pib xav tsis thoob rau nws lub hwj chim; txawm li ntawd los lawv tau npau taws vim yog txoj kev tua lawv cov kwv tij, thiab lawv tau xav kom nws vau; yog li ntawd, tau pom tias lawv tsis muaj cuab kav xuas lawv tej pob zeb ntaus raug nws, lawv nqa qws tuaj tua nws.

37 Tiam sis saib seb, txhua tus neeg uas tau tsa nws rab qws ntaus Amoos, nws tau muab nws rab ntaj txiav lawv tej caj npab; vim nws tau tiv lawv tej kev ntaus los ntawm txoj kev muab tus hniav ntawm nws rab ntaj txiav lawv tej caj npab, kawg tias lawv tau pib poob siab, thiab tau pib khiav ntawm nws mus; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tsis yog tsawg; thiab nws tau ua rau lawv khiav los ntawm nws txhais caj npab lub zog.

38 Nim no lawv rau leej tau vau los ntawm hneev roj hmab, tiam sis nws tsis tau tua ib tug twg li tsuas yog xuas nws rab ntaj tua lawv tus thawj xwb; thiab nws tau txiav lawv tej caj npab ntau npaum li uas tau tsa tuaj tawm tsam nws, thiab lawv tsis yog tsawg.

39 Thiab thaum nws tau raws lawv mus deb lawm, nws tau rov qab los thiab lawv tau ywg dej rau lawv tej yaj thiab tau rov qab tav lawv mus rau tom vaj ntxwv thaj zaub, thiab tom qab ntawd tau nkag mus cuag vaj ntxwv, coj tej caj npab uas tau raug txiav los ntawm Amoos rab ntaj, los ntawm cov uas tau yuav muab nws tua; thiab lawv tau raug coj mus rau vaj ntxwv ua ib qho tim khawv txog tej uas lawv tau ua lawm.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Amas 18

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau kom nws cov tub qhe txav los sawv thiab ua tim khawv txog tag nrho tej uas lawv tau pom txog ntawd.
- 2 Thiab thaum lawv tau ua tim khawv rau tej uas lawv tau pom tag lawm, thiab nws tau kawm txog txoj kev mob siab heev ntawm Amoos uas tau ceev nws tej yaj, thiab txog nws lub hwj chim loj uas tawm tsam nrog cov uas tau yuav tua nws, nws tau xav tsis thoob heev kawg nkaus li, thiab tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, tus neeg no yeej tshaj li ib tug txiv neej. Saib seb, qhov no tsis yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim uas tau xa tej kev rau txim loj los rau cov neeg no, vim yog lawv tej kev tua neeg los?
- 3 Thiab lawv tau teb tus vaj ntxwv, thiab tau hais tias: Txawm nws yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim los sis yog neeg, peb tsis paub; tiam sis peb paub npaum li no, tias nws raug vaj ntxwv tej yeeb ncuab tua tsis tau; thiab lawv kuj tsis muaj cuab kav raws vaj ntxwv tej yaj tawg khiav thaum nws nrog peb nyob, vim yog nws txoj kev txawj thiab kev muaj zog heev; yog li ntawd, peb paub tias nws yog ib tug phooj ywg rau vaj ntxwv. Thiab nim no, Au vaj ntxwv es, peb tsis ntseeg tias ib tug neeg yuav muaj hwj chim loj npaum li ntawd, vim peb paub tias tua tsis tau nws.
- 4 Thiab nim no, thaum vaj ntxwv tau hnov tej lus no lawm, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Nim no kuv paub tias nws yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim; thiab nws tau nqis los rau lub caij no los tshwj nej txoj sia tseg, xwv kom kuv yuav tsis muab nej tua ib yam li kuv tau ua rau nej cov kwv tij. Nim no tus no yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim uas peb tej yawg koob tau hais txog lawm.
- 5 Nim no qhov no tau yog Lamaunais txoj kev cai, uas nws tau txais los ntawm nws txiv, tias muaj ib tug Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim. Txawm tias lawv tau ntseeg ib tug Ntsuj Plig uas muaj Hwj Chim los lawv tau xav tias txhua yam uas lawv tau ua puav leej yog; txawm li ntawd los, Lamaunais tau pib ntshai kawg nkaus, ntshai tsam nws tau ua txhaum vim txoj kev tua nws tej tub qhe;
- 6 Vim nws tau tua lawv ntau leej vim lawv tej kwv tij tau raws lawv tej yaj tawg khiav nyob rau nram qhov chaw uas muaj dej; thiab li no, vim lawv tau cia lawv tej yaj tawg khiav lawv tau raug tua.

Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

- 7 Nim no tau yog txoj kev xyaum ntawm cov Neeg Lamas no tuaj sawv ntawm cov dej Xinpus raws cov neeg tej yaj kom tawg khiav, kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav lawv tau ntau tus uas tau khiav tawg mus rau hauv lawv tej av, nws tau yog ib qho kev xyaum ua lim hiam nyob hauv lawv.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau nug nws cov tub qhe, hais tias: Tus txiv neej no uas muaj hwj chim loj ua luaj li ntawd nyob qhov twg?
- 9 Thiab lawv tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, nws tab tom pub koj cov nees. Nim no vaj ntxwv tau txib nws cov tub qhe, ua ntej thaum coj lawv tej yaj mus haus dej, tias lawv yuav tsum npaj nws cov nees thiab tej tsheb nees luag, thiab coj nws mus rau Nifais thaj av; vim tau muaj ib rooj qav loj nyob hauv thaj av Nifais, los ntawm Lamaunais txiv, tus uas ua vaj ntxwv kav tag nrho thaj av.
- 10 Nim no thaum vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau hnov tias Amoos tau tab tom npaj nws tej nees thiab nws tej tsheb nees luag nws tau haj yam xav tsis thoob ntxiv, vim yog Amoos txoj kev ntseeg heev, tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag tsis tau muaj ib tug tub qhe nyob tag nrho hauv kuv cov tub qhe uas tau mloog lus li tus txiv neej no; vim nws tau nco ntsoov ua tag nrho kuv tej lus txib.
- 11 Nim no kuv paub tseeb tias tus no yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim, thiab kuv xav kom nws los cuag kuv, tiam sis kuv ntshai kawg.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amoos tau npaj tej nees thiab tej tsheb nees luag rau vaj ntxwv thiab nws cov tub qhe tiav lawm, nws tau mus cuag vaj ntxwv, thiab nws tau pom tias vaj ntxwv lub ntsej muag tau hloov; yog li ntawd nws tau yuav luag thim rov qab ntawm nws xub ntiag mus.
- 13 Thiab vaj ntxwv ib tug tub qhe tau hais rau nws tias, Lanpanas, uas tau txhais hais tias, tus uas muaj hwj chim heev los sis vaj ntxwv muaj hwj chim, muab lawv tej vaj ntxwv saib yam muaj hwj chim; thiab li no nws tau hais rau nws tias: Lanpanas, vaj ntxwv xav kom koj nyob.
- 14 Yog li ntawd Amoos tau tig nws tus kheej mus rau vaj ntxwv, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj xav kom kuv ua dab tsi rau koj, Au vaj ntxwv es? Thiab vaj ntxwv tsis tau teb nws tau ncuo li ib teev, raws li lawv lub sij hawm, vim nws tsis paub xyov nws yuav hais li cas rau nws.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos tau hais rau nws ntxiv tias: Koj xav tau dab tsi ntawm kuv? Tiam sis vaj ntxwv tsis teb nws.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos, tau muaj Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo, yog li ntawd nws tau paub txog vaj ntxwv tej kev xav. Thiab nws tau hais rau nws tias: Puas yog vim koj tau hnov tias kuv tau tiv thaiv koj tej tub qhe thiab tej yaj, thiab tau tua lawv cov kwv tij xya leej nrog rab hneev nti roj hmab thiab nrog rab ntaj, thiab tau txiav lwm tus tej caj npab, xwv kom thaiv tau koj tej yaj thiab koj tej tub qhe; saib seb, puas yog qhov no uas ua rau koj xav tsis thoob?
- 17 Kuv hais rau koj tias, yog dab tsi, uas koj xav tsis thoob ua luaj li? Saib seb, kuv yog ib tug tib neeg xwb, thiab yog koj tus tub qhe; yog li ntawd, yam dab tsi uas koj xav tau uas yog qhov ncaj, qhov ntawd kuv yuav ua.
- 18 Nim no thaum vaj ntxwv tau hnov tej lus no, nws tau xav tsis thoob dua, vim nws tau pom tias Amoos nyeem tau nws tej kev xav; tiam sis txawm li no los, vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau qhib nws lub qhov ncauj, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj yog leej twg? Koj puas yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim ntawd, tus uas paub tag nrho ib puas yam tsav?
- 19 Amoos tau teb thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv tsis yog.
- 20 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais tias: Ua li cas koj ho paub tej kev xav hauv kuv lub siab? Koj yeej meem hais tsis ntshai, thiab qhia kuv txog tej yam no; thiab qhia kuv saib los ntawm lub hwj chim dab tsi uas koj tau tua thiab tau txiav tej caj npab ntawm kuv cov kwv tij uas tau raws kuv tej yaj tawg khiav—
- 21 Thiab nim no, yog koj yuav qhia kuv txog tej yam no, yam dab tsi koj xav tau kuv yuav muab rau koj; thiab yog nws ho xav tau, kuv yuav tso kuv tej tub rog saib xyuas koj; tiam sis kuv paub tias koj yeej muaj zog tshaj dua li lawv sawv daws; txawm li ntawd los, yam dab tsi uas koj xav tau ntawm kuv kuv yuav pub nws rau koj.
- 22 Nim no vim Amoos ntse, tiam sis tsis khav txiv, nws tau hais rau Lamaunais hais tias: Koj puas yuav mloog kuv tej lus, yog tias kuv qhia koj saib los ntawm lub hwj chim dab tsi kuv ua tej yam no? Thiab qhov no yog qhov uas kuv xav tau ntawm koj.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

23 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau teb nws, thiab tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav ntseeg tag nrho koj tej lus. Thiab yog li ntawd nws tau raug ntxias kom los mloog.

24 Thiab Amoos tau pib hais rau nws yam tsis ntsai, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg hais tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv?

25 Thiab nws tau teb, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv tsis paub xyov qhov ko txhais li cas.

26 Thiab tom qab ntawd Amoos tau teb tias: Koj puas ntseeg hais tias muaj ib tug Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim?

27 Thiab nws tau hais tias, Ntseeg.

28 Thiab Amoos tau hais tias: Tus no yog Vajtswv. Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws dua hais tias: Koj puas ntseeg tias tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim no, uas yog Vajtswv, tau tsim tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb no?

29 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Ntseeg, kuv ntseeg tias nws tau tsim tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas nyob hauv ntiaj teb no; tiam sis kuv tsis paub txog saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.

30 Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Saum ntuj ceeb tsheej yog qhov chaw uas Vajtswv thiab tag nrho nws cov tim tswv dawb huv nyob.

31 Thiab vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau hais tias: Puas yog nyob siab dua lub ntiaj teb lawm saud?

32 Thiab Amoos tau hais tias: Yeej yog, thiab nws ntsia los rau noob neej sawv daws; thiab nws paub tag nrho tej kev xav thiab tej kev xav tau ntawm lub siab; vim los ntawm nws txhais tes lawv sawv daws raug tsim txij thaum chiv keeb los.

33 Thiab vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau hais tias: Kuv ntseeg tag nrho txhua yam no uas koj tau hais. Puas yog Vajtswv xa koj los?

34 Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yog ib tug neeg; thiab thaum chiv keeb neeg tau raug tsim muaj yam ntxwv zoo li Vajtswv, thiab kuv raug hu los ntawm nws tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tuaj qhia tej yam no rau cov neeg no, xwv kom lawv yuav raug coj los paub txog qhov uas ncaj thiab tseeb;

35 Thiab ib qho ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig ntawd nyob hauv kuv, uas muab txoj kev paub, thiab hwj chim rau kuv raws li kuv txoj kev ntseeg thiab tej kev xav tau uas nyob ntawm Vajtswv.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

36 Nim no thaum Amoons tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, nws tau pib thaum tsim lub ntiag teb, thiab thaum tsim Adas, thiab tau hais rau nws tag nrho ib puas yam tsav txog neeg txoj kev poob, thiab tau piav qhia thiab tau tso rau ntawm nws xub ntiag tej ceev xwm txheej thiab tej vajlugkub dawb huv ntawm cov neeg, uas tej yaj saub tau hais, nqis los txog lub sij hawm uas lawv tus yawg koob, Lihais, tau ncaim Yeluxalees.

37 Thiab nws kuj tau piav qhia rau lawv (vim nws tau yog rau vaj ntxwv thiab nws cov tub qhe) tag nrho tej kev tsiv ntawm lawv tej yawg koob nyob hauv hav zoov, thiab tag nrho lawv tej kev raug tshaib plab thiab nqhis dej, thiab lawv txoj kev raug txom nyem, thiab lwm yam.

38 Thiab nws kuj tau piav qhia rau lawv txog tej kev ntseeb siab ntawm Lamas thiab Lemu-ees, thiab Ixama-ees cov tub, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau qhia tag nrho lawv tej kev ntseeb siab rau lawv; thiab nws tau piav tseeb rau lawv tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej thiab tej vajlugkub txij li lub sij hawm uas Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees nqis los txog rau lub sij hawm no.

39 Tiam sis tsis tas li no xwb; vim nws tau piav tseeb rau lawv txog txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau npaj txij li thaum tsim ntuj tsim teb los; thiab nws kuj tau ua rau lawv paub txog txoj kev Khetos yuav los, thiab nws tau ua rau lawv paub txog tus Tswv txhua yam hauj lwm.

40 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau hais ib puas yam tsav no, thiab piav tseeb lawv rau vaj ntxwv, ces vaj ntxwv tau ntseeg tag nrho nws tej lus.

41 Thiab nws tau pib thov tus Tswv, hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, thov muaj kev hlub tshua; raws li koj txoj kev hlub uas muaj nplua mias uas tau muab rau Nifais cov neeg, thov muab rau kuv, thiab kuv cov neeg.

42 Thiab nim no, thaum nws tau hais li no, nws tau vau rau hauv av, zoo ib yam li nws tuag lawm.

43 Thiab tau muaj tias nws cov tub qhe tau coj nws thiab ris nws mus cuag nws tus poj niam, thiab tau muab nws pw rau saum ib lub txaj; thiab nws pw zoo li nws tau tuag lawm tau li ob hnuv thiab ob hmos; thiab nws tus poj niam, thiab nws tej tub, thiab nws tej ntxhais tau quaj ntsuag rau nws, raws li cov Neeg Lamas txoj kev cai, quaj ntsuag heev rau nws txoj kev ploj.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

Amas 19

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau ob hnuv thiab ob hmos lawm lawv twb yuav luag coj nws lub cev mus thiab tso nws rau hauv ib lub qhov ntxa pob zeb, uas lawv tau ua cia faus lawv tej neeg tuag.
- 2 Nim no niam vaj ntxwv tau hnov txog Amoos txoj kev muaj suab npe, yog li ntawd nws tau xa xov thiab tau xav kom nws los cuag niam vaj ntxwv.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos tau ua li nws tau raug txib, thiab tau mus cuag niam vaj ntxwv, thiab tau xav paub saib nws xav kom Amoos ua dab tsi.
- 4 Thiab nws tau hais rau Amoos tias: Kuv tus txiv tej tub qhe tau ua rau kuv paub tias koj yog Vajtswv dawb huv ib tug yaj saub, thiab tias koj muaj hwj chim ua ntau yam hauj lwm tseem ceeb nyob hauv nws lub npe;
- 5 Yog li ntawd, yog tias qhov no muaj tseeb, kuv xav kom koj mus thiab saib kuv tus txiv, vim nws tau pw saum nws lub txaj tau ob hnuv thiab ob hmos lawm; thiab ib txhia hais tias nws tsis tuag; tiam sis ib txhia hais tias nws tuag lawm thiab nws tsw lwj lawm, thiab tias yuav tsum coj nws mus tso rau hauv qhov ntxa pob zeb; tiam sis rau kuv tus kheej, nws twb tsis tsw rau kuv.
- 6 Nim no, qhov no yog yam uas Amoos xav tau, vim nws paub lawm tias vaj ntxwv Lamaunais nyob hauv Vajtswv lub hwj chim lawm; nws paub lawm tias qhov thaiv tsaus ntuj ntawm txoj kev tsis ntseeg tau raug tshem tawm ntawm nws lub cim xeeb lawm, thiab qhov kaj tau zes rau hauv nws lub siab, uas yog qhov kaj ntawm Vajtswv lub yeeb koob, uas tau yog ib qhov kaj uas zoo kawg nkaus ntawm nws txoj kev zoo—muaj tseeb tiag, qhov kaj no tau txhab txoj kev xyiv fab ntawd rau hauv nws tus ntsuj plig, tej huab ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj tau raug tsis muaj mus, thiab qhov kaj ntawm txoj sia kav ib txhis tau raug zes rau hauv nws tus ntsuj plig, muaj tseeb tiag, nws paub lawm tias qhov no tau kov yeej nws cev nqaij daim tawv lawm, thiab nws tau raug coj lawm nyob hauv Vajtswv—
- 7 Yog li ntawd, qhov uas niam vaj ntxwv xav tau ntawm nws yog nws tib txoj kev xav. Yog li ntawd, nws tau mus saib vaj ntxwv raws niam vaj ntxwv tau xav kom nws ua; thiab nws tau pom vaj ntxwv, thiab nws paub lawm tias nws tsis tau tuag.

Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

- 8 Thiab nws tau hais rau niam vaj ntxwv tias: Nws tsis tuag, tiam sis nws pw hauv Vajtswv xwb, thiab tag kis nws yuav sawv dua; yog li ntawd tsis txhob muab nws faus.
- 9 Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg qhov no? Thiab nws tau hais rau Amoos tias: Kuv tsis tau muaj tim khawv tsuas yog koj cov lus, thiab peb cov tub qhe tej lus xwb; txawm li ntawd los kuv ntseeg tias nws yuav muaj raws li koj tau hais lawm.
- 10 Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Koj tau koob hmoov vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg heev; kuv hais rau koj, poj niam, tsis tau muaj ib tug nyob tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Nifais uas muaj kev ntseeg loj npaum li ntawd.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau zov nws tus txiv lub txaj, txij li lub caij ntawd mus txog lub caij tag kis uas Amoos tau teem tias nws yuav sawv.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau sawv, raws li Amoos tej lus; thiab thaum uas nws tau sawv, nws tau cev nws txhais tes rau tus poj niam, thiab tau hais tias: Thov kom Vajtswv lub npe cia li tau koob hmoov, thiab koj cia li tau koob hmoov.
- 13 Vim tseeb npaum li uas koj tseem muaj txoj sia, saib seb, kuv tau pom kuv tus Txhiv Dim; thiab nws yuav nqis los, thiab raug yug los ntawm ib tug poj niam, thiab nws yuav cawm noob neej txhua tus uas ntseeg hauv nws lub npe. Nim no, thaum nws tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, nws lub siab tau dhia hauv nws, thiab nws tau rov vau nrog txoj kev xyiv fab dua; thiab niam vaj ntxwv los kuj vau thiab, raug tsis muaj zog los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig.
- 14 Nim no Amoos tau pom tias tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig raug nchuav los rau cov Neeg Lamas raws li nws tej lus thov, uas yog nws cov kwv tij, uas tau yog cov uas tau ua ntau yam kev nyuaj siab nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, los sis rau tag nrho Vajtswv cov neeg vim yog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees thiab lawv tej kev li kev cai, nws tau txhos caug ntua, thiab tau pib nchuav nws lub siab tawm nyob hauv txoj kev thov Vajtswv thiab ua Vajtswv tsaug rau tej uas nws tau ua rau nws cov kwv tij; thiab nws kuj tau tsis muaj zog nrog txoj kev xyiv fab thiab; thiab ces lawv peb leeg tag nrho tau vau rau hauv av.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

- 15 Nim no, thaum vaj ntxwv tej tub qhe tau pom tias lawv tau vau tas lawm, lawv tau pib quaj thov Vajtswv, vim txoj kev ntshai ntawm tus Tswv kuj tau los rau saum lawv lawm thiab, vim lawv tau yog cov uas tau sawv ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag thiab tau ua tim khawv rau nws txog Amoos lub hwj chim loj.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau thov rau tus Tswv lub npe, nyob hauv lawv tej dag zog, mus txog thaum lawv tag nrho tau vau rau hauv av, tsuas tshuav ib tug poj niam Lamas, uas muaj npe hu ua Anpis, nws tau raug hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv tau ntau xyoo lawm, vim yog nws txiv txoj kev ua yog toog pom uas zoo heev—
- 17 Yog li ntawd, tau raug hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv, thiab yeej tsis tau ua leej twg paub, yog li ntawd, thaum nws tau pom tias tag nrho Lamaunais cov tub qhe tau vau tas rau hauv av, thiab nws tus poj nom, tus uas yog niam vaj ntxwv, thiab vaj ntxwv, thiab Amoos pw pua lua rau hauv av, nws paub lawm tias qhov ntawd yog Vajtswv lub hwj chim; thiab tau xav tias lub sij hawm no yog lub uas yuav tau ua rau cov neeg no paub tej yam uas tau tshwm sim nyob hauv lawv, kom los ntawm pom qhov no nws yuav ua rau lawv ntseeg hauv Vajtswv lub hwj chim, yog li ntawd nws tau khiav tiaj lias mus rau ib lub tsev dhau ib lub tsev, ua rau cov neeg paub.
- 18 Thiab lawv tau pib sib sau tuaj ua ke rau hauv vaj ntxwv tsev. Thiab ib pab neeg coob tau tuaj rau ntawd, thiab rau lawv txoj kev xav tsis thoob lawv tau pom vaj ntxwv, thiab niam vaj ntxwv, thiab nkawd tej tub qhe tau pw pua lua rau hauv av, thiab lawv tag nrho pw zoo li lawv twb tuag lawm; thiab lawv kuj tau pom Amoos, thiab pom tias, nws tau yog ib tug Neeg Nifais.
- 19 Thiab nim no cov neeg tau pib yws yws nyob hauv lawv; ib txhia hais tias nws yog ib qho kev phem loj heev uas tau los rau lawv, los sis los rau saum vaj ntxwv thiab nws tsev neeg, vim yog nws tau cia Neeg Nifais nyob hauv thaj av.
- 20 Tiam sis ib txhia tau cem lawv, hais tias: Vaj ntxwv tau coj qhov kev phem no los rau nws tsev neeg, vim yog nws tau tua nws tej tub qhe uas tau ua lawv tej yaj tawg khiav ri niab nyob rau tom cov dej Xinpus.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

- 21 Thiab lawv kuj tau raug cem los ntawm cov txiv neej uas tau sawv nram cov dej Xinpus thiab tau raws cov yaj uas yog vaj ntxwv li, vim lawv tau npau taws rau Amoos vim yog nws tau muab lawv cov kwv tij ntau leej tua nyob nram cov dej Xinpus, thaum tab tom tiv thaiv vaj ntxwv tej yaj.
- 22 Nim no, ib tug ntawm lawv, uas nws tus kwv tij tau raug tua los ntawm Amoos rab ntaj, tau npau taws heev rau Amoos, tau rho hlo nws rab ntaj thiab txav zog mus xwv kom nws yuav tso poob rau saum Amoos, muab nws tua; thiab thaum nws tsa hlo rab ntaj tua nws, saib seb, nws tau vau hlo tuag lawm.
- 23 Nim no peb pom tias tsis muaj peev xwm tua tau Amoos, vim tus Tswv tau hais rau Mauxiyas, nws txiv hais tias: Kuv yuav tseg nws nyob, thiab yuav muaj li ntawd rau nws raws li koj txoj kev ntseeg—yog li ntawd, Mauxiyas tau cia siab muab nws tso rau ntawm tus Tswv.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov neeg coob coob tau pom tias tus txiv neej, uas tau tsa ntaj tua Amoos tau vau tuag lawm, txoj kev ntshai tau los rau lawv sawv daws, thiab lawv tsis kam cev lawv tej tes tuav nws los sis tuav cov uas tau vau lawm ib tug twg li; thiab lawv tau pib xav tsis thoob nyob hauv lawv dua txog yam dab tsi uas tau ua lub hwj chim loj no, los sis seb tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no yog dab tsi.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ntau tus nyob hauv lawv uas tau hais tias Amoos tau yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim, thiab ib co ho tau hais tias nws tau raug xa los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim;
- 26 Tiam sis ib txhia tau cem lawv sawv daws, hais tias nws tau yog ib tug dab, uas tau raug xa los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tuaj tsim txom lawv.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj ib txhia uas tau hais tias Amoos tau raug xa los ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim los tsim txom lawv vim yog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees; thiab tias nws tau yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim uas tau nrog cov Neeg Nifais nyob tas mus li, tus uas pheed tso lawv dim ntawm lawv tej tes; thiab lawv tau hais tias nws tau yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim loj no uas tau ua rau lawv cov kwv tij Lamas ntau leej heev puas tsuaj.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

28 Thiab xws li no txoj kev sib cav tau pib phem heev kawg nkaus nyob hauv lawv. Thiab thaum lawv tseem tab tom sib cav zoo li no, tus poj niam ntxhais qhev uas tau ua rau cov neeg coob coob tuaj sib sau ua ke, thiab thaum nws tau pom txoj kev sib cav uas nyob hauv cov neeg coob coob ntawd nws tau tu siab heev, kua muag twb poob.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau mus thiab tau tuav niam vaj ntxwv tes, xwv kom tej zaum nws yuav tsa tau nws sawv hauv av los; thiab thaum nws tuav nkaus niam vaj ntxwv tes ua ciav nws cia li sawv tsees sawv ntsug, thiab tau hu ib lub suab nrov nrov hais tias: Au Yexus tus uas tau koob hmoov, tus uas tau cawm kuv dim ntawm lub ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas phem kawg! Au Vajtswv tus ua tau koob hmoov, thov muaj kev hlub tshua rau cov neeg no lauj!

30 Thiab thaum nws tau hais li no tas lawm, nws tau npuaj teg, tau muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo, tau hais ntau lo lus uas tsis to taub; thiab thaum nws tau ua li no tas lawm, nws tau tuav vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tes, thiab saib seb nws tau sawv tsees sawv ntsug.

31 Thiab nws, tam sim ntawd, tau pom txoj kev sib cav nyob hauv nws cov neeg, tau txav zog mus thiab tau pib cem lawv, thiab qhia rau lawv tej lus uas nws tau hnov los ntawm Amoos lub qhov ncauj; thiab txhua tus uas tau hnov nws tej lus puav leej ntseeg, thiab tau hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv.

32 Tiam sis tseem tau tshuav ntau leej hauv lawv uas tsis kam mloog nws tej lus; yog li ntawd lawv tau nyias mus nyias txoj kev lawm.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amoos sawv lawm nws kuj tau qhuab qhia rau lawv, thiab tag nrho Lamaunais tej tub qhe sawv daws thiab; thiab lawv tau tshaj tawm tag nrho rau cov neeg tib yam—tias lawv tej siab twb raug hloov lawm; tias lawv tsis muaj lub siab xav ua phem lawm.

34 Thiab saib seb, ntau leej tau tshaj tawm rau cov neeg tias lawv tau pom tej tim tswv thiab tau nrog lawv tham; thiab xws li no lawv tau qhia rau lawv tej yam uas yog Vajtswv li, thiab txog nws txoj kev ncaj ncees.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ntau leej uas tau ntseeg lawv tej lus; thiab txhua tus uas tau ntseeg tau ua kev cai raus dej; thiab lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg ncaj ncees, thiab lawv tau tsim ib lub koom txoos nyob hauv lawv.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

36 Thiab tus Tswv txoj hauj lwm tau pib muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas zoo li no; tus Tswv tau pib nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig los rau lawv; thiab peb pom tias nws txhais caj npab tseem ncav rau tag nrho cov neeg uas yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg nws lub npe.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

Amas 20

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau tsim ib lub koom txoos nyob rau hauv thaj av ntawd lawm, vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tau xav kom Amoos yuav tsum nrog nws mus rau thaj av Nifais, xwv kom nws yuav tau qhia Amoos rau nws txiv.
- 2 Thiab tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau Amoos hais tias: Koj tsis txhob nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais, vim saib seb, vaj ntxwv yuav nrhiav koj txoj sia; tiam sis koj yuav tsum mus rau thaj av Midaunais; vim saib seb, koj tus kwv Aloos, thiab Mulaukhais thiab Eemas tseem nyob hauv qhov taub.
- 3 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amoos tau hnov li no, nws tau hais rau Lamaunais tias: Saib seb, kuv tus kwv thiab cov kwv tij nyob hauv qhov taub tom Midaunais, thiab kuv mus xwv kom kuv yuav tso tau lawv dim.
- 4 Nim no Lamaunais tau hais rau Amoos tias: Kuv paub, nyob hauv tus Tswv lub zog koj yeej ua tau ib puas yam tsav. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav nrog koj mus rau thaj av Midaunais; vim tus vaj ntxwv ntawm thaj av Midaunais, uas npe hu ua Eethi-anaus, yog kuv ib tug phooj ywg; yog li ntawd kuv mus rau tom thaj av Midaunais, xwv kom kuv yuav tau thov rau tus vaj ntxwv ntawm thaj av, thiab nws yuav tso koj cov kwv tij tawm hauv qhov taub. Nim no Lamaunais tau hais rau nws tias: Leej twg qhia koj tias koj cov kwv tij nyob hauv qhov taub?
- 5 Thiab Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Tsis muaj leej twg tau qhia kuv, tsuas yog Vajtswv xwb; thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias—Cia li mus thiab mus tso koj cov kwv tij, vim lawv tau nyob qhov taub nyob hauv thaj av Midaunais.
- 6 Nim no thaum Lamaunais tau hnov qhov no lawm nws tau kom nws tej tub qhe npaj nws tej nees thiab nws tej tsheb nees luag kom txhij.
- 7 Thiab nws tau hais rau Amoos tias: Los, kuv yuav nrog koj nqis mus rau nram thaj av Midaunais, thiab nyob nrad kuv yuav thov tus vaj ntxwv kom nws yuav tso koj cov kwv tij tawm qhov taub.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amoos thiab Lamaunais tseem tab tom taug kev mus rau nrad, nkawd tau ntsib Lamaunais txiv, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv kav tag nrho txhua thaj av.

Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

- 9 Thiab saib seb, Lamaunais txiv tau hais rau nws tias: Vim li cas koj tsis tuaj rau pluas qav uas nyob rau hnuv tseem ceeb ntawd thaum uas kuv tau ua ib pluag qav rau kuv tej tub, thiab rau kuv cov neeg?
- 10 Thiab nws kuj tau hais tias: Koj tab tom nrog tus Neeg Nifais no, uas yog ib tug me nyuam ntawm tus neeg dag tuaj mus lawm qhov twg?
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Lamaunais tau hais rau nws saib nws tab tom mus lawm qhov twg, vim nws ntshai tsam ua rau nws npau taws.
- 12 Thiab nws kuj tau hais rau nws tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas ua rau nws nyob rau hauv nws lub nceeg vaj, uas nws tsis tau mus cuag nws txiv mus koom pluas qav uas nws tau npaj.
- 13 Thiab nim no thaum Lamaunais tau qhia rau nws tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no, saib seb, rau nws txoj kev ceeb, nws txiv tau npau taws rau nws, thiab tau hais tias: Lamaunais es, koj tseem yuav mus tso cov Neeg Nifais no, cov uas yog tus neeg dag cov tub. Saib seb, nws tau nyiag peb tej yawg koob; thiab nim no nws tej me nyuam kuj tau tuaj rau hauv peb xwv kom lawv yuav los ntawm lawv txoj kev ntxias thiab lawv tej kev dag, dag ntxias peb, kom lawv yuav rov qab nyiag peb tej qhov txhia chaw dua.
- 14 Nim no Lamaunais txiv tau txib kom nws yuav tsum muab nws rab ntaj tua Amoos. Thiab nws kuj tau txib Lamaunais tias nws yuav tsum tsis txhob mus rau tom thaj av Midaunais, tiam sis nws yuav tsum rov qab nrog nws mus lawm tom thaj av Ixamaees.
- 15 Tiam sis Lamaunais tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yuav tsis tua Amoos, kuv yuav tsis rov qab mus lawm tom thaj av Ixamaees, tiam sis kuv yuav mus lawm tom thaj av Midaunais xwv kom kuv yuav tso tau Amoos cov kwv tij, vim kuv paub tias lawv yog neeg ncaj ncees thiab yog cov yaj saub dawb huv ntawm Vajtsv tus tseeb.
- 16 Nim no thaum nws txiv tau hnov tej lus no, nws tau npau taws rau nws, thiab nws tau rho hlo nws rab ntaj xwv kom nws yuav tua kom Lamaunais vau rau hauv av.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

- 17 Tiam sis Amoos tau txav zog los thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, koj tsis txhob tua koj tus tub; txawm li ntawd los nws tuag ntshe yuav zoo dua li koj, vim saib seb, nws tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm nws tej kev txhaum; tiam sis yog koj yuav tuag nyob rau lub sij hawm no, hauv koj txoj kev npau taws, koj tus ntsuj plig yuav dim tsis tau li.
- 18 Thiab ntxiv, tsim nyog tias koj yuav tswj koj tus kheej; vim yog tias koj yuav muab koj tus tub tua, nws tau yog ib tug neeg tsis muaj txim, nws cov ntshav yuav quaj tawm hauv av tuaj mus rau tus Tswv nws tus Vajtswv, rau txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig los rau koj; thiab tej zaum koj yuav poob koj tus ntsuj plig mus.
- 19 Nim no thaum Amoos tau hais tej lus no rau nws, nws tau teb Amoos tias: Kuv paub tias yog kuv tua kuv tus tub, ces kuv yuav ua kom tej ntshav uas tsis muaj txim nrog; vim twb yog koj uas tau nrhiav ua kom nws puas tsuaj.
- 20 Thiab nws tau ncau hlo nws txhais tes tua Amoos. Tiam sis Amoos tau tiv nws txoj kev tua, thiab kuj tau thav nws txhais caj npab xwv kom nws tsis muaj peev xwm siv nws.
- 21 Nim no thaum vaj ntxwv tau pom tias Amoos muaj cuab kav tua tau nws, nws tau pib thov Amoos tias kom nws tseg nws txoj sia.
- 22 Tiam sis Amoos tau tsa hlo nws rab ntaj, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, kuv yuav muab koj tua ntshe tsuas yog koj yuav pub rau kuv tias kuv cov kwv tij yuav raug tso tawm ntawm qhov taub xwb.
- 23 Nim no vaj ntxwv, ntshai tsam nws yuav xiam nws txoj sia, tau hais tias: Yog koj yuav tso kuv kuv yuav muab rau koj txhua yam uas koj thov, txawm yuav muab ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws los tau.
- 24 Nim no thaum Amoos tau pom tias nws tau soo tau vaj ntxwv laus raws li nws siab xav, nws tau hais rau nws tias: Yog koj yuav cia kom kuv cov kwv tij dim tawm ntawm qhov taub, thiab Lamaunais los tseem yuav ceev nws lub nceeg vaj, thiab koj yuav tsis npau taws nrog nws, tiam sis pub kom nws yuav ua tau raws li nws tus kheej xav nyob hauv txhua yam uas nws xav tau, ces kuv yuav tso koj; yog tsis li ntawd ces kuv yuav ntaus koj rau hauv av.
- 25 Nim no thaum Amoos tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, vaj ntxwv tau pib zoo siab vim yog nws txoj sia.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

26 Thiab thaum nws tau pom tias Amoos tsis tau muaj siab xav ua kom nws puas tsuaj, thiab thaum nws kuj tau pom txoj kev hlub heev uas Amoos tau muaj rau nws tus tub Lamaunais, nws tau xav tsis thoob kiag li, thiab tau hais tias: Vim qhov no yog tag nrho tej uas koj xav tau xwb, kom koj yuav tso koj cov kwv tij, thiab cia kuv tus tub Lamaunais ceev nws lub nceeg vaj, saib seb, kuv yuav pub rau koj tias kuv tus tub yuav ceev nws lub nceeg vaj txij lub sij hawm no mus thiab mus ib txhis li; thiab kuv yuav tsis kav nws ntxiv lawm—

27 Thiab kuv kuj yuav pub rau koj tias koj cov kwv tij yuav raug tso tawm ntawm qhov taub, thiab koj thiab koj cov kwv tij yuav los cuag kuv, nyob hauv kuv lub nceeg vaj; vim kuv xav pom koj heev. Vim vaj ntxwv tau xav tsis thoob heev rau tej lus uas nws tau hais lawm, thiab kuj rau tej lus uas tau hais los ntawm nws tus tub Lamaunais, yog li ntawd nws tau xav kawm lawv.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos thiab Lamaunais tau taug kev mus rau tom thaj av Midaunais ntxiv. Thiab Lamaunais tau raug vaj ntxwv ntawm thaj av nyiam; yog li ntawd Amoos cov kwv tij tau raug coj tawm ntawm qhov taub.

29 Thiab thaum Amoos tau ntsib lawv nws tau tu siab heev kawg li, vim saib seb lawv tau liab qab, thiab lawv tej tawv nqaij tau yaig heev vim yog raug tej hlua khov khov khi. Thiab lawv kuj tau raug tshaib, yoo nqhis, thiab txhua yam kev txom nyem; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tau ua siab ntev nyob tag nrho hauv lawv tej kev txom nyem.

30 Thiab, li yam uas tau tshwm sim, nws tau yog lawv txoj hmoov tau poob rau hauv cov neeg uas tawv dua thiab nyaum dua tej; yog li ntawd lawv cov no thiaj tsis kam mloog lawv tej lus, thiab lawv cov no tau raws lawv tawm, thiab tau ntaus lawv, thiab raws lawv ib lub tsev dhau ib lub tsev, thiab ib qho chaw rau ib qho chaw, twb mus txog thaum lawv tau los txog rau hauv thaj av Midaunais; thiab qhov ntawd lawv tau raug txhom thiab pov rau hauv qhov taub, thiab raug xuas hlua khov khov khi, thiab tau cia nyob rau hauv qhov taub tau ntau hnuv, thiab tau raug tso dim los ntawm Lamaunais thiab Amoos.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

Íb zag txog Aloos, thiab Mulaukbais, thiab nkawd cov kwv tij txoj kev qhuab qhia, rau cov Neeg Lamas.

Amas 21

- 1 Nim no thaum Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij lawv tau sib ncaim nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thaj av, saib seb Aloos tau taug kev mus rau tom thaj av uas cov Neeg Lamas tau hu tias, Yeluxalees, hu nws raws li thaj av uas yug lawv tej yawg koob; thiab nws tau nyob deb txuas tej ciam teb ntawm Maumoos.
- 2 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg Amalej thiab Amuloos cov neeg tau ua ib lub nroog loj, uas tau hu ua Yeluxalees.
- 3 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas lawv tus kheej tau tawv txaus, tiam sis cov neeg Amalej thiab cov neeg Amuloos tseem tau tawv dua; yog li ntawd lawv tau ua cov Neeg Lamas kom lawv yuav tsum ua lawv tej siab tawv, kom lawv yuav tsum loj hlob muaj zog hauv txoj kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias Aloos tau tuaj rau hauv lub nroog Yeluxalees, thiab xub thawj tau pib qhuab qhia rau cov neeg Amalej. Thiab nws tau pib qhuab qhia rau lawv nyob hauv lawv tej tsev sab laj, vim lawv tau pib tsim tej tsev sab laj mus raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm Nihos; vim ntau tus ntawm cov neeg Amalej thiab cov neeg Amuloos tau ua raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm Nihos.
- 5 Yog li ntawd, thaum Aloos tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv ib lub tsev sab laj qhuab qhia rau cov neeg, thiab thaum nws tseem tab tom hais rau lawv, saib seb ib tug neeg Amalej tau sawv thiab tau pib cam nrog nws, hais tias: Qhov uas koj tau ua tim khawv rau ko yog dab tsi? Koj puas tau pom ib tug tim tswv? Yog vim li cas tej tim tswv ho tsis tshwm sim rau peb pom? Saib seb tsis yog cov neeg no zoo ib yam li koj cov neeg thiab los?
- 6 Koj kuj hais tias, tsuas yog peb hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd ces peb yuav piam sij. Koj ho paub tau peb tej kev xav thiab kev xav ua ntawm peb tej siab tau li cas? Vim li cas koj ho paub tias peb muaj qhov yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim? Koj ho paub tau li cas tias peb tsis yog ib cov neeg ncaj ncees? Saib seb, peb tau tsim tej chaw dawb huv, thiab peb kuj sau peb sawv daws tuaj ua ke teev tiam Vajtswv. Peb yeej ntseeg tias Vajtswv yuav cawm neeg txhua tus.

An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.

Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

- 7 Nim no Aloos tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg tias Vajtsv Leej Tub yuav los txhiv tib neeg dim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum?
- 8 Thiab tus txiv neej tau hais rau nws tias: Peb tsis ntseeg hais tias koj paub tej yam zoo li ntawd. Peb tsis ntseeg hauv tej kev cai ruam no. Peb tsis ntseeg tias koj paub txog tej uas yuav los, thiab peb kuj tsis ntseeg tias koj tej yawg koob thiab peb tej yawg koob tau paub txog tej yam uas lawv tau hais lawm, txog tej uas yuav muaj los.
- 9 Nim no Aloos tau pib nthuav tej vajlugkub rau lawv txog txoj kev uas Khetos los, thiab kuj txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag lawm, thiab tias yuav tsis muaj kev txhiv dim rau tib neeg tsuas yog nws yuav dhau los ntawm txoj kev tuag thiab tej kev raug txom nyem ntawm Khetos xwb, thiab txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm nws cov ntshav.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas nws tau pib piav tej yam no rau lawv lawv tau npau taws rau nws, thiab tau pib thuam nws; thiab lawv tsis xav hnov tej lus uas nws tau hais.
- 11 Yog li ntawd, thaum nws tau pom tias lawv tsis mloog nws tej lus, nws tau ncaim tawm ntawm lawv lub tsev sab laj, thiab tau los rau ib lub zos uas hu ua Anais-Athais, thiab nyob qhov ntawd nws nrhiav tau Mulaukhais tab tom qhuab qhia txoj lus rau lawv; thiab Eemas thiab nws cov kwv tij thiab. Thiab lawv tau cam nrog ntau leej txog txoj lus.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pom tias cov neeg ua lawv tej siab tawv qhwb qhawv, yog li ntawd lawv tau ncaim thiab tau los rau hauv thaj av Midaunais. Thiab lawv tau qhuab qhia txoj lus rau ntau leej, thiab tsawg tus tau ntseeg tej lus uas lawv tau qhia.
- 13 Tiam sis, Aloos thiab ib txhia ntawm nws cov kwv tij tau raug txhom thiab pov rau hauv qhov taub, thiab lawv cov seem tau khiav tawm ntawm thaj av Midaunais mus rau tej cheeb tsam ib ncig.
- 14 Thiab cov uas tau raug pov rau hauv qhov taub tau raug kev txom nyem ntau yam, thiab lawv tau raug tso dim los ntawm Lamaunais thiab Amoos tes, thiab lawv raug pub zaub mov rau noj thiab muab ris tsho rau hnav.
- 15 Thiab lawv tau rov mus tshaj tawm txoj lus dua, thiab lawv tau raug tso dim li no tawm ntawm qhov taub thawj zaug; thiab lawv tau raug txom nyem li no.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

- 16 Thiab lawv tau tawm mus rau txhua qhov uas tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig coj lawv, mus qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus nyob hauv txhua lub tsev sab laj ntawm cov neeg Amalej, los sis nyob hauv txhua qhov chaw sib sau ntawm cov Neeg Lamas qhov uas kam lawv nkag mus.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau pib foom koob hmoov rau lawv, kawg tias lawv coj tau ntau leej los paub txog qhov tseeb; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau qhia ntau leej pom txog lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab txog tej kev li kev cai ntawm lawv tej yawg koob, uas tau tsis yog lawm.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos thiab Lamaunais rov qab ntawm thaj av Midaunais mus rau thaj av Ixamaees, uas tau yog thaj av ntawm lawv tej qub txeeg qub teg.
- 19 Thiab vaj ntxwv Lamaunais tsis kam cia Amoos ua hauj lwm rau nws, los sis ua nws tus tub qhe.
- 20 Tiam sis nws tau kom yuav tsum ua muaj tej tsev sab laj nyob rau hauv thaj av Ixamaees; thiab nws tau kom nws cov neeg, los sis cov neeg uas nyob hauv qab nws txoj kev kav, lawv yuav tsum sib sau tuaj ua ke.
- 21 Thiab nws tau zoo siab rau lawv, thiab nws tau qhia rau lawv ntau yam. Thiab nws kuj tau tshaj tawm rau lawv tias lawv tau yog ib co neeg nyob hauv qab nws, thiab tias lawv yog ib co neeg nyob ywj siab, tias lawv tau dim ntawm tej kev nruj tsiv ntawm vaj ntxwv, uas yog nws txiv; vim tias nws txiv tau pub rau nws tias nws yuav tau kav cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Ixamaees, thiab nyob tag nrho tej thaj av uas nyob ib ncig.
- 22 Thiab nws kuj tau tshaj tawm rau lawv tias lawv yuav muaj kev ywj siab txog txoj kev teev tiam tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv raws li lawv nyiam, nyob txhua qhov chaw uas lawv nyob, yog tias nws nyob hauv thaj av uas nyob hauv qab ntawm vaj ntxwv Lamaunais txoj kev kav.
- 23 Thiab Amoos tau qhuab qhia rau vaj ntxwv Lamaunais cov neeg; thiab tau muaj tias nws tau qhia lawv txhua yam txog tej uas ntsig txog txoj kev ncaj ncees. Thiab nws tau ntuas lawv txhua hnuv, rau siab tag nrho; thiab lawv tau mloog nws txoj lus, thiab lawv tau kub siab lug coj Vajtswv tej lus txib.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

Amas 22

- 1 Nim no, thaum uas Amoos tseem tab tom qhia Lamaunais cov neeg tsis tu ncuu li no, peb yuav tig rov qab mus rau Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij zaj; vim tom qab uas nws tau ncaim ntawm thaj av Midaunais nws tau raug tus Ntsuj Plig coj mus rau thaj av Nifais, twb mus rau vaj ntxwv tus uas kav tag nrho tej thaj av lub tsev tsuas tshuav thaj av Ixama-ees xwb; thiab nws tau yog Lamaunais txiv.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias Aloos tau mus rau nws rau hauv vaj ntxwv lub tsev, nrog nws cov kwv tij, thiab tau khoov ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, Au vaj ntxwv, peb yog Amoos cov kwv tij, cov uas koj tau tso tawm hauv qhov taub los.
- 3 Thiab nim no, Au vaj ntxwv, yog koj yuav tseg peb txoj sia, peb yuav ua koj tej tub qhe. Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia li sawv, vim kuv yuav pub nej txoj sia rau nej, thiab kuv yuav tsis cia nej ua kuv tej tub qhe; tiam sis kuv yuav kom nej qhia kuv; vim kuv tau muaj tej yam teeb meem nyob hauv siab vim yog txoj kev siab dawb thiab tej lus tseem ceeb heev ntawm nej tus tij laugAmoos; thiab kuv xav paub qhov uas yog vim li cas nws tsis tau tawm ntawm Midaunais nrog nej tuaj.
- 4 Thiab Aloos tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tias: Saib seb, tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau hu nws mus lwm txoj kev lawm; nws tau mus rau tom thaj av Ixama-ees, mus qhia Lamaunais cov neeg lawm.
- 5 Nim no vaj ntxwv tau hais rau lawv tias: Qhov no uas nej tau hais txog tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig yog dab tsi? Saib seb, qhov no yog yam uas ua rau kuv nyuaj siab.
- 6 Thiab ntxiv, qhov no uas Amoos tau hais tias—Yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim koj yuav dim, thiab yog koj yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim, koj yuav raug ntiab tawm nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg no yog dab tsi?
- 7 Thiab Aloos tau teb nws thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv? Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais tias: Kuv paub tias cov neeg Amalej hais tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv, thiab kuv tau pub rau lawv kom lawv ua tej chaw dawb huv, xwv kom lawv yuav sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke teev tiam nws. Thiab yog nim no koj hais tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv, saib seb kuv yeej yuav ntseeg.

Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

- 8 Thiab nim no thaum Aloos tau hnov li no, nws lub siab tau pib zoo siab, thiab nws tau hais tias: Saib seb, tseeb npaum li koj muaj sia nyob, Au vaj ntxwv es, yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv.
- 9 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais tias: Vajtswv puas yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim uas tau coj peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees?
- 10 Thiab Aloos tau hais rau nws tias: Yog, nws yog tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim ntawd, thiab nws tau tsim tag nrho txhua yam nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb no. Koj puas ntseeg qhov no?
- 11 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv ntseeg tias tus Ntsuj Plig uas Muaj Hwj Chim tau tsim tag nrho ib puas yam tsav, thiab kuv xav kom nej qhia kuv txog tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no, thiab kuv yuav ntseeg nej tej lus.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Aloos tau pom tias vaj ntxwv yuav ntseeg nws tej lus, nws tau pib txij li thaum kev tsim Adas los, nyeem tej vajlugkub rau vaj ntxwv—saib Vajtswv tau tsim neeg raws li nws tus yam ntxwv li cas, thiab tias Vajtswv tau muab tej lus txib rau nws, thiab tias vim yog txoj kev txhaum, neeg thiaj li tau poob.
- 13 Thiab Aloos tau piav meej tej vajlugkub rau nws txij li thaum txoj kev tsim Adas los, qhia txoj kev uas neeg poob rau ntawm nws xub ntiag, thiab lawv tej kev ntiaj teb thiab txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau npaj txij li thaum txoj kev tsim lub ntiaj teb, dhau los ntawm Khetos, rau txhua tus uas yuav ntseeg hauv nws lub npe.
- 14 Thiab vim neeg tau poob nws thiaj tsis tsim nyog tau ib yam dab tsi nws tus kheej; tiam sis Khetos txoj kev tuag thiab tej kev txom nyem theej rau lawv tej kev txhaum, dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg thiab txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab lwm yam; thiab tias nws tu txoj kev tuag tej hlua, xwv kom lub qhov ntxa yuav tsis muaj yeej, thiab kom tej toj taug ntawm txoj kev tuag yuav raug nqos nyob hauv tej kev cia siab ntawm lub yeeb koob; thiab Aloos tau piav meej tag nrho tej yam no rau vaj ntxwv.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas Aloos tau piav meej tej yam no rau nws tas lawm, vaj ntxwv tau hais tias: Kuv yuav ua dab tsi es kuv thiaj yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis uas koj tau hais no? Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav ua dab tsi es kuv thiaj li yuav raug yug los ntawm Vajtswv, muab tus ntsuj plig phem no rho tawm ntawm kuv lub cev mus, thiab txais yuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig, xwv kom kuv yuav muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo, xwv kom kuv yuav tsis raug ntiab tawm nyob rau hauv hnub kawg? Nws tau hais tias, saib seb, kuv yuav muab ib puas yam tsav uas kuv muaj tso pov tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav tso kuv txoj kev kav teb chaws, xwv kom kuv yuav tau txais txoj kev xyiv fab heev no.

16 Tiam sis Aloos tau hais rau nws tias: Yog koj xav tau yam no, yog koj yuav pe Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag, yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim tag nrho koj tej kev txhaum, thiab yuav pe Vajtswv, thiab hu nws lub npe nyob ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, ntseeg tias koj yuav tau txais, ces koj yeej yuav tau txais txoj kev cia siab uas koj xav tau.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Aloos tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, vaj ntxwv tau txhos caug ntua pe tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb tau pw pua lua rau hauv av, thiab thov heev kawg nkaus, hais tias:

18 Au Vajtswv es, Aloos tau qhia rau kuv tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv; thiab yog muaj ib tug Vajtswv, thiab yog koj yog Vajtswv, thov koj ua koj tus kheej rau kuv paub, thiab kuv yuav tso tag nrho kuv tej kev txhaum tseg kom paub koj, thiab xwv kom kuv yuav raug tsa sawv hauv qhov tuag rov los, thiab raug dim nyob rau hauv hnub kawg. Thiab nim no thaum vaj ntxwv tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, nws tau vau hlo zoo li nws tuag lawm.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tej tub qhe tau khiav mus thiab tau qhia niam vaj ntxwv tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas tau tshwm sim rau vaj ntxwv. Thiab nws tau tuaj rau ntawm vaj ntxwv; thiab thaum nws tau pom nws pw zoo li uas nws twb tuag lawm, thiab kuj tau pom Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij sawv ntsug zoo li lawv tau ua rau nws vau, nws tau npau taws rau lawv, thiab tau txib kom nws tej tub qhe, los sis vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe, yuav tsum txhom lawv thiab muab lawv tua.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

- 20 Nim no tej tub qhe tau pom qhov uas ua rau vaj ntxwv vau, yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam tso lawv tej tes rau saum Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij; thiab lawv tau thov niam vaj ntxwv hais tias: Vim li cas koj ho txib kom peb tua cov neeg no, thaum pom tias lawv ib tug yeej muaj zog dua li peb sawv daws? Yog li ntawd peb yeej yuav vau rau lawv xwb.
- 21 Nim no thaum niam vaj ntxwv tau pom cov tub qhe txoj kev ntshai nws kuj tau pib ntshai heev kawg nkaus li, ntshai tias tsam muaj xyw phem los rau nws. Thiab nws tau txib nws cov tub qhe tias kom lawv mus thiab hu cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav tua Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij.
- 22 Nim no thaum Aloos tau pom niam vaj ntxwv txoj kev txiav txim siab, nws, kuj paub txog txoj kev tawv ntawm cov neeg tej siab, ntshai tias tsam ib co neeg coob coob yuav sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke, thiab yuav muaj ib qho kev sib cav sib ceg loj thiab ib qho kev sib thab nyob hauv lawv; yog li ntawd nws tau cev nws txhais tes mus thiab tau tsa vaj ntxwv sawv hauv av los, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Sawv ntsug. Thiab nws tau sawv ntseg ntsees, tau txais nws lub zog.
- 23 Nim no qhov no tau ua nyob ntawm niam vaj ntxwv xub ntiag thiab ntau tus tub qhe. Thiab thaum lawv tau pom qhov no lawv tau xav tsis thoob li, thiab tau pib ntshai. Thiab vaj ntxwv tau sawv txav zog los, thiab tau pib qhuab qhia rau lawv. Thiab nws tau qhuab qhia rau lawv, kawg tias nws tsev neeg tau raug hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv.
- 24 Nim no tau muaj ib pab neeg coob coob tau sib sau tuaj ua ke vim yog txoj kev txib ntawm niam vaj ntxwv, thiab tau pib muaj tej kev yws yws hnyav heev nyob hauv lawv vim yog Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij.
- 25 Tiam sis vaj ntxwv tau sawv txav zog los rau hauv lawv thiab tau qhuab qhia rau lawv. Thiab lawv tau raug daws kev npau taws rau Aloos thiab cov uas nrog nws.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv tau pom tias cov neeg tau daws kev npau taws, nws tau kom Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij yuav tsum los sawv hauv nruab nrab ntawm cov neeg coob coob, thiab xwv kom lawv yuav qhuab qhia txoj lus rau lawv.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau xa ib tsab xov thoob plaws rau tag nrho thaj av, nyob tag nrho hauv nws cov neeg uas nyob tag nrho hauv nws thaj av, tag nrho cov uas nyob tej thaj tsam ib ncig, uas tau nyob tom ciam dej hiav txwv, nyob sab hnuv tuaj tsam ib ncig, uas tau nyob tom ciam dej hiav txwv, nyob sab hnuv tuaj thiab nyob sab hnuv poob, thiab tej uas tau raug faib tawm ntawm thaj av Xalabelas los ntawm ib thaj hav zoov nqaim, uas txij li dej hiav txwv sab hnuv tuaj mus rau dej hiav txwv sab hnuv poob, thiab ib puag ncig nyob rau tej ciam teb ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv, thiab tej ciam teb ntawm tej hav zoov uas nyob sab pem toj los ntawm thaj av Xalabelas, dhau los ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm Meethais, los ntawm hauv dej Xidoos, uas ntwis pem sab hnuv tuaj mus rau sab hnuv poob—thiab li no tau yog qhov uas cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau sib faib.

28 Nim no, cov Neeg Lamas uas tub nkeeg tshaj tau nyob rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau nyob hauv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub; thiab lawv tau faib nyob thoob plaws hauv tej hav zoov rau sab hnuv poob, nyob hauv thaj av Nifais; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj nyob rau sab hnuv poob ntawm thaj av Xalabelas, nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv, thiab rau sab hnuv poob hauv thaj av Nifais, hauv qhov chaw ntawm lawv tej yawg koob thawj cov qub txeeg qub teg, thiab li no ua ciam teb raws ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv.

29 Thiab kuj tau muaj ntau tus Neeg Lamas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj npuav ntug dej hiav txwv, qhov uas cov Neeg Nifais tau caum lawv. Thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais yuav luag raug cov Neeg Lamas vij; txawm li ntawd los cov Neeg Nifais tau nyob tag nrho sab pem toj ntawm thaj av uas ua ciam teb rau tej hav zoov, nyob pem hauv dej Xidoos, txij li sab hnuv tuaj mus rau sab hnuv poob, ib ncig ntawm tej ntug hav zoov sab hnuv poob, ib ncig ntawm tej ntug hav zoov; nyob rau sab pem toj, mus txog thaum lawv tau los txog thaj av uas lawv tau hu ua Huaj Vam.

30 Thiab nws tau ua ciam teb rau saum thaj av uas lawv tau hu ua Quav Poj, nws tau nyob deb heev rau sab pem toj uas tau los mus rau hauv thaj av uas tau muaj neeg thiab tau raug puas tsuaj lawm, ntawm cov uas tej pob txha peb tau hais lawm, uas tau raug nrhiav tau los ntawm cov neeg Xalabelas, nws tau yog qhov chaw uas lawv xub tuaj txog.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

31 Thiab lawv tau tuaj ped mus rau hauv tej hav zoov phab nram hav. Yog li ntawd thaj av uas nyob sab pem toj tau hu ua Quav Poj, thiab thaj av uas nyob phab nram hav tau hu ua Huaj Vam, nws tau yog tej hav zoov uas muaj tag nrho txhua yam tsiaj qus huv si, ib feem ntawm qhov uas tau los ntawm thaj av sab pem toj rau zaub noj.

32 Thiab nim no, nws tsuas deb li ib hnub xwb thiab ib nrab kev rau ib tug Neeg Nifais, nyob ntawm ciam teb Huaj Vam thiab thaj av Quav Poj, txij sab hnub tuaj mus rau hiav txwv sab hnub poob; thiab li no thaj av Nifais thiab thaj av Xalahelas tau yuav luag raug dej vij, tau muaj ib nyuag ceg kaum av nyob nruab nrab thaj av sab pem toj thiab thaj av sab nram hav.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau nyob thaj av Huaj Vam, twb txij li sab hnub tuaj mus rau hiav txwv sab hnub poob, thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais nyob hauv lawv txoj kev txawj ntse, nrog lawv tej neeg zov nyas thiab lawv tej tub rog, tau thaiv cov Neeg Lamas rau sab nram hav, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv cov no yuav muaj tsis tau dab tsi ntxiv nyob rau sab pem toj, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tau tuaj nyob thaj av sab pem toj.

34 Yog li ntawd cov Neeg Lamas tsis muaj peev xwm muaj dab tsi ntxiv tsuas yog nyob hauv thaj av Nifais xwb, thiab tej hav zoov ib ncig xwb. Nim no qhov no tau yog txoj kev txawj ntse hauv cov Neeg Nifais—vim tias cov Neeg Lamas tau yog ib co yeeb ncuab rau lawv, lawv yuav tsis cia lawv tej kev txom nyem rau txhua sab, thiab kuj tias kom lawv yuav muaj ib lub teb chaws uas lawv khiav mus rau qhov twg los tau, raws li lawv siab xav.

35 Thiab nim no kuv, tom qab uas tau hais qhov no tas, rov qab dua mus rau zaj ntawm Amoos thiab Aloos, Oonaws thiab Hinais, thiab lawv cov kwv tij.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

Amas 23

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau xa ib tsab xov mus rau tag nrho nws cov neeg, tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob tso lawv tej tes rau saum Amoos, los sis Aloos, los sis Oonaws los sis Hinais, los sis ib tug ntawm lawv cov kwv tij uas yuav tawm mus qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus, nyob txhua qhov chaw uas lawv yuav mus, nyob txhua qhov ntawm lawv thaj av.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau xa ib co lus nruj mus rau hauv lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob tso lawv tej tes rau saum lawv los khi lawv cov no, los sis muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov taub, los sis muab lawv ntaus, los sis ntiab lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej tsev sab laj, los sis muab lawv nplawm; thiab lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob txawb pob zeb rau lawv, tiam sis lawv yuav tsum muaj kev ywj siab mus rau hauv lawv tej tsev, thiab hauv lawv tej tuam tsev, thiab lawv tej chaw dawb huv.
- 3 Thiab li no kom lawv yuav tawm mus thiab qhuab qhia txoj lus raws li lawv siab nyiam, vim vaj ntxwv tau raug hloov los mus rau hauv tus Tswv lawm, thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg; yog li ntawd nws tau xa nws tsab xov thoob plaws thaj av rau nws cov neeg, xwv kom Vajtswv txoj lus yuav tsis muaj cuam tshuam, tiam sis kom nws yuav tawm mus thoob plaws rau tag nrho thaj av, xwv kom nws cov neeg yuav raug yaum txog txoj kev phem ntawm lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, thiab xwv kom lawv yuav raug yaum los paub tias lawv sawv daws puav leej yog kwv tij, thiab kom lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob tua neeg, los sis tsis txhob ua lim hiam, los sis tsis txhob ua tub sab, los sis tsis txhob deev luag poj luag txiv, los sis tsis txhob ua txhaum ib yam kev phem dab tsi li.
- 4 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv tau xa tsab xov no tawm, Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau tawm mus rau ib lub nroog dhau ib lub nroog, thiab dhau ib lub tsev teev tiam mus rau ib lub, txhim tsa tej koom txoos, thiab tsa tej pov thawj thiab tej xib hwb thoob plaws thaj av hauv cov Neeg Lamas, qhuab qhia thiab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus nyob hauv lawv; thiab li no lawv tau pib muaj kev vam meej heev.

Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

5 Thiab txhiab txhiab leej tau raug coj los paub txog tus Tswv, muaj tseeb tiag, txhiab txhiab leej tau raug coj los ntseeg hauv cov Neeg Nifais tej kev li kev cai; thiab lawv tau raug qhia cov ceev xwm txheej thiab tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau raug cev nqis los rau lub sij hawm no.

6 Thiab tseeb npaum li tus Tswv muaj txoj sia nyob, yeej muaj tseeb tias coob npaum li cov uas tau los ntseeg, los sis coob npaum li cov uas tau raug coj los paub txog qhov tseeb, dhau los ntawm txoj kev qhuab qhia ntawm Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm kev tshwm sim thiab ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab Vajtswv lub hwj chim uas ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob hauv lawv—muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, ib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj sia nyob, yeej muaj cov Neeg Lamas coob npaum li cov uas tau los ntseeg nyob hauv lawv tej lus qhuab qhia, thiab tau hloov los rau hauv tus Tswv, yeej tsis tau ncaim mus li lawm.

7 Vim lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg ncaj ncees; lawv tau tso lawv tej cuab yeej uas siv ntseeb siab tseg, xwv kom lawv thiaj tsis tau tawm tsam Vajtswv ntxiv lawm, thiab tsis tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij ib tug twg li.

8 Nim no, cov no yog lawv cov uas tau hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv:

9 Cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Ixama-ees;

10 Thiab kuj yog cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Midaunais;

11 Thiab kuj yog cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau nyob hauv lub nroog Nifais;

12 Thiab kuj yog cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Sailos, thiab cov uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Seloos, thiab nyob hauv lub nroog Lemu-ees, thiab hauv lub nroog Sinailos.

13 Thiab cov no yog tej npe ntawm tej nroog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau hloov siab tshiab los mus rau tus Tswv; thiab cov no yog lawv cov uas tau tso lawv tej cuab yeej uas siv ntseeb siab tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog; thiab lawv tau yog cov Neeg Lamas tag nrho.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

- 14 Thiab cov neeg Amalej tsis tau raug hloov siab tshiab, tsuas yog ib tug xwb; thiab kuj tsis tau muaj ib tug neeg Amuloos li; tiam sis lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv, thiab kuj tau ua rau cov Neeg Lamas tej siab tawv nyob rau hauv tej qhov ntawm thaj av uas lawv tau nyob, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho lawv tej zos thiab lawv tej nroog.
- 15 Yog li ntawd, peb tau hais tag nrho tej npe ntawm tej nroog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas lawv tau hloov siab lees txim thiab los paub txog qhov tseeb, thiab tau hloov siab tshiab.
- 16 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv thiab cov uas tau hloov siab tshiab tau xav tias kom lawv muaj ib lub npe, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav zoo txawv lawv cov kwv tij; yog li ntawd vaj ntxwv tau sab laj nrog Aloos thiab ntau tus ntawm lawv cov pov thawj, txog lub npe uas lawv yuav ris, xwv kom lawv yuav txawv.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv hu lawv lub npe ua Eethais-Nifais-Lihais; thiab lawv raug hu los ntawm lub npe no thiab tsis hu ua cov Neeg Lamas ntxiv lawm.
- 18 Thiab lawv tau pib ua ib cov neeg nquag heev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau ua phooj ywg zoo nrog cov Neeg Nifais; yog li ntawd, lawv tau qhib ib qho kev phooj ywg nrog lawv, thiab Vajtswv txoj kev foom tsis zoo tau tsis raws lawv qab ntxiv lawm.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Amas 24

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg Amalej thiab cov neeg Amuloos thiab cov Neeg Lamas cov uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Amuloos, thiab cov uas nyob hauv thaj av Helas, thiab cov uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Yeluxalees, thiab ntxiv tag nrho, sawv daws cov uas nyob txhua thaj av ib puag ncig, cov uas tsis tau hloov siab tshiab thiab lawv cov uas tsis tau ris lub npe Eethais-Nifais-Lihais, tau raug txhib los ntawm cov neeg Amalej thiab los ntawm cov neeg Amuloos kom npau taws nkaug lawv cov kwv tij.
- 2 Thiab lawv tej kev ntxub tau rais los mus iab heev rau lawv, kawg tias lawv tau pib ntseev siab rau lawv tus vaj ntxwv, kawg tias lawv tsis xav kom nws ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv lawm; yog li ntawd, lawv tau nqa cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam cov neeg ntawm cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais.
- 3 Nim no vaj ntxwv tau muab lub nceeg vaj rau nws tus tub, thiab nws tau hu nws lub npe ua Eethais-Nifais-Lihais.
- 4 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau tuag nyob rau tib xyoos ntawd uas cov Neeg Lamas tau pib npaj ua rog tawm tsam Vajtswv cov neeg.
- 5 Nim no thaum Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij thiab tag nrho cov uas tau tuaj nrog nws tau pom tej kev npaj ntawm cov Neeg Lamas los rhuav lawv cov kwv tij, lawv tau tuaj rau thaj av Midias, thiab Amoos tau ntsib tag nrho nws cov kwv tij nyob tid; thiab tom qab tid lawv tau los mus rau thaj av Ixama-ees xwv kom lawv yuav muaj ib qho kev sab laj nrog Lamaunais thiab nrog nws tus kwv Eethais-Nifais-Lihais, saib lawv yuav ua dab tsi tiv thaiv lawv tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas.
- 6 Nim no tsis tau muaj ib tug uas nyob hauv tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws cov uas tau hloov siab tshiab rau tus Tswv lawm es yuav kam nqa cuab yeej tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij; tsis kam ua li ntawd, lawv twb tsis kam npaj ua rog; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tus vaj ntxwv kuj tau txib lawv kom lawv tsis txhob ua.

Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

- 7 Nim no, cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau hais rau cov neeg txog qhov teeb meem ntawd: Kuv ua kuv tus Vajtswv tsaug, kuv cov neeg uas kuv hlub, tias peb tus Vajtswv uas muaj hwj chim tau muaj lub siab zoo tau xa peb cov kwv tij no, cov Neeg Nifais, tuaj rau peb tuaj qhuab qhia rau peb, thiab yaum peb los paub txog tej kev li kev cai ntawm peb tej yawg koob phem.
- 8 Thiab saib seb, kuv ua peb tus Vajtswv uas muaj hwj chim tsaug tias nws tau muab ib feem ntawm nws tus ntsuj plig rau peb los nplij peb lub siab, xwv kom peb tau qhib ib txoj kev phooj ywg nrog cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Nifais no.
- 9 Thiab saib seb, kuv kuj ua kuv tus Vajtswv tsaug, tias los ntawm txoj kev qhib txoj kev phooj ywg no peb tau pom txog peb tej kev txhaum, thiab txog ntau yam kev tua neeg uas peb tau ua lawm.
- 10 Thiab kuv kuj ua kuv tus Vajtswv tsaug, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tus Vajtswv uas muaj hwj chim, tias nws tau pub rau peb xwv kom peb yuav hloov siab lees txim txog tej yam no, thiab nws kuj tau zam txim rau peb txog peb tej kev txhaum ntau ntawd thiab tej kev tua neeg uas peb tau ua txhaum, thiab tau tshem tej kev txhaum ntawm peb tej siab tawm mus, dhau los ntawm nws tus Tub tej kev hlub tshua.
- 11 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij es, vim tias nws tsuas tau yog tag nrho tej uas peb muaj peev xwm ua tau xwb, (zoo ib yam li peb tau yog cov uas yuam kev tshaj plaws tej tib neeg sawv daws) los lees tag nrho peb tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tua neeg ntau uas peb tau ua lawm, thiab kom Vajtswv pab muab lawv tshem tawm ntawm peb tej siab mus, vim nws tau yog tag nrho tej uas peb ua tau los hloov siab lees txim txaus nkaus rau Vajtswv xwv kom nws yuav tshem peb tej kev tsuas mus—
- 12 Nim no, kuv cov kwv tij zoo tshaj plaws uas kuv hlub, vim Vajtswv tau tshem peb tej kev tsuas mus lawm, thiab peb tej ntaj tau rais los mus ci heev, ces peb cia li tsis txhob ua kom peb tej ntaj tsuas nrog peb tej kwv tij tej ntshav ntxiv lawm.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

- 13 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis yog, cia peb ceev peb tej ntaj xwv kom lawv tsis txhob tsuas nrog peb cov kwv tij tej ntshav; vim tej zaum, yog peb yuav ua kom peb tej ntaj rov tsuas dua lawv yuav tsis muaj peev xwm raug ntxuav kom ci dua ntxiv lawm dhau los ntawm peb tus Vajtswv uas muaj hwj chim Leej Tub cov ntshav, uas yuav raug nrog rau txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm peb tej kev txhaum.
- 14 Thiab Vajtswv tus uas muaj hwj chim tau muaj txoj kev hlub tshua rau peb, thiab tau ua tej yam no rau peb paub xwv kom peb yuav tsis piam sij; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau ua tej yam no rau peb paub ua ntej, vim nws hlub peb tej ntsuj plig ib yam li nws hlub peb tej me nyuam; yog li ntawd, nyob hauv nws txoj kev hlub tshua nws tau tso nws tej tim tswv los xyuas peb, xwv kom txoj kev cawm seeg yuav raug ua rau peb paub ib yam li rau tej tiam neeg yav tom ntej.
- 15 Au, peb tus Vajtswv mas siab zoo npaum li cas! Thiab nim no saib seb, vim yog nws tau ntau npaum li peb yuav ua tau kom tshem tau peb tej kev tsuas ntawm peb mus, thiab peb tej ntaj tau raug ua kom ci, peb cia li muab lawv zais cia xwv kom lawv yuav raug ceev ci cia, ib yam li ib lo lus tim khawv rau peb tus Vajtswv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg, los sis nyob rau hnuv uas peb yuav raug coj los sawv ntawm nws xub ntiag txiav txim, xwv kom peb yuav tsis tau ua peb tej ntaj tsuas nyob hauv tej ntshav ntawm peb cov kwv tij txij li nws tau muab nws txoj lus rau peb thiab tau ua rau peb dawb huv los ntawm qhov ntawd.
- 16 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, yog peb cov kwv tij nrhiav ua kom peb puas tsuaj, saib seb, peb yuav muab peb tej ntaj zais cia, muaj tseeb tiag, peb twb yuav muab lawv faus tob cia rau hauv av, xwv kom lawv yuav raug ceev ci cia, ib yam li ib lo lus tim khawv tias peb yeej ib txwm tsis tau siv lawv, nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg; thiab yog tias peb cov kwv tij ua kom peb puas tsuaj, saib seb, peb yuav tau mus cuag peb tus Vajtswv thiab yuav raug cawm dim.
- 17 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum vaj ntxwv tau xaus tej lus hais no, thiab tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws tau sib sau tuaj ua ke, lawv tau nqa lawv tej ntaj, thiab tag nrho tej cuab yeej ua rog uas tau raug siv rau txoj kev txo tib neeg tej ntshav, thiab lawv tau muab lawv faus cia tob rau hauv av.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

18 Thiab lawv tau ua li no, nws tau nyob hauv lawv lub qhov muag ib lo lus tim khawv rau Vajtswv, thiab kuj rau tib neeg, tias lawv yuav tsis siv cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam rau txoj kev txo tib neeg tej ntshav ntxiv lawm; thiab lawv tau ua li no, ua pov thawj thiab khi lus nrog Vajtswv, tias yog yuav txo lawv cov kwv tij tej ntshav ces lawv yeem tso lawv txoj sia pov tseg; thiab yog tias yuav txeeb muab ib yam dab tsi ntawm ib tug kwv tij mus ces lawv yeem zoo siab muab rau nws xwb; thiab yog tias yuav siv lawv tej sij hawm rau txoj kev tub nkeeg ces lawv yeem ua hauj lwm kub siab lug nrog lawv tej tes xwb.

19 Thiab li no peb pom tias, thaum cov Neeg Lamas no tau raug coj los ntseeg thiab paub qhov tseeb, lawv nyob ruaj nrees, thiab yeem tiv mus txog qhov tuag tsis kam ua txhaum; thiab li no peb pom tias lawv tau faus lawv tej cuab yeej ntawm txoj kev thaj yeeb, los sis lawv tau faus tej cuab yeej ua rog, rau txoj kev thaj yeeb.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, tau npaj ua rog, thiab tau tuaj rau pem thaj av Nifais rau txoj kev ua kom vaj ntxwv puas tsuaj, thiab muab lwm tus los theej nws qhov chaw, thiab kuj ua kom cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais puas tsuaj tawm ntawm thaj av mus.

21 Nim no thaum cov neeg tau pom tias lawv tau tab tom tuaj tawm tsam lawv lawv tau tawm mus ntsib lawv, thiab tau pw pua lua rau hauv av rau ntawm lawv xub ntiag, thiab tau pib hu tus Tswv lub npe; thiab li no lawv tau nyob zoo li no thaum uas cov Neeg Lamas tau pib tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau pib xuas ntaj tua lawv.

22 Thiab tsis tau ntsib kev tiv thaiv zoo li no, lawv tau tua lawv ib txhiab thiab tsib leeg; thiab peb paub tias lawv tau koob hmoov, vim lawv tau mus nrog lawv tus Vajtswv nyob lawm.

23 Nim no thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias lawv cov kwv tij tsis khiav ntawm rab ntaj mus li, thiab lawv kuj tsis tig mus rau sab tes xis los sis sab laug, tiam sis lawv yuav pw ntog thiab piam sij, thiab qhuas Vajtswv txawm yog nyob thaum tab tom raug piam sij los ntawm ntaj—

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

24 Nim no thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom li no lawv tau tsum tsis tua lawv lawm; thiab tau muaj ntau tus cov uas tej siab tau xav thiab mob nyob hauv lawv rau cov uas tau tuag los ntawm ntaj, vim lawv tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm tej yam uas lawv tau ua lawm.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog txawb pov tseg, thiab lawv tsis kam nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ntxiv li lawm, vim lawv tau raug ua mob siab rau tej kev tua neeg uas lawv tau ua txhaum lawm; lawv tau pw ntog ib yam li lawv cov kwv tij, vam khom rau tej kev hlub tshua ntawm cov uas muab tej ntaj tsa yuav tua lawv.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias Vajtswv cov neeg tau sib koom hnub ntawd coob dua li cov uas tau raug tua lawm; thiab cov uas tau raug tua lawm puav leej yog neeg ncaj ncees, yog li ntawd peb tsis muaj qhov uas tsis paub tseeb tiam sis tias lawv yeej raug cawm lawm tiag.

27 Thiab tsis tau muaj ib tug phem uas raug tua nyob hauv lawv li; tiam sis tau muaj ntau dua li ib txhiab leej tau raug coj los paub txog qhov tseeb; li no peb pom hais tias tus Tswv ua hauj lwm nyob hauv ntau txoj kev mus rau txoj kev cawm dim ntawm nws cov neeg.

28 Nim no cov coob tshaj plaws ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau tua lawv cov kwv tij coob tug mas yog cov neeg Amalej thiab cov neeg Amuloos, yog feem coob tshaj ntawm cov uas tau ua raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm Nihos.

29 Nim no, nyob rau hauv cov uas tau koom nrog tus Tswv cov neeg, tsis muaj ib tug uas yog neeg Amalej los sis neeg Amuloos, los sis cov uas tau ua raws tus txheej txheem ntawm Nihos, tiam sis lawv tsuas tau yog Lamas thiab Lemu-ees tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv nkaus xwb.

30 Thiab li no peb muaj peev xwm paub tau, tias tom qab ib cov neeg tau raug ua pom kev ib zaug lawm los ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, thiab tau muaj kev paub zoo txog tej uas ntsig txog txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab tom qab ntawd tau poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txog thiab kev txhaum, lawv rais los mus tawv dua li qub, thiab li ntawd lawv lub neej yuav muaj phem dua li yog lawv ib txwm tsis tau paub dua tej yam no li.

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

Amas 25

- 1 Thiab saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas ntawd tau npau taws heev ntxiv vim lawv tau tua lawv cov kwv tij; yog li ntawd lawv tau cog lus pauj txiaj ntsig rau cov Neeg Nifais; thiab lawv tau tsum tsis tua cov neeg ntawm cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais nyob lub sij hawm ntawd ntxiv li lawm.
- 2 Tiam sis lawv tau coj lawv tej tub rog thiab tau mus rau tom tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Xalabelas, thiab tau tawm tsam cov neeg uas tau nyob hauv thaj av Amaunaihas, thiab tau ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab tom qab ntawd, lawv tau muaj ntau npluav rog nrog cov Neeg Nifais, qhov uas lawv tau raug raws khiav thiab raug tua.
- 4 Thiab nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas cov tau raug tua yuav luag tag cov noob ntawm Amuloos thiab nws cov kwv tij, uas tau yog Nau-as cov pov thawj, thiab lawv tau raug tua los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tes;
- 5 Thiab cov seem tshuav, tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov sab hnuv tuaj, thiab tau siv hwj chim thiab cai rau cov Neeg Lamas, tau ua kom ntau tus ntawm cov Neeg Lamas yuav tsum piam sij los ntawm hluav taws vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg—
- 6 Vim ntau tus ntawm lawv, tom qab uas tau nyiaj kev ploj ntau thiab kev txom nyem ntau heev, tau pib raug txhib rov nco txog tej lus uas Aloos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau qhuab qhia rau lawv nyob hauv lawv thaj av; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib tsis ntseeg tej kev li kev cai ntawm lawv tej yawg koob, thiab ntseeg hauv tus Tswy, thiab tias nws tau muab hwj chim loj rau cov Neeg Nifais; thiab li no lawv tau muaj ntau leej tau hloov siab tshiab nyob hauv hav zoov.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias cov thawj coj uas tau yog cov seem ntawm Amuloos cov me nyuam tau kom lawv yuav tsum raug tua kom tuag, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov uas tau ntseeg hauv tej yam no.
- 8 Nim no txoj kev tua cov neeg ntseeg no tau ua kom lawv cov kwv tij ntau tus yuav tsum raug txhib kom npau taws; thiab tau pib muaj kev sib ceg nyob hauv hav zoov; thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau pib plob tua Amuloos thiab nws cov kwv tij cov noob thiab tau pib tua lawv; thiab lawv tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov uas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj.

Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

- 9 Thiab saib seb lawv raug plob tua nyob rau lub sij hawm no los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas. Li no Anpinadais tej lus tau raug muaj los tiag, tej uas nws tau hais txog tej noob ntawm cov pov thawj uas tau ua kom nws raug txoj kev tuag los ntawm hluav taws.
- 10 Vim nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Yam dab tsi uas nej yuav ua rau kuv yuav yog ib lub cim txog tej yam uas yuav los.
- 11 Thiab nim no Anpinadais tau yog thawj tug uas raug txoj kev tuag los ntawm hluav taws vim yog nws txoj kev ntseeg Vajtswv; nim no qhov no yog qhov uas nws tau hais, tias ntau tus yuav raug txoj kev tuag los ntawm hluav taws, ib yam li uas nws tau raug lawm.
- 12 Thiab nws tau hais rau Nau-as cov pov thawj tias lawv tej noob yuav ua kom ntau leej raug coj mus tua, ib yam li nws tau raug lawm, thiab tias lawv yuav raug khiav ri niab rau txhia qhov chaw thiab raug tua, twb ib yam li ib tug yaj uas tsis muaj tswv es raug raws thiab tua los ntawm tej tsiaj qus; thiab nim no saib seb, tej lus no tau raug muaj tseeb tiag, vim lawv tau raug raws los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tau raug plob tua, thiab lawv tau raug tua.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias lawv kov tsis yeej cov Neeg Nifais lawv tau rov qab mus rau tom lawv thaj av; thiab ntau leej ntawm lawv tau los mus nyob rau hauv thaj av Ixama-ees thiab thaj av Nifais, thiab lawv tau koom rau Vajtswv cov neeg, uas tau yog cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais.
- 14 Thiab lawv kuj tau faus lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, ib yam li lawv cov kwv tij tau ua lawm, thiab lawv tau pib ua ib co neeg ncaj nces; thiab lawv tau taug tus Tswv tej kev, thiab tau yeem coj nws tej lus txib thiab nws tej kev li kev cai.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau coj Mauxes txoj kev cai; vim nws tau tsim nyog tias lawv yuav tsum coj Mauxes txoj kev cai li qub, vim nws tseem tsis tau muaj puv npo. Tiam sis tsis tas li Mauxes txoj kev cai xwb, lawv tau tos ntsoov rau Khetos txoj kev nqis los, xav hais tias Mauxes txoj kev cai tau yog ib lub cim ntawm nws txoj kev nqis los, thiab ntseeg tias lawv yuav tsum tau coj kev li kev cai sab nraum tawv mus kom txog lub sij hawm uas nws yuav tshwm sim los rau lawv.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 Nim no lawv tsis tau xav tias txoj kev cawm seeg tau los ntawm Mauxes txoj kev cai los; tiam sis Mauxes txoj kev cai tau pab ua kom lawv tej kev ntseeg muaj zog nyob hauv Khetos; thiab twb yog li no lawv thiaj tseem tau ceev ib txoj kev cia siab los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, mus rau txoj kev cawm seeg uas nyob mus ib txhis, vam khom ntsoov rau tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, uas tau hais tej yam uas yuav muaj los.

17 Thiab nim no saib seb, Amoos, thiab Aloos, thiab Oonaws, thiab Hinais, thiab lawv cov kwv tij tau zoo siab heev, vim txoj kev vam meej uas lawv tau muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas, tau pom tias tus Tswv tau pub rau lawv raws li lawv tej kev thov Vajtswy, thiab tau pom tias nws kuj tau ua raws li nws txoj lus rau lawv nyob hauv txhua txhia yam.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

Amas 26

- 1 Thiab nim no, cov no yog Amoons tej lus rau nws cov kwv tij, uas hais li no: Kuv cov kwv tij thiab kuv cov kwv npawg, saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, peb yeej muaj qhov txaus zoo siab heev; vim peb puas muaj peev xwm xav tau tias Vajtswv yuav pub rau peb tej koob hmoov zoo npaum li no thaum peb pib pem thaj av Xalabelas?
- 2 Thiab nim no, kuv thov nug, nws tau muab yam koob hmoov tseem ceeb dab tsi rau peb? Nej puas muaj cuab kav qhia tau?
- 3 Saib seb, kuv teb rau nej tias; peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, twb tau nyob hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj, muaj tseeb tiag, twb nyob hauv lub qhov tob uas tsaus ntuj tshaj plaws, tiam sis saib seb, lawv pes tsawg leej uas tau coj los pom Vajtswv txoj kev kaj uas zoo tshaj plaws! Thiab qhov no yog txoj koob hmoov uas tau muab rau peb, xwv kom peb tau raug ua cuab yeej nyob hauv Vajtswv txhais tes kom coj txog txoj hauj lwm tseem ceeb no.
- 4 Saib seb, txhiab txhiab leej ntawm lawv zoo siab heev tiag, thiab tau raug coj los mus rau hauv Vajtswv pab.
- 5 Saib seb, daim teb tau siav lawm, thiab nej tau koob hmoov, vim nej tau cev liag mus hlais, thiab tau muab sau los ntawm nej tej dag zog, muaj tseeb tiag, nej tau ua hauj lwm tag nrho ib hnuv ntev loo; thiab saib seb tej teg nplej uas nej pav tau! Thiab lawv yuav raug sau ua ke mus rau hauv txhab, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis raug xiam mus.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav tsis raug nthwv cua daj cua dub nplawm kom vau nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv yuav tsis raug nthwv cua moj lig kaw ntsawj kom tawg ri niab; tiam sis thaum nthwv cua daj cua dub los lawv yuav raug sau los ua ke rau hauv lawv tej chaw, xwv kom nthwv cua daj cua dub yuav tsis muaj peev xwm mus txog lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv yuav tsis raug tej cua nyaum tshuab mus rau tej qhov uas tej yeeb ncuab xav cab lawv mus.
- 7 Tiam sis saib seb, lawv nyob hauv tus Tswv txhais tes ntawm txoj kev sau qoob loo, thiab lawv yeej yog nws li; thiab nws yuav tsa lawv sawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.

Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

- 8 Peb tus Vajtswv lub npe cia li tau koob hmoov; peb cia li hu nkauj qhuas nws, muaj tseeb tiag, peb cia li ua tsaug rau nws lub npe dawb huv, vim nws yeej ua tej hauj lwm uas ncaj ncees mus ib txhis li.
- 9 Vim yog hais tias peb tsis tau tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahelas tuaj, peb cov kwv tij uas peb hlub no, cov uas tau hlub peb heev, yeej tseem yuav raug tsim txom nrog txoj kev ntxub tawm tsam peb, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tseem yuav yog tej neeg qhua rau Vajtswv.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amoos tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, nws tus tij laug Aloos tau cem nws, hais tias: Amoos, kuv ntshai hais tias tsam koj txoj kev xyiv fab yuav tau coj koj mus rau txoj kev khav theeb lawm.
- 11 Tiam sis Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yeej tsis khav nyob hauv kuv tus kheej lub zog, los sis hauv kuv tus kheej txoj kev txawj ntse; tiam sis saib seb, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab twb muaj puv npo lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv lub siab muaj kev xyiv fab puv nkaus, thiab kuv yuav xyiv fab nyob hauv kuv tus Vajtswv.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub hais tias kuv yeej ua tsis tau dab tsi li; yog hais txog kuv lub zog kuv tsis muaj zog; yog li ntawd kuv yuav tsis khav txog kuv tus kheej, tiam sis kuv yuav khav txog kuv tus Vajtswv, vim nyob hauv nws lub zog kuv yeej muaj peev xwm ua tau ib puas yam tsav; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb loj uas peb tau ua nyob rau hauv thaj av no, vim tej uas peb yuav qhuas nws lub npe mus ib txhis.
- 13 Saib seb, pes tsawg txhiab leej ntawm peb cov kwv tij uas nws tau tso tawm ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej kev tsim txom mob nkeeg; thiab lawv tau raug coj los hu nkauj txog txoj kev hlub ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim, thiab qhov no vim yog lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus uas nyob hauv peb, yog li ntawd tsis yog peb muaj qhov uas yuav tsum zoo siab heev los?
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, peb muaj qhov zoo kawg los qhuas nws mus ib txhis, vim nws yog tus Vajtswv uas Siab Tshaj Plaws, thiab tau tso peb tej kwv tij tawm ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej saw hlau.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug kaw cia nrog txoj kev tsaus ntuj uas kav ib txhis thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj; tiam sis saib seb, nws tau coj lawv los rau hauv nws txoj kev kaj uas kav ib txhis, muaj tseeb tiag, mus rau txoj kev cawm seej uas kav ib txhis; thiab lawv raug thaiv ib puag ncig nrog txoj kev siab dawb uas piv tsis tau ntawm nws txoj kev hlub; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tau ua tej cuab yeej nyob hauv nws txhais tes rau txoj kev ua txoj hauj lwm loj thiab tseem ceeb no.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, peb cia li zoo siab, muaj tseeb tiag, peb yuav xyiv fab nyob hauv tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yuav zoo siab, vim peb txoj kev xyiv fab twb muaj puv npo lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yuav qhuas peb tus Vajtswv mus ib txhis. Saib seb leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm zoo siab ntau dhau lawm nyob hauv tus Tswv? Muaj tseeb tiag, leej twg yuav muaj cuab kav hais ntau dhau lawm txog nws lub hwj chim loj, thiab txog nws txoj kev hlub tshua, thiab txog nws txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj rau noob neej? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, kuv twb tsis muaj peev xwm hais feem me tshaj plaws uas kuv xav tau.
- 17 Leej twg yuav xav tau hais tias peb tus Vajtswv yuav ua siab zoo ua luaj ib yam li tau pab tshem peb dim tawm ntawm peb txoj kev phem, txoj kev txhaum, thiab qhov chaw vuab tsuab?
- 18 Saib seb, peb tau tawm mus nyob hauv txoj kev npau taws, nrog txoj kev ntxias kub ntxhov phem kom rhuav nws lub koom txoos.
- 19 Au ces, vim li cas nws ho tsis tau xa peb mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas phem kawg nkaus, muaj tseeb tiag, vim li cas nws ho tsis tau cia rab ntaj ntawm nws txoj kev ncaj ncees poob los rau peb, thiab rau txim rau peb mus rau txoj kev uas tsis muaj chaw cia siab nyob mus ib txhis?
- 20 Au, kuv tus ntsuj plig es, yuav luag zoo li uas tau, tsiv ntawm txoj kev xav ntawd. Saib seb, nws tsis tau siv nws txoj kev txim lij rau peb, tiam sis nyob hauv nws txoj kev hlub tshua heev tau coj peb los dhau tus kwj tob tob ntawm lub qhov tuag uas kav ib txhis ntawd thiab txoj kev nyuaj siab ntawd, xwv kom peb tej ntsuj plig thiaj tau kev cawm seej.
- 21 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, muaj tus neeg ntiaj teb dab tsi uas paub tej yam no? Kuv hais rau nej tias, yeej tsis muaj ib tug twg uas paub tej yam no, tsuas yog cov uas hloov siab lees txim lawm xwb.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus uas hloov siab lees txim thiab xyaum kom muaj kev ntseeg, thiab ua tau tej hauj lwm zoo, thiab thov Vajtsv tsis tseg tsis tu ncu—rau cov zoo li ntawd twb raug cia kom paub Vajtsv tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog; muaj tseeb tiag, rau cov zoo li ntawd yuav raug muab ua kom paub tej uas ib txwm tsis tau paub dua; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav raug muab rau cov zoo li ntawd kom koj tau txhiab txhiab leej los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, ib yam li uas tau muab rau peb kom koj peb cov kwv tij no los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 23 Nim no nej puas nco qab, kuv cov kwv tij, tias peb tau hais rau peb cov kwv tij nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas tias, peb nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais, mus qhuab qhia rau peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tau luag thum peb no los?
- 24 Vim lawv tau hais rau peb tias: Nej xav hais tias nej muaj peev xwm koj tau cov Neeg Lamas los mus paub qhov tseeb no los? Nej xav hais tias nej muaj peev xwm yaum cov Neeg Lamas txog txoj kev tsis yog ntawm lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, thaum uas lawv yog ib cov neeg tawv ncauj; cov uas muaj tej siab nyiam txoj kev ua kom ntshav nrog; cov uas txoj sia tau raug siv nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees uas phem tshaj plaws; cov uas muaj tej kev tau yog li ib tug neeg txhaum tej kev txij li thaum chiv keeb los? Nim no kuv cov kwv tij, nej nco qab tias qhov no tau yog lawv tej lus.
- 25 Thiab lawv tau hais ntxiv tias: Peb cia li nqa cuab yeej tawm tsam lawv, xwv kom peb tau ua kom lawv puas tsuaj thiab lawv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tawm ntawm thaj av, nyob tsam lawv kov yeej peb thiab ua kom peb puas tsuaj.
- 26 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, peb tau tuaj rau hauv hav zoov tsis yog nrog qhov uas tuaj ua kom peb tej kwv tij puas tsuaj, tiam sis nrog txoj kev xav tias tej zaum nyaj peb yuav cawm tau lawv ib txhia qho tug dim.
- 27 Nim no thaum peb nyuaj siab, thiab peb tau yuav luag tig rov qab, saib seb, tus Tswv tau nplij peb siab, thiab tau hais tias: Cia li mus rau hauv nej cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, thiab ua siab ntev nyiaj nej tej kev txom nyem, thiab kuv yuav pub kom nej ua tau li nej siab xav.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

28 Thiab nim no, peb tau tuaj, thiab tau nyob hauv lawv; thiab peb tau ua siab ntev nyob hauv peb tej kev txom nyem, thiab peb tau nyiaj txhua yam uas tsis muaj siv; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau mus ib lub tsev rau ib lub tsev, vam khom ntsoov rau tej kev hlub tshua ntawm lub ntiaj teb—tsis yog vam rau tej kev hlub tshua ntawm lub ntiaj teb xwb tiam sis rau Vajtswv tej kev hlub tshua.

29 Thiab peb tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv tej tsev thiab tau qhia lawv, thiab peb tau qhia lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tau qhia lawv nyob saum lawv tej roob; thiab peb kuj tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv tej tuam tsev thiab lawv tej tsev sab laj thiab qhia lawv; thiab peb tau raug ntiab tawm, thiab tau raug thuam, thiab raug nto qaub ncaug rau, thiab raug xuas ncuav pias rau peb tej plhu; peb raug xuas pob zeb ntaus, thiab raug txhom thiab khi nrog tej hlua khov khov, thiab raug pov rau hauv qhov taub; thiab dhau los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev txawj ntse peb tau raug tso dim dua.

30 Thiab peb tau raug txhua yam kev txom nyem, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no, xwv kom tej zaum peb yuav yog tej cuab yeej ntawm txoj kev cawm ib txhia neeg dim; thiab peb tau xav hais tias peb txoj kev xyiv fab yuav muaj puv npo yog tias tej zaum peb muaj peev xwm ua tej cuab yeej ntawm txoj kev cawm tej neeg ib txhia.

31 Nim no saib seb, peb muaj peev xwm tos ntsoov thiab pom tej kev tawg paj txi txiv ntawm peb tej dag zog; thiab lawv puas tsawg? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tsawg, lawv coob kawg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb yeej muaj peev xwm ua tim khawv txog lawv txoj kev ntseeg tiag tiag, vim yog lawv txoj kev hlub uas muaj rau lawv tej kwv tij thiab rau peb.

32 Vim saib seb, lawv tau yeem tso lawv txoj sia dua li uas muab lawv tej yeeb ncuab txoj sia; thiab lawv tau muab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog faus cia tob rau hauv av, vim yog lawv txoj kev hlub uas lawv muaj rau lawv cov kwv tij.

33 Thiab nim no saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, puas tau muaj kev hlub loj zoo li ntawd nyob tag nrho rau hauv thaj av? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis muaj, nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais los twb tsis tau muaj thiab.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

34 Vim saib seb, lawv yuav nqa cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij; lawv yuav tsis tau cia lawv tus kheej raug tua. Tiam sis saib seb pes tsawg tus ntawm lawv cov no tau tso lawv txoj sia; thiab peb paub tias lawv tau mus cuag lawv tus Vajtswv lawm, vim yog lawv txoj kev hlub thiab lawv txoj kev ntxub txoj kev txhaum.

35 Nim no peb tseem tsis muaj dab tsi los zoo siab los? Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej tias, yeej ib txwm tsis tau muaj neeg uas tau muaj qhov zoo siab heev npaum li peb, txij li thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv txoj kev xyiv fab twb raug coj lawm deb, twb mus txog rau txoj kev khav nyob hauv kuv tus Vajtswv; vim nws muaj tag nrho ib puas yam tsav hwj chim, ib puas yam tsav kev txawj ntse, thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav kev to taub; nws to taub ib puas yam tsav, thiab nws yog ib Tug ua muaj kev hlub tshua, kawg nkaus tias tau muab txoj kev cawm seej, rau cov uas yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg nws lub npe.

36 Nim no yog tias qhov no yog txoj kev khav theeb, txawm li ntawd los kuv yuav khav; vim qhov no yog kuv txoj sia thiab kuv txoj kev kaj, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab thiab kuv txoj kev cawm seej, thiab kuv txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm txoj kev nyuaj siab uas kav ib txhis. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tus Vajtswv lub npe cia li tau koob hmoov, tus uas tau nco ntsoov txog cov neeg no, cov uas yog ib ceg ntawm tsoob ntoo Ixayees, thiab tau ploj ncaim ntawm nws lub cev mus rau pej kum teb; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais tias, kuv tus Vajtswv lub npe cia li tau koob hmoov, tus uas tau nco ntsoov txog peb, cov neeg loj leeb rau hauv pej kum teb.

37 Nim no kuv cov kwv tij, peb pom tias Vajtswv yeej nco ntsoov txog neeg txhua tus, txawm yog lawv yuav nyob hauv thaj av twg; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yeej suav ntsoov nws cov neeg, thiab txoj kev hlub tshua ntawm nws lub siab twb nyob rau tag nrho ntiaj teb no. Nim no qhov no yog kuv txoj kev xyiv fab, thiab kuv txoj kev ua tsaug loj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav ua kuv tus Vajtswv tsaug mus ib txhis li. Amees.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

Amas 27

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas uas tau mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais tau nrhiav pom, tom qab uas lawv muaj ntau yam nyuaj ua kom lawv cov no puas tsuaj, tias nws tau yog ib qho tsis muaj qab hau nrhiav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, lawv tau tig rov qab mus rau thaj av Nifais.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg Amalej, vim yog lawv txoj kev ploj, tau raug npau taws heev. Thiab thaum lawv tau pom tias lawv tsis muaj cuab kav nrhiav paj txiaj ntsig rau cov Neeg Nifais, lawv tau pib txhib cov neeg kom npau taws tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij, cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib rov qab ua kom lawv cov no puas tsuaj dua.
- 3 Nim no cov neeg no tau rov tsis kam nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog dua, thiab lawv tau cia lawv tus kheej raug tua raws li lawv tej yeeb ncuab siab nyiam.
- 4 Nim no thaum Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau pom txoj hauj lwm puas tsuaj no nyob hauv cov uas lawv tau hlub heev, thiab nyob hauv cov uas tau hlub lawv heev—vim lawv tau raug saib zoo li lawv tau yog tej tim tswv uas tau xa los ntawm Vajtswv los cawm lawv dim ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis—yog li ntawd, thaum Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau pom txoj hauj lwm puas tsuaj loj no, lawv tau raug txav nrog txoj kev siab hlub, thiab lawv tau hais rau vaj ntxwv hais tias:
- 5 Cia peb sau tus Tswv cov neeg no los ua ke, thiab cia peb nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalahelas mus cuag peb cov kwv tij cov Neeg Nifais, thiab khiav tawm ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes, kom peb thiaj tsis raug puas tsuaj.
- 6 Tiam sis vaj ntxwv tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais yuav ua kom peb puas tsuaj, vim yog tej kev tua neeg coob thiab tej kev txhaum uas peb tau ua rau lawv.
- 7 Thiab Amoos tau hais tias: Kuv yuav mus thiab nug tus Tswv, thiab yog nws hais rau peb tias, cia li nqis mus rau nram peb cov kwv tij, koj puas yuav mus?

Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

- 8 Thiab vaj ntxwv tau hais rau nws tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, yog tus Tswv hais rau peb tias mus, peb yuav nqis mus rau nram peb cov kwv tij, thiab peb yuav ua lawv qhev mus txog thaum peb kho tau rau lawv tej kev tua neeg coob thiab tej kev txhaum uas peb tau ua rau lawv lawm.
- 9 Tiam sis Amoos tau hais rau nws tias: Qhov ntawd txhaum peb cov kwv tij txoj kev cai, uas tau raug tsim los ntawm kuv txiv, tias yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj ib tug twg ua qhev nyob hauv lawv; yog li ntawd cia peb nqis mus thiab vam khom rau peb cov kwv tij tej kev hlub tshua.
- 10 Tiam sis vaj ntxwv tau hais rau nws tias: Nug tus Tswv, thiab yog nws hais rau peb tias mus, peb yuav mus; tsis li ntawd ces peb yuav piam sij nyob hauv thaj av.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos tau mus thiab tau nug tus Tswv, thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias:
- 12 Coj cov neeg no tawm ntawm thaj av no mus, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij; vim Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tau tuav cov neeg Amalej tej siab ruaj heev li, cov uas tau txhib kom cov Neeg Lamas npau taws tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij kom muab lawv tua; yog li ntawd nej cia li tawm ntawm thaj av no mus; thiab cov neeg no tau koob hmoov nyob hauv tiam no, vim kuv yuav hwm lawv cia.
- 13 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amoos tau mus thiab tau hais rau vaj ntxwv tag nrho tej lus uas tus Tswv tau hais rau nws.
- 14 Thiab lawv tau sau tag nrho lawv cov neeg tuaj ua ke, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho tus Tswv cov neeg, thiab tau sau tag nrho lawv tej pab yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu los ua ke, thiab tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab tau los rau hauv hav zoov uas tau muab thaj av Nifais faib tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau los txog ze rau tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv thiab kuv cov kwv tij yuav tawm mus rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab nej yuav tsum nyob qhov no mus txog thaum peb rov qab tuaj; thiab peb yuav sim peb cov kwv tij tej siab, saib lawv puas yuav kam nej los rau hauv lawv thaj av.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas Amoos tseem tab tom tawm mus rau hauv thaj av, ces nws thiab nws cov kwv tij tau ntsib Amas, nyob rau hauv qhov chaw uas tau hais txog lawm; thiab saib seb, txoj kev sib ntsib zaum no tau yog ib txoj uas xyiv fab heev.

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

- 17 Nim no Amoos tau xyiv fab heev kawg nkaus tias nws tau puv npo; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau raug nqos los ntawm nws tus Vajtsvwn txoj kev xyiv fab, kawg nkaus tias nws tau qaug zog; thiab nws tau rov qab qaug rau hauv av dua.
- 18 Nim no qhov no tsis yog txoj kev xyiv fab heev los? Saib seb, qhov no yog txoj kev xyiv fab uas tsis muaj leej twg tau txais tsuas yog tus uas hloov siab lees txim tiag tiag thiab tus uas txo hwj chim los nrhiav txoj kev zoo siab xwb.
- 19 Nim no Amas txoj kev xyiv fab uas tau ntsib nws cov kwv tij tau yog ib qho zoo kawg tiag, thiab txoj kev xyiv fab ntawm Aloos, ntawm Oonaws, thiab Hinai; tiam sis saib seb lawv tej kev xyiv fab ho tsis tau tshaj lawv tej zog.
- 20 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau coj nws cov kwv tij rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Xalahelas; mus rau hauv nws lub tsev kiag. Thiab lawv tau mus thiab tau qhia rau tus thawj tub txiav txim tag nrho ib puas yam tsav uas tau tshwm sim rau lawv nyob rau hauv thaj av Nifais, nyob rau hauv lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tus thawj tub txiav txim tau xa ib tsab xov mus thoob plaws rau txhua thaj av, xav tau suab ntawm cov neeg saib puas kam txais lawv cov kwv tij, cov uas tau yog cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias tej suab ntawm cov neeg tau los, hais tias: Saib seb, peb yuav kam muab thaj av Ntsawsoos, uas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj uas npuab dej hiav txwv, uas txuas thaj av Huaj Vam, uas nyob sab nram hav ntawm thaj av Huaj Vam; thiab thaj av Ntsawsoos no yog thaj av uas peb yuav muab rau peb cov kwv tij ua ib qho qub txeeg qub teg.
- 23 Thiab saib seb, peb yuav tso peb tej tub rog nyob nruab nram ntawm thaj av Ntsawsoos thiab thaj av Nifais, xwv kom peb yuav tso kwm tau peb cov kwv tij nyob hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos; thiab peb ua li no rau peb cov kwv tij, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntshai nqa tej cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij ntshai tsam lawv yuav ua txhaum; thiab lawv txoj kev ntshai heev no tau los vim yog lawv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim mob heev uas lawv tau muaj lawm, rau lawv tej kev tua neeg ntau thiab lawv tej kev phem heev.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

- 24 Thiab nim no saib seb, peb yuav ua li no rau peb cov kwv tij, xwv kom lawv yuav tau thaj av Ntsawsoos ua qub txeeg qub teg; thiab peb yuav muab peb tej tub rog saib xyuas lawv thaiv lawv tej yeeb ncuab, tsuas yog kom lawv yuav muab qho me ntsis ntawm lawv tej khoom rau peb kom pab peb tej tub rog kom muaj txawm peem xwb.
- 25 Nim no, tau muaj tias thaum Amoos tau hnov qhov no, nws tau rov qab mus cuag cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais, thiab Amas kuj nrog nws thiab, mus rau tom hav zoov, qhov uas lawv tau rub lawv tej tseep pheb suab ntaub, thiab tau ua rau lawv paub tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no. Thiab Amas kuj tau qhia rau lawv txog nws txoj kev los ntseeg Vajtswv, nrog Amoos thiab Aloos, thiab nws cov kwv tij.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias qhov ntawd tau ua txoj kev xyiv fab heev nyob rau hauv lawv. Thiab lawv tau nqis mus rau nram thaj av Ntsawsoos, thiab tau muab thaj av Ntsawsoos; thiab lawv tau raug hu los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais ua Amoos cov neeg; yog li ntawd lawv tau raug zoo txawv los ntawm lub npe ntawd txij li ntawd mus lawm.
- 27 Thiab lawv tau nyob nrog cov Neeg Nifais, thiab kuj raug suav nrog cov neeg uas tau yog cov ntseeg ntawm Vajtswv lub koom txoos. Thiab lawv kuj zoo txawv rau lawv tej kev mob siab rau Vajtswv, thiab rau tib neeg; vim lawv tau ua neeg siab ncaj thiab siab zoo huv si nyob hauv tag nrho txhua yam; thiab lawv tau nyob ruaj nrees hauv txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Khetos, mus txog hnuv uas kawg.
- 28 Thiab lawv tau saib txoj kev tua lawv cov kwv tij nrog txoj kev tsis nyiam tshaj plaws; thiab lawv yuav tsis muaj cuab kav raug yaum tau los nqa tej cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam lawv tej kwv tij; thiab lawv tsis tau ntshai txog txoj kev tuag ib nyuag qhov li, vim lawv txoj kev cia siab thiab tej kev paub txog Khetos thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; yog li ntawd, rau lawv txoj kev tuag tau raug Khetos txoj kev kov yeej muab nws nqos lawm.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, lawv yeej yuav nyiaj txoj kev tuag uas mob tshaj thiab nyuaj siab tshaj uas raug lawv tej kwv tij ua, ua ntej lawv yuav nqa ntaj los sis nqa liag tua lawv.
- 30 Thiab li no lawv tau yog ib cov neeg rau siab thiab ntxim hlub, ib cov neeg uas tau koob hmoov ntau heev los ntawm tus Tswv.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

Amas 28

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amoos cov neeg tau mus nyob rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos, thiab ib lub koom txoos kuj raug tsim nyob rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos, thiab tau tso cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog nyob ib puang ncig thaj av Ntsawsoos, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob tag nrho rau tej ciam teb ib ncig thaj av Xalahelas; saib seb cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau raws lawv cov kwv tij qab tuaj rau tom hav zoov.
- 2 Thiab li no tau muaj ib npluav rog hnyav heev; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib npluav uas ib txwm tsis tau paub nyob tag nrho hauv cov neeg nyob hauv thaj av txij li lub caij Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kaum tawm txhiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau raug tua thiab tau tawg ri niab mus rau lwm qhov.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj muaj kev raug tua tuag coob leej nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais; txawm li ntawd los, cov Neeg Lamas tseem tau raug raws thiab tawg ri niab, thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau rov qab los dua rau lawv thaj av.
- 4 Thiab nim no qhov no tau yog ib lub caij uas tau muaj ib qho kev txom nyem loj thiab quaj ntsuag uas tau hnov thooob plaws tag nrho thaj av, nyob tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Nifais—
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev quaj ntawm tej poj ntsuam nyuaj siab rau lawv tej txiv, thiab ntawm tej txiv nyuaj siab rau lawv tej tub, thiab tej ntxhais rau cov kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, tus kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, tus kwv tij rau tus txiv; thiab li no txoj kev quaj ntawm txoj kev nyuaj siab tau raug hnov nyob tag nrho hauv lawv, nyuaj siab rau lawv tej kwv tij neej tsa uas tau raug tua lawm.
- 6 Thiab nim no qhov no tau yog ib hnuv uas tu siab heev li; muaj tseeb tiag, ib lub caij uas muaj lawm tiag tiag, thiab ib lub caij uas muaj kev yoo mov thiab thov Vajtswv heev.
- 7 Thiab li no tau kawg xyoo thib kaum tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais;

Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

8 Thiab qhov no yog zaj ntawm Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij, lawv tej kev mus rau hauv thaj av Nifais, lawv tej kev txom nyem nyob hauv thaj av, lawv tej kev tu siab, thiab lawv tej kev txom nyem, thiab lawv tej kev xyiv fab uas tsis to taub txog, thiab txoj kev txais tos thiab txoj kev tsis muaj xwm txheej ntawm cov kwv tij nyob hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos. Thiab nim no thov tus Tswv, tib neeg sawv daws tus Txxhiv Dim, foom koob hmoov rau lawv tej ntsuj plig mus ib txhis li.

9 Thiab qhov no yog zaj ntawm tej tsov rog thiab tej kev sib ceg nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tej tsov rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas; thiab xyoo thib kaum tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim tau tas.

10 Thiab txij li thawj xyoos mus rau xyoo thib kaum tsib tau muaj kev puas tsuaj rau ntau txhiab leej txoj sia; muaj tseeb tiag, qhov ntawd tau muaj ib qhov kev ntshav nrog phem heev.

11 Thiab ntau txhiab leej tej cev tau raug muab faus rau hauv av, thaum ntau txhiab leej tej cev tab tom lwj tsus rau saum npoo av; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntau txhiab leej tab tom nyuaj siab rau lawv tej kwv tij neej tsa uas tau ploj lawm, vim lawv tau muaj qhov ntshai, raws li tej lus cog tseg ntawm tus Tswv, tias lawv tau raug xa mus rau ib qho chaw txom nyem uas tsis muaj qhov kawg li.

12 Thaum ntau lwmm txhiab leej nyuaj siab tiag rau lawv tej kwv tij neej tsa uas tau ploj lawm, txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem zoo siab thiab kaj siab nyob hauv txoj kev cia siab, thiab yeej paub, raws li tus Tswv tej lus cog tseg; tias lawv raug tsa sawv los nyob ntawm Vajtsv sab xis, nyob hauv qhov chaw kaj siab uas tsis muaj qhov kawg ib zaug li.

13 Thiab li no peb pom kev tsis xwm yeem ntawm noob neej loj npaum li cas vim yog txoj kev txog thiab kev txhaum, thiab tus dab lub hwj chim, uas los ntawm tej kev dag ntxias uas nws tau xav cuab ntxias tib neeg tej siab.

14 Thiab li no peb pom txoj kev hu tseem ceeb ntawm tib neeg txoj kev rau siab ua hauj lwmm nyob hauv tus Tswv lub vaj txiv hmab; thiab li no peb pom qhov kev tu siab loj, thiab txog txoj kev xyiv fab—txoj kev tu siab vim yog txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj nyob hauv tib neeg, thiab txoj kev xyiv fab vim yog Khetos txoj kev kaj mus rau txoj sia.

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

Amas 29

- 1 Au kheev lam tias kuv yog ib tug tim tswv, thiab muaj peev xwm ua tau li kuv lub siab xav, xwv kom kuv yuav tawm mus thiab qhia nrog Vajtswv tej suab raj, nrog ib lub suab uas ua lub ntiaj teb tshee hnyo, thiab qhuab qhia kev hloov siab lees txim rau txhua tus neeg!
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav tshaj tawm rau txhua tus neeg, ib yam li lub suab xob quaj, rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev txhiv dim, xwv kom lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag peb tus Vajtswv, xwv kom yuav tsis muaj txoj kev tu siab nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb ntxiv lawm.
- 3 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yog ib tug neeg xwb, thiab txawj ua txhaum raws kuv siab xav; vim kuv yuav tsum zoo siab rau tej yam uas tus Tswv tau muab rau kuv lawm.
- 4 Kuv yuav tsum tsis txhob txob kuv tej kev xav tau, Vajtswv tus uas ncaj ncees txoj kev cai uas nyob ruaj nrees, vim kuv paub tias nws yeej muab pub rau tib neeg raws li lawv siab xav, txawm yog yuav mus rau txoj kev tuag los sis mus rau txoj sia; muaj tseeb tiag; kuv paub tias nws pub rau tib neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, muab tej kev cai ruaj khov uas pauv tsis tau rau lawv, raws li lawv siab xav, txawm yog lawv yuav mus rau txoj kev cawm seej los sis rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv paub tias qhov zoo thiab qhov phem tau los rau tib neeg txhua tus; tus uas tsis paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem yuav tsis muaj txim; tiam sis tus uas paub qhov zoo thiab qhov phem, tus ntawd yuav raug muab rau raws li nws siab xav, txawm yog nws xav yuav zoo los sis phem, yuav txoj sia los sis txoj kev tuag, txoj kev xyiv fab los sis txoj kev uas tu siab rau tej uas txhob txwm ua.
- 6 Nim no, tau pom tias kuv paub tej yam no, vim li cas kuv pheej xav tau ntau dua li uas cia li ua txoj hauj lwmm uas kuv tau raug hu los ua?
- 7 Vim li cas kuv pheej xav tias kheev lam kuv yog ib tug tim tswv, xwv kom kuv yuav muaj peev xwm hais tau rau tag nrho qab ntuj kawg?

Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

8 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv yeej pub rau txhua haiv neeg, los ntawm lawv haiv neeg thiab yam lus, los qhuab qhia nws txoj lus, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv txoj kev txawj ntse, tag nrho tej uas nws pom tias tsim nyog rau lawv yuav tsum muaj; yog li ntawd peb pom tias tus Tswv yeej coj pab nrog txoj kev txawj ntse, raws li qhov uas ncaj thiab tseeb.

9 Kuv paub yam uas tus Tswv tau txib kuv ua, thiab kuv yeej zoo siab hlo ua nws. Kuv tsis zoo siab khav rau kuv tus kheej, tiam sis kuv zoo siab rau hauv tej uas tus Tswv tau txib kuv ua; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab qhov no yog kuv txoj kev zoo siab, tias tej zaum kuv yuav ua tau ib rab cuab yeej nyob hauv tus Tswv tes los coj ib txhia neeg los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; thiab qhov no yog kuv txoj kev xyiv fab.

10 Thiab saib seb, thaum kuv pom kuv cov kwv tij coob leej ua neeg hloov siab lees txim tiag, thiab tau los cuag tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thaum ntawd kuv tus ntsuj plig tau muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo; thaum ntawd kuv nco qab txog yam uas tus Tswv tau ua rau kuv lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb tau hnov kuv tej lus thov; muaj tseeb tiag, thaum ntawd kuv nco qab txog nws txhais caj npab hlub tshua uas nws tau cev tuaj rau kuv.

11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj nco qab txog txoj kev raug ntes ntawm kuv tej yawg koob; vim kuv paub tseeb tias tus Tswv tau tso lawv dim ntawm txoj kev raug txim, thiab los ntawm qhov no tau txhim tsa nws lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv Vajtswv, Anplaham tus Vajtswv, Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtswv, tau tso lawv dim ntawm txoj kev raug txim.

12 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yeej tau ib txwm nco ntsoov txog txoj kev raug ntes ntawm kuv tej yawg koob; thiab tib tug Vajtswv uas tau tso lawv dim ntawm cov neeg Iyiv tes tau tso lawv dim ntawm txoj kev raug txim.

13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tib tug Vajtswv ntawd tau txhim tsa nws lub koom txoos nyob hauv lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tib tug Vajtswv ntawd tau hu kuv los ntawm ib txoj kev hu dawb huv, los qhuab qhia txoj lus rau cov neeg no, tau muab rau kuv ntau yam uas ua tau li siab xav, qhov ntawd ua rau kuv txoj kev xyiv fab puv npo.

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

- 14 Tiam sis kuv tsis tau xyiv fab nyob hauv tej uas kuv ua tau li siab xav xwb, tiam sis kuv txoj kev xyiv fab puv ntau ntxiv vim yog txoj kev vam meej ntawm kuv cov kwv tij, uas tau nce mus rau pem thaj av Nifais.
- 15 Saib seb, lawv tau ua hauj lwm hnyav heev, thiab tau tawg paj txi txiv ntau; thiab lawv tej nqi zog yuav ntau npaum li cas!
- 16 Nim no, thaum kuv xav txog txoj kev vam meej ntawm kuv cov kwv tij no kuv tus ntsuj plig raug coj lawm deb, zoo li nws twb ncaim ntawm lub cev lawm, thaum nws ua li ntawd, ces ua rau kuv xyiv fab tshaj plaws.
- 17 Thiab nim no thov Vajtswv pub rau kuv cov kwv tij no, kom lawv yuav tau zaum nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj pub tag nrho rau cov uas yog tej txiv ntoo ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tawm mus ntxiv lawm, tiam sis kom lawv yuav qhuas nws mus ib txhis. Thiab thov Vajtswv pub kom yuav ua tau raws li kuv tej lus, tib yam li uas kuv tau hais lawm. Amees.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Amas 30

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amoos cov neeg tau nyob tus rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tom qab uas cov Neeg Lamas tau raug raws khiav tawm ntawm thaj av mus lawm, thiab lawv cov neeg tuag tau raug muab faus los ntawm cov neeg ntawm thaj av tas lawm—
- 2 Nim no tsis tau suav lawv cov neeg tuag vim yog lawv muaj coob heev; thiab cov Neeg Nifais tej neeg tuag los kuj tsis tau suav tib yam—tiam sis tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv muab lawv cov neeg tuag faus tas, thiab tom qab tej hnuv nyoog ua kev yoo mov, thiab txoj kev nyuaj siab, thiab txoj kev thov Vajtswv, (thiab nws tau yog xyoo thib kaum rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg) tau pib muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuva thoob plaws txhua thaj av.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cov neeg tau rau siab coj tus Tswv tej lus txib; thiab lawv tau raug coj nruj Vajtswv tej kab ke, raws li Mauxes txoj kev cai; vim lawv tau raug qhia coj Mauxes txoj kev cai kom mus txog thaum nws yuav muaj puv npo.
- 4 Thiab li no cov neeg tsis tau muaj kev sib thab nyob rau tag nrho xyoo thib kaum rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib kaum xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuva.
- 6 Tiam sis tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum yuav kawg ntawm xyoo thib kaum xya, ib tug txiv neej tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab nws tau yog ib tug neeg tawm tsam Khetos, vim nws tau pib qhuab qhia rau cov neeg tawm tsam tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau hais los ntawm tej yaj saub, txog txoj kev Khetos los.
- 7 Nim no tsis tau muaj ib txoj kev cai tawm tsam rau ib tug neeg txoj kev ntseeg; vim nws tau yog ib qho uas tsis ncaj nrog Vajtswv tej lus txib yog hais tias yuav muaj ib txoj kev cai uas yuav coj tib neeg mus rau tej chaw tsis xwm yeem.
- 8 Vim vajlugkub hais li no: Nej cia li xaiv hnuv no saib nej yuav hawm ntseeg leej twg.

Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

- 9 Nim no yog tias ib tug neeg tau xav hawm ntseeg Vajtswv, qhov ntawd yeej yog nws txoj kev ua tau; los sis tias, yog nws ho tau ntseeg Vajtswv qhov ntawd yeej yog nws txoj kev ua tau los hawm ntseeg nws; tiam sis yog nws ho tsis tau ntseeg nws yeej tsis muaj kev cai uas yuav rau txim rau nws.
- 10 Tiam sis yog nws tau tua neeg nws yuav raug txim tuag; thiab yog nws tau ua tub nyiag nws kuj yuav tau raug txim; thiab yog nws ua tub sab nws kuj yuav tau raug txim; thiab yog nws tau deev luag poj luag txiv nws kuj yuav tau raug txim; muaj tseeb tiag, rau tag nrho tej kev phem no lawv yeej yuav raug txim.
- 11 Vim tau muaj ib txoj kev cai tias tib neeg yuav tsum raug txiav txim raws li lawv tej kev txhaum. Txawm li ntawd los, tsis tau muaj kev cai tawm tsam ib tug neeg txoj kev ntseeg; yog li ntawd, ib tug neeg tsuas raug txim rau tej kev txhaum uas nws tau ua lawm xwb; yog li ntawd tib neeg sawv daws yeej nyob saum tej chaw xwm yeem.
- 12 Thiab tus neeg tawm tsam Khetos no, uas npe hu ua Khaulihos, (thiab txoj kev cai tsis muaj peev xwm tuav tau nws) tau pib qhuab qhia rau cov neeg tias yeej yuav tsis muaj Khetos. Thiab nws tau qhuab qhia li no, hais tias:
- 13 Au nej cov uas tau raug khi nyob hauv txoj kev cia siab ruam thiab tsis muaj qab hau es, vim li cas nej thiaj cia nej tus kheej kwv tus cuab nrog tej yam ruam ua luaj li no? Vim li cas nej thiaj li tos ib tug Khetos? Vim tsis muaj ib tug neeg txawj paub txog tej yam uas tseem yuav muaj los.
- 14 Saib seb, tej yam no uas nej hu ua tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, uas nej hais tias tau cev nqis los ntawm cov yaj saub dawb huv, saib seb, lawv yog ib co kev li kev cai ruam heev los ntawm nej tej yawg koob.
- 15 Nej ho paub tau txog lawv tej kev tseeb li cas? Saib seb, nej yeej tsis muaj peev xwm paub txog tej uas nej tsis pom; yog li ntawd nej yeej tsis muaj peev xwm paub tias yuav muaj ib tug Khetos.
- 16 Nej tos ntsoov thiab hais tias nej pom ib qho kev zam txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum. Tiam sis saib seb, qhov ntawd tsuas yog txoj kev xav ntawm lub siab npau xwb; thiab txoj kev thab ntawm nej tej siab no los vim yog tej kev li kev cai ntawm nej tej yawg koob, uas tau coj nej mus rau hauv ib txoj kev ntseeg txog tej uas tsis tseeb.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

- 17 Thiab nws tau hais ntau yam zoo li ntawd ntxiv rau lawv, qhia rau lawv tias yuav tsis muaj txoj kev theej txhoj rau tib neeg tej kev txhaum, tiam sis txhua tus neeg nyob mus hauv lub neej no raws li txoj kev khwv ntawm nws; yog li ntawd txhua tus neeg vammeej raws li nws txoj kev txawv, thiab txhua tus neeg tau kav raws li nws lub zog; thiab txawm yog dab tsi uas ib tug neeg tau ua los yeej tsis txhaum.
- 18 Thiab nws tau qhia los rau lawv, coj tau lawv ntau tus tej siab lawm, tau ua kom lawv tsa lawv tej taub hau nyob hauv lawv txoj kev phem, muaj tseeb tiag, tau coj ntau tus poj niam, thiab txiv neej, mus ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug—tau qhia rau lawv tias thaum ib tug neeg tuag lawm, ces qhov ntawd yog qhov kawg ntawm nws lawm.
- 19 Nim no tus txiv neej no kuj tau mus rau tom thaj av Ntsawsoos, mus qhuab qhia tej yam no rau hauv Amoos cov neeg, uas tau yog cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Lamas ib zaug.
- 20 Tiam sis saib seb lawv tau ntse dua li ntau tus Neeg Nifais; vim lawv tau txhom nws, thiab muab nws khi, thiab tau cab nws tuaj cuag Amoos, tus uas yog ib tug pov thawj hlob rau cov neeg ntawd.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias Amoos ua kom nws yuav tsum raug cab tawm ntawm thaj av mus. Thiab nws tau los rau hauv thaj av Khede-oos, thiab kuj tau pib qhuab qhia rau lawv; thiab ntawm no nws ua tsis tau ntau li siab xav, vim nws raug txhom thiab raug khi thiab raug cab mus cuag tus pov thawj hlob, thiab thawj tub txiav txim hauv thaj av.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias tus pov thawj hlob tau hais rau nws tias: Vim li cas koj thiaj mus ncig hloov tus Tswv tej kev? Vim li cas koj thiaj qhia cov neeg no tias yuav tsis muaj Khetos, kom los tab kaum lawv tej kev zoo siab? Vim li cas koj thiaj hais tawm tsam tag nrho tej yaj saub dawb huv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej?

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

- 23 Nim no tus pov thawj hlob lub npe yog Khidaunas. Thiab Khaulihos tau hais rau nws tias: Vim kuv tsis qhia tej kev li kev cai ruam ntawm nej tej yawg koob, thiab vim kuv tsis qhia cov neeg no kom khi lawv tus kheej rau hauv tej kab ke thiab tej kev li kev cai uas raug ua tseg los ntawm cov pov thawj thaum ub, kom yuav siv tau hwj chim thiab txoj cai rau saum lawv, kom ceev lawv rau hauv txoj kev ua tsis tau dab tsi, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tsa lawv tej taub hau, tiam sis kom raug tso qis raws li nej tej lus.
- 24 Nej hais tias cov neeg no yog ib co neeg nyob ywj siab. Saib seb, kuv hais tias lawv nyob hauv txoj kev ua qhev. Nej hais tias tej lus qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thaum ub muaj tseeb. Saib seb, kuv hais tias nej yeej tsis paub tias lawv muaj tseeb.
- 25 Nej hais tias cov neeg no yog ib cov muaj txim thiab ib co neeg tau poob, vim yog txoj kev txhaum ntawm ib nkawg niam txiv. Saib seb, kuv hais tias ib tug me nyuam yeej tsis muaj txim vim yog niam thiab txiv.
- 26 Thiab nej kuj hais tias Khetos yuav los. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais tias nej yeej tsis paub tias yuav muaj ib tug Khetos. Thiab nej kuj hais tias nws yuav raug tua theej rau tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb—
- 27 Thiab li no nej tau ntxias dag cov neeg no mus raws li tej kev li kev cai ruam ntawm nej tej yawg koob, thiab raws li nej tej siab xav; thiab nej ceev lawv nyob qis, tib yam li nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim, xwv kom nej yuav tau tej hauj lwm ntawm lawv tej tes los rau nej tus kheej, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis txhob muaj peev xwm tsa hau ntsia, thiab kom lawv tsis txhob zoo siab rau lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab tej kev muaj cib fim.
- 28 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tsis kam siv tej uas yog lawv tug ntshai tsam lawv yuav ua siab lawv tej pov thawj, uas quab lawv raws li lawv siab nyiam, thiab tau coj lawv los ntseeg, ntawm lawv tej kev li kev cai thiab lawv tej npau suav thiab lawv tej kev xav ruam thiab lawv tej kev ua yog toog pom thiab lawv tej kev txhob txwm uas neeg paub tsis txog, tias lawv yuav tsum ua, yog lawv tsis ua raws li lawv cov no tej lus, ces yuav ua siab tus uas tsis muaj leej twg paub, tus uas lawv hais tias yog Vajtswv—ib tug uas ib txwm tsis tau muaj neeg pom los sis paub, tus uas ib txwm yeej tsis tau muaj thiab yeej yuav tsis muaj li.

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

29 Nim no thaum tus pov thawj hlob thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim tau pom txoj kev tawv ntawm nws lub siab, muaj tseeb tiag, thaum nkawd pom tias Vajtswv los nws tseem yuav hais lus phem rau thiab, nkawd txawm tsis teb rau nws cov lus; tiam sis nkawd tau ua kom nws yuav tsum raug khi; thiab lawv tau coj nws mus rau ntawm cov tub ceev xwm tes, thiab tau xa nws mus rau thaj av Xalahelas, xwv kom nws yuav raug coj los cuag Amas, thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim uas yog tus tswv xeev rau tag nrho thaj av.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws raug coj los cuag Amas thiab tus thawj tub txiav txim, nws tau hais tib yam li uas nws tau hais nyob hauv thaj av Khede-oos; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau hais lus phem rau Vajtswv.

31 Thiab nws tau tsa suab nrov zuj zus rau Amas, thiab tau hais lus phem tawm tsam cov pov thawj hlob thiab tej xib hwb, liam lawv txog txoj kev coj cov neeg kom ua raws li tej kev li kev cai ruam ntawm lawv tej yawg koob, kom yuav tau tej nqi zog hauj lwm ntawm cov neeg no los ua neej.

32 Nim no Amas tau hais rau nws hais tias: Koj yeej paub tias peb tsis tau muab tej nqi zog hauj lwm ntawm cov neeg no los rau peb ua neej; vim saib seb kuv tau ua hauj lwm txij li thaum cov tub txiav txim pib kav los txog nim no, nrog kuv ob txhais tes rau txoj kev pab kuv, tsis suav kuv tej kev uas tau mus ntau zaus ncig rau hauv thaj av tshaj tawm Vajtswv txoj lus rau kuv cov neeg.

33 Thiab tsis tas li tej hauj lwm ntau uas kuv tau ua nyob rau hauv lub koom txoos, kuv yeej ib txwm tsis tau txais li ib xinais rau kuv txoj hauj lwm; thiab kuv tej kwv tij los yeej tsis muaj ib tug tau, tsuas yog thaum nyob rau hauv lub rooj txiav txim xwb; thiab thaum ntawd peb tsuas tau txais raws li txoj kev cai rau peb tej sij hawm xwb.

34 Thiab nim no, yog peb tsis tau txais ib yam dab tsi rau peb tej hauj lwm nyob hauv lub koom txoos, nws muaj nuj nqis dab tsi rau peb mus ua hauj lwm nyob hauv lub koom txoos tsuas yog tshaj tawm qhov tseeb xwb, xwv kom peb yuav muaj kev xyiv fab vim yog txoj kev xyiv fab ntawm peb cov kwv tij?

35 Yog li ntawd vim li cas koj ho hais tias peb qhuab qhia rau cov neeg no kom peb nplua nuj, thaum koj tus kheej, paub tias peb tsis tau txais kev nplua nuj? Thiab nim no, koj puas ntseeg tias peb dag ntxias cov neeg no qhov uas ua muaj kev xyiv fab li ntawd nyob rau hauv lawv tej siab?

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

36 Thiab Khaulihos tau teb nws tias, Muaj tseeb tiag.
37 Thiab tom qab ntawd Amas tau hais rau nws tias:
Koj puas ntseeg tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv?
38 Thiab nws tau teb tias, Tsis ntseeg.
39 Nim no Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas yuav
tsis kam lees dua tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv thiab yuav
tsis kam lees rau tus Khetos thiab? Vim saib seb, kuv
hais rau koj tias, kuv paub yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv,
thiab tias Khetos yeej yuav los.
40 Thiab nim no koj muaj yam tim khawv dab tsi uas
hais tias tsis muaj Vajtswv, los sis tias Khetos yuav
tsis los? Kuv hais rau koj tias koj yeej tsis muaj dab
tsi, tsuas yog koj tej lus xwb.
41 Tiam sis, saib seb, kuv muaj txhua yam tsav uas ua
tim khawv tias tej yam no muaj tseeb; thiab koj kuj
muaj txhua yam ua tim khawv rau koj tias lawv yeej
muaj tseeb; thiab koj puas yuav tsis kam lees lawv?
Koj puas ntseeg tias tej yam no twb muaj tseeb?
42 Saib seb, kuv paub tias koj yeej ntseeg, tiam sis koj
raug ib tug ntsuj plig dag lawm, thiab koj tau muab
Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig tso tseg xwv kom nws yuav tsis
muaj chaw nyob hauv koj; tiam sis tus dab muaj hwj
chim kav koj, thiab nws cab koj mus puang ncig, ua
hauj lwm dag ntxias xwv kom nws yuav ua kom
Vajtswv tej me nyuam puas tsuaj.
43 Thiab nim no Khaulihos tau hais rau Amas tias:
Yog koj yuav ua ib lub cim rau kuv saib, kom kuv
yuav ntseeg tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag,
ua rau kuv pom tias nws muaj hwj chim, thiab tom
qab ntawd kuv yuav ntseeg txog qhov tseeb ntawm
koj tej lus.
44 Tiam sis Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Koj twb tau
muaj tej cim txaus lawm; koj tseem yuav sim koj tus
Vajtswv thiab los? Koj yuav hais tias, Ua kom kuv
pom ib lub cim, thaum koj twb muaj lus tim khawv
ntawm tag nrho koj tej kwv tij no, thiab tag nrho tej
yaj saub dawb huv? Tej vajlugkub muaj nyob ntawm
koj xub ntiag, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txhua yam qhia
tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, lub ntiag
teb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas nyob saum nws,
muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws txoj kev tig, muaj tseeb
tiag, thiab tag nrho tej ntiag teb uas txav li lawv ib
txwm txav twb ua tim khawv tias muaj ib tug Tswv
Tsim Siab Kawg nkaus.

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that
there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that
there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold,
I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that
Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no
God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye
have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that
these things are true; and ye also have all things as a
testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye
deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art
possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the
Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but
the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you
about, working devices that he may destroy the chil-
dren of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt
show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is
a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and
then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs
enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show
unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all
these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets?
The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all
things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and
all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its mo-
tion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their
regular form do witness that there is a Supreme
Creator.

45 Thiab koj tseem mus ncig, dag ntxias cov neeg no tej siab, ua tim khawv rau lawv tias tsis muaj Vajtswv no los? Thiab tsis tas li ntawd koj tseem tsis kam lees tag nrho tej lus tim khawv no los? Thiab nws tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav tsis lees, tsuas yog koj yuav ua ib lub cim rau kuv pom xwb.

46 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, kuv tu siab heev vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm koj lub siab, muaj tseeb tiag, tias koj yeej tseem yuav tawv rau tus ntsuj plig ntawm qhov tseeb, kom koj tus ntsuj plig yuav raug puas tsuaj.

47 Tiam sis saib seb, nws yuav zoo dua yog koj tus ntsuj plig ploj mus li cia koj ua qhov uas coj ntau tus ntsuj plig nqis mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, los ntawm koj tej lus dag thiab los ntawm koj tej lus ntxias; yog li ntawd yog koj yuav tsis kam lees dua, saib seb Vajtswv yuav qhuab koj, kom koj yuav rais los mus ua neeg hais tsis tau lus, kom koj yuav tsis qhib koj lub qhov ncauj ntxiv ib zaug li lawm, kom koj yuav tsis tau ntxias cov neeg no ntxiv lawm.

48 Nim no Khaulihos tau hais rau nws tias: Tsis yog kuv tsis lees tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv, tiam sis kuv tsis ntseeg tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv; thiab kuv hais tias koj yeej tsis paub tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv; thiab tsuas yog koj yuav ua kom kuv pom ib lub cim xwb, kuv yeej yuav tsis ntseeg.

49 Nim no Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yuav muab qhov no ua ib lub cim rau koj, kom koj yuav raug ua kom hais tsis tau lus, raws li kuv cov lus; thiab kuv hais, tias nyob hauv Vajtswv lub npe, koj yuav raug hais tsis tau lus, xwv kom koj yuav hais tsis tau dab tsi ntxiv lawm.

50 Nim no thaum Amas tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, Khaulihos tau raug hais tsis tau lus, kom nws hais tsis tau dab tsi ntxiv, raws li Amas tej lus.

51 Thiab nim no thaum tus thawj tub txiav txim tau pom qhov no, nws tau ncau nws txhais tes thiab sau ntawv rau Khaulihos, hais tias: Koj puas tau pom Vajtswv lub hwj chim? Nyob hauv leej twg uas koj tau xav kom Amas ua kom pom nws lub cim? Koj puas yuav xav kom nws ua raug rau lwm tus, ua kom koj pom ib lub cim? Saib seb, nws tau ua rau koj pom ib lub cim lawm; thiab nim no koj puas tseem yuav cam ntxiv?

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

- 52 Thiab Khaulihos tau ncav nws txhais tes thiab tau sau, hais tias: Kuv paub tias kuv yog ib tug neeg ruam, vim kuv hais tsis tau lus; thiab kuv paub tias tsis muaj dab tsi tsuas yog Vajtswv lub hwj chim xwb thiaj muaj peev xwm coj tau qhov no los rau kuv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yeej ib txwm paub tias yeej muaj ib tug Vajtswv.
- 53 Tiam sis saib seb, tus dab tau dag ntxias kuv; vim nws tau tshwm sim rau kuv li ib tug tim tswv, thiab tau hais rau kuv tias: Cia li mus thiab kho cov neeg no, vim lawv txhua tus tau mus yuam kev raws li ib tug Vajtswv uas tsis muaj leej twg paub. Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Yeej tsis muaj Vajtswv li; muaj tseeb tiag; thiab nws tau qhia rau kuv tej uas kuv yuav tsum hais. Thiab kuv tau qhia nws tej lus; thiab kuv qhia lawv vim yog lawv haum neeg ntiaj teb lub siab; thiab kuv tau qhia lawv, mus txog thaum kuv vam meej heev, kawg tias kuv twb tau ntseeg tias tej ntawd yeej muaj tseeb; thiab vim qhov no kuv tau tawm tsam qhov tseeb, mus txog thaum kuv coj tau qhov kev foom loj heev no los rau saum kuv.
- 54 Nim no thaum nws tau hais qhov no tas lawm, nws tau thov kom Amas thov Vajtswv, xwv kom qhov kev foom yuav raug tshem ntawm nws mus.
- 55 Tiam sis Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Yog qhov kev foom no tshem tawm ntawm koj lawm ces koj yeej yuav rov qab mus ntxias cov neeg no tej siab dua; yog li ntawd, nws yeej yuav muaj mus kom raws li tus Tswv siab xav.
- 56 Thiab tau muaj tias txoj kev foom ntawd tsis raug muab tshem tawm ntawm Khaulihos; tiam sis nws tau raug ntiab tawm, thiab tau mus ncig ib lub tsev dhau ib lub tsev thov nws tej zaub mov.
- 57 Nim no txoj kev paub txog tej uas tau tshwm sim rau Khaulihos tau raug muab tshaj tawm tam sim ntawd thoo plaws rau txhua thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev xa xov tau raug xa tawm los ntawm tus thawj tub txiav txim mus rau tag nrho cov neeg nyob hauv thaj av, tshaj tawm rau cov uas tau ntseeg Khaulihos tej lus kom lawv cia li hloov siab lees txim sai sai, tsis li ntawd ces tib txoj kev rau txim ntawd yuav los rau lawv thiab.

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

58 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv sawv daws tau raug kawm txog txoj kev phem ntawm Khaulihos; yog li ntawd lawv sawv daws tau hloov siab tshiab dua los cuag tus Tswv; thiab qhov no tau xaus txoj kev tsis zoo raws li Khaulihos. Thiab Khaulihos tau mus ncig ib lub tsev dhau ib lub tsev, thov zaub mov los pab nws.

59 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, rau hauv ib cov neeg uas tau faib lawv tus kheej tawm ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab tau hu lawv ua cov neeg Xaulas, uas tau raug coj los ntawm ib tug txiv neej uas npe hu ua Xaulas—thiab thaum nws tau tawm mus rau hauv lawv, saib seb, nws tau raug hla thiab tsuj, mus txog thaum nws tuag.

60 Thiab li no peb pom qhov kawg ntawm nws tus uas tau hloov tus Tswv tej kev; thiab li no peb pom tias tus dab yeej yuav tsis pab nws tej me nyuam nyob tom hnuv kawg, tiam sis tsuas luag lawv nrawm nroos nqis mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus xwb.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

Amas 31

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas kawg Khaulihos, Amas tau txais xov tias cov Neeg Xaulas tau hloov tus Tswv tej kev, thiab Xaulas, tus uas yog lawv tus thawj, tau coj tej neeg tej siab mus pe hawm tej mlom ruam, nws lub siab tau rov pib mob dua vim yog cov neeg txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 2 Vim nws tau yog qhov uas ua kev tu siab ntau heev rau Amas uas paub txog txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees nyob hauv nws cov neeg; yog li ntawd nws tau tu siab heev kawg nkaus li vim yog txoj kev faib cov Neeg Xaulas tawm ntawm cov Neeg Nifais.
- 3 Nim no cov Neeg Xaulas tau sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke nyob hauv ib thaj av uas lawv hu ua Eethionas, uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj ntawm thaj av Xalahelas, uas nyob ze ciam teb ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv, uas nyob rau sab nram hav ntawm thaj av Ntsawsoos, uas kuj nyob ntawm ciam teb uas nyob ze hav zoov sab nram hav, lub hav zoov uas muaj puv nkaus cov Neeg Lamas.
- 4 Nim no cov Neeg Nifais tau ntshai heev tias tsam cov Neeg Xaulas yuav nkag mus cog kev phooj ywg nrog cov Neeg Lamas, thiab qhov ntawd yuav ua ib qho chaw poob loj heev rau cov Neeg Nifais sab.
- 5 Thiab nim no, ib yam li txoj kev qhuab qhia ntawm txoj lus muaj hwj chim coj tau cov neeg coob heev mus ua tej uas ncaj ncees—muaj tseeb tiag, qhov ntawd tau muaj hwj chim loj tshaj rau cov neeg tej siab dua li tej ntaj, los sis lwm yam huv tib si, uas tau muaj los rau lawv—yog li ntawd Amas tau xav tias nws tsim nyog tias lawv yuav tsum sim qhov tsim txiaj ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus.
- 6 Yog li ntawd nws tau coj Amoos, thiab Aloos, thiab Oonaws; thiab nws tau tso Hinais rau hauv lub koom txoos uas nyob hauv Xalahelas; tiam sis thawj peb tug nws tau coj nrog nws, thiab kuj coj Amulej thiab Xi-elas, uas tau nyob hauv Melej; thiab nws kuj tau coj nws ob tug tub thiab.
- 7 Nim no nws tsis tau coj nws tus tub hlob nrog nws, thiab nws lub npe yog Hilamas; tiam sis cov npe ntawm cov uas nws tau coj nrog nws yog Sinploos thiab Khali-atoos; thiab cov no yog cov npe ntawm cov uas tau nrog nws mus rau hauv cov Neeg Xaulas, mus qhuab qhia txoj lus rau lawv.

Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblun and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

- 8 Nim no cov Neeg Xaulas tau yog neeg tsis sib haum nrog cov Neeg Nifais; yog li ntawd lawv twb tau muaj Vajtswv txoj lus qhuab qhia rau lawv lawm.
- 9 Tiam sis lawv tau poob mus rau hauv tej kev yuam kev loj lawm, vim lawv tsis kam xyaum koj Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab tej kev cai, raws li Mauxes txoj kev cai.
- 10 Thiab lawv kuj tsis kam xyaum koj lub koom txoos tej kab ke, kom thov Vajtswv tsis tu ncuva thiab txo hwj chim rau Vajtswv txhua hnuv, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis nkag mus rau hauv txoj kev dag ntxias.
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thaum kawg, lawv tau hloov tus Tswv tej kev nyob hauv ntau yam; yog li ntawd vim qhov no, Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau mus rau hauv thaj av mus qhuab qhia txoj lus rau lawv.
- 12 Nim no, thaum lawv tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av lawm, saib seb, rau lawv txoj kev yoob lawv tau pom tias cov Neeg Xaulas tau ua tej tsev sab laj, thiab lawv tau sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke rau ib hnuv ntawm lub lim tiam, hnuv uas lawv tau hu ua tus Tswv hnuv; thiab lawv tau teev tiam raws li tej uas Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij ib txwm tsis tau pom li;
- 13 Vim lawv tau ua ib qho chaw nyob hauv nruab nrab ntawm lawv lub tsev sab laj, ib qho chaw sawv ntsug, uas siab dua li taub hau, thiab saum hau tsuas txaus ib tug neeg xwb.
- 14 Yog li ntawd, leej twg tau xav teev tiam yuav tsum tau mus thiab sawv rau saum hau saud, thiab tsa nws ob txhais tes rau saum ntuj, thiab qw nrog ib lub suab nrov nrov, hais tias:
- 15 Dawb Huv, Vajtswv tus uas dawb huv; peb ntseeg tias koj yog Vajtswv, thiab peb ntseeg tias koj dawb huv, thiab koj tau yog ib tug ntsuj plig, thiab koj yog ib tug ntsuj plig, thiab koj tseem yuav yog ib tug ntsuj plig mus ib txhis.
- 16 Vajtswv tus uas dawb huv, peb ntseeg tias koj tau faib peb tawm ntawm peb cov kwv tij; thiab peb tsis ntseeg peb cov kwv tij tej kev li kev cai, uas tau raug cev nqis los rau lawv los ntawm siab me nyuam yaus ntawm lawv tej yawg koob; tiam sis peb ntseeg hais tias koj tau xaiv peb los ua koj tej me nyuam dawb huv; thiab koj kuj tau ua rau peb paub tias yuav tsis muaj Khetos.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

- 17 Tiam sis nag hmo, hnuv no koj zoo li cas, koj yeej yuav zoo li ntawd mus ib txhis; thiab koj tau xaiv peb kom peb yuav dim, thaum txhua tus uas nyob ib ncig peb tau raug xaiv pov rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus los ntawm koj txoj kev npau taws; vim txoj kev dawb huv, Au Vajtswv es, peb ua koj tsaug; thiab peb kuj ua koj tsaug uas koj tau xaiv peb, kom peb yuav tsis raug coj yuam kev raws li tej kev li kev cai ruam ntawm peb tej kwv tij, uas khi lawv qaug rau ib txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, uas tau coj lawv tej siab ua loj leeb deb ntawm koj mus, peb tus Vajtswv.
- 18 Thiab peb ua koj tsaug ntxiv, Au Vajtswv es, uas peb yog ib cov neeg uas raug xaiv tseg thiab dawb huv. Anees.
- 19 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij thiab nws cov tub tau hnov tej kev thov Vajtswv no tas lawm, lawv tau yoob tshaj li qhov ntseeg tau.
- 20 Vim saib seb, txhua tus neeg tau nce mus thiab hais tej lus thov Vajtswv zoo tib yam nkaus.
- 21 Nim no lawv tau hu qhov chaw no ua Lamiyatoos, uas, tau txhais, tias qhov chaw sawv dawb huv.
- 22 Nim no, nyob ntawm qhov chaw sawv no lawv tau thov, txhua tus neeg, thov Vajtswv tib yam lus, ua lawv tus Vajtswv tsaug tias lawv tau yog cov uas nws tau xaiv lawm, thiab tias nws tsis tau coj lawv yuam kev raws li txoj kev li kev cai ntawm lawv cov kwv tij, thiab tias lawv tej siab tsis tau raug nyiag mus ntseeg hauv tej uas yuav muaj los, uas lawv tsis tau paub txog.
- 23 Nim no, tom qab uas cov neeg sawv daws tau thov ua tsaug zoo li no tas lawm, lawv tau rov qab mus rau tom lawv tej tsev, tsis hais txog lawv tus Vajtswv ntxiv mus txog thaum lawv tau rov qab sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke dua rau ntawm qhov chaw sawv dawb huv, tuaj ua tsaug raws li lawv sij ua.
- 24 Nim no thaum Amas tau pom li no mob nws lub siab heev; vim nws tau pom tias lawv tau yog ib co neeg phem thiab ib co neeg uas hloov tus Tswv tej kev; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau pom tias lawv tej siab tau muab tso rau saum tej kub, thiab saum tej nyiaj dawb, thiab rau saum txhua yam tsim nuj huv tib si.
- 25 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj tau pom tias lawv tej siab tau nqa siab rau txoj kev khav theeb, nyob hauv lawv txoj kev khav.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

- 26 Thiab nws tau tsa nws lub suab rau saum ntuj, thiab quaj thov, hais tias: Au, yuav ntev npaum li cas, Au tus Tswv es, uas koj yuav cia kom koj tej tub qhe yuav nyob hauv cev nqaj daim tawv rau hauv qab no, kom pom tej kev phem tiag tiag li ntawd nyob hauv noob neej los?
- 27 Saib seb, Au Vajtswv es, lawv quaj thov rau koj, thiab tiam sis lawv tej siab twb raug lawv txoj kev khav nqos lawm. Saib seb, Au Vajtswv es, lawv quaj thov rau koj nrog lawv tej qhov ncauj, thaum lawv muaj plhus heev, nrog tej khoom tsis muaj qab hau ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 28 Saib seb, Au kuv tus Vajtswv es, lawv tej khoom kim kim, thiab lawv tej nplhaib, thiab lawv tej saw tes, thiab lawv tej saw kub, thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom muaj nqis uas lawv coj ua saw; thiab saib seb, lawv tej siab tau muab tso rau saum cov no, thiab lawv tseem tau quaj thov rau koj thiab hais tias—Peb ua koj tsaug, Au Vajtswv es, vim peb yog ib co neeg uas raug xaiv tseg rau koj lawm, thaum uas lwm cov yuav piam sij.
- 29 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv hais tias koj tau ua rau lawv paub tias yuav tsis muaj Khetos.
- 30 Au tus Tswv Vajtswv es, ntev npaum li cas ntxiv uas koj yuav cia tej kev phem thiab tsis muaj kev ntseeg li ntawd nyob nrog cov neeg no? Au tus Tswv es, thov koj muab lub zog rau kuv, xwv kom kuv yuav nyiaj tau kuv tej kev tsis muaj zog. Vim kuv tau qaug zog, thiab txoj kev phem li ntawd nyob hauv cov neeg no ua rau kuv tus ntsuj plig mob.
- 31 Au tus Tswv es, tu kuv lub siab heev kawg nkaus; thov koj nplij kuv tus ntsuj plig nyob hauv Khetos. Au tus Tswv es, thov koj pub rau kuv kom kuv yuav muaj taus zog, kom kuv yuav ua tau siab ntev nyiaj tej kev txom nyem no uas yuav los rau kuv, vim yog txoj kev txhaum ntawm cov neeg no.
- 32 Au tus Tswv es, thov koj nplij kuv tus ntsuj plig, thiab muab rau kuv txoj kev vam meej, thiab kuj muab rau kuv cov phooj ywg ua hauj lwm uas nyob nrog kuv—muaj tseeb tiag, Amoos, thiab Aloos, thiab Oonaws, thiab Amulej thiab Xi-elos thiab kuv ob tug tub—muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho lawv cov no thov koj nplij, Au tus Tswv es. Muaj tseeb tiag, thov koj nplij lawv tej ntsuj plig nyob hauv Khetos.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

- 33 Thov koj pub rau lawv kom lawv yuav muaj zog, kom lawv yuav nyiaj tau lawv tej kev txom nyem uas yuav los rau lawv vim yog tej kev tsis ncaj ncees ntawm cov neeg no.
- 34 Au tus Tswv es, thov koj pub rau peb kom peb yuav muaj kev vam meej nyob hauv txoj kev coj lawv rov qab los cuag koj nyob hauv Khetos.
- 35 Saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, lawv tej ntsuj plig yeej tsim txiaj, thiab coob tug ntawm lawv yog peb cov kwv tij; yog li ntawd, Au tus Tswv es, muab rau peb lub hwj chim thiab kev txawj ntse xwv kom peb yuav coj tau, peb cov kwv tij no, rov qab los rau koj.
- 36 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Amas tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, ces nws tau tso nws txhais tes rau saum lawv txhua tus uas nrog nws nyob. Thiab saib seb, thaum nws tso nws txhais tes rau saum lawv, lawv tau muaj tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo.
- 37 Thiab tom qab ntawd lawv ib leeg tau faib ncaim ib leeg, tsis tau xav rau lawv tus kheej tias lawv yuav noj dab tsi, los sis lawv yuav haus dab tsi, los sis lawv yuav hnav dab tsi.
- 38 Thiab tus Tswv tau pub rau lawv kom lawv tsis txhob tshaib, thiab kom lawv tsis txhob nqhis; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj tau muab lub zog rau lawv, kom lawv yuav tsis tau nyiaj ib yam kev txom nyem dab tsi, tsuas yog muaj kev xyiv fab ntawm Khetos xwb. Nim no qhov no tau zoo raws kiag li Amas txoj kev thov Vajtswv; thiab qhov no vim yog nws tau thov nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

Amas 32

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm mus, thiab tau pib qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau cov neeg, tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv tej tsev sab laj, thiab rau hauv lawv tej tsev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv twb tau qhuab qhia txoj lus nyob hauv lawv tej kev.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau ua hauj lwm heev nyob rau hauv lawv, lawv cov no tau pib muaj kev ua tau li siab xav nyob rau hauv feem neeg pluag; vim saib seb, lawv tau raug ntiab tawm ntawm tej tsev sab laj vim yog lawv tej ris tsho qub heev—
- 3 Yog li ntawd lawv raug tsis pub nkag rau hauv lawv tej tsev sab laj teev tiam Vajtswv, tau raug saib li kev vuab tsuab; yog li ntawd lawv yog neeg pluag; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv raug lawv cov kwv tij saib li tej khoom seem; yog li ntawd lawv tau pluag rau tej khoom ntawm lub ntiab teb; thiab lawv kuj tau txom nyem hauv siab thiab.
- 4 Nim no, thaum Amas tab tom qhia thiab hais lus rau cov neeg nyob saum lub roob Aunaihas, tau muaj ib pab neeg coob tuaj cuag nws, yog cov uas peb tau hais txog, cov neeg uas tau txom nyem hauv siab, vim yog lawv tej kev pluag rau tej khoom ntawm lub ntiab teb.
- 5 Thiab lawv tau tuaj cuag Amas; thiab ib tug uas yog tus hlob nyob hauv lawv tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij no yuav ua dab tsi, vim lawv raug neeg txhua tus ntxub lawv vim yog lawv txoj kev pluag, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab qhov tseem ceeb tshaj yog los ntawm peb cov pov thawj; vim lawv tau ntiab peb tawm ntawm peb tej tsev sab laj uas peb tau ua hauj lwm hnyav ua nrog peb tej tes kiag; thiab lawv tau ntiab peb tawm vim yog peb txoj kev txom nyem heev; thiab peb tsis muaj chaw yuav teev tiam peb tus Vajtswv; thiab saib seb, peb yuav ua dab tsi?
- 6 Thiab nim no thaum Amas tau hnov yam no, nws tau tig hlo nws tus kheej los, nws lub ntsej muag tig nrawm nroos rau nws tus no, thiab nws tau pom txoj kev xyiv fab heev; vim nws tau pom tias lawv tej kev txom nyem tau txo lawv tej hwj chim tiag thiab lawv tau nyob hauv txoj kev npaj hnov txoj lus lawm.
- 7 Yog li ntawd nws tsis hais ntxiv rau lwm cov neeg coob coob; tiam sis nws tau xyab nws txhais tes, thiab hais nrov nrov rau cov uas nws tau pom, uas tau yog neeg hloov siab tshiab tiag, thiab tau hais rau lawv hais tias:

Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

- 8 Kuv pom tias nej yog neeg siab mos siab muag; thiab yog li ntawd, nej tau koob hmoov.
- 9 Saib seb nej tus tij laug tau hais tias, Peb yuav ua dab tsi?—vim peb raug muab ntiab tawm ntawm peb tej tsev sab laj, xwv kom peb yuav teev tiam tsis tau peb tus Vajtswv.
- 10 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej, nej xav tias nej tsis muaj cuab kav teev tiam Vajtswv tsuas yog yuav tsum nyob hauv nej tej tsev sab laj xwb no los?
- 11 Kuv yuav nug nej, ntxiv, nej xav tias nej yuav tsum teev tiam Vajtswv ib lub lim tiam ib zaug xwb no los?
- 12 Kuv hais rau nej tias, yeej yog qhov zoo uas nej raug ntiab tawm ntawm nej tej tsev sab laj, xwv kom nej yuav txo hwj chim, thiab xwv kom nej yuav kawm kev txawj ntse; vim nws tsim nyog tias nej yuav tsum kawm kev txawj ntse; vim nws yog tias nej raug ntiab tawm, vim nej raug nej cov kwv tij ntxub vim yog nej txoj kev pluag heev, kom nej yuav raug coj los rau hauv txoj kev siab mos siab muag; vim nej tsim nyog raug coj los mus txo hwj chim.
- 13 Thiab nim no, vim nej raug yuam los mus txo hwj chim nej tau koob hmoov; vim ib tug neeg tej zaum, yog nws raug yuam los txo hwj chim, yuav nrhiav kev hloov siab lees txim; thiab nim no muaj tseeb, leej twg hloov siab lees txim yuav nrhiav tau kev zam txim; thiab tus uas nrhiav tau kev zam txim thiab nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg tus ntawd yuav raug cawm dim.
- 14 Thiab nim no, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej lawm, tias vim nej tau raug yuam kom txo hwj chim nej tau koob hmoov, nej puas tsis tau xav tias lawv cov uas txo lawv tej hwj chim tiag tiag vim yog txoj lus yeej tau koob hmoov ntau dua?
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus uas txo nws lub hwj chim tiag tiag, thiab hloov siab lees txim ntawm nws tej kev txhaum, thiab nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg, tus ntawd yuav tau koob hmoov—muaj tseeb tiag, tau koob hmoov ntau dua li lawv cov uas raug yuam kom txo hwj chim vim yog lawv tej kev pluag heev.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, koob hmoov tau rau lawv cov uas txo lawv tej hwj chim uas tsis yog tau raug yuam kom txo hwj chim; los sis muab, ua lwm yam lus hais, koob hmoov tau rau tus uas ntseeg Vajtswv txoj lus, thiab ua kev cai raus dej tsis ua siab tawv, muaj tseeb tiag, tsis raug kom coj los paub txoj lus, los sis raug yuam kom paub, ua ntej lawv yuav ntseeg.

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, muaj ntau tus hais tias: Yog koj yuav ua kom peb pom ib lub cim los saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, ces peb yuav paub qhov tseeb; tom qab ntawd peb yuav ntseeg.
- 18 Nim no kuv nug tias, qhov no puas yog kev ntseeg? Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis yog; vim yog tias ib tug neeg paub ib yam dab tsi lawm ces nws yeej yuav tsis muaj qhov ua kom ntseeg, vim nws twb paub qhov ntawd lawm.
- 19 Thiab nim no, yuav raug foom tsis zoo ntau npaum li cas rau nws tus uas paub txog Vajtswv lub siab nyiam thiab ho tsis ua li, thiab tus uas ho ntseeg qhuav qhuav xwb, los sis lam raug ua kom ntseeg xwb, thiab poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum?
- 20 Nim no los ntawm qhov no nej yuav tsum txiav txim. Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias yog sab no los nws yeej zoo ib yam li yog sab tod; thiab nws yuav raug rau txhua tus neeg raws li nws tes hauj lwm.
- 21 Thiab nim no ib yam li kuv tau hais txog txoj kev ntseeg—kev ntseeg tsis yog yuav paub tej yam dab tsi tseeb tseeb; yog li ntawd yog nej muaj kev ntseeg nej cia siab rau tej yam uas tsis pom, tiam sis muaj tseeb.
- 22 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, thiab kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov, tias Vajtswv muaj kev hlub tshua rau txhua tus uas ntseeg nws lub npe; yog li ntawd nws xav kom, nyob hauv thawj qhov chaw, nej yuav tsum ntseeg, muaj tseeb tiag, ntseeg nws txoj lus.
- 23 Thiab nim no, nws tau faib nws txoj lus los ntawm tej tim tswv los rau tib neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, tsis yog rau tej txiv neej xwb tiam sis rau tej poj niam thiab. Nim no tsis tas li no xwb; tej me nyuam yaus los kuj tau muab tej lus rau lawv ntau zaus uas tau ua rau tej neeg txawj ntse thiab tej neeg kawm ntaub kawm ntawv xav tsis thoob.
- 24 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, ib yam li nej tau xav kom kuv qhia saib nej yuav ua dab tsi vim nej raug kev txom nyem thiab ntiab tawm—nim no kuv tsis xav kom nej yuav tsum xav tias kuv txhob txwm txiav txim rau nej raws nraim li tej uas muaj tseeb xwb—
- 25 Vim kuv tsis tau xav tias nej sawv daws tau raug yuam kom txo nej tej hwj chim; vim kuv ntseeg tiag tias muaj ib txhia nyob hauv nej yeej zoo siab txo lawv tej hwj chim, cia lawv nyob qhov uas zoo li cas los nyob.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

- 26 Nim no, ib yam li kuv tau hais txog txoj kev ntseeg—tias nws tsis yog ib qho uas paub tseeb tseeb—kuv tej lus los kuj tib yam li ntawd thiab. Xub thawj nej yeej tsis paub txog lawv qhov tseeb tiag tiag, tib yam li txoj kev ntseeg uas tsis muaj qhov paub tseeb txog.
- 27 Tiam sis saib seb, yog nej yuav tsim thiab siv tej hlwb, kom los xyaum kawm txog kuv tej lus, thiab los muab ib qho kev ntseeg me me sim, muaj tseeb tiag, yog tsis muaj dab tsi ntau tshaj li uas nej xav los ntseeg, cia lub siab xav ntseeg no ua hauj lwm nyob hauv nej, mus txog thaum nej ntseeg zoo li qhov uas nej muab tau ib qho chaw rau kuv tej lus nyob.
- 28 Nim no, peb yuav muab txoj lus piv rau ib lub noob. Nim no, yog nej cia ib qho chaw, xwv kom ib lub noob yuav raug muab cog rau hauv nej lub siab, saib seb, yog tias nws yog ib lub noob tseeb, los sis ib lub noob zoo, yog nej tsis muab nws ntiab tawm los ntawm nej txoj kev tsis ntseeg, kom nej yuav tiv thaiv tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig, saib seb, nws yuav pib hlob nyob rau hauv nej tej hauv siab; thiab thaum nej hnov nws hlob tuaj, nej yuav pib hais rau nej tus kheej tias—Nws yuav tsum yog ib lub noob zoo, los sis txoj lus yeej zoo, vim nws tau pib ua rau kuv tus ntsuj plig loj tuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau pib ua rau kuv to taub tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau pib qab heev rau kuv.
- 29 Nim no saib seb, qhov no yuav tsis ua kom nej txoj kev ntseeg loj tuaj los? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Yeej yog; tiam sis nws tseem tsis tau loj hlob kom paub tseeb tseeb xwb.
- 30 Tiam sis saib seb, thaum lub noob loj hlob, thiab tawg kaus, thiab pib loj, ces nej yuav tsum hais tias lub noob yog lub zoo; vim saib seb nws loj hlob, thiab tawg kaus, thiab pib loj. Thiab nim no, saib seb, qhov no yuav tsis txhawb kom nej txoj kev ntseeg muaj zog tuaj los? Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yeej yuav ua kom nej txoj kev ntseeg muaj zog tuaj: vim nej yuav hais tias kuv paub tias lub no yog ib lub noob zoo; vim saib seb nws tau tawg kaus thiab pib loj.
- 31 Thiab nim no, saib seb, nej puas paub tseeb tias lub no yog ib lub noob zoo? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Yeej yog; vim txhua lub noob loj hlob tuaj mus zoo li nws yam.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

- 32 Yog li ntawd, yog lub noob loj hlob nws yeej yog lub zoo, tiam sis yog nws tsis loj hlob, saib seb nws twb tsis zoo, yog li ntawd nws yuav raug txawb pov tseg.
- 33 Thiab nim no, saib seb, vim nej tau sim qhov kom pom thiab paub, thiab tau cog lub noob, thiab nws loj hlob thiab tawg kaus, thiab pib loj, nej yuav tsum paub tias yog lub noob zoo.
- 34 Thiab nim no, saib seb, nej txoj kev paub puas tseeb lawm? Yeej paub, nej txoj kev paub txog yam ntawd yeej tseeb lawm, thiab nej tsis tas siv txoj kev ntseeg; thiab qhov no twb yog vim nej paub lawm, vim nej paub tias txoj lus tau loj hauv nej tej ntsuj plig, thiab nej kuj paub tias nws tau tawg kaus tuaj, kom nej txoj kev to taub pib to taub tuaj, thiab kom nej tej siab pib dav tuaj.
- 35 Au ces, tsis yog qhov no muaj tseeb los? Kuv hais rau nej tias, Yeej muaj tseeb, vim nws yog qhov kaj; thiab yam dab tsi uas yog qhov kaj, yeej zoo, vim yus yeej pom tau nws, yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum paub tias nws yeej zoo; thiab nim no saib seb, tom qab uas nej tau saj qhov kaj no lawm nej txoj kev paub puas tseeb?
- 36 Saib seb kuv hias rau nej tias, Tsis yog; thiab nej yuav tsum tsis txhob muab nej txoj kev ntseeg tso tseg cia rau ib sab, vim nej tsuas tau sim nej txoj kev ntseeg cog lub noob kom nej yuav tau xyaum txoj kev sim ua kom paub saib lub noob puas zoo xwb.
- 37 Thiab saib seb, thaum tus ntoo pib loj, nej yuav hais tias: Cia peb tu nws kom zoo, kom nws yuav muaj taus cag, kom nws yuav loj hlob, thiab txi tau txiv rau peb. Thiab nim no saib seb, yog nej tu nws kom zoo heev nws yuav muaj taus cag, thiab loj hlob, thiab txi tau txiv.
- 38 Tiam sis yog nej tsis quav ntsej tsoob ntoo, thiab tsis xav txog txoj kev tu nws, saib seb nws yuav tuaj tsis tau ib tug cag li; thiab thaum tshav kub tuaj thiab kub nws, vim nws tsis muaj cag nws yuav qhuav mus, thiab nej yuav muab nws rho thiab muab nws pov tseg.
- 39 Nim no, qhov no tsis yog vim lub noob tsis zoo, thiab kuj tsis yog vim cov txiv ntawd tsis qab; tiam sis nws vim yog nej thaj av qhuav qhuav, thiab nej tsis tu tsoob ntoo, yog li ntawd nej thiaj muaj tsis tau cov txiv ntawd.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

40 Thiab yog li ntawd, yog nej tsis kam tu txoj lus, tos ntsoov nrog txoj kev ntseeg rau cov txiv ntawd, nej yuav tsis muaj cuab kav de tau cov txiv ntawm tsob ntoo uas cawm neeg txoj sia ib zaug li.

41 Tiam sis yog nej yuav tu txoj lus, muaj tseeb tiag, tu tsob ntoo thaum nws pib hlob, rau siab ntso nrog nej txoj kev ntseeg, thiab nrog txoj kev ua siab ntev, tos ntsoov rau cov txiv ntawd, nws yuav tuaj tau cag; thiab saib seb nws yuav yog ib tsob ntoo loj tuaj mus rau txoj sia kav mus ib txhis.

42 Thiab vim yog nej txoj kev rau siab thiab nej txoj kev ntseeg thiab nej txoj kev ua siab ntev nrog txoj lus nyob hauv txoj kev tu nws, xwv kom nws yuav tuaj taus cag rau hauv nej, saib seb, nyob nyob ces nej yuav tau de cov txiv ntawd, uas yog cov muaj nuj nqis tshaj, uas yog cov qab zib tshaj txhua yam uas qab zib huv tib si, thiab uas yog cov dawb tshaj txhua yam uas dawb huv tib si, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab huv tshaj txhua yam uas huv huv tib si; thiab nej yuav tau noj cov txiv no mus txog thaum nej tsau, xwv kom nej yuav tsis tshaib plab, thiab nej yuav tsis nqhis lawm.

43 Lub sij hawm ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij es, nej yuav tau sau tej nqi zog ntawm nej txoj kev ntseeg, thiab nej txoj kev rau siab, thiab kev siab ntev, tos ntsoov tsob ntoo txi txiv los rau nej.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Amas 33

- 1 Nim no tom qab uas Amas tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, lawv tau xa ib tug tuaj cuag nws xav paub saib lawv puas yuav ntseeg ib tug Vajtswv, xwv kom lawv yuav tau txais cov txiv no uas nws tau hais txog lawm, los sis saib lawv yuav cog lub noob li cas, los sis txoj lus uas nws tau hais txog lawm, uas nws tau hais tias yuav tsum raug muab cog rau hauv lawv tej siab; los sis saib lawv yuav tsum pib xyaum sim lawv txoj kev ntseeg zoo li cas.
- 2 Thiab Amas tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, nej tau hais tias nej tsis muaj cuab kav teev tiam nej tus Vajtswv vim nej tau raug ntiab tawm ntawm nej tej tsev sab laj. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, yog nej xav tias nej tsis muaj cuab kav teev tiam Vajtswv, nej yuam kev loj heev lawm, thiab nej tsim nyog nrhiav tej vajlugkub; yog nej xav tias lawv tau qhia nej tej no, ces nej tsis to taub lawv.
- 3 Nej puas nco qab nyeem tej uas Xinos, tus yaj saub thaum ub, tau hais txog txoj kev thov Vajtswv los sis txoj kev teev tiam?
- 4 Vim nws tau hais tias: Koj yog tus muaj kev hlub tshua, Au Vajtswv, vim koj tau hnov kuv tej lus thov, txawm yog thaum kuv nyob hauv hav zoov; muaj tseeb tiag, koj tau yog tus muaj kev hlub tshua thaum kuv tau thov txog rau cov uas yog kuv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab koj tau muab lawv cob rau kuv.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, Au Vajtswv es, thiab koj tau muaj kev hlub tshua rau kuv thaum kuv quaj thov koj nyob tom kuv tej teb; thaum kuv tau quaj rau koj nyob hauv kuv txoj kev thov, thiab koj tau hnov kuv.
- 6 Thiab ntxiv, Au Vajtswv es, thaum kuv tau tig mus rau kuv lub tsev koj tau hnov kuv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev thov.
- 7 Thiab thaum kuv tau nkag mus rau hauv kuv qhov chaw rau khaub ncaws, Au tus Tswv es, thiab tau thov rau koj, koj tau hnov kuv.
- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, koj yeej hlub tshua koj tej me nyuam thaum lawv quaj thov rau koj, kom koj yuav hnov thiab tsis yog kom tib neeg hnov, thiab koj yuav hnov lawv.
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, Au Vajtswv es, koj tau hlub tshua kuv, thiab tau hnov kuv tej kev quaj thov thaum nyob sib koom ua ib pawg nrog koj cov ntseeg.

Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

- 10 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab koj kuj tau hnov kuv thaum kuv tau raug ntiab tawm thiab tau raug ntsub los ntawm kuv tej yeeb ncuab; muaj tseeb tiag, koj tau hnov kuv tej lus quaj thov, thiab tau npau taws rau kuv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab koj tau xyuas lawv nyob hauv koj txoj kev npau taws nrog txoj kev puas tsuaj nrawm nroos.
- 11 Thiab koj tau hnov kuv vim yog kuv tej kev txom nyem thiab kuv txoj kev ua siab ncaj; thiab nws vim yog koj Leej Tub koj thiaj tau muaj kev hlub li ntawd rau kuv, yog li ntawd kuv yuav quaj thov rau koj nyob tag nrho hauv kuv tej kev txom nyem, vim kuv txoj kev xyiv fab yog nyob hauv koj; vim koj tau tshem koj tej kev txiav txim ntawm kuv mus, vim yog koj Leej Tub.
- 12 Thiab nim no Amas tau hais rau lawv hais tias: Nej puas ntseeg cov vajlugkub ntawd uas tau sau los ntawm lawv cov thaum ub?
- 13 Saib seb, yog nej ntseeg, nej yuav tsum ntseeg yam uas Xinos tau hais; vim, saib seb nws tau hais tias: Koj tau tshem koj tej kev txiav txim mus vim yog koj Leej Tub.
- 14 Nim no saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv yuav nug saib nej puas tau nyeem tej vajlugkub? Yog nej tau, ua li cas nej ho tsis ntseeg Vajtswv Leej Tub?
- 15 Vim tsis tau sau tseg tias Xinos tib leeg thiaj tau hais tej yam no xwb, tiam sis Xinoj kuj tau hais txog tej yam no thiab—
- 16 Vim saib seb, nws tau hais tias: Koj tau npau taws, nrog cov neeg no, Au tus Tswv es, vim lawv pheej yuav tsis to taub koj tej kev hlub tshua uas koj tau muab rau lawv vim yog koj Leej Tub.
- 17 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, nej pom tias ib tug yaj saub thib ob thaum ub tau ua tim khawv txog Vajtswv Leej Tub, thiab vim cov neeg pheej tsis to taub nws tej lus lawv tau xuas pob zeb ntaus nws tuag.
- 18 Tiam sis saib seb, tsis tas li no xwb; cov no tsis yog cov uas thiaj tau hais txog Vajtswv Leej Tub xwb.
- 19 Saib seb, Mauxes los kuj tau hais txog nws; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab saib seb ib lub cim twb tau raug tsa sawv nyob hauv hav zoov, xwv kom txhua tus uas ntsia mus rau qhov ntawd yuav ciaj. Thiab ntau tus tau ntsia thiab ciaj.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20 Tiam sis tsawg tus thiaj to taub lub ntsiab ntawm tej yam ntawd xwb, thiab li no los vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab. Tiam sis tau muaj ntau leej uas tau tawv heev es lawv tsis kam ntsia, yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tau piam sij. Nim no qhov uas lawv tsis kam ntsia yog vim lawv tsis ntseeg tias nws yuav kho tau lawv.

21 Au kuv cov kwv tij es, yog nej muaj peev xwm raug kho kom zoo los ntawm tig nej tej qhov muag ib nyuag ntsia xwv kom nej yuav raug kho kom zoo, nej yuav tsis kam ntsia nrawm nroos los, los sis nej yeej yuav ua nej tej siab tawv nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ntseeg, thiab ua neeg tub nkeeg, es nej ho tsis kam tsa nej tej qhov muag, kom nej yuav piam sij los?

22 Yog zoo li ntawd, ces txoj kev txom nyem yuav los rau saum nej; tiam sis yog tsis zoo li ntawd, ces cia li tsa nej tej qhov muag thiab pib ntseeg Vajtswv Leej Tub, tias nws yuav los txhiv nws cov neeg, thiab tias nws yuav los raug kev txom nyem thiab tuag theej rau lawv tej kev txhau; thiab tias nws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, qhov uas yuav coj kom muaj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, kom leej tib neeg txhua tus yuav tau los sawv ntawm nws xub ntiag, kom raug txiav txim tom hnuv kawg thiab hnuv txiav txim, raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.

23 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom nej yuav cog txoj lus no rau hauv nej tej siab, thiab thaum nws pib tuaj ces nej cia li tu nws nrog nej txoj kev ntseeg. Thiab saib seb, nws yuav rais los mus ua ib tsob ntoo, yuav loj hlob nyob hauv nej los mus rau txoj sia uas kav ib txhis. Thiab thaum ntawd thov Vajtswv pub rau nej kom nej tej nra yuav sib, dhau los ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab ntawm nws Leej Tub. Thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no nej yeej ua tau yog nej yuav ua. Amees.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

Amas 34

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amas tau hais cov lus no rau lawv tas lawm nws tau zaum rau hauv av, thiab Amulej tau sawv thiab tau pib qhia lawv, hais tias:
- 2 Kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav tias yuav ua tsis tau yog tias nej yuav tsis quav ntsej txog tej yam uas tau hais txog Khetos txoj kev los, tus uas peb tau qhia tias yog Vajtswv Leej Tub; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv paub tias tej yam no tau raug qhia rau nej ntau zaus ua ntej nej tau faib tawm ntawm peb mus.
- 3 Thiab ib yam li nej tau xav kom kuv tus tij laug uas kuv hlub ua rau nej paub saib nej yuav ua dab tsi, vim yog nej tej kev txom nyem; thiab nws tau hais ob peb yam rau nej kom npaj nej tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau txhawb nej los rau txoj kev ntseeg thiab rau txoj kev ua siab ntev—
- 4 Muaj tseeb tiag, twb kom nej yuav muaj kev ntseeg txaus cog txoj lus rau hauv nej tej siab, kom nej yuav xyaum paub txog nws txoj kev zoo.
- 5 Thiab peb tau pom tias lo lus nug loj uas nyob hauv nej tej siab yog saib txoj lus puas yuav nyob hauv Vajtswv Leej Tub, los sis saib puas yuav tsis muaj Khetos.
- 6 Thiab nej kuj tau pom tias kuv tus tij laug tau ua rau nej paub tseeb, nyob hauv ntau tus yam ntxwv, tias txoj lus yog nyob hauv Khetos mus rau txoj kev cawm seej.
- 7 Kuv tus tij laug tau muab Xinos tej lus hais, tias txoj kev txhiv dim yuav los dhau ntawm Vajtswv Leej Tub los, thiab kuj tau hais txog Xinoj tej lus; thiab nws kuj tau hais txog Mauxes, qhia kom paub tseeb tias tej yam no yeej muaj tseeb tiag.
- 8 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv yuav ua tim khawv ntawm kuv tus kheej rau nej tias tej yam no yeej muaj tseeb. Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias kuv yeej paub tias Khetos yuav los rau hauv noob neej, los ris nws cov neeg tej kev txhaum rau saum nws, thiab tias nws yuav theej lub ntiyaj teb tej kev txhaum; vim tus Tswv Vajtswv tau hais li ntawd.

Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 Vim nws tsim nyog tias yuav tsum muaj ib txoj kev theej txhoj; vim raws li txoj kev npaj tseem ceeb ntawm Vajtswv tus uas nyob mus ib txhis, nws yuav tsum muaj ib txoj kev theej txhoj, los sis tsis li ntawd tib neeg sawv daws yuav tsum zam tsis dhau txoj kev piam sij; muaj tseeb tiag, sawv daws yeej tawv; muaj tseeb tiag, sawv daws raug qaug thiab raug poob zoo lawm, thiab yuav tsum raug piam sij ntshe tsuas yog dhau los ntawm txoj kev theej txhoj uas tsim nyog yuav tsum muaj xwb.

10 Vim tsim nyog tias yuav tsum muaj ib txoj kev txi loj thiab kawg; muaj tseeb tiag, tsis yog ib txoj kev txi tib neeg, thiab tsis yog ntawm tej tsiaj, los sis yog ntawm tej noog; vim nws yuav tsum tsis yog ib txoj kev txi tib neeg; tiam sis nws yuav tsum yog ib txoj kev txi uas tsis muaj qhov kawg thiab nyob mus ib txhis.

11 Nim no yeej tsis muaj ib tug neeg uas muaj peev xwm txi nws cov ntshav kiag uas yuav theej tau rau lwm tus tej kev txhaum. Nim no, yog ib tug neeg raug tua, saib seb peb txoj kev cai, uas ncaj ncees, puas yuav muab txoj sia ntawm nws tus kwv tij? Kuv hais rau nej, Yeej tsis muab.

12 Tiam sis txoj kev cai yuav tsum kom tau txoj sia ntawm nws tus uas tau tua neeg lawm; yog li ntawd yuav tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas txaus rau ib txoj kev theej txhoj uas tsis muaj qhov kawg uas yuav txaus rau ntiaj teb kev txhaum.

13 Yog li ntawd, nws tsim nyog tias yuav tsum muaj ib txoj kev txi loj thiab kawg nkaus; thiab ces yuav muaj, los sis nws tsim nyog yuav tsum muaj, ib qho kawg rau txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; ces Mauxes txoj kev cai yuav muaj puv npo; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav muaj puv npo huv tib si, txhua yam tsis tseem ceeb thiab me, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib yam uas yuav tsis los dhau mus.

14 Thiab saib seb, qhov no yog lub ntsiab tag nrho ntawm txoj kev cai, txhua feem uas me puav leej taw rau txoj kev txi loj thiab kawg nkaus ntawd; thiab txoj kev txi loj thiab kawg nkaus ntawd yuav yog Vajtswv Leej Tub, muaj tseeb tiag, qhov kev txi uas tsis muaj kawg thiab nyob mus ib txhis.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

- 15 Thiab li no nws yuav coj txoj kev cawm seej los rau txhua tus uas yuav ntseeg nws lub npe; qhov no yog qhov uas txhob txwm npaj rau ntawm txoj kev txi kawg no, kom muaj tau lub siab hlub ntawm txoj kev zam txim, uas muaj hwj chim kov yeej txoj kev txim lij, thiab ua kom muaj kev rau noob neej kom lawv yuav muaj kev ntseeg los hloov siab lees txim.
- 16 Thiab li no txoj kev zam txim thiaj them tau tej nqi ntawm txoj kev txim lij, thiab puag lawv nyob hauv txhais caj npab uas tsis muaj xwm txheej, thaum tus uas tsis xyaum kom muaj kev ntseeg mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim qhib ntsa rau tag nrho tej kev txib ntawm txoj kev txim lij; yog li ntawd tsuas yog rau tus uas muaj txoj kev ntseeg mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim xwb thiaj raug coj los mus rau txoj kev txhiv dim loj thiab nyob mus ib txhis.
- 17 Yog li ntawd thov Vajtsv pub rau nej, kuv cov kwv tij, kom nej yuav pib xyaum nej tej kev ntseeg mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, kom nej yuav pib thov rau nws lub npe dawb huv, xwv kom nws yuav zam txim rau nej;
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, quaj thov nws rau txoj kev zam txim; vim nws muaj hwj chim cawm tau.
- 19 Muaj tseeb tiag, txo nej tej hwj chim, thiab thov nws ntxiv mus.
- 20 Quaj thov nws thaum nej nyob hauv nej tej liaj teb, muaj tseeb tiag, thov rau tag nrho nej tej tsiaj txhu.
- 21 Quaj thov nws nyob hauv nej tej vaj tse, muaj tseeb tiag, thov rau tag nrho nej lub cuab yig, tag nrho thaum sawv ntxov, thaum tav su thiab thaum tsaus ntuj.
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, quaj thov nws tawm tsam lub hwj chim ntawm nej tej yeeb ncuab.
- 23 Muaj tseeb tiag, thov nws tawm tsam tus dab, tus uas yog ib tug yeeb ncuab rau tag nrho kev ncaj ncees.
- 24 Quaj thov nws rau tej qoob loos tom nej tej liaj teb, xwv kom nej yuav muaj lawv nplua mias.
- 25 Quaj thov rau tej tsiaj txhu tom nej tej liaj teb, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj coob ntxiv.
- 26 Tiam sis tsis tas li no xwb; nej yuav tsum nchuav nej tej siab rau hauv nej tej chaw rau khaub chaws, thiab nej tej chaw tseem ceeb, thiab hauv nej tej hav zoov.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

- 27 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum nej tsis quaj thov rau tus Tswv, cia nej tej siab kom puv npo, rho nej txoj kev thov Vajtswv rau nws tsis tu ncuva kom pab nej, thiab kom pab cov uas nyob ib ncig nej.
- 28 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv hais rau nej, tsis txhob xav tias tas li qhov no xwb; vim tom qab uas nej tau ua tag ib puas yam tsav no lawm, yog nej tsis kam lees cov neeg txom nyem, thiab cov neeg liab qab, thiab tsis saib xyuas cov neeg mob thiab txom nyem, thiab tsis faib nej tej khoom, yog nej muaj, rau cov uas txom nyem—kuv hais rau nej tias, yog nej tsis ua ib yam ntawm tej yam no, saib seb, nej txoj kev thov Vajtswv yeej tsis muaj qab hau dab tsi, thiab yuav tsis ua ib yam dab tsi rau nej, thiab nej zoo li tej neeg siab phem uas tsis kam lees txoj kev ntseeg.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, yog nej tsis nco qab muaj siab hlub, nej zoo li tej quav hlau, uas cov neeg ntaus hlau muab pov tseg, (vim nws tsis muaj nuj nqis) thiab raug neeg muab ko taw tsuj.
- 30 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, kuv xav kom, tom qab uas nej tau txais ntau tus tim khawv heev lawm, tau pom tias tej vajlugkub dawb huv ua tim khawv txog tej yam no, nej tawm los thiab txi txiv rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 31 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv xav kom nej yuav tawm los thiab tsis txhob ua nej tej siab tawv ntev ntxiv lawm; vim saib seb, nim no yog lub sij hawm thiab yog hnuv ntawm nej txoj kev cawm seej; thiab yog li ntawd, yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tsis txhob ua nej tej siab tawv, tsis ntev ces txoj kev txhiv dim yuav raug koj los rau nej.
- 32 Vim saib seb, lub neej no yog lub caij rau tib neeg npaj mus ntsib Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb lub caij ntawm lub neej no yog lub caij rau tib neeg ua lawv tej hauj lwm.
- 33 Thiab nim no, ib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej ua ntej lawm, ib yam li nej twb tau muaj ntau yam tim khawv heev lawm, yog li ntawd, kuv thov nej tias nej tsis txhob laug laug nej lub sij hawm hloov siab lees txim rau puag tom kawg; vim tom qab lub neej no, uas tau muab rau peb npaj rau txoj kev nyob mus ib txhis, saib seb, yog peb tsis ua kom peb lub caij no zoo dua li qub thaum nyob hauv lub neej no, ces hmo tsaus ntuj yuav los qhov uas yuav ua tsis tau hauj lwm lawm.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34 Nej hais tsis tau tias, thaum nej raug coj los rau qhov kev phem txaus ntshai ntawd, tias kuv mam hloov siab lees txim, kom kuv yuav tau rov qab mus cuag kuv tus Vajtswv. Tsis tau, nej hais tsis tau li no; vim tias tib tug ntsuj plig uas kav peb tej cev thaum lub caij nej tawm ntawm lub neej no mus, tib tug ntsuj plig ntawd yuav muaj hwj chim los kav nej lub cev nyob rau hauv lub ntiaj teb uas nyob mus ib txhis ntawd.

35 Vim saib seb, yog nej tau laug nej lub sij hawm hloov siab lees txim kom txog ntua thaum tuag tso mam hloov siab, saib seb, nej tau rais los mus raug cob rau tus ntsuj plig ntawm tus dab, thiab yuav muab nej zwm ua nws li; yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau tso nej tseg, thiab tau tsis muaj chaw nyob rau hauv nej, thiab tus dab yuav muaj hwj chim huv tib si kav nej; thiab qhov no yog qhov kawg ntawm cov neeg phem.

36 Thiab kuv paub qhov no, vim tus Tswv tau hais tias nws tsis nyob hauv tej tuam tsev uas tsis dawb huv, tiam sis nws nyob hauv tej neeg ncaj ncees tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj tau hais tias cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav tau zaum hauv nws lub nceeg vaj, yuav tsis tawm mus ntxiv ib zaug li lawm; tiam sis lawv tej ris tsho yuav raug ua kom dawb dhau los ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov ntshav.

37 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlob es, kuv xav kom nej yuav nco ntsoov tej yam no, thiab xwv kom nej yuav ua hauj lwm rau nej txoj kev cawm seej nrog txoj kev ntshai Vajtswv, thiab kom nej yuav tsum tsis txhob tsis lees txoj kev Khetos yuav los ntxiv lawm.

38 Xwv kom nej tsis txhob tawm tsam tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ntxiv lawm, tiam sis kom nej yuav txais yuav nws, thiab ris Khetos lub npe rau saum nej; kom nej txo nej tej hwj chim kom ti hauv av, thiab teev tiam Vajtswv, nyob txhua qhov chaw uas nej nyob, nyob hauv tus ntsuj plig thiab hauv txoj kev tseeb; thiab kom nej ua neej nyob hauv txoj kev ua tsaug txhua hnuv, vim tej kev hlob tshua thiab tej koob hmoov ntau uas nws tau muab rau nej.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

39 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj ntuas nej, kuv cov kwv tij, kom nej yuav ceev faj thiab thov Vajtswv tsis tu ncu, xwv kom nej yuav tsis raug kom yuam kev los ntawm tej kev haub ntxias ntawm tus dab, xwv kom nws yuav kov tsis yeej nej, xwv kom nej yuav tsis rais los mus ua nws qhev nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg; vim saib seb, nws yuav muab nqi zog uas tsis muaj ib yam zoo li rau nej.

40 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hluv es, kuv yuav ntuas nej kom ua siab ntev, thiab kom nej yuav nyiaj txhua yam kev txom nyem; kom nej tsis txhob foom cov uas ntiab nej tawm vim yog nej txoj kev pluag heev, nyob tsam nej ho yuav rais los mus ua tej neeg txhaum li lawv thiab;

41 Tiam sis kom nej ua siab ntev, thiab nyiaj tej kev txom nyem, nrog ib txoj kev cia siab ruaj khov tias muaj ib hnuv nej yuav tau so ncaim ntawm nej tej kev txom nyem huv tib si mus.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

Amas 35

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Amulej tau xaus tej lus no lawm lawv tau ncaim ntawm cov neeg coob coob thiab tau los rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho cov kwv tij, tom qab uas lawv tau qhuab qhia txoj lus rau cov Neeg Xaulas, kuj tau los rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos tib yam.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas feem coob ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas tau sab laj ua ke txog tej lus uas tau raug qhia rau lawv, lawv tau npau taws vim yog txoj lus, vim nws tau rhuav lawv tej kev li kev cai uas tsis raws li txoj moo zoo; yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam mloog tej lus.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau xa neeg thiab sib sau cov neeg sawv daws thoob plaws rau tej thaj av tuaj ua ke, thiab tau sab laj nrog lawv txog tej lus uas tau hais lawm.
- 5 Nim no lawv tej nom tswv thiab lawv tej pov thawj thiab lawv tej xib hwb tsis pub cov neeg paub txog lawv tej kev xav; yog li ntawd lawv tau paub twj ywm txog cov neeg tag nrho tej siab.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv tau nrhiav paub tej siab ntawm cov neeg sawv daws, cov uas tau nyiam txog txoj lus uas tau hais los ntawm Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau raug ntiab tawm ntawm thaj av; thiab lawv muaj coob; thiab lawv kuj tau los rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Amas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau qhuab qhia rau lawv.
- 8 Nim no cov Neeg Xaulas tau npau taws nrog Amoos cov neeg uas nyob hauv Ntsawsoos thiab tus thawj coj ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas, tau yog ib tug neeg phem heev; tau xa neeg mus cuag Amoos cov neeg xav kom lawv yuav tsum ntiab cov neeg ntawd tawm ntawm lawv thaj av tag nrho cov uas tau tuaj pem lawv rau hauv lawv cov no thaj av.
- 9 Thiab nws tau hais ntau yam lus tsiv tsiv tawm tsam lawv. Thiab nim no Amoos cov neeg tsis tau ntshai lawv tej lus; yog li ntawd lawv tsis tau ntiab lawv cov no tawm, tiam sis lawv tau txais tag nrho tej neeg pluag ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas uas tau los rau hauv lawv; thiab lawv tau tu lawv cov no, thiab tau muab ris tsho rau lawv hnav, thiab tau muab tej av rau lawv ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg; thiab lawv tau pab lawv raws li lawv tej kev xav tau.

Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

- 10 Nim no qhov no tau txhib cov Neeg Xaulas npau taws tawm tsam Amoos cov neeg, thiab lawv tau pib sib xyaw nrog cov Neeg Lamas thiab kuj txhib lawv kom npau taws nkaug lawv.
- 11 Thiab li no cov Neeg Xaulas thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau pib npaj ua rog tawm tsam Amoos cov neeg, thiab kuj tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 12 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.
- 13 Thiab Amoos cov neeg tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Ntsawsoos, thiab tau los rau hauv thaj av Milej, thiab cia kom muaj chaw nyob hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos rau cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog, xwv kom lawv yuav tawm tsam nrog tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thiab tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas; thiab li no tau pib ib npluav rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Nifais, nyob hauv xyoo thib kaum yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav; thiab ib zaj yuav hais txog lawv tej kev tsov rog tom ntej no mus.
- 14 Thiab Amas, thiab Amoos, thiab lawv tej kwv tij, thiab Amas ob tug tub tau rov qab los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, tom qab uas tau raug ua tej cuab yeej nyob rau hauv Vajtswv txhais tes los coj ntau tus ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas los mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; thiab coob npaum li cov uas tau coj los hloov siab lees txim tau raug raws tawm ntawm lawv thaj av; tiam sis lawv tau muaj av ua lawv qub txeeq qub teg nyob rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos, thiab lawv tau nqa tej cuab yeej ua rog tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej, thiab lawv tej poj niam, thiab tej me nyuam, thiab lawv tej av.
- 15 Nim no Amas, tau tu siab heev rau nws cov neeg tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, muaj tseeb tiag rau tej tsov rog, thiab txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg uas nyob hauv lawv; thiab tau raug tshaj tawm txoj lus, los sis tau raug xa mus tshaj tawm txoj lus, rau tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws nyob rau hauv txhua txhia lub nroog; thiab tau pom tias cov neeg tej siab tau pib tawv tuaj, thiab lawv tau pib npau taws vim yog txoj kev nruj ntawm txoj lus, nws tau tu siab heev kawg nkaus li.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

16 Yog li ntawd, nws tau kom nws cov tub tuaj sib sau ua ke; xwv kom nws yuav tau muab rau lawv txhua tus nws tej kev qhuab qhia, kem tsis ua ke, txog tej yam uas nyob rau hauv kev ncaj ncees. Thiab peb muaj ib zag txog nws tej lus txib, uas nws tau muab rau lawv raws li nws tus kheej phau ceev xwm txheej.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Amas 36

- 1 Kuv tus tub, cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej lus; vim kuv cog lus rau koj, tias npaum li uas koj yuav koj Vajtswv tej lus txib koj yuav vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 2 Kuv xav kom koj yuav ua li kuv tau ua lawm, nco ntsoov txog txoj kev ua qhev ntawm peb tej yawg koob; vim lawv tau poob cev qhev, thiab tsis muaj leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm tso tau lawv tsuas yog Anplaham tus Vajtswv nkaus xwb, thiab Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhouj tus Vajtswv; thiab nws yeej tau tso lawv dim ntawm lawv tej kev txom nyem lawm tiag.
- 3 Thiab nim no, Au kuv tus me tub Hilamas es, saib seb, koj tseem hluas, thiab yog li ntawd, kuv thov koj kom koj yuav hnov kuv tej lus thiab kawm ntawm kuv; vim kuv yeej paub tias txhua tus uas yuav tso lawv tej kev ntseeg siab rau Vajtswv yeej yuav raug pab nyob hauv lawv tej kev plaub ntug, thiab lawv tej teeb meem, thiab lawv tej kev txom nyem, thiab yuav raug tsa sawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 4 Thiab kuv tsis xav kom koj xav tias kuv paub kuv tus kheej xwb—tsis yog los ntawm sab cev nqaij daim tawv tiam sis yog los ntawm sab ntsuj plig, tsis yog los ntawm neeg tej siab tiam sis yog los ntawm Vajtswv.
- 5 Nim no, saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias, yog kuv tsis tau yug los ntawm Vajtswv kuv yeej yuav tsis tau paub txog tej yam no; tiam sis los ntawm nws tus tim tswv dawb huv lub qhov ncauj, Vajtswv tau ua tej yam no rau kuv paub, tsis yog ib yam tsim nuj nqis ntawm kuv tus kheej;
- 6 Vim kuv tau mus ncig nrog Mauxiyas cov tub, mus nrhiav rhuav Vajtswv lub koom txoos; tiam sis saib seb, Vajtswv tau xa nws ib tug tim tswv dawb huv los cheem peb ntawm txoj kev.
- 7 Thiab saib seb, nws tau hais rau peb zoo ib yam li nws yog ib lub suab xob quaj, thiab tej av tau qeeg nkaws hauv peb qab xib taws; thiab peb sawv daws tau vau rau hauv av, vim tus Tswv txoj kev ntshai tau los rau saum peb.
- 8 Tiam sis saib seb, lub suab tau hais rau kuv tias: Cia li sawv. Thiab kuv tau sawv thiab tau sawv ntsug, thiab tau pom tus tim tswv.

Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

- 9 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Yog koj tsis xav kom koj tus kheej raug puas tsuaj, tsis txhob nrhiav rhuav Vajtswv lub koom txoos ntxiv lawm.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau vau rau hauv av; thiab tau peb hnuv thiab peb hmos uas kuv rua tsis tau kuv lub qhov ncauj, thiab kuv kuj siv tsis tau kuv tej tes tej taw.
- 11 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais ntau yam ntxiv rau kuv, uas tau hnov los ntawm kuv cov kwv tij, tiam sis kuv tsis tau hnov tej ntawd; vim thaum kuv tau hnov tej lus uas hais tias—Yog koj tsis xav kom koj tus kheej raug puas tsuaj, tsis txhob nrhiav rhuav Vajtswv lub koom txoos ntxiv lawm—kuv tau raug kev txhawj thiab kev ntshai heev ntshai tsam kuv yuav raug puas tsuaj, ces kuv tau vau rau hauv av thiab tsis tau hnov dab tsi ntxiv lawm.
- 12 Tiam sis kuv tau raug tsim txom nrog txoj kev tsim txom uas nyob mus ib txhis, vim kuv tus ntsuj plig tau raug txom nyem kawg nkaus thiab tsim txom nrog tag nrho kuv tej kev txhaum.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau nco qab txog tag nrho kuv tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, vim qhov uas kuv tau raug tsim txom nrog tej kev mob ntawm ntuaj txiag teb tsaus; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tau pom tias kuv tau ntseev siab tawm tsam kuv tus Vajtswv, thiab kuv tsis tau coj nws tej lus txib dawb huv.
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv tau tua nws tej me nyuam ntau tus, los sis tau coj lawv mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum kawg kuv tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tau muaj ntau heev kawg nkaus li, npaum tias txoj kev uas xav los rau hauv Vajtswv xub ntiag tau tsim txom kuv tus ntsuj plig nrog txoj kev ntshai uas tsis pom qab piav tau.
- 15 Au, kuv tau xav, tias kheev lam kuv raug xa tau mus nrauj zoo thiab rais los mus tsis muaj tus ntsuj plig thiab lub cev, xwv kom kuv tsis tau raug coj los sawv nyob hauv kuv tus Vajtswv xub ntiag, los txiav txim rau tej uas kuv tau ua los lawm.
- 16 Thiab nim no, kuv tau raug tsim txom tau peb hnuv thiab peb hmos, twb raug tej kev mob ntawm ib tug neeg txhaum.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv tau raug tsim nrog txoj kev tsim txom zoo li ntawd, thaum kuv tau raug tsim txom los ntawm txoj kev nco qab txog kuv tej kev txhaum ntau, saib seb, kuv kuj tau nco txog kuv tau hnov kuv txiv txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg txog txoj kev los ntawm tus Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv ib tug tub, los theej ntiatj teb tej kev txhaum.
- 18 Nim no, thaum kuv lub siab txhom tau qhov kev xav no, kuv tau quaj nyob hauv kuv lub siab tias: Au Yexus, koj tus uas yog Vajtswv tus Tub, thov zam txim rau kuv, tus uas nyob hauv txoj kev phem kev iab, thiab raug khi los ntawm tej saw hlau ntawm txoj kev tuag uas kav ib txhis.
- 19 Thiab nim no, saib seb, thaum kuv tau xav li no, kuv txawm tsis nco qab txog kuv tej kev mob ntxiv lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tsis tau raug tsim txom los ntawm txoj kev nco qab txog kuv tej kev txhaum ntxiv lawm.
- 20 Thiab au, txoj kev xyiv fab dab tsi, thiab txoj kev kaj zoo kawg nkaus dab tsi uas kuv tau pom; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv tus ntsuj plig tau muaj txoj kev xyiv fab puv npo heev ib yam li kuv tej kev mob thiab!
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau koj, kuv tus me tub, yeej tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas yuav mob thiab iab npaum li kuv tej kev mob. Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv hais rau koj ntxiv, kuv tus me tub, tiam sis nyob rau sab tes tod, ho tsis muaj kev zoo nkauj thiab qab zib npaum li kuv txoj kev xyiv fab.
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv nco tias kuv twb pom, ib yam li peb tus yawg koob Lihais tau pom, Vajtswv zaum saum nws lub rooj zaum, muaj tim tswv coob leej suav tsis txheeb nrog ncig nws, zoo li lawv hu nkauj thiab qhuas lawv tus Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tau xav nyob qhov ntawd.
- 23 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tej tes tej taw tau rov qab txais lawv tej zog dua, thiab kuv tau sawv tsees sawv ntsug, thiab tau qhia tseeb rau cov neeg tias kuv tau yug los ntawm Vajtswv.
- 24 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txij li lub caij ntawd los txog nim no, kuv tau ua hauj lwm tsis tseg li, xwv kom kuv yuav coj tau tej tib neeg los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; xwv kom kuv yuav coj tau lawv los saj txoj kev xyiv fab heev uas kuv tau saj lawm; xwv kom lawv kuj yuav tau yug los ntawm Vajtswv, thiab muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

- 25 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nim no saib seb, Au kuv tus me tub es, tus Tswv tau muab rau kuv txoj kev xyiv fab heev vim tej txiv uas txi ntawm kuv tej hauj lwm;
- 26 Rau qhov vim yog txoj lus uas nws tau faib rau kuv, saib seb, ntau tus tau yug los ntawm Vajtswv, thiab tau saj ib yam li kuv tau saj lawm, thiab tau pom ntawm qhov muag kiag ib yam li kuv tau pom lawm; yog li ntawd lawv yeej paub txog tej yam no uas kuv tau hais lawm, ib yam li kuv paub; thiab txoj kev paub uas kuv muaj yog los ntawm Vajtswv los.
- 27 Thiab kuv tau raug pab thaum muaj kev nyuaj siab thiab muaj teeb meem txhua yam, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nyob tag nrho hauv txhua yam kev txom nyem; muaj tseeb tiag, Vajtswv tau tso kuv dim qhov taub, thiab dim kev raug txim, thiab dim txoj kev tuag; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yeej muab kuv txoj kev cia siab rau nws, thiab nws yeej tseem yuav tso kuv dim.
- 28 Thiab kuv paub tias nws yuav tsa kuv sawv nyob rau hauv hnub kawg, mus nyob nrog nws muaj yeeb koob zis; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav qhuas nws mus ib txhis li, vim nws tau coj peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm Iyiv los, thiab nws tau ua rau dej nqos cov neeg Iyiv mus rau hauv dej Hiav Txwv Liab; thiab nws tau coj lawv los ntawm nws lub hwj chim mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau tso lawv dim ntawm txoj kev raug txim thiab txoj kev ua qhev ib lub caij dhau ib lub caij.
- 29 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj tau coj peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj thiab; thiab nws kuj tau, los ntawm nws lub hwj chim uas kav ib txhis, tau tso lawv dim ntawm tej kev raug txim thiab ua qhev, ib lub caij mus rau ib lub caij nqis los txog niaj hnub nim no; thiab kuv tau nco ntsoov txog lawv tej kev ua qhev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab koj kuj tsim nyog yuav tsum nco ntsoov txog lawv tej kev ua qhev thiab, ib yam li kuv tau nco lawv tej kev ua qhev.
- 30 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tus me tub es, tsis tas li no xwb; vim tsim nyog koj yuav tsum paub ib yam li kuv paub, tias npaum li uas koj yuav coj Vajtswv tej lus txib koj yuav vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av; thiab koj kuj tsim nyog yuav tsum paub, tias npaum li uas koj yuav tsis coj Vajtswv tej lus txib koj yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag mus. Nim no qhov no yog raws li nws txoj lus.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

Amas 37

- 1 Thiab, kuv tus me tub Hilamas es, kuv txib kom koj khaws cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau raug muab rau kuv;
- 2 Thiab kuv kuj txib koj tias koj yuav tsum sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej txog cov neeg no, raws li uas kuv tau ua lawm, rau saum Nifais cov phiaj, thiab khaws tag nrho tej yam no kom dawb ceev tej uas kuv tau khaws los lawm, tib yam li uas kuv tau khaws lawv cia; vim nws yog rau ib lub hom phiaj txawj ntse uas lawv yuav tsum raug ceev.
- 3 Thiab cov phiaj toog no, uas muaj tej ntawv sau, uas muaj tej ceev xwm txheej ntawm tej vajlugkub dawb huv nyob saum lawv, uas muaj tej keeb kwm txog peb tej yawg koob, txij puag thaum chiv keeb los—
- 4 Saib seb, nws tau raug qhia tseg los ntawm peb tej yawg koob, tias lawv yuav tsum raug muab ceev thiab muab cev nqis dhau ib tiam mus rau ib tiam, thiab kom raug ceev thiab tsum kwm los ntawm tus Tswv mus txog thaum lawv yuav tawm mus rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg sawv daws, xwv kom lawv yuav paub txog tej txuj ci tseem ceeb uas muaj nyob hauv.
- 5 Thiab nim no saib seb, yog lawv raug ceev lawv yuav tsum muaj lawv qhov uas ci ci tas mus li; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv yeej yuav muaj lawv qhov uas ci ci tas mus li; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho tej phiaj uas muaj tej kev sau uas dawb huv thiab.
- 6 Nim no tej zaum koj yuav xav tias qhov no yog kev ruam nyob hauv kuv; tiam sis saib seb kuv hais rau koj tias, los ntawm tej qhov me thiab yooj yim tej qhov uas loj tau muaj los; thiab tej cuab yeej me muaj ntau zaus ua tau rau cov neeg txawj ntse ntsiag to.
- 7 Thiab tus Tswv Vajtswv yeej ua hauj lwm los ntawm tej cuab yeej tes kom koj tau nws tej hom phiaj tseem ceeb thiab loj uas nyob mus ib txhis muaj tau los; thiab los ntawm tej cuab yeej me me tus Tswv yeej ua tau rau tej neeg txawj ntse ntsiag to thiab muab tau txoj kev cawm seej rau ntau leej.

Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

8 Thiab nim no, yav tas los los txog ziang no nws tau yog kev txawj ntse ntawm Vajtsv kom tej yam no yuav raug tsom kwm cia; vim saib seb, lawv tau pab kom cov neeg no txoj kev nco ntsoov loj tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau pab lawv paub ntau qhov uas yuam kev lawm, thiab tau coj lawv los paub txog lawv tus Vajtsv rau txoj kev cawm seej ntawm lawv tej ntsuj plig.

9 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau koj tias yog tsis tau muaj tej yam no cov uas muaj nyob hauv cov ceev xwm txheej no, uas nyob rau hauv cov phiaj no, ces Amos thiab nws cov kwv tij yeej tsis muaj cuab kav yaum tau cov Neeg Lamas ntau txhiab leej ua luaj tawm ntawm lawv tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai uas tsis yog; muaj tseeb tiag, tej ceev xwm txheej no thiab lawv tej lus tau coj lawv los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; qhov ntawd yog lawv tau coj lawv los paub txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsv, thiab los muaj kev zoo siab nyob hauv Yexus Khetos lawv tus Txhiv Dim.

10 Thiab leej twg yuav paub tau tias yog yam cuab yeej dab tsi uas yuav coj tau lawv ntau txhiab leej los, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab coj peb cov kwv tij tawv ncau ntau txhiab leej, cov Neeg Nifais thiab, cov uas nim no tseem tab tom ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv nyob hauv txoj kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, los paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim?

11 Nim no tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog no tseem tsis tau raug ua rau kuv paub tag; yog li ntawd kuv yuav tsis hais ntxiv lawm.

12 Thiab nws yuav txaus lawm yog kuv tsuas hais tias tseg lawv cia rau ib lub hom phiaj hau kev txawj ntse, qhov hau kev uas Vajtsv paub; vim nws yeej saib xyuas zoo rau tag nrho nws tej hauj lwm, thiab nws tej kev yeej ncaj, thiab nws txoj kev yog ib txog uas ncig nyob mus ib txhis.

13 Au, nco ntsoov, cia li nco ntsoov, kuv tus me tub Hilamas es, Vajtsv tej lus txib nruj npaum li cas. Thiab nws tau hais tias: Yog nej yuav coj kuv tej lus txib nej yuav vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av—tiam sis yog nej tsis coj nws tej lus txib nej yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag mus.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

- 14 Thiab nim no nco ntsoov, kuv tus me tub es, Vajtswv tau muab tej yam no rau koj khaws, uas dawb ceev, uas nws tau muab ceev kom dawb ceev, thiab uas nws yuav ceev thiab tsom kwm cia rau lub hom phiaj tseem ceeb nyob hauv nws, xwv kom nws yuav tau qhia nws lub hwj chim rau tej tiam neeg tom ntej no paub.
- 15 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv qhia koj los ntawm tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, yog koj ua txhaum Vajtswv tej lus txib, saib seb, tej yam uas dawb ceev no yuav raug tshem ntawm koj mus los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim, thiab koj yuav raug coj mus rau Dab Ntxwg Nyoog, kom nws yuav muab koj tsoov yam li tej npluag nplej uas ya mus nrog cua.
- 16 Tiam sis yog koj coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, thiab muab tej uas dawb ceev no ua raws li uas Vajtswv yuav txib koj, (vim koj yuav tsum tau thov tiag tiag ntawm tus Tswv rau txhua yam saib koj yuav tsum ua li cas rau lawv) saib seb, tsis muaj hwj chim nyob hauv ntiaj teb no los sis hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav muaj peev xwm txeeb lawv ntawm koj mus, vim Vajtswv yeej muaj hwj chim txaus yuav ua txhua yam raws li nws tej lus.
- 17 Vim nws yuav ceev tag nrho nws tej lus cog uas nws yuav cog rau koj, vim nws twb tau ceev nws tej lus cog uas nws tau cog rau peb tej yawg koob lawm.
- 18 Vim nws tau cog lus rau lawv tias nws yuav tsom kwm tej yam no rau ib lub hom phiaj txawj ntse hauv nws, kom nws yuav qhia tawm nws lub hwj chim rau tej tiam neeg yav tom ntej no paub.
- 19 Thiab nim no saib seb, ib yam uas nws tau ua tiav lawm, twb yog txoj kev txum tim ntau txhiab leej cov Neeg Lamas los paub txog qhov tseeb; thiab nws tau qhia tawm nws lub hwj chim rau hauv lawv cov no, thiab nws kuj tseem yuav qhia tawm nws lub hwj chim rau hauv lawv rau tej tiam neeg yav tom ntej no thiab; yog li ntawd lawv yuav tsum raug tsom kwm.
- 20 Yog li ntawd kuv txib koj, kuv tus me tub Hilamas es, kom koj yuav rau siab ua kom tiav tag nrho kuv tej lus, thiab kom koj yuav mob siab coj Vajtswv tej lus txib ib yam li lawv tau sau tseg cia lawm.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

21 Thiab nim no, kuv yuav hais rau koj txog cov nees nkaum plaub daig phiaj ntawd, tias kom koj ceev lawv, xwv kom tej txuj ci uas neeg paub tsis txog thiab tej hauj lwm hauv kev tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tej hauj lwm ua ntsiag to, los sis tej hauj lwm ua ntsiag to ntawm cov neeg uas tau raug puas tsuaj lawm, yuav raug ua kom paub rau cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho lawv tej kev tua neeg, thiab tej kev ua tub sab, thiab lawv tej kev ua lim hiam, thiab tag nrho lawv tej kev phem thiab kev qias, kom yuav raug ua kom paub rau cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kom koj yuav tsom kwm cov txhais lus no.

22 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau pom tias nws cov neeg tau pib ua hauj lwm hauv kev tsaus ntuj, muaj tseeb tiag, ua hauj lwm tua neeg ntsiag to thiab tej kev qias; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau hais tias, yog lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj ncaim saum lub ntiaj teb no mus.

23 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais tias: Kuv yuav npaj rau kuv tus tub qhe Nkaxiles, ib lub pob zeb, uas yuav ci nyob hauv qhov tsaus ntuj tawm mus rau qhov pom kev, kom kuv yuav ua paub rau kuv cov neeg saib leej twg ua hauj lwm rau kuv, kom kuv yuav ua paub rau lawv txog tej hauj lwm ntawm lawv cov kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej hauj lwm ua ntsiag to, lawv tej hauj lwm kev tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tej kev phem thiab kev qias.

24 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, cov txhais lus no tau raug npaj los xwv kom Vajtswv txoj lus yuav muaj tiav, li uas nws tau hais, tias:

25 Kuv yuav coj tag nrho lawv tej hauj lwm ua ntsiag to thiab lawv tej kev qias tawm ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj los mus rau txoj kev kaj; thiab tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd kuv yuav rhuav kom lawv puas tsuaj ncaim saum lub ntiaj teb no mus; thiab kuv yuav coj tag nrho lawv tej yam uas ua ntsiag to thiab tej kev qias los mus rau qhov kaj, rau txhua haiv neeg uas yuav nyob hauv thaj av txij no mus lawm yav tom ntej.

26 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, peb pom tias lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim; yog li ntawd lawv tau raug puas tsuaj lawm, thiab Vajtswv txoj lus twb tau muaj tiav npaum li ntawd lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej kev qias uas ua ntsiag to tau raug coj tawm ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj thiab raug ua rau peb paub.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

27 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv txib kom koj yuav nco tag nrho lawv tej kev lees lus, thiab lawv tej kev khi lus, thiab lawv tej kev khi nyob hauv lawv tej kev qias uas ua ntsiag to; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho lawv tej cim thiab lawv tej kev xav tsis thoob koj yuav tsum ncaim ntawm cov neeg no mus, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis paub txog lawv, ntshai tsam lawv ho yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj thiab raug puas tsuaj.

28 Vim saib seb, muaj ib qho kev foom tsis zoo nyob rau saum tag nrho thaj av no, tias txoj kev puas tsuaj yuav los rau saum txhua tus uas ua hauj lwm ntawm kev tsaus ntuj, raws li Vajtsv lub hwj chim, thaum uas lawv siav heev heev lawm; yog li ntawd kuv xav kom cov neeg no yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj.

29 Yog li ntawd koj yuav tsum ceev tej tswv yim ntsiag to ntawm lawv tej kev lees lus no thiab lawv tej kev khi lus tawm ntawm cov neeg no, thiab tsuas yog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev tua neeg thiab lawv tej kev qias xwb uas koj yuav tau ua kom lawv paub; thiab koj yuav tsum qhia lawv kom ntxub tej kev phem thiab kev qias thiab kev tua neeg zoo li ntawd; thiab koj kuj yuav tsum qhia lawv tias cov neeg no tau raug puas tsuaj vim yog lawv tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias thiab lawv tej kev tua neeg.

30 Vim saib seb, lawv tau tua tag nrho tus Tswv tej yaj saub uas tau tuaj rau hauv lawv tuaj qhuab qhia rau lawv txog lawv tej kev qias; thiab tej ntshav ntawm cov uas lawv tau tua tau quaj mus rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsv rau txoj kev paj txiaj ntsig rau cov uas tau tua lawv lawm; thiab li no Vajtsv tej kev txiav txim thiaj tau los rau saum cov neeg ua hauj lwm kev tsaus ntuj thiab ua tej kev tuav hauv ntsiag to.

31 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaj av yuav raug foom tsis zoo mus ib txhis thiab ib txhis rau cov neeg ua hauj lwm kev tsaus ntuj thiab tej kev tuav hauv ntsiag to, mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim ua ntej lawv yuav siav xwb.

32 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, nco ntsoov tej lus uas kuv tau hais rau koj lawm; tsis txhob cia tej tswv yim ua ntsiag to ntawd rau cov neeg no, tiam sis qhia rau lawv txog ib txoj kev ntxub kav ib txhis tawm tsam txoj kev txhaum thiab txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

- 33 Qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab txoj kev ntseeg hauv tus Tswv Yexus Khetos rau lawv; qhia kom lawv txo lawv tej hwj chim thiab kom ua zoo thiab ua siab mos siab muag; qhia lawv kom tiv txhua txoj kev dag ntxias ntawm tus dab, nrog lawv tej kev ntseeg ntawm tus Tswv Yexus Khetos.
- 34 Qhia kom lawv tsis txhob nkees kiag li thaum ua tej hauj lwm zoo, tiam sis yuav tsum ua zoo thiab ua siab mos muag; vim txhua tus uas ua li ntawd yuav nrhiav tau chaw so rau lawv tej ntsuj plig.
- 35 Au, nco ntsoov mog, kuv tus me tub, thiab kawm txoj kev txawj ntse thaum koj tseem hluas; muaj tseeb tiag, kawm koj Vajtsv tej lus txib thaum koj tseem hluas.
- 36 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab quaj thov Vajtsv rau txhua yam uas koj xav kom pab; muaj tseeb tiag, muab txhua yam uas koj ua tso rau ntawm tus Tswv thiab txawm yog koj yuav mus qhov twg los cia nws nyob ntawm tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, cia tag nrho koj tej kev xav taw mus rau tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, muab txoj kev hlub hauv koj lub siab tso rau tus Tswv mus ib txhis.
- 37 Sab laj nrog tus Tswv nyob rau hauv txhua yam uas koj ua, thiab nws yuav koj mus rau qhov zoo; muaj tseeb tiag, thaum koj qhau cev pw hmo ntuj cia li qhau cev rau tus Tswv, xwv kom nws yuav tsom kwm koj thaum koj tsaug zog; thiab thaum koj sawv thaum sawv ntxov cia koj lub siab puv npo kev ua tsaug rau Vajtsv; thiab yog koj yuav ua tej yam no, koj yuav raug tsa sawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 38 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv muaj tej yam uas xav hais txog qhov uas peb tej yawg koob hu ua ib lub pob, los sis lub taw kev—los sis peb cov yawg koob tau hu nws ua lub Liyahaunas, uas tau, txhais hais tias, ib lub koob taw kev; thiab tus Tswv tau npaj nws.
- 39 Thiab saib seb, tsis muaj ib tug neeg ua tau tej yam txawj ntse thiab muaj qauv tes zoo npaum li ntawd. Thiab saib seb, nws tau raug npaj los qhia peb tej yawg koob paub txog txoj kev uas lawv yuav taug nyob hauv hav zoov.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

40 Thiab nws tau ua hauj lwm rau lawv raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg Vajtswv; yog li ntawd, yog lawv muaj kev ntseeg los ntseeg tias Vajtswv muaj peev xwm ua tau kom tej koob taw kev rau lawv mus, saib seb, nws tau ua li ntawd; yog li ntawd lawv tau muaj qho txuj ci tseem ceeb no, thiab kuj muaj ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb raug ua los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim, ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv.

41 Txawm li ntawd los, vim tej txuj ci tseem ceeb ntawd tau raug ua los ntawm tej yam me me xwb los nws tau qhia rau lawv paub tej hauj lwm tseem ceeb. Lawv tau ua neeg tub nkeeg, thiab tau hnov qab siv lawv tej kev ntseeg thiab tej kev rau siab thiab ces tej hauj lwm tseem ceeb ntawd tau nres, thiab lawv ua tsis tau dab tsi nyob rau hauv lawv txoj kev tsiv;

42 Yog li ntawd, lawv tau nyob rau hauv hav zoov, los sis tsis tau mus ncaj kev, thiab tau raug kev tshaib thiab kev nqhis, vim yog lawv tej kev txhaum.

43 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub es, kuv xav kom koj yuav tsum to taub tias tej yam no muaj nws ib qho piv txwv, vim ib yam li peb tej yawg koob tau nkees ua raws li lub koob taw kev no (nim no tej yam no tau yog sab cev nqaj daim tawv) lawv tsis tau vam meej; tib yam li tej yam uas yog sab ntsuj plig thiab.

44 Vim saib seb, nws kuj yooj yim ib yam li yuav mloog Khetos txoj lus, uas yuav taw rau koj ib txoj kev ncaj mus rau txoj kev zoo siab uas nyob mus ib txhis, ib yam li rau peb tej yawg koob uas ua raws li lub koob taw kev, uas tau taw rau lawv ib txoj kev ncaj mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm.

45 Thiab nim no kuv hais tias, tsis muaj ib lub cim nyob hauv tej yam no los? Vim tseeb ib yam li lub taw kev no tau coj peb tej yawg koob, los ntawm txoj kev raws nws txoj kev, mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, kuj yeej yuav tseeb li ntawd rau Khetos tej lus, yog peb yuav raws lawv tej kev, ris peb dhau lub hav ntawm txoj kev tu siab no mus rau ib thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm uas zoo heev tshaj.

46 Au kuv tus me tub es, tsis txhob cia peb tub nkeeg vim yog tej kev yooj yim ntawm txoj kev; vim peb tej yawg koob twb zoo li ntawd; vim nws tau raug npaj rau lawv li ntawd, kom yog lawv yuav saib lawv yuav muaj txoj sia nyob; kuj zoo tib yam li ntawd rau peb thiab. Txoj kev twb tau npaj lawm, thiab yog peb yuav saib peb yeej yuav muaj txoj sia nyob tas mus li.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

47 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, xyuas kom koj yuav khaws tej khoom dawb ceev no cia kom zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, xyuas kom koj yuav ntsia Vajtswv ua koj lub neej. Cia li mus rau hauv cov neeg no thiab tshaj tawm txoj lus, thiab ua tiag tiag. Kuv tus me tub, mus zoo koj mog.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Amas 38

- 1 Kuv tus me tub, cuab pob ntseg rau kuv tej lus, vim kuv hais rau koj tias, zoo ib yam li kuv tau hais rau Hilamas lawm, tias npaum li uas koj yuav coj Vajtsv wv tej lus txib koj yuav vammeej nyob hauv thaj av; thiab npaum li uas koj yuav tsis coj Vajtsv wv tej lus txib koj yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag mus.
- 2 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv cia siab tias kuv yuav muaj kev xyiv fab nyob hauv koj, vim yog koj txoj kev ruaj nrees thiab koj txoj kev ntseeg rau Vajtsv wv; vim ib yam li koj tau pib thaum koj tseem hluas vam khom ntsoov rau tus Tswv koj tus Vajtsv wv, tib yam li ntawd kuv cia siab ntsoov tias koj yuav coj nws tej lus txib mus tsis tu ncuaj; vim tus uas yuav tau koob hmoov yog tus uas nyiaj kom mus txog thaum kawg.
- 3 Kuv hais rau koj, kuv tus me tub es, tias kuv twb tau muaj kev xyiv fab heev nyob hauv koj lawm, vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg thiab koj txoj kev rau siab, thiab koj txoj kev ua siab ntev thiab koj txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Xaulas.
- 4 Vim kuv paub tias koj tau raug khi; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv kuj paub tias koj tau raug xuas pob zeb txawb vim yog txoj hauj lw m ntawm txoj lus; thiab koj tau ua siab ntev nyiaj tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no vim tus Tswv tau nrog koj nyob; thiab nim no koj paub tias tus Tswv tau tso koj dim lawm.
- 5 Thiab nim no kuv tus me tub, Sinploos, kuv xav kom koj yuav nco ntsoov, tias ntau ib yam li koj yuav tso koj txoj kev cia siab rau Vajtsv wv koj yeej yuav raug tso dim ntawm koj tej kev txom nyem thiab koj tej teeb meem, thiab koj tej kev kub ntxhov ntau npau li ntawd, thiab koj yuav raug tsa sawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 6 Nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv tsis xav kom koj xav tias kuv paub tej yam no kuv tus kheej, tiam sis nws yog Vajtsv wv tus Ntsuj Plig uas nyob hauv kuv uas ua tej yam no rau kuv paub; vim yog kuv tsis tau raug yug los ntawm Vajtsv wv ces kuv yeej yuav tsis tau paub tej yam no.

Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself; but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

- 7 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv vim nws txoj kev hlub tshua heev tau xa nws tus tim tswv los tshaj tawm rau kuv tias kuv yuav tsum tseg txoj hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj nyob hauv cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv tau pom ib tug tim tswv tim ntsej tim muag, thiab nws tau hais lus nrog kuv, thiab nws lub suab zoo ib yam li xob quaj, thiab nws tau ua rau tag nrho thaj av tshee qeeg nkaws.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau nyob hauv txoj kev mob iab heev thiab kev nkeeg ntawm tus ntsuj plig tau peb hnuv thiab peb hmos; thiab ib txwm tsis tau, mus txog thaum kuv tau quaj thov tus Tswv Yexus Khetos rau txoj kev zam txim, kuv kuj tau txais txoj kev zam txim rau kuv tej kev txhaum. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau quaj thov nws thiab kuv thiaj nrhiav tau txoj kev thaj yeeb rau kuv tus ntsuj plig.
- 9 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv tau qhia koj tej yam no xwv kom koj yuav kawm tau kev txawj ntse, kom koj yuav kawm ntawm kuv tias tsis muaj dua lwm txoj kev los sis lwm yam uas leej tib neeg yuav muaj peev xwm dim tau, tsuas yog nyob hauv thiab dhau los ntawm Khetos xwb. Saib seb, nws yog txoj sia thiab qhov kaj ntawm lub ntiaj teb. Saib seb, nws yog txoj lus ntawm qhov tseeb thiab qhov ncaj ncees.
- 10 Thiab nim no, ib yam li koj tau pib qhia txoj lus txawm li ntawd los kuv xav kom koj yuav qhia tsis txhob tu ncu; thiab kuv xav kom koj yuav rau siab thiab ceev lub siab rau tag nrho txhua yam.
- 11 Ceev faj kom koj tsis txhob khav theeb; muaj tseeb tiag, ceev faj koj tsis txhob khav txog koj tus kheej txoj kev txawj ntse, thiab txhob khav txog koj lub zog.
- 12 Siv txoj kev muaj peev xwm, tiam sis tsis txhob tshaj qhov yuav nyiaj taus; thiab kuj ceev faj tias koj yuav tswj tag nrho koj tej kev ntsuv siab, xwv kom koj yuav muaj txoj kev hlub puv npo; ceev faj koj tsis txhob tub nkeeg.
- 13 Tsis txhob thov Vajtswv li cov Neeg Xaulas thov, vim koj tau pom tias lawv thov kom neeg hnov, thiab kom raug qhuas rau lawv tej kev txawj ntse.
- 14 Tsis txhob hais tias: Au Vajtswv, kuv ua koj tsaug tias peb zoo dua li peb tej kwv tij; tiam sis yuav tsum hais tias: Au tus Tswv, thov zam kuv tej kev tsis tsim txiaj, thiab nco ntsoov hlub tshua rau kuv cov kwv tij—muaj tseeb tiag, qhia koj tej kev tsis tsim txiaj rau Vajtswv txhua lub caij nyoog.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

15 Thiab thov tus Tswv foom koob hmoov rau koj tus ntsuj plig, thiab txais koj nyob hauv hnuv kawg rau hauv nws lub nceeg vaj, mus zaum nyob hauv txoj kev thaj yeeb. Nim no cia li mus, kuv tus me tub, thiab qhia txoj lus rau cov neeg no. Ua tiag tiag. Kuv tus me tub, mus zoo koj mog.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

Amas 39

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv muaj ntau yam hais rau koj dua li tej uas kuv tau hais rau koj tus tij laug; vim saib seb, koj tsis tau pom txoj kev ruaj nrees ntawm koj tus tij laug, nws txoj kev ntseeg, thiab nws txoj kev rau siab coj Vajtsv wv tej lus txib los? Saib seb, nws tsis tau ua ib tug yam ntxwv zoo rau koj los?
- 2 Vim koj tsis tau ua raws li kuv tej lus ntau npaum li koj tus tij laugtau ua, nyob rau hauv cov Neeg Xaulas. Nim no qhov no yog yam uas kuv muaj tawm tsam koj; koj tau mus khav theeb txog koj lub zog thiab koj txoj kev txawj ntse.
- 3 Thiab tsis tas li no xwb, kuv tus me tub es. Koj tau ua tej uas ua rau kuv tu siab heev; vim koj tau tsum txoj kev qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, thiab tau mus rau hauv thaj av Sailas, uas nyob ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tej ciam teb, mus nrhiav tus niam ntiav Ixanpaus.
- 4 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau nyiag ntau tus tej siab; tiam sis qhov no yuav zam tsis tau rau koj li, kuv tus me tub es. Tsim nyog koj yuav tsum qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo li uas tau muab rau koj ua lawm.
- 5 Koj tsis paub los, kuv tus me tub es, tias tej yam no yog ib txoj kev qias nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag; muaj tseeb tiag, yog txoj kev qias uas phem tshaj txhua yam kev txhaum tsuas yog tshuav txoj kev tua tej neeg tsis muaj txim kom ntshav nrog los sis tsis kam lees tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv xwb no los?
- 6 Vim saib seb, yog koj tsis kam lees yuav tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv thaum nws tseem muaj chaw nyob hauv koj, thiab koj paub tias koj tsis kam lees yuav nws, saib seb, qhov no yog ib qho txhaum uas zam txim tsis tau li; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus uas tua neeg tawm tsam qhov kaj thiab txoj kev paub txog Vajtsv wv, yuav tsis yooj yim rau nws txais tau txoj kev zam txim; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau koj, kuv tus me tub, tias nws tsis yooj yim rau tus ntawd txais tau ib txoj kev zam txim.
- 7 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv xav rau Vajtsv wv tias kheev lam koj tsis txhob tau ua txhaum ib txoj kev txhaum loj. Kuv yuav tsis hais txog koj tej kev txhaum, kom tsim txom koj tus ntsuj plig, yog tias qhov ntawd tsis zoo rau koj.

Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 Tiam sis saib seb, koj tsis muaj peev xwm yuav zais koj tej kev txhaum ncaim ntawm Vajtswv; thiab tsuas yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd tej ntawd yuav sawv ua ib qhov tim khawv nkaug koj nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.

9 Nim no kuv tus me tub, kuv xav kom koj yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tso koj tej kev txhaum tseg, thiab tsis txhob mus raws tej uas koj lub qhov muag ntshaw ntxiv lawm, tiam sis tseg kiag koj tus kheej nyob hauv ib puas yam tsav no; vim tsuas yog koj yuav ua li no xwb tsis li ntawd koj yuav tsis muaj peev xwm tau Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj los ua koj tug. Au, cia li nco ntsoov, thiab cia li muab qhov no ris, thiab tseg kiag koj tus kheej nyob hauv ib puas yam tsav no.

10 Thiab kuv txib kom koj muab koj tus kheej los sab laj nrog koj tej tij laughtxog txhua yam uas koj yuav ua; vim saib seb, koj tseem hluas, thiab koj tseem xav tau kev pab tu los ntawm koj cov tij laug. Thiab cuab pob ntseg rau nkawd tej lus qhuab ntuas.

11 Tsis txhob cia koj tus kheej raug tej yam tsis muaj qab hau los sis ruam ntxias tau; tsis txhob cia tus dab rov qab ntxias tau koj lub siab mus raws tej niam ntiav phem ntawd. Saib seb, Au kuv tus me tub es, koj tau coj txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees los rau cov Neeg Xaulas loj npaum li cas; vim thaum lawv tau pom koj txoj kev coj lawv tsis kam ntseeg kuv tej lus.

12 Thiab nim no tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig hais rau kuv tias: Txib koj tej me nyuam kom ua zoo, ntshai tsam lawv yuav ntxias tau ntau tus neeg tej siab mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd kuv txib koj, kuv tus me tub, nyob ntawm txoj kev ntshai Vajtswv, kom koj yuav tsum tso koj tej kev tsis ncaj ncees tseg.

13 Kom koj yuav tig rov qab mus cuag tus Tswv nrog tag nrho koj lub siab, lub ntsws, thiab lub dag lub zog; kom koj yuav tsis txhob ntxias tau neeg tej siab mus ua phem ntxiv li lawm; tiam sis rov qab mus cuag lawv, thiab lees qhia koj tej kev txhaum thiab qhov tsis yog uas koj tau ua lawm.

14 Tsis txhob nrhiav tej kev nplua nuj los sis tej uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb no; vim saib seb, koj yuav coj tsis tau lawv nrog koj.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

- 15 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv xav hais tej yam rau koj txog txoj kev Khetos yuav los. Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj, tias nws twb yog tus uas yuav los tiag tiag los ris tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb mus; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los tshaj tawm txoj moo zoo txog txoj kev cawm seej rau nws cov neeg.
- 16 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, qhov no yog txoj kev qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo uas koj tau raug hu, mus tshaj tawm tej moo zoo no mus rau cov neeg no kom kho npaj lawv tej siab; los sis kom txoj kev cawm seej yuav los rau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav npaj lawv tej me nyuam tej siab los hnov txoj lus nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum nws los.
- 17 Thiab nim no kuv yuav ua kom yooj yim rau koj lub siab me ntsis txog qhov no. Saib seb, koj tau xav tias yog vim li cas es ho tsim nyog yuav tsum xub paub tej no ntev ua ntej. Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias, tsis yog ib tug neeg nyob rau lub sij hawm no muaj nuj nqis rau Vajtswv ib yam li ib tug neeg nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum nws los lod?
- 18 Tsis yog tsim nyog tias txoj kev txhiv dim yuav tsum raug ua kom paub rau cov neeg no ib yam li rau lawv tej me nyuam thiab los?
- 19 Tsis yog nws yooj yim nyob rau lub sij hawm no rau tus Tswv xa nws tus tim tswv los tshaj tawm tej moo zoo no rau peb ib yam li rau peb tej me nyuam, los sis ib yam li tom qab lub sij hawm uas nws los lawm thiab los?

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

Amas 40

- 1 Nim no kuv tus me tub, qhov no yog tej yam ntxiv uas kuv yuav hais rau koj; vim kuv pom tias koj lub siab txhawj txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag.
- 2 Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj, tias tsis muaj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los—los sis, kuv yuav hais, ua lwm yam hais, tias lub cev uas txawj tuag no yuav tsis rais los ua lub uas tsis txawj tuag, lub cev uas txawj lwj no yuav tsis rais los mus ua lub uas tsis txawj lwj—mus txog tom qab uas Khetos los tso.
- 3 Saib seb, nws coj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov los rau cov neeg tuag. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tus me tub, txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los tseem yuav tsis tau muaj. Nim no, kuv qhia rau koj paub txog ib qho txuj ci tseem ceeb uas neeg paub tsis txog; txawm li ntawd los, muaj ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb uas neeg paub tsis txog uas tau muaj ceev tseg lawm, xwv kom tsis txhob muaj neeg paub txog lawv tsuas yog Vajtswv tus kheej xwb. Tiam sis kuv qhia rau koj paub txog ib yam uas kuv tau rau siab thov kom Vajtswv qhia kuv paub—qhov ntawd yog txog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 4 Saib seb, muaj ib lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg rau sawv daws yuav tawm hauv qhov tuag los. Nim no thaum lub sij hawm no los yuav tsis muaj leej twg paub; tiam sis Vajtswv paub lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg lawm.
- 5 Nim no, txawm tias yuav muaj ib zaug, los sis zaum ob, los sis zaum peb, uas leej tib neeg yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los, los nws tsis tseem ceeb dab tsi; vim Vajtswv paub tag tej yam no; thiab nws txaus kuv lawm thaum paub tias muaj li no—tias twb muaj ib lub caij uas tau teem tseg lawm uas tag nrho sawv daws yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los.
- 6 Nim no yuav tsum muaj ib ntus nyob nruab nrab ntawm lub caij tuag thiab lub caij ntawm txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 7 Thiab nim no kuv yuav nug tias neeg tej ntsuj plig yuav rais mus nyob li cas txij li lub sij hawm tuag mus rau lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg rau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los?

Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what cometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

8 Nim no txawm tias yuav muaj ntau dua li ib zaug uas tau teem tseg rau neeg kom sawv los los nws tsis tseem ceeb dab tsi; vim sawv daws tsis ua tib txhij tuag, thiab qhov no tsis tseem ceeb dab tsi; tag nrho zoo li ib hnuv rau Vajtsv xwb, thiab lub caij lub nyoog tsuas yog suav rau noob neej xwb.

9 Yog li ntawd, muaj ib lub sij hawm uas tau teem rau tib neeg lawm kom lawv yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los; thiab muaj ib ntus uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm lub caij tuag thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los. Thiab nim no, hais txog lub caij no, tib neeg tej ntsuj plig yuav rais mus nyob li cas yog yam uas kuv tau mob siab thov tus Tsvv kom paub; thiab qhov no yog yam uas kuv paub.

10 Thiab thaum lub sij hawm los uas sawv daws yuav sawv, lub sij hawm ntawd lawv yuav paub tias Vajtsv paub tag nrho tej caij nyoog uas tau raug teem cia rau tib neeg lawm.

11 Nim no, hais txog saib tej ntsuj plig yuav nyob li cas nruab nrab txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los—Saib seb, nws raug ua rau kuv paub lawm los ntawm ib tug tim tswv, tias tag nrho tej tib neeg tej ntsuj plig, thaum uas lawv ncaim ntawm lub cev uas txawj ploj txawj tuag no, muaj tseeb tiag, tej tib neeg sawv daws tej ntsuj plig, txawm yog lawv zoo los phem, tau raug coj mus tsev mus cuag Vajtsv tus uas tau muab txoj sia rau lawv.

12 Thiab lub sij hawm ntawd yuav tau muaj tias, tej ntsuj plig ntawm cov uas ncaj ncees tau raug txais mus nyob rau hauv ib qho chaw zoo siab, uas hu ua yeeb tsheej, ib qho chaw uas tau so, ib qho chaw uas muaj kev thaj yeeb, qhov uas lawv yuav tau so tseg tag nrho lawv tej teeb meem thiab tseg tag nrho tej kev txhawj, thiab tej kev tu siab.

13 Thiab lub sij hawm ntawd yuav tau muaj tias, cov neeg phem tej ntsuj plig, muaj tseeb tiag, cov uas yog neeg phem—vim saib seb, lawv tsis muaj feem los sis ib qho ntawm tus Tsvv tus Ntsuj Plig; vim saib seb, lawv tau xaiv ua tej hauj lwm phem dua li tej zoo; yog li ntawd tus dab tus ntsuj plig tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv, thiab mus nyob hauv lawv tej tsev—thiab cov no yuav raug pov rau hauv qhov chaw tsaus ntuj nti; yuav muaj kev quaj, thiab kev nyiav, thiab muaj kev tom hniav qees, thiab qhov no vim yog lawv tus kheej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees, raug ntxias txhom los ntawm tus dab kev siab xav tau.

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

- 14 Nim no qhov no yog qhov chaw rau cov neeg phem tej ntsuj plig, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj, thiab ib qho chaw uas phem heev, ntshai rawv nyob tsam Vajtswv txoj kev npau taws yuav los rau saum lawv; yog li ntawd lawv pheed yuav nyob hauv qhov chaw no, ib yam li cov neeg ncaj ncees nyob hauv yeeb tsheej, mus txog lawv lub caij uas yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 15 Nim no, muaj ib txhia tau to taub tias qhov chaw nyob kaj siab lug thiab qhov chaw txom nyem ntawm tus ntsuj plig no, ua ntej txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, twb yog thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los. Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv xav tias yuav hu tau nws ua ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, txoj kev sawv ntawm tus ntsuj los sis tus plig thiab lawv txoj kev xa mus rau qhov tau zoo los sis qhov txom nyem, raws li tej lus uas tau raug hais lawm.
- 16 Thiab saib seb, kuj tau hais nws lawm tias yuav muaj thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, ib txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm tag nrho cov uas tau muaj los lawm, los sis cov ziang no, los sis cov tseem yuav muaj, nqis mus txog thaum Khetos sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 17 Nim no, peb tsis txhob xav tias thawj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los no, uas tau raug hais zoo li no, yuav yog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm tej ntsuj plig thiab lawv txoj kev mus rau qhov tau zoo los sis txom nyem. Koj tsis muaj peev xwm xav tias nws yog txhais li qhov no.
- 18 Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias, Tsis yog li ntawd; tiam sis nws txhais hais tias yog txoj kev lub cev thiab tus ntsuj plig rov los sib sau ua ke dua, ntawm cov uas txij li lub sij hawm thaum Adas nyob nqis mus txog thaum Khetos sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.
- 19 Nim no, txawm tej ntsuj plig thiab tej cev ntawm cov uas tau hais lawm yuav rov sib sau tag nrho los ua ke ib zaug los, tsis hais cov neeg phem los cov zoo, kuv tsis hais; cia nws tsaus, tias kuv hais tias lawv sawv daws yeej yuav sawv; los sis ua lwm yam lus hais, lawv txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los yuav xub muaj ua ntej txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov uas tuag tom qab Khetos txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

20 Nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv tsis tau hais tias lawv txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los yuav los rau lub caij thaum Khetos sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los; tiam sis saib saib, kuv tsuas hais raws li kuv lub siab xav, tias tej ntsuj plig thiab tej cev yuav los sib sau ua ke, ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees, nyob rau lub caij thaum Khetos sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, thiab nws txoj kev nce mus saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.

21 Tiam sis txawm nws yuav yog thaum nws txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los los sis tom qab ntawd, kuv tsis hais; tiam sis kuv hais npaum li no, tias muaj ib ntus uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm lub cev, thiab ib qho chaw tau zoo los sis txom nyem rau tus ntsuj plig nyob mus txog lub sij hawm uas Vajtsv tau teem tseg cia lawm tias cov neeg tuag yuav sawv los, thiab rov los sib sau, tus ntsuj plig thiab lub cev los ua ke; thiab yuav raug coj los sawv ntawm Vajtsv xub ntiag, thiab raug txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.

22 Muaj tseeb tiag, qhov no yuav ua kom muaj txoj kev txum tim tej yam uas tau hais los ntawm cov yaj saub tej qhov ncauj lawm rov qab los.

23 Tus ntsuj plig yuav rov txum tim los nyob hauv lub cev, thiab lub cev rov muaj tus ntsuj plig; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tej tes tej taw thiab tej pob qij txha yuav rov txum tim los dhos li qub rau hauv nws lub cev; muaj tseeb tiag, ib txoj plaub hau saum taub hau los yuav tsis poob; tiam sis tag nrho txhua yam yuav rov txum tim los rau lawv tej qub chaw thiab qub cev uas zoo kawg nkaus.

24 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, qhov no yog txoj kev txum tim rov qab los ntawm qhov uas tau hais los ntawm tej yaj saub tej qhov ncauj—

25 Thiab thaum ntawd cov neeg ncaj ncees yuav ci tuaj nyob rau hauv Vajtsv lub nceeg vaj.

26 Tiam sis saib seb, ib txoj kev tuag phem heev yuav los rau cov neeg phem; vim lawv tuag yam li tej khoom uas muaj rau tej yam ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees; vim lawv tsis huv, thiab tsis muaj ib yam uas tsis huv yuav muaj peev xwm nkag tau rau Vajtsv lub nceeg vaj; tiam sis lawv yuav raug ntiab tawm, thiab raug kom noj tej txiv ntawm lawv tej dag zog los sis lawv tej hauj lwm, uas tau ua phem; thiab lawv yuav haus tej txo ntawm lub khob iab.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

Amas 41

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv muaj tej yam yuav hais txog txoj kev txum tim rov qab los ntawm tej uas tau hais lawm; vim saib seb, muaj ib txhia tau muab tej vajlugkub ntseev, thiab tau mus yuam kev deb vim yog qhov no. Thiab kuv paub tias koj lub siab kuj tau txhawj txog tej yam no thiab. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav muab nws piav rau koj.
- 2 Kuv hais rau koj, kuv tus me tub, tias lub tswv yim kev txum tim rov qab los dua yeej tsim nyog raws li Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij; vim nws tsim nyog kom tag nrho txhua yam yuav muaj rov los rau lawv tej chaw. Saib seb, nws tsim nyog thiab ncaj, raws li lub hwj chim thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm Khetos, kom tus ntsuj plig ntawm tib neeg yuav raug txum tim rov qab los rau nws lub cev, thiab kom txhua feem ntawm lub cev yuav raug txum tim rov muaj li qub.
- 3 Thiab nws tsim nyog nrog Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij tias leej tib neeg yuav tsum raug txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm; thiab yog tias lawv tej hauj lwm zoo nyob hauv lub neej no, thiab tej kev xav tau ntawm lawv tej siab los zoo, ces lawv kuj yuav, raug txum tim rov rau qhov zoo, nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 4 Thiab yog lawv tej hauj lwm phem lawv yuav raug txum tim rau lawv tej phem. Yog li ntawd, tag nrho txhua yam yuav raug txum tim rov los rau lawv tej qub chaw, txhua txhia yam rau nws lub cev qub—lub cev uas txawj tuag tau sawv mus ua lub uas tsis txawj tuag, lub txawj lwj mus rau lub uas tsis txawj lwj—yuav sawv mus rau txoj kev zoo siab uas tsis muaj qhov kawg mus nyob Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj, los sis mus rau txoj kev txom nyem uas tsis muaj qhov kawg mus nyob tus dab lub nceeg vaj, ib tug tau nyob sab no, lwm tus ho tau nyob sab tod—
- 5 Ib txhia tau sawv los mus rau txoj kev kaj siab raws li nws tej kev xav tau txoj kev zoo siab, los sis qhov zoo raws li nws tej kev xav tau qhov zoo; thiab ib txhia mus rau qhov phem raws li nws tej kev xav tau qhov phem; vim ib yam li nws tau xav ua phem tag nrho hauv nws lub neej tib yam nkaus li ntawd nws yuav tau txais nws qhov nqi zog ntawm qhov phem thaum hmo tsaus ntuj los txog.

Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

- 6 Thiab tib yam li ntawd yuav tshwm sim rau lw m cov. Yog nws tau hloov siab lees txim ntawm nws tej kev txhaum, thiab tau xav tau qhov ncaj ncees mus txog thaum kawg nws lub neej, tib yam nkaus li ntawd nws yuav tau txais qhov ncaj ua nqi zog.
- 7 Cov no yog lawv cov uas tau raug txhiv los ntawm tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, cov no yog lawv cov uas tau raug rho tawm, uas raug tso dim ntawm hmo tsaus ntuj uas tsis muaj qhov kawg; thiab yog li ntawd lawv yuav sawv los sis vau; vim saib seb, lawv yog cov uas txiav txim rau lawv tus kheej; txawm yuav ua zoo los sis ua phem.
- 8 Nim no, Vajtswv tej kev cai yeej pauv tsis tau li; yog li ntawd, txoj kev twb tau npaj lawm kom tus uas xav taug yuav taug hauv thiab kom dim.
- 9 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv tus me tub, tsis txhob cav hmoov ua siab nkaug koj tus Vajtswv ib zaug ntxiv rau tej lus qhuab qhia uas tau hais li ntawd lawm, uas koj tau cav hmoov ua txhaum los txog nim no.
- 10 Tsis txhob xav tias, vim nws tau hais txog txoj kev txum tim rov qab los, ces koj yuav rov muaj tau kev zoo siab los ntawm txoj kev txhaum los. Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj tias, txoj kev phem yeej ib txwm tsis yog txoj kev zoo siab.
- 11 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, txhua tus tib neeg uas tseem ua raws li ntiaj teb, los sis kuv yuav hais tias, tseem ua kev ntiaj teb, yeej tseem nyob hauv qhov phem heev ntawm txoj kev iab thiab nyob hauv txoj kev ua qhev ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj; lawv nyob hauv ntiaj teb tsis muaj Vajtswv li, thiab lawv tau mus tsis raws li Vajtswv tej kev; yog li ntawd, lawv nyob hauv ib qho chaw uas tsis ncaj rau txoj kev zoo siab.
- 12 Thiab nim no saib seb, lo lus tias txum tim rov qab los lub ntsiab puas yog muab ib yam ntawm qhov uas ib txwm muaj thiab coj mus rau hauv qhov ua ib txwm tsis muaj, los sis muab nws rau hauv qhov fab ntseev ntawm nws qhov ib txwm muaj?
- 13 Au, kuv tus me tub es, tsis yog li qhov no; tiam sis lub ntsiab ntawm lo lus tias txum tim rov qab los yog hais tias rov qab coj kev phem los rau kev phem, los sis kev ntiaj teb rau kev ntiaj teb, los sis zoo li qhov phem rau phov phem—qhov zoo rau qhov uas zoo; qhov ncaj rau qhov uas ncaj; qhov tus rau qhov tus; qhov muaj kev hlub tshua rau qhov muaj kev hlub tshua.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

14 Yog li ntawd, kuv tus me tub, nco ntsoov tias koj yuav tsum ua zoo rau koj cov kwv tij; koj ncaj ncees, txiav txim ncaj ncees, thiab ua qhov zoo tsis txhob tu ncu; thiab yog koj ua tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no ces koj yuav tau txais koj qhov nqi zog; muaj tseeb tiag, koj yuav muaj kev zam txim txum tim rov qab los rau koj dua; koj yuav muaj kev txim lij txum tim rov qab los rau koj dua; koj yuav muaj kev txiav txim ncaj ncees txum tim rov qab los rau koj dua; thiab koj yuav muaj nqi zog zoo rov los rau koj dua.

15 Vim tej uas koj xa tawm mus lawm yuav rov qab los rau koj dua, thiab txum tim rov li qub; yog li ntawd, lo lus tias txum tim rov qab los rau txim rau cov neeg txhaum ntau dua, thiab yuav tsis zam dab tsi rau nws hlo li.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

Amas 42

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub es, kuv paub tias tseem tshuav tej yam ntau ntxiv uas pheed ua rau koj lub siab txhawj, tej uas koj tsis to taub—tej uas txog Vajtswv txoj kev ncaj ncees uas rau txim rau cov neeg txhaum; vim koj tau sim xav tias nws tsis ncaj ncees tias tus neeg txhaum yuav tsum raug muab ib qho chaw txom nyem rau.
- 2 Nim no saib seb, kuv tus me tub, kuv yuav piav tej yam no rau koj. Vim saib seb, tom qab uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau xa peb thawj nkawg niam txiv tawm ntawm lub vaj Edees, mus ua teb, qhov uas tau muab nkawd los—muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau rho tus neeg tawm, thiab nws tau muab tso rau sab hnuv tuaj ntawm lub vaj Edees, ib co Chelunpees, thiab ib rab ntaj nplaim taws uas tig rau txhua sab, zov tsoob ntoo uas cawm txoj sia—
- 3 Nim no, peb pom tias tus neeg ntawd tau rais los mus zoo li Vajtswv, paub qhov zoo thiab qhov phem; thiab ntshai tsam nws yuav cev nws txhais tes, thiab mus de cov txiv ntawm tsoob ntoo cawm txoj sia thiab, thiab noj thiab yuav muaj txoj sia mus ib txhis, tus Tswv Vajtswv thiaj tau tso cov Chelunpees thiab rab ntaj nplaim taws, kom nws txhob noj cov txiv ntawd—
- 4 Thiab peb pom li no, tias tau muab ib lub sij hawm pub rau tib neeg hloov siab lees txim, muaj tseeb tiag, ib lub caij sim siab, ib lub caij hloov siab lees txim thiab ua hauj lwm rau Vajtswv.
- 5 Vim saib seb, yog Adas tau cev nws txhais tes nrawm nroos, thiab noj cov txiv ntawm tsoob ntoo uas cawm txoj sia, ces nws yuav tau nyob tas mus li, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus, thiab yuav tsis tau muaj caij rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab Vajtswv txoj lus yeej yuav tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, thiab txoj kev cawm seeg uas tau npaj uas tseem ceeb yuav tsum raug nres.
- 6 Tiam sis saib seb, nws tau teem ib lub caij rau neeg kom tuag—yog li ntawd, thaum lawv raug txiav tawm ntawm tsoob ntoo cawm txoj sia lawv kuj yuav tsum raug txiav tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb thiab—thiab tib neeg tau raug poob mus ib txhis, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg uas poob mus li.

Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be con-signed to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

- 7 Thiab nim no, koj pom tias los ntawm qhov no peb thawj nkawg niam txiv tau raug txiav tawm ntawm sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab ntawm sab ntsuj plig ncaim ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag mus; thiab li no peb pom tias lawv tau rais los mus ywj siab ua raws li lawv siab nyiam.
- 8 Nim no saib seb, nws tsis tsim nyog kom tib neeg yuav dim ntawm txoj kev tuag sab cev nqaij daim tawv no, vim tias qhov ntawd yuav rhuav lub tswv yim ntawm txoj kev zoo siab.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, vim tus ntsuj plig tuag tsis taus, thiab txoj kev poob tau koj txoj kev tuag ntawm sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig los rau tib neeg sawv daws, qhov ntawd txhais hais tias, lawv tau raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag mus, nws tau tsim nyog tias leej tib neeg yuav tsum raug dim ntawm txoj kev tuag sab ntsuj plig no.
- 10 Yog li ntawd, vim lawv tau rais los mus ua neeg ntshaw khoom ntiag teb, ua raws li lub siab xav, thiab ua zoo li dab ua, los ntawm txoj kev ib txwm ua, lub caij sim siab no tau rais los mus ua ib lub caij npaj rau lawv; nws tau rais los mus ua lub sij hawm npaj.
- 11 Thiab nim no nco ntsoov, kuv tus me tub, yog tsis muaj txoj kev txhiv dim, (muab nws tso tseg) ces thaum lawv tuag kiag lawv tej ntsuj plig yeej raug txom nyem, vim tau raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag mus lawm.
- 12 Thiab nim no, tsis tau muaj ib yam kev dab tsi uas yuav cawm tau tib neeg dim ntawm txoj kev poob no, uas tib neeg tau koj los rau nws tus kheej vim yog nws txoj kev tsis mloog lus;
- 13 Yog li ntawd, raws li txoj kev ncaj ncees, txoj kev txhiv dim yuav ua tau hauj lwm tsuas yog tias tib neeg yuav hloov siab lees txim nyob hauv lub caij sim siab no xwb, muaj tseeb tiag, lub caij sim siab no; vim yog tsis muaj tej yam no, ces txoj kev zam txim yeej pab tsis tau tsuas muaj yuav rhuav txoj kev ncaj ncees txoj hauj lwm xwb. Nim no txoj kev ncaj ncees txoj hauj lwm yuav raug rhuav tsis tau; yog rhuav tau ces, Vajtswv yuav tseg tsis ua Vajtswv lawm.
- 14 Thiab li no peb pom tias tib neeg sawv daws tau poob, thiab lawv tau nyob hauv qab ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees; muaj tseeb tiag, Vajtswv txoj kev ncaj ncees, uas yuav rau txim rau lawv mus ib txhis kom raug txiav tawm ntawm nws xub ntiag mus.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

- 15 Thiab nim no, txoj kev zam txim yuav ua tsis tau hauj lwm tsuas yog yuav muaj ib qho kev theej txhoj xwb; yog li ntawd Vajtswv tus kheej thiaj li yuav tsum theej rau lub ntiaj teb no tej kev txhaum, kom coj tau txoj kev zam txim muaj los, kom haum txoj kev ncaj ncees tej lus txib, kom Vajtswv yuav yog ib tug Vajtswv uas zoo tshaj thiab ncaj, thiab kuj yog ib tug Vajtswv uas muaj kev zam txim.
- 16 Nim no, txoj kev hloov siab lees txim yuav los tsis tau rau tib neeg tsuas yog yuav muaj ib txoj kev rau txim, uas kuj yuav nyob mus ib txhis ib yam li txoj sia ntawm tus ntsuj plig muaj, kom ua fab ntxeev rau txoj kev zoo siab, uas kuj yuav nyob mus ib txhis ib yam li txoj sia ntawm tus ntsuj plig thiab.
- 17 Nim no, yuav ua li cas ib tug neeg thiaj yuav hloov siab lees txim tsuas yog nws ua txhaum xwb puas yog? Nws yuav ua txhaum tau li cas yog tsis muaj txoj kev cai? Yuav muaj tau ib txoj kev cai li cas, tsuas yog yuav muaj ib txoj kev rau txim xwb?
- 18 Nim no, tau muaj ib txoj kev rau txim uas tau npaj tseg lawm, thiab tau muab ib txoj kev cai ncaj ncees, uas ua rau tib neeg paub qhov txhaum.
- 19 Nim no, yog tsis tau muaj ib txoj kev cai—yog ib tug neeg tua neeg nws yuav tsum tuag—nws puas yuav ntshai tsam nws tuag yog nws tua neeg?
- 20 Thiab ntxiv, yog tsis muaj kev cai tawm tsam txoj kev txhaum ces neeg yeej yuav tsis ntshai ua txhaum.
- 21 Thiab yog tsis muaj txoj kev cai, yog neeg ua txhaum ces txoj kev cai ncaj ncees muaj peev xwm ua tau dab tsi, los sis txoj kev zam txim ua tau dab tsi thiab, vim tej no yuav tsis muaj tug rau tib neeg li?
- 22 Tiam sis twb muab ib txoj kev cai, thiab ib txoj kev rau txim uas tau npaj tseg lawm, thiab tau pub ib txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; txoj kev hloov siab lees txim uas muaj los ntawm txoj kev zam txim; tsis yog li ntawd ces, txoj kev ncaj ncees yuav tau coj cov neeg no thiab yuav ua kom tiav rau txoj kev cai, thiab txoj kev cai yuav ua kom mob rau txoj kev rau txim; yog tsis ua li ntawd, txoj kev ncaj ncees tej hauj lwm yuav raug puas tsuaj, thiab Vajtswv yuav tseg tsis ua Vajtswv lawm.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

- 23 Tiam sis Vajtswv yuav tsis tsum ua Vajtswv, thiab txoj kev zam txim yuav tau cov neeg hloov siab lees txim, thiab muaj txoj kev zam txim los vim yog txoj kev theej txhoj; thiab txoj kev theej txhoj coj tau kom muaj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag; thiab txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov neeg tuag coj tau tib neeg rov qab mus rau ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag; thiab li no lawv raug txum tim rov qab muaj nyob rau ntawm nws xub ntiag, los txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm, raws li txoj kev cai thiab txoj kev txim lij.
- 24 Vim saib seb, txoj kev txim lij yuav ua tag nrho tej nws tau hais, thiab txoj kev zam txim yuav tau tag nrho tej uas yog nws li; thiab twb yog li no, es thiaj tsis muaj leej twg li tsuas yog cov neeg hloov siab lees txim tiag tiag thiaj li dim xwb.
- 25 Dab tsi, koj xav tias txoj kev zam txim yuav muaj peev xwm nyiag txoj kev txim lij los? Kuv hais rau koj tias, Tsis muaj; tsis muaj peev xwm hlo li. Yog muaj ces Vajtswv yuav tseg tsis ua Vajtswv lawm.
- 26 Thiab li no Vajtswv tau ua kom muaj tau nws tej hom phiaj tseem ceeb uas loj thiab nyob mus ib txhis, uas twb tau npaj txij li thaum tsim lub ntiag teb los lawm. Thiab li no thiaj muaj tau txoj kev cawm seej thiab txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm tib neeg, thiab thiaj muaj tau lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj thiab txoj kev txom nyem.
- 27 Yog li ntawd, Au kuv tus me tub es, leej twg tus uas yuav los yeej meem los thiab los haus cov dej ntawm txoj sia tsis yuav nqi; thiab tus uas ho tsis kam los tus ntawd yeej tsis yuam kom los; tiam sis nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg yeej yuav muaj txum tim rov qab rau nws raws li nws tau ua lawm.
- 28 Yog nws tau xav ua phem, thiab tsis tau hloov siab lees txim nyob hauv nws lub neej, saib seb, kev phem yuav raug ua rau nws, raws li txoj kev txum tim rov qab los ntawm Vajtswv.
- 29 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv xav kom koj tsis txhob cia tej yam no xeeb txob koj ntxiv lawm, thiab tsuas cia koj tej kev txhaum xeeb txob koj xwb, kom nrog qhov xeeb txob ntawd es yuav coj tau koj nqis los mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

30 Au kuv tus me tub es, kuv xav kom koj tsis txhob tsis kam lees yuav Vajtsv txoj kev ncaj ncees ntxiv lawm. Tsis txhob rau siab zam koj tus kheej nyob hauv tej qhov me vim yog koj tej kev txhaum, los ntawm txoj kev tsis kam lees yuav Vajtsv txoj kev ncaj ncees; tiam sis koj cia li kom Vajtsv txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab nws txoj kev zam txim, thiab nws txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj muaj puv nkaus rau hauv koj lub siab; thiab cia nws coj koj nqis mus rau hauv av nyob hauv txoj kev txo hwj chim.

31 Thiab nim no, Au kuv tus me tub es, koj raug Vajtsv hu mus qhuab qhia txoj lus rau cov neeg no. Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, koj cia li mus, tshaj tawm txoj lus nrog qhov tseeb thiab txoj kev mob siab ua tiag tiag, xwv kom koj yuav coj tau neeg los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, xwv kom txoj hauv kev zam txim tseem ceeb yuav muaj nyob saum lawv. Thiab thov kom Vajtsv pub rau koj raws tib yam li kuv tej lus. Amees.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Amas 43

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Amas cov tub tau tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg, mus tshaj tawm txoj lus rau lawv. Thiab Amas, nws tus kheej, kuj so tsis taus thiab, thiab nws kuj tau mus thiab.
- 2 Nim no peb yuav tsis hais txog lawv tej kev qhuab qhia ntxiv lawm, tsuas yog tias lawv tau qhuab qhia txoj lus, thiab qhov tseeb, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab txoj kev tshwm sim; thiab lawv tau qhuab qhia mus raws li tus txheej txheem dawb huv ntawm Vajtsvuv uas lawv tau raug hu.
- 3 Thiab nim no kuv tig rov qab mus rau ib zag txog tej tsov rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas; nyob hauv xyoo kaum yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.
- 4 Vim saib seb, tau muaj tias cov Neeg Xaulas tau rais los mus ua cov Neeg Lamas; yog li ntawd, nyob hauv kev pib xyoo kaum yim cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tab tom tuaj tawm tsam lawv; yog li ntawd lawv tau npaj ua rog; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau sib sau lawv tej tub rog tuaj ua ke nyob rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj txhiab txhiab leej; thiab lawv tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av Eethi-onas, uas yog cov Neeg Xaulas thaj av; thiab ib tug txiv neej uas muaj npe hu ua Xelaheenas yog lawv tus thawj.
- 6 Thiab nim no, vim cov neeg Amalej tau yog ib co neeg uas phem thiab tua neeg tshaj cov Neeg Lamas, los ntawm lawv tus kheej, yog li ntawd, Xelaheenas tau tsa tej thawj coj los kav cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tag nrho tau yog cov neeg Amalej thiab cov Neeg Xaulas.
- 7 Nim no nws tau ua li no xwv kom nws yuav tseg tau lawv tej kev ntxub rau cov Neeg Nifais, kom nws yuav coj tau lawv mus rau hauv txoj kev khoo kom ua tau raws li nws tej kev uas tau npaj lawm.
- 8 Vim siab seb, nws tej kev uas tau npaj yog yuav txhib kom cov Neeg Lamas npau taws tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais; nws tau ua li no xwv kom nws yuav tau siv hwj chim loj rau saum lawv, thiab kom nws kuj yuav muaj hwj chim rau saum cov Neeg Nifais los ntawm txoj kev coj lawv los mus rau hauv txoj kev poob cev qhev.

Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

9 Thiab nim no txoj kev npaj ntawm cov Neeg Nifais yog pab lawv tej av, thiab lawv tej tsev, thiab lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam, xwv kom lawv yuav tshwj tau lawv dim ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes; thiab kom lawv yuav tshwj tau lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab lawv tej cib fim, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tej kev ywj siab, kom lawv yuav teev tiam Vajtswv raws tau li lawv tej siab xav.

10 Vim lawv tau paub hais tias yog lawv poob mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes, ces txhua tus uas teev tiam Vajtswv nyob hauv sab ntsuj plig thiab hauv qhov tseeb, Vajtswv tus uas tseeb thiab tus uas muaj txoj sia, cov Neeg Lamas yuav ua kom puas tsuaj.

11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tau paub txog cov Neeg Lamas txoj kev ntxub heev rau lawv cov kwv tij, uas tau yog cov neeg Eethais-Nifais-Lihais, uas tau hu ua Amoos cov neeg—thiab lawv tsis kam coj cuab yeej ua rog, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau nkag rau ib txoj kev khi lus tseg thiab lawv yuav tsis kam ua kom nws piam—yog li ntawd, yog lawv yuav poob mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes lawv yeej yuav raug puas tsuaj.

12 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais yuav tsis cia kom lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd, lawv tau muab av rau lawv ua lawv qub txeeq qub teg.

13 Thiab cov neeg Amoos tau muab lawv ib txhia khoom ntau rau cov Neeg Nifais pab lawv tej tub rog; thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais tau raug yuam sawv tib pab los tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, uas yog cov noob ntawm Lamas thiab Lemu-ees sib xyaws, thiab Ixama-ees cov tub, thiab tag nrho sawv daws cov uas tau tsis sib haum tawm ntawm cov Neeg Nifais mus, uas yog cov neeg Amalej thiab cov Neeg Xaulas, thiab tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv ntawm Nau-as cov pov thawj.

14 Nim no cov xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv no coob heev, yuav luag, npaum li cov Neeg Nifais; thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais tau raug yuam kom tawm tsam nrog lawv cov kwv tij, mus kom txog thaum nqajj ntuag ntshav nrog.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau sib sau ua ke nyob hauv thaj av Eethi-onas, saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog tau npaj mus ntsib lawv nyob hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

- 16 Nim no, tus thawj coj ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, los sis tus txiv neej uas tau raug tsa los ua tus thawj coj cov Neeg Nifais—nim no tus thawj coj tau ua tus coj txib tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog—thiab nws lub npe yog Maulaunais;
- 17 Thiab Maulaunais tau coj txib tag nrho, thiab saib xyuas txog lawv tej kev tsov rog. Thiab nws nyuam qhuav muaj nees nkaum thiab tsib xyoos xwb thaum uas nws tau raug tsa los ua tus thawj coj rau saum cov Neeg Nifais tej pab tub rog.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ntsib cov Neeg Lamas hauv tej ciam teb ntawm Ntsawsoos, thiab nws cov neeg tau nqa ntaj, thiab liag, thiab tag nrho txhua yam cuab yeej ua rog.
- 19 Thiab thaum cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau pom Nifais cov neeg, los sis tias Maulaunais, tau npaj nws cov neeg nrog phiaj thaiv hauv siab thiab nrog tej phiaj hlau thaiv caj npab, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tej phiaj hlau tiv thaiv lawv tej taub hau thiab, thiab lawv kuj hnav tej ris tsho tuab tuab—
- 20 Nim no Xelaheenas cov tub rog tsis tau npaj tej yam zoo li ntawd li; lawv tsuas muaj lawv tej ntaj thiab lawv tej liag, lawv tej hneev thiab lawv tej xub, lawv tej pob zeb thiab lawv tej hlua roj hmas; thiab lawv liab qab, tsuas muaj ib daig tawv uas vas lawv puab tais xwb; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho sawv daws puav leej liab qab, tsuas tshuav cov Neeg Xaulas thiab cov neeg Amalek xwb.
- 21 Tiam sis lawv tsis tau hnav tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab, los sis tej phiaj hlau—yog li ntawd, lawv tau ntshai heev kawg txog cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog vim lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, txawm tias lawv muaj coob leej ntau tshaj dua li cov Neeg Nifais.
- 22 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias lawv tsis muaj cuab kav tuaj tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob ntawm tej ciam teb Ntsawsoos; yog li ntawd lawv tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Eethi-onas mus rau hauv hav zoov lawm, thiab lawv tau ncig nyob hauv hav zoov, deb nyob ntawm tus hau dej Xidoos, xwv kom lawv yuav tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av Meethais thiab txeeb khoom ntawm thaj av; vim lawv tsis tau xav tias Maulaunais tej tub rog yuav paub tias lawv tau mus qhov twg lawm.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

- 23 Tiam sis tau muaj tias, thaum lawv tau ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov kiag lawm Maulaunais tau xa neeg soj xyuas mus hauv hav zoov mus saib lawv tej yeej; thiab Maulaunais, kuj paub txog Amas tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, tau xa ib co neeg mus cuag nws, xav kom nws nug tus Tswv saib cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog puas tsim nyog mus tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv txoj lus tau los rau Amas, thiab Amas tau qhia rau Maulaunais tej tub xa xov, tias cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau tab tom mus ncig ib cheeb tsam hauv hav zoov, xwv kom lawv yuav los tau rau hauv thaj av Meethais, kom lawv yuav pib tawm tsam tua cov neeg feem uas tsis muaj zog. Thiab tej tub xa xov ntawd tau mus thiab tau coj cov xov mus rau Maulaunais.
- 25 Nim no Maulaunais, tau tso nws tej tub rog ib txhia rau hauv thaj av Ntsawsoos, nyob tsam cov Neeg Lamas ib txhia ho los rau hauv thaj av thiab txeeb tau lub nroog, tau coj nws cov tub rog ib txhia thiab tau mus rau hauv thaj av Meethais.
- 26 Thiab nws tau kom tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob ib cheeb tsam ntawm thaj av yuav tsum sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, tiv thaiv lawv tej av thiab lawv lub teb chaws, lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab lawv tej kev ywj siab uas ua tau; yog li ntawd lawv tau npaj tos rau lub sij hawm yuav tuaj ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau kom nws tej tub rog nkaum nyob hauv lub hav uas nyob ze tus ntug dej Xidoos, uas nyob sab hnuv poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos hauv roob moj sab qhua.
- 28 Thiab Maulaunais tau tso neeg soj xyuas ib ncig, kom nws yuav paub thaum uas cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tuaj.
- 29 Thiab nim no, thaum Maulaunais paub txoj kev xav tau ntawm cov Neeg Lamas lawm, tias nws yog lawv kev txhob txwm ua kom lawv cov kwv tij puas tsuaj, los sis yuav txhom lawv thiab coj lawv mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev xwv kom lawv yuav tsim ib lub teb chaws rau lawv tus kheej nyob tag nrho txhua thaj av;

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 Thiab nws kuj tau paub tias cov Neeg Nifais tej siab xav tsuas yog hwj xwm lawv tej av, thiab lawv txoj kev ywj siab, thiab lawv lub koom txoos, yog li ntawd nws tau xav tias yuav tsis txhaum uas nws yuav tiv thaiv lawv los ntawm txoj kev siv tswv yim; yog li ntawd, nws tau nrhiav paub los ntawm nws cov neeg soj xyuas saib txoj kev twg cov Neeg Lamas yuav tuaj.

31 Yog li ntawd, nws tau faib nws cov tub rog thiab tau coj ib feem los rau hauv lub hav, thiab tau muab lawv zais rau sab hnuv tuaj, thiab rau sab nram hav ntawm lub roob Lilas;

32 Thiab nws tau muab cov uas seem zais nyob rau hauv lub hav sab hnuv poob, uas nyob rau sab hnuv poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos, thiab nqis nyob rau hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Meethais.

33 Thiab li no tau muab nws cov tub rog tso raws li nws siab xav, nws tau npaj ntsib lawv.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj rau sab pem toj ntawm lub roob, qhov uas ib feem ntawm Maulaunais cov tub rog tau raug muab zais.

35 Thiab thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau hla lub roob Lilas, thiab tau tuaj rau hauv lub hav, thiab tau pib hla tus dej Xidoos, cov tub rog uas tau raug muab zais rau sab nram hav ntawm lub roob, uas tau raug coj los ntawm ib tug txiv neej uas npe hu ua Lihais, thiab coj nws cov tub rog tawm los thiab tau vij cov Neeg Lamas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj tom lawv qub qab.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas, thaum lawv pom cov Neeg Nifais tuaj tom lawv qub qab tuaj rau lawv, lawv tau tig rov qab thiab tau pib tawm tсам nrog Lihais cov tub rog.

37 Thiab txoj hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev tuag tau pib muaj rau ob tog, tiam sis nws tau raug liam sim ntau dua nyob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas, vim lawv txoj kev liab qab tau qhib lug rau cov Neeg Nifais tej kev tua sib zog nrog lawv tej ntaj thiab tej liag, uas tau coj txoj kev tuag yuav luag txhua.

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

38 Hos nyob lwm sab, ib ziang no thiab ib me ntsis ho muaj ib tug Neeg Nifais raug tua, los ntawm lawv tej ntaj thiab kev xiam ntshav, lawv tau raug hnav phiaj hlau rau saum lub cev feem uas tseem ceeb, los sis lub cev feem uas tseem ceeb dua tau raug hnav phiaj hlau thaiv cov Neeg Lamas tej kev tua kev tsuav, los ntawm lawv cov phiaj thaiv hauv siab, thiab lawv tej phiaj hlau thaiv caj npab, thiab lawv tej phiaj thaiv taub hau; thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais tau muab txoj hauj lwm kev tuag rau cov Neeg Lamas.

39 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau rais los mus poob siab, vim txoj kev puas tsuaj loj nyob hauv lawv, twb mus txog thaum uas lawv tau pib khiav mus rau tom tus dej Xidoos.

40 Thiab lawv tau raug Lihais thiab nws cov neeg caum; thiab lawv tau raug Lihais raws mus rau hauv cov dej Xidoos, thiab lawv tau hla cov dej Xidoos. Thiab Lihais tau kom nws cov tub rog nyob tim tus ntug dej Xidoos kom lawv tsis txhob hla.

41 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais thiab nws cov tub rog tau ntsib cov Neeg Lamas nyob hauv lub hav, nyob sab ntug dej Xidoos tim ub, thiab tau pib tawm tsam lawv thiab tua lawv.

42 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav ntawm lawv ntxiv, mus rau thaj av Meethais; thiab lawv tau raug ntsib Maulaunais cov tub rog dua.

43 Nim no nyob rau zaum no cov Neeg Lamas tau tua heev kawg nkaus li; muaj tseeb tiag, ib txwm tsis tau paub tias cov Neeg Lamas yuav tua muaj zog thiab muaj peev xwm npaum li no, tsis tau muaj li, twb tsis tau muaj txij li thaum chiv keeb los li.

44 Thiab lawv tau raug ua kom muaj peev xwm los ntawm cov Neeg Xaulas thiab cov neeg Amalej, uas yog lawv tej thawj nom peb thiab tej thawj coj, thiab los ntawm Xelaheenas, tus uas yog lawv tus thawj nom peb, los sis lawv tus thawj coj thiab thawj coj txib; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau ntaus zoo li tej zaj, thiab cov Neeg Nifais coob leej tau raug tua los ntawm lawv tej tes, muaj tseeb tiag, vim lawv tau phua lawv tej phiaj thaiv taub hau tawg ua ob sab, thiab lawv tau nkaug tshab lawv tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab ntau lub, thiab lawv tau txiav lawv tej caj npab ntau; thiab li no cov Neeg Lamas tau tua nyob hauv lawv txoj kev npau taws heev.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

45 Txawm li ntawd los, cov Neeg Nifais tseem raug txhawb zog los ntawm ib qhov zoo dua, vim lawv tsis tau tab tom tawm tsam ntaus rau txoj kev ua vaj ntxwv los sis kom muaj hwj chim tiam sis lawv tau tab tom tawm tsam ntaus rau lawv tej vaj tse thiab lawv tej kev ywj siab, lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam, thiab tag nrho tej uas lawv muaj, muaj tseeb tiag, rau lawv tej kab ke teev tiam thiab lawv lub koom txoos.

46 Thiab lawv tau tab tom ua yam uas lawv xav tias tau yog txoj hauj lwm uas lawv tshuav rau lawv tus Vajtswv; vim tus Tswv tau hais rau lawv, thiab kuj hais rau lawv tej yawg koob, tias: Yog nej twb tsis tau ua txhaum, xub tua zaum ib, los sis zaum ob, nej yuav tsum tsis txhob cia nej tus kheej raug tua los ntawm nej tej yeeb ncuab tes.

47 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais, ntxiv tias: Nej yuav tsum tiv thaiv nej lub cuab lub yig kom mus txog thaum nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog. Yog li ntawd vim qhov no cov Neeg Nifais thiaj tau tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas, tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej, thiab lawv tej cuab tej yig, thiab lawv tej av, lawv lub teb chaws, thiab lawv tej kev muaj cai, thiab lawv txoj kev teev ntuj.

48 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais cov neeg tau pom txoj kev chim thiab npau taws ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, lawv twb yuav luag thim thiab khiav ntawm lawv mus. Thiab Maulaunais, tau paub txog lawv lub siab xav, tau xa tej kev xav no mus thiab tau tshoov lawv tej siab—muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev xav txog lawv tej av, lawv tej kev ywj siab, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej kev ywj pheej tawm ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.

49 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tig rov qab mus rau cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tau qw ib lub suab rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, rau lawv txoj kev ywj siab thiab lawv txoj kev ywj pheej tawm ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.

50 Thiab lawv tau pib sawv tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nrog hwj chim; thiab nyob tib si ntawd uas lawv tau qw rau tus Tswv rau lawv txoj kev ywj pheej, cov Neeg Lamas tau pib khiav ntawm lawv mus; thiab lawv tau khiav rov mus rau tom cov dej Xidoos.

51 Nim no, cov Neeg Lamas tau coob dua, muaj tseeb tiag, coob dua li ob npaug ntawm cov Neeg Nifais; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tau raug raws khiav kawg tias lawv tau raug sib sau los ua ib pab nyob hauv lub hav, nyob ntawm tus ntug dej Xidoos.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

52 Yog li ntawd Maulaunais cov tub rog tau vij lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb vij ob sab ntug dej, vim saib seb, Lihais cov neeg nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj.

53 Yog li ntawd thaum Xelaheenas pom Lihais cov neeg nyob sab hnuv tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos, thiab Maulaunais cov tub rog nyob sab hnuv poob ntawm tus dej Xidoos, tias lawv tau raug vij los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, lawv tau raug txoj kev poob siab.

54 Nim no Maulaunais, thaum nws tau pom lawv txoj kev poob siab, tau kom nws cov neeg tsum tsis txhob txo kom lawv ntshav nrog lawm.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

Amas 44

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tsum thiab thim ntawm lawv mus ib nyuag ntu. Thiab Maulaunais tau hais rau Xelaheenas tias: Saib seb, Xelaheenas, peb tsis xav ua neeg nyiam tua neeg. Koj paub tias nej nyob hauv peb tes lawm, tiam sis peb tsis xav tua nej.
- 2 Saib seb, peb tsis tau tuaj ua rog tawm tsam nej xwv kom peb yuav txo nej ntshav nrog kom muaj hwj chim; thiab peb kuj tsis xav koj ib tug twg mus rau kev quab ntawm kev ua qhev. Tiam sis qhov no twb yog qhov uas nej tau tuaj tawm tsam peb ntag; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej npau taws rau peb vim yog peb txoj kev teev ntuj.
- 3 Tiam sis nim no, nej pom tias tus Tswv twb nrog peb; thiab nej pom tias nws twb tau koj nej los rau hauv peb tes lawm. Thiab nim no kuv xav kom nej to taub tias tau muaj li no rau peb los vim yog peb txoj kev teev ntuj thiab peb txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Khetos. Thiab nim no nej pom tias nej tsis muaj peev xwm ua kom peb txoj kev ntseeg no puas tsuaj.
- 4 Nim no nej pom tias qhov no yog txoj kev ntseeg tseeb ntawm Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, nej pom tias Vajtswv yuav pab cuam, thiab ceev, thiab tswj hwm peb, ntev ib yam li peb yuav ntseeg rau nws, thiab rau peb txoj kev ntseeg, thiab peb txoj kev teev ntuj; thiab tus Tswv yeej yuav tsis cia kom peb raug puas tsuaj li tsuas yog ntshai peb yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum thiab tsis kam lees peb txoj kev ntseeg xwb.
- 5 Thiab nim no, Xelaheenas, kuv txib koj, los ntawm tus Vajtswv ntawd tus uas muaj hwj chim tag nrho lub npe, tus uas tau txhawb peb lub zog kom peb tau muaj zog dua nej, vim peb txoj kev ntseeg, vim peb txoj kev teev ntuj, thiab vim peb tej kab ke teev tiam, thiab vim peb lub koom txoos, thiab vim txoj hauj lwm dawb huv uas peb tshuav nqi rau peb tej poj niam thiab peb tej me nyuam, vim txoj kev ywj siab ntawd uas khi peb rau peb tej av thiab peb lub teb chaws; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj vim txoj ua raws li Vajtswv txoj lus dawb ceev, uas peb tshuav nqi rau tag nrho peb tej kev zoo siab; thiab vim tag nrho txhua yam uas hlub tshua tshaj plaws rau peb—

Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsis tas li no xwb; kuv txib koj los ntawm tag nrho tej kev xav tau uas koj muaj rau hauv txoj sia, kom nej cia li muab nej tej cuab yeej ua rog rau peb, thiab peb yuav tsis nrhiav nej tej ntshav, tiam sis peb yuav tseg nej txoj sia, yog tias nej rov mus nej qub lw thiab txhob rov qab tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb ntxiv lawm.

7 Thiab nim no, yog nej tsis ua li no, saib seb, nej nyob hauv peb tes lawm, thiab kuv yuav txib kuv cov neeg kom lawv tawm tsam nej, thiab ua kom muaj tej qhov txhab tuag nyob hauv nej tej cev, kom nej yuav rais los mus tu noob; thiab thaum ntawd peb yuav ntsia seb leej twg yuav muaj hwj chim kav cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yuav ntsia seb leej twg yuav raug koj mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev.

8 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Xelaheenas tau hnov tej lus hais no nws tau tawm los thiab tau muab nws rab ntaj thiab nws rab liag, thiab nws rab hneev rau hauv Maulaunais tes, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Saib seb, nov yog peb cov cuab yeej ua rog; peb yuav muab lawv rau nej, tiam sis peb yuav tsis kam cia peb tus kheej lav lus rau nej, qhov uas peb paub tias peb yuav koj tsis tau, thiab peb tej me nyuam los tib yam; tiam sis muab peb tej cuab yeej ua rog mus, thiab cia peb ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov; tsis li ntawd ces peb yuav ceev peb tej ntaj, thiab peb yuav piam sij los sis yeej xwb.

9 Saib seb, peb tsis yog nyob ntawm nej txoj kev ntseeg; peb tsis ntseeg tias yog Vajtswv tus uas tau koj peb los rau hauv nej tes; tiam sis peb ntseeg tias yog nej txoj kev txawj ntxias uas tau tshwj nej tawm ntawm peb tej ntaj. Saib seb, twb yog nej tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab thiab nej tej phiaj hlau uas tau tshwj nej tseg.

10 Thiab nim no thaum Xelaheenas tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, Maulaunais tau muab rab ntaj thiab tej cuab yeej ua rog, uas nws tau txais, rov rau Xelaheenas, tau hais tias: Saib seb, peb yuav xaus qhov kev ua rog no.

11 Nim no kuv tsis muaj peev xwm sau tej lus uas kuv tau hais lawm rov, yog li ntawd ib yam li tus Tswv muaj sia nyob, nej yuav ncaim mus tsis tau tsuas yog nej yuav ncaim mus nrog ib lo lus lav tseg tias nej yuav tsis rov qab tuaj tawm tsam ua rog rau peb ntxiv lawm. Nim no nej tseem nyob hauv peb tes peb yuav ua kom nej ntshav tshau lug rau hauv av, los sis nej yuav kam ua li tej uas kuv tau hais lawm.

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

- 12 Thiab nim no thaum Maulaunais tau hais tej lus no tas, Xelaheenas tau muab nws rab ntaj rov qab, thiab nws tau npau taws rau Maulaunais, thiab nws tau txav zog los xwv kom nws yuav tau muab Maulaunais tua; tiam sis thaum nws tsa hlo nws rab ntaj, saib seb, Maulaunais ib tug tub rog tau ntaus nws poob rau hauv av, thiab rab ntaj tau lov tus ko lawm; thiab nws kuj tau txiav Xelaheenas es nws txiav tau Xelaheenas daim tawv taub hau thiab nws tau poob rau hauv av. Thiab Xelaheenas tau thim ntawm lawv mus rau hauv nruab nrab ntawm nws cov tub rog.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias tus tub rog uas tau sawv ze ntawd, tus uas tau hlais Xelaheenas daim tawv taub hau, tau khaws daim tawv taub hau hauv av tuav cov plaub hau los, thiab tau muab nws tso rau saum nws rab ntsis ntaj, thiab tau muab nws tsa rau lawv, hais ib lub suab nrov nrov rau lawv tias:
- 14 Tib yam li daim tawv taub hau no uas tau poob rau hauv av, uas yog nej tus thawj daim tawv taub hau, ces nej los yeej yuav vau rau hauv av tib yam li ntawd tsuas yog nej yuav muab nej tej cuab yeej ua rog los thiab ncaim mus nrog txoj kev khi lus ntawm kev thaj yeeb.
- 15 Nim no tau muaj ntau leej, thaum uas lawv tau hnov tej lus no thiab tau pom daim tawv taub hau uas nyob saum rab ntaj, tau raug ntshai; thiab coob leej tau tawm los thiab tau muab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog pov rau ntawm Maulaunais ko taw, thiab tau nkag rau hauv ib txoj kev khi lus ntawm kev thaj yeeb. Thiab pes tsawg tus uas tau nkag rau hauv txoj kev cog lus lawv tau cia ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 16 Nim no tau muaj tias Xelaheenas tau npau taws heev, thiab nws tau txhib nws cov tub rog uas tshuav kom npau taws, kom tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais sib zog tshaj ntxiv.
- 17 Thiab nim no Maulaunais tau npau taws, vim cov Neeg Lamas tej siab tsis thim xav; yog li ntawd nws tau txib kom nws cov neeg tawm tsam lawv thiab tua lawv. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pib tua lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau tawm tsam nrog lawv tej ntaj thiab lawv tej zog.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

- 18 Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tej tawv liab qab thiab lawv tej taub hau do qhib lug rau cov Neeg Nifais tej ntaj ntse; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb lawv tau raug hno thiab raug tua, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau qaug vau sai heev los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tej ntaj; thiab lawv tau pib qaug ntau zuj zus, zoo ib yam li Maulaunais tus tub rog tau qhia tias yuav muaj lawm.
- 19 Nim no Xelaheenas, thaum nws pom lawm tias lawv sawv daws twb yuav puas tsuaj tas, tau qw nrov nrov rau Maulaunais, cog lus tias nws thiab nws cov neeg yuav khi lus nrog lawv, yog lawv yuav tseg lawv cov uas seem tshuav txoj sia, tias lawv yuav tsis tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv ib zaug ntxiv lawm.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau kom txoj hauj lwm ntawm kev tuag tsum nyob hauv cov neeg. Thiab nws tau muab tej cuab yeej ua rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau nkag rau hauv ib txoj kev khi lus ntawm kev kaj siab lug nrog nws lawm lawv tau raug tso ncaim mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 21 Nim no lawv cov neeg tuag tsis tau muab suav vim yog muaj coob leej heev; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv cov neeg tuag tau muaj coob leej heev, ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas ob tog huv si.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muab lawv cov neeg tuag pov rau hauv cov dej Xidoos, thiab lawv tau tog mus thiab faus rau hauv dej hiav txwv tob.
- 23 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais cov tub rog, los sis Maulaunais cov, tau rov qab thiab tau los rau lawv tej vaj tse thiab lawv tej av.
- 24 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab li no tau kawg Amas phau ceev xwm txheej, uas tau raug muab sau rau saum Nifais cov phiaj.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

Zaj txog Nifais cov neeg, thiab lawv tej tsov rog thiab tej kev tsis sib haum xeeb, nyob hauv Hilamas lub caij, raws li Hilamas phau ceev xwm txheej, uas nws tau ceev nyob hauv nws lub caij.

Amas 45

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias Nifais cov neeg tau xyiv fab heev, vim tus Tswv tau rov coj lawv dim ntwam lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes; yog li ntawd lawv tau ua tsaug rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau yoo mov heev thiab thov Vajtswv heev, thiab lawv tau teev tiam Vajtswv xyiv fab heev kawg nkaus li.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib kaum cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, ces Amas tau los cuag nws tus tub Hilamas thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg tej lus uas kuv tau hais rau koj txog cov ceev xwm txheej uas tau muab ceev tseg lawm?
- 3 Thiab Hilamas tau hais rau nws tias: Muaj tseeb, kuv yeej ntseeg.
- 4 Thiab Amas rov hais dua tias: Koj puas ntseeg Yexus Khetos, tus uas yuav los?
- 5 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb, kuv ntseeg tag nrho tej lus uas koj tau hais lawm.
- 6 Thiab Amas rov tau hais dua rau nws tias: Koj puas yuav coj kuv tej lus txib?
- 7 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Muaj tseeb, kuv yeej yuav coj koj tej lus txib kom tag nrho kuv lub siab lub ntsws.
- 8 Ces Amas tau hais rau nws tias: Koj tau koob hmoov; thiab tus Tswv yuav ua kom koj vam meej nyob hauv thaj av no.
- 9 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv muaj tej yam yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau koj; tiam sis yam uas kuv yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau koj koj yuav tsum tsis txhob qhia tawm; muaj tseeb tiag, yam uas kuv yuav qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau koj yuav tsum tsis txhob qhia tawm, kom mus txog thaum qhov qhia ntawd muaj puv npo; yog li ntawd cia li sau tej lus uas kuv yuav hais cia.

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.

Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

- 10 Thiab cov no yog cov lus: Saib seb, kuv pom tau tias cov neeg no ntag, uas yog cov Neeg Nifais, raws li tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim uas nyob hauv kuv, nyob hauv plaub puas xyoo txij li lub sij hawm uas Yexus Khetos yuav coj nws tus kheej los rau lawv pom, lawv yuav tso kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus.
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav pom tsov rog thiab tej kev mob nkeeg, muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev tshaib thiab kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, mus txog thaum Nifais cov neeg yuav rais los tu noob—
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav muaj li no los vim yog lawv yuav tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus thiab poob mus rau hauv tej hauj lwm tsaus ntuj, thiab txoj kev ua dev ua npua, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev tsis ncaj ncees; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau koj, tias vim lawv yuav ua txhaum nkaug qhov kaj thiab txoj kev paub tseem ceeb li ntawd, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau koj, tias txij hnuv ntawd, mus txog plaub tiam neeg los tseem dhau tsis tau tag ua ntej txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees no yuav los.
- 13 Thiab thaum hnuv loj ntawd los, saib seb, lub caij yuav los sai sai thaum cov uas nim no, los sis cov noob ntawm cov uas nim no suav nrog Nifais cov neeg, yuav tsis raug suav nrog Nifais cov neeg ntxiv li lawm.
- 14 Tiam sis cov uas seem tshuav, thiab tsis raug puas tsuaj nyob rau hauv hnuv loj thiab txom nyem ntawd, yuav raug muab suav nrog cov Neeg Lamas, thiab yuav rais los mus zoo li lawv, tag nrho sawv daws, tsuas tshuav qho tus uas yuav raug hu ua tus Tswv cov ntseeg; thiab lawv yuav raug cov Neeg Lamas raws mus txog thaum lawv rais los tu noob. Thiab nim no, vim txoj kev tsis ncaj ncees, txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej no yeej yuav muaj puv nkaus.
- 15 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau hais tej yam no rau Hilamas tas lawm, nws tau foom koob hmoov rau nws, thiab rau nws lwm cov tub; thiab nws kuj tau foom koob hmoov rau thaj av pub rau cov neeg ncaj ncees.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

16 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Tus Tswv Vajtswv tau hais li no tias—Thaj av yuav raug foom tsis zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, thaj av no, rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus, thiab tej neeg sawv daws, rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, rau cov uas ua phem, thaum lawv siav tsaus lawm; thiab ib yam li kuv tau hais lawm ces nws yuav muaj li ntawd; vim qhov no yog txoj kev foom tsis zoo thiab foom koob hmoov ntawm Vajtswv rau saum thaj av, vim tus Tswv yeej ntsia tsis taus me me li rau saum kev txhaum.

17 Thiab nim no, thaum Amas tau hais tej lus no tas lawm nws tau foom koob hmoov rau lub koom txoos, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho rau cov uas yuav sawv ruaj nrees nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus lawm yav tom ntej.

18 Thiab thaum Amas tau ua tej no tas lawm nws tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahelas mus lawm, zoo li mus rau hauv thaj av Milej. Thiab tau muaj tias txawm tsis tau hnov txog nws ntxiv lawm; txog nws txoj kev tuag los sis txoj kev faus nws peb yeej tsis paub txog li.

19 Saib seb, qhov no peb paub, tias nws yog ib tug neeg ncaj ncees; thiab lo lus pheej hais tau nrov ncha mus rau hauv lub koom txoos tias nws tau raug tus Ntsuj Plig coj mus lawm, los sis tus Tswv txhais tes tau muab nws faus, ib yam li Mauxes. Tiam sis saib seb, vajlugkub hais tias tus Tswv tau coj Mauxes mus nrog nws nyob lawm; thiab peb xav tias nws tau txais Amas tus ntsuj plig, mus nrog nws nyob lawm thiab; yog li ntawd, vim li no peb thiaj tsis paub txog nws txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev faus nws.

20 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib kaum cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, Hilamas tau tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg mus tshaj tawm txoj lus rau lawv.

21 Vim saib seb, vim yog lawv tej kev tsov rog nrog cov Neeg Lamas thiab tej kev tsis sib haum xeeb me uas ntau thiab tej kev sib thab uas tau muaj nyob hauv cov neeg, nws rais los tsim nyog tias Vajtswv txoj lus yuav tsum raug tshaj tawm nyob hauv lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ib txoj kev cai yuav tsum muaj nyob thoob plaws hauv lub koom txoos.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

22 Yog li ntawd, Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau tawm mus txhim tsa lub koom txoos dua nyob thooob plaws txhua thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob txhua txhia lub nroog thooob plaws txhua thaj av uas Nifais cov neeg nyob. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tsa tej pov thawj thiab tej xib hwb thooob plaws txhua thaj av, los saib xyuas tag nrho tej koom txoos.

23 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau tsa tej pov thawj thiab tej xib hwb los saib xyuas tej koom txoos lawm ces txawm tau sawv ib qho kev tsis sib haum xeeb nyob hauv lawv, thiab lawv tsis mloog Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tej lus.

24 Tiam sis lawv hlob muaj plhus, khav theeb nyob hauv lawv tej siab, vim yog lawv tej kev nplua nuj heev; yog li ntawd lawv tau hlob nplua nuj nyob hauv lawv tus kheej tej qhov muag, thiab tsis kam mloog rau lawv tej lus, kom mus ncaj ncees rau Vajtswv.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

Amas 46

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tag nrho cov uas tsis mloog Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tej lus tau sib sau ua ke tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij.
- 2 Thiab nim no saib seb, lawv tau npau taws heev, kawg tias lawv tau xav muab lawv cov ntawd tua.
- 3 Nim no tus thawj koj ntawm cov uas tau npau taws tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij yog ib tug neeg loj thiab muaj zog; thiab nws lub npe hu ua Amalikhaiyas.
- 4 Thiab Amalikhaiyas tau xav ua ib tug vaj ntxwv; thiab cov neeg uas tau npau taws kuj tau xav kom nws ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv thiab; thiab lawv tau yog feem coob ntawm lawv cov uas txiav txim qis ntawm thaj av, thiab lawv tau nrhiav kom muaj hwj chim.
- 5 Thiab lawv tau raug yaum los ntawm Amalikhaiyas tej kev ua txuj ntxias, tias yog lawv yuav txhawb nws thiab tsa nws ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv ces nws yuav tsa lawv los ua cov kav cov neeg.
- 6 Zoo li no lawv thiaj raug yaum los ntawm Amalikhaiyas mus rau txoj kev ntseev siab, tsis quav ntsej Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tej kev qhuab qhia, muaj tseeb tiag, tsis quav ntsej txog lawv txoj kev mob siab tu lub koom txoos, vim lawv yog cov pov thawj hlob saib xyuas lub koom txoos.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj coob leej nyob hauv lub koom txoos cov uas tau ntseeg Amalikhaiyas tej lus uas hais tshaj qhov ntseeg tau, yog li ntawd lawv tseem tau ntseev siab tawm ntawm lub koom txoos mus; thiab li no Nifais cov neeg tej hauj lwm tau tsis ruaj khov thiab muaj teeb meem heev, tsis nco txog lawv txoj kev yeej loj uas lawv tau muaj rau saum cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv txoj kev zoo siab heev uas lawv tau muaj vim yog lawv txoj kev pab dim los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes.
- 8 Zoo li no peb thiaj pom tau tias noob neej hnov qab tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv sai npaum li cas, muaj tseeb tiag, ua kev tsis ncaj ncees, thiab raug ua tus dab koj mus sai npaum li cas.
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb kuj pom tau tias ib tug neeg uas phem phem mas muaj peev xwm ua tau kom muaj txoj kev phem loj nyob hauv tib neeg.

Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, inasmuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

- 10 Muaj tseeb tiag, peb pom tias Amalikhaiyas, vim nws yog ib tug neeg txawj dag ntxias thiab ib tug neeg muaj tej lus ua txuj ntxias ntau, pom nws coj ntau tus neeg tej siab mus ua phem heev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nrhiav rhuav kom Vajtswv lub koom txoos puas tsuaj mus, thiab rhuav lub hauv paus ntawm txoj kev ywj siab uas Vajtswv tau pub rau lawv, los sis tej koob hmoov uas Vajtswv tau xa los rau saum thaj av vim cov neeg ncaj txoj kev zoo.
- 11 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais, tus uas yog tus thawj coj cov tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, tau hnov txog tej kev ntxeev siab no, nws tau npau taws rau Amalikhaiyas.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau dua nws lub tsho loj; thiab nws tau muab ib daig ntaub ntawd, thiab tau sau rau saud—Rau txoj kev nco txog peb tus Vajtswv, peb txoj kev teev ntuj, thiab txoj kev ywj pheej, thiab peb txoj kev thaj yeeb, peb tej poj niam, thiab peb tej me nyuam—thiab nws tau muab nws khi rau saum ib tug ntsis pas.
- 13 Thiab nws tau muab nws daim phiaj thaiv taub hau kho khi rau, thiab nws daim phiaj npog hauv siab, thiab nws tej phiaj hlau, thiab khi nws tej cuab yeej ua rog txog ntawm nws puab tais; thiab nws tau nqa tus pas, uas tau muaj daim ntaub uas dua ntawm nws lub tsho loj los nyob tom ntsis, (thiab nws muab hu ua tus chij ntawm txoj kev ywj siab) thiab nws tau khoov rau hauv av, thiab nws tau thov heev rau nws tus Vajtswv rau tej koob hmoov ntawm txoj kev ywj siab los rau saum nws cov kwv tij, ntev npaum li uas tseem muaj ib pab neeg ntseeg Khetos nyob tswj thaj av—
- 14 Tag nrho sawv daws cov uas tau yog neeg ntseeg Khetos tseeb, cov uas tau zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos, tau raug cov uas tsis tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos hu li ntawd.
- 15 Thiab cov uas tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos muaj kev ntseeg heev; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov uas yog neeg ntseeg tseeb hauv Khetos tau, zoo siab hlo, ris Khetos lub npe rau saum lawv, los sis cov neeg Khetos ib yam li lawv tau raug hu, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos tus uas yuav los.
- 16 Thiab yog li ntawd, nyob rau zaum no, Maulaunais tau thov kom cov neeg Khetos, thiab txoj kev ywj pheej ntawm thaj av yuav tau koob hmoov.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau nchuav tag nrho nws lub siab rau Vajtswv, nws tau tis npe rau tag nrho thaj av uas nyob sab nram hav ntawm thaj av Quav Poj, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yog, tag nrho thaj av, nyob sab pem toj thiab sab nram hav huv si—Ib thaj av uas tau xaiv cia lawm, thiab thaj av ywj siab.
- 18 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Tseeb tiag Vajtswv yeej yuav tsis cia peb, cov uas raug luag ntxub vim peb ris Khetos lub npe rau saum peb, kom raug tsuj thiab puas tsuaj, mus txog thaum peb coj nws los rau saum peb los ntawm peb tus kheej tej kev txhaum.
- 19 Thiab thaum Maulaunais tau hais tej lus no tas, nws tau tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg, co daim ntaub dua ntawm nws lub tsho rau saum ntuj, kom sawv daws yuav pom cov ntawv sau uas nws tau muab sau rau saum daim ntaub dua, thiab qw ib lub suab nrov nrov, hais tias:
- 20 Saib seb, leej twg uas yuav tswj tuav lub npe no rau saum thaj av, cia lawv tawm los nyob hauv tus Tswv lub zog, thiab nkag rau hauv ib txoj kev khi lus tias lawv yuav tswj nrees tuav lawv tej kev muaj cai, thiab lawv txoj kev teev ntuj, xwv kom tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav foom koob hmoov rau lawv.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau tshaj tawm cov lus no, saib seb, cov neeg tau khiav zom zaws los ua ke nrog lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog khi ncig lawv tej duav, dua zom zaws lawv tej ris tsho ua ib lub cim, los sis ib yam li ib lo lus khi tseg, tias lawv yuav tsis hnov qab tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv; los sis, ua lwm yam lus hais, yog lawv ua txhaum Vajtswv tej lus txib, los sis poob rau hauv txoj kev txhaum, thiab txaj muag ris Khetos lub npe rau saum lawv, ces tus Tswv yuav dua lawv tib yam li uas lawv tau dua lawv tej ris tsho.
- 22 Nim no qhov no yog txoj kev khi lus tseg uas lawv tau khi, thiab lawv tau pov lawv tej ris tsho rau ntawm Maulaunais ko taw, hais tias: Peb khi lus nrog peb tus Vajtswv, tias peb yuav raug puas tsuaj, zoo tib yam li peb cov kwv tij uas nyob hauv thaj av sab pem ub, yog tias peb yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum; muaj tseeb tiag, nws muab peb pov rau ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab ko taw los tau, tib yam li peb tau muab peb tej ris tsho pov rau ntawm koj ko taw cia raug tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws, yog tias peb yuav poob mus rau hauv txoj kev txhaum.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23 Maulaunais hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, peb yog ib co noob seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yog ib co noob seem ntawm Yauxej, uas raug nws cov kwv tij muab lub tsho loj dua ua ntaw daim; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nim no saib seb, peb cia li nco ntsoov coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, los sis peb tej ris tsho yuav raug peb cov kwv tij muab dua, thiab peb yuav raug pov rau hauv qhov taub, los sis raug muab muag, los sis muab tua.

24 Muaj tseeb tiag, cia peb hwj xwm peb txoj kev ywj siab kom zoo li ib co neeg seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej; muaj tseeb tiag, cia peb nco ntsoov txog Yakhauj tej lus, uas ua ntej nws yuav tuag, vim saib seb, nws tau pom tias ib feem ntawm Yauxej lub tsho loj seem tshuav tau raug hwj xwm thiab tseem tsis tau lwj. Thiab nws tau hais tias—Tib yam li qhov tw tsho seem tshuav ntawm kuv tus tub no uas raug hwj xwm tseg, ces ib co noob seem ntawm kuv tus tub yeej yuav raug Vajtswv txhais tes tshwj tseg, thiab yuav raug coj mus rau nws tus kheej, thaum uas cov noob seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej yuav piam sij, tib yam li nws qhov tw tsho uas seem tshuav.

25 Nim no saib seb, qhov no ua rau kuv nyuaj siab; txawm li ntawd los, kuv tseem xyiv fab rau kuv tus tub, vim yog rau feem ntawm nws cov noob uas yuav raug coj mus cuag Vajtswv.

26 Nim no saib seb, qhov no yog cov lus uas Yakhauj tau hais.

27 Thiab nim no leej twg yuav paub tias Yauxej cov noob seem tshuav twg, uas yuav piam sij ib yam li nws lub tsho, puas yog cov uas tau ntseev siab tawm ntawm peb mus lawm? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tej zaum twb yuav yog peb tus kheej yog peb tsis sawv khov kho hauv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos.

28 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm nws tau tawm mus, thiab kuj tau xa neeg mus rau txhua txhia qhov ntawm thaj av uas tau muaj tej kev ntseev siab, thiab tau sau tag nrho cov uas xav tswj tuav lawv txoj kev ywj siab tuaj ua ke, los sawv tawm tsam Amalikhaiyas thiab cov uas tau ntseev siab, cov uas tau raug hu ua cov neeg Amalikhaiyas.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amalikhaiyas pom tias Maulaunais cov neeg coob dua li cov neeg Amalikhaiyas—thiab nws kuj tau pom tias nws cov neeg tau ua ntau lub siab txog txoj kev txim lij ntawm qhov uas lawv tau pib ua—yog li ntawd, ntshai nyob tsam nws yeej tsis taus lub ntsiab, nws thiaj tau coj nws cov neeg uas kam nrog nws thiab tau ncaim mus rau hauv thaj av Nifais lawm.
- 30 Nim no Maulaunais tau xav hais tias tsis tsim nyog kom cov Neeg Lamas yuav muaj zog ntxiv; yog li ntawd nws tau xav tias mus tav cov neeg Amalikhaiyas, los sis txhom lawv thiab coj lawv rov qab, thiab muab Amalikhaiyas tua; muaj tseeb tiag, vim nws paub lawm tias nws yeej yuav txhib kom cov Neeg Lamas npau taws tawm tsam lawv, thiab ua kom lawv tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv; thiab nws paub li no lawm tias Amalikhaiyas yuav ua li ntawd kom nws yuav ua tau li nws siab xav.
- 31 Yog li ntawd Maulaunais thiaj tau xav tias tsim nyog tias nws yuav tsum coj nws tej tub rog, cov uas tau sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke, thiab tau npaj cuab yeej, thiab tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus coj txoj kev thaj yeeb—thiab tau muaj tias nws tau coj nws cov tub rog thiab tau tawm nrog nws tej tsev pheeab suab ntaub mus rau hauv hav zoov, mus txiav Amalikhaiyas kev nyob hauv hav zoov.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ua raws li nws siab xav, thiab tau tawm mus rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau ntsib Amalikhaiyas tej tub rog.
- 33 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tau khiav nrog nws ib co neeg uas tsawg lawm, thiab cov seem ces raug txhom coj los rau hauv Maulaunais tes thiab tau raug coj rov qab mus rau hauv thaj av Xalabelas.
- 34 Nim no, Maulaunais twb yog ib tug neeg uas tau raug tsa los ntawm tej thawj tub txiav txim thiab cov neeg lub suab, yog li ntawd nws muaj hwj chim raws li nws siab xav nrog cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog, txhim tsa thiab siv cai kav lawv.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias tus neeg Amalikhaiyas twg uas tsis kam nkag rau hauv ib txoj kev khi lus los txhawb rau txoj kev ywj pheej, kom lawv yuav muaj tau ib txoj kev kav ywj siab, nws tau kom raug muab tua; thiab tau muaj tsawg tus uas tsis kam rau txoj kev khi lus ntawm txoj kev ywj pheej.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

36 Thiab kuj tau muaj tias, nws tau ua kom tus chij ntawm txoj kev ywj siab raug tsa rau saum txhua tus pej thuam uas muaj nyob rau hauv txhua thaj av, uas cov Neeg Nifais nyob; thiab li no Maulaunais tau cog tus chij ntawm txoj kev ywj siab nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais.

37 Thiab lawv tau pib muaj kev nyab xeeb nyob rau hauv thaj av dua; thiab li no lawv tau muaj kev nyab xeeb rau hauv thaj av mus yuav luag txog thaum kawg xyoo thib kaum cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

38 Thiab Hilamas thiab tej pov thawj hlob kuj tseem tau tsvj tuav tej chaw hauv lub koom txoos; muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau ncuu li plaub xyoos uas lawv tau muaj kev nyab xeeb ntau thiab kev zoo siab hauv lub koom txoos.

39 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj coob leej uas tau tuag, ntseeg ruaj nrees tias lawv tej ntsuj plig twb raug txhiv dim los ntawm tus Tswv Yexus Khetos; li no lawv tau tawm hauv lub ntiaj teb mus zoo siab hlo.

40 Thiab tau muaj ib txhia uas tau tuag ua npaws, uas muaj tej lub caij nyooq ntawm lub xyoo tau nquag nquag muaj nyob hauv thaj av—tiam sis kuj tsis tau muaj ntau leej tuag kev ua npaws, vim yog txoj kev muaj tej nroj tsuag thiab tej cag ntoo zoo heev uas Vajtswv tau npaj los tshem tej kab mob, uas tej neeg tau raug ywj rau tej huab cua—

41 Tiam sis tau muaj ntau leej uas tau tuag nrog hnuv nyooq laus; thiab cov uas tau tuag nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos yeej zoo siab nyob hauv nws, ib yam li peb yuav tsum cia muaj.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Amas 47

- 1 Nim no peb yuav rov qab mus rau hauv peb phau ceev xwm txheej mus rau Amalikhaiyas thiab cov uas tau khiav nrog nws mus rau hauv hav zoov; vim, saib seb, nws tau coj cov uas tau mus nrog nws, thiab tau nce, mus rau hauv thaj av Nifais rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau txhib cov Neeg Lamas kom npau taws tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau xa ib tsab xov thoob plaws rau tag nrho hauv nws thaj av, rau tag nrho nws cov neeg, kom lawv yuav tsum sib sau tuaj ua ke dua mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum tsab xov tau tawm mus rau hauv lawv lawm lawv tau ntshai heev kawg nkaus li; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau ntshai tsam vaj ntxwv tsis txaus siab, thiab lawv kuj ntshai mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob tsam lawv yuav poob lawv txoj sia mus. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tsis kam, los sis lawv feem coob tsis kam, ua raws li vaj ntxwv tej lus txib.
- 3 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau npau taws vim lawv txoj kev tsis mloog lus; yog li ntawd nws tau muab Amalikhaiyas uas tus txib nws cov tub rog feem uas mloog li nws tej lus txib, thiab tau txib nws kom nws tawm mus thiab yuam lawv rau cuab yeej ua rog.
- 4 Nim no saib seb, qhov no twb yog li Amalikhaiyas siab xav; vim nws yog ib tug neeg zais siab ua phem heev yog li ntawd nws tau npaj tswv yim rau hauv nws siab mus tshem cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tawm.
- 5 Thiab nim no nws tau ua tus txib cov Neeg Lamas feem uas nyiam ua li vaj ntxwv hais; thiab nws tau nrhiav ua kom cov uas tsis mloog lus nyiam nws; yog li ntawd nws tau tawm mus rau ib qho chaw uas hu ua Aunidas, vim tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav mus rau tod lawm; vim lawv tau pom cov tub rog tab tom tuaj, thiab, tau xav tias yog lawv tau tab tom tuaj ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tau khiav mus rau tom Aunidas lawm, mus rau qhov chaw muaj cuab yeej ua rog.
- 6 Thiab lawv tau tsa ib tug txiv neej los ua ib tug vaj ntxwv thiab ib tug thawj coj kav lawv, vim lawv tau txiav txim siab ruaj tias lawv yuav tsis raug yuam kom mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.

Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sib sau tuaj ua ke rau saum ib lub ncov roob uas hu ua Eethipas, hauv kev npaj tuaj ua rog.
- 8 Nim no nws tsis yog Amalikhaiyas txoj kev xav ua rog rau lawv yog tias raws li vaj ntxwv tej lus txib; tiam sis saib seb, twb yog nws txoj kev txhob txwm ua kom cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog nyiam nws, kom nws yuav muab tau nws tus kheej rau pem lawv taub hau thiab tshem vaj ntxwv tawm thiab txeeb coj kav lub teb chaws.
- 9 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj tias nws tau ua kom nws tej tub rog rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub rau hauv lub hav uas nyob ze lub roob Eethipas.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum tsaus ntuj lawm nws tau xa ib pab neeg tshuaj ntsiag to mus rau saum lub roob Eethipas, xav kom tus thawj ntawm cov uas nyob saum roob, uas npe hu ua Lihoothis, kom nws nqis los rau nram taw roob, vim nws xav nrog nws tham.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Lihoothis tau txais tsab xov lawm nws tsis kam nqis mus rau nram taw roob. Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas rov tau xa xov dua zaum ob, xav kom nws nqis los. Thiab tau muaj tias Lihoothis tsis kam; thiab nws tau xa xov dua zaum peb.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Amalikhaiyas nrhiav pom tias nws coj tsis tau Lihoothis nqis saum roob los, nws tau nce mus rau pem roob, uas ze Lihoothis lub yeej; thiab tau xa dua nws tsab xov zaum plaub mus rau Lihoothis, xav kom nws nqis los, thiab kom nws coj nws tej tub zov nrog nws thiab.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Lihoothis tau nrog nws tej tub zov nqis los cuag Amalikhaiyas, ces Amalikhaiyas tau xav kom nws nqis nrog nws cov tub rog los thaum tsaus ntuj, thiab vij cov neeg hauv lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub cov uas vaj ntxwv tau muab rau nws txib, thiab nws yuav muab lawv los rau Lihoothis tes, yog tias nws kam muab nws (Amalikhaiyas) ua tus thawj thib ob kav tag nrho cov tub rog.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Lihoothis tau nqis nrog nws cov neeg los thiab tau vij Amalikhaiyas cov neeg, ces kom ua ntej lawv tsim thaum sawv ntxov lawv twb tau raug vij los ntawm Lihoothis cov tub rog.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv pom tias lawv tau raug vij tag lawm, lawv tau thov Amalikhaiyas tias thov nws cia lawv koom nrog lawv cov kwv tij, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj. Nim no qhov no twb yog kiag yam uas Amalikhaiyas xav yuav.

16 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tso nws cov neeg los, tsis raws li vaj ntxwv tej lus txib. Nim no qhov no twb yog yam uas Amalikhaiyas xav tau, kom nws yuav ua tau li nws tej kev npaj tshem vaj ntxwv tawm.

17 Nim no nws yog kev li kev cai nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas, yog lawv tus thawj coj tau raug tua lawm, ces yuav tsa tus thawj coj thib ob los ua lawv tus thawj coj.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tau kom ib tug ntawm nws cov tub qhe yuav tsum muab me ntsis me ntsis tshuaj lom Lihoothis, ces nws tuag lawm.

19 Nim no, thaum Lihoothis tau tuag lawm, cov Neeg Lamas tau tsa Amalikhaiyas los ua lawv tus thawj thiab lawv tus thawj coj txib.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tau mus nrog nws cov tub rog (vim nws ua tau li nws siab xav) rau tom thaj av Nifais, rau hauv lub nroog Nifais, uas yog lub thawj nroog.

21 Thiab tus vaj ntxwv tau nrog nws cov tub zov tawm tuaj ntsib nws, vim nws tau xav tias Amalikhaiyas tau ua tiav li nws tej lus txib lawm, thiab xav tias Amalikhaiyas tau sau tau ib pab tub rog coob heev mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.

22 Tiam sis saib seb, thaum tus vaj ntxwv tawm tuaj ntsib nws Amalikhaiyas tau kom nws tej tub qhe mus ntsib tus vaj ntxwv. Thiab lawv tau mus thiab lawv tau khoov ntawm vaj ntxwv xub ntiag, ib yam ua kev hawm nws vim yog nws txoj kev muaj hwj chim loj.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv tau cev nws txhais tes tuaj tsa lawv, ib yam li cov Neeg Lamas txoj kev cai, ib yam li ib lub cim ntawm txoj kev nyab xeeb, uas yog txoj kev cai uas lawv tau coj ntawm cov Neeg Nifais los.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau tsa thawj tug sawv hauv av los, saib seb nws tau tib nkaug vaj ntxwv mus rau lub siab; thiab nws tau vau rau hauv av.

25 Nim no vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe tau khiav; thiab Amalikhaiyas cov tub qhe tau tsa suab qw nrov nrov, hais tias:

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

26 Saib seb, vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe tau nkaug nws mus rau lub siab, thiab nws tau vau thiab lawv tau khiav lawm; saib seb, tuaj thiab ntsia seb.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tau txib kom nws cov tub rog tawm mus thiab saib seb yam dab tsi tau tshwm sim rau tus vaj ntxwv; thiab thaum lawv tuaj txog rau ntawm qhov chaw, thiab nrhiav pom vaj ntxwv pw tsau nws cov ntshav, Amalikhaiyas tau ua txuj npau taws, thiab tau hais tias: Leej twg uas hlub vaj ntxwv, cia nws tawm mus, thiab raws nws tej tub qhe qab kom tua tau lawv.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias tag nrho lawv cov uas hlub vaj ntxwv, thaum lawv tau hnov cov lus no lawm, tau txav los thiab tau raws vaj ntxwv tej tub qhe qab.

29 Nim no thaum vaj ntxwv cov tub qhe pom ib pab tub rog raws lawv qab, lawv tau poob siab nthav dua, thiab tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas thiab tau los koom nrog Amoos cov neeg.

30 Thiab cov tub rog uas tau raws lawv qab tau rov qab los, tau raws tsis tau lawv; thiab li no Amalikhaiyas, los ntawm nws txoj kev dag ntxias, tau kov yeej cov neeg tej siab.

31 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis nws tau nkag mus rau hauv lub nroog Nifais nrog nws cov tub rog, thiab muab lub nroog ua nws tug.

32 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tus niam vaj ntxwv, thaum nws tau hnov tias vaj ntxwv tau raug tua lawm—vim Amalikhaiyas tau xa ib co neeg xa xov mus cuag niam vaj ntxwv qhia nws tias vaj ntxwv tau raug nws cov tub qhe tua tuag lawm, tias nws tau kom nws cov tub rog raws lawv, tiam sis raws tsis tau, thiab lawv tau khiav dim lawm—

33 Yog li ntawd, thaum niam vaj ntxwv tau txais tsab xov no nws tau xa xov mus rau Amalikhaiyas, xav kom nws txhob tua cov neeg hauv lub nroog; thiab niam vaj ntxwv kuj tau xav kom nws los mus cuag niam vaj ntxwv; thiab nws kuj tau xav kom nws yuav tsum coj tim khawv nrog nws los ua tim khawv txog vaj ntxwv txoj kev tuag.

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tau coj tib tug tub qhe uas tua vaj ntxwv, thiab tag nrho sawv daws cov uas tau nrog nws, thiab tau mus cuag niam vaj ntxwv, mus rau ntawm qhov chaw uas nws zaum; thiab lawv sawv daws tau ua tim khawv rau nws tias vaj ntxwv tau raug tua los ntawm nws cov tub qhe kiag; thiab lawv kuj tau hais tias: Lawv tau khiav lawm; qhov no puas yuav tsis yog ua tim khawv nkaug lawv? Thiab li no lawv tau ua rau niam vaj ntxwv txaus siab txog vaj ntxwv txoj kev tuag.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas nrhiav tau ua kom niam vaj ntxwv nyiam, thiab tau yuav nws los ua nws tus poj niam; thiab li no ces los ntawm nws txoj kev dag ntxias, thiab los ntawm txoj kev pab ntawm nws cov tub qhe dag, nws thiaj txeeb tau lub nceeg vaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau raug pom zoo ua vaj ntxwv thoob plaws rau hauv txhua thaj av, nyob tag nrho rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas, uas yog sib xyaws los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Lemu-ees thiab cov Neeg Ixama-ees, thiab tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais uas ntxeev siab, txij li thaum Nifais kav los txog lub sij hawm no.

36 Nim no cov neeg ntxeev siab no, tau muaj tib yam kev qhia thiab tib yam kev paub li cov Neeg Nifais, muaj tseeb tiag, tau raug qhia tib yam kev paub txog tus Tswv, txawm li ntawd los, nws txawv kawg uas yuav muab piv, tsis ntev tom qab lawv tej kev ntxeev siab lawv tau rais los mus ua neeg siab tawv thiab tsis xav hloov siab, thiab ua neeg qus, phem thiab nyaum dua li cov Neeg Lamas—txaus siab hlo txais yuav cov Neeg Lamas tej kev dab qhuas; cia kev rau txoj kev tub nkeeg, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev sib daj sib deev; muaj tseeb tiag, hnov qab hlo tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Amas 48

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias, sai sai txij kiag thaum uas Amalikhaiyas tau los ua vaj ntxwv kav lawm nws tau pib tshoov cov Neeg Lamas tej siab tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau tsa neeg mus nyob saum lawv tej pej thuam hais lus nkaug cov Neeg Nifais rau cov Neeg Lamas.
- 2 Thiab li no nws tau tshum lawv tej siab nkaug cov Neeg Nifais, kawg tias thaum yuav kawg ntawm xyoo thib kaum cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, nws tau ua tau li nws siab xav los txog li no, muaj tseeb tiag, tau raug muab ua vaj ntxwv kav cov Neeg Lamas, nws kuj tau nrhiav kav tag nrho tej thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kav tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws uas nyob hauv thaj av, cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas.
- 3 Yog li ntawd nws tau ua tau li nws siab xav, vim nws tau ua kom cov Neeg Lamas siab tawv thiab ua kom lawv tej siab dig, thiab tau txhib lawv kom npau taws, kawg tias thaum kawg nws tau sau tau neeg coob heev mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 4 Vim nws tau xav, kov kom yeej cov Neeg Nifais thiab coj lawv los mus ua qhev, vim nws muaj neeg coob heev kawg nkaus li.
- 5 Thiab li no nws tau tsa cov Neeg Xaulas ua thawj nom peb, vim lawv yog cov uas paub txog cov Neeg Nifais lub zog zoo, thiab lawv tej chaw muab siav thiab tej chaw uas tsis muaj zog tshaj ntawm lawv tej nroog; yog li ntawd nws tau tsa lawv los ua tej thawj nom peb kav nws cov tub rog.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau coj lawv tej khoom siv, thiab tau txav tawm mus rau tom thaj av Xalahelas nyob hauv hav zoov.
- 7 Nim no tau muaj tias lub sij hawm uas Amalikhaiyas tau tab tom ua kom tau hwj chim li no los ntawm txoj kev dag thiab ntxias, Maulaunais, ho tab tom npaj cov neeg tej siab kom ntseeg tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau tab tom txhawb cov Neeg Nifais cov tub rog kom muaj zog, thiab tab tom tsa ua tej me nyuam yeej, los sis tej qhov chaw muab siav; khawb kwj av ncig thaiv nws cov tub rog, thiab kuj tau puab phab ntsa pob zeb vij lawv, ua voj voog ncig lawv tej nroog thiab ncig lawv tej ciam av; muaj tseeb tiag, ncig tag nrho thaj av.

Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

- 9 Thiab nws tau tso neeg coob dua rau hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv uas tsis muaj zog tshaj; thiab li no nws tau ua kom thaj av uas cov Neeg Nifais nyob muaj dag thiab muaj zog tuaj.
- 10 Thiab li no nws tau npaj tiv thaiv lawv txoj kev ywj siab, lawv tej av, lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam, thiab lawv txoj kev nyab xeeb, thiab xwv kom lawv yuav tau ua neej pub rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab kom lawv yuav tswj tuav tau tej uas raug hu los ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab hais tias yog txoj kev ntseeg ntawm cov neeg Khetos.
- 11 Thiab Maulaunais yog ib tug neeg muaj zog thiaj muaj hwj chim; nws yog ib tug neeg uas muaj kev to taub zoo kawg nkaus li; muaj tseeb tiag, ib tug neeg uas tsis nyiam nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; ib tug neeg uas xyiv fab rau kev ywj siab thiab kev ywj pheej ntawm nws lub teb chaws, thiab nws cov kwv tij dim ntawm txoj kev raug txim thiab ua qhev;
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, ib tug neeg uas muaj lub siab puv npo ua nws tus Vajtswv tsaug, rau ntau yam kev ua tau thiab tej koob hmoov uas nws tau muab rau nws cov neeg; ib tug neeg uas ua hauj lwm hnyav heev rau nws cov neeg txoj kev noj qab haus huv thiab txoj kev tsis muaj teeb meem dab tsi.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yog ib tug neeg uas nyob ruaj nrees hauv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, thiab nws tau khi ib lo lus los tiv thaiv nws cov neeg, nws tej kev muaj cai, thiab nws lub teb chaws, thiab nws txoj kev teev ntuj, mus txog thaum xiam nws tej ntshav.
- 14 Nim no cov Neeg Nifais tau raug qhia kom tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab, txawm tias nqaij yuav ntuag ntshav yuav nrog yog nws xav tau lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tau raug qhia kom tsis txhob ua siab lwm tus, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsis txhob tsa rab ntaj tsuas yog tsa tawm tsam yeeb ncuab xwb, tsuas yog cia tshwj lawv txoj sia xwb.
- 15 Thiab qhov no yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg, tias los ntawm txoj kev ua li no Vajtswv yuav ua kom lawv vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av, los sis ua lwm yam lus hais, yog lawv muaj kev ntseeg coj ntsoov Vajtswv tej lus txib ces nws yuav ua kom lawv vam meej nyob hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, ceeb toom kom lawv khiav, los sis kom npaj ua rog, raws li lawv tej kev muaj xwm;

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

- 16 Thiab uas, Vajtsvuv kuj yuav ua rau lawv paub qhov uas tsim nyog lawv yuav mus tiv thaiv tawm tsam lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab los ntawm txoj kev ua li no, tus Tswv yuav coj lawv; thiab qhov no yog Maulaunais txoj kev ntseeg, thiab nws lub siab tau zoo siab heev rau qhov ntawd; tsis yog nyob hauv txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog tiam sis nyob hauv txoj kev ua zoo, nyob hauv txoj kev tshwj nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv txoj kev coj ntsoov Vajtsvuv tej lus txib, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tiv thaiv txoj kev tsis ncaj.
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, tseeb tiag, kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, yog tag nrho tej neeg ua nyob tas los lawm, thiab tab tom nyob no, thiab tseem yuav nyob lawm yav tom ntej, yuav zoo li Maulaunais, saib seb, txhua lub hwj chim hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav raug tshee hnyo mus ib txhis; muaj tseeb tiag, tus dab yuav tsis muaj hwj chim kav noob neej tej siab ib zaug li.
- 18 Saib seb, nws yog ib tug neeg zoo li Amoos, Mauxiyas tus tub, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab twb zoo li Mauxiyas lwm cov tub, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj zoo li Amas thiab nws cov tub, vim lawv sawv daws puav leej yog neeg ntawm Vajtsvuv.
- 19 Nim no saib seb, Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij yeej ua hauj lwm pab rau cov neeg tsis tsawg dua li Maulaunais; vim lawv tau qhuab qhia Vajtsvuv txoj lus, thiab lawv tau ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau txhua tus neeg uas mloog lawv tej lus.
- 20 Thiab li no lawv tau tawm mus, thiab cov neeg tau txo lawv tej hwj chim vim yog lawv tej lus, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau koob hmoov ntau los ntawm tus Tswv, thiab li no lawv tau dim ntawm tej kev tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau ncuab li plaub xyoos.
- 21 Tiam sis, ib yam li kuv twb hais lawm, nyob rau thaum kawg xyoo thib kaum cuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, txawm tias lawv muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv lawv los, lawv tseem tau raug yuam kom ua rog nrog lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas.
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum kawg, lawv tej rog tsis tsum li tau ntau xyoo nrog cov Neeg Lamas, txawm tias lawv tsis xav ua rog.

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inasmuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

23 Nim no, lawv tau tu siab uas yuav nqa cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, vim lawv tsis nyiam ua kom muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsis tas li no xwb—lawv tau tu siab uas tau ua qhov uas xa lawv cov kwv tij coob leej tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb no mus rau hauv lub ntiaj teb uas nyob mus ib txhis, uas tsis tau npaj mus ntsib lawv tus Vajtswv li.

24 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv ua tsis tau uas cia li tso lawv txoj sia tseg, kom lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam yuav raug tua lwj tua liam los ntawm cov neeg phem qus uas twb tau yog lawv cov kwv tij ib zaug, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau ntseev siab tawm ntawm lawv lub koom txoos, thiab tau ncaim lawv mus thiab tau mus ua kom lawv puas tsuaj los ntawm qhov uas koom cov Neeg Lamas.

25 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tiv tsis tias lawv cov kwv tij yuav zoo siab rau cov Neeg Nifais tej ntshav, ntev npaum li yuav muaj ib tug twg yuav coj Vajtswv tej lus txib, vim los lus cog tseg ntawm tus Tswv yog li no, yog tias lawv yuav coj nws tej lus txib lawv yuav huaj vam nyob hauv thaj av.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Amas 49

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv hli thib kaum ib ntawm xyoo thib kaum cuaj, nyob rau hnub xiab kaum ntawm lub hli, cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau raug pom mus ncaj rau thaj av Amonaihas.
- 2 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog tau raug kho dua, thiab Maulaunais tau tso ib pab tub rog nyob ntawm tej ntug nroog, thiab lawv tau ua phab ntsa av rau ib ncig thaiv lawv ntawm tej xub thiab tej pob zeb ntawm cov Neeg Lamas; vim saib seb, lawv tau sib tua nrog pob zeb thiab nrog xub.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv tau hais tias lub nroog Amonaihas tau raug kho dua. Kuv hais rau nej tias, muaj tseeb tiag, ib feem tau raug kho dua; thiab vim cov Neeg Lamas tau ua nws puas tsuaj ib zaug lawm vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg, lawv thiaj tau xav tias nws yuav rov qab ua yooj yim rau lawv dua.
- 4 Tiam sis saib seb, txoj kev ua tsis raws li siab xav ua rau lawv ceeb loj heev; vim saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais tau khawb puab ib phab ntsa av ncig lawv, uas siab heev ces cov Neeg Lamas tsis muaj peev xwm txawb lawv tej pob zeb thiab lawv tej xub kom tej ntawd raug lawv, thiab lawv kuj tuaj tawm tsam tsis tau lawv tsuas yog tuaj ntawm lawv qhov chaw nkag los xwb.
- 5 Nim no nyob rau lub sij hawm no cov Neeg Lamas tej tuam thawj nom tau yoo tag lis, vim yog cov Neeg Nifais txoj kev txawj ntse npaj lawv tej chaw kom ruaj khov.
- 6 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas tej thawj coj tau xav tias, vim lawv muaj neeg coob heev, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau xav tias lawv yuav muaj cuab kav tawm tsam lawv ib yam li lawv twb tau ua tas los lawm no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tau npaj tej phiaj hlau nrog lawv, thiab tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab; thiab lawv kuj tau npaj tej ris tsho tawv sia rau lawv tus kheej thiab, muaj tseeb tiag, tej ris tsho tuab heev los npog lawv tej cev liab qab.
- 7 Thiab lawv tau xav hais tias tau npaj li no lawm ces lawv yuav kov yeej yooj yim heev thiab yuav yuam tau lawv cov kwv tij mus rau lub nra ua qhev, los sis muab lawv tua thiab ua lwj ua liam raws li lawv siab nyiam.

Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

8 Tiam sis saib seb, rau lawv txoj kev poob siab ntshai tshaj plaws, lawv tau npaj tos cov Neeg Lamas, ntawm ib yam uas tsis tau paub dua ib zaug li nyob rau hauv Lihais cov me nyuam. Nim no lawv tau npaj ua rog rau cov Neeg Lamas, raws li Maulaunais tej lus qhia.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas, los sis cov neeg Amalikhaiyas, tau poob siab ntshai heev kawg nkaus rau lawv txoj kev npaj ua rog.

10 Nim no, yog vaj ntxwv Amalikhaiyas tau nqis tawm ntawm thaj av Nifais tuaj, nyob pem hau ntej ntawm nws cov tub rog, tej zaum nws twb ua kom cov Neeg Lamas tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais rau hauv lub nroog Amonaihas lawm; vim saib seb, nws twb tsis khuv xim nws cov neeg tej ntshav li.

11 Tiam sis saib seb, Amalikhaiyas tus kheej tsis tau nqis tuaj ua rog. Thiab saib seb, nws tej thawj nom peb tsis kam tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob hauv lub nroog Amonaihas, vim Maulaunais tau hloov cov Neeg Nifais tej kev coj ua hauj lwm, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas ua tsis tau li siab xav nyob rau hauv lawv tej chaw muaj zog thiab lawv tsis muaj peev xwm tuaj tawm tsam lawv.

12 Yog li ntawd lawv tau thim rov mus rau hauv hav zoov, thiab tau sau lawv tej yeej thiab tau mus ncaj rau thaj av Nau-as, xav tias qhov ntawd yuav yog qhov chaw toj uas zoo tshaj rau lawv tuaj tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.

13 Vim lawv twb tsis tau paub tias Maulaunais tau kho npaj rau lawm, los sis tau ua yeej zoo zov lawm, rau txhua lub nroog uas nyob tag nrho tej thaj av uas nyob ib puag ncig; yog li ntawd, lawv tau mus ncaj nraim rau tom thaj av Nau-as nrog ib txoj kev cia siab ruaj loo; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej thawj nom peb tau txav tawm los thiab tau lav ib lo lus tias lawv yuav ua kom cov neeg uas nyob hauv lub nroog ntawd puas tsuaj mus.

14 Tiam sis saib seb, rau lawv txoj kev yoob, lub nroog Nau-as, uas tau yog ib qho chaw uas tsis muaj zog, los ntawm Maulaunais tej hauj lwm, nim no tau rais los mus muaj zog, muaj tseeb tiag, tseem muaj zog tshaj lub nroog Amonaihas.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

- 15 Thiab nim no, saib seb, qhov no yog Maulaunais txoj kev txawj ntse; vim nws tau xav tias lawv yuav tau ceeb nyob rau tom lub nroog Amonaihas; thiab ib yam li lub nroog Nau-as yeej yog qhov feem uas tsis muaj zog dua ntais ntawm thaj av, yog li ntawd lawv yuav mus lawm tod mus ua rog; thiab qhov no tau yog raws li nws siab xav.
- 16 Thiab saib seb, Maulaunais tau tsa Lihais ua tus thawj nom peb kav cov neeg ntawm lub nroog; thiab nws yog tib tug Lihais uas tau tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nyob hauv lub hav uas nyob rau sab hnub tuaj ntawm tus dej Xidoos.
- 17 Thiab nim no saib seb tau muaj, tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau nrhiav pom tias Lihais tau saib xyuas lub nroog lawv tau raug nyuaj siab dua, vim lawv tau ntshai Lihais kawg nkaus li; txawm li ntawd los lawv tej thawj nom peb twb tau lav ib lo lus yuav mus tawm tsam lub nroog lawm; yog li ntawd, lawv tau coj lawv tej tub rog nce mus.
- 18 Nim no saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tsis muaj cuab kav mus tau rau hauv lawv tej ntsa loog tiv thaiv los ntawm ib qhov twg li tsuas yog los ntawm qhov rooj nkag mus xwb, vim qhov uas siab heev ntawm lub ntsa loog uas tau puab siab, thiab qhov tob ntawm tus kwj uas tau khawb ib ncig, tsuas yog los ntawm qhov rooj nkag mus xwb.
- 19 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau npaj li no rhuav kom puas tsuaj tag nrho cov uas sim nce phab ntsa nkag lwm txoj kev tuaj, txawb pob zeb thiab xub dhau saud tuaj rau lawv.
- 20 Lawv tau npaj li no, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv ib co neeg uas muaj zog tshaj plaws, nrog lawv tej ntaj thiab hneev roj hmab, tau tua tag nrho cov uas sim tuaj rau hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv dhau ntawm qhov chaw nkag mus; thiab lawv tau npaj li no tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tej nom peb tau coj lawv tej tub rog nce mus rau ntawm qhov chaw nkag mus, thiab tau pib tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Nifais, kom tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv qhov chaw tiv thaiv; tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau raug nias thawb rov qab ib lub sij hawm dhau ib lub sij hawm, kawg tias lawv tau raug tua tuag coob kawg nkaus.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

- 22 Nim no thaum lawv nrhiav pom tias lawv tsis muaj cuab kav kov yeej cov Neeg Nifais ntawm qhov chaw hla mus, lawv tau pib khawb lawv tej pawg av kom lawv yuav muaj tau ib qho chaw mus rau lawv tej yeeb ncuab, kom lawv yuav muaj kev sib tawm tsam sib txig; tiam sis saib seb, nyob hauv cov kev sim no lawv tau raug puas tsuaj yooj yim heev los ntawm tej pob zeb thiab tej xub uas txawb mus rau lawv; thiab tsis tias ua kom tej av los npog lawv tej kwj hoob, lawv ho tau raug ntim cov Neeg Lamas tej neeg tuag thiab tej cev raug mob puv nkaus.
- 23 Li no cov Neeg Nifais tau muaj tag nrho hwj chim rau saum lawv tej yeeb ncuab; thiab li no cov Neeg Lamas tau sim ua kom cov Neeg Nifais puas tsuaj mus txog thaum lawv tej thawj nom peb tau raug tua tag huv tib si; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab muaj ntau dua li ib txhiab leej ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau raug tua; hos, nyob rau lwm tog ho tsis muaj cov Neeg Nifais ib tug uas raug tua tuag li.
- 24 Tau muaj li tsib caug leej uas tau raug mob, cov uas tau raug cov Neeg Lamas tej xub uas hla dhau ntawm qhov chaw nkag tuaj, tiam sis lawv tau raug thaiv los ntawm lawv tej phiaj hlau, thiab lawv tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab, thiab lawv tej phiaj thaiv taub hau, kawg tias lawv tej mob tsuas raug rau lawv tej ceg, coob tug uas tau raug mob hnyav.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias lawv tej thawj nom peb tau raug tua tuag huv tib si lawm lawv tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Nifais, mus qhia txog lawv txoj kev poob tsam hnyav rau lawv tus vaj ntxwv Amalikhaiyas, tus uas tau yog ib tug Neeg Nifais yug.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau npau taws heev rau nws cov neeg, vim nws tsis tau li nws siab xav rau cov Neeg Nifais; nws tsis tau yuam lawv mus rau lub nra quab ua qhev.
- 27 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau npau taws heev, thiab nws tau foom cem Vajtswv, thiab Maulaunais, lav ib lo lus tias nws yuav haus Maulaunais cov ntshav; thiab qhov no los vim Maulaunais tau coj Vajtswv tej lus txib los ntawm txoj kev npaj txoj kev tiv thaiv xwm txheej rau nws cov neeg.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias, nyob rau lwm sab, Nifais cov neeg ho ua tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tsaug, vim yog nws lub hwj chim uas piv tsis tau uas tau tso lawv dim ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

29 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

30 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau muaj kev nyab xeeb tsis tu ncuab nyob rau hauv lawv, thiab muaj kev huaj vam loj heev nyob rau hauv lub koom txoos vim yog lawv txoj kev rau siab thiab mob siab uas lawv tau muab rau Vajtsv txoj lus, uas tau raug tshaj tawm rau lawv los ntawm Hilamas, thiab Sinploos, thiab Khauli-atoos, thiab Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab los ntawm tag nrho cov uas tau raug tsa los ntawm tus txheej txheem ntawm Vajtsv, uas tau ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab tau xa tawm mus qhuab qhia nyob hauv cov neeg.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblun, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

Amas 50

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Maulaunais tsis tau tsum kev npaj rau kev ua rog, los sis tiv thaiv nws cov neeg rau ntawm cov Neeg Lamas; vim nws tau ua kom nws tej tub rog pib nyob rau thaum pib xyoo nees nkaum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, kom lawv yuav tsum pib khawb tej pawg av ncig tag nrho rau txhua lub nroog, thoob plaws txhua thaj av uas cov Neeg Nifais nyob.
- 2 Thiab nyob rau saum tej phab ntsa av no nws tau ua kom yuav tsum muaj cav ntoo, muaj tseeb tiag, muab cav ntoo los ua kom siab txij li neeg, ncig tej nroog.
- 3 Thiab nws tau ua kom nyob rau saum cov ntsa cav no yuav tsum txua ib co pas hmuv txheem rau saum cov ntoo ib puag ncig; thiab lawv khov thiab siab heev.
- 4 Thiab nws tau ua kom tsa muaj pej thum uas saib tau rau saum cov ntsa ntoo ntse ntse ntawd, thiab nws tau ua kom rhawv chaw tiv thaiv rau saum tej pej thum ntawd, xwv kom tej pob zeb thiab tej xub ntawm cov Neeg Lamas yuav tuaj tsis raug lawv.
- 5 Thiab lawv tau npaj kom lawv yuav txawb tau tej pob zeb tawm saum ncov saud mus, raws li lawv siab xav thiab lawv lub zog, thiab tua cov uas yuav sim tuaj kom ze tej ntsa loog ntawm lub nroog.
- 6 Li no Maulaunais tau npaj tej phab ntsa khov tiv thaiv lawv tej yeeb ncuab txoj kev tuaj, rau txhua txhua lub nroog hauv txhua thaj av ib puag ncig.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau kom nws tej tub rog yuav tsum tawm mus rau hauv hav zoov uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau tawm mus thiab tau raws tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas uas tau nyob hauv hav zoov uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj khiav mus rau hauv lawv tej av, uas nyob sab nram hav ntawm thaj av Xalabelas.
- 8 Thiab thaj av Nifais tau ncau tib kab ncaj nraim txij li hiav txwv sab hnuv tuaj mus rau sab hnuv poob.

Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau raws tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas uas nyob hauv hav zoov uas nyob sab hnuv tuaj, uas nyob rau sab pem toj ntawm tej thaj av uas yog lawv ntiag tug khiav tawm tag lawm, nws tau kom cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Xalabelas thiab tej av uas nyob ib puag ncig yuav tsum tawm mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua uas nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj, kom mus nyob rau tej ciam teb ntawm ntug dej hiav txwv, thiab nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 10 Thiab nws kuj tau tso tej tub rog rau sab nram hav, nyob rau tej ciam teb uas lawv nyob, thiab tau kom lawv tsa tej ntsa tiv thaiv xwv kom lawv yuav tsom kwm tau lawv tej tub rog thiab lawv tej neeg tawm ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes.
- 11 Thiab li no nws tau txiav tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas tej nroog muaj zog uas nyob hauv hav zoov sab hnuv tuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj txiav nyob rau sab hnuv poob thiab, tau kho tej ciam teb uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas nyob nruab nrab ntawm thaj av Xalabelas thiab thaj av Nifais kom khov tuaj, txij li hiav txwv sab hnuv poob, mus rau tus hauv dej Xidoos—cov Neeg Nifais nyob tag nrho thaj av sab pem toj, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho thaj av uas nyob sab pem toj ntawm thaj av Huaj Vam, raws li lawv siab nyiam.
- 12 Li no Maulaunais, nrog nws cov tub rog, uas tau coob ntxiv txhua hnuv vim yog txoj kev muaj kev tsom kwm zoo uas nws tej hauv lwm tau coj los rau lawv, tau nrhiav txiav lub zog thiab hwj chim ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tawm ntawm tej av uas yog lawv tej chaw nyob, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis muaj hwj chim rau saum tej av uas yog lawv li.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau pib ua ib lub nroog, thiab lawv tau hu lub nroog npe ua Maulaunais; thiab nws nyob ntawm hiav txwv sab hnuv tuaj; thiab nws nyob sab nram hav ze tus ciam teb uas yog cov Neeg Lamas li.
- 14 Thiab lawv kuj tau pib ua ib lub nroog nyob nruab nrab ntawm lub nroog Maulaunais thiab lub nroog Aloos, koom tus ciam teb ntawm Aloos thiab Maulaunais; thiab lawv tau hu lub nroog lub npe, los sis thaj av ua, Nifaihas.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

- 15 Thiab tib xyoos ntawd lawv kuj tau pib ua ntau lub nroog nyob rau sab pem toj, ib lub uas muaj qauv txawv uas lawv tau hu ua Lihais, uas nyob sab pem toj uas nyob ib sab ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm ntug hiav txwv.
- 16 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo nees nkaum.
- 17 Thiab Nifais cov neeg tau muaj tej kev vam meej no nyob rau thaum pib xyoo nees nkaum thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.
- 18 Thiab lawv tau vam meej heev, thiab lawv tau rais los mus nplua nuj heev; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau coob ntxiv thiab loj hlob nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 19 Thiab li no peb pom tias txoj kev hlub tshua thiab ncaj ntawm tus Tswv tej kev ua dej num zoo npaum li cas, mus ua kom muaj tiav li tag nrho nws tej lus rau noob neej; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yeej tau pom tias nws tej lus tau muaj tseeb tiag, tib yam li lub sij hawm no, uas nws tau hais rau Lihais, hais tias:
- 20 Koj thiab koj tej me nyuam yuav tau koob hmoov; thiab lawv yuav raug foom koob hmoov, npaum li uas lawv yuav coj kuv tej lus txib lawv yeej yuav vam meej nyob rau hauv thaj av. Tiam sis nco ntsoov, npaum li uas lawv yuav tsis coj kuv tej lus txib ces lawv yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus.
- 21 Thiab peb pom tias tej lus cog tseg no tau muaj tseeb rau Nifais cov neeg; vim nws tau yog lawv tej kev sib cav thiab lawv tej kev tsis sib haum xeeb, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej kev tua neeg, thiab lawv tej kev lim hiam, lawv tej kev pe dab pe mlom, lawv tej kev ua niam ntiav, thiab lawv tej kev qias, uas muaj nyob hauv lawv, es thiaj tau coj tej tsov rog thiab tej kev puas tsuaj los rau lawv.
- 22 Thiab cov uas muaj kev ntseeg coj tus Tswv tej lus txib yeej tau raug pab dim txhua txhia zaus, tiam sis txhiab txhiab tus ntawm lawv cov kwv tij phem tau raug cia rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev, los sis piam sij los ntawm ntaj, los sis tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus, thiab ho mus sib yuav txuam nrog cov Neeg Lamas.
- 23 Tiam sis saib seb yeej ib txwm tsis tau muaj ib lub sij hawm zoo siab tshaj nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg, txij li Nifais lub caij los, dua li nyob hauv Maulaunais lub caij, muaj tseeb tiag, twb nyob rau lub sij hawm no, nyob hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo nees nkaum thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav kuj tau xaus nyob hauv txoj kev thaj yeeb; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab xyoo nees nkaum thiab peb los ib yam.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo nees nkaum thiab plaub ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, nws yeej tseem yuav muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv Nifais cov neeg thiab yog tias tsis txhob muaj ib qho kev tsis sib haum xeeb uas tau muaj nyob hauv lawv txog thaj av Lihais, thiab thaj av Mauli-atoos, uas koom rau tej ciam teb ntawm Lihais; ob thaj uas puav leej nyob rau tej ciam teb ze ntug hiav txwv.

26 Vim saib seb, cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Mauli-atoos tau txeeb ib feem ntawm thaj av Lihais; yog li ntawd tau pib muaj ib qho kev tsis sib haum xeeb sov nyob hauv lawv, kawg tias cov neeg Mauli-atoos tau nqa cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij, thiab lawv tau txiav txim siab xuas ntaj tua lawv.

27 Tiam sis saib seb, cov neeg uas nyob hauv Lihais thaj av tau khiav mus rau tom Maulaunais lub yeej, thiab tau thov kom nws pab; vim saib seb lawv tsis yog nyob ntawm qhov txhaum.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov neeg Mauli-atoos, uas tau raug coj los ntawm ib tug txiv neej uas npe hu ua Mauli-atoos, tau nrhiav pom tias Lihais cov neeg tau khiav mus rau tom Maulaunais lub yeej lawm, lawv tau ntshai heev nyob tsam Maulaunais cov tub rog ho tuaj tawm tsam lawv thiab ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.

29 Yog li ntawd, Mauli-atoos tau muab nws rau hauv lawv tej siab tias lawv yuav tsum khiav mus rau thaj av uas nyob sab pem toj, uas tau muaj tej dej loj npog, thiab mus nyob rau thaj av uas nyob sab pem toj.

30 Thiab saib seb, lawv yeej yuav ua kom tau li txoj kev npaj ntawd, (uas yuav yog ib qho ua kom muaj kev quaj ntsuag) tiam sis saib seb, Mauli-atoos yog ib tug neeg npau taws sai, yog li ntawd nws tau npau taws nrog nws ib tug ntxhais qhev, thiab tau poob rau saum nws thiab ntaus nws heev.

31 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau khiav, thiab tau tuaj rau tom Maulaunais lub yeej, thiab tau qhia rau Maulaunais txhua yam txog yam xwm no, thiab kuj qhia txog qhov uas lawv yuav khiav mus rau hauv thaj av sab pem toj.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

- 32 Nim no saib seb, cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av Huaj Vam, los sis yog Maulaunais, tau ntshai tias tsam lawv yuav mloog Mauli-atoos tej lus thiab sau ua ke nrog nws cov neeg, thiab li no ces nws yuav txeeb tau chaw nyob rau hauv tej feem av ntawd, uas yuav ua kom pib muaj tej qho nyuaj nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, tej uas yuav coj mus rau txoj kev muab lawv txoj kev ywj siab pov tseg.
- 33 Yog li ntawd Maulaunais tau xa ib co tub rog, nrog lawv tej khoom siv, mus txiav cov neeg Mauli-atoos kev, mus cheem lawv txoj kev mus rau thaj av sab pem toj.
- 34 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv txiav tsis tau lawv kev mus txog thaum lawv tau los rau ntawm thaj av Quav Poj ciam teb; thiab lawv tau ntsib lawv qhov ntawd, nyob ntawm ib txoj kev nqaim uas tus hiav txwv coj mus rau thaj av sab pem toj, muaj tseeb tiag, ze ntawm hiav txwv, nyob sab hnuv poob thiab nyob sab hnuv tuaj.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias cov tub rog uas Maulaunais xa mus, uas tau raug ib tug txiv neej uas npe hu ua Thiakhas coj, tau ntsib Mauli-atoos cov neeg; thiab Mauli-atoos cov neeg tau tsis thim xav heev, (vim tau raug yaum los ntawm nws txoj kev phem thiab nws tej lus ua txuj ntxias) ces ib ntsug rog tau pib nyob nruab nrab ntawm lawv, nyob hauv qhov uas Thiakhas tau muab Mauli-atoos tua thiab kov yeej nws cov tub rog, thiab tau coj lawv mus ua tej neeg raug txim, thiab tau rov qab los rau tom Maulaunais lub yeej. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo nees nkaum thiab plaub ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.
- 36 Thiab cov neeg Mauli-atoos tau raug coj rov qab los li no. Thiab los ntawm lawv txoj kev khi lus coj txoj kev thaj yeeb lawv tau raug rov qab txum tim rau hauv thaj av Mauli-atoos, thiab tau muaj ib qho kev sib koom ua ke nyob nruab nrab ntawm lawv thiab cov neeg Lihais; thiab lawv kuj tau raug rov qab los txum tim rau lawv tej av.
- 37 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau tib xyoos uas Nifais cov neeg tau muaj txoj kev thaj yeeb rov qab txum tim rau lawv, Nifaihas, tus thawj tub txiav txim thib ob, tau tuag, tau nyob hauv lub rooj txiav txim nrog txoj kev ncaj ncees kawg nkaus rau Vajtswv.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

38 Txawm li ntawd los, nws tau tsis kam cia rau Amas ceev cov ceeb xwm txheej thiab tej yam uas Amas thiab nws tej yawg koob tau muab saib ua qhov dawb ceev dua ntais; yog li ntawd Amas tau muab lawv rau nws tus tub, Hilamas.

39 Saib seb, tau muaj tias Nifaihas tus tub tau raug tsa los nyob lub rooj txiav txim, los hloov nws txiv chaw; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau raug tsa ua tus thawj tub txiav txim thiab tus tswv xeev rau cov neeg, nrog ib lo lus lav thiab txoj kab ke dawb ceev los txiav txim ncaj ncees, thiab los ceev txoj kev thaj yeeb thiab txoj kev ywj pheej ntawm cov neeg, thiab kom pub rau lawv lawv tej kev muaj cai dawb ceev los teev tiam tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag, kom pab cuam thiab ceev txoj kev ntawm Vajtswv kom tag nws lub neej, thiab kom koj cov neeg phem los rau txoj kev txim lij raws li lawv tej kev txhaum.

40 Nim no saib seb, nws lub npe yog Peholas. Thiab Peholas tau nws txiv lub rooj, thiab tau pib nws txoj kev kav nyob rau thaum kawg xyoo nees nkaum thiab plaub, rau Nifais cov neeg.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

Amas 51

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo nees nkaum thiab tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, lawv tau txhim tsa txoj kev thaj yeeb nyob nruab nrab ntawm Lihais cov neeg thiab Mauli-atoos cov neeg txog lawv tej av, thiab tau pib muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab tsib.
- 2 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv twb tsis tswj tuav tag nrho txoj kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av kom ntev, vim tau pib muaj ib qho kev sib cav nyob hauv cov neeg txog tus thawj tub txiav txim Peholas; vim saib seb, tau muaj ib feem ntawm cov neeg tau xav kom muab tej yam ntawm txoj kev cai pauv.
- 3 Tiam sis saib seb, Peholas tsis kam hloov los sis tsis kam pauv txoj kev cai; yog li ntawd, nws tsis mloog rau cov uas tau xa lawv tej suab nrog lawv tej ntawd thov txog txoj kev hloov txoj kev cai.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, cov uas tau xav kom hloov txoj kev cai tau npau taws rau nws, thiab tau tsis xav kom nws ua tus thawj txiav txim kav thaj av ntxiv lawm; yog li ntawd tau sawv ib qho kev sib cav sov txog qhov ntawd, tiam sis tsis tau sib tua.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias cov uas tau xav kom tshem Peholas tawm ntawm lub rooj txiav txim tau raug hu ua neeg-vaj ntxwv, vim lawv tau xav kom hloov txoj kev cai es yuav ntxeev txoj kev kav ywj siab thiab tsim ib tug vaj ntxwv kav thaj av.
- 6 Thiab cov uas tau xav kom Peholas yuav tsum nyob ua tus thawj tub txiav txim kav thaj av tau hu lawv ua cov neeg ywj pheej; thiab li no thiaj tau muaj kab kem nyob hauv lawv, vim cov neeg ywj pheej tau twv los sis tau khi lus yuav tswj tuav lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab tej cib fim ntawm lawv txoj kev teev ntuj los ntawm ib txoj kev kav ywj siab.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias qhov teeb meem ntawm lawv txoj kev sib cav no tau raug tu tiav los ntawm cov neeg lub suab. Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg lub suab tau nyiam cov neeg ywj pheej txoj, thiab Peholas rov tau nyob lub rooj txiav txim, uas tau ua kom muaj kev zoo siab nyob hauv Peholas cov kwv tij thiab kuj nyob hauv ntau tus ntawm cov neeg ywj siab, cov uas kuj tau ua kom cov neeg-vaj ntxwv ntsiag, kom lawv tsis kam nyom tiam sis tau raug kom tswj tuav txoj kev ywj pheej.

Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

- 8 Nim no cov uas nyiam kom muaj vaj ntxwv tau yog cov uas tau yug los muaj nyiaj txiag, thiab lawv nrhiav kev ua vaj ntxwv; thiab lawv tau raug pab cuam los ntawm cov uas nrhiav hwj chim thiab cai rau saum cov neeg.
- 9 Tiam sis saib seb, qhov no tau yog ib lub sij hawm tsis zoo rau tej kev sib ceg li ntawd nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg; vim saib seb, Amalikhaiyas tau txhib dua cov Neeg Lamas tej siab tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg, thiab nws tau sib sau tej tub rog thoob plaws hauv nws thaj av tuaj ua ke, thiab tis cuab yeej rau lawv, thiab tau npaj zoo zoo tag nrho ua rog; vim nws tau cog lus lawm tias yuav haus Maulaunais cov ntshav.
- 10 Tiam sis saib seb, peb yuav pom tias nws lo lus cog uas nws tau cog yog ib qho ruam; txawm li ntawd los, nws tau npaj nws tus kheej thiab nws tej tub rog tuaj ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 11 Nim no nws tej tub rog tsis muaj coob npaum li lawv tau muaj tas los lawm, vim yog ntau txhiab leej cov uas tau raug tua los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tes; tiam sis txawm tias lawv tau poob loj los, Amalikhaiyas tseem tau sib sau ib pab tub rog zoo heev, kawg tias nws tsis ntshai nqis tuaj rau thaj av Xalahelas.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, Amalikhaiyas tus kheej los kuj tau nqis tuaj thiab, nyob pem cov Neeg Lamas hau ntej. Thiab tau nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav; thiab tau yog tib lub sij hawm uas lawv tau pib tu tej teeb meem ntawm lawv tej kev sib cav txog tus thawj tub txiav txim, Peholas.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov neeg uas raug hu ua cov neeg-vaj ntxwv tau hnov tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tab tom nqis tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv, lawv tau zoo lawv tej siab; thiab lawv tsis kam tuav tej cuab yeej ua rog, vim lawv tau npau taws heev rau tus thawj tub txiav txim, thiab rau cov neeg ywj siab, ces lawv thiaj tsis kam tuav tej cuab yeej tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau pom li no, thiab kuj tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tab tom tuaj rau hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av, nws tau npau taws heev vim yog txoj kev siab tawv ntawm cov neeg uas nws tau rau siab heev ua hauj lwm pab tshwj tseg cia; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau npau taws heev; nws tus ntsuj plig tau muaj kev npau taws puv npo rau lawv.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau xa ib daig ntawv sau nrog cov neeg tej suab mus rau tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av, tau xav kom nws yuav tsum nyeem daim ntawv ntawd, thiab muab hwj chim rau nws (Maulaunais) yuam cov neeg ntseev siab kom tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws los sis muab lawv tua pov tseg.
- 16 Vim twb yog nws thawj qho kev pab xyuas uas ua kom xaus tej kev sib cav thiab tej kev tsis sib haum xeeb zoo li ntawd uas nyob hauv cov neeg; vim saib seb, qhov no tau yog ib qho teeb meem ntawm tag nrho lawv tej kev puas tsuaj yav tas los lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau raug pub kom muaj raws li cov neeg tej suab.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau txib kom nws cov tub rog mus tawm tsam cov neeg-vaj ntxwv ntawd, mus txo lawv tej kev khav theeb thiab lawv tej kev ua nom, thiab pheej lawv kom txij li av, los sis lawv yuav tsum tuav tej cuab yeej ua rog thiab txhawb txoj kev ywj siab.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias cov tub rog tau tawm mus tawm tsam lawv; thiab lawv tau txo lawv tej kev khav theeb thiab lawv txoj kev ua nom, kawg tias thaum uas lawv tau tsa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tua tawm tsam Maulaunais cov neeg lawv tau raug ntov vau thiaj pheej tiaj li av.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj plaub txhiab leej ntawm cov neeg ntseev siab uas tau raug ntov vau los ntawm ntaj; thiab lawv cov thawj uas tsis tau raug tua hauv tshav rog tau raug txhom thiab pov rau hauv qhov taub, vim tsis muaj sij hawm hais lawv tej plaub nyob rau lub sij hawm no.
- 20 Thiab cov neeg ntseev siab uas seem, uas tsis xav kom raug ntov vau rau hauv av los ntawm ntaj, ho yeem los mus rau hauv txoj kev kav kev ywj siab, thiab tau raug yuam los tsa tus chij ntawm txoj kev ywj siab rau saum lawv tej pej thum, thiab hauv lawv tej nroog, thiab los tuav tej cuab yeej tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

- 21 Thiab li no Maulaunais tau muab ib qho kev kawg rau cov neeg-vaj ntxwv ntawd, kom tsis txhob muaj ib tug twg muaj lub npe neeg-vaj ntxwv; thiab li no nws tau muab ib qho kev kawg rau cov neeg siab tawv thiab khav theeb uas hais tias yog roj ntshav ntawm cov neeg ua nom; tiam sis lawv tau raug qhau vau los txo lawv tej hwj chim zoo ib yam li lawv tej kwv tij, thiab kom sib sib zog ntaus rau lawv txoj kev ywj pheej kom dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.
- 22 Saib seb, tau muaj tias lub caij thaum Maulaunais tseem tab tom tshem tej tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav nyob hauv nws cov neeg, thiab yuam kom lawv muaj kev thaj yeeb thiab kev vam meej, thiab ua tej kev cai npaj ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av Maulaunais, uas nyob hauv tej ciam teb ze ntawm ntug hiav txwv.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tsis muaj zog txaus nyob hauv lub nroog Maulaunais; yog li ntawd Amalikhaiyas tau raws lawv, tau tua ntau leej. Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas txeeb tau lub nroog, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho lawv tej khoom tiv thaiv uas muaj zog.
- 24 Thiab cov uas tau khiav tawm ntawm lub nroog Maulaunais tau los rau lub nroog Nifaihas; thiab cov neeg ntawm lub nroog Lihais kuj tau sib sau tuaj ua ke, thiab tau ua hauj lwm npaj thiab tau npaj txhij txais cov Neeg Lamas sib ua rog.
- 25 Tiam sis tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tsis cia cov Neeg Lamas mus ua rog tawm tsam lub nroog Nifaihas, tiam sis tau ceev lawv nyob qis rau nram ntug hiav txwv, tau tso neeg nyob rau txhua lub nroog tswj tuav thiab tiv thaiv tej nroog ntawd.
- 26 Thiab li no nws tau mus ntxiv, txeeb tau ntau lub nroog, lub nroog Nifaihas, thiab lub nroog Lihais, thiab lub nroog Mauli-atoos, thiab lub nroog Oonaws, thiab lub nroog Nkis, thiab lub nroog Mules, tag nrho cov uas nyob rau tej ciam teb sab hnuv tuaj ze ntug hiav txwv.
- 27 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas txeeb tau li no, los ntawm Amalikhaiyas txoj kev txawj dag ntxias, ntau lub nroog heev, los ntawm lawv tej tub rog uas suav tsis txheeb, tag nrho cov uas muaj khoom tiv thaiv zoo raws li tej uas Maulaunais tau kom ua tiv thaiv; tag nrho tej uas muaj chaw tiv thaiv muaj zog rau cov Neeg Lamas.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau mus rau tom thaj av
Huaj Vam tej ciam teb, tau raws cov Neeg Nifais
khiav ntawm lawv mus thiab tau tua coob leej.

29 Tiam sis tau muaj tias lawv tau raug ntsib Thi-
akhas, tus uas tau tua Mauli-atoos thiab tau txiav
nws cov neeg kev thaum nws khiav.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias nws kuj tau txiav
Amalikhaiyas kev, thaum uas nws tseem tab tom
mus nrog nws cov tub rog coob coob xwv kom nws
yuav txeeb tau thaj av Huaj Vam, thiab thaj av sab
pem toj.

31 Tiam sis saib seb nws tau ntsib ib txoj kev ua tsis
tu li siab xav los ntawm txoj kev raws khiav rov qab
los ntawm Thi-akhas thiab nws cov neeg, vim lawv
yog ib cov neeg txawj sib tua heev; vim txhua tus
neeg ntawm Thi-akhas tau kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas
nyob hauv lawv lub zog thiab hauv lawv tej kev
txawj ua rog, kawg tias lawv tau qhov yeej rau saum
cov Neeg Lamas.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm tsam lawv tsis
tu ncu a li, kawg tias lawv tau tua lawv mus txog
thaum tsaus ntuj. Thiab tau muaj tias Thi-akhas
thiab nws cov neeg tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab
ntaub nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Huaj
Vam; thiab Amalikhaiyas tau rub nws tej tsev pheb
suab ntaub nyob hauv tej ciam teb nyob nram suab
puam ze ntug hiav txwv, thiab lawv tau raug raws
khiav zoo li no.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum tsaus ntuj los lawm,
Thi-akhas thiab nws tus tub qhe tau nyiag sawv thiab
tau tawm mus hmo ntuj, thiab tau mus rau hauv
Amalikhaiyas lub yeej; thiab saib seb, txoj kev tsaug
zog tau kov yeej lawv vim yog lawv txoj kev sab lim
heev, uas tau raug los ntawm txoj kev siv zog thiab
tshav kub hnuv ntawd.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias Thi-akhas tau nyiag nkag mus
rau hauv vaj ntxwv lub tsev pheb suab ntaub thiab
tau muab ib rab hmuv nkaug nws lub siab; thiab nws
tau ua rau vaj ntxwv tuag tam sim ntawd kom nws
tsa tsis tau nws tej tub qhe.

35 Thiab nws tau rov qab twj ywm los rau hauv nws
lub yeej, thiab saib seb, nws cov neeg tau tsaug zog
tag, thiab nws tau tsa lawv thiab tau qhia lawv tag
nrho ib puas yam tsav uas nws tau ua lawm.

36 Thiab nws tau kom nws cov tub rog yuav tsum
sawv npaj txhij zog tos, nyob tsam cov Neeg Lamas
yuav tsum thiab tuaj tawm tsam lawv.

And it came to pass that they marched to the bor-
ders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites be-
fore them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by
Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed
his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah
also, as he was marching forth with his numerous
army that he might take possession of the land
Bountiful, and also the land northward.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being
repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were
great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed
the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of
war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the
Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, in-
somuch that they did slay them even until it was
dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men
did pitch their tents in the borders of the land
Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the
borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this
manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come,
Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by
night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and
behold, sleep had overpowered them because of
their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors
and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into
the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart;
and he did cause the death of the king immediately
that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp,
and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke
them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in
readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and
should come upon them.

37 Thiab li no thiaj tau xaus xyoo nees nkaum tsib
ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov
neeg; thiab li no thiaj kawg Amalikhaiyas lub neej.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the
reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and
thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Amas 52

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, saib seb, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau tsim nyob rau thawj tag kis ntawm thawj lub hlis, saib seb, lawv tau nrhiav pom tias Amalikhaiyas tau tuag nyob hauv nws lub tsev pheb suab ntaub; thiab lawv kuj tau pom tias Thi-akhas twb npaj tau yuav ua rog rau lawv hnuv ntawd.
- 2 Thiab nim no, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom qhov no lawv tau poob siab heev; thiab lawv tau tso lawv tej tswv yim tseg uas tau npaj lawm tias yuav mus rau hauv thaj av sab pem toj lawm, thiab thim tag nrho lawv tej tub rog mus rau hauv lub nroog Mules, thiab tau mus nrhiav chaw tiv thaiv nyob hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias Amalikhaiyas tus kwv tau raug tsa ua vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg; thiab nws lub npe yog Amauloos; li no vaj ntxwv Amauloos, vaj ntxwv Amalikhaiyas tus kwv, tau raug tsa los kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txib kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum tswj tuav cov nroog ntawd, tej uas lawv txeeb tau los ntawm txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; vim lawv tsis tau txeeb ib lub nroog uas lawv tsis tau xiam ntshav li.
- 5 Thiab nim no, Thi-akhas tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tau txiav txim tswj tuav cov nroog uas lawv txeeb tau, thiab tej feem ntawm thaj av uas lawv tau kav lawm; thiab kuj tau pom tias lawv tau coob heev, Thi-akhas tau xav tias nws tsis tsim nyog nws yuav sim tawm tsam lawv nyob hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv.
- 6 Tiam sis nws tau ceev nws cov neeg nyob ib puag ncig, ib yam li npaj rawv yuav ua rog; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tseeb tiag nws yeej tau npaj tiv thaiv nws tus kheej tawm tsam lawv, los ntawm txoj kev ua phab ntsa ncig thiab tau npaj tej chaw tiv thaiv.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau npaj rawv ua rog mus txog thaum Maulaunais tau xa ib pab neeg coob tuaj txhawb nws cov tub rog zog.

Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

8 Thiab Maulaunais kuj tau xa lus txib mus rau nws kom nws yuav tsum ceev tag nrho tej neeg raug txim uas tau poob rau hauv nws tes; vim ib yam li cov Neeg Lamas tau txhom coob tus neeg raug txim, kom nws yuav tsum ceev tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas tej neeg raug txim cia pauv cov uas cov Neeg Lamas txhom tau lawm.

9 Thiab nws kuj tau xa tej lus txib rau nws kom nws yuav tsum ua ntsa tiv thaiv thaj av Huaj Vam, thiab xyuas zoo zoo txoj kev nqaim uas coj mus rau thaj av sab pem toj, nyob tsam cov Neeg Lamas yuav tuaj txeeb tau qhov ntawd thiab yuav muaj zog tawm tsam lawv tsis tseg rau txhua sab.

10 Thiab Maulaunais kuj tau xa xov rau nws, xav kom nws yuav tsum mob siab tswj tuav ces kaum av ntawd, thiab kom nws yuav nrhiav txhua lub sij hawm kov kom yeej cov Neeg Lamas nyob rau ces kaum av ntawd, kom ntau npaum li nws lub zog, xwv kom tej zaum nws yuav rov qab txeeb tau tej nroog uas tau raug poob tawm ntawm lawv tes lawm los ntawm txoj kev siv tswv yim los sis los ntawm lwm txoj kev; thiab kom nws kuj yuav tsum ua ntsa tiv thaiv thiab ua kom tej nroog nyob ib ncig uas tseem tsis tau poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes muaj zog.

11 Thiab nws kuj tau hais rau nws tias, kuv yuav tuaj cuag koj, tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau tawm tsam peb nyob rau ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av uas nyob ze hiav txwv sab hnuv poob; thiab saib seb, kuv tau mus tawm tsam lawv, yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tuaj tsis tau cuag koj.

12 Nim no, tus vaj ntxwv (Amauloos) tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahas lawm, thiab tau ua rau niam vaj ntxwv paub txog nws tus tij laug txoj kev tuag, thiab tau sau ib co neeg coob coob tuaj ua ke, thiab tau tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob nram tej ciam teb ze hiav txwv sab hnuv poob.

13 Thiab li no nws tau sib zog mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais tsis tseg, thiab tau rub ib feem ntawm lawv tej tub rog mus rau feem av ntawd, thiab nws tau txib cov uas nws tau tseg cia kom nyob tej nroog uas nws txeeb tau, kom lawv kuj yuav tsum tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob rau tej ciam teb uas ze hiav txwv sab hnuv tuaj, thiab yuav tsum txeeb kom tau lawv tej av ntau npaum li lawv yuav ua tau, raws li lawv tej tub rog tej zog.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

14 Thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais uas nyob rau hauv tej chaw muaj teeb meem tau xaas xyoo nees nkaum thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

15 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, ces Thi-akhas, los ntawm tej lus txib ntawm Maulaunais—tus uas tau txhim tsa tej tub rog los tsom kwm tej ciam teb sab nram hav thiab sab hnuv poob ntawm thaj av, thiab nws tau tawm ncaj qha mus rau tom thaj av Huaj Vam, xwv kom nws yuav pab tau Thi-akhas thiab nws cov neeg txeeb kom tau tej nroog uas lawv tau poob lawm.

16 Thiab tau muaj tias Thi-akhas tau txais lus txib kom tawm tsam lub nroog Mules thiab txeeb nws rov qab yog tias yuav ua tau.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias Thi-akhas tau npaj ua ib npluav rog rau saum lub nroog Mules, thiab tau nrog nws cov tub rog tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas; tiam sis nws tau pom tias yuav mus tsis tau tias nws yuav kov yeej lawv thaum lawv tseem nyob hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv; yog li ntawd nws tau tso nws tej kev npaj thiab tau rov qab los rau tom lub nroog Huaj Vam, los tos Maulaunais tuaj, xwv kom nws yuav tau txais zog pab nws tej tub rog.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau nrog nws cov tub rog tuaj txog rau thaj av Huaj Vam, nyob rau thaum yuav kawg xyoo nees nkaum thiab xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

19 Thiab nyob rau thaum pib xyoo nees nkaum thiab yim, Maulaunais thiab Thi-akhas thiab ntau tus thawj nom peb tau rub ib lub rooj sab laj ua rog—saib lawv yuav ua yam dab tsi thiaj ua tau rau cov Neeg Lamas tawm tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv; los sis kom lawv yuav ua tau tej yam dab tsi ntxias tau lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej chaw nkaum, xwv kom lawv yuav tau qhov zog rau saum lawv thiab thiaj txeeb tau lub nroog Mules rov qab.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau xa neeg xa xov mus rau cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog, uas saib xyuas lub nroog Mules, mus rau lawv tus thawj coj, uas npe hu ua Yakhouj, tau xav kom nws tawm nrog nws cov tub rog tuaj ntsib lawv rau tom tiaj uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm ob lub nroog. Tiam sis saib seb, Yakhouj, tus uas yog neeg Xaulas, tsis kam tawm nrog nws cov tub rog tuaj ntsib lawv rau tom tiaj.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais, tsis muaj kev cia siab tias yuav tau ntsib lawv rau saum tej av xwm yeem, yog li ntawd, nws tau xav ib txoj kev uas nws yuav ntxias tau cov Neeg Lamas tawm ntawm lawv tej chaw nkaum.
- 22 Yog li ntawd nws tau kom Thi-akhas coj ib co neeg tsawg thiab nqis mus ze nram ntug hiav txwv; thiab Maulaunais thiab nws cov tub rog, tau mus rau hauv hav zoov thaum tsaus ntuj, uas nyob sab hnuv poob ntawm lub nroog Mules; thiab li no, nyob rau tag kis, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tej tub saib xyuas tau nrhiav pom Thi-akhas, lawv tau khiav thiab tau qhia qhov ntawd rau Yakhauj, lawv tus thawj coj.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau tawm mus tawm tsam Thi-akhas, tau xav tias los ntawm lawv tej neeg coob coob yeej yuav kov yeej Thi-akhas vim nws cov neeg tsawg heev. Thiab thaum Thi-akhas pom cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tab tom tawm tuaj tawm tsam nws nws tau pib thim nqis mus raws ntug hiav txwv, sab pem toj.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas pom tias nws tau pib khiav, lawv tau muaj siab hlo thiab tau raws lawv tas zog. Thiab thaum Thi-akhas tab tom coj cov Neeg Lamas mus lawm cov uas tau raws lawv tsis tau dab tsi, saib saib, Maulaunais tau txib kom ib feem ntawm nws cov tub rog uas nrog nws yuav tsum mus rau hauv lub nroog, thiab txeeb qhov chaw nyob.
- 25 Thiab lawv tau ua li no, thiab tau tua tag nrho cov uas tau tseg zov thaiv lub nroog, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov uas tsis kam tso tseg lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog.
- 26 Thiab li no Maulaunais thiaj txeeb tau lub nroog Mules nrog ib feem ntawm nws cov tub rog, ces nws ho nrog cov seem tshuav mus ntsib cov Neeg Lamas thaum lawv yuav rov qab los ntawm txoj kev mus raws Thi-akhas.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau raws Thi-akhas mus txog thaum lawv tau los txog ze lub nroog Huaj Vam, thiab tom qab ntawd lawv thiaj tau raug ntsib Lihais thiab ib pab tub rog tsawg, uas tau tso tseg zov thaiv lub nroog Huaj Vam.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

28 Thiab nim no saib seb, thaum tej thawj nom peb ntwam cov Neeg Lamas tau pom Lihais nrog nws cov tub rog tab tom tuaj tawm tsam lawv, lawv tau khiav feeb tsis meej heev li, ntshai nyob tsam lawv yuav mus tsis txog lub nroog Mules ua ntej Lihais yuav txhom tau lawv; vim lawv tau qaug zog rau qhov lawv tau tuaj deb, thiab Lihais cov neeg tseem khov kho.

29 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau paub tias Maulaunais twb nyob tom lawv qab nrog nws cov tub rog; thiab tag nrho tej uas lawv ntshai tsuas yog Lihais thiab nws cov neeg xwb.

30 Nim no Lihais tsis tau xav txhom kom tau lawv mus txog thaum lawv ntsib Maulaunais thiab nws cov tub rog.

31 Thiab tau muaj tias ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas yuav tau thim deb lawv tau raug vij los ntwam cov Neeg Nifais, ib sab los ntwam Maulaunais cov neeg, thiab lwm sab los ntwam Lihais cov neeg, tag nrho sawv daws puav leej tseem khov thiab muaj zog heev; tiam sis cov Neeg Lamas tau qaug zog vim yog lawv txoj kev mus deb.

32 Thiab Maulaunais tau txib nws cov neeg kom lawv tawm tsam tua lawv mus txog thaum lawv tso lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tseg.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias Yakhauj, tus uas yog lawv tus thawj, tus uas kuj yog ib tug neeg Xaulas, thiab muaj lub siab tsis kam swb leej twg li, nws tau coj cov Neeg Lamas tawm ua rog npau taws heev tawm tsam Maulaunais.

34 Maulaunais tau nyob hauv lawv txoj kev mus, yog li ntawd Yakhauj tau txiav txim siab tua lawv thiab txiav nws txoj kev kom dhau mus rau lub nroog Mules. Tiam sis saib seb, Maulaunais thiab nws cov neeg tau muaj zog dua; yog li ntawd lawv tsis txav kev rau cov Neeg Lamas li.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sib tua heev nyob rau ob tog; thiab tau muaj ntau tus tau raug tua nyob rau ob tog; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab Maulaunais tau raug mob thiab Yakhauj tau raug tua.

36 Thiab Lihais tau sib zog nias qees tom lawv qab tuaj nrog nws cov neeg uas muaj zog, ces cov Neeg Lamas uas nyob tom qab tau tso lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tseg; thiab lawv cov uas seem, tau feeb tsis meej, tsis paub saib yuav mus qhov twg los sis yuav tua qhov twg.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

- 37 Nim no Maulaunais tau pom lawv txoj kev feeb
tsis meej, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Yog nej yuav coj
nej tej cuab yeej ua rog thiab muab lawv los, saib seb
peb yuav tsum tsis txo nej tej ntshav lawm.
- 38 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau
hnov tej lus no, lawv tej thawj nom peb, tag nrho cov
uas tsis tau raug tua, tau txav los thiab tau pov lawv
tej cuab yeej ua rog rau ntawm Maulaunais ko taw,
thiab kuj tau txib kom lawv cov neeg yuav tsum ua
tib yam.
- 39 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj coob tug uas tsis kam;
thiab cov uas tsis kam tso lawv tej ntaj tau raug
txhom thiab khi, thiab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tau
raug muab ntawm lawv mus, thiab lawv raug yuam
nrog lawv cov kwv tij mus rau hauv thaj av Huaj
Vam.
- 40 Thiab nim no cov neeg raug txim uas tau raug
txhom tau coob dua li cov neeg uas raug tua tuag,
muaj tseeb tiag, coob dua li cov uas tau tua tuag hauv
ob tog.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto
them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and
deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding
your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had
heard these words, their chief captains, all those who
were not slain, came forth and threw down their
weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also com-
manded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and
those who would not deliver up their swords were
taken and bound, and their weapons of war were
taken from them, and they were compelled to march
with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken
exceeded more than the number of those who had
been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain
on both sides.

Amas 53

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tso neeg saib xyuas cov Neeg Lamas uas raug txim, thiab tau yuam lawv tawm mus thiab faus lawv cov neeg tuag, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cov neeg tuag ntawm cov Neeg Nifais uas tau raug tua; thiab Maulaunais tso neeg kav lawv saib xyuas lawv thaum lawv yuav ua lawv tej hauj lwm.
- 2 Thiab Maulaunais tau nrog Lihais mus rau hauv lub nroog Mules, thiab tau muab kev saib xyuas lub nroog thiab tau muab nws rau Lihais. Nim no saib seb, tus Lihais no yog ib tug neeg uas tau nrog Maulaunais feem ntau rau hauv tag nrho nws tej kev ua rog; thiab nws yog ib tug neeg zoo li Maulaunais, thiab nkawd ib leeg zoo siab rau ib leeg txoj kev nyab xeeb; muaj tseeb tiag, nkawd ib leeg hluv ib leeg, thiab kuj raug hluv los ntawm tag nrho Nifais cov neeg.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas cov Neeg Lamas tau faus lawv cov neeg tuag thiab cov Neeg Nifais cov neeg tuag tas lawm, lawv tau rov qab mus rau tom thaj av Huaj Vam; thiab Thi-akhas, los ntawm Maulaunais tej lus txib, tau kom lawv yuav tsum pib khawb ib tug kwj ncig thaj av, los sis lub nroog, Huaj Vam.
- 4 Thiab nws tau kom lawv yuav tsum ua ib sab phab ntsa ntoo rau hauv tus kwj sab hauv; thiab lawv khawb av tawm hauv tus kwj los npog rau sab phab ntsa ntoo ntawd; thiab li no lawv tau kom cov Neeg Lamas ua hauj lwm mus txog thaum lawv ua tau ib sab phab ntsa ntoo thiab av, uas siab heev ncig ib puag ncig lub nroog Huaj Vam.
- 5 Thiab lub nroog no tau rais los mus ua ib lub uas muaj chaw muaj zog heev txij li ntawd los mus; thiab nyob hauv lub nroog no lawv tau zov cov Neeg Lamas uas raug txim; muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau nrog ib sab phab ntsa uas lawv tau ua kom lawv xuas lawv tej tes ua kiag. Nim no Maulaunais raug yuam kom cov Neeg Lamas ua hauj lwm, vim nws yooj yim tsom kwm lawv thaum lawv ua hauj lwm; thiab nws xav tau tag nrho nws tej tub rog thaum nws yuav ntaus rog rau cov Neeg Lamas.

Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau yeej ib nplua li no rau ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog uas heev tshaj plaws, thiab tau txeeb lub nroog Mules, uas tau yog ib lub uas muaj zog tshaj plaws ntawm cov Neeg Lamas nyob hauv thaj av Nifais; thiab li no nws kuj tau ua ib qho chaw tiv thaiv zov tau nws cov neeg raug txim thiab.

7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tsis tau mus ua rog nrog cov Neeg Lamas nyob rau xyoo ntawd ntxiv lawm, tiam sis nws tau kom nws cov neeg ua hauj lwm npaj rau kev ua rog, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau ua tej chaw tiv thaiv ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj tau cawm lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam dim ntawm kev tshaib thiab kev txom nyem, thiab npaj zaub mov rau lawv tej tub rog.

8 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog, nyob sab hiav txwv hnuv poob, nyob sab nram hav, thaum Maulaunais mus tu cov Neeg Nifais tej kev tuav tswv yim, uas pheej ua muaj kev tsis sib haum nyob hauv lawv, tau txeeb tau cov Neeg Nifais ib txhia av, muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau txeeb tau lawv tej nroog ib txhia uas nyob feem av ntawd.

9 Thiab li no los vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj uas nyob hauv lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, vim yog tej kev tsis sib haum thiab txoj kev tuav tswv yim nyob hauv lawv lawv tau raug muab tso rau hauv qhov chaw uas yuav muaj xwm txheej heev.

10 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv muaj tej yam hais txog cov neeg Amoos, cov uas thaum thawj, tau yog Neeg Lamas; tiam sis los ntawm Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij, los sis los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab txoj lus, lawv tau raug hloov siab tshiab los mus rau tus Tswv; thiab lawv tau raug coj nqis los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab txij li ntawd los tau raug saib xyuas los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais.

11 Thiab vim yog lawv txoj kev lav lus lawv tau zam ntawm txoj kev nqa tej cuab yeej tawm tsam lawv tej kwv tij; vim lawv tau lees ib lo lus tias lawv yuav tsis tua neeg ib zaug ntxiv li lawm; thiab raws li lawv lo lus lees tseg lawv kuj yuav tau piam sij lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yeej yuav tau cia lawv tus kheej poob rau hauv lawv cov kwv tij tes, yog tsis tau muaj txoj kev hmov tshua thiab hlub heev uas Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau muaj rau lawv.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

- 12 Thiab vim qhov no lawv thiaj tau raug coj nqis los rau hauv thaj av Xalahas; thiab lawv thiaj raug cov Neeg Nifais tsom kwm txij li ntawd los lawm.
- 13 Tiam sis tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau pom qhov uas yuav muaj xwm txheej, thiab ntau yam kev kub ntxhov thiab tej kev txom nyem uas cov Neeg Nifais raug rau lawv, lawv tau muaj txoj kev hlub tshua puv npo thiab tau xav nqa cuab yeej tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws.
- 14 Tiam sis saib seb, thaum lawv tseem yuav luag nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau yaum kom lawv tsis txhob ua li ntawd, vim lawv tab tom yuav ua kom lo lus uas lawv tau lees tseg lawm tawg mus.
- 15 Thiab Hilamas tau ntshai tias tsam ua li ntawd ces lawv yuav poob ntawm Vajtsvwm mus; yog li ntawd tag nrho cov uas tau khi lo lus no lawm tau raug yuam kom saib lawv tej kwv tij tiv dhau lawv tej kev txom nyem, nyob rau hauv lawv tej chaw yuav muaj xwm txheej nyob rau lub sij hawm no.
- 16 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj tias lawv tau muaj tej tub coob, uas tsis tau khi ib lo lus tias lawv yuav tsis kam nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab; yog li ntawd lawv tau sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke nyob rau lub sij hawm no, txhua tus uas tsuav yog nqa tau tej cuab yeej, thiab lawv hu lawv tus kheej ua cov Neeg Nifais.
- 17 Thiab lawv tau nkag rau ib txoj kev khi lus los tiv thaiv rau txoj kev ywj siab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, muaj tseeb tiag, los tsom kwm thaj av kom mus txog thaum lawv muab kiag lawv txoj sia tso rau; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb tau khi lus tias lawv yuav tsis tso lawv txoj kev ywj siab tseg, tiam sis lawv yuav tawm tsam txhua txhia zaus kom tsom kwm tau cov Neeg Nifais thiab lawv tus kheej dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev.
- 18 Nim no saib seb, tau muaj ob txhiab leej tub hluas, cov uas tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus no thiab tau nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws.
- 19 Thiab nim no saib seb, ib yam li, lawv yeej ib txwm tsis tau yog tsis muaj nqis rau cov Neeg Nifais, lub sij hawm no lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co uas pab heev; vim lawv tau nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, thiab lawv tau xav kom Hilamas ua lawv tus thawj coj.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

- 20 Thiab lawv tag nrho puav leej yog tub hluas, thiab lawv tau rau siab heev rau txoj kev muaj peev xwm, thiab kuj rau tej dag zog thiab kev ua ub ua no; tiam sis saib seb, tsis tas li no xwb—lawv yog neeg ncaj thiab tseeb rau txhua lub sij hawm rau txhua yam uas tau kom lawv ua.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yog neeg ntawm txoj kev tseeb thiab txoj kev rau siab, vim lawv tau raug qhia kom koj Vajtswv tej lus txib thiab kom mus ncaj ncaj rau ntawm nws.
- 22 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Hilamas tau koj nws ob txhiab tus tub rog hluas mus, ua lawv ntej, mus rau kev pab cov neeg uas nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av uas nyob sab nram hav hiav txwv sab hnub poob.
- 23 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo nees nkaum thiab yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Amas 54

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim, ces Amauloos tau xa xov rau Maulaunais xav kom nws yuav sib pauv tej neeg raug txim.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau muaj kev zoo siab heev rau txoj kev thov no, vim nws tau xav cia tej khoom noj khoom siv uas tau muab pab cov Neeg Lamas raug txim lawm rau txoj kev txhawb nws cov neeg; thiab nws kuj tau xav kom nws cov neeg pab dag zog rau nws tej tub rog.
- 3 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas txhom tau ntau tus poj niam thiab me nyuam, thiab tsis muaj ib tug poj niam los sis ib tug me nyuam nyob hauv tag nrho Maulaunais cov neeg raug txim, los sis cov neeg raug txim uas Maulaunais txhom tau; yog li ntawd Maulaunais tau txiav txim siab siv tswv yim muab kom tau cov Neeg Nifais raug txim dim los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas coob npaum li yuav ua tau.
- 4 Yog li ntawd nws tau sau ib tsab ntawv, thiab muab rau Amauloos tus tub qhe xa, tib tug uas tau coj ib tsab ntawv tuaj rau Maulaunais. Nim no cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau sau rau Amauloos, hais tias:
- 5 Saib seb, Amauloos, kuv tau sau rau koj tej yam txog npluav rog no uas koj tau ua rau kuv cov neeg, los sis qhov uas koj tus tij laug tau ua tawm tsam lawv, thiab qhov uas koj tseem tau ua ntxiv mus tom qab uas nws tuag lawm.
- 6 Saib seb, kuv yuav qhia koj tej yam txog Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij, thiab rab ntaj ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws heev, uas dai kav nraim rau saum nej tsuas yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab thim koj tej tub rog mus rau nej tej av xwb, los sis mus rau thaj av uas nej nyob, uas yog thaj av Nifais.
- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav qhia koj tej yam no yog koj yuav muaj peev xwm mloog lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav qhia koj txog lub ntuj txiag teb tsuas uas phem heev ntawd uas tos ntsoov txais cov neeg tua neeg li koj thiab koj cov kwv tij uas tau ua tas los lawm, tsuas yog koj yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab thim koj tej tswv yim tua neeg, thiab rov qab nrog koj tej tub rog mus rau nej tej av.
- 8 Tiam sis ib yam li nej twb tau tsis kam lees yuav tej no ib zaug lawm, thiab tau tua tawm tsam tus Tswv cov neeg, tib yam li ntawd kuv yuav xav tias nej yuav rov qab ua dua.

Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 Thiab nim no saib seb, peb twb npaj txhij tos txais nej; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsuas yog koj thim koj tej tswv yim xwb, saib seb, nej yuav rub kom Vajtswv tus uas nej tau tsis kam lees txoj kev npau taws poob los rau nej, twb yuav ua kom nej puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 10 Tiam sis, ib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, peb tej tub rog yeej yuav tuaj tua nej tsuas yog nej thim xwb, thiab tsis ntev nej yuav raug txoj kev tuag los xyuas, vim peb yuav rov muab peb tej nroog thiab peb tej av; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb yuav tswj tuav peb txoj kev teev ntuj thiab txoj kev ntseeg peb tus Vajtswv.
- 11 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv xav tias kuv hais rau koj txog tej yam no yuav tsis tau dab tsi; los sis kuv xav tias koj yog ib tug me nyuam ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus; yog li ntawd kuv yuav kaw kuv tsab ntawv los ntawm txoj kev qhia koj tias kuv yuav tsis kam sib pauv tej neeg raug txim, tsuas yog tias koj yuav tso tus txiv thiab nws tus poj niam thiab nws tej me nyuam, pauv ib tug neeg raug txim xwb; yog koj yuav kam ua li no, kuv thiaj yuav kam pauv.
- 12 Thiab saib seb, yog koj tsis kam ua li no, kuv yuav tuaj tawm tsam nej nrog kuv tej tub rog; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yeej yuav muab tej cuab yeej rau kuv tej poj niam thiab kuv tej me nyuam thiab kuv yuav tuaj tawm tsam nej, thiab kuv yuav raws nej kom mus txog ntua nej thaj av, uas yog thaj av ntawm peb thawj cov qub txeeg qub teg; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yuav yog ntshav pauj ntshav, muaj tseeb tiag, siav pauj siav; thiab kuv yuav ua rog rau nej kom mus txog thaum nej puas tsuaj tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb no mus.
- 13 Saib seb, kuv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws, thiab kuv cov neeg los tib yam; nej tau nrhiav tua peb, thiab peb tsuas tau nrhiav tiv thaiv peb tus kheej xwb. Tiam sis saib seb, yog nej nrhiav ua kom peb puas tsuaj ntxiv peb yuav nrhiav ua kom nej puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb yuav nrhiav peb thaj av, thaj av uas yog peb thawj cov qub txeeg qub teg.
- 14 Nim no kuv kaw kuv tsab ntawv. Kuv yog Maulaunais; kuv yog ib tug thawj coj ntawm Nifais cov neeg.
- 15 Nim no tau muaj tias Amauloos, thaum nws tau txais tsab ntawv no, tau npau taws; thiab nws tau sau dua ib tsab ntawv tuaj rau Maulaunais, thiab cov no yog tej lus uas nws tau sau, hais tias:

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

16 Kuv yog Amauloos, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv; kuv yog tus kwv ntawm Amalikhaiyas tus uas nej tau muab tua lawm. Saib seb, kuv yuav ua pauj nws cov ntshav rau saum nej, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv yuav tuaj tawm tsam nej nrog kuv tej tub rog vim kuv tsis ntshai koj tej lus hem.

17 Vim saib seb, nej tej yawg koob tau ua txhaum lawv cov kwv tij, kawg tias lawv tau txhav lawv txoj cai los kav cov neeg thaum txoj cai ntawd twb yog lawv li.

18 Thiab nim no saib seb, yog nej yuav tso nej tej cuab yeej, thiab cia nej tus kheej raug kav los ntawm cov uas muaj cai ntawm txoj kev kav, ces kuv yuav kom kuv cov neeg tso lawv tej cuab yeej thiab tsum tsis ua rog ntxiv lawm.

19 Saib seb, koj tau hais tawm ntau yam lus hem nkaug kuv thiab kuv cov neeg; tiam sis saib seb, peb tsis ntshai koj tej lus hem li.

20 Txawm li ntawd los, kuv yuav kam sib pauv tej neeg raug txim raws li koj hais, zoo siab hlo, xwv kom kuv yuav tshwj tau kuv tej zaub mov rau kuv cov neeg ua rog; thiab peb yuav ua ib npluav rog uas yuav nyob mus ib txhis, seb cov Neeg Nifais yuav raug los nyob hauv peb txoj cai los sis lawv yuav tu noob nyob mus ib txhis.

21 Thiab hais txog tus Vajtswv ntawd uas koj hais tias peb tau tsis lees yuav, saib seb, peb tsis paub ib tug zoo li ntawd; nej los kuj tsis paub thiab; tiam sis yog hais tias muaj ib tug li ntawd, peb tsis paub tiam sis nws tau ua peb zoo tib yam li nej.

22 Thiab yog hais tias muaj ib tug dab thiab ib lub ntuj txiag teb tsaus, saib seb nws puas yuav tsis xa nej mus nyob qhov ntawd nrog kuv tus tij laug uas nej tau muab tua, tus uas koj tau hais tias tau mus rau qhov chaw zoo li ntawd lawm thiab? Tiam sis saib seb tej no tsis ua li cas.

23 Kuv yog Amauloos, thiab yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Xaulas, tus uas nej tej yawg koob tau yuam kom cog lus thiab tau coj tawm ntawm Yeluxalees tuaj.

24 Thiab saib seb nim no, kuv yog ib tug Neeg Lamas tsis ntshai dab tsi; saib seb, npluav rog no tau raug tawm tsam pauj lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab muab rov qab thiab tswj tuav lawv tej cai los rau txoj kev kav; thiab kuv kaw kuv tsab ntawv rau Maulaunais.

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

Amas 55

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau txais tsab ntawv no nws tau npau taws ntxiv, vim nws paub lawm tias Amauloos yeej paub zoo txog nws txoj kev dag; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau paub tias Amauloos tau paub tias qhov ntawd tsis tau yog ib qho ncaj uas tau ua kom nws ua ib npluav rog tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg.
- 2 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Saib seb, kuv yuav tsis kam pauv tej neeg raug txim nrog Amauloos tsuas yog nws yuav thim nws tej tswv yim, tib yam li uas kuv tau hais nyob hauv kuv tsab ntawv lawm; vim kuv yuav tsis pub rau nws kom nws yuav muaj hwj chim ntau dua li tej uas nws twb tau muaj lawm.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv paub qhov chaw uas cov Neeg Lamas zov kuv cov neeg uas lawv tau raug txhom ua neeg raug txim; thiab ib yam li Amauloos tsis kam muab rau kuv li kuv tsab ntawv, saib seb, kuv yuav ua rau nws raws li kuv tej lus; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav nrhiav txoj kev tuag rau lawv kom mus txog thaum lawv yuav thov txoj kev thaj yeeb.
- 4 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, nws tau kom tshawb nrhiav hauv nws cov neeg, saib puas muaj ib tug neeg uas yog Lamas ib tug xeeb ntxwv nyob hauv lawv.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv nrhiav tau ib tug, uas npe hu ua Lamas; thiab nws yog ib tug ntawm cov tub qhe ntawm vaj ntxwv tus uas raug Amalikhaiyas tua.
- 6 Nim no Maulaunais tau kom Lamas thiab nws cov neeg ob peb tug tawm mus rau tom cov neeg uas zov cov Neeg Nifais.
- 7 Nim no cov Neeg Nifais tau raug zov nyob hauv lub nroog Nkis; yog li ntawd Maulaunais tau tsa Lamas thiab tau kom ob peb tug neeg mus nrog nws.
- 8 Thiab thaum txog yav tsaus ntuj Lamas tau mus cuag tej neeg zov uas saib xyuas cov Neeg Nifais, thiab saib seb, lawv tau pom nws tuaj thiab lawv tau hu nws; tiam sis nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Tsis txhob ntshai; saib seb, kuv yog ib tug Neeg Lamas. Saib seb, peb tau khiav dim ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab lawv tau tsaug zog; thiab saib seb peb tau muab lawv tej cawv txiv hmab thiab tau nqa los nrog peb.

Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

- 9 Nim no thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau hnov tej lus no lawv tau xyiv fab heev tos txais nws; thiab lawv tau hais rau nws tias: Muab koj cov cawv txiv hmab rau peb, xwv peb yuav haus; peb zoo siab tias koj tau nqa cawv txiv hmab nrog koj li no vim peb tau qaug zog.
- 10 Tiam sis Lamas tau hais rau lawv tias: Cia peb ceev peb cov cawv txiv hmab kom txog thaum peb mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais. Tiam sis cov lus no tsuas ua kom lawv haj yam xav haus cov cawv txiv hmab;
- 11 Vim, lawv tau hais tias: Peb tsis muaj zog lawm, yog li ntawd cia peb haus ib txhia cawv txiv hmab, thiab tsis ntev peb yuav tau txais cov cawv txiv hmab rau thaum peb txais peb tej mov, qhov ntawd yuav ua kom peb muaj zog mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 12 Thiab Lamas tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej yeej meem ua raws li nej siab nyiam.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau haus ib txhia cawv zoo siab hlo; lawv saj cov cawv qab heev, yog li ntawd lawv tau haus ib co ntxiv thiab; thiab cov cawv ntawd muaj zog heev, tau muab npaj cia kom nws muaj zog.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau haus thiab tau zoo siab heev, thiab tsis ntev ntawd lawv tau qaug cawv tas.
- 15 Thiab nim no thaum Lamas thiab nws cov neeg tau pom tias lawv tau qaug cawv tas, thiab tau tsaug zog looj lom, lawv tau rov qab los cuag Maulaunais thiab tau qhia nws txhua yam uas tau muaj lawm.
- 16 Thiab nim no qhov no tau yog li Maulaunais tau npaj lawm. Thiab Maulaunais tau npaj nws cov neeg nrog tej cuab yeej ua rog; thiab nws tau mus rau hauv lub nroog Nkis, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tseem pw tsaug zog looj lom thiab qaug cawv, thiab tau pov tej cuab yeej ua rog mus rau cov neeg raug txim, kawg tias lawv tag nrho muaj cuab yeej lawm;
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, twb muab rau lawv tej poj niam, thiab tag nrho lawv tej me nyuam, txhua tus uas muaj peev xwm siv tau cuab yeej ua rog, thaum Maulaunais tau muab cuab yeej rau tag nrho cov neeg raug txim; thiab tag nrho txhua yam ntawd puav leej tau ua zoo zoo ntsiag to.
- 18 Tiam sis yog lawv tsa cov Neeg Lamas, saib seb lawv tau qaug cawv thiab cov Neeg Nifais yeej tua tau lawv lawm.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

- 19 Tiam sis saib seb, Maulaunais tsis tau xav ua li no; nws tsis nyiam tua neeg los sis ua kom nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, tiam sis nws nyiam cawm nws cov neeg dim ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj; thiab vim qhov no nws thiaj yuav tsis coj txoj kev tsis txim lij los rau nws, nws yuav tsis kam tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas thiab ua kom lawv puas tsuaj nyob hauv lawv txoj kev qaug cawv.
- 20 Tiam sis nws tau ua tau li nws siab xav lawm; vim nws tau muab cuab yeej rau cov Neeg Nifais uas raug txim uas nyob sab ntsa loog hauv lub nroog lawm, thiab tau muab lub zog rau lawv kom yuav muaj cuab kav txeeb tau tej feem uas nyob sab ntsa loog sab hauv.
- 21 Thiab tom qab ntawd nws tau kom cov neeg uas nrog nws thim rov mus ib nyuag ntu ntawm lawy, thiab vij ncig cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog.
- 22 Nim no saib seb tej yam no tau ua nyob thaum tsaus ntuj, xwv kom thaum cov Neeg Lamas tsim thaum sawv ntxov lawv tau pom tias lawv tau raug vij los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais uas nyob sab nraud, thiab lawv tej neeg raug txim tau muaj cuab yeej nyob sab hauv.
- 23 Thiab li no lawv tau pom tias cov Neeg Nifais tau muaj zog tshaj lawv lawm; thiab nyob rau qhov uas zoo li no lawv tau nrhiav pom tias tsis tsim nyog lawv yuav tua nrog cov Neeg Nifais lawm; yog li ntawd lawv tej thawj nom peb tau txib kom lawv txo lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, thiab lawv tau nqa los thiab tau muab lawv pov rau ntawm cov Neeg Nifais ko taw, thov kom txhob tua.
- 24 Nim no saib seb, qhov no yog qhov uas Maulaunais siab xav tau. Nws tau txhom lawv ua neeg raug txim ntawm kev ua rog, thiab tau txeeb tau lub nroog, thiab tau kom tso tag nrho cov neeg raug txim, uas yog Neeg Nifais; thiab lawv tau koom nrog Maulaunais cov tub rog, thiab ua tau ib lub zog loj rau nws cov tub rog.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau kom cov Neeg Lamas, uas tau raug txhom ua neeg raug txim, kom lawv yuav pib ua hauj lwm ua kom tej chaw tiv thaiv ncig lub nroog Nkis muaj zog tuaj.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau ua chaw tiv thaiv lub nroog Nkis, raws li nws siab xav tas lawm, nws tau kom nws cov neeg raug txim yuav tsum raug coj mus rau lub nroog Huaj Vam; thiab nws kuj saib zov lub nroog ntawd nrog ib pab tub rog uas muaj zog heev.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias, txawm tias cov Neeg Lamas muaj tej kev dag ntxias tau, los lawv tseem ceev tau thiab tsom kwm tau tag nrho cov neeg raug txim uas lawv txhom tau, thiab kuj tswj tuav tau tag nrho tej av thiab tej yam uas lawv rov qab txeeb tau.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau pib rov qab muaj yeej, thiab rov qab txais tau lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab lawv tej kev muaj cib fim.

29 Muaj ntau zaus cov Neeg Lamas tau sim tuaj vij lawv thaum tsaus ntuj, tiam sis nyob hauv tej kev sim no lawv tau poob ntau cov neeg raug txim.

30 Thiab ntau zaus lawv tau sim muab lawv tej cawv txiv hmab rau cov Neeg Nifais, xwv kom lawv yuav tau lom lawv los sis kom qaug cawv puas tsuaj mus.

31 Tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais tsis tau nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qeeb nyob rau hauv lawv lub sij hawm txom nyem no. Lawv tsis raug mag ntawm lawv tej ntxiab; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tsis kam haus lawv tej cawv txiv hmab, tsuas yog lawv xub muab rau ib cov Neeg Lamas raug txim tso.

32 Thiab lawv tau ceev faj kom tsis muaj tshuaj lom tau lawv; vim yog lawv cov cawv txiv hmab yuav lom ib tug Neeg Lamas ces nws yeej yuav lom ib tug Neeg Nifais thiab; thiab li no lawv tau muab tag nrho lawv tej kua cawv kua dej sim.

33 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nws tsim nyog rau Maulaunais yuav tsum ua tej kev npaj mus tawm tsam lub nroog Mauli-atoos; vim saib seb, los ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm, cov Neeg Lamas tau kho thaiv lub nroog Mauli-atoos mus txog thaum nws tau rais los mus ua ib lub uas muaj zog tiv thaiv heev.

34 Thiab lawv tau pheej coj tej tub rog tshiab tsis tu ncuu los rau hauv lub nroog ntawd, thiab tej khoom noj khoom siv tshiab.

35 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Amas 56

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib peb caug ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, nyob rau hnuv xiab ob ntawm thawj lub hlis, Maulaunais tau txais Hilamas ib tsab ntawv, qhia txog tej hauj lwm ntawm cov neeg uas nyob rau ces kaum av ntawd.
- 2 Thiab cov no yog tej lus uas nws tau sau, hais tias: Kuv tus tij laug, Maulaunais uas kuv hlub, nyob hauv tus Tswv thiab hauv peb tej kev txom nyem ntawm peb tej tsov rog; saib seb, kuv tus tij laug uas kuv hlub es, kuv muaj tej yam qhia koj txog peb tej kev ua rog nyob rau feem av ntawm no.
- 3 Saib seb, ob txhiab tus tub ntawm cov neeg uas Amoos tau coj tawm pem thaj av Nifais los—niam no koj tau paub tias cov no yog Lamas tej xeeb ntxwv, uas yog tus tub hlob ntawm peb yawg koob Lihais.
- 4 Nim no tsis tas kuv yuav rov qab qhia koj txog lawv tej kev li kev cai los sis lawv tej kev tsis ntseeg, vim koj twb paub txog ib puas yam tsav no lawm—
- 5 Yog li ntawd nws txaus kom kuv qhia koj tias ob txhiab tus tub hluas no tau nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, thiab tau xav kom kuv ua lawv tus thawj coj; thiab peb tau tawm tuaj tiv thaiv peb lub teb chaws.
- 6 Thiab nim no koj kuj tau paub txog txoj kev khi lus uas lawv tej txiv tau khi, tias lawv yuav tsis nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam lawv tej kwv tij kom muaj ntshav nrog.
- 7 Tiam sis nyob rau hauv xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab rau, thaum lawv tau pom peb tej kev kub ntxhov thiab peb tej kev txom nyem rau lawv, lawv twb tau yuav luag rhuav txoj kev khi lus uas lawv tau khi lawm thiab yuav luag nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tiv thaiv peb.
- 8 Tiam sis kuv tsis kam cia lawv kom lawv rhuav qhov kev khi lus no uas lawv tau khi lawm, xav tias Vajtswv yuav txhawb peb lub dag lub zog, kawg tias vim yog txoj kev coj lo lus lees tseg uas lawv tau lees lawm peb thiaj tsis raug sab ntxiv lawm.

Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Tiam sis saib seb, muaj ib yam dab tsi ntawm no uas peb yuav muaj kev xyiv fab heev. Vim saib seb, nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab rau, kuv, Hilamas, tau coj pem hau ntej ob txhiab tus tub hluas mus rau lub nroog Yudais, mus pab Eethipas, tus uas koj tau tsa ua ib tug thawj coj kav cov neeg nyob rau feem av ntawd.
- 10 Thiab kuv tau koom kuv ob txhiab tus tub, (vim lawv tau tsim nyog hu ua tej tub) rau tej tub rog ntawm Eethipas, ntawm lub zog uas Eethipas tau zoo siab kawg nkaus li rau; vim saib seb, nws tej tub rog tau tsawg tuaj los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas vim lawv tej tub rog tau tua peb tej neeg coob, qhov uas peb yuav tsum txom nyem siab.
- 11 Txawm li ntawd los, peb kuj muaj kev zoo siab nyob hauv qhov no, tias lawv tau tuag rau txoj kev tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws thiab ntawm lawv tus Vajtswv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv zoo siab.
- 12 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas kuj tau txhom coob tug ua neeg raug txim, tag nrho cov uas yog thawj nom peb, vim lawv tsis tau tseg lwm cov cia muaj sia nyob li. Thiab peb xav tias nim no nyob lub sij hawm no lawv nyob hauv thaj av Nifais lawm; nws yuav yog li ntawd yog tias lawv tsis tau raug tua.
- 13 Thiab nim no cov no yog tej nroog uas cov Neeg Lamas txeeb tau los ntawm txoj kev ua kom nqaij ntuag ntshav nroog coob leej ntawm peb tej neeg uas siab muaj zog.
- 14 Thaj av Meethais, los sis lub nroog Meethais, thiab lub nroog Xi-elas, thiab lub nroog Khumenais, thiab lub nroog Eethiphalas.
- 15 Thiab cov no yog cov nroog uas lawv txeeb tau thaum kuv tuaj txog rau lub nroog Yudais; thiab kuv nrhiav pom Eethipas thiab nws cov neeg tab tom ua hauj lwm hnyav txhim kho lub nroog.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau txom nyem siab hauv sab nqaij tawv thiab hauv sab ntsuj plig, vim lawv tau tawm tsam yam tsis ntshai li thaum nruab hnuab thiab ua hauj lwm thaum tsaus ntuj kom tswj tuav tau lawv tej nroog; thiab li no lawv tau raug tej kev txom nyem loj ntawm txhua yam.
- 17 Thiab nim no lawv tau txiav txim siab ua kom yeej nyob hauv qhov chaw no los sis tuag xwb; yog li ntawd koj yuav xav tias cov nyuag tub rog yau uas kuv tau coj nrog kuv, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv cov tub ntawd, tau muab tej kev cia siab loj thiab txoj kev xyiv fab heev rau lawv.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

- 18 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias Eethipas tau txais ib qho zog loj rau nws cov tub rog, lawv tau raug yuam los ntawm Amauloos tej lus txib kom tsis txhob tuaj tawm tsam lub nroog Yudais, los sis tsis ua rog, tawm tsam peb.
- 19 Thiab li no peb tau koob hmoov los ntawm tus Tswv; vim yog lawv tau tuaj tawm tsam peb thaum lub caij uas peb tsis muaj zog tej zaum lawv yeej yuav tau ua kom peb tej tub rog yau puas tsuaj; tiam sis li no peb thiaj tau raug cawm dim.
- 20 Lawv tau raug Amauloos txib kom tswj tuav cov nroog uas lawv txeeb tau lawm. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab rau. Thiab nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab xya peb tau npaj peb tej nroog thiab peb tus kheej rau txoj kev tiv thaiv.
- 21 Nim no peb xav kom cov Neeg Lamas tuaj rau saum peb; vim peb tsis xav mus tawm tsam rau saum lawv nyob hauv lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tso neeg ua tub sab rau ib puag ncig nraud, mus saib tej kev txawv txaw ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, kom lawv yuav hla tsis tau peb hmo ntuj los sis nruab hnuv tuaj tawm tsam peb lwm cov nroog uas nyob sab pem toj.
- 23 Vim peb paub tias nyob rau hauv cov nroog ntawd lawv tseem tsis tau muaj zog txaus yuav ntsib tau lawv; yog li ntawd peb tau xav tias kheev lam lawv yuav tuaj hla ntawm peb mus, ces yuav tawm tsam lawv tom lawv qab tuaj, thiab li no yuav tav tau lawv tom qab tuaj tib lub sij hawm ntawd lawv ho raug ntsib tom hauv ntej tuaj thiab. Peb tau xav tias peb yuav kov yeej lawv; tiam sis saib seb, peb tsis tau txais li peb siab xav no.
- 24 Lawv tsis kam hla peb nrog tag nrho lawv tej tub rog, thiab lawv kuj tsis kam cia ib feem tuaj li, lawv ntshai tsam yuav tsis muaj zog txaus thiab lawv yuav swb.
- 25 Thiab lawv kuj tsis kam nqis mus lawm nram lub nroog Xalahelas; thiab lawv kuj tsis kam hla tus hau dej Xidoos, mus rau lub nroog Nifaihas.
- 26 Thiab li no, nrog lawv tej tub rog, lawv tau txiav txim siab tswj tuav cov nroog uas lawv txeeb tau lawm.
- 27 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv lub ob hlis xyoo no, kuv ob txhiab leej tub ntawd tej txiv tau nqa tej khoom noj khoom siv ntau yam tuaj rau peb.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

28 Thiab kuj tau xa ob txhiab tus neeg tom thaj av Xalahelas tuaj rau peb thiab. Thiab li no peb tau npaj tau kaum txhiab leej neeg, thiab tej khoom noj khoom siv rau lawv, thiab kuj rau lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam.

29 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas, tau pom peb tej tub rog tau ntau zuj zus txhua hnuv li no, thiab tej khoom noj khoom siv tuaj pab peb, lawv tau pib txhawj ntshai, thiab tau pib maj nrawm nroos, saib puas yuav ua tau kom peb txoj kev txais tej khoom noj khoom siv thiab dag zog tu.

30 Nim no thaum peb tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tau pib txhawj txog tej yam no, peb tau xav siv ib qho tswv yim rau lawv; yog li ntawd Eethipas tau txib kom kuv nrog kuv cov tub me me mus rau ib lub nroog nyob ze, kom zoo li peb ris khoom noj khoom siv mus rau lub nroog nyob ze ntawd.

31 Thiab peb yuav tsum mus ze rau ntawm lub nroog Eethiphalas, kom zoo li peb tab tom mus rau lub nroog uas nyob tom ntej, uas nyob ze ntug hiav txwv.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tawm mus li ntawd, yam li uas peb ris tej khoom noj khoom siv, mus rau lub nroog ntawd.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias Eethipas tau nrog nws cov tub rog ib feem tawm mus, tseg loo cov uas seem tswj tuav lub nroog. Tiam sis nws tsis tawm mus txog thaum uas kuv twb tau nrog kuv tej tub rog me me mus dhau lawm, thiab tau los ze lub nroog Eethiphalas.

34 Thiab nim no, cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog uas muaj zog tshaj tau raug tso rau hauv lub nroog Eethiphalas; muaj tseeb tiag, nyob coob tshaj.

35 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tej neeg soj xyuas tau los qhia rau lawv, lawv tau tawm nrog lawv tej tub rog tuaj tawm tsam peb.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau khiav ua ntej lawv mus rau sab pem toj. Thiab li no peb tau ntxias coj cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog uas muaj zog tshaj plaws mus;

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

- 37 Muaj tseeb tiag, twb koj mus rau ib qhov ncuab deb tsawv, kawg tias thaum lawv pom Eethipas cov tub rog tab tom raws lawv lawm, nrog lawv lub zog, lawv twb tsis tig mus rau sab xis los sis sab laug li, tiam sis lawv tau taug txoj kev ncaj nraim raws peb; thiab, li peb tau xav, twb yog lawv xav tias yuav tua kom tau peb ua ntej Eethipas caum tau lawv, thiab lawv tau ua li no xwv kom peb cov neeg yuav vij tsis tau lawv.
- 38 Thiab nim no Eethipas, pom hlo peb tej kev yuav muaj teeb meem, tau nrog nws cov tub rog mus ceev heev. Tiam sis saib seb, nws yog thaum tsaus ntuj; yog li ntawd lawv caum tsis tau peb, thiab Eethipas los kuj caum tsis tau lawv; yog li ntawd peb tau rub yeej rau hmo ntawd.
- 39 Thiab tau muaj tias ua ntej thaum hnuv yuav tawm thaum sawv ntxov, saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau caum rawv peb. Nim no peb tseem tsis tau muaj zog txaus yuav sawv tiv lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav tsis cia kom kuv cov tub me me yuav poob rau hauv lawv tes; yog li ntawd peb tau mus tas zog ntxiv, thiab peb tau mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 40 Nim no lawv tsis kam tig mus rau sab xis los sis rau sab laug ntshai tsam lawv yuav raug vij; thiab kuv los kuj tsis kam tig rau sab xis los sis sab laug ntshai tsam lawv yuav txhom tau kuv, thiab peb yuav sawv tiv tsis tau lawv, tiam sis tsuas yuav raug tua, thiab lawv yuav dim mus; thiab li no peb tau khiav tas hnuv mus rau hauv hav zoov, mus txog ntua thaum tsaus ntuj.
- 41 Thiab tau muaj ntxiv tias, thaum kaj ntug sawv ntxov tuaj peb tau pom cov Neeg Lamas rau saum peb, thiab peb tau khiav ua ntej lawv.
- 42 Tiam sis tau muaj tias lawv tsis tau raws peb deb ua ntej lawv nres; thiab tau yog thaum sawv ntxov hnuv xiab peb ntawm lub xya hli.
- 43 Thiab nim no, xyov Eethipas raws tau lawv lawm los tsis tau peb tsis paub, tiam sis kuv tau hais rau kuv cov neeg tias: Saib seb, peb tsis paub tiam sis lawv tau nres rau qhov uas kom peb yuav mus tawm tsam lawv lawm, xwv kom lawv yuav txhom tau peb nyob hauv lawv tej ntxiab.
- 44 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov tub, nej yuav hais li cas, nej puas yuav mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv?

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

45 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau koj, kuv tus tij
laugMaulaunais uas kuv hlub, tias kuv yeej tsis tau
pom ib zaug dua li uas muaj siab loj tag npaud, yeej
tsis tau pom li, nyob hauv tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais.

46 Vim ib yam li kuv ib txwm sij hu lawv ua kuv cov
tub (vim tag nrho lawv puav leej tseem hluas heev)
kawg tias lawv tau hais rau kuv tias: Txiv, saib seb
peb tus Vajtswv twb nrog peb, thiab nws yuav tsis cia
kom peb tuag; ces cia peb cia li mus; peb yuav tsis tua
peb cov kwv tij yog lawv yuav tsis thab peb; yog li
ntawd cia peb mus, nyob tsam lawv yuav kov yeej
Eethipas cov tub rog.

47 Nim no lawv yeej tsis tau sib tua ib zaug li, tiam sis
lawv tsis ntshai txoj kev tuag; thiab lawv tau xav txog
lawv txiv txoj kev ywj siab heev dua li lawv xav txog
lawv txoj sia; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug qhia los
ntawm lawv niam, tias yog lawv tsis txhob ua xyem
xyav, Vajtswv yuav cawm lawv dim.

48 Thiab lawv tau rov qab hais lawv niam tej lus rau
kuv, tias: Peb yeej tsis ua xyem xyav peb niam yeej
paub lawm.

49 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau tig rov nrog kuv ob
txhiab leej mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas no uas
tau raws peb. Thiab nim no saib seb, Eethipas cov
tub rog caum tau lawv, thiab ib npluav rog uas tsis
zoo saib kiag tau pib.

50 Eethipas cov tub rog tau lim heev, vim lawv txoj
kev siv sij hawm luv mus deb heev, twb tau yuav luag
poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes; thiab yog tias kuv
tsis tau nrog kuv ob txhiab leej tig rov qab ces lawv
yeej yuav ua tau li lawv siab xav lawm.

51 Vim Eethipas tau poob tsam los ntawm ntaj, thiab
nws cov thawj coj ntau leej thiab, vim yog lawv txoj
kev lim, uas tau yog los ntawm lawv txoj kev mus
ceev—yog li ntawd Eethipas cov neeg, tau tsis meej
pem vim yog txoj kev tuag ntawm lawv tej thawj coj,
tau thim ncaim ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.

52 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas siab tau loj
tuaj, thiab tau pib caum lawv; thiab li no cov Neeg
Lamas tau caum lawv tag siab nrho thaum Hilamas
tuaj rau tom lawv qab nrog nws ob txhiab leej, thiab
tau pib tua lawv heev kawg nkaus li, kawg tias tag
nrho cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau nres thiab tau
tig los rau Hilamas.

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother
Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay,
not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they
were all of them very young) even so they said unto
me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will
not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we
would not slay our brethren if they would let us
alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower
the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear
death; and they did think more upon the liberty of
their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they
had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not
doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their
mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew
it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two
thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued
us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had over-
taken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their
long march in so short a space of time, were about to
fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not
returned with my two thousand they would have ob-
tained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of
his leaders, because of their weariness, which was
occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore
the men of Antipus, being confused because of the
fall of their leaders, began to give way before the
Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took
courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were
the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when
Helaman came upon their rear with his two thou-
sand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch
that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and
turned upon Helaman.

- 53 Nim no thaum Eethipas cov neeg tau pom cov Neeg Lamas tig rov qab, lawv tau sib sau lawv cov neeg tuaj ua ke thiab tau rov tuaj rau tom cov Neeg Lamas qab dua.
- 54 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias peb, Nifais cov neeg, Eethipas cov neeg, thiab kuv nrog rau kuv ob txhiab leej, tau vij cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau tua lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau raug yuam kom tso lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog thiab lawv tus kheej ua li tej neeg raug txim hauv hav rog.
- 55 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau swb lawv tus kheej rau peb lawm, saib seb, kuv tau suav cov tub hluas uas tau nrog kuv tawm tsam, ntshai nyob tsam lawv muaj ntau leej tau raug tua lawm.
- 56 Tiam sis saib seb, rau kuv txoj kev xyiv fab heev, lawv tsis tau muaj ib tug kiag uas tau raug tuag li; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau tawm tsam ib yam li nrog Vajtsvub lub zog; muaj tseeb tiag, yeej tsis tau paub dua tias yuav muaj neeg ua rog nrog lub zog uas muaj tej txuj ci tseem ceeb zoo li ntawd li; thiab lawv tau tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nrog lub hwj chim loj npaum li, kawg tias lawv tau ua rau lawv txhawj; thiab vim qhov no cov Neeg Lamas thiaj tau muab lawv tus kheej los ua neeg raug txim hauv hav rog.
- 57 Thiab ib yam li peb tsis muaj chaw rau peb tej neeg raug txim, kom peb muaj peev xwm saib xyuas tau lawv kom ceev tau lawv tawm ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog, yog li ntawd peb tau xa lawv mus rau thaj av Xalahelas, thiab ib feem ntawm Eethipas cov neeg uas tsis tau raug tua, nrog lawv; thiab cov uas seem tshuav kuv tau coj lawm thiab tau muab lawv koom nrog kuv cov tub hluas neeg Amoos, thiab tau rov qab mus rau lub nroog Yudais.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

Amas 57

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias kuv tau txais ib tsab ntawv ntawm Amauloos, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv, hais tias yog kuv yuav tso cov neeg raug txim hauv hav rog uas peb txhom tau ces nws yuav muab lub nroog Eethiphalas rau peb.
- 2 Tiam sis kuv tau xa ib tsab ntawv mus rau vaj ntxwv, tias peb yeej paub tseeb tias peb tej tub rog yeej muaj zog txaus yuav muab lub nroog Eethiphalas los ntawm peb lub zog; thiab los ntawm qhov uas yuav tso cov neeg raug txim los pauv lub nroog ntawd peb kuj yuav xav rau peb tus kheej tias tsis ntse, thiab tias peb tsuas yuav muab peb cov neeg raug txim rov rau kev sib pauv neeg xwb.
- 3 Thiab Amauloos tau tsis kam ua li kuv tsab ntawv, vim nws tsis kam sib pauv tej neeg raug txim; yog li ntawd peb tau pib npaj mus tawm tsam lub nroog Eethiphalas.
- 4 Tiam sis cov neeg hauv Eethiphalas tau ncaim lub nroog lawm, thiab tau khiav mus rau lawv lwm lub nroog, uas lawv tau muaj, mus tiv thaiv lawv; thiab li no lub nroog Eethiphalas tau poob rau peb tes.
- 5 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab cuaj, peb tau txais ib cov khoom noj khoom siv, thiab kuj tau txais neeg ntxiv rau peb cov tub rog, los ntawm thaj av Xalahelas, thiab los ntawm tej thaj av uas nyob ib ncig, tau txog li rau txhiab leej neeg, twb tsis suav rau caum leej ntawm cov neeg Amoos cov tub uas tau tuaj koom lawv cov kwv tij, uas yog kuv pab hluas ob txhiab leej. Thiab nim no saib seb, peb tau muaj zog, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb kuj tau muaj khoom noj khoom siv coj tuaj rau peb siv tsis tag.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau xav ua ib npluav rog nrog cov tub rog uas tau muab tso tsom kwm lub nroog Khumenais.
- 8 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv yuav qhia rau koj tias tsis ntev no peb twb ua tau li peb siab xav lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, nrog peb cov tub rog muaj zog, los sis nrog ib feem ntawm peb cov tub rog muaj zog, peb tau vij lub nroog Khumenais, hmo ntuj, ib nyuag ua ntej lub sij hawm uas lawv tseem yuav tau txais tej khoom noj khoom siv.

Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rub yeej ib ncig lub nroog tau ntau hmo; tiam sis peb tau pw puag rawv peb tej ntaj, thiab tso neeg zov, kom cov Neeg Lamas tsis muaj peev xwm tuaj rau saum peb thaum hmo ntuj thiab tua peb, lawv tau sim ua li ntawd ntau zaus; tiam sis ntau zaus uas lawv tau sim ua li no lawv tej ntshav tau nrog.
- 10 Ntev loo lawv tej khoom noj khoom siv tau tuaj txog, thiab lawv tseem yuav luag nkag mus rau hauv lub nroog yav hmo ntuj. Thiab peb, ntxim tias yog cov Neeg Lamas, ho yog Neeg Nifais; yog li ntawd, peb tau txhom lawv thiab muab lawv tej khoom noj khoom siv.
- 11 Thiab txawm tias cov Neeg Lamas tau raug txiav ntawm lawv tej kev pab li no los, lawv tseem muaj peev xwm yuav tswj tuav lub nroog; yog li ntawd nws tau tsim nyog lawm tias peb yuav tsum muab cov khoom noj khoom siv ntawd thiab xa lawv mus rau tom Yudais, thiab xa peb cov neeg raug txim mus rau thaj av Xalahelas.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis tau muaj pes tsawg hnuv ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas tau pib poob tag nrho tej kev cia siab ntawm txoj kev pab; yog li ntawd lawv tau muab lub nroog rau peb tes; thiab li no peb tau ua tau li peb tej kev npaj muab lub nroog Khumenais.
- 13 Tiam sis tau muaj tias peb cov neeg raug txim tau coob kawg nkaus, txawm tias peb muaj coob kawg thiab, los peb tseem tau raug siv tag nrho peb tej zog los ceev lawv, los sis muab lawv tua kom tuag.
- 14 Vim saib seb, lawv pheej nyiag kev khiav coob leej, thiab pheej tawm tsam nrog pob zeb, thiab nrog qws, los sis nrog txhua yam khoom uas lawv yuav muab tau rau hauv lawv tes, kawg tias peb tau muab lawv tua mus txog ob txhiab leej tom qab uas lawv tau zeem los ua neeg raug txim hauv hav rog.
- 15 Yog li ntawd nws tau rais los tsim nyog rau peb, kom peb yuav muab qhov kawg rau lawv txoj sia, los sis zov khoo lawv, tuav rawv ntaj hauv tes, nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalahelas; thiab peb tej khoom noj khoom siv los twb tsis tshaj li uas txaus rau peb cov neeg, txawm tias suav tag nrho cov uas peb txeeb tau los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, in-somuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

- 16 Thiab nim no, nyob rau lub caij nyuaj tseem ceeb no, nws tau rais los yog ib qho nyuaj heev uas yuav txiav txim siab txog tej neeg raug txim hauv hav rog no; txawm li ntawd los, peb tau txiav txim siab xa lawv nqis mus rau thaj av Xalabelas; yog li ntawd peb tau xaiv ib co ntawm peb cov neeg, thiab tau kom lawv coj peb cov neeg raug txim nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalabelas.
- 17 Tiam sis tau muaj tias tag kis lawv tau rov qab los. Thiab nim no saib seb, peb tsis tau nug lawv txog cov neeg raug txim; vim saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj tua peb, thiab lawv tau rov qab los ncaj sij hawm cawm peb dim ntawm txoj kev poob rau hauv lawv tej. Vim saib seb, Amauloos tau xa tej khoom noj khoom siv tshiab thiab tej tub rog coob heev tuaj pab lawv.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg uas peb tau xa nrog cov neeg raug txim mus tau los txog ncaj sij hawm los xyuas lawv, thaum lawv yuav luag kov yeej peb.
- 19 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv pab me nyuam yaus ob txhiab thiab rau caum tus tau tawm tsam sib zog kawg nkaus li; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau tawv ruaj nrees rau cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau muab kev tuag rau cov uas nyom lawv.
- 20 Thiab thaum peb cov tub rog uas seem yuav luag thim ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, saib seb, ob txhiab thiab rau caum leej ntawd tau tawv qhawv thiab tsis ntshai li.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau mloog thiab kam ua raws nraim li txhua lo lus uas tau txib; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab raws nraim li lawv txoj kev ntseeg nws twb tau muaj rau lawv lawm; thiab kuv tseem nco qab txog tej lus uas lawv tau hais rau kuv tias lawv niam tau qhia lawv.
- 22 Thiab nim no saib seb, nws yog kuv cov tub no, thiab cov neeg uas tau raug xaiv los saib cov neeg raug txim, cov uas peb tshuav nqi rau txoj kev yeej loj no; vim lawv yog cov uas tau tua yeej cov Neeg Lamas; yog li ntawd lawv tau raug raws rov qab mus rau lub nroog Meethais.
- 23 Thiab peb rov qab tau peb lub nroog Khumenais, thiab tsis tau raug puas tsuaj tag nrho los ntawm ntaj; txawm li ntawd los, peb tau raug xiam ntaw heev.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav lawm, tam sim ntawd kuv tau txib kom cia li nqa kuv cov neeg uas tau raug mob lawm tawm ntawm cov neeg tuag mus, thiab tau kom muab lawv tej qhov txhab qhwv.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ob puas tus, ntawm kuv ob txhiab thiab rau caum leej, uas tau qaug zog lawm vim yog txoj kev xiam ntshav; txawm li ntawd los, raws li Vajtswv txoj kev zoo, thiab rau peb txoj kev xav tsis thoob li, thiab rau txoj kev xyiv fab ntawm tag nrho peb cov tub rog, lawv tsis tau muaj ib tug kiag uas tau piam sij; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj tsis muaj ib tug li uas tsis tau raug mob ntau li.
- 26 Thiab nim no, txoj kev uas lawv raug cawm cia tau ua rau tag nrho peb cov tub rog xav tsis thoob li, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv ho raug cawm tseg thaum uas ho muaj ib txhiab ntawm peb cov kwv tij uas tau raug tua. Thiab peb yeej tsuas zoo siab qhuas rau Vajtswv lub hwj chim tseem ceeb, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg heev uas lawv tau raug qhia kom ntseeg—tias muaj ib tug Vajtswv uas ncaj ncees, thiab yog leej twg tsis xyem xyav, ces lawv yeej yuav raug tsom kwm los ntawm nws lub hwj chim uas muaj txuj ci tseem ceeb.
- 27 Nim no qhov no yog txoj kev ntseeg ntawm cov no uas kuv tau hais txog lawm; lawv tseem hluas, thiab lawv tej siab yeej ruaj nrees, thiab lawv yeej muab lawv txoj kev cia siab rau hauv Vajtswv tsis tu ncuu li.
- 28 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas peb tau tu peb tej neeg raug mob, thiab tau faus peb tej neeg tuag thiab cov Neeg Lamas tej neeg tuag, cov uas muaj coob heev tag lawm, saib seb, peb tau nug Nkis txog cov neeg raug txim uas lawv tau pib nrog nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalahelas.
- 29 Nim no Nkis tau yog tus thawj coj kav pab uas tau tsa saib xyuas coj lawv nqis mus rau nram thaj av.
- 30 Thiab nim no, cov no yog cov lus uas Nkis tau hais rau kuv: Saib seb, peb tau pib nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalahelas nrog peb cov neeg raug txim. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau ntsib cov neeg soj ntsuam ntawm peb cov tub rog, uas tau raug xa tawm mus saib cov Neeg Lamas lub yeej.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

31 Thiab lawv tau qw rau peb, hais tias—Saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tab tom mus ncaj nraim rau lub nroog Khumenais; thiab saib seb, lawv yuav tawm tsam lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yuav ua kom peb cov neeg puas tsuaj.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias peb cov neeg raug txim tau hnov lawv qw, ces tau ua rau lawv muaj siab loj; thiab lawv tau sawv ntseev siab tawm tsam peb.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseev siab peb thiaj tau pib xuas peb tej ntaj tua lawv. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau khiav tib pab los rau saum peb tej ntaj, ces, lawv feem coob tau raug tua; thiab lawv feem uas seem tshuav tau txeem dhau thiab tau khiav ntawm peb mus lawm.

34 Thiab saib seb, thaum lawv tau khiav lawm thiab peb tsis muaj peev xwm caum tau lawv, peb tau mus nrawm nroos rau lub nroog Khumenais; thiab saib seb, peb tau mus txog ncaj sij hawm kom peb yuav pab tau peb cov kwv tij tswj hwm lub nroog.

35 Thiab saib seb, peb rov qab raug cawm dim ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes. Thiab peb tus Vajtswv lub npe tau koob hmoov; vim saib seb, nws twb yog tus uas cawm peb dim; muaj tseeb tiag, tau ua tej yam tseem ceeb heev no rau peb.

36 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum kuv, Hilamas, tau hnov Nkis tej lus no, kuv tau muaj kev xyiv fab kawg nkaus puv npo vim yog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo uas tau tsom kwm peb, xwv kom peb tsis txhob piam sij tag nrho; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuv ntseeg tias tej ntsuj plig ntawm lawv cov uas tau raug tua lawm tau nkag mus rau hauv lawv tus Vajtswv qhov chaw so lawm.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Amas 58

- 1 Thiab saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias yam peb yuav ua tom ntej yog txeeb kom tau lub nroog Meethais; tiam sis saib seb, tsis muaj kev li uas peb yuav coj tau lawv tawm ntawm lub nroog los ntawm peb cov tub rog tsawg. Vim saib seb, lawv tau nco ntsoov tej uas peb tau ua tas los lawm; yog li ntawd peb tsis muaj peev xwm ntxias tau lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej chaw muaj zog mus.
- 2 Thiab lawv los kuj muaj coob dua li peb cov tub rog ces peb thiaj tsis kam tawm mus thiab tawm tsam lawv nyob hauv lawv tej chaw muaj zog.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau rais los tsim nyog tias peb yuav tsum siv peb cov neeg mus tswj tuav peb tej feem av uas peb tau rov txeeb tau los lawm; yog li ntawd nws tsim nyog tias peb yuav tsum tos, xwv kom peb yuav txais tau zog ntxiv los ntawm thaj av Xalahelas thiab tej khoom noj khoom siv tshiab tso.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv thiaj li tau xa ib co tub xa xov mus rau tus tswv xeev ntawm peb thaj av, mus qhia rau nws txog tej hauj lwm ntawm peb cov neeg. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tos kom txais tej khoom noj khoom siv thiab zog ntawm thaj av Xalahelas.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, qhov no tsuas pab peb me me xwb; vim cov Neeg Lamas kuj tau txais zog loj ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv, thiab kuj tau txais tej khoom noj khoom siv ntau; thiab peb tej kev nyob rau lub sij hawm no zoo li no.
- 6 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau tab tom maj nrawm nroos tawm tsam peb ib lub sij hawm dhau ib lub sij hawm, siv tswv yim ua kom peb puas tsuaj; txawm li ntawd los peb tsis muaj cuab kav tuaj ua rog nrog lawv, vim yog lawv tej chaw nkaum thiab lawv tej chaw muaj zog.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tos nyob rau hauv tej lub caij nyuaj no tau ncu ntau lub hlis, twb mus txog thaum uas peb yuav luag piam sij rau txoj kev xav tau zaub mov.

Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

- 8 Tiam sis tau muaj tias peb tau txais zaub mov, uas raug saib xyuas tuaj rau peb los ntawm ib pab tub rog ob txhiab leej uas tuaj pab peb; thiab qhov no yog tag nrho tej kev pab uas peb tau txais, los tiv thaiv peb tus kheej thiab peb lub teb chaws kom dim ntawm txoj kev poob rau hauv peb tej yeeb ncuab tes, muaj tseeb tiag, mus tawm tsam tus yeeb ncuab uas suav tsis txheeb.
- 9 Thiab nim no qhov uas ua rau peb tau txais kev pab tsawg, los sis qhov uas vim li cas lawv tsis xa zog ntxiv rau peb, peb tsis paub; yog li ntawd peb tau nyuaj siab thiab kuj muaj kev ntshai puv npo, ntshai tsam muaj dab tsi es Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim ho los rau saum peb thaj av, ua kom peb poob thiab puas tsuaj huv si mus.
- 10 Yog li ntawd peb tau nchuav hlo peb tej siab tawm thov Vajtswv, kom nws yuav txhawb peb zog thiab pab peb dim ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab muab lub zog rau peb thiab kom peb yuav rov muab tau peb tej nroog, thiab peb tej av, thiab tej uas peb muaj, rau txoj kev txhawb peb cov neeg.
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv tau los xyuas peb nrog tej kev tseeb tias nws yuav cawm peb; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias nws tau hais kev nyab xeeb rau peb tej siab, thiab tau muab txoj kev ntseeg heev rau peb, thiab tau ua rau peb kom peb cia siab tias nws yuav cawm peb.
- 12 Thiab peb thiaj tau ua siab loj nrog peb lub zog me uas peb tau txais, thiab tau paub zoo ruaj nrees tias yuav kov yeej peb tej yeeb ncuab, thiab mus tswj tuav peb tej av, thiab tej uas peb muaj, thiab peb tej poj niam, thiab peb tej me nyuam, thiab txoj kev ntseeg peb txoj kev ywj siab.
- 13 Thiab li no peb tau tawm mus nrog tag nrho peb tej zog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, uas nyob hauv lub nroog Meethais; thiab peb tau rub peb tej tsev pheeb suab ntaub rau ntawm ntug hav zoov, uas nyob ze rau lub nroog.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau tag kis, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias peb tau nyob ntawm ntug hav zoov uas nyob ze lub nroog, ces lawv tau xa lawv tej neeg soj xyuas tuaj ncig peb kom lawv yuav paub saib peb tej tub rog muaj npaum li cas thiab muaj zog li cas.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv pom tias peb tsis muaj zog, raws li tej neeg uas peb muaj, thiab ntshai tias tsam peb yuav txiav lawv tawm ntawm lawv txoj kev pab tsuas yog lawv yuav tawm tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb thiab tua peb, thiab kuj xav tias lawv yuav ua kom peb puas tsuaj yooj yim nrog lawv tej tub rog uas coob coob, yog li ntawd lawv tau pib npaj tawm tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb.
- 16 Thiab thaum peb tau pom tias lawv tab tom npaj tawm tuaj tawm tsam peb, saib seb, kuv tau kom Nkis, nrog ib co neeg tsawg, yuav tsum mus nkaum rau hauv hav zoov, thiab Thi-onaws thiab ib co neeg tsawg yuav tsum mus nkaum rau hauv hav zoov thiab.
- 17 Nim no Nkis thiab nws cov neeg tau nyob sab xis thiab lwm cov ho nyob sab laug; thiab thaum lawv tau mus nkaum li no lawm, saib seb, kuv tau nyob, nrog kuv cov tub rog uas tshuav, rau hauv tib qhov chaw uas peb xub thawj rub peb tej tsev pheb suab ntaub npaj tos lub sij hawm uas cov Neeg Lamas tawm tuaj ua rog.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tawm nrog lawv tej tub rog coob coob tuaj tawm tsam peb. Thiab thaum lawv tau tuaj thiab yuav luag tawm tsam peb nrog tej ntaj, kuv tau kom kuv cov neeg, uas tseem nrog kuv, thim mus rau hauv hav zoov.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau raws ceev heev lawv peb qab, vim lawv tau xav caum kom tau peb heev kom lawv yuav tau muab peb tua; yog li ntawd lawv tau raws peb qab mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab peb tau hla mus rau hauv nruab nrab ntawm Nkis thiab Thi-onaws, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas twb tsis pom lawv.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau hla los dhau, los sis thaum cov tub rog tau hla los, Nkis thiab Thi-onaws tau sawv hauv lawv tej chaw nkaum los, thiab tau txiav cov Neeg Lamas tej neeg soj xyuas kom lawv yuav rov qab tsis tau mus rau hauv nroog.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau txiav lawv kev lawm, lawv tau khiav mus rau tom nroog thiab tawm tsam cov neeg saib xyuas uas tau tso zov lub nroog, kawg tias lawv tau ua rau lawv puas tsuaj thiab txeeb tau lub nroog.
- 22 Nim no qhov no tau muaj tiav los yog vim cov Neeg Lamas tau cia tag nrho lawv cov tub rog, raug coj mus rau hauv hav zoov, tsuas yog tshuav ob peb tug neeg zov xwb.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inso-much that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias Nkis thiab Thi-onaws los ntawm qhov no thiaj txeeb tau lawv tej chaw muaj zog. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau taug peb txoj kev, tom qab uas tau mus ntev hauv hav zoov mus rau thaj av Xalabelas.
- 24 Thiab thaum cov Neeg Lamas pom tias lawv tau tab tom mus ncaj nraim rau thaj av Xalabelas, lawv tau ntshai heev, nyob tsam muaj ib qho kev npaj uas yuav coj lawv mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib thim rov mus rau hauv hav zoov dua, muaj tseeb tiag, twb rov tib txog qub ke uas lawv tau tuaj.
- 25 Thiab saib seb, yog hmo ntuj thiab lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub, vim cov thawj nom peb ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau xav tias cov Neeg Nifais yuav lim heev vim yog lawv txoj kev mus kev; thiab tau xav tias lawv tau raws tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog lawm yog li ntawd lawv tsis tau xav txog lub nroog Meethais.
- 26 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum uas tsaus ntuj lawm, kuv tau kom kuv cov neeg tsis txhob pw, tiam sis kom lawv mus dua lwm txoj kev rau tom thaj av Meethais.
- 27 Thiab vim yog peb txoj kev mus hmo ntuj li no, saib seb, tag kis peb tau cov Neeg Lamas ntej, kawg tias peb tau xub mus txog lub nroog Meethais ua ntej lawv.
- 28 Thiab li no tau muaj tias, los ntawm txoj kev siv tswv yim no peb thiaj txeeb tau lub nroog Meethais yam tsis muaj ntshav nrog.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas los txog ze lub nroog, thiab tau pom tias peb tau npaj ntsib lawv, lawv tau poob siab heev thiab tau txhawj kawg nkaus, kawg tias lawv tau khiav mus rau hauv hav zoov lawm.
- 30 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau khiav tawm tag nrho ntawm feem av no mus lawm. Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau cab nrog lawv ntau tus poj niam thiab me nyuam tawm ntawm thaj av mus.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

31 Thiab cov nroog uas tau raug cov Neeg Lamas muab tau lawm, nyob rau lub sij hawm no peb puav leej muab tau lawv tag nrho lawm; thiab peb tej txiv thiab peb tej poj niam thiab peb tej me nyuam tab tom rov qab mus rau lawv tej tsev, tag nrho sawv daws tsuas tshuav cov uas tau raug txhom ua neeg raug txim thiab raug cab mus lawm los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas xwb.

32 Tiam sis saib seb, peb tej tub rog tsawg heev uas yuav tswj tuav ntau lub nroog thiab ntau yam uas muaj.

33 Tiam sis saib seb, peb cia siab rau hauv peb tus Vajtswv uas tau muab txoj kev yeej tej av ntawd rau peb, kawg tias peb rov txeeb tau tej nroog thiab tej av ntawd, uas yeej yog peb li.

34 Nim no peb tsis paub qhov uas tej nom tswv tsis xa zog ntxiv rau peb; cov neeg uas tau tuaj rau peb los kuj tsis paub tias vim li cas peb tsis tau txais zog ntau ntxiv.

35 Saib seb, peb yeej tsis paub tiam sis tsuas yog hnov tej uas nej ua tsis tau xwb, thiab koj tau rub tej tub rog mus rau feem av tom ko lawm; yog muaj tseeb li ntawd ces, peb tsis xav yws yws.

36 Thiab yog tias tsis yog li ntawd no ces, saib seb, peb ntshai tias tsam muaj kev ntxeev siab nyob hauv cov nom tswv, es lawv thiaj tsis kam xa neeg ntxiv tuaj pab peb; vim peb paub tias lawv yeej muaj coob dua li tej uas lawv tau xa lawm.

37 Tiam sis, saib seb, nws tsis ua li cas—peb cia siab Vajtswv yuav cawm peb, txawm tias peb tej tub rog tsis muaj zog, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yeej yuav cawm peb dim ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes.

38 Saib seb, qhov no yog thaum yuav kawg, xyoo thib nees nkaum thiab cuaj, thiab peb twb nyob hauv tej chaw ntawm peb tej av; thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav mus rau thaj av Nifais lawm.

39 Thiab cov neeg Amoos tej tub, uas kuv pheej nquag hais txog ntawd, kuj nrog kuv nyob hauv lub nroog Meethais; thiab tus Tswv tau txhawb lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau ceev lawv dim ntawm txoj kev vau los ntawm ntaj, kawg tias twb tsis muaj ib tug uas raug tua li.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

40 Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau txais mob ntau; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem sawv ruaj nrees hauv txoj kev ywj siab uas Vajtswv tau ua rau lawv dim; thiab lawv yeej ua tib zoo nco ntsoov tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv ib hnub dhau ib hnub; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yeej ua tib zoo koj nws tej lus txib, thiab nws tej kev txiav txim, thiab nws tej lus txib tsis tu ncu; thiab lawv txoj kev ntseeg yeej muaj zog nyob hauv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tej uas yuav muaj los.

41 Thiab nim no, kuv tus tij laugMaulaunais, uas kuv hlub es, thov tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv, uas tau txhiv peb thiab ua rau peb dim, ceev koj tsis tu ncu nyob hauv nws xub ntiag; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thov nws foom koob hmoov rau cov neeg no, kom nej yuav ua tau rov qab muab tau tag nrho tej uas cov Neeg Lamas tau txeeb ntawm peb mus lawm, tej uas yog yam txhawb peb. Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv kaw kuv tsab ntawv. Kuv yog Hilamas, Amas tus tub.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

Amas 59

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib peb caug ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, tom qab uas Maulaunais tau txais thiab tau nyeem Hilamas tsab ntawv tas lawm, nws tau zoo siab heev vim yog txoj kev nyab xeeb, muaj tseeb tiag, zoo siab heev rau txoj kev ua tau li siab xav uas Hilamas tau muaj, uas tau rov muab tau tej av uas tau poob lawm.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau ua rau tag nrho nws cov neeg paub, nyob rau tag nrho tej av uas nyob ib puag ncig ntawm sab uas nws nyob, kom lawv yuav zoo siab thiab.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nws txawm tau xa ib tsab ntawv nrawm nroos mus rau Peholas, tau xav kom nws yuav tsum kom cov neeg sib sau ua ke mus txhawb Hilamas zog, los sis Hilamas cov tub rog, kawg tias kom yuav yooj yim rau nws tswj tuav feem av uas nws muab tau rov qab los yam muaj txuj ci tseem ceeb heev.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau xa tsab ntawv no mus rau thaj av Xalahelas lawm, nws tau rov qab npaj ib txoj kev kom nws yuav muab tau tej av thiab tej nroog seem uas cov Neeg Lamas txeeb tau ntawm lawv lawm.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tseem tab tom npaj mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas li no, saib seb, Nifaihas cov neeg, uas tau sib sau los ntawm lub nroog Maulaunais thiab lub nroog Lihais thiab lub nroog Mauli-atoos, tau raug cov Neeg Lamas tawm tsam.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cov uas tau raug yuam kom khiav ntawm thaj av Meethais, thiab ntawm tej av ib puag ncig, tau tuaj thiab tau koom nrog cov Neeg Lamas nyob rau hauv feem av no.
- 7 Thiab li no tau muaj coob heev, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau txais zog ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv, los ntawm Amauloos txoj kev txib lawv tau tawm tuaj tawm tsam Nifaihas cov neeg, thiab lawv tau pib tua lawv tuag coob heev kawg nkaus li.
- 8 Thiab lawv tej tub rog tau coob heev kawg nkaus tias Nifaihas cov neeg uas seem tshuav tau raug yuam kom khiav ntawm lawv mus; thiab lawv thiaj tau los thiab koom nrog Maulaunais cov tub rog.

Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

- 9 Thiab nim no ib yam li Maulaunais tau xav tias yuav tsum xa neeg mus rau lub nroog Nifaihas, mus pab cov neeg tswj tuav lub nroog ntawd, thiab paub ntsoov tias nws yuav yooj yim ceev kom lub nroog tsis txhob poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes dua li rov qab mus muab ntawm lawv los, nws tau xav tias lawv yuav yooj yim tswj tuav lub nroog ntawd.
- 10 Yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau cia tag nrho nws tej tub rog tswj tuav cov chaw uas nws rov txeeb tau lawm.
- 11 Thiab nim no, thaum Maulaunais pom tias lub nroog Nifaihas tau poob lawm nws tau nyuaj siab heev, thiab tau pib xyem xyav, vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg, seb lawv puas yuav tsis poob rau hauv lawv tej kwv tij tes.
- 12 Nim no tag nrho nws tej thawj nom peb los kuj xav li no thiab. Lawv tau xyem xyav thiab kuj tau txhawj vim yog cov neeg txoj kev phem, thiab tau muaj li no los vim yog txoj kev ua tau li siab xav uas cov Neeg Lamas ua rau lawv.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau npau taws rau cov nom tswv, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis quav ntsej txog txoj kev ywj pheej ntawm lawv lub teb chaws.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

Amas 60

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nws rov qab sau ntawv dua mus rau tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av, tus uas yog Peholas, thiab cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau sau, hais tias: Saib seb, kuv xa kuv tsab ntawv ncaj nraim rau Peholas, nyob hauv lub nroog Xalahelas, tus uas yog tus thawj tub txiav txim thiab tus tswv xeev kav thaj av, thiab kuj rau tag nrho cov uas tau raug xaiv los ntawm cov neeg no los kav thiab tswj hwm tej hauj lwm ntawm npluav rog no.
- 2 Vim saib seb, kuv muaj tej yam yuav hais rau lawv los ntawm kev cem; vim saib, nej tus kheej paub tias nej tau raug tsa los sau neeg, thiab npaj lawv nrog tej ntaj, thiab tej liag, thiab tag nrho txhua yam cuab yeej ua rog, thiab xa tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, rau txhua qhov chaw uas lawv yuav tuaj rau hauv peb tej av.
- 3 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias kuv tus kheej, thiab kuv cov neeg, thiab Hilamas thiab nws cov neeg, tau raug kev txom nyem loj heev; muaj tseeb tiag, kev tshaib, kev nqhis, thiab kev sab lim, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev kub ntxhov.
- 4 Tiam sis saib seb, yog peb tau raug tej kev kub ntxhov li no xwb ces peb yeej yuav tsis yws los sis hais.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, peb cov neeg tau raug tuag loj; muaj tseeb tiag, txhiab txhiab leej tau raug tua los ntawm ntaj, thiab tej zaum nws yuav tsis zoo li no yog nej tau xa zog txaus tuaj rau peb cov tub rog thiab kev pab rau lawv. Muaj tseeb tiag, nej tau tsis quav ntsej peb loj heev.
- 6 Thiab nim no saib seb, peb xav paub qhov uas tsis quav ntsej loj no; muaj tseeb tiag, peb xav paub txog nej tej kev tsis txawj xav li.
- 7 Nej puas xav tau tias nej yuav zaum tib pob saum nej tej rooj zaum nyob zoo li ruam ntsuav tsis xav li, thaum nej tej yeeb ncuab tab tom ri txoj hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev tuag ib puag ncig nej? Muaj tseeb tiag, thaum lawv tab tom tua nej tej kwv tij txhiab txhiab leej—

Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

8 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv cov uas tau ntsia ntsoov nej rau txoj kev tsum kwm, muaj tseeb tiag, tau xaiv nej ua hauj lwm xwv kom nej yuav tau pab lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej xa tau tej tub rog mus rau lawv, kom tau txhawb lawv zog, thiab cawm tau lawv txhiab txhiab leej dim ntawm txoj kev vau los ntawm ntaj.

9 Tiam sis saib seb, tsis tas li no xwb—nej tau tseg tsis xa nej tej khoom noj khoom siv mus rau lawv, kawg tias coob leej tau sib tua thiab tau los ntshav mus txog thaum lawv tu siav vim yog lawv txoj kev xav uas lawv tau muaj rau txoj kev noj qab nyob zoo ntawm cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau ua li no thaum lawv tau yuav luag piam sij nrog txoj kev tshaib, vim yog nej txoj kev tsis quav ntsej loj kawg nkaus mus rau lawv.

10 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es—vim nej yeej tsim nyog raug hlub; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsim nyog nej yuav tsum tau mob siab ntso txhib nej tus kheej rau txoj kev xav tau zoo thiab txoj kev ywj pheej ntawm cov neeg no; tiam sis saib seb, nej tau tsis quav ntsej lawv kawg tias tej ntshav ntawm txhiab txhiab leej yuav los rau saum nej tej taub hau rau txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig; muaj tseeb tiag, vim Vajtswv twb paub tag nrho lawv tej suab quaj, thiab tag nrho lawv tej kev txom nyem—

11 Vim saib seb, nej puas xav tias nej zaum tau saum nej tej rooj zaum, thiab vim yog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo kawg nkaus nej yuav tsis ua ib yam dab tsi thiab nws yuav cawm kom nej dim no los? Saib seb, yog nej tau xav li no ces nej tau xav yuam kev lawm.

12 Nej ho xav tias, nej cov kwv tij coob leej tau raug tua los vim yog lawv tej kev phem no los? Kuv hais rau nej, yog nej tau xav li no ces nej tau xav yuam kev lawm; vim kuv hais rau nej tias, muaj coob leej cov uas tau tuag los ntawm ntaj; thiab saib seb twb yog rau nej txoj kev raug txim;

13 Vim tus Tswv cia cov neeg ncaj ncees raug tua xwv kom nws txoj kev txim lij thiab txoj kev txiav txim yuav los rau saum cov neeg phem; yog li ntawd nej tsis txhob xav hais tias cov neeg ncaj ncees tau yuam kev vim lawv tau raug tua; tiam sis saib seb, lawv yeej tau nkag mus rau hauv tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qhov chaw so lawm.

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

- 14 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, kuv ntshai kawg nkaus tsam Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim yuav los rau saum cov neeg no, vim yog lawv txoj kev tub nkeeg heev, muaj tseeb tiag, tib yam li txoj kev tub nkeeg ntawm peb tej nom tswv, thiab lawv txoj kev tsis quav ntsej loj kawg nkaus rau lawv tej kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, rau cov uas tau raug tua lawm.
- 15 Vim yog tias tsis muaj txoj kev phem uas xub pib nyob tom peb taub hau ces peb yeej yuav nres tau peb tej yeeb ncuab kom lawv yuav tsis muaj tau hwj chim rau saum peb.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, yog tias txhob muaj npluav rog qhib tawm nyob hauv peb tus kheej; muaj tseeb tiag, yog tias txhob muaj cov neeg-vaj ntxwv no, cov uas tau ua kom muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau nyob hauv peb; muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum uas peb tseem tab tom sib cav nyob hauv peb tus kheej, yog tias peb lam tau sib sau peb tej zog tuaj ua ke ib yam li peb tau ua tas los lawm no; muaj tseeb tiag, yog tias txhob muaj txoj kev xav muaj hwj chim thiab cai uas cov neeg-vaj ntxwv tau muaj rau peb lawm; yog tias lawv lam tau muaj siab tseeb rau peb txoj kev ywj pheej, thiab sib koom nrog peb, thiab tau tawm mus tawm tsam peb cov yeeb ncuab, es ho txhob nqa lawv tej ntaj tawm tsam peb, qhov uas tau ua muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau nyob rau hauv peb tus kheej; muaj tseeb tiag, yog tias peb lam tau tawm mus tawm tsam lawv nrog tus Tswv lub zog, ces ntshe peb twb ua tau peb tej yeeb ncuab tawg ri niab lawm, vim nws yuav ua tau tiav, raws li nws tej lus uas muaj tseeb tiag.
- 17 Tiam sis saib seb, nim no cov Neeg Lamas tab tom tuaj rau saum peb, tab tom txeeb peb tej av, thiab lawv tab tom xuas ntaj tua peb cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, peb tej poj niam thiab peb tej me nyuam, thiab kuj tab tom cab lawv mus ua qhev, tab tom ua rau lawv kom lawv yuav raug txhua yam kev txom nyem, thiab tej no los vim yog txoj kev phem heev ntawm cov uas tab tom nrhiav hwj chim thiab cai, muaj tseeb tiag, tib yam li cov neeg-vaj ntxwv i.
- 18 Tiam sis vim li cas kuv thiaj li hais ntau txog yam xwm no? Vim peb yeej tsis paub tiam sis yog dab tsi uas nej tus kheej pheej nrhiav ntshis cai xwb. Peb yeej tsis paub tiam sis yog dab tsi uas nej tseem ho yog cov neeg ntseev siab rau nej lub teb chaws thiab.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

- 19 Los sis puas yog qhov uas nej tau tsis quav ntsej peb vim yog nej nyob hauv plawv ntawm peb lub teb chaws thiab nej raug saib xyuas zoo zoo ib puag ncig, es nej thiaj tsis hais kom xa zaub mov rau peb, thiab neeg tuaj txhawb peb tej tub rog?
- 20 Nej puas tau hnov qab tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv tej lus txib lawm? Muaj tseeb tiag, nej puas tau hnov qab txoj kev raug txhom ntawm nej tej yawg koob lawm? Nej puas tau hnov qab ntau zaus uas peb tau raug cawm dim ntawm peb tej yeeb ncuab tes los lawm?
- 21 Los sis nej puas xav hais tias tus Tswv tseem yuav cawm peb, thaum uas peb zaum twj ywm rau saum peb tej rooj zaum thiab tsis siv tej cuab yeej uas tus Tswv tau pub rau peb?
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, nej tseem yuav zaum tub nkeeg ntsuav thaum txhiab txhiab leej cov ntawd twb vij nej lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kaum tawm txhiab leej, cov uas kuj zaum tub nkeeg ntsuav thiab, thaum uas muaj txhiab txhiab leej uas nyob ib puag ncig ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av tab tom raug tua los ntawm ntaj, muaj tseeb tiag, tau raug mob thiab los ntshav no los?
- 23 Nej puas xav tias Vajtswv yuav ntsia nej tsis muaj txim thaum uas nej tseem zaum twj ywm thiab pom tej yam no los? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej, Tsis yog li ntawd. Nim no kuv xav kom nej nco ntsoov tias Vajtswv tau hais tias yuav tsum xub ntxuav tej tais tej phiab sab hauv tso, thiab mam ntxuav tej tais tej phiab sab nraud.
- 24 Thiab nim no, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim txog tej uas nej tau ua lawm xwb, thiab pib sawv thiab ua hauj lwmm, thiab xa zaub mov thiab neeg rau peb, thiab rau Hilamas, xwv kom nws yuav txhawb tau feem ntawm peb lub teb chaws uas nws rov muab tau, thiab xwv kom peb yuav rov txeeb tau peb tej av uas tshuav nyob rau feem av no, saib seb nws yuav tsum nyog tias peb yuav tsum tsis txhob tawm tsam nrog cov Neeg Lamas ntxiv mus txog thaum peb tau xub ntxuav peb tej tais tej phiab sab hauv tso, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tej thawj coj ntawm peb cov nom tswv.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

25 Thiab tsuas yog nej yuav muab rau kuv yam thov hauv kuv tsab ntawv, thiab tawm tuaj thiab ua rau kuv pom ib qho nplooj siab tseeb ntawm kev ywj pheej, thiab sib zog txhawb thiab txhim kho peb cov tub rog, thiab pub zaub mov rau lawv rau lawv txoj kev txhawb zog, saib seb kuv yuav cia ib feem ntawm kuv cov neeg ywj pheej tswj tuav feem av ntawm peb thaj av no, thiab kuv yuav tseg lub dag zog thiab Vajtsvwm tej koob hmoov rau saum lawv, kom tsis txhob muaj lwm yam hwj chim yuav muaj peev xwm tawm tsam tau lawv—

26 Thiab li no los vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg heev, thiab lawv tej kev ua siab ntev nyiaj lawv tej kev txom nyem—

27 Thiab kuv yuav los rau tom nej, thiab yog muaj leej twg hauv nej uas muaj lub siab xav tau txoj kev ywj pheej, muaj tseeb tiag, yog tshuav ib nyuag qhov hmoov ywj pheej seem, saib seb kuv yuav txhib kom muaj kev ntseeg siab nyob hauv nej, mus kom txog thaum cov uas xav siv hwj chim thiab cai yuav rais los mus tu noob.

28 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb kuv yeej tsis ntshai nej tej hwj chim los sis nej tej cai li, tiam sis kuv ntshai tus uas yog kuv tus Vajtsvwm; thiab yeej raws li nws tej lus txib tias kom kuv nqa kuv rab ntaj tiv thaiv txoj kev ntseeg ntawm kuv lub teb chaws, thiab vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj es peb thiaj tau raug txoj kev ploj ntau.

29 Saib seb yog sij hawm lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, lub sij hawm twb txog nim no lawm, ces tsuas yog nej yuav txhib nej tus kheej los tiv thaiv nej lub teb chaws thiab nej tej me nyuam xwb, vim rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev txim lij twb dai rawv rau saum nej; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yuav poob los rau nej thiab xyuas nej kom mus txog thaum nej puas tsuaj huv tib si mus.

30 Saib seb, kuv tos txoj kev pab ntawm nej; thiab, tsuas yog nej yuav tuaj pab rau peb txoj kev dim pa xwb, saib seb, kuv yuav los tom nej, uas nyob rau hauv thaj av Xalahas, thiab xuas ntaj tsuav nej, kawg tias kom nej yuav muaj tsis taus hwj chim ntxiv pheej nres txoj kev loj hlob ntawm cov neeg no txoj kev ntseeg txoj kev ywj pheej.

31 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv yuav tsis cia kom nej muaj sia nyob thiab hlob muaj zog nyob hauv nej tej kev tsis ncaj ua kom nws cov neeg ncaj ncees puas tsuaj mus.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

32 Saib seb, nej tseem xav tias tus Tswv yuav tseg nej thiab los rau txim rau cov Neeg Lamas, qhov uas yog lawv tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai uas tau ua kom lawv muaj kev ntxub, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws tau raug muab ua phem ob npaug los ntawm cov uas tau ntseev siab ntawm peb mus, thaum nej txoj kev tsis ncaj yog vim nej tej kev nyiam kom muaj hwj chim thiab tej yam tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb no los?

33 Nej yeej paub tias nej ua txhaum Vajtswv tej kev cai, thiab nej yeej paub tias nej muab lawv tsuj rau hauv nej qab xib taws. Saib seb, tus Tswv hais rau kuv tias: Yog cov uas nej tau tsa los ua nej tej tswv xeev tsis kam hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj, ces nej yuav tsum nce mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv.

34 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv, Maulaunais, tau raug yuam, raws li txoj kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi tias yuav coj kuv tus Vajtswv tej lus txib; yog li ntawd kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum mloog Vajtswv txoj lus, thiab cia li nrawm nroos xa nej tej khoom noj khoom siv thiab nej tej neeg tuaj rau kuv, thiab rau Hilamas.

35 Thiab saib seb, yog nej tsis ua li no kuv yuav los xyuas nej sai heev; vim saib seb, Vajtswv yuav tsis cia kom peb piam sij vim txoj kev tshaib; yog li ntawd nws yeej yuav muab nej tej zaub mov rau peb, txawm yog yuav tsum raug xyuas ntaj. Nim no xyuas kom nej ua tau tiav li Vajtswv txoj lus.

36 Saib seb, kuv yog Maulaunais, nej tus thawj nom peb. Kuv tsis nrhiav hwj chim, tiam sis yuav rub kom nws qis los. Kuv tsis nrhiav kom muaj meej mom ntawm lub ntiaj teb, tiam sis rau lub yeeb koob ntawm kuv tus Vajtswv, thiab txoj kev ywj pheej thiab txoj kev nyab xeeb ntawm kuv lub teb chaws. Thiab li no kuv thiaj kaw kuv tsab ntawv.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

Amas 61

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias tsis ntev tom qab uas Maulaunais tau xa nws tsab ntawv mus rau tus thawj tswv xeev, nws tau txais ib tsab ntawv ntawm Peholas, tus thawj tswv xeev. Thiab cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau txais:
- 2 Kuv, Peholas, tus uas yog tus thawj tswv xeev ntawm thaj av no, yuav tau xa cov lus no rau Maulaunais, tus uas yog tus thawj nom peb kav cov tub rog. Saib seb, kuv hais rau koj, Maulaunais, tias kuv yeej tsis xyiv fab rau koj tej kev txom nyem heev ko, muaj tseeb tiag, nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab heev.
- 3 Tiam sis saib seb, yeej muaj cov uas xyiv fab rau nej tej kev txom nyem, muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau sawv ntxeev siab tawm tsam kuv, thiab kuv cov neeg uas yog neeg ywj pheej, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cov uas tau sawv ntxeev siab mas muaj coob heev.
- 4 Thiab nws yog cov uas tau nrhiav txeeb lub rooj txiav txim ntawm kuv uas tau yog cov uas ua kom muaj txoj kev phem loj no; vim lawv tau siv tej lus ua txuj ntxias loj, thiab lawv ntxias tau ntau tus neeg tej siab mus lawm, qhov uas yuav ua kom muaj kev mob txom nyem nyob hauv peb; lawv tau tuav peb tej khoom noj khoom siv thiab tau hem peb cov neeg ywj pheej xwv kom lawv tsis kam tuaj cuag koj.
- 5 Thiab saib seb, lawv tau raws kuv khiav tawm ntawm lawv mus, thiab kuv tau khiav mus rau thaj av Khede-oos, nrog cov neeg coob npaum li uas kuv nrhiav tau.
- 6 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau xa ib tsab xov thooob plaws rau thaj av phab no; thiab saib seb, lawv tab tom sib sau txhua hnuv tuaj rau peb, rau lawv tej cuab yeej, ntawm kev tiv thaiv rau lawv lub teb chaws thiab lawv txoj kev ywj pheej, thiab pauj txiaj ntsig rau cov uas ua txhaum rau peb lawm.
- 7 Thiab lawv tau tuaj cuag peb, kawg tias cov uas tau sawv ntxeev siab tawm tsam peb tau raug muab tso rau ntawm kev txhaum loj, muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv ntshai peb thiab tsis kam tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb.

Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 Lawv txeeb tau thaj av, los sis lub nroog, Xalahas lawm; lawv tau tsa ib tug vaj ntxwv kav lawv, thiab nws tau sau ntawv mus rau cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv, uas nws tau koom teg nrog nws; hauv kev koom teg ntawd nws tau yeem tswj tuav lub nroog Xalahas, nws xav tias qhov kev tswj tuav ntawd yuav muab peev xwm rau cov Neeg Lamas mus ntau tau cov zos uas seem tshuav ntawm thaj av, thiab nws yuav raug muab ua vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg no thaum uas cov Neeg Lamas kov yeej lawm.

9 Thiab nim no, nyob hauv koj tsab ntawv koj tau hais hnyav zog rau kuv, tiam sis nws tsis ua li cas; kuv tsis npau taws, tiam sis tsuas zoo siab rau koj txoj kev muaj lub siab zoo. Kuv, Pheholas, tsis nrhiav hwj chim, tsuas yog yuav rov muab kom tau kuv lub rooj txiav txim xwv kom kuv yuav ceev tau tej kev muaj cai thiab txoj kev ywj siab ntawm kuv cov neeg xwb. Kuv tus ntsuj plig yeej tseem sawv ruaj nres hauv txoj kev ywj siab uas Vajtswv tau ua rau peb dim ntawd.

10 Thiab nim no, saib seb, peb yuav tawm tsam txoj kev phem txawm yog yuav muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog. Peb yuav tsis tua cov Neeg Lamas yog lawv yuav nyob twj ywm hauv lawv thaj av.

11 Peb yuav tsis tua peb cov kwv tij yog lawv tsis sawv ntseev siab thiab nqa ntaj tuaj tawm tsam peb.

12 Peb yeej yuav ywj cia peb tus kheej mus rau lub nra ua qhev yog hais tias qhov ntawd txaus rau Vajtswv txoj kev txim lij, los sis yog tias nws yuav txib kom peb ua li ntawd.

13 Tiam sis saib seb nws tsis tau txib kom peb yuav ywj peb tus kheej rau peb tej yeeb ncuab, tiam sis kom peb yuav muab peb txoj kev ntseeg rau hauv nws, thiab nws yuav cawm peb dim.

14 Yog li ntawd, kuv tus kwv tij, Maulaunais uas kuv hlub es, cia peb tawm tsam qhov phem, thiab tej yam phem uas peb tsis muaj peev xwm tawm tsam nrog peb tej lus, muaj tseeb tiag, ib yam li tej kev ntseev siab thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, cia peb tawm tsam lawv nrog peb tej ntaj, xwv kom peb yuav rov tau peb txoj kev ywj pheej, kom peb yuav zoo siab nyob hauv txoj kev muaj cai ua tau ntawm peb lub koom txoos, thiab hauv txoj kev ntseeg ntawm peb tus Txhiv Dim thiab peb tus Vajtswv.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

- 15 Yog li ntawd, nrog koj ib co neeg los nrawm nroos rau kuv, thiab tseg cov seem tshuav rau Lihais thiab Thi-akhas saib; muab hwj chim rau nkawd koj npluav rog uas nyob phab av ntawm ko, raws li Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, tus uas kuj yog tus Ntsuj Plig ntawm txoj kev ywj pheej thiab uas nyob hauv lawv.
- 16 Saib seb kuv tau xa me ntsis khoom noj khoom siv mus rau lawv lawm, kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij mus txog thaum koj los tau rau kuv.
- 17 Sau txhua lub zog li koj yuav sau tau thaum koj los ntawm no, thiab peb yuav mus tawm tsam cov neeg ntxeev siab ntawd nrawm nroos, nrog lub zog ntawm peb tus Vajtswv raws li txoj kev ntseeg uas muaj nyob hauv peb.
- 18 Thiab peb yuav txeeb kom tau lub nroog Xalahelas, xwv kom peb yuav muab tau zaub mov ntxiv xa tawm mus rau Lihais thiab Thi-akhas; muaj tseeb tiag, peb yuav tawm mus tawm tsam lawv nyob hauv lub zog ntawm tus Tswv, thiab peb yuav muab ib qho kawg rau txoj kev phem loj no.
- 19 Thiab nim no, Maulaunais, kuv xyiv fab uas tau txais koj tsab ntawv, vim kuv tau txhawj txog saib peb yuav ua dab tsi, xyov puas yuav ncaj rau peb mus tawm tsam peb cov kwv tij.
- 20 Tiam sis koj tau hais tias, yog lawv yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim ces tus Tswv tau txib koj kom koj yuav tsum mus tawm tsam lawv.
- 21 Xyuas kom koj yuav txhawb Lihais thiab Thi-akhas zog nyob hauv tus Tswv; qhia rau nkawd kom tsis txhob ntshai, vim Vajtswv yuav cawm lawv dim, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho cov uas sawv ruaj nrees hauv txoj kev ywj siab uas Vajtswv tau ua rau lawv dim. Thiab nim no kuv kaw kuv tsab ntawv rau kuv tus kwv tij, Maulaunais uas kuv hlub.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

Amas 62

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Maulaunais tau txais tsab ntawv no nws lub siab tau muaj zog tuaj, thiab tau raug muaj txoj kev xyiv fab puv npo vim yog Pheholas txoj kev ntseeg, tias nws kuj tsis tau yog ib tug neeg ntseev siab rau txoj kev ywj pheej thiab txoj kev ntseeg ntawm nws lub teb chaws.
- 2 Tiam sis nws kuj tau nyuaj siab heev vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm cov uas tau raws Pheholas tawm ntawm lub rooj txiav txim, muaj tseeb tiag, tau nyuaj siab vim yog cov uas tau ntseev siab tawm tsam lawv lub teb chaws thiab lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau coj ib co neeg tsis coob, raws li Pheholas siab xav, thiab tau muab cia rau Lihais thiab Thi-akhas saib xyuas nws cov tub rog uas seem tshuav, thiab nws tau mus rau tom thaj av Khede-oos.
- 4 Thiab nws tau tsa tus chij ntawm txoj kev ywj siab rau txhua qhov chaw uas nws tau nkag mus, thiab sau tau zog ntau npaum li nws ua tau thaum nws mus rau tom thaj av Khede-oos.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias txhiab txhiab tus tau sau los rau hauv nws txoj kev coj, thiab tau nqa lawv tej ntaj tiv thaiv lawv txoj kev ywj pheej, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tau los mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev.
- 6 Thiab li no, thaum Maulaunais tau sau tau tag nrho cov neeg li li nws ua tau thaum nws mus, nws tau los rau hauv thaj av Khede-oos; thiab tau muab nws cov tub rog los koom nrog Pheholas cov lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co muaj zog heev, twb muaj zog dua li Pakas cov neeg, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv ntawm cov neeg ntseev siab ntawd uas tau raws cov neeg ywj pheej tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahelas thiab txeeb tau thaj av.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais thiab Pheholas tau nqis nrog lawv tej tub rog mus rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau tawm mus tawm tsam lub nroog, thiab tau ntsib Pakas cov neeg, kawg tias lawv tau los ua rog.
- 8 Thiab saib seb, Pakas tau raug tua thiab nws cov neeg tau raug txhom ua neeg raug txim, thiab Pheholas tau rov qab txum tim rau nws lub rooj txiav txim.

Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

- 9 Thiab Pakas cov neeg tau txais lawv tej txim, raws li txoj kev cai, thiab cov neeg-vaj ntxwv uas tau raug txhom yav tag los thiab raug pov rau hauv qhov taub; thiab lawv tau raug tua raws li txoj kev cai; muaj tseeb tiag, Pakas cov neeg thiab cov neeg-vaj ntxwv ntawd, cov uas tau tsis kam nqa cuab yeej tiv thaiv lawv lub teb chaws, tiam sis tseem tawm tsam nws, tau raug muab tua.
- 10 Thiab li no nws tau rais los tsim nyog tias txoj kev cai no yuav tsum nruj kom ceev tau txoj kev nyab xeeb ntawm lawv lub teb chaws; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tus twg uas nrhiav pom tsis kam yuav lawv txoj kev ywj pheej tau raug muab tua nrawm nroos raws li txoj kev cai.
- 11 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais; Maulaunais thiab Pheholas tau rov qab muab txoj kev nyab xeeb txum tim rau thaj av Xalahelas, rau hauv lawv cov neeg, tau muab kev tuag rau tag nrho cov uas tsis ncaj rau txoj kev ntseeg txoj kev ywj pheej.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib peb caug thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, Maulaunais tau kom xa tej khoom noj khoom siv nrawm nroos, thiab xa ib pab tub rog rau txhiab leej mus rau Hilamas, mus pab nws ceev feem av ntawd.
- 13 Thiab nws kuj tau kom xa ib pab tub rog rau txhiab leej, nrog zaub mov noj txaus hlo, mus rau Lihais thiab Thi-akhas cov tub rog. Thiab tau muaj tias tau ua li no kom mus tiv thaiv thaj av ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais thiab Pheholas, tau tseg ib pab neeg coob heev cia rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, nkawd tau nrog ib pab neeg coob heev mus rau tom thaj av Nifaihas, tau txiav txim siab mus ntaus cov Neeg Lamas uas nyob hauv lub nroog ntawd.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas lawv tab tom mus rau tom thaj av, lawv txhom tau ib pab neeg coob heev ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau muab lawv ib txhia tua, thiab txeeb tau lawv tej khoom noj thiab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv txhom tau lawv lawm, lawv tau kom lawv khi ib lo lus tias lawv yuav tsis nqa lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais ib zaug ntxiv lawm.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

- 17 Thiab thaum uas lawv tau khi lo lus no tas lawm lawv tau xa lawv mus nrog Amoos cov neeg nyob, thiab lawv muaj kwv yees li plaub txhiab leej uas tsis tau raug tua.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum uas lawv muab lawv xa mus lawm lawv tau rov taug lawv txoj kev mus rau tom thaj av Nifaihas. Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau los txog lub nroog Nifaihas lawm, lawv rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub rau hauv tej tiaj Nifaihas, uas nyob ze lub nroog Nifaihas.
- 19 Nim no Maulaunais tau xav kom cov Neeg Lamas tawm tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv, nyob saum tej tiaj; tiam sis cov Neeg Lamas, paub txog lawv txoj kev muaj zog heev, thiab tau pom lawv cov neeg coob heev, yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam tawm tuaj tawm tsam lawv; yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam tuaj ua rog nyob rau hnuv ntawd.
- 20 Thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj, Maulaunais tau tawm mus hauv hmo uas tsaus tsaus, thiab tau nce mus rau saum hau ntsa loog soj saib cov Neeg Lamas tau teeb lawv tej yeej nrog lawv tej tub rog rau phab twg ntawm lub nroog.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau nyob rau sab hnuv tuaj, ze ntawm lub rooj nkag; thiab lawv tag nrho tau tsaug zog. Thiab nim no Maulaunais tau rov qab los cuag nws cov tub rog, thiab tau kom lawv npaj tej hlua khov thiab tej ntaiv sai sai, coj mus tuam saum hau ntsa loog mus rau sab hauv ntsa loog.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais tau kom nws cov neeg tawm mus thiab nce mus rau saum hau ntsa loog, thiab cia lawv nqis mus rau hauv lub nroog sab hauv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb mus rau sab hnuv poob, qhov uas cov Neeg Lamas tsis teeb yeej nrog lawv tej tub rog.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tag nrho tau nqis mus rau hauv lub nroog nyob rau thaum tsaus ntuj, los ntawm lawv tej hlua khov thiab lawv tej ntaiv; li no thaum sawv ntxov tuaj tag nrho lawv tau nyob hauv tej ntsa loog sab hauv lawm.
- 24 Thiab nim no, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau tsim thiab tau pom tias Maulaunais cov tub rog twb nyob ntsa loog sab hauv lawm, lawv tau ceeb loj kawg li, kawg tias lawv tau khiav tawm ntawm lub rooj vag mus.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

- 25 Thiab nim no thaum Maulaunais pom tias lawv tau tab tom khiav ua ntej nws, nws tau kom nws cov neeg tawm mus tawm tsam lawv, thiab tau tua ntau leej, thiab vij tau ntau leej, thiab tau txhom lawv ua neeg raug txim; thiab lawv cov uas seem tau khiav mus rau hauv thaj av Maulaunais, uas nyob hauv tej ciam teb ze ntug dej hiav txwv.
- 26 Li no Maulaunais thiab Pheholas rov txeeb tau lub nroog Nifaihas yam tsis tau xiam ib tug neeg li; thiab cov Neeg Lamas muaj coob leej uas tau raug tua.
- 27 Nim no tau muaj tias ntau leej ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas yog cov neeg raug txim tau xav mus koom nrog cov neeg Amoos thiab rais ua ib co neeg ywj siab.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias txhua tus uas xav tau, tau pub rau lawv raws li lawv siab xav.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas uas raug txim tau mus koom nrog Amoos cov neeg, thiab tau pib ua hauj lwm hnyav heev, khawb av, cog tag nrho txhua yam noob, thiab tej pab yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu txhua yam; thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais lub nra loj thiaj tau sib; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau dim ntawm txoj kev zov tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas uas raug txim.
- 30 Nim no tau muaj tias Maulaunais, tom qab uas nws rov txeeb tau lub nroog Nifaihas, txhom tau neeg raug txim ntau, qhov uas tau ua rau cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tsawg lawm ntau, thiab rov tau ntau tus cov Neeg Nifais uas tau raug txhom ua neeg raug txim, qhov uas tau txhawb Maulaunais cov tub rog zog kawg nkaus li; yog li ntawd Maulaunais tau tawm ntawm thaj av Nifaihas mus rau thaj av Lihais.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau pom tias Maulaunais tau tab tom tuaj tawm tsam lawv, lawv tau rov qab txhawj dua thiab tau khiav ua ntej Maulaunais cov tub rog.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais thiab nws cov tub rog tau raws lawv qab ib lub nroog rau ib lub nroog, mus txog thaum lawv mus ntsib Lihais thiab Thiakhas; thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav ntawm Lihais thiab Thiakhas, nqis mus rau nram tej ciam teb ze ntug hiav txwv, mus txog thaum lawv tau los rau thaj av Maulaunais.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephiah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephiah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

- 33 Thiab tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog tau sib sau ua ke, kawg tias lawv tag nrho tau ua ib pab rau hauv thaj av Maulaunais. Nim no, Amauloos, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv, kuj tau nrog lawv thiab.
- 34 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais thiab Lihais thiab Thi-akhas tau teeb yeej nrog lawv tej tub rog nyob ib puag ncig hauv tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Maulaunais, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas tau raug vij nyob hauv tej ciam teb ze hav zoov uas nyob sab nram hav, thiab nyob hauv tej ciam teb ze hav zoov uas nyob sab hnub tuaj.
- 35 Thiab li no lawv tau teeb yeej rau hmo ntawd. Vim saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas kuj tau lim vim yog txoj kev mus deb; yog li ntawd lawv tsis tau txiav txim siab yuav sim siv ib yam tswv yim thaum tsaus ntuj, tsuas yog Thi-akhas xwb; vim nws tau npau taws heev nrog Amauloos, npaum cuag tias nws tau suav tias Amauloos, thiab Amalikhaiyas nws tus tij laug, tau yog qhov uas ua kom muaj npluav rog loj thiab tsis paub kawg uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm lawv thiab cov Neeg Lamas, qhov uas tau muaj tsov rog thiab nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab muaj kev tshaib nqhis ntau kawg nkaus.
- 36 Thiab tau muaj tias Thi-akhas hauv nws txoj kev npau taws tau tawm mus rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas lub yeej, thiab nws tau nqis cov ntsa loog ntawm lub nroog. Thiab nws tau nqa ib txog hlua mus, ib qho chaw rau ib qho chaw, kawg tias nws nrhiav tau tus vaj ntxwv; thiab nws tau nkaug ib rab hmuav rau nws, uas tau chob nws ze ntawm lub siab. Tiam sis saib seb, tus vaj ntxwv tau tsa nws cov tub qhe ua ntej nws tuag, kawg tias lawv tau caum Thi-akhas, thiab tau muab nws tua.
- 37 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Lihais thiab Maulaunais tau paub tias Thi-akhas tau tuag lawm nkawd tau nyuaj siab heev; vim saib seb, nws yog ib tug neeg uas tau tawm tsam yam tsis ntshai kiag rau nws lub teb chaws, muaj tseeb tiag, yog ib tug phooj ywg tseeb rau txoj kev ywj siab; thiab nws tau raug ntau yam kev txom nyem mob heev kawg nkaus. Tiam sis saib seb, nws tau tuag lawm, thiab tau mus txoj kev uas tag nrho tej neeg ntiaj teb mus.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

38 Nim no tau muaj tias tag kis Maulaunais tau tawm mus, thiab tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, kawg tias lawv tau tua lawv tuag coob heev; thiab lawv tau raws lawv tawm ntawm thaj av mus; thiab lawv tau khiav, npaum tias lawv twb tsis rov qab los tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd lawm.

39 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais; thiab li no lawv tau muaj tsov rog, thiab nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog, thiab kev tshaib nqhis, thiab kev txom nyem, tau ncuu ntau xyoo.

40 Thiab tau muaj tej kev tua neeg, thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab tej kev ntseev siab, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev tsis ncaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais; txawm li ntawd los rau cov neeg uas ncaj ncees, muaj tseeb tiag, vim yog tej kev thov Vajtswv ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees, lawv tseem dim kev puas tsuaj.

41 Tiam sis saib seb, vim yog qhov ncuu ntev heev ntawm npluav rog uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas, ntau tus tau rais los mus ua neeg tawv, vim yog qhov ncuu ntev heev ntawm npluav rog; thiab ntau tus tau txo hwj chim vim yog lawv tej kev txom nyem, kawg tias lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim rau Vajtswv, twb txo hwj chim kawg nkaus li.

42 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas Maulaunais tau txhim kho tej feem av uas nyob qhib lug rau cov Neeg Lamas, mus txog thaum uas lawv muaj zog tsaus lawm, nws tau rov qab los rau lub nroog Xalahelas; thiab Hilamas los kuj tau rov qab los mus rau qhov chaw uas yog nws qub txeeg qub teg; thiab tau rov qab ua muaj kev nyab xeeb dua nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais.

43 Thiab Maulaunais tau tso txoj kev txib nws cov tub rog rau hauv nws tus tub tes, tus uas npe hu ua Maulaunaihas; thiab nws tau mus so nyob hauv nws lub tsev xwv kom nws yuav tau siv nws lub neej uas seem tshuav nyob kaj siab lug.

44 Thiab Peholas tau rov qab mus rau nws lub rooj txiav txim; thiab Hilamas tau rov qab ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau cov neeg dua; vim yog muaj tej kev tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg ntau thiaj li tsim nyog tias yuav tsum tau rov ua dua txoj kev cai nyob hauv lub koom txoos.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, inso-much that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

45 Yog li ntawd, Hilamas thiab nws cov kwv tij tau tawm mus, tau tshaj tawm Vajtswv txoj lus muaj hwj chim heev rau txoj kev qhia neeg coob leej txog lawv tej kev phem, qhov ntawd tau ua rau lawv hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab mus ua kev cai raus dej rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.

46 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rov txhim tsa Vajtswv lub koom txoos dua, nyob thoob plaws txhua thaj av.

47 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau ua tej kev qhia ntsig txog txoj kev cai. Thiab lawv tej neeg txiav txim, thiab lawv tej thawj tub txiav txim tau raug xaiv.

48 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau pib huaj vam dua nyob hauv thaj av, thiab tau pib coob ntxiv thiab tau rais los mus muaj zog heev nyob hauv thaj av dua. Thiab lawv tau hlob nplua nuj heev.

49 Tiam sis txawm tias lawv nplua nuj, los sis lawv muaj zog, los sis lawv huaj vam, lawv yeej tsis tau khav txiv; thiab lawv kuj tsis qeeb los nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv; tiam sis lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim rau nws heev kawg nkaus.

50 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yeej nco ntsoov tej yam tseem ceeb heev uas tus Tswv tau ua rau lawv lawm, tias nws tau cawm lawv dim ntawm txoj kev tuag, thiab ntawm tej kev ua qhev, thiab ntawm tej qhov taub, thiab ntawm tag nrho txhua yam kev txom nyem, thiab nws tau cawm lawv dim ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes.

51 Thiab lawv tau thov tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tsis tu ncuab li, kawg tias tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov rau lawv, raws li nws txoj lus, li ntawd lawv thiaj tau hlob muaj zog thiab huaj vam nyob hauv thaj av.

52 Thiab tau muaj tias tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no tau muaj tiav. Thiab Hilamas tau tuag, nyob rau hauv xyoo thib peb caug thiab tsib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Amas 63

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib peb caug thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, Sinploos tau khaws tej yam dawb ceev uas Amas tau muab rau Hilamas.
- 2 Thiab nws tau yog ib tug neeg ncaj, thiab nws tau mus li Vajtswv nyiam; thiab nws tau nrhiav ua zoo tsis tu ncuu, coj tej lus txib ntawm tus Tswv nws tus Vajtswv; thiab nws tus kwv los tib yam.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunais los kuj tau tuag tib yam. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib peb caug thiab xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tau muaj ib pab neeg coob coob, twb muaj li tsib txhiab thiab plaub puas leej, nrog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam, tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Xalahelas mus rau thaj av uas nyob sab qaum teb lawm.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Henkos, nws yog ib tug neeg xav paub lwm yam heev, yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau mus thiab tau txua ib lub nkoj loj heev rau nws, nyob rau ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm thaj av Huaj Vam, ze thaj av Quav Poj, thiab tau muab tso rau hauv hiav txwv sab hnub poob, ze ntawm ntu av nqaim uas coj mus rau thaj av sab qaum teb.
- 6 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj coob tug ntawm cov Neeg Nifais uas tau nkag mus rau hauv thiab tau nquam tawm mus nrog tej khoom noj khoom siv ntau, thiab kuj nrog coob tug poj niam thiab me nyuam; thiab lawv tau nquam mus rau sab qaum teb. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug thiab xya.
- 7 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo thib peb caug thiab yim, tus txiv neej no tau txua dua lwm cov nkoj. Thiab thawj lub nkoj kuj tau rov qab los, thiab muaj neeg coob ntxiv tau nkag rau hauv; thiab lawv kuj tau coj tej khoom noj khoom siv ntau, thiab tau rov qab mus dua rau thaj av sab qaum teb lawm.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias txawm tsis tau hnov txog lawv ib zaug ntxiv li lawm. Thiab peb xav tias lawv tau poob dej rau hauv hiav txwv tob lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias kuj tau muaj dua lwm lub nkoj tau nquam tawm mus lawm thiab; thiab txawm yog nws tau mus qhov twg lawm los peb tsis paub.

Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblön took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo no tau muaj neeg coob leej uas tau tawm mus rau pem thaj av sab qaum teb. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug thiab yim.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo thib peb caug thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, Sinploos los kuj tuag lawm thiab, thiab Khauli-atoos tau mus hauv ib lub nkoj mus rau thaj av sab qaum teb lawm, thauj tej khoom noj khoom siv mus rau cov neeg uas tau mus rau thaj av ped.
- 11 Yog li ntawd nws rais los tsim nyog rau Sinploos kom muab cov khoom dawb ceev ntawd, ua ntej nws tuag, rau Hilamas tus tub, uas hu ua Hilamas, tau hu lub npe raws li nws txiv lub.
- 12 Nim no saib seb, tag nrho tej ntawv sau uas nyob ntawm Hilamas tau raug muab sau cia thiab tau xa tawm mus rau tej neeg thoob plaws txhua thaj av, tsuas yog tshuav tej feem uas tau raug txib los ntawm Amas kom tsis txhob xa mus xwb.
- 13 Txawm li ntawd los, tej yam no yuav tsum raug muab ceev kom dawb huv, thiab tau muab cev nqis ib tiam neeg rau ib tiam neeg; yog li ntawd, nyob rau hauv xyoo no, lawv tau raug muab rau Hilamas, ua ntej Sinploos yuav tuag.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo no kuj tau muaj ib txhia neeg ntseev siab uas tau tawm mus rau cov Neeg Lamas lawm; thiab lawv tau raug txhib dua kom npau taws rau cov Neeg Nifais.
- 15 Thiab nyob rau hauv tib xyoo no lawv tau nqis nrog ib pab tub rog coob heev tuaj ua rog tawm tsam Maulaunaihas cov neeg, los sis tawm tsam Maulaunaihas cov tub rog, nyob hauv qhov ntawd lawv tau raug kov yeej thiab raug raws khiav rov qab mus rau lawv tej av dua, tau raug kev ploj loj heev.
- 16 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.
- 17 Thiab li no tau xaus zaj ntawm Amas, thiab Hilamas nws tus tub, thiab Sinploos, tus uas yog nws tus tub.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblón died also, and Coriantón had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblón to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblón.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblón, who was his son.

Hilamas Phau Ntawv

Ib zaj txog cov Neeg Nifais. Lawv tej kev ua rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab lawv tej kev ntxeev siab. Thiab kuj txog ntau tus yaj saub dawb huv tej kev qbia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, ua ntej txoj kev Khetos los, raws li tej ceev xwm txbeej ntauwm Hilamas, tus uas yog Hilamas tus tub, thiab kuj raws li tej ceev xwm txbeej ntauwm nws tej tub, nqis mus txog thaum lub caij Khetos los. Thiab ntau tus ntauwm cov Neeg Lamas raug bloov siab tsbiab. Ib zaj txog lawv txoj kev bloov siab tsbiab. Ib zaj txog txoj kev ncaj ncees ntauwm cov Neeg Lamas, thiab txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias ntauwm cov Neeg Nifais, raws li phau ceev xwm txbeej ntauwm Hilamas thiab nws tej tub, nqis mus txog thaum Khetos los, uas raug hu ua Hilamas phau ntauwm.

Hilamas 1

- 1 Thiab nim no saib seb, tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo plaub caug ntauwm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg, tau pib muaj teeb meem nyuaj heev nyob rau hauv cov Neeg Nifais.
- 2 Vim saib seb, Peholas tau tuag lawm, thiab tau mus txoj kev uas txhua tus neeg hauv ntiaj teb mus; yog li ntawd tau pib muaj ib qho kev sib cav nyuaj heev txog tus uas yuav los tau lub rooj txiav txim nyob hauv cov kwv tij, uas yog Peholas cov tub.
- 3 Nim no cov no yog lawv cov npe uas tau sib cav vim lub rooj txiav txim, cov uas kuj tau ua kom cov neeg sib cav sib ceg thiab: Peholas, Pha-eekhais, thiab Pakhumenais.
- 4 Nim no tag nrho Peholas cov tub tsis yog cov no xwb (vim nws tau muaj ntau leej), tiam sis cov no yog lawv cov uas tau sib cav sib ceg txeeb lub rooj txiav txim; yog li ntawd, lawv tau ua cov neeg tawg ua pib pab.
- 5 Txawm li ntawd los, tau muaj tias Peholas tau raug tsa los ntauwm cov neeg lub suab los ua tus thawj tub txiav txim thiab ib tug tswv xeev kav Nifais cov neeg.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias Pakhumenais, thaum nws tau pom tias nws txeeb tsis tau lub rooj txiav txim, nws tau koom nrog lub suab ntauwm cov neeg.

The Book of Helaman

An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.

Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

- 7 Tiam sis saib seb, Pha-eekhais, thiab feem ntawm cov neeg uas tau xav kom nws ua lawv tus tswv xeev, tau npau taws heev; yog li ntawd, nws twb yuav luag yaum kom cov neeg ntawd sawv ntseev siab tawm tsam lawv cov kwv tij.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws yuav luag ua li no, saib seb, nws tau raug txhom, thiab raug pom ncaj mus raws li cov neeg lub suab, thiab tau raug txim tuag; vim nws tau sawv ntseev siab thiab tau nrhiav rhuav txoj kev ywj siab ntawm cov neeg.
- 9 Nim no thaum cov neeg uas tau xav kom nws ua lawv tus tswv xeev tau pom tias nws tau raug txim tuag, yog li ntawd lawv tau npau taws, thiab saib seb, lawv tau xa ib tug hu ua Kisawkhumas mus rau lub rooj txiav txim ntawm Peholas, thiab tau tua Peholas thaum nws tseem zaum saum lub rooj txiav txim.
- 10 Thiab nws tau raug Peholas cov tub qhe raws qab; tiam sis saib seb, Kisawkhumas tau khiav ceev heev li tsis muaj neeg caum tau nws.
- 11 Thiab nws tau mus cuag cov uas tau xa nws, thiab lawv tag nrho tau nkag rau ib txoj kev khi lus, muaj tseeb tiag, tau twv ntuj los ntawm lawv tus Tsim uas kav ib txhis, tias lawv yuav tsis qhia ib tug twg tias Kisawkhumas tau tua Peholas.
- 12 Yog li ntawd Kisawkhumas tsis tau raug paub nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg, vim nws tau zais ntsej muag kom txhob muaj neeg paub thaum lub caij uas nws tau tua Peholas. Thiab Kisawkhumas thiab nws pab neeg, uas tau khi lus nrog nws, tau nyob sib xyaws rau hauv cov neeg, nyob li uas kom tsis muaj neeg nrhiav tau lawv tag nrho; tiam sis txhua tus uas tau raug nrhiav tau tau raug txim tuag.
- 13 Thiab nim no saib seb, Pakhumenais tau raug tsa, raws li cov neeg lub suab, los ua ib tug thawj tub txiav txim thiab ib tug tswv xeev, kav nws tus tij laugPeholas qhov chaw; thiab qhov ntawd tau yog raws li nws txoj kev muaj cai. Thiab tag nrho ib puas yam tsav no tau raug ua nyob rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav; thiab nws tau muaj qhov kawg.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo plaub caug thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, cov Neeg Lamas tau sau ib pab tub rog coob heev tuaj ua ke, thiab lawv tau npaj muaj ntaj, thiab liag thiab hneev, thiab xub, thiab tej phiaj thaiv taub hau, thiab tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab, thiab txhua yam phiaj huv tib si.
- 15 Thiab lawv tau rov nqis dua tuaj xwv kom lawv yuav tau ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab lawv tau raug coj los ntawm ib tug neeg uas npe hu ua Khauli-athumaws; thiab nws yog Xalahelas ib tug xeeb ntxwv; thiab nws tau yog ib tug neeg ntxeev siab ncaim ntawm cov Neeg Nifais; thiab nws tau yog ib tug neeg loj thiab muaj zog.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv, uas npe hu ua Thunpalos, tus uas yog Amauloos tus tub, tau xav tias Khauli-athumaws, tus uas tau yog ib tug neeg muaj zog, yuav sawv tawm tsam tau cov Neeg Nifais, nrog nws lub zog thiab nrog nws txoj kev txawj ntse heev, kawg tias yog tias xa nws mus nws yuav kov yeej cov Neeg Nifais—
- 17 Yog li ntawd nws tau txhib kom lawv npau taws, thiab nws tau sau nws tej tub rog tuaj ua ke, thiab nws tau tsa Khauli-athumaws ua lawv tus thawj coj, thiab tau kom lawv yuav tsum nqis mus rau nram thaj av Xalahelas ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias vim yog muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntau thiab muaj teeb meem ntau nyob hauv tej nom tswv, lawv tsis tau tso tej neeg saib xyuas txaus rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas; vim lawv tau xav tias cov Neeg Lamas yuav tsis kam tuaj rau hauv plawv ntawm lawv thaj av tawm tsam lub nroog loj Xalahelas ntawd.
- 19 Tiam sis tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau mus ua ntej nws cov tub rog uas coob coob, thiab tau tuaj rau hauv cov neeg ntawm lub nroog, thiab lawv txoj kev tuaj tau nrawm heev kawg nkaus uas tsis tau muaj ib lub caij rau cov Neeg Nifais sau lawv tej tub rog tuaj ua ke li.
- 20 Yog li ntawd Khauli-athumaws tau txiav cov uas zov lub rooj vag ntawm lub nroog vau, thiab tau nrog tag nrho nws cov tub rog mus rau hauv lub nroog, thiab lawv tau tua txhua tus uas nyom lawv, kawg tias lawv txeeb tau tag nrho lub nroog.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias Pakhumenais, tus uas yog thawj tub txiav txim, tau khiav ua ntej Khauli-athumaws, mus rau tom cov ntsa loog ntawm lub nroog. Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau tua nws teem sab ntsa loog, kawg tias nws tau tuag. Thiab li no thiaj tau kawg Pakhumenais lub neej.
- 22 Thiab nim no thaum Khauli-athumaws tau pom tias nws tau nyob hauv lub nroog Xalahelas, thiab tau pom tias cov Neeg Nifais tau khiav ua ntej lawv, thiab tau raug tua, thiab tau raug txhom, thiab tau raug pov rau hauv qhov taub, thiab tias nws txeeb tau qhov chaw tiv thaiv uas muaj zog tshaj plaws nyob hauv tag nrho tej av lawm, nws lub siab txawm muaj zog tuaj kawg tias nws twb yuav luag mus tawm tsam rau tag nrho thaj av.
- 23 Thiab nim no nws tsis tau nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas, tiam sis tau tawm mus nrog ib pab tub rog coob coob, ncaj nraim rau lub nroog Huaj Vam; vim nws tau txiav txim tawm mus thiab xuas ntaj tho nws txoj kev, xwv kom nws yuav txeeb tau feem sab pem toj ntawm thaj av.
- 24 Thiab, tau xav tias lawv qhov chaw muaj zog tshaj yog nyob hauv plawv ntawm thaj av, yog li ntawd nws tau tawm mus, tsis pub kiag sij hawm rau lawv sib sau tuaj ua ke li tsuas yog tshuav tej pab tsawg tsawg xwb; thiab zoo li no lawv thiaj tau tawm tsam lawv thiab txiav lawv vau rau hauv av.
- 25 Tiam sis saib seb, Khauli-athumaws txoj kev mus hla hauv plawv thaj av ntawm no tau muab zog zoo heev kawg nkaus rau Maulaunaihas kov yeej lawv, txawm tias cov Neeg Nifais coob leej heev tau raug tua.
- 26 Vim saib seb, Maulaunaihas tau xav tias cov Neeg Lamas yuav tsis kam tuaj rau hauv plawv ntawm thaj av, tiam sis xav tias lawv yuav tawm tsam tej nroog uas nyob ib ncig ntawm tej ciam teb ib yam li lawv sij tau ua los lawm; yog li ntawd Maulaunaihas tau kom lawv tej tub rog uas muaj zog tswj tuav tej feem ib ncig ntawm tej ciam teb.
- 27 Tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau ntshai raws li nws siab xav, tiam sis lawv tau tuaj rau hauv plawv ntawm thaj av, thiab txeeb tau lub tuam ceeb nroog uas yog lub nroog Xalahelas, thiab tau mus dhau rau tej feem tseem ceeb ntawm thaj av, tua neeg tuag coob heev, tag nrho txiv neej, poj niam, thiab me nyuam yau, txeeb tau ntau lub nroog thiab ntau qhov chaw tiv thaiv.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

- 28 Tiam sis thaum Maulaunaihas tau nrhiav paub qhov no, tam sim ntawd nws tau xa Lihais nrog ib pab tub rog uas nyob ib puag ncig mus huas lawv ntej ua ntej lawv mus txog thaj av Huaj Vam.
- 29 Thiab li no nws tau mus; thiab nws mus huas tau lawv ntej ua ntej lawv mus txog thaj av Huaj Vam, thiab ua rog rau lawv, kawg tias lawv tau pib thim rov qab mus rau thaj av Xalahas.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunaihas tau ntsib lawv thaum lawv thim rov qab, thiab tau ua rog rau lawv, kawg tias nws tau rais los mus ua ib npluav rog uas muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog heev; muaj tseeb tiag, ntau tus tau raug tua, thiab Khauli-athumaws kuj raug nrhiav pom nyob rau hauv cov uas raug tua tuag.
- 31 Thiab nim no, saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas thim tsis tau mus sab twg li, mus tsis tau rau sab pem toj, los sis sab nram hav, los sis sab hnuv tuaj, los sis sab hnuv poob, vim lawv raug vij txhua txhia sab los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais.
- 32 Thiab li no Khauli-athumaws tau koj cov Neeg Lamas ruam zis mus rau hauv plawv ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, kawg tias lawv tau raug nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais lub hwj chim, thiab nws tus kheej tau raug tua tuag, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau zwm lawv tus kheej rau hauv cov Neeg Nifais tes.
- 33 Thiab tau muaj tias Maulaunaihas rov txeeb tau lub nroog Xalahas dua, thiab tau cia kom cov Neeg Lamas uas raug txhom ua neeg raug txim ncaim ntawm thaj av mus hauv txoj kev nyab xeeb.
- 34 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib plaub caug thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

Hilamas 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo plaub caug thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tom qab Maulaunaihas tau tsim txoj kev nyab xeeb dua nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas, saib seb tsis muaj ib tug los txum lub rooj txiav tsim; yog li ntawd tau pib muaj ib qho kev sib cav dua nyob hauv cov neeg txog seb leej twg yuav los txum lub rooj txiav txim.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias Hilamas, tus uas yog Hilamas tus tub, tau raug tsa los txum lub rooj txiav txim, los ntawm cov neeg lub suab.
- 3 Tiam sis saib seb, Kisawkhumas, tus uas tau tua Peholas, tau nyas ntsoov yuav ua kom Hilamas puas tsuaj thiab; thiab nws tau raug pab los ntawm nws pab neeg, uas tau khi ib lo lus tias yuav tsum tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav paub txog nws txoj kev phem.
- 4 Vim tau muaj ib tug Nkadi-atoos, tus uas txawj hais lus ntau heev, thiab txawj dag ntxias heev, tau los coj txoj hauj lwm tua neeg thiab ua tub sab tub nyiag ntsiag to ntxiv mus; yog li ntawd nws tau rais los ua lawv tus thawj coj ntawm Kisawkhumas pab neeg.
- 5 Yog li ntawd nws tau ua txuj ntxias lawv, thiab Kisawkhumas thiab, tias yog lawv yuav cia nws rau hauv lub rooj txiav txim nws yuav pub rau lawv cov uas nyob hauv nws pab kom lawv yuav raug tso muaj hwj chim thiab cai nyob hauv cov neeg; yog li ntawd Kisawkhumas tau nrhiav ua kom Hilamas puas tsuaj.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tawm mus rau lub rooj txiav txim ua kom Hilamas puas tsuaj, saib seb Hilamas ib tug tub qhe, tau tawm yos hmo ntuj, thiab muab tau, los ntawm txoj kev zais ntsej muag, paub txog cov kev uas tau npaj los ntawm pab neeg no uas yuav ua kom Hilamas puas tsuaj—
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ntsib Kisawkhumas, thiab nws tau muab ib lub cim rau nws; yog li ntawd Kisawkhumas tau ua rau nws paub txog yam uas nws xav ua, tau xav kom nws coj nws mus rau lub rooj txiav txim xwv kom nws yuav tua tau Hilamas.

Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

- 8 Thiab thaum Hilamas tus tub qhe tau paub tag nrho Kisawkhumas siab, thiab yam uas nws xav ua yog tua neeg, thiab tag nrho cov uas yog nws pab kuj muaj tswv yim xav tua neeg, thiab ua tub sab, thiab ua kom muaj hwj chim, (thiab qhov no yog lawv txoj kev npaj ntsiag to, thiab lawv tej kev tuav hauv) Hilamas tus tub qhe tau hais rau Kisawkhumas tias: Cia wb mus rau tom lub rooj txiav txim.
- 9 Nim no qhov no tau ua rau Kisawkhumas zoo siab heev, vim nws tau xav tias nws yuav ua tau li nws siab xav; tiam sis saib seb, Hilamas tus tub qhe, thaum nkawd tab tom mus rau tom lub rooj txiav txim, tau tib nkaug mus rau hauv Kisawkhumas lub siab, ces nws tau vau tuag yam tsis nroo li. Thiab nws tau khiav thiab tau qhia rau Hilamas tag nrho txhua yam uas nws tau pom, thiab tau hnov, thiab tau ua los lawm.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias Hilamas tau xa neeg tawm mus txhom pab neeg tub sab thiab cov neeg tua neeg ntsiag to no, xwv kom lawv yuav raug txiav txim mus raws li txoj kev cai.
- 11 Tiam sis saib seb, thaum Nkadi-atoos tau pom tias Kisawkhumas tsis rov qab los nws tau ntshai nyob tsam nws yuav raug puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd nws tau kom nws pab neeg yuav tsum raws nws qab. Thiab lawv tau khiav tawm ntawm thaj av, los ntawm ib txoj kev tsis muaj neeg paub, mus rau hauv hav zoov; thiab li no thaum Hilamas xa neeg mus txhom lawv thiaj nrhiav tsis tau lawv qhov twg hlo li.
- 12 Thiab yuav hais txog tus Nkadi-atoos no ntxiv mus tom ntej no. Thiab li no thiaj xaus xyoo thib plaub caug thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.
- 13 Thiab saib seb, nyob rau tom kawg ntawm phau ntawv no nej yuav pom tias tus Nkadi-atoos no tau ua txoj kev ntseeb tiag, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav luag tas nrho txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm Nifais cov neeg.
- 14 Saib seb kuv tsis tau hais tias tom kawg ntawm Hilamas phau ntawv, tiam sis kuv hais tom kawg ntawm Nifais phau ntawv, uas kuv tau muab tas nrho tej zaj uas kuv tau sau ntawd los.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

Hilamas 3

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab peb ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tsis tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg tsuas yog muaj me ntsis kev khav theeb uas nyob hauv lub koom txoos xwb, uas tau ua kom muaj me ntsis kev tsis sib haum nyob hauv cov neeg, tej kev ntawd tau raug kho kom zoo nyob rau thaum kawg xyoo thib plaub caug thiab peb.
- 2 Thiab tsis tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv cov neeg rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab plaub; thiab kuj tsis muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntau nyob hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab tsib.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab rau, muaj tseeb tiag, tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg ntau thiab kev ntseeb siab ntau; thiab vim muaj qhov ntawd tau muaj ib co neeg coob heev uas tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Xalabelas, thiab tau tawm mus rau thaj av sab qaum teb mus nyob rau pem thaj av.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau mus deb heev kawg nkaus li, kawg tias lawv tau los rau tej dej loj thiab ntau tus dej.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv tau faib mus rau hauv txhua qhov ntawm thaj av, mus rau txhua qhov uas tsis tau ciaj quav poj thiab tsis muaj ntoo, vim yog tej neeg coob uas twb tau nyob hauv thaj av ua ntej lawm.
- 6 Thiab nim no tsis muaj ib qho ntawm thaj av uas tsis muaj neeg nyob, tsuas yog tshuav tej qho uas tsis muaj ntoo; tiam sis vim yog txoj kev puas tsuaj loj ntawm cov neeg uas xub nyob hauv thaj av lawm thiaj raug hu ua thaj av quav poj.
- 7 Thiab vim tsis muaj ntoo ntau nyob rau saum thaj av, txawm li ntawd los cov neeg uas tau mus tau rais los ua ib cov neeg uas txawj siv hmoov zeb cib heev; yog li ntawd lawv tau xuas hmoov zeb cib los ua tej tsev uas lawv nyob.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau coob ntxiv thiab tau sib faib, thiab tau tawm ntawm thaj av sab qab teb mus rau thaj av sab qaum teb, thiab tau faib kawg tias lawv pib puv thooob plaws hauv lub ntiag teb, txij li hiav txwv sab qab teb mus rau hiav txwv sab qaum teb, txij li hiav txwv sab hnuv poob mus rau hiav txwv sab hnuv tuaj.

Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

9 Thiab cov neeg uas nyob rau hauv thaj av sab qaum teb tau nyob hauv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub, thiab hauv tej tsev hmoov zeb cib, thiab lawv tau cia txhua tus ntoo uas yuav tuaj rau saum thaj av tuaj xwv kom yuav loj, kom txog sij hawm lawv yuav muaj ntoo los ua lawv tej tsev, muaj tseeb tiag, ua lawv tej nroog, thiab lawv tej tuam tsev, thiab lawv tej tsev sab laj, thiab lawv tej chaw dawb huv, thiab tag nrho txhua yam ntawm lawv tej tsev.

10 Thiab tau muaj tias vim ntoo muaj tsawg heev nyob rau thaj av sab qaum teb, lawv tau xa ntau mus los ntawm txoj kev xuas nkoj thauj.

11 Thiab li no lawv pab tau cov neeg uas nyob rau thaj av sab qaum teb xwv kom lawv yuav ua tau ntau lub nroog, uas yog ntoo thiab hmoov zeb cib.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj cov neeg Amoos ntau leej, uas yog Neeg Lamas yug, kuj tau mus rau hauv thaj av no thiab.

13 Thiab nim no tau muaj ntau cov ceev xwm txheej tau sau txog tej keeb kwm ntawm cov neeg no, tau muaj ntau yam, hais txog lawv, los ntawm ntau leej ntawm cov neeg no.

14 Tiam sis saib seb, ib puas feem ntawm tej keeb kwm ntawm cov neeg no, muaj tseeb tiag, zaj hais txog cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Nifais, thiab lawv tej kev tsov kev rog, thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab tej kev ntseev siab, thiab lawv tej kev qhuab qhia, thiab lawv tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab lawv tej kev thauj khoom thiab lawv tej kev ua nkoj, thiab lawv tej kev ua tuam tsev, thiab tej tsev sab laj thiab lawv tej chaw dawb huv, thiab lawv tej kev ncaj ncees, thiab lawv tej kev phem, thiab lawv tej kev tua neeg, thiab lawv tej kev ua tub sab, thiab lawv tej kev ua lim hiam, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev qias thiab tej kev sib daj sib deev, tsis txaus ntim rau hauv phau ntawv no.

15 Tiam sis saib seb, muaj ntau phau ntawv thiab ntau phau ceev xwm txheej txhua yam, thiab lawv feem ntau tau raug ceev los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberies, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

16 Thiab lawv tau raug muab cev nqis ib tiam dhau rau ib tiam los ntwam cov Neeg Nifais, mus txog thaum lawv tau poob rau hauv txoj kev txhaum thiab tau raug muab tua, muab ua lim hiam, thiab raug plob tua, thiab raug raws khiav, thiab raug tua, thiab raug tawg ri niab mus rau saum lub ntiaj teb, thiab nyob xyaw nrog cov Neeg Lamas mus txog thaum tsis hu lawv ua cov Neeg Nifais ntxiv lawm, tau rais los mus ua neeg phem, thiab neeg qus, thiab neeg npau taws, muaj tseeb tiag, rais los mus tib yam li cov Neeg Lamas.

17 Thiab nim no kuv rov qab mus rau kuv zaj dua; yog li ntawd, yam uas kuv tau hais lawm tau dhau lawm tom qab uas tau muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg loj, thiab tej kev sib thab, thiab tej kev tsov rog, thiab tej kev ntxeev siab, nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg.

18 Xyoo thib plaub caug thiab rau ntwam cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav thiaj tau xaus;

19 Thiab tau muaj tias tseem tau muaj kev sib cav sib ceg loj heev nyob hauv thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab xya, thiab nyob hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab yim.

20 Txawm li ntawd los Hilamas tseem tau txum lub rooj txiav txim nrog txoj kev txim lij thiab txoj kev sib txig; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau mob siab coj tej kev cai, thiab tej kev txiav txim, thiab Vajtswv tej lus txib; thiab nws tau ua tej uas yog nyob ntwam Vajtswv lub qhov muag tsis tu ncuu; thiab nws tau mus raws li tej kev ntwam nws txiv, kawg tias nws tau vammeej nyob rau hauv thaj av.

21 Thiab tau muaj tias nws muaj ob tug tub. Nws tau muab lub npe Nifais rau tus hlob, thiab muab lub npe Lihais rau tus ntxawg. Thiab nkawd tau pib loj hlob rau tus Tswv.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias tej kev tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg tau pib tsum, me ntsis, nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, nyob rau thaum yuav kawg xyoo thib plaub caug thiab yim ntwam cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tau tsim muaj kev nyab xeeb tsis tu ncuu nyob hauv thaj av, tag nrho tiam sis tsuas tshuav tej kev tuav hauv ntsiag to uas Nkadi-atoos tus tub sab tau tsim nyob rau hauv feem av uas neeg nyob ntau zog, uas nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd cov uas ua hau ntawm cov nom tswv tseem tsis tau paub txog xwb; yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tsis tau raug ua kom puas tsuaj tawm ntawm thaj av mus.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv tib xyoo no tau muaj kev vam meej heev li nyob hauv lub koom txoos, kawg tias tau muaj txhiab txhiab leej uas tau los koom rau lub koom txoos thiab tau ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 25 Thiab lub koom txoos tau vam meej heev kawg nkaus, thiab tau muaj tej koob hmoov ntau kawg nkaus uas tau raug nchuav los rau saum cov neeg, kawg tias tej pov thawj hlob thiab tej xib hwb lawv tus kheej tau xav tsis thoob li.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv txoj hauj lwj tau vam meej rau txoj kev muab ntau leej los ua kev cai raus dej thiab koom nrog Vajtswv lub koom txoos, muaj tseeb tiag, kaum tawm txhiab leej li.
- 27 Li no peb pom tau tias tus Tswv yeej muaj siab hlob tshua rau tag nrho cov uas yuav, muaj lub siab tiag tiag, thov nws lub npe dawb huv.
- 28 Muaj tseeb tiag, li no peb pom tias rooj ntug ceeb tsheej yeej qhib rau tag nrho, txhua tus uas yuav ntseeg rau Yexus Khetos lub npe, tus uas yog Vajtswv tus Tub.
- 29 Muaj tseeb tiag, peb pom tias txhua tus uas kam, yeej tuav tau Vajtswv txoj lus, uas nrawm thiab muaj hwj chim, uas yuav rhuav tag nrho tej kev dag ntxias thiab tej ntxiab thiab tej kev npaj ua phem ntawm tus dab kom puas tsuaj, thiab yuav coj Khetos tus neeg mus txoj kev ti thiab nqaim hla tus kwj tob tob ntawm kev nyuaj siab uas kav ib txhis uas tau npaj nqos cov neeg phem—
- 30 Thiab lawv tej ntsuj plig mus txog, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej ntsuj plig uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, mus txog rau ntawm Vajtswv sab tes xis hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj, mus zaum nrog Anplaham, thiab Ixaj, thiab Yakhauj, thiab nrog tag nrho peb tej yawg koob dawb huv, tsis tawm mus ib zaug ntxiv li lawm.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianon the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, inso-much that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

31 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo no tau muaj kev zoo siab tsis tu ncuu hauv thaj av Xalahas, thiab nyob tag nrho ib cheeb tsam, thiab nyob tag nrho tej av uas cov Neeg Nifais nyob.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj kev nyab xeeb thiab kev xyiv fab heev kawg nkaus nyob rau hauv xyoo thib plaub caug thiab cuaj uas seem tshuav; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj tau muaj kev nyab xeeb thiab kev xyiv fab heev tsis tu ncuu nyob rau hauv xyoo thib tsib caug ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

33 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo thib tsib caug thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav kuj tau muaj kev nyab xeeb thiab, tsuas yog txoj kev khav theeb uas tau pib nkag los rau hauv lub koom txoos xwb—tsis yog los rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos, tiam sis yog los rau hauv tej siab ntawm cov neeg uas tau ua txuj hais tias yog cov uas nyob hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos—

34 Thiab lawv tau khav theeb heev, mus txog thaum pib tsim txom lawv cov kwv tij ntau leej. Nim no qhov no yog ib qho kev phem loj heev, uas tau ua rau cov neeg txo hwj chim feem coob raug tej kev tsim txom hnyav, thiab tiv dhau kev txom nyem ntau.

35 Txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tau nquag yoo mov thiab thov Vajtswv, thiab tau loj hlob muaj zog me ntsis thiab me ntsis tuaj nyob hauv lawv txoj kev txo hwj chim, thiab ruaj khov me ntsis thiab me ntsis tuaj nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, mus txog thaum lawv tus kheej muaj kev xyiv fab thiab kev nplij siab puv nkaus, muaj tseeb tiag, mus txog thaum lawv tej siab tau ntshiab thiab dawb huv, tau muaj txoj kev ua kom dawb huv vim yog lawv txoj kev cia lawv tej siab rau Vajtswv.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo thib tsib caug thiab ob kuj tau xaus muaj kev nyab xeeb thiab, tsuas yog tshuav tej kev khav theeb heev uas tau los rau hauv cov neeg tej siab; thiab tau muaj li ntawd los vim yog lawv txoj kev nplua nuj thiab lawv txoj kev vam meej heev nyob hauv thaj av; thiab nws tau loj hlob rau saum lawv ib hnuv dhau ib hnuv.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib tsib
caug thiab peb ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev
kav, Hilamas tau tuag lawm, thiab nws tus tub hlob
Nifais tau pib los kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.
Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txum lub rooj txiav txim
yam ncaj nces thiab sib txig; muaj tseeb tiag, nws
tau koj Vajtsvuj tej lus txib, thiab tau mus tej kev uas
nws txiv mus.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of
the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest
son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to
pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice
and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of
God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

Hilamas 4

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib tsib caug thiab plaub tau muaj kev ntseev siab ntau nyob hauv lub koom txoos, thiab kuj tau muaj ib qho kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv cov neeg, kawg tias tau muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog ntau heev.
- 2 Thiab feem neeg uas ntseev siab tau raug tua thiab tau raug raws tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab lawv tau mus cuag cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rau siab mus txhib cov Neeg Lamas kom mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais; tiam sis saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau ntshai heev, kawg tias lawv tsis kam mloog cov neeg ntseev siab ntawd tej lus.
- 4 Tiam sis tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo thib tsib caug thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tau muaj tej neeg ntseev siab uas tau mus ntawm cov Neeg Nifais mus rau tom cov Neeg Lamas; thiab lawv tau koom nrog lwm cov txhib kom lawv npau taws rau cov Neeg Nifais; thiab lawv tag nrho tau npaj ua rog xyoo ntawd.
- 5 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo thib tsib caug thiab xya lawv tau nqis tuaj ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais, thiab lawv tau pib txoj hauj lwm ntawm kev tuag; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias hauv xyoo tsib caug thiab yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav lawv muaj peev xwm txeeb tau thaj av Xalahas; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho tej av, twb mus txog tej av uas nyob ze thaj av Huaj Vam.
- 6 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais thiab Maulaunaihas tej tub rog twb tau raug raws mus rau hauv thaj av Huaj Vam.
- 7 Thiab nyob tod lawv tau tiv thaiv tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas, txij li hiav txwv sab hnuv poob, mus rau sab hnuv tuaj; nws yog mus kev taw ib hnuv rau cov Neeg Nifais, nyob rau ntawm txoj kab uas lawv tau tiv thaiv thiab lawv tej tub rog tau nyob thaiv lawv lub teb chaws sab pem toj.
- 8 Thiab li no cov Neeg Nifais uas ntseev siab, nrog txoj kev pab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tej tub rog uas coob heev, thiaj txeeb tau tag nrho cov Neeg Nifais tej av uas nyob sab qab teb. Thiab txhua yam no tau ua nyob hauv xyoo tsib caug thiab yim thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo rau caum ntwam cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, Maulaunaihas thiab nws cov tub rog tau muaj peev xwm txeeb tau ntau feem ntwam thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv rov txeeb tau ntau lub nroog uas tau poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes lawm.

10 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo rau caum thiab ib ntwam cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav lawv tau muaj peev xwm rov txeeb tau ib nrab ntwam tag nrho lawv tej av.

11 Nim no txoj kev poob loj ntwam cov Neeg Nifais no, thiab txoj kev poob tsam loj uas muaj nyob hauv lawv, yeej yuav tsis muaj yog tsis vim lawv tej kev phem thiab kev qias uas muaj nyob hauv lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws kuj muaj nyob hauv lawv cov uas tau ua txuj hais tias nyob hauv Vajtsvw lub koom txoos.

12 Thiab nws yog vim txoj kev khav ntwam lawv tej siab, vim yog lawv txoj kev nplua nuj heev, muaj tseeb tiag, nws vim yog lawv txoj kev saib tsis tau cov neeg pluag, tsis kam muab lawv tej zaub mov rau cov neeg tshaib plab, tsis kam muab lawv tej ris tsho rau cov neeg liab qab, thiab ntaus lawv cov kwv tij ua txo hwj chim plhu, ua saib tsis taus tej uas dawb ceev, tsis kam lees tus ntsuj plig ntwam txoj kev uas qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab txoj kev tshwm sim, kev tua neeg, kev ua lim hiam, kev dag, kev ua tub sab, kev deev luag poj luag txiv, sawv sib cav sib ceg, thiab tau khiav mus rau hauv thaj av Nifais, nyob nrog cov Neeg Lamas—

13 Thiab vim yog lawv txoj kev phem loj no, thiab lawv txoj kev khav theeb txog lawv tus kheej lub zog, lawv tau raug tso cia rau lawv tus kheej lub zog; yog li ntwam lawv thiaj tsis vammeej, tiam sis tau raug txom nyem thiab raug ntaus, thiab raug raws khiav ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas, mus txog thaum lawv tau poob yuav luag tas lawv tej av.

14 Tiam sis saib seb, Maulaunaihas tau qhuab qhia ntau yam rau cov neeg vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj, thiab Nifais thiab Lihais, uas yog Hilamas cov tub, kuj tau qhuab qhia ntau yam rau cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam rau lawv txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj, thiab yam uas yuav los rau lawv yog lawv tsis hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau hloov siab lees txim, thiab ntau npaum li lawv tau hloov siab lees txim lawv tau pib vam meej.
- 16 Vim thaum Maulaunaihas tau pom tias lawv tau hloov siab lees txim nws tau rov kam coj lawv ib qho chaw mus rau ib qho chaw, thiab ib lub nroog mus rau ib lub nroog, mus txog thaum uas lawv rov txeeb tau ib nrab ntawm lawv tej ntiag tug thiab ib nrab ntawm tas nrho lawv tej av.
- 17 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib rau caum thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo rau caum thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, Maulaunaihas tsis muaj cuab kav rov txeeb tau tej av ntawm cov Neeg Lamas ntxiv lawm.
- 19 Yog li ntawd lawv tau tso tseg lawv txoj kev uas yuav txeeb lawv tej av uas tseem tshuav, vim cov Neeg Lamas tau muaj coob heev uas yuav ua mus tsis taus rau cov Neeg Nifais kom muaj hwj chim yeej lawv; yog li ntawd Maulaunaihas tau siv tag nrho nws tej tub rog tswj tuav tej feem uas nws txeeb tau lawm.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias, vim txoj kev coob heev ntawm cov Neeg Lamas cov Neeg Nifais tau ntshai heev, ntshai nyob tsam yuav raug swb, thiab raug tsuj, thiab raug tua, thiab raug puas tsuaj.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau pib nco txog tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm Amas, thiab Mauxiyas tej lus; thiab lawv tau pom tias lawv tau yog ib co neeg tawv ncauj, thiab tias lawv tau muab Vajtswv tej lus txib suav tsis muaj nqis kiag li.
- 22 Thiab tias lawv tau muab Mauxiyas tej kev cai pauv thiab tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws, los sis tej uas tus Tswv tau txib nws kom muab rau cov neeg; thiab lawv tau pom tias lawv tej kev cai tau raug muab hloov tsis ncaj, thiab lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg phem, kawg tias lawv tau phem ib yam li cov Neeg Lamas.
- 23 Thiab vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj lub koom txoos tau pib tsawg zuj zus; thiab lawv tau pib tsis ntseeg tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim; thiab Vajtswv tej kev txiav txim tau ntsia ntsoov lawv ntawm lub ntsej muag.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

24 Thiab lawv tau pom tias lawv tau rais los mus qaug zog, li lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tias tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tsis tsum kwm lawv ntxiv lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau ncaim ntawm lawv mus vim tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tsis nyob hauv tej tuam tsev uas tsis dawb huv—

25 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau tsum tsis tsum kwm lawv los ntawm nws lub hwj chim tseem ceeb thiab piv tsis tau, vim lawv tau poob mus rau hauv ib qhov uas tsis ntseeg thiab phem heev kawg nkaus; thiab lawv tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tau muaj coob dua li lawv, thiab yog lawv tseem tsis npuab rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsvw ces, lawv yuav tsum piam sij khiav tsis dim.

26 Vim saib seb, lawv tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas lub zog yeej loj tib yam li lawv lub zog, txawm yog ib tug ntsuas ib tug. Thiab li no lawv tau poob rau hauv txoj kev txhaum loj no; muaj tseeb tiag, li no lawv thiaj tau rais los qaug zog, vim yog lawv txoj kev txhaum, nyob hauv sij hawm ncuat tsis tau ntau xyoo.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

Hilamas 5

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau tib xyoos no, saib seb, Nifais tau muab lub rooj txiav txim rau ib tug neeg uas npe hu ua Xixaulas.
- 2 Vim yog lawv tej kev cai thiab lawv tej nom tswv tau raug tsim los ntawm cov neeg tej suab, thiab lawv cov uas tau xaiv qhov phem tau coob dua li lawv cov uas xaiv qhov zoo, yog li ntawd lawv tau tab tom siav rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, vim tej kev cai tau raug muab hloov tsis ncaj lawm.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsis tas li no xwb; lawv tau yog ib co neeg tawv ncauj, kawg tias txoj kev cai thiab txoj kev txim lij tsis muaj peev xwm kav tau lawv, tsuas yog rau lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj xwb.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais tau rais los qaug zog heev vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj; thiab nws thiaj tau tso lub rooj txiav txim tseg, thiab nws tau muab txoj kev mus qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus ris nyob rau hauv tag nrho nws lub neej uas tseem tshuav, thiab nws tus kwv Lihais thiab, tag nrho nws lub neej uas tseem tshuav;
- 5 Vim nkawd nco qab ntsoov tej lus uas nkawd txiv Hilamas tau hais rau nkawd. Thiab cov no yog cov lus uas nws tau hais:
- 6 Saib seb, kuv ob tug tub es, kuv xav kom neb yuav nco ntsoov coj Vajtswv tej lus txib; thiab kuv xav kom neb yuav tsum qhia tej lus no rau cov neeg. Saib seb, kuv tau muab rau neb tej npe ntawm peb thawj cov yawg koob uas tau tawm tim thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj; thiab kuv tau ua li no xwv kom thaum neb nco txog neb tej npe neb yuav nco txog nkawd; thiab thaum neb nco txog nkawd neb yuav nco txog nkawd tej hauj lwm; thiab thaum neb nco txog nkawd tej hauj lwm neb yuav paub saib nws tau hais li cas, thiab tau sau li cas, tias nkawd yeej zoo.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, kuv ob tug tub es, kuv xav kom neb ua tej uas zoo, xwv kom yuav muaj neeg hais, thiab sau txog neb, tib yam li twb tau hais thiab sau txog nkawd lawm.

Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

8 Thiab nim no kuv ob tug tub es, saib seb kuv muaj tej yam uas xav kom neb ua ntxiv, qhov uas yog tias, kom neb tsis txhob ua tej yam no xwv kom neb khav theeb, tiam sis kom neb yuav ua tej yam no kom neb yuav cia tau puav pheej rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, muaj tseeb tiag, qhov uas yuav nyob mus ib txhis, thiab qhov uas yuav tsis txawj ploj mus; muaj tseeb tiag, xwv kom neb yuav muaj qhov txiaj ntsim uas muaj nqis ntawm txoj sia uas nyob mus ib txhis, uas peb tau paub tseeb tias twb tau muab rau peb tej yawg koob lawm.

9 Au nco ntsoov, nco ntsoov mog, kuv ob tug tub, tej lus uas vaj ntxwv Npeyamis tau hais rau nws cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, nco ntsoov tias yeej tsis muaj dua lwm txoj kev los sis lwm yam uas neeg yuav dim taus li, tsuas yog dhau los ntawm Yexus Khetos, tus yuav los, cov ntshav theej txhoj xwb; muaj tseeb tiag, nco ntsoov tias nws yuav los cawm lub ntiaj teb.

10 Thiab kuj nco ntsoov tej lus uas Amulej tau hais rau Xi-elas, nyob rau hauv lub nroog Amaunaihas; vim nws tau hais rau nws tias tus Tswv yeej yuav los txhiv nws cov neeg, tiam sis nws yuav tsis los txhiv lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum, tiam sis los txhiv lawv ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum mus.

11 Thiab nws tau muaj hwj chim muab rau nws los ntawm Leej Txiv los txhiv lawv dim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum vim yog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; yog li ntawd nws tau xa nws tej tim tswv los tshaj tawm tej moo zoo txog tej uas yuav tsum ua ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, uas coj los rau tus Txhiv Dim lub hwj chim, mus rau txoj kev cawm seej ntawm lawv tej ntsuj plig.

12 Thiab nim no, kuv cov me tub es, nco ntsoov, nco ntsoov tias twb yog nyob rau saum lub pob zeb peb tus Txhiv Dim, tus uas yog Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub, uas neb yuav tsum cog neb qhov chaw cuab zog; xwv kom thaum tus dab yuav xa nws tej cua muaj zog, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tej xub nyob hauv tej cua moj lwg kaw, muaj tseeb tiag, thaum tag nrho nws tej lawg thiab nws tej cua daj cua dub uas muaj zog yuav los raug neb, tej ntawd yuav tsis muaj hwj chim kov yeej neb kom luag tau neb nqis mus rau tus kwj tob tob ntawm txoj kev nyuaj siab thiab txom nyem uas tsis muaj qhov kawg, vim yog lub pob zeb uas neb tau cog rau saud, uas yog qhov chaw cuab zog ruaj, ib qhov chaw cuab zog uas yog neeg cog rau saud lawm yuav vau tsis tau.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov no yog tej lus uas Hilamas tau qhia rau nws cov tub; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau qhia nkawd ntau yam uas tsis tau muab sau, thiab kuj ntau yam uas tau muab sau.
- 14 Thiab nkawd tau nco ntsoov nws tej lus; thiab yog li ntawd nkawd tau tawm mus, koj nraim Vajtsv wv tej lus txib, mus qhia Vajtsv wv txoj lus rau tag nrho hauv Nifais cov neeg, pib hauv lub nroog Huaj Vam;
- 15 Thiab tom qab ntawd mus rau lub nroog Nkis; thiab ntawm lub nroog Nkis mus rau lub nroog Mules;
- 16 Thiab twb mus ib lub nroog mus rau lwm lub, mus txog thaum nkawd tau tawm mus rau tag nrho hauv Nifais cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av sab qab teb; thiab txij ntawd ces ho mus rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau qhuab qhia nrog lub hwj chim loj heev, kawg tias nkawd tau ua rau ntau tus neeg ntseev siab uas tau khiav ntawm cov Neeg Nifais mus txaj muag, kawg tias lawv tau tawm los thiab tau lees lawv tej kev txhaum thiab tau ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab tau rov qab los nrawm nroos rau cov Neeg Nifais los thov kho rau lawv tej kev tsis yog uas lawv tau ua lawm.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais thiab Lihais tau qhuab qhia rau cov Neeg Lamas nrog lub hwj chim thiab cai loj heev, vim nkawd tau muaj hwj chim thiab cai uas tau muab rau nkawd xwv kom nkawd yuav txawj hais, thiab kuj tau muab rau nkawd tej uas nkawd yuav tsum hais thiab—
- 19 Yog li ntawd nkawd tau hais rau cov Neeg Lamas xav tsis thoob li, mus rau txoj kev yaum tau lawv, kawg tias tau muaj cov Neeg Lamas yim txhiab leej uas nyob hauv thaj av Xalahelas thiab ib puag ncig ntawd tau ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab tau pom txog txoj kev phem ntawm lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais thiab Lihais tau mus ntxiv ntawm qhov ntawd mus rau thaj av Nifais.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias nkawd tau raug cov Neeg Lamas ib pab tub rog txhom thiab pov rau hauv qhov taub; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tib lub qhov taub uas Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij tau raug Leehais cov tub qhe muab pov rau hauv.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

- 22 Thiab tom qab uas nkawd tau raug muab pov rau hauv qhov taub tau ntau hnuv tsis tau zaub mov noj lawm, saib seb, lawv tau mus rau hauv qhov taub mus txhom nkawd xwv kom lawv yuav muab nkawd tua.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais thiab Lihais tau raug vij ib puag ncig zoo ib yam li hluav taws, kawg tias lawv tsis kam cev lawv tej tes rau saum nkawd vim ntshai tsam lawv yuav raug kub hnyiab. Txawm li ntawd los, Nifais thiab Lihais tsis raug kub hnyiab; thiab nkawd zoo li sawv ntsug nyob hauv plawv cub taws thiab tsis tau raug kub hnyiab.
- 24 Thiab thaum nkawd pom tias nkawd tau raug ib tug nplaim hluav taws vij ib puag ncig, thiab nws tsis kub nkawd, nkawd tej siab txawm tau muaj zog hlo tuaj.
- 25 Vim nkawd pom tias cov Neeg Lamas tsis kam cev lawv tej tes rau saum nkawd; thiab lawv kuj tsis kam los ze rau nkawd, tiam sis tau sawv zoo li lawv raug ua kom ruam xav tsis thoob.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais thiab Lihais tau sawv ntsug thiab tau pib hais rau lawv, hais tias: Tsis txhob ntshai, vim saib seb, nws yog Vajtswv tus uas tau ua rau nej pom yam uas zoo kawg nkaus no, uas tau ua rau nej pom tias nej cev tsis tau nej tej tes rau wb es muab wb tua.
- 27 Thiab saib seb, thaum nkawd tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, lub ntiaj teb tau co qeg txoog heev kawg nkaus, thiab tej phab ntsa ntawm lub qhov taub tau co zoo li lawv twb yuav vau rau hauv av; tiam sis saib seb, lawv tsis tau vau. Thiab saib seb, lawv cov uas tau nyob hauv lub qhov taub yog cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Nifais uas tau ntseev siab.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau raug ib tau huab tsaus los tsaus roos, thiab ib qho kev txhawj ntshai phem heev tau los rau saum lawv.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib lub suab zoo li nws nrov sab huab tsaus tsaus sab saud tuaj, hais tias: Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab tsis txhob nrhiav ua kom kuv cov tub qhe uas kuv tau xa los qhia txoj moo zoo rau nej puas tsuaj ntixiv lawm.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau hnov lub suab no, thiab tau pom tias tsis yog ib lub suab xob quaj, thiab kuj tsis yog ib lub suab uas feeb tsis mee, tiam sis saib seb, nws yog ib lub suab mee yws uas mos muag kawg nkaus li, zoo li nws yog ib lub suab ntxhi, thiab nws tau chob txog ntua lub siab—

31 Thiab txawm tias lub suab mos muag npaum li ntawd los, saib seb lub ntiaj teb tau co qeg txoog heev kawg nkaus li, thiab tej phab ntsa qhov taub tau rov co dua, zoo li nws twb yuav luag vau rau hauv av; thiab saib seb cov huab tsaus tsaus, uas tau roos lawv, tsis yaj li—

32 Thiab saib seb lub suab rov qab los dua, hais tias: Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj twb los txog lawm; thiab tsis txhob nrhiav ua kom kuv tej tub qhe puas tsuaj ntxiv lawm. Thiab tau muaj tias lub ntiaj teb tau rov co dua, thiab tej phab ntsa tau yuav vau.

33 Thiab lub suab kuj tau rov qab los dua zaum peb, thiab tau hais rau lawv tej lus zoo kawg nkaus li uas neeg tsis muaj peev xwm hais tau; thiab tej phab ntsa tau rov co dua, thiab lub ntiaj teb tau co zoo li nws twb yuav luag faib ua ob sab.

34 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tsis muaj peev xwm khiav tau vim tauv huab tsaus tsaus uas tau roos lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lawv kuj txav tsis tau vim yog txoj kev ntshai uas tau los rau saum lawv.

35 Nim no tau muaj ib tug nyob hauv lawv uas yog ib tug Neeg Nifais yug, tus uas twb tau zwm rau hauv Vajtswv lub koom txoos ib zaug lawm tiam sis tau ntxeev siab ncaim ntawm lawv lawm.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tig puag ncig, thiab saib seb, nws tau pom Nifais thiab Lihais ob lub ntsej muag dhau ntawm cov huab tsaus tsaus mus; thiab saib seb, ob lub ntsej muag ntawd tau ci heev kawg nkaus, twb zoo tib yam li tej tim tswv tej ntsej muag. Thiab nws tau pom tias nkawd tau tsa nkawd qhov muag ntsia rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej; thiab zoo li nkawd tab tom tham los sis tsa nkawd tej suab rau tej tus uas nkawd tau pom.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias tus txiv neej no tau qw nrov nrov rau cov neeg coob coob, xwv kom lawv yuav tig los thiab ntsia. Thiab saib seb, tau muaj hwj chim muab rau lawv kom lawv tig los thiab ntsia; thiab lawv tau pom Nifais thiab Lihais ob lub ntsej muag.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

38 Thiab lawv tau hais rau tus txiv neej tias: Saib seb, tas nrho tej yam no txhais li cas, thiab ob tug neeg no nrog leej twg tham?

39 Nim no tus txiv neej ntawd npe hu ua Aminadas. Thiab Aminadas tau hais rau lawv tias: Nkawd nrog Vajtswv cov tim tswv tham.

40 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau hais rau nws tias: Peb yuav ua li cas, es tauv huab tsaus tsaus no thiaj li yuav raug tshem tsis roos peb?

41 Thiab Aminadas tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, thiab thov rau lub suab, mus txog thaum nej yuav muaj kev ntseeg hauv Khetos, tus uas tau raug qhia rau nej los ntawm Amas, thiab Amulej, thiab Xi-elas; thiab thaum nej yuav ua li no, tauv huab tsaus tsaus yuav raug tshem tsis roos nej lawm.

42 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv sawv daws tau pib thov rau lub suab ntawm nws tus uas tau co lub ntiaj teb; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau quaj thov mus txog thaum tauv huab tsaus tsaus raug ua yaj lawm.

43 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv ntsia lawv ib puag ncig, thiab tau pom tias tauv huab tsaus tsaus raug ua yaj tsis roos lawv lawm, saib seb, lawv tau pom tias lawv, muaj tseeb tiag txhua tus, tau raug vij ib puag ncig, los ntawm ib tug ncej nplaim hluav taws.

44 Thiab Nifais thiab Lihais nyob hauv lawv nruab nrab; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug vij ib puag ncig; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau nyob zoo li hauv nruab nrab nplaim hluav taws, tiam sis nws tsis tau ua rau lawv raug mob, los sis nws kuj tsis tau kub tej phab ntsa ntawm lub qhov taub thiab; thiab lawv tau muaj txoj kev xyiv fab uas hais tsis tau tawm ntawd thiab muaj yeeb koob puv npo.

45 Thiab saib seb, Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau nqis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, thiab tau los nkag rau hauv lawv tej siab, thiab lawv tau zoo li muaj hluav taws puv nkaus, thiab lawv txawm txawj hais lus zoo kawg nkaus li tawm.

46 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib lub suab los rau lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, ib lub suab zoo heev kawg li, zoo li nws yog ib lub suab ntshi, hais tias:

47 Kev thaj yeeb, nej tsuas muaj kev thaj yeeb, vim nej txoj kev ntseeg hauv tus uas kuv Hlub Heev, tus uas yeej nyob txij thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

48 Thiab nim no, thaum lawv tau hnov qhov no lawv tau tsa lawv tej qhov muag ntsia rau qhov uas lub suab ntawd nrov tuaj; thiab saib seb, lawv pom rooj ntug qhib; thiab tej tim tswv tau nqis tawm saum ceeb tsheej los thiab tau qhuab qhia rau lawv.

49 Thiab tau muaj kwv yees li peb puas leej uas tau pom thiab tau hnov tej yam no; thiab lawv tau raug hais kom tawm mus thiab tsis txhob poob siab, thiab kom lawv tsis txhob xyem xyav.

50 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm mus, thiab tau qhuab qhia rau cov neeg, tau tshaj tawm thoob plaws rau txhua thaj tsam ib ncig txog tag nrho tej yam uas lawv tau hnov thiab tau pom, kawg tias feem coob ntawm cov Neeg Lamas raug yaum los ntseeg lawv, vim yog tej kev ua tim khawv loj uas lawv tau txais lawm.

51 Thiab txhua tus uas tau raug yaum tau lawm puav leej tau tso lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog, thiab lawv tej kev ntxub, thiab lawv tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai tseg.

52 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muab rau cov Neeg Nifais tej av uas yog lawv li.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

Hilamas 6

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum xyoo rau caum thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav tau xaus lawm, tag nrho txhua yam no tau tshwm sim thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau rais los mus ua, cov feem coob ntawm lawv, ib cov neeg ncaj ncees, kawg tias lawv tej kev ncaj tau ncaj dua li cov Neeg Nifais tej, vim yog lawv txoj kev ruaj nrees thiab lawv txoj kev nyob khov kho hauv txoj kev ntseeg.
- 2 Vim saib seb, tau muaj ntau tus ntawm cov Neeg Nifais cov uas tau rais los ua siab tawv thiab tsis kam hloov siab lees txim thiab phem qias kawg li, kawg tias lawv tau tsis kam lees yuav Vajtswv txoj lus thiab tag nrho tej kev qhuab qhia thiab txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau los rau hauv lawv.
- 3 Txawm li ntawd los, cov neeg ntawm lub koom txoos tseem tau muaj kev xyiv fab heev vim yog txoj kev hloov siab tshiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, muaj tseeb tiag, vim yog Vajtswv lub koom txoos, uas tau txhim tsa nyob hauv lawv. Thiab lawv ib leeg tau ua phooj ywg rau ib leeg, thiab ib leeg tau zoo siab rau ib leeg, thiab tau muaj kev xyiv fab heev.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias ntau tus ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau nqis los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab tau tshaj tawm rau cov Neeg Nifais txog lawv txoj kev hloov siab tshiab, thiab tau ntuas lawv rau txoj kev ntseeg thiab txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntau tus tau qhuab qhia nrog lub hwj chim thiab cai loj heev kawg, rau txoj kev coj lawv coob leej los mus rau hauv txoj kev txo hwj chim qis, los ua cov neeg txo hwj chim raws Vajtswv thiab tus Me Nyuam Yaj.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas coob leej tau mus rau hauv thaj av sab qaum teb; thiab Nifais thiab Lihais los kuj mus rau hauv thaj av sab qaum teb, mus qhuab qhia rau cov neeg. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo rau caum thiab peb.
- 7 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob tag nrho txhua thaj av, kawg tias cov Neeg Nifais tau mus rau hauv tej feem hauv thaj av uas lawv xav mus, tsis hais nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais los sis cov Neeg Lamas.

Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, in-
somuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas los kuj tau mus rau tej qhov uas lawv xav mus, tsis hais hauv cov Neeg Lamas los sis hauv cov Neeg Nifais; thiab li no lawv tau muaj kev ywj siab ib leeg mus txuam tau rau ib leeg, mus yuav los sis muag khoom, thiab ua kom muaj tshaj thawj, raws li lawv siab xav.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rais los nplua nuj heev, cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Nifais; thiab lawv tau muaj kub, thiab nyiaj dawb nplua mias, thiab tas nrho txhua yam hlau muaj nuj nqis, nyob rau thaj av sab qab teb thiab thaj av sab qaum teb.

10 Nim no thaj av sab qab teb hu ua Lihais, thiab thaj av sab qaum teb hu ua Mules, uas tau hu raws li Xedekhiyas tus tub; vim tus Tswv tau coj Mules tuaj rau hauv thaj av sab qaum teb, thiab Lihais tuaj rau thaj av sab qab teb.

11 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj tas nrho txhua yam kub nyob rau hauv ob thaj av no, thiab muaj nyiaj dawb, thiab muaj tej quav hlau muaj nqis txhua yam; thiab kuj tau muaj tej neeg uas txawj ua hlau, uas tau ua txhua yam quav hlau thiab tau ua kom tau ua hlau; thiab li no lawv thiaj tau rais los nplua nuj.

12 Lawv tau cog noob qoob noob loos nplua mias, nyob rau sab qaum teb thiab nyob rau sab qab teb; thiab lawv tau vam meej heev kawg nkaus, nyob rau sab qaum teb thiab nyob rau sab qab teb. Thiab lawv tau coob ntxiv thiab rais los mus muaj zog heev nyob rau hauv thaj av. Thiab lawv tau yug tej yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu ntau, muaj tseeb tiag, ntau tus tsiaj uas rog.

13 Saib seb lawv tej poj niam tau ua hauj lwm thiab kis xov, thiab tau ua txhua yam ntaub yaj pwm thiab ntaub txhua yam, los hnav rau lawv tej kev liab qab. Thiab li no xyoo thib rau caum thiab plaub tau dhau los mus ntawm kev thaj yeeb.

14 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo rau caum thiab tsib lawv kuj tau muaj kev xyiv fab thiab kev thaj yeeb, muaj tseeb tiag, tau muaj kev qhuab qhia ntau thiab ntau yam kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tej uas yuav muaj los. Thiab li no xyoo rau caum thiab tsib thiaj tau dhau mus.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib rau caum thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, saib seb, Xixaulas tau raug tua los ntawm ib txhais tes uas tsis muaj neeg paub thaum nws tseem zaum saum lub rooj txiav txim. Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv tib xyoos ntawd, nws tus tub, tus uas tau raug cov neeg tsa los nyob nws qhov chaw, los kuj tau raug tua thiab. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo rau caum thiab rau.
- 16 Thiab nyob rau thaum pib xyoo rau caum thiab xya cov neeg tau pib rov ua phem heev kawg nkaus dua.
- 17 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov rau lawv ntev heev nrog tej kev nplua nuj ntawm lub ntiaj teb es lawv twb tsis tau raug txhib kom npau taws, ua tsov rog, los sis kom muaj nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib muab lawv tej siab nruab rau saum lawv tej kev nplua nuj; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau pib nrhiav ua kom tshaj thawj kom lawv yuav tau khav tias lawv ib leeg zoo dua li ib leeg; yog li ntawd lawv tau pib tua neeg ntsiag to, thiab ua tub sab thiab ua lim hiam, xwv kom lawv yuav tau tshaj thawj.
- 18 Thiab nim no saib seb, cov neeg tua neeg thiab ua lim hiam twb yog ib pab uas tau tsim los ntawm Kisawkhumas thiab Nkadi-atoos. Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tau muaj coob leej, twb nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, uas yog Nkadi-atoos pab. Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau muaj coob dua rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas feem uas phem zog. Thiab lawv tau raug hu ua Nkadi-atoos cov neeg tub sab thiab cov neeg tua neeg.
- 19 Thiab lawv twb yog cov uas tau tua tus thawj tub txiav txim Xixaulas, thiab nws tus tub, thaum tseem nyob hauv lub rooj txiav txim; thiab saib seb, nrhiav tsis tau lawv.
- 20 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau nrhiav pom tias tau muaj tej tub sab nyob hauv lawv lawv tau nyuaj siab heev; thiab lawv tau siv txhua yam peev xwm uas nyob hauv lawv tej hwj chim ua kom lawv puas tsuaj ntawm lub ntiaj teb mus.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

- 21 Tiam sis saib seb, Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tau txhib cov Neeg Nifais feem coob tej siab, kawg tias lawv tau koom nrog tej pab tub sab ntawd, thiab tau nkag rau lawv tej kev khi lus thiab lawv tej kev lav lus, tias lawv ib leeg yuav tsom kwm thiab saib xyuas ib leeg nyob hauv tej kev nyuaj txawm npaum li cas los xij uas lawv yuav raug tso rau, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis raug txim rau lawv tej kev tua neeg, thiab lawv tej kev ua lim hiam, thiab lawv tej kev ua tub nyiag.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv yeej muaj lawv tej cim, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tej cim ntsiag to, thiab lawv tej lus ntsiag to; thiab ua li no kom lawv thiaj yuav nco tau tus kwv tij uas tau sib khi lus, xwv kom txhua yam phem uas nws tus kwv tij yuav ua kom nws thiaj li yuav tsis raug mob los ntawm nws tus kwv tij, los sis los ntawm cov uas tau zwm rau hauv nws pab, cov uas tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus no lawm.
- 23 Thiab li no es kom lawv yuav tua neeg, thiab ua lim hiam, thiab ua tub sab, thiab ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug thiab tas nrho txhua yam kev phem, tawm tsam tej kev cai ntawm lawv lub teb chaws thiab tej kev cai ntawm lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 24 Thiab yog leej twg ntawm cov uas tau zwm rau lawv pab lawm qhia rau lub ntiaj teb txog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias, yuav tsum raug txiav txim rau, tsis raws li tej kev cai ntawm lawv lub teb chaws, tiam sis raws li tej kev cai ntawm lawv txoj kev phem, uas tau raug muab los ntawm Nkadi-atoos thiab Kisawkhumas.
- 25 Nim no saib seb, nws twb yog tej kev lav lus thiab kev khi lus ntsiag to no uas Amas tau kom nws tus tub yuav tsum tsis txhob tawm mus rau hauv lub ntiaj teb, ntshai nyob tsam lawv yuav yog ib qho dab tsi uas yuav coj cov neeg poob mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 26 Nim no saib seb, cov kev lav lus thiab tej kev khi lus ntsiag to ntawd tsis tau los rau Nkadi-atoos los ntawm tej ceev xwm uas tau muab rau Hilamas; tiam sis saib seb, tej ntawd tau raug muab rau hauv Nkadi-atoos lub siab los ntawm tib tug yawg uas tau ntxias peb thawj nkawg niam txiv noj cov txiv uas tau txwv lawm—
- 27 Muaj tseeb tiag, tib tug yawg ntawd tus uas tau ntxias Kayees, tias yog nws tua nws tus kwv Anpees lub ntiaj teb yeej yuav tsis paub txog. Thiab nws tau ntxias Kayees thiab cov neeg raws nws qab txij li lub sij hawm ntawd los lawm.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

28 Thiab nws kuj yog tib tug yawg uas tau ua rau cov neeg tej siab kom ua ib tug pej thuam siab txaus xwv kom lawv yuav mus txog saum ntuj ceeb tsheej. Thiab nws twb yog tib tug yawg uas tau coj cov neeg uas tau tuaj ntawm tus pej thuam tuaj rau thaj av no; tus uas tau tsuag tej hauv lwm tsaus ntuj thiab qias rau saum thaj av tas nrho, mus txog thaum nws muab cov neeg cab luag nqis mus rau ib txoj kev puas tsuaj tag nrho, thiab mus rau ib lub ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas kav ib txhis.

29 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws twb yog tib tug yawg uas tau ua kom Nkadi-atoos lub siab tseem coj txoj hauv lwm tsaus ntuj, thiab txoj kev tua neeg ntsiag to; thiab nws tau coj txij li puag thaum neeg chiv keeb nqis los txog lub sij hawm no.

30 Thiab saib seb, twb yog nws tus uas yog tus tswv uas tsim tas nrho tej kev txhaum. Thiab saib seb, nws tseem coj nws txoj hauv lwm tsaus ntuj thiab txoj kev tua neeg ntsiag to, thiab tau cev lawv tej tswv yim ntxias, thiab lawv tej kev lav lus, thiab lawv tej kev sib khi lus, thiab lawv tej kev npaj ua phem heev, nqis ib tiam neeg dhau los rau ib tiam neeg raws li nws yuav muaj peev xwm tuav tau noob neej tej siab.

31 Thiab nim no saib seb, nws tau tuav cov Neeg Nifais tej siab ruaj; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau rais los mus ua ib co neeg phem heev kawg nkaus li; muaj tseeb tiag, fem coob ntawm lawv tau ncaim tawm ntawm txoj kev ncaj, thiab tau muab Vajtswv tej lus txib tsuj rau hauv lawv qab xib taws, thiab tau tig mus rau lawv tus kheej tej kev, thiab tau muab lawv tej kub thiab lawv tej nyiaj dawb nchuav ua mlom rau lawv.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias tas nrho tej kev tsis ncaj no tau los rau lawv tau ncuav tsis tau ntau xyoo, kawg tias ib fem ntau ntawd yog tau los rau lawv nyob hauv xyoo rau caum thiab xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

33 Thiab lawv kuj tau loj hlob hauv lawv tej kev tsis ncaj nyob hauv xyoo rau caum thiab yim, ua rau cov neeg ncaj ncees muaj kev nyuaj siab thiab kev quaj kev nyiav.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

34 Thiab li no peb pom tias cov Neeg Nifais tau pib tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus, thiab loj zuj zus hauv txoj kev phem thiab txoj kev qias, hos cov Neeg Lamas tau pib loj hlob heev hauv txoj kev paub txog lawv tus Vajtswv; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau pib coj nws tej kev cai thiab tej lus txib, thiab mus hauv qhov tseeb thiab hauv qhov ncaj rau ntawm nws.

35 Thiab li no peb pom tias tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau pib thim ncaim ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, vim yog tej kev phem thiab txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab.

36 Thiab li no peb pom tias tus Tswv tau pib nchuav nws tus Ntsuj Plig los rau saum cov Neeg Lamas, vim lawv txoj kev yooj yim thiab zoo siab hlo ntseeg nws tej lus.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau plob nrhiav Nkadi-atoos pab neeg tub sab; thiab lawv tau qhuab qhia Vajtswv txoj lus rau hauv lawv feem uas phem zog, kawg tias pab neeg tub sab no tau raug puas tsuaj huv tib si ncaim ntawm cov Neeg Lamas.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau lwm sab, cov Neeg Nifais tau txhawb lawv thiab pab lawv, pib hauv lawv feem uas phem zog, mus txog thaum lawv tau puv thoo plaws rau txhua thaj av ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tau yaum cov neeg ncaj feem coob mus txog thaum lawv tau nqis los ntseeg lawv tej hauj lwm thiab los noj lawv tej khoom lwj, thiab los koom nrog lawv nyob hauv lawv tej kev tua neeg ntsiag to thiab tej kev tuav hauv.

39 Thiab li no lawv thiaj txeeb tau lub hauv paus coj tuav ntawm tej nom tswv, kawg tias lawv tau muab tej neeg txom nyem thiab tej neeg uas muaj siab mos muag, thiab cov neeg txo hwj chim uas raws Vajtswv tsuj rau hauv lawv qab xib taws thiab muab ntaus thiab muab dua ris tsho thiab tig lawv nraub qaum rau.

40 Thiab li no peb pom tias lawv tau nyob hauv ib qho uas phem kawg nkaus, thiab tab tom siav rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis.

41 Thiab tau muaj tias li no thiaj tau xaus xyoo rau caum thiab yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav Nifais cov neeg.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

TXOJ KEV QHIA TEJ UAS YUAV MUAJ LOS YAV TOM NTEJ NTAWM NIFAIS, HILAMAS TUS TUB—Vajtsww hauv rau cov Neeg Nifais tias nws yuav los xyuas lawv nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws, yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si tsuas yog lawv yuav bloov siab lees txim ntawm lawv txoj kev phem xwb. Vajtsww rau txim rau Nifais cov neeg nrog txoj kev mob aws; lawv bloov siab lees txim thiab tig mus cuag nws. Xamuyees, ib tug Neeg Lamas, qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov Neeg Nifais.

Hilamas 7

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo rau caum thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, Nifais, Hilamas tus tub, tau rov qab los pem thaj av sab qaum teb los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas.
- 2 Vim nws tau mus nyob hauv cov neeg uas nyob hauv thaj av sab qaum teb, thiab tau qhuab qhia Vajtsww txoj lus rau lawv, thiab tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam rau lawv;
- 3 Thiab lawv tau tsis kam txais yuav nws tej lus li, kawg tias nws nyob tsis taus nrog lawv, es thiaj tau rov qab los rau hauv thaj av uas yug nws dua.
- 4 Thiab tau pom cov neeg nyob hauv ib qho uas phem heev kawg, thiab cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos ntawd tau los txum tej rooj txiav txim—tau khoo txeeb lub hwj chim thiab cai ntawm thaj av; muab Vajtsww tej lus txib tso rau ib sab, thiab tsis ua ib qho kom ncaj me me rau nws li; ua tsis txim lij rau noob neej;
- 5 Tau rau txim rau cov neeg ncaj vim lawv tej kev ncaj ncees; cia cov neeg muaj txim thiab cov neeg phem mus tsis raug txim vim yog lawv tej nyiaj; thiab qhov loj yog cia lawv los ua cov thawj hauv cov nom tswv, los kav thiab ua raws li lawv siab nyiam, xwv kom lawv yuav nplua nuj thiab ua kom neeg ntiaj teb qhuas, thiab, ntxiv dua, kom lawv yuav ua txhaum kev deev luag poj luag txiv, thiab ua tub sab, thiab tua neeg yooj yim dua, thiab ua tau raws li lawv siab xav—

THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.

Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

- 6 Nim no txoj kev tsis ncaj loj no tau los rau saum cov Neeg Nifais, nyob hauv ncuva tsis tau ntau xyoo; thiab thaum Nifais tau pom qhov no, nws lub siab tau o nrog txoj kev tu siab nyob ntawm nws hauv siab; thiab nws tau nroog txog txoj kev mob nws lub siab li no:
- 7 Au, kheev lam kuv tau muaj kuv txoj sia nyob rau lub caij thaum kuv tus yawg koob Nifais uas xub tawm tim thaj av Yeluxalees tuaj, xwv kom kuv yuav tau nrog nws muaj kev xyiv fab nyob rau hauv thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd nws cov neeg mas yooj yim qhia, coj Vajtswv tej lus txib ruaj, thiab coj ua txoj kev tsis ncaj mas qeeb; thiab lawv mas nrawm nroos mloog tus Tswv tej lus—
- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, yog kuv tau muaj sia nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd, ntshe kuv lub siab yuav tau muaj kev xyiv fab nyob hauv kuv cov kwv tij uas ncaj ncees.
- 9 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau raug muab tias lub caij no yog kuv li, thiab tias kuv lub siab yuav tsum muaj kev nyuaj siab vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm kuv cov kwv tij no.
- 10 Thiab saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias nws tau nyob saum ib tug pej thuam, uas nyob hauv Nifais lub vaj, uas nyob ib sab ntawm txoj kev loj uas coj mus rau tom khw loj, uas nyob hauv lub nroog Xalahelas; yog li ntawd, Nifais tau txhos caug saum tus pej thuam uas nyob hauv nws lub vaj, tus pej thuam ntawd los kuj nyob ze lub rooj vag uas coj txoj kev loj.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib co neeg hla los mus thiab tau pom thaum Nifais tab tom nchuav nws lub siab rau Vajtswv nyob saum tus pej thuam; thiab lawv tau khiav thiab mus qhia rau cov neeg tej yam uas lawv tau pom, thiab cov neeg tau tuaj ua ke ib pab coob coob xwv kom lawv yuav paub txog qhov uas ua muaj kev quaj ntsuag loj rau txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg.
- 12 Thiab nim no, thaum Nifais sawv los nws tau pom cov neeg coob coob uas sib sau tuaj ua ke.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau qhib nws lub qhov ncauj thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, yog vim li cas nej thiaj tau sib sau tuaj ua ke? Xwv kom kuv thiaj yuav tau qhia nej tej kev tsis ncaj rau nej los?

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, vim kuv tau tuaj nyob rau saum kuv tus pej thuam xwv kom kuv yuav tau nchuav kuv lub siab rau kuv tus Vajtswv, vim yog txoj kev tu siab heev ntawm kuv lub siab, uas vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj!
- 15 Thiab vim yog kuv txoj kev quaj thiab txoj kev nyiav nej thiaj tau sib sau tuaj ua ke, thiab xav tsis thoob; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej yeej yuav tsum tsim nyog muaj qhov xav tsis thoob; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav tsum xav tsis thoob vim nej tau tso kev kom tus dab tuav tau nej tej siab ruaj heev lawm.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, ua li cas nej thiaj cia kev rau txoj kev ntxias ntawm nws tus uas tab tom nrhiav muab nej tej ntsuj plig pov rau hauv txoj kev lwj siab tas mus li thiab kev txom nyem uas tsis muaj qhov kawg?
- 17 Au nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim! Vim li cas nej thiaj yuav tuag? Nej cia li tig hlo, nej cia li tig hlo rov mus cuag tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv. Vim li cas nws thiaj tau tso nej tseg?
- 18 Nws twb yog vim nej tau ua nej tej siab tawv; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav tsis cuab pob ntseg rau tus tswv yug yaj zoo lub suab; muaj tseeb tiag, nej tau ua kom nws npau taws rau nej.
- 19 Thiab saib seb, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, tsis li ces nws yuav tsis sau nej los ua ke, tiam sis, yuav ua kom nej tawg khiav ri niab xwv kom nej yuav rais los mus ua nqaij rau tej dev thiab tej tsiaj qus.
- 20 Au, ua li cas es nej thiaj yuav hnov qab tau nej tus Vajtswv nyob hauv tib hnuv kiag uas nws tau tso nej dim?
- 21 Tiam sis saib seb, nws twb yog ua kom nplua nuj, kom tib neeg qhuas, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab xwv kom nej yuav tau kub thiab nyiaj dawb. Thiab nej tau tso nej tej siab rau saum tej kev nplua nuj thiab tej yam tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb no, rau tej uas nej tau tua neeg, thiab ua lim hiam, thiab ua tub sab, thiab ua tim khawv tsis ncaj nkaug nej tej neeg zej zog, thiab ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj ncees.

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

22 Thiab vim qhov no kev txom nyem yuav los rau nej tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb. Vim yog nej yuav tsis kam hloov siab lees txim, saib seb, lub nroog loj no, thiab cov nroog loj uas nyob ib puang nraig, uas nyob hauv thaj av uas peb nyob, yuav raug tshem mus xwv kom nej yuav tsis muaj chaw nyob rau hauv lawv; vim saib seb, tus Tswv yuav tsis pub lub zog rau nej, ib yam li uas nws tau ua tas los lawm, kom yuav nres tawm tsam tau nej tej yeeb ncuab.

23 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tau hais li no: Kuv yuav tsis ua kom cov neeg phem pom kuv lub zog, rau ib tug ntau dua li lwm tus, tsuas yog rau cov uas yuav hloov siab lees lawv tej txim xwb, thiab mloog kuv tej lus xwb. Nim no yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej pom, tias nws yuav zoo rau cov Neeg Lamas dua li rau nej tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb kuv cov kwv tij.

24 Vim saib seb, lawv tseem ncaj dua li nej, vim lawv tsis tau ua txhaum rau txoj kev paub loj uas nej tau txais lawm; yog li ntawd tus Tswv yuav hlub tshua rau lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav ua kom lawv tej hnub nyoog ntev thiab ua kom lawv tej noob coob tuaj, nyob thaum nej yuav raug puas tsuaj huv tib si tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb.

25 Muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav raug kev txom nyem vim yog txoj kev qias loj uas tau los rau hauv nej; thiab nej tau sau nej tus kheej rau hauv nws, muaj tseeb tiag, mus rau pab neeg ua hauj lwm ntsiag to uas tau tsim los ntawm Nkadi-atoos!

26 Muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev txom nyem yuav los rau nej vim yog txoj kev khav theeb ntawd uas nej tau cia los nkag rau hauv nej tej siab, uas tau rub nej mus siab tshaj li qhov uas zoo vim yog nej tej kev nplua nuj heev!

27 Muaj tseeb tiag, nej yuav raug kev txom nyem vim yog nej txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias!

28 Thiab tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd nej yuav piam sij; muaj tseeb tiag, nej tej av los twb yuav raug muab ntawm nej mus, thiab nej yuav raug puas tsuaj tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb mus.

29 Saib seb nim no, kuv tsis tau hais kuv tus kheej tias tej no yuav muaj, vim tsis yog kuv tus kheej uas kuv paub tej yam no; tiam sis saib seb, kuv paub tias tej yam no yeej tseeb vim tus Tswv Vajtsv tau ua lawv rau kuv paub, yog li ntawd kuv ua tim khawv tias lawv yeej yuav muaj li ntawd.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Hilamas 8

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Nifais tau hais cov lus no tas lawm, saib seb, tau muaj cov neeg uas ua cov neeg txiav txim, uas kuj tau zwm nyob hauv pab neeg tua neeg ntsiag to ntawm Nkadi-atoos, thiab lawv tau npau taws, thiab lawv tau qw nrov nrov nkaug nws, hais rau cov neeg hais tias: Ua li cas nej tsis nthos nkaus tus neeg no thiab koj nws tawm los, xwv kom nws yuav raug txim raws li txoj kev txhaum uas nws tau ua lawm?
- 2 Ua li cas es nej pheej yuav ntsia tus neeg no, thiab mloog nws hais lus phem nkaug cov neeg no thiab nkaug peb txoj kev cai?
- 3 Vim saib seb, Nifais tau hais rau lawv txog txoj kev phem ntawm lawv txoj kev cai; muaj tseeb tiag, Nifais tau hais ntau yam uas muab sau tsis tau cia; thiab nws tsis tau hais ib yam dab tsi uas tsis raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib.
- 4 Thiab cov neeg txiav txim ntawd tau npau taws rau nws vim nws tau hais tseeb rau lawv txog lawv tej hauj lwj tsaus ntuj uas ntsiag to; txawm li ntawd los, lawv kuj tsis kam tso lawv tej tes rau saum nws, vim lawv tau ntshai nyob tsam cov neeg yuav qw nrov nrov nkaug lawv.
- 5 Yog li ntawd lawv tau hais rau cov neeg, hais tias: Vim li cas nej thiaj cia tus txiv neej no hais lus phem nkaug peb? Vim saib seb nws rau txim rau tas nrho cov neeg no, rau txoj kev puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj tau hais tias peb tej nroog loj no yuav tau raug tshem ntawm peb mus, xwv kom peb yuav tsis muaj chaw nyob rau hauv lawv.
- 6 Thiab nim no peb paub hais tias qhov no yeej muaj tsis tau, vim saib seb, peb yeej muaj hwj chim, thiab peb tej nroog loj heev, yog li ntawd peb tej yeeb ncuab yeej tsis muaj hwj chim kov yeej peb.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias li no lawv tau txhib cov neeg kom npau taws nkaug Nifais, thiab tsa kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv lawv; vim tau muaj ib co uas tau hais tawm tias: Cia tus txiv neej no nws nyob nws, vim nws yog ib tug neeg zoo, thiab tej yam uas nws tau hais yeej yuav muaj los tseeb yog peb tsis hloov siab lees txim;

Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

- 8 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, tas nrho tej kev txiav txim yuav los rau saum peb tej uas nws tau ua tim khawv rau peb; vim peb paub tias nws tau ua tim khawv yog rau peb txog peb tej kev tsis ncaj ncees. Thiab saib seb tej ntawd muaj ntau, thiab nws yeej paub zoo tas nrho tej uas yuav poob rau peb ib yam li nws paub txog peb tej kev tsis ncaj;
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab saib seb, yog nws tsis tau yog ib tug yaj saub nws yeej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm ua tim khawv txog tej yam no.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg uas tau nrhiav ua kom Nifais puas tsuaj tau raug yuam vim yog lawv txoj kev ntshai, ces lawv thiaj tsis tau tso lawv tej tes rau saum nws; yog li ntawd nws tau rov pib hais lus dua rau lawv, thaum pom tias nws tau raug siab nyiam los ntawm ib txhia lub qhov muag, kawg tias lawv cov uas seem tshuav tau ntshai.
- 11 Yog li ntawd nws tau raug txhob kom hais ntxiv rau lawv hais tias: Saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, nej tsis tau nyeem tias Vajtswv tau muab hwj chim rau ib tug txiv neej, li Mauxes, kom ntaus saum cov nplaim dej ntawm Dej Hiav Txwv Liab, thiab cov dej ntawd tau faib hlo rau ob sab, kawg tias cov neeg Ixayees, uas yog peb tej poj koob yawm txwv, tau los dhau saum av qhuav, thiab cov dej tau kaw npog kiag cov neeg Iyiv tej tub rog thiab tau muab lawv nqos lawm no los?
- 12 Thiab nim no saib seb, yog Vajtswv tau muab hwj chim li ntawd rau tus neeg no, ces vim li cas nej thiaj tseem sib cav nyob hauv nej, thiab hais tias nws tsis tau muab hwj chim rau kuv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd kuv yuav paub txog tej kev txiav txim uas yuav los rau nej yog nej yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim?
- 13 Tiam sis, saib seb, tsis yog nej tsis kam lees yuav kuv tej lus xwb, tiam sis nej kuj tsis kam lees yuav tag nrho tej lus uas tau hais los ntawm peb tej yawg koob, thiab tej lus uas tau hais los ntawm tus txiv neej, Mauxes no, uas raug muab hwj chim loj npaum li ntawd rau nws, muaj tseeb tiag, tej lus uas nws tau hais txog txoj kev los ntawm tus Mexiyas.
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tsis tau ua tim khawv tias Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los no los? Thiab ib yam li nws tau tsa tus nab tooj nyob tom hav zoov, tus uas yuav los kuj yuav raug muab tsa tib yam li ntawd.

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

- 15 Thiab txhua tus uas yuav ntsia rau tus nab ntawd yuav ciaj, txhua tus uas yuav ntsia rau Vajtswv Leej Tub nrog txoj kev ntseeg, muaj siab xav ua zoo, kuj yuav ciaj tib yam, mus rau txoj sia uas nyob mus ib txhis.
- 16 Thiab nim no saib seb, tsis yog Mauxes ua tim khawv txog tej yam no xwb, tiam sis tas nrho tej yaj saub dawb huv thiab, txij li nws lub caij los mus rau Anplaham lub caij.
- 17 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab saib seb, Anplaham tau pom txog nws txoj kev los, thiab tau puv nkaus nrog txoj kev kaj siab thiab tau zoo siab.
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias tsis yog Anplaham thiaj tau paub tej yam no xwb, tiam sis tau muaj ntau leej ua ntej Anplaham lub neej uas tau raug hu los ntawm Vajtswv tus txheej txheem; muaj tseeb tiag, twb raws li tus txheej txheem ntawm Leej Tub; thiab qhov no kom nws yuav raug ua rau cov neeg paub, ntau txhiab xyoo ua ntej nws txoj kev nqis los, xwv kom txoj kev txhiv dim yuav los rau lawv.
- 19 Thiab nim no kuv xav kom nej yuav paub, tias txij li thaum Anplaham lub caij los tau muaj ntau tus yaj saub uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no; muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, tus yaj saub Xinos tau ua tim khawv yam tsis ntshai kiag; vim qhov ntawd nws thiaj tau raug tua.
- 20 Thiab saib seb, Xinoj; thiab Eexiyas, thiab Yaxayas, thiab Yelemis los kuj tau ua tim khawv, (Yelemis tau yog tib tug yaj saub uas tau ua tim khawv txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm Yeluxalees) thiab nim no peb paub tias Yeluxalees tau raug puas tsuaj raws li Yelemis tej lus lawm. Au ces vim li cas Vajtswv Leej Tub thiaj li yuav tsis los, raws li nws txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej?
- 21 Thiab nim no nej puas yuav cam tias Yeluxalees tau raug puas tsuaj lawm no? Nej puas yuav hais tias Xedekhiyas tej tub tsis tau raug tua, tag nrho tsuas yog tshuav Mules xwb? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nej puas yuav tsis pom tias Xedekhiyas tej noob tau nyob nrog peb, thiab lawv tau raug raws khiav tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees no los? Tiam sis saib seb, tsis tas li no xwb—

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

- 22 Peb tus yawg koob Lihais tau raug raws khiav tawm ntawm Yeluxalees vim nws tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no. Nifais kuj tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no, thiab yuav luag tas nrho peb tej yawg koob los kuj tib yam, nqis los txog lub sij hawm no; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau ua tim khawv txog txoj kev uas Khetos los, thiab tau tos ntsoov, thiab tau zoo siab nyob hauv nws lub caij uas yuav los.
- 23 Thiab saib seb, nws yog Vajtswv, thiab nws nyob nrog lawv, thiab nws tau ua nws tus kheej rau lawv paub, ces lawv thiaj raug txhiv dim los ntawm nws; thiab lawv tau muab yeeb koob rau nws, vim yog yam uas tseem yuav los.
- 24 Thiab nim no, pom tias nej yeej paub tej yam no thiab tsis muaj peev xwm tsis kam lees yuav lawv tsuas ntshai nej yuav dag xwb, yog li ntawd hauv qhov no nej tau ua txhaum lawm, vim nej tau tsis kam lees tas nrho txhua yam no, txawm tias tau muaj tej puav pheej uas nej tau txais ntau ua luaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nej twb tau txais tas nrho txhua yam lawm, tsis hais tej yam uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thiab tas nrho tej yam uas nyob hauv ntiaj teb, ua zoo li ib yam tim khawv tias lawv muaj tseeb.
- 25 Tiam sis saib seb, nej tau tsis lees qhov tseeb, thiab ntxeev siab rau nej tus Vajtswv dawb huv; thiab nyob rau lub sij hawm no los tib yam, tsis kam khaws tej nyiaj txiag rau nej tus kheej cia rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, qhov uas tsis muaj dab tsi yuav ua kom xeb tau, thiab qhov uas tsis muaj dab tsi uas tsis dawb huv yuav los tau rau, nej tab tom tum rau nej tus kheej txoj kev npau taws rau hnuv uas txiav txim.
- 26 Muaj tseeb tiag, lub sij hawm no los nej kuj tab tom siav, vim yog nej tej kev tua neeg thiab nej tej kev ua nkauj ua nraug thiab tej kev phem, rau txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ces nws yuav los rau nej sai sai.
- 27 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb nim no nws twb nyob ntawm nej tej qhov rooj lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, nej cia li mus lawm tom lub rooj txiav txim, thiab tshawb nrhiav; thiab saib seb, nej tus tub txiav txim twb raug neeg tua lawm, thiab nws tau pw tsau nws cov ntshav; thiab nws tau raug tua los ntawm nws tus kwv tij, tus uas pheej nrhiav kev los zaum lub rooj txiav txim.

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

28 Thiab saib seb, nkawd ob leeg puav leej yog cov
uas nyob hauv nej pab uas tua neeg ntsiag to, tus uas
tsim yog Nkadi-atoos thiab tus dab uas xav rhuav
kom tib neeg tej ntsuj plig puas tsuaj.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band,
whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who
seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

Hilamas 9

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias thaum Nifais tau hais tej lus no tas lawm, ib co neeg uas nyob hauv lawv tau khiav mus rau tom lub rooj txiav txim; muaj tseeb tiag, twb muaj tsib tug uas tau mus, thiab lawv tau hais rau lawv tus kheej, thaum lawv mus hais tias:
- 2 Saib seb, nim no peb yuav paub ntawm qhov tseeb saib tus neeg no puas yog ib tug yaj saub thiab Vajtswv tau txib nws qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas neeg xav tsis thooob li rau peb los tsis yog. Saib seb, peb tsis ntseeg tias nws tau txib; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tsis ntseeg tias nws yog ib tug yaj saub; txawm li ntawd los, yog qhov uas nws tau hais txog tus thawj tub txiav txim no muaj tseeb, es nws tau tuag lawm tiag, ces peb yuav ntseeg tias lwm cov lus uas nws tau hais lawm yeej muaj tseeb.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau khiav tas lawv lub zog, thiab tau los rau hauv lub rooj txiav txim; thiab saib seb, tus thawj tub txiav txim tau vau rau hauv av, thiab tau pw tsau nws cov ntshav.
- 4 Thiab nim no saib seb, thaum lawv pom qhov no lawv tau poob siab heev kawg nkaus, kawg tias lawv tau vau rau hauv av; vim lawv tau tsis ntseeg tej lus uas Nifais tau hais txog tus thawj tub txiav txim.
- 5 Tiam sis nim no, thaum lawv pom lawm lawv thiaj ntseeg, thiab txoj kev ntshai tau los rau saum lawv nyob tsam tas nrho tej kev txiav txim uas Nifais tau hais lawm yuav los rau saum cov neeg; yog li ntawd lawv tau tshee hnyo, thiab tau qaug rau hauv av.
- 6 Nim no, tib pliag thaum uas tus tub txiav txim tau raug tua—nws tau raug nkaug los ntawm nws tus kwv tij los ntawm ib txoj kev npaj tua ntsiag to, thiab nws tau khiav lawm, thiab tej tub qhe tau khiav mus thiab tau qhia rau cov neeg, tsa suab qw txog tub sab tua neeg nyob hauv lawv;
- 7 Thiab saib seb cov neeg tau sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke rau ntawm chaw rooj txiav txim—thiab saib seb, rau lawv txoj kev poob siab lawv pom tsib tug neeg uas tau qaug rau hauv av ntawd.

Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

- 8 Thiab nim no saib seb, cov neeg tsis tau paub dab tsi txog cov neeg coob coob uas tau sib sau tuaj ua ke nyob ntawm Nifais lub vaj; yog li ntawd lawv tau hais nyob hauv lawv tias: Cov neeg no yog lawv cov uas tau tua tus tub txiav txim, thiab Vajtswv tau foom lawv xwv kom lawv yuav khiav tsis tau ntawm peb mus.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau txhom lawv, thiab tau muab lawv khi thiab tau muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov taub. Thiab tau xa ib tsab xov mus rau qhov txhia chaw tias tus tub txiav txim tau raug tua lawm, thiab cov neeg uas tua tau raug txhom thiab tau raug muab pov rau hauv qhov taub.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis cov neeg tau sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke tuaj quaj nyiav thiab yoo mov, thaum yuav muab tus thawj tub txiav txim uas muaj hwj chim faus, tus uas tau raug tua lawm.
- 11 Thiab li no cov neeg txiav txim uas tau nyob ntawm Nifais lub vaj los tib yam, thiab tau hnov nws tej lus, kuj tau sib sau tuaj ua ke rau ntawm qhov chaw faus.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau mus nug cov neeg, hais tias: Tsib tug uas tau xa tuaj mus nug txog tus thawj tub txiav txim saib nws puas tuag los tsis tuag dua twg lawm? Thiab lawv tau teb thiab tau hais tias: Hais txog tsib tug uas nej hais tias nej tau xa, mas peb tsis paub; tiam sis muaj tsib tug uas yog cov uas tua, cov uas peb tau muab pov rau hauv qhov taub lawm.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg txiav txim tau xav kom koj lawv los; thiab lawv tau raug koj los, thiab saib seb lawv tau yog tsib tug uas tau xa tuaj; thiab saib seb cov neeg txiav txim tau nug lawv xav paub txog qhov teeb meem, thiab lawv tau qhia rau lawv tas nrho tej uas lawv tau ua lawm, hais tias:
- 14 Peb tau khiav thiab tau tuaj txog rau qhov chaw ntawm lub rooj txiav txim, thiab thaum peb tau pom tas nrho ib puas yam tsav zoo tib yam li uas Nifais tau ua tim khawv lawm, peb tau poob siab kawg tias peb tau qaug rau hauv av; thiab thaum peb rov tsim ntawm peb txoj kev poob siab los, saib seb lawv tau muab peb pov rau hauv qhov taub.
- 15 Nim no, hais txog tus uas tua tus txiv neej no, peb tsis paub xyov leej twg tau ua li ntawd; thiab peb tsuas paub npaum li no nkaus xwb, peb tau khiav thiab tau tuaj raws li nej xav, thiab pom tias nws tau tuag lawm, raws nraim li Nifais tej lus.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

16 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias cov neeg txiav txim tau piav qhov teeb meem rau cov neeg, thiab tau qw tawm nkaug Nifais, hais tias: Saib seb, peb paub tias tus Nifais no yuav tsum tau sib yeem nrog lwm tus tuaj tua tus tub txiav txim, thiab tom qab ntawd ces nws thiaj tshaj rau peb, xwv kom nws yuav hloov tau peb mus rau nws txoj kev ntseeg, xwv kom nws yuav tau tsa nws tus kheej los ua ib tug neeg loj, raug xaiv los ntawm Vajtsv, thiab yog ib tug yaj saub.

17 Thiab nim no saib seb, peb yuav soj ntsuam tus neeg no, thiab nws yuav lees nws txoj kev txhaum thiab qhia rau peb paub txog tus tseeb uas tua tus tub txiav txim no.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias tsib tug ntawd tau raug tso rau hnuv uas sam sab. Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tau cem cov neeg txiav txim rau tej lus uas lawv tau hais nkaug Nifais, thiab tau sib hais nrog lawv ib tug dhau ib tug, kawg tias lawv tau ua rau lawv cov ntawd ntsiag tas.

19 Txawm li ntawd los, lawv tau kom Nifais yuav tsum raug txhom thiab khi thiab raug coj los rau ntawm cov neeg coob coob xub ntiag, thiab lawv tau pib nug nws ntau yam lus nug xwv kom lawv yuav ua rau nws yuam kev, xwv kom lawv yuav ntxo tau nws rau txoj kev tuag—

20 Tau hais rau nws tias: Koj yeej tau tuav tswv yim nrog lwm tus; tus neeg uas tau ua qhov tua neeg no yog leej twg? Nim no cia li qhia peb, thiab cia li lees koj qhov kev txhaum; hais tias, Saib seb nyiaj txiag nyob ntawm no; thiab peb kuj yuav pub koj txoj sia rau koj yog koj yuav qhia peb, thiab lees tej lus sib yeem uas koj tau cog nrog nws lawm.

21 Tiam sis Nifais tau hais rau lawv tias: Au nej cov niag neeg ruam es, nej cov uas muaj siab tsis ntseeg, nej cov uas dig muag, thiab nej cov neeg tawv ncauj, nej puas paub tias tus Tswv nej tus Vajtsv tseem yuav ntev npaum li cas rau nej kom nej pheej taug nej txoj kev txhaum?

22 Au tsim nyog nej yuav tsum pib quaj thiab tu siab, vim txoj kev puas tsuaj loj uas nyob lub caij no yeej tos ntsoov nej, yog nej yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

23 Saib seb nej hais tias kuv tau sib yeem nrog ib tug neeg kom nws tua Xixaulas, peb tus thawj tub txiav txim. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias qhov no vim yog kuv tau ua tim khawv rau nej xwv kom nej yuav paub txog tej yam no; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib qho tim khawv rau nej, tias kuv twb paub txog txoj kev phem thiab qias uas nyob hauv nej.

24 Thiab vim kuv tau ua li no, nej hais tias kuv tau sib yeem nrog ib tug neeg kom nws yuav ua tej yam no; muaj tseeb tiag, vim kuv tau ua lub cim no rau nej pom nej thiaj npau taws rau kuv, thiab nrhiav ua kom kuv txoj sia puas tsuaj.

25 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv yuav qhia dua ib lub cim rau nej, thiab saib seb nej puas ho yuav nrhiav ua kom kuv puas tsuaj nyob rau qhov no.

26 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias: Cia li mus rau tom Xi-atoos, tus uas yog Xixaulas tus kwv tij, thiab hais rau nws—

27 Nifais, tus uas ua txuj tias yog tus yaj saub, tus uas tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam phem heev txog cov neeg no, puas tau yeem lus nrog koj, ntawm qhov uas koj tau tua Xixaulas, tus uas yog koj tus kwv tij?

28 Thiab saib seb, nws yuav hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau.

29 Thiab nej yuav hais rau nws tias: Koj puas tau tua koj tus kwv tij?

30 Thiab nws yuav sawv ntshai heev, thiab tsis paub yuav hais dab tsi. Thiab saib seb, nws yuav tsis kam lees rau nej; thiab nws yuav ua zoo li nws tau poob siab heev; txawm li ntawd los, nws yuav hais rau nej tias nws tsis muaj txhaum.

31 Tiam sis saib seb, nej cia li txheeb xyuas nws, thiab nej yuav nrhiav pom ntshav lo ntawm nws lub tw tsho.

32 Thiab thaum nej tau pom li no, nej cia li hais tias: Cov ntshav no los qhov twg los? Peb tsis paub tias nws twb yog koj tus kwv tij cov ntshav no lod?

33 Thiab tom qab ntawd nws yuav tshee, thiab ntsej muag yuav daj, zoo tib yam li txoj kev tuag tau los rau nws.

34 Thiab tom qab ntawd nej yuav hais tias: Vim txoj kev ntshai no thiab txoj kev ntsej muag daj no uas tau los rau koj lub ntsej muag, saib seb, peb paub tias yeej yog koj txhaum.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

35 Thiab tom qab ntawd txoj kev ntshai loj dua yuav los rau nws; thiab tom qab ntawd nws yuav lees txim rau nej, thiab yuav tsis kam npog ntxiv lawm tias nws tsis tau ua qhov tua neeg no.

36 Thiab tom qab ntawd nws yuav hais rau nej, tias kuv, Nifais, yeej tsis paub dab tsi txog qhov teeb meem tsuas yog tau muab los rau kuv los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim xwb. Thiab thaum ntawd nej yuav paub tias kuv yog ib tug neeg siab ncaj, thiab tias kuv yog Vajtswv xa los rau nej.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau mus thiab tau ua, raws tib yam li Nifais tau hais rau lawv. Thiab saib seb, tej lus uas nws tau hais lawm tau muaj tseeb tiag; vim raws li tej lus nws tau tsis kam lees; thiab kuj raws li tej lus nws tau lees txim.

38 Thiab nws tau raug coj los txheeb xyuas zoo pom tias nws tus kheej twb yog tus uas tua ntag, kawg tias cov tsib tug tau raug tso dim, thiab Nifais los kuj tib yam.

39 Thiab tau muaj ib txhia ntawm cov Neeg Nifais uas tau ntseeg Nifais tej lus; thiab tau muaj ib txhia, uas kuj tau ntseeg vim yog cov lus tim khawv ntawm cov tsib tug, vim lawv tau raug hloov siab tshiab thaum lawv tseem nyob hauv qhov taub.

40 Thiab nim no tau muaj ib txhia nyob hauv cov neeg, uas tau hais tias Nifais yog ib tug yaj saub.

41 Thiab tau muaj lwm cov uas tau hais tias: Saib seb, nws yog ib tug vajtswv, vim yog tias nws tsis yog ib tug vajtswv nws yuav paub tsis tau tag nrho. Vim saib seb, nws tau qhia tej kev xav ntawm peb tej siab rau peb, thiab kuj tau qhia rau peb tej yam xwm; thiab nws tseem tau ua tus neeg tseeb uas tua peb tus thawj tub txiav txim los rau peb paub.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

Hilamas 10

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib qho kev sib faib nyob hauv cov neeg, kawg tias lawv tau sib faib rau ub thiab rau no thiab lawv tau nyias mus nyias lawm, cia Nifais nyob tib leeg, thaum uas nws tseem sawv hauv lawv nruab nrab.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais tau mus rau tom nws lub tsev, xav ntsoov hauv siab rau tej yam uas tus Tswv tau qhia rau nws paub.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tab tom xav ntsoov tuaj hauv siab li no—tau txom nyem siab heev vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, lawv tej hauj lwm ntsiag to ntawm kev tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tej kev tua neeg, thiab lawv tej kev lim hiam, thiab tas nrho txhua yam kev tsis ncaj—thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tseem tab tom xav ntsoov li no rau hauv nws siab, saib seb, ib lub suab tau los hais rau nws tias:
- 4 Koj tau koob hmoov, Nifais, rau tej yam uas koj tau ua lawm; vim kuv tau pom txoj kev uas koj tau tshaj tawm txoj lus yam tsis nkees li, qhov uas kuv tau muab rau koj, muab rau cov neeg no. Thiab koj tseem tsis tau ntshai lawv, thiab tsis tau nrhiav koj tus kheej txoj sia, tiam sis tau nrhiav yam uas kuv siab nyiam, thiab tau coj li kuv tej lus txib.
- 5 Thiab nim no, vim koj tau ua li no yam tsis nkees kiag, saib seb, kuv yuav foom koob hmoov rau koj mus ib txhis; thiab kuv yuav ua kom koj muaj hwj chim hais lus thiab ua taus, hauv txoj kev ntseeg thiab hauv kev ua hauj lwm; muaj tseeb tiag, kom txhua yam tsav raug ua tiav los raws li koj tej lus, vim koj yeej yuav tsis thov yam uas tsis raws li kuv siab nyiam.
- 6 Saib seb, koj yog Nifais, thiab kuv yog Vajtswv. Saib seb, kuv tshaj nws tawm rau koj nyob ntawm kuv tej tim tswv xub ntiag, tias koj yuav muaj hwj chim rau saum cov neeg no, thiab yuav foom kom lub ntiaj teb muaj kev tshaib nqhis, thiab kev mob aw, thiab kev puas tsuaj, raws li txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg no.

Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

- 7 Saib seb, kuv muab lub hwj chim rau koj, tias yam dab tsi uas koj yuav khi nyob hauv ntiaj teb yuav raug khi nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej; thiab yam dab tsi uas koj yuav daws kom xoob nyob hauv ntiaj teb yuav raug daws kom xoob nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej; thiab li no koj yuav muaj hwj chim nyob hauv cov neeg no.
- 8 Thiab li no, yog koj yuav hais rau lub tuam tsev no kom ntuag rhe ua ob sab, nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd.
- 9 Thiab yog koj yuav hais rau lub roob no tias, koj cia li qis los thiab cia li tiaj, nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd.
- 10 Thiab saib seb, yog koj hais tias Vajtswv yuav foom cov neeg no, nws yeej yuav muaj li ntawd.
- 11 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv txib koj, tias koj cia li mus thiab tshaj tawm rau cov neeg no, tias tus Tswv Vajtswv, tus uas muaj Hwj Chim loj kawg nkaus hais li no tias: Tsuas yog nej hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ntawd nej yuav raug foom tsis zoo, mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 12 Thiab saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias thaum tus Tswv tau hais tej lus no rau Nifais tas, nws tau nres thiab tsis tau mus rau tom nws lub tsev, tiam sis tau rov qab mus rau tom cov neeg coob coob uas tau khiav ri niab mus rau ib ncig saum thaj av, thiab tau pib tshaj tawm rau lawv txog tus Tswv txoj lus uas tau hais rau nws lawm, ntsig txog lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj yog lawv tsis kam hloov siab lees txim.
- 13 Nim no saib seb, txawm hais tias Nifais tau ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb uas qhia lawv txog txoj kev tuag ntawm tus thawj tub txiav txim los, lawv tseem tau ua lawv tej siab tawv thiab tau tsis kam mloog tus Tswv tej lus.
- 14 Yog li ntawd Nifais tau tshaj tawm tus Tswv txoj lus rau lawv, hais tias: Tus Tswv hais li no tias, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, tsis yog li ntawd nej yuav raug foom tsis zoo mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Nifais tau tshaj tawm txoj lus rau lawv tas lawm, saib seb, lawv tseem ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv thiab tsis kam mloog nws tej lus; yog li ntawd lawv tau hais lus phem nkaug nws, thiab tau yuav cev lawv tej tes txhom nws xwb kom lawv yuav tau muab nws pov rau hauv qhov taub.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

- 16 Tiam sis saib seb, Vajtswv lub hwj chim tau nrog nws nyob, thiab lawv tsis muaj cuab kav txhom nws kom tau muab nws pov rau hauv qhov taub, vim tus Ntsuj Plig tau coj thiab nqa nws tawm ntawm nruab nrab ntawm lawv mus.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias li no nws tau mus ntawm ib pab neeg rau ib pab neeg nyob hauv tus Ntsuj Plig, tshaj tawm Vajtswv txoj lus, mus txog thaum nws tau tshaj tawm txoj lus rau lawv txhua tus, los sis tau xa xov tawm mus rau cov neeg sawv daws.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tseem tsis tau kam mloog nws tej lus; thiab tau pib muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg, kawg tias lawv tau raug sib faib lawv tus kheej thiab tau pib ib leeg tua ib leeg nrog ntaj.
- 19 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib xya caum thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Hilamas 11

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo xya caum thiab ob ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav tej kev sib cav sib ceg tau ntau tuaj, kawg tias tau muaj tsov rog thoob plaws txhua thaj av nyob rau hauv cov Neeg Nifais sawv daws.
- 2 Thiab nws twb yog pab neeg tub sab ntsiag to no uas tau coj rawv txoj hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj thiab txoj kev phem. Thiab npluav rog no tau muaj nyob tas nrho xyoo ntawd; thiab nyob hauv xyoo xya caum thiab peb los kuj tau muaj nyob tib yam.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo no Nifais tau thov tus Tswv hais tias:
- 4 Au tus Tswv es, tsis txhob cia cov neeg no raug puas tsuaj los ntawm ntaj; tiam sis Au tus Tswv es, cia kom muaj ib qho kev tshaib nqhis nyob rau hauv thaj av, kom txhib lawv rau txoj kev nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab tej zaum lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov los cuag koj.
- 5 Thiab nws txawm tau muaj raws li Nifais tej lus. Thiab tau muaj ib qho kev tshaib nqhis loj heev nyob rau saum thaj av, nyob rau tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab li no nyob hauv xyoo xya caum thiab plaub los txoj kev tshaib nqhis kuj muaj tas zog, thiab txoj hauj lwm puas tsuaj tau tsum los ntawm ntaj tiam sis tau rais los mus mob heev los ntawm txoj kev tshaib nqhis.
- 6 Thiab txoj hauj lwm puas tsuaj no kuj tau muaj tas zog nyob rau hauv xyoo xya caum thiab tsib. Vim tej av tau raug foom kom nws yuav qhuav qhawv, thiab tsis muaj qoob loo hauv lub caij sau qoob loos; thiab tag nrho tej av tau raug foom, kuj muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas tib yam nkaus li nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, ces lawv raug foom li ntawd ces lawv thiaj tau piam sij txhiab txhiab leej nyob rau hauv tej feem phem heev dua ntawm thaj av.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau pom tias lawv twb yuav piam sij los ntawm txoj kev tshaib nqhis, thiab lawv tau pib nco qab txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv; thiab lawv tau pib nco qab txog Nifais tej lus.

Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

- 8 Thiab cov neeg tau pib thov lawv tej thawj tub txiav txim thiab lawv tej thawj koj, kom lawv yuav hais rau Nifais tias: Saib seb, peb paub tias koj yog ib tug neeg ntawm Vajtswv, thiab yog li ntawd cia li thov tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv kom nws tig txoj kev tshaib nqhis no ncaim ntawm peb mus, ntshai nyob tsam tas nrho tej lus uas koj tau hais txog peb txoj kev puas tsuaj yuav muaj txhij txhua.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias tej neeg txiav txim tau hais rau Nifais, raws li tej lus uas tau xav kom hais. Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Nifais pom tias cov neeg tau hloov siab lees txim thiab tau txo hwj chim lawv tus kheej los ntawm npua hnab tsaj, nws tau rov thov tus Tswv dua, hais tias:
- 10 Au tus Tswv es, saib seb cov neeg no tau hloov siab lees txim; thiab lawv tau cheb Nkadi-atoos pab neeg tawm hauv lawv lawm kawg tias lawv tau rais los mus tu noob lawm, thiab lawv tau muab lawv tej tswv yim ntsiag to npog rau hauv av lawm.
- 11 Nim no, Au tus Tswv es, vim yog lawv txoj kev txo hwj chim no koj puas kam tshem koj txoj kev npau taws mus, thiab cia koj txoj kev npau taws zoo siab rau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg phem uas koj twb tau ua rau puas tsuaj tas lawm.
- 12 Au tus Tswv es, koj puas kam tshem koj txoj kev npau taws mus, muaj tseeb tiag, koj txoj kev npau taws heev, thiab ua kom txoj kev tshaib nqhis no tsum nyob rau saum thaj av no.
- 13 Au tus Tswv es, koj puas kam mloog kuv, thiab ua kom yuav muaj raws li kuv tej lus, thiab tso nag los rau saum lub ntiaj teb, xwv kom nws yuav txi taus nws tej txiv, thiab nws tej noob qoob loo txi rau lub cajj sau qoob loo.
- 14 Au tus Tswv es, koj twb tau mloog kuv tej lus thaum kuv tau hais tias, Cia kom muaj ib qho kev tshaib nqhis, xwv kom tej kab mob ntawm ntaj riam yuav tseg; thiab kuv paub tias koj yeej yuav kam, txawm yog, nyob rau lub sij hawm no, cia li mloog rau kuv tej lus, vim koj tau hais tias: Yog cov neeg no hloov siab lees txim kuv yuav tseg lawv txoj sia.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, Au tus Tswv es, thiab koj pom tias lawv tau hloov siab lees txim lawm, vim yog txoj kev tshaib nqhis thiab tej kab mob kev nkeeg thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj uas tau los rau lawv.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

16 Thiab nim no, Au tus Tswv es, koj puas kam tshem koj txoj kev npau taws mus, thiab sim dua saib lawv puas yuav tu koj? Thiab yog muaj li, Au tus Tswv es, koj mam foom koob hmoov rau lawv raws li koj tej lus uas koj tau hais lawm.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib xya caum thiab rau tus Tswv tau tshem nws txoj kev npau taws ntawm cov neeg mus, thiab tau ua kom nag los rau saum lub ntiaj teb, kawg tias nws tau txi txiv nyob rau hauv lub caij uas nws txi txiv. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txi noob nyob rau lub caij uas sau qoob loo.

18 Thiab saib seb, cov neeg tau zoo siab thiab qhuas Vajtswv, thiab tas nrho tej uas nyob saum thaj av tau muaj kev zoo siab txhij txhua; thiab lawv tsis tau nrhiav ua kom Nifais puas tsuaj ntxiv lawm, tiam sis lawv tau saib nws ib yam li ib tug yaj saub muaj hwj chim, thiab ib tug neeg ntawm Vajtswv, Vajtswv tau muab hwj chim thiab cai loj rau nws.

19 Thiab saib seb, Lihais, nws tus kwv, los kuj tsis nyob tom nws qab ib qho me me li yog hais txog tej kev ncaj ncees.

20 Thiab li no tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau pib vam meej dua nyob rau hauv thaj av, thiab tau pib txhim khov lawv tej chaw uas piam lawm, thiab tau coob ntxiv thiab ri tawm, mus txog thaum uas lawv tau npog tas nrho saum thaj av, tas nrho rau sab qaum teb thiab rau sab qab teb, txij li hiav txwv hnuv poob mus rau hiav txwv hnuv tuaj.

21 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo xya caum thiab rau tau kawg muaj kev thaj yeeb. Thiab xyoo xya caum thiab xya tau pib muaj kev thaj yeeb; thiab lub koom txoos tau ri mus thoob plaws saum txhua thaj av; thiab feem coob ntawm cov neeg, tsis hais cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas, tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos; thiab lawv tau muaj kev thaj yeeb heev nyob hauv thaj av; thiab li no tau xaus xyoo xya caum thiab xya.

22 Thiab lawv kuj tau muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob rau hauv xyoo xya caum thiab yim, tsuas yog muaj qho me ntsis kev sib cav sib ceg txog tej yam ntawm txoj lus qhuab qhia uas tau sau los ntawm tej yaj saub xwb.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

- 23 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo xya caum thiab cuaj tau pib muaj kev sib ceg ntau. Tiam sis tau muaj tias Nifais thiab Lihais, thiab ntau tus ntawm nkawd cov kwv tij uas tau paub txog tej ntsiab tseeb ntawm txoj lus qhia, tau muaj ntau yam kev tshwm sim txhua hnuv, yog li ntawd lawv tau qhuab qhia rau cov neeg, kawg tias lawv tau muab ib qho kawg rau lawv txoj kev sib ceg nyob rau tib xyoos ntawd.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo yim caum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais, tau muaj ib co neeg ntseev siab uas los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, uas ob peb xyoos ua ntej lawm tau mus rau tom cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau ris lub npe Neeg Lamas rau saum lawv, thiab kuj tau muaj ib txhia neeg uas yog tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tiag ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, raug txhib kom npau taws los ntawm lawv, los sis los ntawm cov neeg ntseev siab, yog li ntawd lawv tau pib muaj ib npluav rog nrog lawv tej kwv tij.
- 25 Thiab lawv tau tua neeg thiab ua lim hiam; thiab tom qab ntawd lawv yuav thim rov qab mus rau hauv tej roob, thiab rau hauv tej hav zoov thiab tej chaw tsis muaj neeg paub, mus nraim lawv tus kheej xwv kom lawv yuav tsis raug nrhiav tau, niaj hnuv txais neeg mus ntxiv rau lawv cov, npaum li uas yuav muaj tej neeg ntseev siab tau mus cuag lawv.
- 26 Thiab li no thaum txog sij hawm, muaj tseeb tiag, tau ncuva tsis ntau xyoo, lawv tau rais los mus ua ib pab tub sab loj heev kawg nkaus li; thiab lawv tau tshawb nrhiav tas nrho Nkadi-atoos tej tswv yim ua hauj lwm ntsiag to; thiab li no lawv tau thiaj rais los mus ua cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos.
- 27 Nim no saib seb, cov neeg tub sab no tau ua piam sij loj heev, muaj tseeb tiag, tau ua kev puas tsuaj loj heev nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais, thiab kuj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas thiab.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tsim nyog yuav tsum tau muaj ib qho kev nres txoj hauj lwm puas tsuaj no; yog li ntawd lawv tau xa ib pab tub rog uas yog neeg muaj zog mus rau hauv hav zoov thiab mus rau saum tej roob tshawb nrhiav pab tub sab no, thiab rhuav kom lawv puas tsuaj mus.
- 29 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj tias nyob rau tib xyoos ntawd lawv tau raug raws rov qab los rau lawv tej av. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib yim caum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib xyoo thib yim caum thiab ib lawv tau rov qab mus tawm tsam pab tub sab no dua, thiab tau rhuav ntau tus puas tsuaj; thiab lawv kuj tau muaj kev puas tsuaj ntau thiab.
- 31 Thiab lawv tau raug yuam rov qab tawm ntawm tej hav zoov thiab tawm ntawm tej roob los rau lawv tej av, vim yog txoj kev coob heev ntawm cov neeg tub sab uas tau ua neej nyob rau saum tej roob thiab tej hav zoov.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias li no tau xaus xyoo no. Thiab cov tub sab tseem tau muaj coob ntxiv thiab tau loj muaj zog, kawg tias lawv txheem tau tas nrho cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog, thiab cov Neeg Lamas li thiab; thiab lawv tau ua kom muaj kev ntshai heev los rau saum cov neeg uas nyob tas nrho saum thaj av.
- 33 Muaj tseeb tiag, vim lawv tau los xyuas ntau feem ntawm thaj av, thiab tau ua kev puas tsuaj loj rau lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, tau tua ntau leej, thiab tau cab lwm cov mus ua qhev rau hauv hav zoov, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ntxiv qhov tseem ceeb tshaj yog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam.
- 34 Nim no txoj kev phem loj no, uas tau los rau cov neeg vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj, tau txhib lawv dua rau txoj kev nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 35 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo yim caum thiab ib ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.
- 36 Thiab nyob hauv xyoo yim caum thiab ob lawv tau pib rov hnov qab tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv. Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo yim caum thiab peb lawv tau pib loj muaj zog hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj. Thiab nyob hauv xyoo yim caum thiab plaub lawv tseem tsis tau kho lawv tej kev thiab.
- 37 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo yim caum thiab tsib lawv tau loj hlob muaj zog dua ntxiv thiab muaj zog dua ntxiv nyob hauv lawv txoj kev khav theeb, thiab nyob hauv lawv txoj kev phem; thiab li no lawv tau tab tom siav dua rau txoj kev puas tsuaj.
- 38 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo yim caum thiab tsib.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inso-much that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Hilamas 12

- 1 Thiab li no peb muaj peev xwm pom tau tias noob neej tej siab yuam kev npaum li cas, thiab txoj kev tsis ruaj khov; muaj tseeb tiag, peb muaj peev xwm pom tias tus Tswv nyob hauv nws txoj kev zoo uas tsis muaj qhov kawg tau foom koob hmoov thiab ua kom vam meej rau cov uas muab lawv txoj kev cia siab rau nws.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb muaj peev xwm pom nyob rau tib lub sij hawm thaum uas nws tau ua nws cov neeg vam meej, muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm txoj kev ntxiv kom lawv tej qoob loo tom tej liaj teb muaj ntau tuaj, lawv tej pab yaj thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu, thiab tej kub, thiab tej nyiaj dawb, thiab tas nrho txhua yam muaj nuj nqis huv tib si thiab tej paj ntaub; tau tseg lawv tej sia, thiab tau cawm lawv dim ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes; tau ua kom lawv tej yeeb ncuab tej siab muag xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tshaj tawm tsov rog tawm tsam lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab qhov kawg, tau ua txhua yam rau txoj kev tau zoo nyob thiab txoj kev zoo siab ntawm nws cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, ces tom qab ntawd ho yog lub caij uas lawv ua lawv tej siab tawv, thiab hnov qab tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab muab Tus Dawb Huv tsuj rau hauv lawv qab xib taws—muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ua li no los vim yog txoj kev yooj yim hauv lawv, thiab lawv txoj kev vam meej heev.
- 3 Thiab li no peb pom tias yog tus Tswv tsis qhuab nws cov neeg nrog ntau yam kev txom nyem, muaj tseeb tiag, yog nws tsis xyuas lawv nrog txoj kev tuag thiab nrog txoj kev txhawj ntshai, thiab kev tshaib nqhis thiab nrog txhua yam kev mob nkeeg, ces lawv yeej yuav tsis nco qab nws.
- 4 Au cas tib neeg yuav ruam ua luaj, thiab tsis tau kam kiag, thiab phem ua luaj, thiab ua zoo li dab, thiab yuav nrawm ua luaj mus ua tej tsis ncaj, thiab qeeb ua luaj mus ua qhov zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, cas yuav nrawm ua luaj mus mloog tus dab tej lus, thiab nruab lawv tej siab rau saum tej khoom uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb!
- 5 Muaj tseeb tiag, cas yuav nrawm ua luaj rau txoj kev khav theeb; muaj tseeb tiag, cas yuav nrawm ua luaj mus khav txiv, thiab ua txhua yam uas tsis ncaj; thiab cas lawv yuav nco txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv qeeb ua luaj, thiab cuab pob ntseg rau nws tej lus ntuas, muaj tseeb tiag, cas yuav qeeb ua luaj thaum taug txoj kev txawj ntse!

Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

- 6 Saib seb, lawv tsis xav kom tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, tus uas tau tsim lawv, yuav saib xyuas thiab kav lawv; txawm hais tias nws txoj kev uas zoo heev thiab nws txoj kev hlub tshua tau muaj rau lawv los, lawv tseem tau suav tsis muaj nqis kiag rau nws tej lus qhuab ntuas, thiab lawv tsis xav kom nws ua lawv tus coj kev.
- 7 Au cas noob neej txoj kev tsis muaj nqi yuav loj ua luaj; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb tsis muaj nqi li tej hmoov av ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 8 Vim saib seb, tej hmoov av ntawm lub ntiaj teb tseem txawj txav mus rau ub rau no, txawj sib faib kom ua ob sab, thaum raug txib los ntawm peb tus Vajtswv uas loj thiab kav ib txhis.
- 9 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb nyob ntawm nws lub suab tej me nyuam roob thiab tej roob twb tshee thiab qeeg nkaws.
- 10 Thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws lub suab lawv tawg ntsoog ntxaws, thiab rais los mus ua tiaj, muaj tseeb tiag, zoo tib yam li ib lub hav.
- 11 Muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws lub suab tas nrho lub ntiaj teb twb co qeg txoog;
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws lub suab, lub hauv paus muaj zog twb qeeg, mus ti nkaus hauv plawv.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab yog nws hais rau lub ntiaj teb tias—Txav—nws yeej raug txav.
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, yog nws hais rau lub ntiaj teb tias—Koj yuav tsum mus rov qab, kom nws yuav ua kom hnuv ntev ntau teev—nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd;
- 15 Thiab li no, raws li nws lo lus lub ntiaj teb mus rov qab, thiab nws tshwm rau tib neeg pom tias lub hnuv sawv nyob twj ywm; muaj tseeb tiag, yeej yog li ntawd; vim yeej tseeb tias lub ntiaj teb txav thiab tsis yog lub hnuv.
- 16 Thiab saib seb, kuj tib yam, yog nws hais rau cov dej uas tob heev tias—Koj cia li qhuav mus—nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd.
- 17 Saib seb, yog nws hais rau lub roob no tias—Koj cia li sawv, thiab los tim no thiab vau rau saum lub nroog ntawd, kom nws yuav raug muab faus—saib seb nws yeej yuav ua li ntawd.

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

- 18 Thiab saib seb, yog ib tug neeg zais ib qho nyiaj txiag rau hauv av, thiab tus Tswv yuav hais tias—Cia nws raug foom tsis zoo, vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm nws tus uas tau muab zais cia lawm—saib seb, nws yeej yuav raug foom tsis zoo.
- 19 Thiab yog tus Tswv yuav hais tias—Koj raug foom tsis zoo, xwv kom yuav tsis muaj leej twg yuav nrhiav tau koj txij li lub sij hawm no mus lawm yav tom ntej thiab mus ib txhis li—saib seb, yuav tsis muaj leej twg tau nws txij li ntawd mus thiab ib txhis li.
- 20 Thiab saib seb, yog tus Tswv yuav hais rau ib tug neeg hais tias—Vim yog koj txoj kev tsis ncaj, koj yuav raug foom tsis zoo mus ib txhis—nws yeej ua li ntawd.
- 21 Thiab yog tus Tswv yuav hais tias—Vim yog koj txoj kev tsis ncaj koj yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm kuv xub ntiag mus—nws yeej yuav ua kom muaj tau li ntawd.
- 22 Thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas nws yuav hais li no rau, vim nws yuav raug rau nws tus uas yuav ua tsis ncaj, thiab nws yuav raug cawm tsis tau; yog li ntawd, vim qhov no, kom tib neeg yuav dim tau, txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiaj tau raug muab tshaj tawm.
- 23 Yog li ntawd, lawv cov uas yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab mloog rau lub suab ntawm tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tau koob hmoov; vim cov no yog lawv cov uas yuav raug cawm dim.
- 24 Thiab thov Vajtswv pub, nyob hauv nws txoj kev muaj puv npo loj, xwv kom tib neeg yuav raug coj los mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab tej hauj lwm zoo, xwv kom lawv yuav raug txum tim zog rau zog, raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.
- 25 Thiab kuv xav kom neeg sawv daws yuav raug cawm dim. Tiam sis peb tau nyeem lawm tias nyob rau hauv hnub loj thiab kawg ntawd yeej yuav muaj ib txhia uas yuav raug muab ntiab tawm, muaj tseeb tiag, cov uas yuav raug ntiab tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus;
- 26 Muaj tseeb tiag, cov uas yuav raug xa mus rau ib qho chaw uas muaj kev nyuaj siab tsis txawj kawg, tiav loo tej lus uas hais tias: Lawv cov uas tau ua zoo lawm yuav tau muaj txoj sia kav ib txhis; thiab lawv cov uas tau ua phem yuav tau muaj txoj kev raug txim kav ib txhis. Thiab nws yeej yog li no. Amees.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

Txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm Xamuyees, tus uas yog Neeg Lamas, mus rau cov Neeg Nifais.

Hilamas 13

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo yim caum thiab rau, cov Neeg Nifais tseem sij nyob hauv txoj kev phem, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv txoj kev phem heev, hos cov Neeg Lamas ho tau coj Vajtswv tej lus txib nruj heev, raws li Mauxes txoj kev cai.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo no tau muaj ib tug Xamuyees, uas yog Neeg Lamas, tau tuaj rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas, thiab pib qhuab qhia rau cov neeg. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau qhuab qhia, tau ntau hnuv, txog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau cov neeg, thiab lawv tau ntiab nws tawm, thiab nws twb tau yuav luag tig rov mus rau nws thaj av.
- 3 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau nws, kom nws yuav tsum tig rov qab, thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog txhua yam uas yuav los rau hauv nws lub siab rau cov neeg.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tsis kam cia kom nws nkag los rau hauv lub nroog; yog li ntawd nws thiaj tau mus thiab nce rau saum cov ntsa loog, thiab tau xyab nws txhais tes thiab tau tsa ib lub suab nrov nrov, thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog txhua yam uas tus Tswv tau muab rau hauv nws lub siab rau cov neeg.
- 5 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv, Xamuyees, uas yog ib tug Neeg Lamas, hais tus Tswv tej lus uas nws tau muab tso rau hauv kuv lub siab; thiab saib seb nws tau muab tso rau hauv kuv lub siab kom hais rau cov neeg no tias rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev txim lij yeej dai rawv rau saum cov neeg no; thiab yeej yuav tsis dhau plaub puas xyoo rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev ncaj txim lij yuav poob los rau saum cov neeg no.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev puas tsuaj hnyav heev tab tom tos ntsoov cov neeg no, thiab nws yeej yuav los tseeb tseeb rau cov neeg no, thiab yuav tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas yuav cawm tau cov neeg no dim tsuas yog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev ntseeg tus Tswv Yexus Khetos, tus uas yeej yuav los tiag tiag rau hauv lub ntiag teb, thiab yuav tiv ntau yam thiab yuav raug tua rau nws cov neeg.

The prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.

Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

- 7 Thiab saib seb, tus Tswv ib tug tim tswv tau tshaj nws tawm rau kuv, thiab nws tau coj txoj moo zoo los rau kuv lub siab. Thiab saib seb, kuv tau raug xa tuaj rau nej kom tshaj nws tawm rau nej thiab, xwv kom nej yuav muaj txoj moo zoo; tiam sis saib seb nej tsis kam txais kuv.
- 8 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau hais li no: Vim yog txoj kev siab tawv ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, yog lawv yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim ces kuv yuav tshem kuv txoj lus ntawm lawv mus, thiab kuv yuav thim kuv tus Ntsuj Plig ntawm lawv mus, thiab kuv yuav tsis cia lawv ntev ntxiv lawm, thiab kuv yuav tig lawv tej kwv tij tej siab tawm tsam lawv.
- 9 Thiab yuav tsis dhau plaub puas xyoo ua ntej kuv yuav ua kom lawv raug qhuab; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav los saib xyuas lawv nrog ntaj thiab kev tshaib nqhis thiab kev mob nkees.
- 10 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav los xyuas lawv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev npau taws heev, thiab yuav muaj ib txhia ntawm nej cov yeeb ncuab ntawm tiam neeg thib plaub uas tseem yuav muaj txoj sia nyob, yuav pom nej txoj kev puas tsuaj huv tib si; thiab qhov no yeej yuav muaj los tiag tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, tus Tswv hais li; thiab cov neeg ntawm tiam neeg thib plaub yuav tuaj xyuas nej txoj kev puas tsuaj ntag.
- 11 Tiam sis yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov mus cuag tus Tswv nej tus Vajtswv kuv yuav tshem kuv txoj kev npau taws mus, tus Tswv hais li; muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv hais li no, tias lawv cov uas yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov qab los cuag kuv yuav tau koob hmoov, tiam sis txoj kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas tsis kam hloov siab lees txim.
- 12 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lub nroog Xalahelas loj no; vim saib seb, twb yog vim cov neeg uas ncaj ncees es nws thiaj raug dim; muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lub nroog loj no, tus Tswv hais tias vim kuv pom tias, muaj ntau leej, muaj tseeb tiag, feem coob ntawm lub nroog loj no, uas yeej yuav ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv rau kuv, tus Tswv hais li.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

- 13 Tiam sis lawv cov uas yuav hloov siab lees txim yuav tau koob hmoov, vim kuv yuav tseg lawv. Tiam sis saib seb, yog tsis yog rau cov neeg ncaj ncees uas nyob hauv lub nroog loj no, saib seb, ntshe kuv twb ua kom hluav taws nqis tawm saum ntuj los thiab ua kom nws puas tsuaj lawm.
- 14 Tiam sis saib seb, twb yog vim rau cov neeg ncaj ncees nws thiaj rau tseg. Tiam sis saib seb, lub sij hawm yuav los, tus Tswv hais, tias thaum uas nej ntiab cov neeg ncaj ncees tawm hauv nej mus, ces nej yuav siav rau txoj kev puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lub nroog loj no, vim yog txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias uas nyob hauv nws.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lub nroog Khede-oos, vim txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias uas nyob hauv nws.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau tas nrho tej nroog uas nyob ib puag ncig thaj av, uas cov Neeg Nifais nyob, vim yog txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias uas nyob hauv lawv.
- 17 Thiab saib seb, ib qho kev foom tsis zoo yuav los rau saum thaj av, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, vim yog rau cov neeg uas nyob saum thaj av, muaj tseeb tiag, vim yog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias.
- 18 Thiab nws yeej yuav muaj li, muaj tseeb tiag, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv, peb tus Vajtswv tseeb thiab muaj hwj chim hais li, tias tus uas muab tej nyiaj txiag zais rau hauv av yuav nrhiav tsis tau lawv ntxiv ib zaug li lawm, vim yog txoj kev foom phem heev ntawm thaj av, ntshe nws ho yog ib tug neeg ncaj ncees thiab yuav muab nws zais rau tus Tswv xwb.
- 19 Tus Tswv hais tias, vim kuv xav kom lawv yuav muab lawv tej nyiaj txiag zais rau kuv; thiab raug foom tsis zoo rau lawv cov uas tsis muab lawv tej nyiaj txiag zais rau kuv; vim tsis muaj leej twg li uas yuav muab lawv tej nyiaj txiag zais rau kuv tsuas yog cov neeg ncaj ncees xwb; thiab nws tus uas tsis kam muab nws tej nyiaj txiag zais rau kuv, nws yog tus raug foom tsis zoo, thiab cov nyiaj txiag los tib yam nkaus, thiab yuav tsis muaj leej twg txhiv tau nws vim yog txoj kev foom ntawm thaj av.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

- 20 Thiab hnuv ntawd yuav los uas lawv yuav muab lawv tej nyiaj txiag zais, vim lawv tau tso lawv tej siab rau tej kev nplua nuj; thiab vim lawv tau tso lawv tej siab rau lawv tej kev nplua nuj, thiab yeej yuav muab lawv tej nyiaj txiag zais thaum lawv khiav lawv tej yeeb ncuab; vim lawv yuav tsis muab tej ntawd zais rau kuv, lawv yuav raug foom tsis zoo thiab lawv tej nyiaj txiag los tib yam; thiab tus Tswv hais tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd lawv yuav raug qhuab.
- 21 Saib seb nej, cov neeg ntawm lub nroog loj no es, thiab cia li mloog kuv cov lus; muaj tseeb tiag, cia li mloog tej lus uas tus Tswv hais; vim saib seb, nws hais tias nej yuav raug foom tsis zoo vim nej tej kev nplua nuj, thiab nej tej nyiaj txiag kuj yuav raug foom tsis zoo tib yam vim nej tau tso nej tej siab rau saum lawv, thiab tau tsis kam mloog tej lus ntawm nws tus uas muab lawv rau nej.
- 22 Nej tsis nco qab txog tus Tswv nej tus Vajtsv rau txhua yam uas nws tau foom koob hmoov rau nej lawm, tiam sis nej yeej nco qab ntsoov nej tej kev nplua nuj, tsis ua tus Tswv nej tus Vajtsv tsaug rau tej ntawd; muaj tseeb tiag, nej tej siab yeej tsis npuab rau tus Tswv, tiam sis lawv tsuas tsau npo rau txoj kev khav theeb, rau txoj kev khav, thiab rau txoj kev siab kheej, tej kev xav tau luag tug, tej kev sib cav sib ceg, tej kev xav ua kom lwm tus puas tsuaj, tej kev tsim txom, thiab tej kev tua neeg, thiab tas nrho txhua yam kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 23 Vim qhov no tus Tswv Vajtsv thiaj tau ua kom muaj ib qho kev foom tsis zoo los rau saum thaj av, thiab los rau nej tej kev nplua nuj, thiab li no los vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees.
- 24 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov neeg no, vim yog lub sij hawm no uas tau los txog lawm, tias nej tau ntiab tej yaj saub tawm, thiab thuam lawv, thiab txawb pob zeb rau lawv, thiab muab lawv tua, thiab ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj rau lawv, ua tib yam li lawv ua puag thaum ub.
- 25 Thiab nim no thaum nej hais lus, nej hais tias: Yog peb tau nyob rau txheej puag thaum uas peb tej yawg koob nyob, peb yeej yuav tsis tau muab tej yaj saub tua; peb yeej yuav tsis tau xuas pob zeb txawb lawv, thiab ntiab lawv tawm.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

26 Saib seb nej tseem phem tshaj lawv; vim tib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, yog muaj ib tug yaj saub tuaj rau hauv nej thiab tshaj tawm tus Tswv txoj lus rau nej, uas ua tim khawv txog nej tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj, ces nej npau taws rau nws, thiab ntiab nws khiav thiab nrhiav txhua yam kev ua kom nws puas tsuaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej yuav hais tias nws yog ib tug yaj saub cuav, thiab tias nws yog ib tug neeg ua txhaum, thiab yog tus dab li, vim nws ua tim khawv tias nej tej hauj lwm phem.

27 Tiam sis saib seb, yog muaj ib tug neeg yuav tuaj rau hauv nej thiab yuav hais tias: Ua qhov no, thiab nws tsis muaj kev txhaum; ua qhov ntawd thiab nej yuav tsis raug dab tsi; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav hais tias: Mus raws li txoj kev khav ntawm nej tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, mus raws li txoj kev khav ntawm nej tej qhov muag, thiab ua txhua yam raws li nej tej siab xav tau—thiab yog muaj ib tug neeg yuav tuaj rau hauv nej thiab hais li no, ces nej yeej yuav txais nws, thiab hais tias nws yog ib tug yaj saub.

28 Muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej yuav txhawb nqa nws, thiab nej yeej yuav muab nej tej khoom rau nws; nej yeej yuav muab nej tej kub thiab tej nyiaj dawb rau nws, thiab nej yeej yuav muab tej ris tsho kim kim rau nws hnav; thiab vim nws hais tej lus uas ua txuj ntxias rau nej, thiab nws hais tias txhua yam tsuas muaj zoo xwb, ces nej yeej yuav tsis nrhiav kev txhaum rau nws.

29 Au nej tiam niag neeg phem thiab qias es; nej cov niag neeg siab tawv thiab tawv ncauj, nej tseem xav tias tus Tswv tseem yuav cia nej ua li ntev npaum li cas thiab? Muaj tseeb tiag, nej tseem yuav cia nej tus kheej rau txoj kev ruam thiab txoj kev dig muag coj ntev npaum li cas thiab? Muaj tseeb tiag, nej tseem yuav xaiv txoj kev tsaus ntuj dua li txoj kev kaj ntev npaum li cas thiab?

30 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws twb tau npau nkaug nej lawm; saib seb, nws tau foom tsis zoo rau thaj av vim yog nej txoj kev tsis ncaj.

31 Thiab saib seb, lub sij hawm yuav los kom nws yuav foom tsis zoo rau nej tej kev nplua nuj, xwv kom lawv yuav rais los mus nplua npleev, xwv kom nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm tuav tau lawv; thiab nyob rau thaum lub caij nej txom nyem nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm muaj tau lawv.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

32 Thiab nyob rau thaum lub caij nej txom nyem nej yuav quaj thov tus Tswv; thiab nej yuav quaj thov tsis muaj nuj nqis, vim nej txoj kev puas ntsoog twb los rau saum nej lawm, thiab nej txoj kev puas tsuaj yeej raug ua kom muaj tseeb; thiab thaum ntawd nej yuav quaj ntsuag thiab quaj nrov nrov nyob rau hnuv ntawd, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li. Thiab tom qab ntawd nej yuav quaj nyiav, thiab hais tias:

33 Au kheev lam tias kuv tau hloov siab lees txim lawm, thiab tsis txhob tau tua tej yaj saub, thiab muab pob zeb ntaus lawv, thiab muab lawv ntiab tawm. Muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau hnuv ntawd nej yuav hais tias: Au kheev lam tias peb tau nco txog tus Tswv peb tus Vajtswv nyob rau lub caij thaum nws tau muab peb tej kev nplua nuj rau peb, thiab ces lawv yuav tsis rais los nplua npleev kom peb yuav plam lawv mus; vim saib seb, peb tej kev nplua nuj tau ploj ntawm peb mus lawm.

34 Saib seb, peb tso ib rab cuab yeej rau qhov no thiab tag kis nws tsis pom lawm; thiab saib seb, peb tej ntaj raug muab ntawm peb mus lawm thaum lub caij uas peb tau nrhiav lawv los ua rog.

35 Muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau muab peb tej nyiaj txiag zais thiab lawv tau plam ntawm peb mus lawm, vim yog txoj kev foom tsis zoo ntawm thaj av.

36 Au kheev lam tias peb tau hloov siab lees txim thaum lub caij uas tus Tswv txoj lus tau los rau peb; vim saib seb thaj av twb raug foom tsis zoo lawm, thiab txhua yam tau rais los nplua npleev, thiab peb tsis muaj peev xwm tuav tau lawv.

37 Saib seb, peb raug vij los ntawm tej dab, muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau raug vij ib puag ncig los ntawm tej tim tswv ntawm nws tus uas tau nrhiav ua kom peb tej ntsuj plig puas tsuaj. Saib seb, peb tej kev tsis ncaj loj heev. Au tus Tswv es, koj puas tshem tau koj txoj kev npau taws ntawm peb mus? Thiab li no yuav yog nej yam lus nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

38 Tiam sis saib seb, nej lub caij sim siab twb dhau lawm; nej tau laug lub caij ntawm nej txoj kev cawm seej mus txog thaum uas twb lig heev ib txhis li lawm, thiab nej txoj kev puas tsuaj twb raug ua kom muaj tseeb lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, vim nej tau nrhiav tas nrho nej lub neej rau tej uas nej tsis muaj peev xwm muab tau; thiab nej tau nrhiav txoj kev zoo siab los ntawm txoj kev ua tsis ncaj, yam uas tsis raws li txoj kev ncaj ib txwm muaj ntawd uas nyob hauv peb tus Thawj uas muaj hwj chim loj thiab Nyob Mus Ib Txhis.

39 Au nej cov neeg ntawm thaj av es, xav kom nej yuav mloog kuv tej lus! Thiab kuv thov Vajtswv kom tus Tswv txoj kev npau taws yuav raug tshem ntawm nej mus, thiab kom nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab yuav raug dim.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

Hilamas 14

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias Xamuyees, tus Neeg Lamas, tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam loj heev ntxiv uas muab sau tsis tau cia.
- 2 Thiab saib seb, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv muab ib lub cim rau nej; vim tshuav tsib xyoos ntxiv uas yuav los, thiab saib seb, thaum ntawd Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav los txhiv tag nrho sawv daws uas yuav ntseeg nws lub npe.
- 3 Thiab saib seb, kuv yuav muab qhov no rau nej ua lub cim rau thaum lub caij nws los; vim saib seb, yuav muaj tej teeb ci heev saum ntuj, kawg tias hmo uas ua ntej nws los nws yuav tsis tsaus ntuj li, kawg tias nws yuav tshwm rau neeg pom zoo li yog nruab hnuab.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, yuav muaj ib hnuab thiab ib hmos thiab ib hnuab, uas yuav zoo ib yam li ib hnuab xwb thiab yuav tsis muaj tsaus ntuj; thiab qhov no yuav yog ib lub cim rau nej; vim nej yuav paub txog txoj kev hnuab tuaj thiab nws txoj kev poob; yog li ntawd lawv yuav paub tseeb tias yuav muaj ob hnuab thiab ib hmos; txawm li ntawd los hmo ntuj yuav tsis tsaus ntuj; thiab nws yuav yog hmo ua ntej nws yug.
- 5 Thiab saib seb, yuav muaj ib lub hnuab qub tshiab sawv tuaj, ib lub uas zoo li nej yeej tsis tau pom dua li; thiab qhov no los kuj yuav yog ib lub cim rau nej thiab.
- 6 Thiab saib seb tsis tas li no xwb, yuav muaj ntau lub cim thiab ntau yam xav tsis thoob nyob saum ntuj.
- 7 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias nej sawv daws yuav yoob, thiab xav tsis thoob, kawg tias nej yuav qaug rau hauv av.
- 8 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias leej twg uas yuav ntseeg Vajtswv Leej Tub, tus ntawd yuav muaj txoj sia kav ib txhis.
- 9 Thiab saib seb, tus Tswv tau txib kuv li no, los ntawm nws tus tim tswv, kom kuv yuav tsum tuaj thiab qhia yam no rau nej; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau txib kom kuv qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tej yam no rau nej; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau hais rau kuv tias: Hais nrov nrov rau cov neeg no, cia li hloov siab lees txim thiab kho tus Tswv txoj kev.

Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

- 10 Thiab nim no, vim kuv yog ib tug Neeg Lamas, thiab tau hais rau nej tej lus uas tus Tswv tau txib kuv, thiab vim tej lus ntawd tau tawv tawm tsam nej, nej thiaj npau taws rau kuv thiab tau nrhiav rhuav kom kuv puas tsuaj, thiab tau ntiab kuv tawm ntawm nej mus.
- 11 Thiab nej yuav hnov kuv cov lus, rau qhov, vim yog lub ntsiab no uas kuv thiaj tau nce rau saum cov ntsa loog ntawm lub nroog no, xwv kom nej yuav hnov thiab paub txog tej kev txiav txim ntawm Vajtswv uas tos nraim nej vim yog nej tej kev tsis ncaj, thiab kom nej yuav paub txog tej uas yuav tsum ua ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab;
- 12 Thiab kom nej yuav paub txog txoj kev los ntawm Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub, Leej Txiv rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb, Tus Tsim tas nrho txhua yam txij li thaum chiv keeb los; thiab kom nej yuav paub txog tej cim ntawm nws txoj kev los, rau qhov uas txhob txwm ua kom nej yuav ntseeg nws lub npe.
- 13 Thiab yog nej ntseeg nws lub npe nej yeej yuav hloov siab lees tas nrho nej tej txim huv tib si, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nej yuav tau txais kev zam txim rau lawv dhau los ntawm nws tej hauj lwm zoo.
- 14 Thiab saib seb, ntxiv, kuv muab dua ib lub cim rau nej, muaj tseeb tiag, lub cim ntawm nws txoj kev tuag.
- 15 Vim saib seb, nws yeej yuav tsum tuag tiag xwv kom txoj kev cawm seej yuav los tau; muaj tseeb tiag, nws txaus thiab tsim nyog tias nws yuav tsum tuag, kom thiaj li muaj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm cov tuag, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd neeg thiaj yuav raug coj tau mus nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, txoj kev tuag no yuav coj kom muaj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, thiab yuav txhiv tau tib neeg sawv daws dim ntawm txoj kev tuag zaum ib—txoj kev tuag sab ntsuj plig ntawd; vim tas nrho noob neej sawv daws, los ntawm Adas txoj kev poob, tau raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus, raug muab suav zoo li tuag lawm, rau tas nrho sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

- 17 Tiam sis saib seb, Khetos txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los yuav txhiv tib neeg dim, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho noob neej sawv daws, thiab yuav coj lawv rov qab mus nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag.
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws ua kom muaj tej uas yuav tsum ua ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, xwv kom txhua tus uas yuav hloov siab lees txim yuav tsis raug ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv hluav taws; tiam sis txhua tus uas tsis kam hloov siab lees txim yuav raug ntov kom vau thiab muab pov rau hauv hluav taws; thiab ib txoj kev tuag sab ntsuj plig yuav rov qab los rau saum lawv dua muaj tseeb tiag, ib txoj kev tuag zaum ob, vim lawv raug txiav tawm dua ib yam li rau tej uas txheeb rau txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 19 Yog li ntawd nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, ntshai tsam twb paub tej no lawm thiab tsis kam ua lawv ces nej yuav cia nej tus kheej los mus rau hauv txoj kev raug txim, thiab nej yuav raug coj los mus rau hauv txoj kev tuag zaum ob no.
- 20 Tiam sis saib seb, tib yam li kuv tau hais rau nej txog ib lub cim ntxiv, lub cim ntawm nws txoj kev tuag, saib seb, nyob rau hnuv ntawd uas nws yuav raug txoj kev tuag lub hnuv yuav tsaus thiab tsis kam muab nws txoj kev kaj rau nej; lub hli thiab tej hnuv qub los kuj tib yam; thiab yuav tsis muaj qhov kaj nyob rau saum thaj av no li, twb yuav txij li lub caij uas nws yuav raug txoj kev tuag, tau ncuu li peb hnuv, mus txog lub caij uas nws sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los dua.
- 21 Muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau lub sij hawm uas nws yuav tso txoj sia tseg yuav muaj xob quaj thiab xob laim tau ncuu ntau teev, thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav co thiab ua zog koog; thiab tej pob zeb uas nyob saum lub ntiaj teb no, uas nyob saum lub ntiaj teb thiab hauv qab lub ntiaj teb, tej uas ziag no nej paub tias yeej tawv, los sis feem ntau yeej yog ib thooj tawv, yuav tawg ntsoog ntxaws.
- 22 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav tawg ua ob sab, thiab ib txhis lawm yav tom ntej yuav muaj kab tawg pleb thiab tej av tawg thiab tej ntu uas tawg nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb, muaj tseeb tiag, tsis hais cov nyob saum lub ntiaj teb thiab hauv qab.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

- 23 Thiab saib seb, yuav muaj tej cua daj cua dub loj, thiab muaj ntau lub roob yuav tiaj, zoo li ib lub hav, thiab yuav muaj ntau qhov chaw uas ziang no hu ua tej vos hav yuav rais los mus ua tej roob, uas yuav siab heev.
- 24 Thiab ntau txoj kev loj yuav raug tawg, thiab ntau lub nroog yuav rais los mus tsis muaj neeg nyob.
- 25 Thiab ntau lub ntxa yuav qhib, thiab yuav tso lawv tej neeg tuag ntau tus; thiab ntau tus cov uas ntseeg yuav tshwm rau ntau tus pom.
- 26 Thiab saib seb, tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv li no; vim nws tau hais rau kuv tias yuav muaj xob quaj thiab xob laim ntau ntau teev.
- 27 Thiab nws tau hais rau kuv tias thaum tseem muaj xob quaj thiab xob laim thiab cua daj cua dub, ces yuav muaj tej yam no, thiab yuav muaj kev tsaus ntuj los vov tas nrho lub ntiaj teb ntev li peb hnub.
- 28 Thiab tus tim tswv tau hais rau kuv tias ntau tus tseem yuav pom tej yam loj dua li no, txhob txwm ua kom lawv yuav ntseeg tias tej cim no thiab tej no yuav muaj los rau saum thaj av no tag nrho, txhob txwm ua kom yuav tsis muaj qhov ua kom tsis ntseeg nyob rau hauv noob neej—
- 29 Thiab qhov no txhob txwm ua kom leej twg uas yuav ntseeg ces yuav dim, thiab leej twg uas yuav tsis ntseeg, ib txoj kev txiav txim ncaj ncees yuav los rau lawv; thiab yog lawv raug txim ces yeej yog lawv coj txoj kev raug txim los rau lawv tus kheej xwb.
- 30 Thiab nim no cia li nco ntsoov, cia li nco ntsoov, kuv cov kwv tij es, leej twg uas yuav piam sij, tsuas piam sij rau nws tus kheej xwb; thiab leej twg uas yuav ua tsis ncaj, tsuas ua rau nws tus kheej xwb; vim saib seb, nej yeej muaj kev ywj pheej; nej yeej raug cia coj rau nej tus kheej; vim saib seb, Vajtsv tau muab ib qho kev paub rau nej thiab nws tau cia nej nyob ywj pheej.
- 31 Nws tau muab rau nej kom nej yuav paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem, thiab nws tau muab rau nej kom nej yuav xaiv txoj sia los sis txoj kev tuag; thiab nej yeej muaj cai ua zoo thiab raug rov muab txum tim rau qhov uas zoo, los sis muab qhov uas zoo los txum tim rau nej; los sis nej muaj cai ua phem, thiab muab qhov phem los txum tim rau nej.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Hilamas 15

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlob es, saib seb, kuv tshaj tawm rau nej tias tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, tsis li ces nej tej vaj tse yuav raug tseg tsis muaj neeg nyob.
- 2 Muaj tseeb tiag, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, tsis li ces nej tej poj niam yuav muaj kev txom nyem quaj ntsuag nyob rau lub sij hawm thaum lawv pub mis rau me nyuam mos noj; vim nej yuav sim khiav thiab yuav tsis muaj chaw rau nej nkaum; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas muaj me nyuam, vim lawv yuav xeeb me nyuam thiab khiav tsis tau; yog li ntawd, lawv yuav raug tsuj qaug thiab yuav raug tseg cia piam sij.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov neeg uas hu ua cov Neeg Nifais tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb, thaum lawv yuav pom tas nrho tej cim no thiab tej uas xav tsis thoob uas yuav ua kom lawv pom; vim saib seb, lawv tau yog ib co neeg raug xaiv los ntawm tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau hlob cov Neeg Nifais, thiab kuj tau qhuab ntuas lawv; muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau lub caij lawv ua tsis ncaj nws tau qhuab ntuas rau lawv vim nws hlob lawv.
- 4 Tiam sis saib seb kuv cov kwv tij, nws tau ntsub cov Neeg Lamas vim tej uas lawv ua tau phem tsis tu ncu, thiab li no los vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm lawv tej yawg koob txoj kev li kev cai. Tiam sis saib seb, txoj kev cawm seej tau los rau lawv dhau los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais txoj kev tshaj qhia; thiab vim li no tus Tswv thiaj tau ua kom lawv txoj sia ntev dua tuaj.
- 5 Thiab kuv xav kom nej pom tias feem coob ntawm lawv tseem nyob hauv txoj kev ntawm lawv txoj hauj lw, thiab lawv tau ua zoo mus rau Vajtswv, thiab lawv yeej kam coj nws tej lus txib thiab nws tej kev cai thiab nws tej kev txiav txim mus raws li Mawxes txoj kev cai.
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, tias feem coob ntawm lawv tab tom ua li no, thiab lawv tab tom xyaum rau siab ntso yam tsis nkees kiag xwv kom lawv yuav coj tau lawv cov kwv tij uas tseem tshuav los paub txog qhov tseeb; yog li ntawd muaj coob tug uas los ntiv rau lawv cov txhua hnuv.

Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

7 Thiab saib seb, nej yeej paub nej lawm, vim nej twb tau pom, tias lawv txhua tus uas tau raug coj los paub txog qhov tseeb, thiab paub txog qhov phem thiab qias ntawm lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, thiab raug coj los ntseeg tej vajlugkub dawb huv, muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm cov yaj saub dawb huv, uas tau muab sau tseg, uas tau coj lawv los rau txoj kev ntseeg ntawm tus Tswv thiab rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, uas yog txoj kev ntseeg thiab txoj kev hloov siab lees txim uas coj ib txoj kev pauv siab los rau lawv—

8 Yog li ntawd, txhua tus uas tau los rau qhov no, nej paub nej lawm tias cov no yeej nyob ruaj nrees thiab khov kho hauv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab nyob hauv tej yam uas tau ua rau lawv dim lawm.

9 Thiab nej kuj paub tias lawv tau muab lawv tej cuab yeej ua rog faus, thiab lawv ntshai muab lawv los siv ntshai tsam lawv ho ua txhaum; muaj tseeb tiag, nej pom tau tias lawv ntshai ua txhaum—vim saib seb lawv yuav cia lawv tus kheej kom raug tsuj qaug thiab raug tua los ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab yuav tsis kam tsa lawv tej ntaj tawm tsam lawv, thiab li no los vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos.

10 Thiab nim no, vim lawv txoj kev ruaj khov thaum lawv ntseeg rau tej yam uas lawv ntseeg, rau qhov vim yog lawv txoj kev ruaj nrees thaum lawv raug ua ib zaug lawm kom pom kev, saib seb, tus Tswv yuav foom koob hmoov rau lawv thiab ua kom lawv muaj sia ntev, txawm tias lawv tau muaj tej kev tsis ncaj—

11 Muaj tseeb tiag, txawm tias lawv yuav tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus los tus Tswv yuav ua kom lawv muaj sia ntev, mus txog thaum lub caij nyoog los uas tau hais los ntawm peb tej yawg koob, thiab los ntawm tus yaj saub Xinos, thiab ntau lwm cov yaj saub, ntsig txog txoj kev rov txum tim paub qhov tseeb dua ntawm peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas—

12 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, tias nyob rau lub sij hawm kawg tej kev cog lus ntawm tus Tswv tau raug muab cev rau peb cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas; thiab txawm tias lawv tau muaj tej kev txom nyem ntau, thiab txawm tias lawv yuav raug raws khiav mus rau ub rau no nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb, thiab raug raws, thiab yuav raug qhuab thiab raug khiav mus rau qhov txhia chaw, tsis muaj chaw nkaum, los tus Tswv tseem yuav hlub tshua rau lawv thiab.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

- 13 Thiab qhov no tau raws li txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, tias lawv yuav raug coj rov qab los rau txoj kev paub tseeb, uas yog txoj kev paub txog lawv tus Txhiv Dim, thiab lawv tus tswv yug yaj tseeb thiab zoo, thiab los nyob nrog nws cov yaj.
- 14 Yog li ntawd kuv hais rau nej tias, nws yuav zoo rau lawv dua li rau nej tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb.
- 15 Vim saib seb, yog tej hauj lwm loj tau ua rau lawv pom li uas tau ua rau nej pom lawm, muaj tseeb tiag, rau lawv cov uas tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus vim yog lawv tej yawg koob tej kev li kev cai, ces nej yeej pom tau nej tus kheej tias lawv yeej yuav tsis tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus ib zaug li lawm.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv hais tias: Kuv yuav tsis ua kom lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si, tiam sis kuv yuav ua kom nyob rau hauv kuv hnuv pom zoo lawv yuav tig rov qab los cuag kuv dua, tus Tswv hais li.
- 17 Thiab nim no saib seb, tus Tswv hais, txog cov Neeg Nifais li no: Yog lawv yuav tsis kam hloov siab lees txim, thiab xyaum ua li kuv siab xav, kuv yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si, tus Tswv hais tias, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg txawm tias tau muaj ntau yam hauj lwm loj uas kuv tau ua nyob rau hauv lawv; thiab tseeb tib yam li tus Tswv muaj txoj sia nyob tej yam no yeej yuav muaj tiag, tus Tswv hais li.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Hilamas 16

- 1 Thiab nim no, tau muaj tias tau muaj ntau leej uas tau hnov tej lus ntawm Xamuyees, tus Neeg Lamas, uas nws tau hais nyob saum cov ntsa loog ntawm lub nroog. Thiab txhua tus uas tau ntseeg nws tej lus tau tawm mus nrhiav Nifais; thiab thaum lawv tau tuaj thiab nrhiav tau nws lawm lawv tau lees lawv tej txim rau nws thiab tsis kam tsis lees, lawv tau xav ua kev cai raus dej rau tus Tswv.
- 2 Tiam sis txhua tus uas tsis tau ntseeg Xamuyees tej lus tau npau taws rau nws; thiab lawv tau txawb pob zeb rau nws saum ntsa loog, thiab kuj tau muaj ntau tus tau tua xub rau nws thaum uas nws sawv nyob saum ntsa loog; tiam sis tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau nyob nrog nws, kawg tias lawv tej pob zeb thiab lawv tej xub tsis raug nws.
- 3 Nim no thaum lawv tau pom tias lawv tsis muaj peev xwm ua kom raug nws, tau muaj ntau leej ntxiv uas tau ntseeg nws tej lus, kawg tias lawv tau mus cuag Nifais kom muab lawv ua kev cai raus dej.
- 4 Vim saib seb, Nifais tau tab tom ua kev cai raus dej, thiab tab tom qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, thiab tab tom qhuab qhia, hais txog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau cov neeg, tab tom ua tej cim thiab tej uas xav tsis thoob, ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob hauv cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav paub tias tus Khetos yuav tsum los tsis ntev no—
- 5 Qhia rau lawv txog tej uas yuav tsum los tsis ntev no, xwv kom lawv yuav paub thiab nco qab txog nyob rau thaum uas tej ntawd los xwv kom lawv yuav paub tias tej ntawd twb xub ua rau lawv paub ua ntej lawm, kom lawv yuav ntseeg; yog li ntawd txhua tus uas tau ntseeg Xamuyees tej lus tau tawm mus cuag nws kom ua kev cai raus dej, vim lawv tau tuaj hloov siab thiab lees lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 6 Tiam sis feem coob ntawm lawv tau tsis ntseeg Xamuyees tej lus; yog li ntawd thaum lawv pom tias lawv tej pob zeb thiab lawv tej xub tsis raug nws, lawv tau qw nrov rau lawv tej thawj nom peb, hais tias: Txhom tus neeg no thiab muab nws khi, vim saib seb nws muaj dab; thiab vim yog tus dab tej hwj chim uas nyob hauv nws peb tej pob zeb thiab tej xub thiaj tsis raug nws; yog li ntawd cia li muab nws txhom thiab muab nws khi, thiab coj nws khiav mus.

Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

7 Thiab thaum uas lawv nce mus cev lawv tej tes rau nws, saib seb, nws tau dhia saum ntsa loog los, thiab tau khiav tawm ntawm lawv tej av mus, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tau mus rau tom nws lub teb chaws, thiab tau pib qhuab qhia thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej nyob hauv nws cov neeg.

8 Thiab saib seb, nws tsis raug hnov ib zaug ntxiv nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais lawm; thiab tau muaj li no nyob hauv cov neeg.

9 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib yim caum thiab rau ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

10 Thiab li no kuj tau xaus xyoo yim caum thiab xya ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, feem coob ntawm cov neeg yeej tseem nyob hauv lawv txoj kev khav thiab txoj kev phem, thiab feem tsawg ua zoo mus rau Vajtswv.

11 Thiab tej yam no los kuj muaj tib yam, nyob rau hauv xyoo yim caum thiab yim ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

12 Thiab tau muaj kev txawv txav me me nyob hauv cov neeg tej siab nyiam xwb, tsuas yog cov neeg tau pib ua siab tawv rau kev tsis ncaj, thiab ua tej uas tsis raws li Vajtswv tej lus txib ntau ntxiv thiab ntxiv, nyob rau hauv xyoo yim caum thiab cuaj ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav.

13 Tiam sis tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib cuaj caum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav, tau muaj tej cim loj muab rau cov neeg, thiab tej uas xav tsis thoob; thiab cov yaj saub tej lus tau pib muaj zuj zus.

14 Thiab tej tim tswv tau tshwm sim rau tej neeg, tej neeg txawj ntse pom, thiab tau tshaj tawm rau lawv txoj moo zoo ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab; li no nyob rau hauv xyoo no tej vajlugkub tau pib muaj zuj zus tuaj.

15 Txawm li ntawd los, tsuas yog tshuav cov ntseeg heev tshaj ntawm lawv, uas nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas xwb, tas nrho cov neeg ces tau pib ua lawv tej siab tawv, thiab tau pib cia siab rau lawv tej zog thiab rau lawv tej kev txawj ntse, hais tias:

16 Tej zaum lawv yuav kwv yees raug tej yam, nyob hauv ntau yam; tiam sis saib seb, peb paub tias tas nrho tej hauj lwm loj thiab xav tsis thoob no yeej yuav muaj tsis tau los, uas tau hais lawm.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

- 17 Thiab lawv tau pib soj ntsuam thiab sib cav nyob hauv lawv, hais tias:
- 18 Nws twb tsis tsim nyog tias yuav muaj ib tug neeg li ib tug Khetos yuav los; yog muaj li ntawd, thiab nws yog Vajtswv Leej Tub, Leej Txiv saum ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab hauv ntiaj teb, li uas tau hais lawm, vim li cas nws ho yuav tsis ua nws tus kheej rau peb pom ib yam li ua rau lawv cov uas nyob tim Yeluxalees pom thiab?
- 19 Muaj tseeb tiag, vim li cas nws ho yuav tsis ua kom pom nws tus kheej nyob hauv thaj av no li uas nyob rau tim thaj av Yeluxalees thiab?
- 20 Tiam sis saib seb, peb paub tias qhov no yog ib txoj kev li kev cai phem, uas tau muab cev nqis rau peb los ntawm peb tej yawg koob, ua kom peb yuav ntseeg tej yam uas loj thiab xav tsis thoob uas yuav muaj los, tiam sis tsis nyob hauv peb, tiam sis nyob hauv thaj av uas nyob ncuab deb, ib thaj av uas peb tsis paub; yog li ntawd lawv kav tsij ceev kom peb tsis paub txog, vim peb yuav ua tsis tau tim khawv nrog peb tej qhov muag tias lawv muaj tseeb.
- 21 Thiab lawv yuav ua tej yam txuj ci uas peb tsis txawj to taub, los ntawm txoj kev dag ntxias thiab tej kev txuj ci tes taw ntawm tus dab, uas yuav ceev peb qis ua tej tub qhe rau lawv tej lus, thiab ua tub qhe rau lawv, vim peb vam kom lawv qhia txoj lus rau peb; thiab li no lawv thiaj yuav ceev kom peb tsis paub dab tsi yog peb yuav cia peb tus kheej rau lawv, tas nrho peb lub neej.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj ntau yam ntxiv uas cov neeg tau xav nyob hauv lawv tej siab, uas yog tej yam ruam thiab tsis muaj nuj nqis; thiab lawv tau raug thab ntau heev, vim Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tau txhib kom lawv ua tsis ncaj tsis tu ncuab li; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau ncig mus ri tej lus paj lus cua thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg rau saum thaj av tas nrho, xwv kom nws yuav ua tau cov neeg tej siab tawv rau tej uas zoo thiab rau tej uas yuav los.
- 23 Thiab txawm tias muaj tej cim thiab tej uas xav tsis thoob uas tau ua muaj nyob hauv tus Tswv cov neeg, thiab tej txuj ci tseem ceeb ntau uas lawv tau ua, los Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tseem tuav tau cov neeg tej siab ruaj nyob thoob plaws rau saum thaj av.
- 24 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib cuaj caum ntawm cov neeg txiav txim txoj kev kav cov Neeg Nifais.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 Thiab li no tau xaus Hilamas phau ntawv, raws li
phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm Hilamas thiab nws cov
tub.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according
to the record of Helaman and his sons.

Peb Nifais

Nifais Phau Ntawv

Nifais tus Tub, tus uas Yog Hilamas tus Tub

Thiab Hilamas yog tus tub ntawm Hilamas, tus uas ho yog Amas tus tub, tus uas ho yog Amas tus tub, uas yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Nifais tus uas yog Libais tus tub, tus uas tau tawm tim Yeluxalees tuaj nyob hauv xyoo thib ib ntawm txoj kev kav ntawm Xedekhiyas, teb chaws Yudas, tus vaj ntxwv.

3 Nifais 1

- 1 Nim no tau muaj tias xyoo cuaj caum thiab ib tau dhau mus thiab nws tau yog rau pua xyoo txij li lub sij hawm uas Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees; thiab nws yog nyob hauv xyoo uas Lakhoonias ua tus thawj tub txiav txim thiab tus tswv xeev kav thaj av.
- 2 Thiab Nifais, Hilamas tus tub, tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av Xalabelas, tau tso hauj lwm rau nws tus tub Nifais, tus uas yog nws tus tub hlob, ceev cov phiaj toog, thiab tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej uas tau ceev tseg cia lawm, thiab tag nrho tej yam uas tau ceev kom dawb ceev txij li thaum Lihais ncaim tawm ntawm Yeluxalees.
- 3 Ces nws tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab xyov nws mus qhov twg lawm, tsis muaj neeg paub; thiab nws tus tub Nifais tau ceev tej ceev xwm txheej nyob hauv nws qhov chaw, muaj tseeb tiag, phau ceev xwm txheej ntawm cov neeg no.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab ob, saib seb, tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm tej yaj saub tau pib muaj txhij zuj zus ntxiv tuaj; vim tau pib muaj ntau yam cim loj thiab tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj dua tau raug ua nyob hauv cov neeg.
- 5 Tiam sis tau muaj ib txhia uas tau pib hais tias lub sij hawm twb dhau rau tej lus hais uas kom muaj lawm, uas tau raug hais los ntawm Xamuyees, tus Neeg Lamas.

Third Nephi

The Book of Nephi

the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.

3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

6 Thiab lawv tau pib thum lawv tej kwv tij, hais tias: Saib seb lub sij hawm twb dhau lawm, thiab tsis muaj li Xamuyees tej lus; yog li ntawd, nej txoj kev xyiv fab thiab nej txoj kev ntseeg txog yam no tau tsis muaj nuj nqis.

7 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ua ib qho kev xeeb txob loj heev thoob plaws rau hauv thaj av; thiab cov neeg uas tau ntseeg tau pib tu siab heev, ntshai nyob tsam tej yam uas tau hais lawm yuav tsis muaj los.

8 Tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau saib tos ruaj nrees rau hnuv ntawd thiab hmo ntawd thiab hnuv ntawd uas yuav zoo li ib hnuv uas yuav tsis muaj hmo ntuj, xwv kom lawv yuav paub tias lawv txoj kev ntseeg tsis tau raug tsis muaj nuj nqis.

9 Nim no tau muaj tias tau muaj ib hnuv uas tau teem cia los ntawm cov neeg tsis ntseeg lawm, tias tag nrho cov uas tau ntseeg tej kev li kev cai ntawd yuav tsum raug tua tsuas yog lub cim ntawd yuav tsum muaj los xwb, tej uas tau raug muab los ntawm Xamuyees tus yaj saub.

10 Nim no tau muaj tias thaum Nifais, uas yog Nifais tus tub, tau pom txoj kev phem ntawm nws cov neeg no, nws lub siab tau tu siab heev kawg nkaus li.

11 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tawm mus thiab tau khoov rau hauv pem teb, thiab tau sib sib zog quaj thov rau nws tus Vajtswv pub rau nws cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, rau lawv cov uas twb yuav raug puas tsuaj vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg txoj kev li kev cai ntawm lawv tej yawg koob.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau sib sib zog quaj thov rau tus Tswv, tag nrho hnuv ntawd; thiab saib seb, tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau nws, hais tias:

13 Cia li tsa koj lub taub hau thiab cia li zoo siab; vim saib seb, lub sij hawm twb los txog lawm, thiab nyob rau hauv hmo no lub cim yuav muaj los, thiab nyob rau tag kis kuv yuav los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb, los ua rau lub ntiaj teb pom tias kuv yuav ua kom muaj tag nrho li tej uas kuv tau kom raug hais los ntawm kuv tej yaj saub dawb huv tej qhov ncauj.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

- 14 Saib seb, kuv los rau hauv kuv cov neeg, los ua kom muaj tag nrho li tej uas kuv tau ua rau noob neej paub txij li thaum ntuj tsim teb raug los, thiab los ua raws li tag nrho Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub, siab nyiam—ntawm Leej Txiv vim yog kuv, thiab ntawm Leej Tub vim yog kuv cev nqaij. Thiab saib seb, lub sij hawm los txog lawm, thiab hmo no lub cim yuav muaj los.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tej lus uas tau los rau Nifais tau raug muaj puv npo, raws li uas lawv tau raug hais lawm; vim saib seb, thaum lub hnuv yuav poob tsis muaj kev tsaus ntuj; thiab cov neeg tau pib xav tsis thoob vim tsis muaj kev tsaus ntuj thaum hmo ntuj tuaj.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj ntau leej, cov uas tsis ntseeg cov yaj saub tej lus, uas tau vau rau hauv av thiab rais los mus zoo li lawv twb tuag lawm, vim lawv paub lawm tias txoj kev puas tsuaj loj uas lawv tau cuab rau cov uas tau ntseeg cov yaj saub tej lus tau raug ua tsis tau li siab xav lawm; vim lub cim uas tau raug muab twb los txog lawm.
- 17 Thiab lawv tau pib paub tias Vajtswv Leej Tub yuav tsum tshwm sim sai sai; muaj tseeb tiag, thaum kawg, tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob tag nrho saum thaj av txij li sab hnuv poob mus rau sab hnuv tuaj, tsis hais nyob rau hauv thaj av qaum teb thiab nyob rau hauv thaj av qab teb, tau xav tsis thoob heev kawg nkaus uas lawv tau vau rau hauv av.
- 18 Vim lawv twb paub lawm tias tej yaj saub tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no tau ntau xyoo, thiab tias lub cim uas tau raug muab twb los txog lawm; thiab lawv tau pib ntshai vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj thiab lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis muaj kev tsaus ntuj nyob tag nrho hmo ntawd, tiam sis nws tau kaj zoo li nws yog thaum tav su. Thiab tau muaj tias lub hnuv tau rov qab tuaj thaum sawv ntxov dua, raws li nws ib txwm tuaj; thiab lawv paub lawm tias nws yog hnuv uas tus Tswv yuav los yug, vim yog lub cim uas tau muaj lawm.
- 20 Thiab nws tau muaj los, muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho txhua yam, txhua lo huv si, raws li tej lus ntawm tej yaj saub.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias ib lub hnuv qub tshiab kuj tau tshwm tuaj, raws li txoj lus.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias txij li lub sij hawm no mus tau pib muaj kev dag xa mus rau hauv cov neeg, los ntawm Dab Ntxwg Nyoog, ua kom lawv tej siab tawv, txhob txwm ua kom lawv tsis txhob ntseeg hauv tej cim thiab tej kev uas xav tsis thooob ntawd uas lawv tau pom; tiam sis txawm tias muaj tej kev dag thiab tej kev ntxias no los feem coob ntawm cov neeg tseem tau ntseeg, thiab tau hloov siab tshiab rau tus Tswv.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais tau tawm mus rau hauv cov neeg, thiab rau lwm cov neeg coob, ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, los ntawm qhov ntawd, tau muaj ib qho kev zam txim loj heev. Thiab li no cov neeg tau pib rov muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av dua.

24 Thiab tsis muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg, tsuas yog muaj ib txhia tau pib qhuab qhia, sim qhia los ntawm tej vajlugkub tias tsis tsim nyog yuav coj Mauxes txoj kev cai ntxiv lawm. Nim no nyob hauv yam no lawv tau ua tsis yog, tsis to taub tej vajlugkub.

25 Tiam sis tau muaj tias tsis ntev lawv tau rais los mus hloov siab tshiab, thiab tau raug ua pom txog qhov tsis yog uas lawv tau nyob hauv, vim nws tau ua rau lawv paub tias txoj kev cai tseem tsis tau muaj puv npo, thiab tias nws yuav tsum muaj puv npo txhua yam; muaj tseeb tiag, txoj lus tau los rau lawv tias nws yuav tsum muaj puv npo; muaj tseeb tiag; tias ib lo los sis ib qhov yuav tsum tsis poob mus txog thaum nws yuav muaj puv npo tag nrho; yog li ntawd nyob hauv tib xyoos no lawv tau raug coj los paub txog lawv txoj kev tsis yog thiab tau lees lawv tej kev txhaum.

26 Thiab li no xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab ob tau dhau mus, tau coj txoj moo zoo los rau cov neeg vim yog tej cim uas tau muaj los, raws li tej lus ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm tag nrho tej yaj saub dawb huv.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab peb kuj tau dhau mus yam muaj kev thaj yeeb, tsuas yog tshuav cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos xwb, cov uas tau nyob saum tej roob, uas tau nyob rau hauv thaj av; vim lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv thiab lawv tej chaw uas tsis muaj neeg paub tau muaj zog heev uas cov neeg tsis muaj peev xwm kov yeej lawv; yog li ntawd lawv tau tua neeg ntau, thiab tau tua neeg coob leej nyob hauv cov neeg.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab plaub lawv tau pib huaj vam coob heev tuaj, vim tau muaj cov Neeg Nifais ntseev siab ntau leej uas tau khiav mus rau lawv, qhov ntawd tau ua kev nyuaj siab ntau rau cov Neeg Nifais uas tseem nyob hauv thaj av.

29 Thiab kuj tau muaj ib qho kev nyuaj siab heev nyob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas; vim saib seb, lawv tau muaj tej me nyuam yaus coob leej uas tau loj hlob thiab pib muaj ntau xyoo, lawv tau rais los mus ua lawv tus kheej, thiab tau raug yaum coj lawm los ntawm ib txhia uas yog neeg Xaulas, los ntawm lawv tej kev dag thiab lawv tej lus ua txuj ntxias, mus koom nrog cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos ntawd.

30 Thiab li no cov Neeg Lamas los kuj raug txom nyem tib yam, thiab tau pib muaj tsawg zuj zus nyob hauv lawv txoj kev ntseeg thiab txoj kev ncaj ncees, vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm tiam neeg uas tab tom sawv tuaj.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

3 Nifais 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias li no xyoo cuaj caum thiab tsib kuj tau dhau mus, thiab cov neeg tau pib hnov qab tej cim thiab tej kev xav tsis thoob ntawd uas lawv tau hnov, thiab tau pib tsis yoob rau ib lub cim los sis ib txoj kev xav tsis thoob uas los saum ntuj los, kawg tias lawv tau pib ua lawv tej siab tawv, thiab npog lawv tej siab, thiab tau pib tsis ntseeg tag nrho tej uas lawv tau hnov thiab tau pom—
- 2 Tau tuav tswv yim hauv lawv tej siab tias tej no tsis muaj nuj nqis, tias nws tau raug ua los ntawm tej neeg thiab los ntawm tus dab lub hwj chim los ntxooj thiab ntxias cov neeg tej siab; thiab li no Dab Ntxwng Nyoog thiaj muab tau cov neeg tej siab dua, kawg tias nws tau ua rau lawv tej qhov muag dig thiab coj lawv mus ntseeg tias Khetos txoj kev qhia yog ib yam uas ruam thiab tsis muaj nuj nqis.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau pib loj hlob muaj zog nyob hauv txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias; thiab lawv tsis ntseeg tias yuav muaj dua tej cim los sis tej kev xav tsis thoob ntxiv lawm; thiab Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tau tawm mus ncig, ntxooj tej siab ntawm cov neeg, ntxias lawv thiab ua rau lawv kom lawv yuav tsum ua kev phem loj heev nyob hauv thaj av.
- 4 Thiab li no xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab rau tau dhau mus; thiab xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab xya los tib yam; thiab xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab yim los tib yam; thiab xyoo thib cuaj caum thiab cuaj los kuj tib yam;
- 5 Thiab xyoo thib ib puas los kuj tau dhau mus lawm txij li hnuv nyoog ntawm Mauxiyas, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Nifais.
- 6 Thiab rau puas thiab cuaj xyoo tau dhau mus lawm txij li thaum Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees.
- 7 Thiab cuaj xyoos tau dhau mus lawm txij li lub caij uas tau muaj lub cim, lub uas tau hais txog los ntawm cov yaj saub, tias Khetos yuav los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb.
- 8 Nim no cov Neeg Nifais tau pib ntsuas lawv lub sij hawm txij li lub caij no thaum uas tau muaj lub cim, los sis txij li txoj kev los ntawm Khetos; yog li ntawd, cuaj xyoos tau dhau mus lawm.
- 9 Thiab Nifais, tus uas yog Nifais leej txiv, tus uas tau saib xyuas cov ceev xwm txheej, tsis rov qab los rau hauv thaj av Xalahelas lawm, thiab tsis muaj peev xwm nrhiav tau nws nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av.

3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tseem pheej nyob hauv txoj kev phem, txawm tias tau muaj kev qhuab qhia ntau thiab txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau xa mus rau hauv lawv; thiab li no xyoo kaum kuj tau dhau mus lawm; thiab xyoo kaum ib kuj tau dhau mus nyob txoj kev tsis ncaj.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo kaum peb tau pib muaj tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg thoob plaws txhua thaj av; vim cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos tau rais los mus coob heev, thiab tau tua cov neeg coob leej heev, thiab tau tso kev puas tsuaj rau ntau lub nroog heev, thiab tau ua rau neeg tuag thiab ntshav nrog ntau thoob plaws hauv thaj av, tau tsim nyog tias tag nrho cov neeg, tsis hais cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas, yuav tsum nqa cuab yeej tawm tsam lawv.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, tag nrho cov Neeg Lamas uas tau rais los hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv tau koom ua ke nrog lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tau raug yuam, rau txoj kev tsis muaj xwm txheej ntawm lawv txoj sia thiab lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam, kom nqa tej cuab yeej tawm tsam cov tub sab Nkadi-atoos ntawd, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj ceev kom tau lawv tej kev muaj cai, thiab tej cib fim ntawm lawv lub koom txoos thiab ntawm lawv txoj kev pe hawm, thiab lawv txoj kev ywj pheej thiab lawv txoj kev ywj siab.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias ua ntej thaum xyoo kaum peb no tau dhau mus cov Neeg Nifais tau raug ntsib nrog txoj kev puas tsuaj loj vim yog npluav rog no, uas tau rais los mus mob heev.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas uas tau koom nrog cov Neeg Nifais tau raug suav nyob hauv cov Neeg Nifais;
- 15 Thiab lawv txoj kev foom tsis zoo tau raug tshem tawm ntawm lawv, thiab lawv tej tawv nqaij tau rais los dawb zoo li cov Neeg Nifais;
- 16 Thiab lawv tej tub hluas thiab lawv tej ntxhais tau rais los mus zoo nkauj zoo nraug heev, thiab lawv tau raug suav nrog cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tau raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum peb.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo thib kaum plaub, npluav rog uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov tub sab thiab Nifais cov neeg tau muaj ntxiv thiab tau rais los mus mob heev; txawm li ntawd los, Nifais cov neeg tau kov yeej cov tub sab ntau zaus, kawg tias lawv tau raws lawv rov qab tawm ntawm lawv tej av mus rau pem tej roob thiab rau hauv lawv tej chaw tsis muaj neeg paub.

18 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib kaum plaub. Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo thib kaum tsib lawv tau tawm los tawm tsam Nifais cov neeg; thiab vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm Nifais cov neeg, thiab lawv tej kev sib cav sib ceg thiab tej kev ntseev siab, cov tub sab Nkadi-atoos tau kov yeej lawv ntau zaus.

19 Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo kaum tsib, thiab li no cov neeg tau nyob hauv qhov uas muaj kev txom nyem ntau; thiab rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj tau dai rawv rau saum lawv, kawg tias lawv tau yuav luag raug txiav vau los ntawm nws, thiab li no los vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

3 Nifais 3

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo kaum rau txij li thaum Khetos los, Lakhoonias, tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av, tau txais ib tsab ntawv los ntawm tus thawj koj thiab tus tswv xeev ntawm pab neeg tub sab no; thiab cov no yog cov lus uas tau sau, hais tias:
- 2 Lakhoonias, tus muaj peev xwm tshaj thiab tus thawj tswv xeev ntawm thaj av, saib seb, kuv sau tsab ntawv no tuaj rau koj, thiab muab txoj kev qhuas loj heev rau koj, vim yog nej txoj kev ruaj khov, thiab txoj kev ruaj khov ntawm nej cov neeg, nyob hauv txoj kev tiv thaiv tej uas nej xav tias yog nej qhov kev muaj cai thiab txoj kev ywj siab; muaj tseeb tiag, nej yeej sawv taus zoo, yam li nej tau raug pab cuam los ntawm ib tug vajtswv txhais tes, nyob rau hauv txoj kev tiv thaiv ntawm nej txoj kev ywj siab, thiab nej tej khoom, thiab nej lub teb chaws, los sis qhov uas nej yeej hu li tiag.
- 3 Thiab nws zoo li ib qho kev tu siab rau kuv, Lakhoonias tus uas muaj peev xwm tshaj es, cas nej yuav ruam heev thiab tsis muaj qab hau thaum xav tias nej muaj cuab kav sawv tawm tsam coob tug neeg uas tsis ntshai dab tsi uas yog cov nyob hauv kuv txoj kev txib, cov uas nim no nyob rau lub sij hawm no sawv nrog lawv tej cuab yeej, thiab kub siab lug tos ntsoov rau lo lus tias—Nqis mus rau saum cov Neeg Nifais thiab ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 4 Thiab kuv, tau paub txog lawv txoj kev siab loj uas tsis muaj leej twg kov yeej, tau cob lawv nyob rau hauv tshav rog, thiab tau paub txog lawv txoj kev ntxub uas kav ib txhis rau nej vim yog ntau yam tsis yog uas nej tau ua rau lawv lawm, yog li ntawd yog lawv nqis tuaj tawm tsam nej lawv yuav tuaj xyuas nej nrog kev puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 5 Yog li ntawd kuv tau sau tsab ntawv no, muab kiag kuv txhais tes lo nws, vim xav txog rau nej txoj kev tau zoo nyob, vim yog nej txoj kev ruaj khov nyob hauv tej uas nej ntseeg tias yog, thiab nej txoj kev muaj peev xwm nyob hauv tshav rog.
- 6 Yog li ntawd kuv sau ntawv tuaj rau koj, xav tau kom nej cia li tso swb rau kuv cov neeg no, nej tej nroog, nej tej av, thiab nej tej khoom uas nej muaj, zoo dua li kom lawv yuav tuaj xyuas nej nrog ntaj thiab kom txoj kev puas tsuaj yuav los rau saum nej.

3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

7 Los sis muab ua lwm yam lus hais, nej cia li swb rau peb, thiab koom nrog peb thiab koom paub nrog peb tej hauj lwm ntsiag to, thiab rais los mus ua peb cov kwv tij xwv kom nej yuav zoo li peb—tsis yog peb cov tub qhev, tiam sis yog peb cov kwv tij thiab ua kwv luag muaj tag nrho tej khoom uas peb muaj.

8 Thiab saib seb, kuv cog lus rau koj tias, yog nej yuav ua li no, nrog ib qho kev lav lus, nej yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj; tiam sis yog nej yuav tsis ua li no, kuv lav ib lo lus rau koj tias, nyob rau lub hlis yuav los kuv yuav txib kom kuv cov tub rog yuav nqis tuaj tawm tsam nej, thiab lawv yuav tsis cia lawv tej tes so thiab yuav tsis tso leej twg dim, tiam sis yuav tua nej, thiab yuav cia ntaj vau los rau nej mus txog thaum nej yuav rais los mus tu noob.

9 Thiab saib seb, kuv yog Nkidi-ahais; thiab kuv yog tus tswv xeev ntawm pawg ua hauj lwm ntsiag to no ntawm Nkadi-atoos; uas yog pab pawg thiab tej hauj lwm ntawd uas kuv paub tias zoo; thiab lawv tau muaj thaum ub los thiab lawv tau raug muab cev nqis rau peb.

10 Thiab kuv sau tsab ntawv no tuaj rau koj, Lakhoonias, thiab kuv cia siab tias nej yuav muab nej tej av thiab nej tej khoom, kom tsis muaj ntshav nrog, xwv kom kuv cov neeg no yuav rov muaj tau lawv tej kev muaj cai thiab txoj kev kav, cov uas tau ntseev siab tawm ntawm nej vim yog nej txoj kev phem uas ceev lawv txoj kev muaj cai ntawm txoj kev kav ncaim ntawm lawv, thiab tsuas yog nej yuav ua li no xwb, kuv yuav pauj txiaj ntsig rau tej kev tsis yog uas lawv tau txais. Kuv yog Nkidi-ahais.

11 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Lakhoonias tau txais tsab ntawv no nws tau xav tsis thoob kiag li, vim yog txoj kev tsis ntshai ntawm Nkidi-ahais txoj kev xav tau tej khoom ntawm thaj av ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab kuj vim yog txoj kev hem cov neeg thiab txoj kev xav ua pauj tej kev tsis yog ntawm cov uas tsis tau txais tej kev tsis yog, tsuas yog lawv cov uas tau ua txhaum lawv tus kheej los ntawm txoj kev ntseev siab khiav mus rau cov neeg tub sab uas phem thiab qias.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

- 12 Nim no saib seb, tus Lakhoonias no, tus tswv xeev, tau yog ib tug neeg ncaj, thiab tsis muaj peev xwm ua kom poob siab tau los ntawm tej kev txib thiab tej kev hem ntawm ib tug tub sab; yog li ntawd nws tsis tau cuab pob ntseg rau tsab ntawv ntawm Nkidi-ahais, tus tswv xeev ntawm cov tub sab, tiam sis nws tau kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum quaj thov rau tus Tswv kom muab lub zog tawm tsam lub caij uas cov tub sab yuav nqis tuaj tawm tsam lawv.
- 13 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau xa ib tsab xov mus rau tag nrho hauv nws cov neeg, kom lawv yuav tsum sau lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam, lawv tej pab yaj thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu, thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom tuaj ua ke, rau ib qho chaw, tsuas tshuav lawv thaj av xwb.
- 14 Thiab nws tau kom ua tej chaw tiv thaiv ib puag ncig lawv, thiab tej zog ntawm qhov ntawd yuav tsum kom khov heev. Thiab nws tau ua kom tej tub rog, tsis hais cov Neeg Nifais thiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, los sis tag nrho lawv cov uas tau nrog cov Neeg Nifais nyob, yuav tsum raug tso zov li tej neeg zov saib ib puag ncig saib lawv, thiab zov lawv nruab hnuv thiab hmo ntuj ncaim ntawm cov neeg tub sab.
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Ib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj txoj sia nyob, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim txog tag nrho nej tej kev tsis ncaj, thiab quaj thov rau tus Tswv xwb, nej yuav tsis raug cawm dim ntawm cov tub sab Nkadi-atoos tej tes ntawd.
- 16 Thiab tseem ceeb thiab loj heev yog tej lus thiab tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm Lakhoonias xwv kom lawv tau ua kom txoj kev ntshai los rau saum cov neeg tag nrho; thiab lawv tau siv tag nrho lawv tej zog uas lawv muaj ua raws li Lakhoonias tej lus.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias Lakhoonias tau tsa tej thawj nom peb kav tag nrho tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, yuav txib lawv nyob rau thaum lub sij hawm uas cov tub sab yuav nqis tawm pem tej hav zoov tuaj tawm tsam lawv.
- 18 Nim no tus thawj uas saib tag nrho cov thawj nom peb thiab tus thawj coj loj ntawm cov Neeg Nifais cov tub rog tau raug tsa, thiab nws lub npe yog Nkikhidoonais.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

19 Nim no nws tau yog raws li kev li kev cai uas nyob tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Nifais kom tsa lawv tej thawj nom peb, (tsuas yog tseg thaum lawv nyob hauv tej sij hawm phem xwb) tej tug uas muaj tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev tshwm sim thiab txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; yog li ntawd, tus Nkikhidoonais no tau yog ib tug yaj saub tseem ceeb heev nyob hauv lawv, thiab kuj yog tus thawj tub txiav txim zoo heev thiab.

20 Nim no cov neeg tau hais rau Nkikhidoonais tias: Thov rau tus Tswy, thiab cia peb nce mus rau saum tej roob thiab rau hauv tej hav zoov, xwv kom peb yuav tau vau rau saum cov tub sab thiab rhuav kom lawv puas tsuaj nyob hauv lawv tej av.

21 Tiam sis Nkikhidoonais hais rau lawv tias: Tus Tswv txwv tsis pub; vim yog peb yuav nce mus tawm tsam lawv tus Tswv yuav coj peb mus rau hauv lawv tes; yog li ntawd peb yuav npaj peb tus kheej nyob hauv nruab nrab ntawm peb thaj av, thiab peb yuav sau tag nrho peb tej tub rog tuaj ua ke, thiab peb yuav tsis mus tawm tsam lawv, tiam sis peb yuav tos mus txog thaum lawv yuav tuaj tawm tsam peb; yog li ntawd ib yam li tus Tswv muaj sia nyob, yog peb ua li no nws yuav coj lawv los rau hauv peb tes.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo kaum xya, nyob rau thaum xyoo yuav kawg, tsab xov ntawm Lakhoonias tau tawm mus thoob plaws rau saum txhua thaj av, thiab lawv tau coj lawv tej nees, thiab lawv tej tsheb nees luag, thiab lawv tej nyuj twm, thiab tag nrho lawv tej pab yaj, thiab tag nrho lawv tej tsiaj txhu, thiab lawv tej noob qoob loos, thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom, thiab tau tawm mus txhiab txhiab thiab kaum tawm txhiab leej, mus txog thaum uas lawv tau mus tag nrho rau qhov chaw uas tau raug xaiv kom lawv yuav tsum sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke, tiv thaiv lawv tus kheej tawm tsam lawv tej yeeb ncuab.

23 Thiab thaj av uas tau raug xaiv yog thaj av Xalahelas thiab thaj av uas nyob nruab nrab thaj av Xalahelas thiab thaj av Huaj Vam, muaj tseeb tiag, rau tus ciam teb uas nyob nruab nrab ntawm thaj av Huaj Vam thiab thaj av Quav Poj.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

- 24 Thiab tau muaj ntau txhiab leej neeg heev uas raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, cov uas tau sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke nyob hauv thaj av no. Nim no Lakhoonias tau ua kom lawv yuav tsum sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke nyob rau hauv thaj av qab teb, vim yog txoj kev foom tsis zoo loj uas tau nyob rau saum thaj av qaum teb.
- 25 Thiab lawv tau ua chaw tiv thaiv lawv tawm tsam lawv tej yeeb ncuab; thiab lawv tau nyob rau hauv ib thaj av, thiab hauv ib pab, thiab lawv tau ntshai tej lus uas tau hais los ntawm Lakhoonias, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau hloov siab lees txim txog tag nrho lawv tej kev txhaum; thiab lawv tau tso lawv tej kev thov rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, kom nws yuav tso lawv dim nyob rau lub sij hawm uas lawv tej yeeb ncuab yuav nqis tuaj ua rog tawm tsam lawv.
- 26 Thiab lawv tau tu siab heev vim yog lawv tej yeeb ncuab. Thiab Nkikhidoonias tau kom lawv yuav tsum ua tej cuab yeej ua rog txhua txhia yam, thiab lawv yuav tsum muaj zog nrog tej tsho tiv rog, thiab nrog tej phiaj hlau, thiab nrog tej phiaj hlau kheej, raws li nws txoj kev qhia.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

3 Nifais 4

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum yuav kawg ntawm xyoo kaum yim cov tub rog ntawm cov tub sab ntawd tau npaj ua rog, thiab tau pib nqis tuaj thiab maj nrawm nroos tawm pem tej toj, thiab tawm ntawm tej roob, thiab tej hav zoov, thiab lawv tej chaw nkaum, thiab lawv tej chaw tsis muaj neeg paub, thiab tau pib tuaj nyob rau hauv tej av, tag nrho tej uas nyob rau hauv thaj av sab qab teb thiab tej uas nyob rau hauv thaj av qaum teb, thiab tau pib tuaj nyob rau tag nrho tej av uas tau raug ua ciaj quav poj los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tej nroog uas tau raug tso cia tsis muaj neeg nyob.
- 2 Tiam sis saib seb, twb tsis muaj tej tsiaj qus los sis tej kev plob tua tsiaj nyob rau hauv tej av uas tau raug ua ciaj quav poj los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab twb tsis muaj tej kev plob tua tsiaj rau cov tub sab tsuas yog tshuav nyob rau hauv hav zoov xwb.
- 3 Thiab cov tub sab tsis muaj peev xwm nyob tau tsuas yog nyob rau hauv hav zoov xwb, rau txoj kev xav tau zaub mov; vim cov Neeg Nifais tau tso lawv tej av ciaj quav poj, thiab tau sau lawv tej pab yaj thiab lawv tej tsiaj txhu thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom, thiab lawv tau nyob ua ib pab.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, twb tsis muaj ib lub sij hawm zoo rau cov tub sab mus nyiag thiab mus muab zaub mov, tsuas yog yuav tawm los ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais xwb; thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau nyob ua ib pab, thiab tau muaj coob leej heev, thiab tau tshwj tau rau lawv tus kheej tej khoom noj khoom siv, thiab tej nees thiab tej nyuj twm, thiab tej pab yaj txhua yam, xwv kom lawv yuav kav tau rau ncu li xya xyoo, nyob rau lub sij hawm uas lawv tau cia siab tias yuav ua kom cov neeg tub sab puas tsuaj tawm saum thaj av mus; thiab li no xyoo kaum yim tau dhau mus.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo kaum cuaj Nkidi-ahais tau nrhiav pom tias tsim nyog nws yuav nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais, vim tsis muaj kev uas lawv yuav muaj cuab kav nyob taus tsuas yog yuav mus nyiag thiab ua tub sab thiab tua neeg xwb.

3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

6 Thiab lawv tsis kam faib lawv tus kheej rau saum thaj av kom lawv yuav cog tau qoob loos, ntshai tsam cov Neeg Nifais yuav tuaj tawm tsam lawv thiab tua lawv; yog li ntawd Nkidi-ahais tau muab lus txib rau nws cov tub rog kom nyob hauv xyoo no lawv yuav tsum nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais.

7 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau nce tuaj ua rog; thiab nws tau nyob hauv lub rau hli; thiab saib seb, hnub uas lawv tau nce tuaj ua rog tau loj thiab phem heev; thiab lawv tau hnav raws li tej neeg tub sab; thiab lawv tau muaj ib daim tawv yaj ncig lawv puab tais, thiab lawv raug muab ntshav zas, thiab lawv tej taub hau tau muab chais do dus, thiab lawv tau muaj kaus mom hlau nyob saum lawv; thiab coob thiab phem heev yog txoj kev tshwm tuaj ntawm cov tub rog ntawm Nkidi-ahais, vim yog lawv tej tsho tiv rog, thiab vim yog lawv tej cev tau zas ntshav.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias cov tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thaum lawv tau pom txoj kev tawm tuaj ntawm cov tub rog ntawm Nkidi-ahas lawm, tag nrho sawv daws tau qaug rau hauv av, thiab tau tsa lawv tej suab quaj rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtsv, xwv kom nws yuav tseg lawv thiab cawm lawv dim ntawm tej tes ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov tub rog ntawm Nkidi-ahais tau pom li no lawv tau pib qw ib lub suab nrov nrov, vim yog lawv txoj kev xyiv fab, vim lawv tau xav tias cov Neeg Nifais tau qaug nrog txoj kev ntshai vim yog txoj kev txaus ntshai heev ntawm lawv tej tub rog.

10 Tiam sis nyob hauv qhov no lawv raug ua chim siab, vim cov Neeg Nifais tsis tau ntshai lawv; tiam sis lawv tau ntshai lawv tus Vajtsv thiab tau thov nws rau txoj kev tsom kwm; yog li ntawd, thaum tej tub rog ntawm Nkidi-ahais tau maj nrawm nroos tuaj rau saum lawv lawv twb npaj ntsib lawv lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv lub zog ntawm tus Tswv lawv tau txais tos lawv.

11 Thiab npluav rog tau pib nyob rau hauv lub rau hli no; thiab npluav rog ntawd tau loj thiab phem heev, muaj tseeb tiag, txoj kev tua neeg tuag ntawd tau ntau thiab phem heev, kawg tias tsis tau paub muaj ib qho kev tua neeg tuag coob nyob rau hauv tag nrho cov neeg ntawm Lihais txij li nws tau ncaim Yeluxalees.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

- 12 Thiab txawm tias muaj tej kev hem thiab tej kev lav lus uas Nkidi-ahais tau ua lawm los, saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais tseem tau yeej lawv, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau vau rov qab nyob ntawm lawv xub ntiag.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias Nkikhidoonais tau txib nws cov tub rog kom raws lawv qab mus kom deb txog tej ciam teb ntawm tej hav zoov, thiab kom lawv tsis txhob tseg ib tug twg uas poob rau hauv lawv tes nyob ntawm txoj kev; thiab li no lawv tau raws lawv thiab tau tua lawv, mus txog ntawm tej ciam teb ntawm tej hav zoov, mus txog thaum lawv tau ua tiav zog li txoj lus txib ntawm Nkikhidoonais.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Nkidi-ahais, tus uas tau sawv ntsug thiab tau sib tua yam tsis ntshai kiag, tau raug raws thaum nws khiav; thiab tau lim hiam heev vim yog nws txoj kev sib tua heev nws tau raug caum cuag thiab tau raug tua. Thiab li no tau yog qhov kawg ntawm Nkidi-ahais tus neeg tub sab.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias cov tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tau rov qab dua los rau lawv tej chaw tiv thaiv. Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo kaum cuaj no tau dhau mus, thiab cov neeg tub sab tsis tau rov tuaj ua rog dua lawm; thiab lawv tsis tau rov tuaj dua nyob hauv xyoo nees nkaum.
- 16 Thiab nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab ib lawv tsis tau nce tuaj ua rog, tiam sis lawv tau nce tuaj rau txhua sab zov khoo ib ncig cov neeg ntawm Nifais; vim lawv tau xav tias yog lawv txiav cov Neeg Nifais tawm ntawm lawv tej av, thiab yuav kaw lawv cia nyob txhua txhia sab, thiab yog lawv yuav txiav lawv tawm ntawm tag nrho lawv tej kev muaj cai ua tau uas nyob sab nraud, kom lawv yuav ua tau kom lawv muab lawv tus kheej rau raws li lawv siab xav.
- 17 Nim no lawv tau tsa rau lawv tus kheej lwm tus thawj coj, uas npe yog Xenalaihais; yog li ntawd nws twb yog Xenalaihais uas tau ua kom yuav tsum muaj qhov kev zov khoo no.
- 18 Tiam sis saib seb, qhov no tau yog ib qho uas zoo rau cov Neeg Nifais; vim nws mus tsis tau rau cov neeg tub sab yuav zov khoo kom ntev txaus kom muaj taus kev txom nyem rau cov Neeg Nifais, vim yog lawv txoj kev muaj khoom noj khoom siv ntau uas lawv tau teem tseg cia lawm,

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnaridah; therefore it was Zemnaridah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

- 19 Thiab vim yog txoj kev muaj khoom noj khoom siv tsis txaus nyob hauv cov neeg tub sab; vim saib seb, lawv tsis muaj dab tsi li tsuas yog muaj nqaij rau lawv txoj kev ciaj nyob xwb, tej nqaij uas lawv tau muab hauv tej hav zoov los;
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias tej tsiaj qus tau rais los mus tsawg heev nyob hauv tej hav zoov—kawg tias thaum kawg cov neeg tub sab twb yuav luag piam sij nrog txoj kev tshaib.
- 21 Thiab cov Neeg Nifais tau tawm mus tsis tu ncuab nruab hnuab thiab hmo ntuj, thiab tau tawm tsam lawv tej pab tub rog, thiab txiav lawv txhiab txhiab thiab kaum tawm txhiab leej.
- 22 Thiab li no nws tau rais los ua txoj kev xav ntawm cov neeg ntawm Xenalahas kom thim ntawm lawv tej kev npaj ua, vim yog txoj kev puas tsuaj loj uas tau los rau saum lawv thaum nruab hnuab thiab thaum tsaus ntuj.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias Xenalahas tau txib rau nws cov neeg kom lawv yuav tsum thim lawv tus kheej ntawm txoj kev zov khoo, thiab mus rau hauv tej feem uas deb tshaj ntawm thaj av qaum teb.
- 24 Thiab nim no, Nkikhidoonais tau paub txog lawv tej kev npaj ua, thiab tau paub txog lawv txoj kev qaug zog vim yog txoj kev xav tau zaub mov, thiab txoj kev tua tuag coob uas tau raug ua nyob hauv lawv, yog li ntawd nws tau xa nws cov tub rog tawm thaum lub sij hawm tsaus ntuj, thiab tau mus tav kev ntawm lawv txoj kev rov qab, thiab tau tso nws tej tub rog rau ntawm qhov uas lawv yuav khiav mus.
- 25 Thiab lawv tau ua li no nyob rau thaum sij hawm tsaus ntuj, thiab lawv tau mus ua ntej cov neeg tub sab, es kom tag kis, thaum cov neeg tub sab pib lawv txoj kev mus, lawv thiaj raug ntsib los ntawm cov tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais nyob tom lawv hauv ntej thiab nyob tom lawv qab huv tib si.
- 26 Thiab cov neeg tub sab uas tau nyob rau sab nram hav kuj tau raug txiav tawm nyob hauv lawv tej chaw khiav mus nkaum. Thiab tag nrho txhua yam no tau raug ua los ntawm txoj kev txib ntawm Nkikhidoonais.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj ntau txhiab leej uas tau muab lawv tus kheej ua tej neeg raug txim rau cov Neeg Nifais, thiab lawv cov ua seem tau raug tua.

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

- 28 Thiab lawv tus thawj coj, Xenalaihah, raug txhom tau thiab tau raug muab dai rau saum ib tsoob ntoo, muaj tseeb tiag, dai rau saum ntsis ntoo ntawd mus txog thaum nws tuag. Thiab thaum lawv tau muab nws dai mus txog thaum nws tuag lawm lawv tau ntov tsoob ntoo vau rau hauv av, thiab tau qw nrog ib lub suab nrov nrov, hais tias:
- 29 Thov tus Tswv tsom kwm nws cov neeg hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees thiab hauv lub siab dawb huv, kom lawv yuav raug ua kom ntog rau hauv av tag nrho cov uas yuav nrhiav tua lawv vim yog lub hwj chim thiab tej kev tuav hauv, tib yam nkaus li tus neeg no uas twb vau rau hauv av lawm.
- 30 Thiab lawv tau zoo siab, thiab qw nrog ib lub suab dua, hais tias: Thov kom Anplaham tus Vajtswv, thiab Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhauj tus Vajtswv, tsom kwm cov neeg no nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees, ntev npaum li lawv yuav hu rau lub npe ntawm lawv tus Vajtswv rau txoj kev tsom kwm.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pib tag nrho ua ib pab, hu nkauj, thiab qhuas lawv tus Vajtswv rau tej yam loj uas tau ua rau lawv lawm, ntawm qhov uas tau ceev lawv dim ntawm txoj kev poob mus rau hauv tej tes ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab.
- 32 Muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau qw tias: Hauxanas rau Vajtswv tus uas Siab kawg nkaus. Thiab lawv tau qw hais tias: Tau koob hmoov rau lub npe ntawm tus Tswv Vajtswv uas muaj Hwj Chim Loj kawg nkaus, Vajtswv tus uas Siab kawg nkaus.
- 33 Thiab lawv tej siab tau muaj kev xyiv fab puv npo, txog rau qhov uas kua muag tawm poob ntau, vim yog txoj kev zoo heev ntawm Vajtswv uas tau cawm lawv dim ntawm tej tes ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab; thiab lawv tau paub tias nws yeej yog vim lawv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab lawv txoj kev txo hwj chim es lawv thiaj tau raug cawm dim ntawm ib txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis.

And their leader, Zemnarlah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nifais 5

- 1 Thiab nim no saib seb, tsis tau muaj ib tug neeg uas muaj sia nyob tag nrho ntawm cov Neeg Nifais uas tau ua ob lub siab txog tej lus ntawm tag nrho cov yaj saub dawb huv uas tau hais lawm; vim lawv paub lawm tias nws yuav tsum tsum nyog tias tej ntawd yuav tsum raug muaj kom puv npo.
- 2 Thiab lawv paub lawm tias nws tsum nyog tias Khetos tau los lawm, vim yog tej cim ntau uas tau raug muab raws li tej lus ntawm cov yaj saub; thiab vim yog tej uas twb tau muaj los lawm lawv tau paub tias nws tsum nyog tias tag nrho txhua yam yuav tsum muaj raws li tej uas tau hais lawm.
- 3 Yog li ntawd lawv tau tso tag nrho lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab lawv tej kev qias, thiab lawv tej kev sib daj sib deev, thiab tau rau siab hlo ua hauj lwm nruab hnub hmo ntuj rau Vajtswv.
- 4 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau txhom tau tag nrho cov neeg raug txim tub sab, kawg tias tsis tau muaj ib tug tau dim uas yuav tsis raug tua, lawv tau muab lawv tej neeg raug txim pov rau hauv qhov taub, thiab tau kom Vajtswv txoj lus raug qhuab qhia rau lawv; thiab txhua tus uas yuav hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab khi ib lo lus tias lawv yuav tsis tua neeg ntxiv lawm raug muab tso rau kev ywj siab.
- 5 Tiam sis txhua tus cov uas tsis tau khi lus, thiab cov uas tseem pheej muaj tej kev tua neeg ntsiag to tsis tu ncuu nyob hauv lawv tej siab, muaj tseeb tiag, txhua tus uas tau raug nrhiav pom ua pa tawm tsiv heev rau lawv tej kwv tij tau raug nyob txim thiab raug txim raws li txoj cai.
- 6 Thiab li no lawv tau muab ib qho kawg rau tag nrho cov neeg uas phem, thiab neeg tuav hauv thiab qias, qhov uas tau muaj kev phem heev, thiab tau tua neeg coob heev.
- 7 Thiab li no xyoo nees nkaum thiab ob tau dhau mus, thiab xyoo nees nkaum thiab peb los tib yam, thiab xyoo nees nkaum thiab plaub, thiab xyoo nees nkaum thiab tsib; thiab li no nees nkaum thiab tsib xyoos tau dhau mus.

3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj ntau yam tau tshwm sim uas, nyob hauv ib txhia qhov muag, mas loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus li; txawm li ntawd los, tsis muaj peev xwm muab lawv tag nrho sau rau hauv phau ntawv no; muaj tseeb tiag, phau ntawv no tsis muaj peev xwm yuav ntim ib feem pua ntawm tej uas tau ua nyob hauv cov neeg coob leej heev nyob hauv lub sij hawm ntawm nees nkaum thiab tsib xyoos.
- 9 Tiam sis saib seb muaj ntau phau ceev xwm txheej uas muaj tag nrho tej kev tshwm sim ntawm cov neeg no; thiab ib zag luv tiam sis tseeb tau raug muab los ntawm Nifais.
- 10 Yog li no kuv tau ua kuv phau ceev xwm txheej txog tej yam no raws li Nifais phau ceev xwm txheej, uas tau muab sau rau saum cov phiaj uas tau hu ua Nifais cov phiaj.
- 11 Thiab saib seb, kuv sau phau ceev xwm txheej rau saum cov phiaj uas kuv tau muab kuv ob txhais tes ua kiag.
- 12 Thiab saib seb, kuv hu ua Maumoos, tau hu raws li thaj av Maumoos, thaj av uas Amas tau txhim tsa lub koom txoos nyob hauv cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, thawj lub koom txoos uas tau txhim tsa nyob hauv lawv tom qab lawv txoj kev ua txhaum.
- 13 Saib seb, kuv yog ib tug pab coj ntawm Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv tus Tub. Kuv tau raug hu los ntawm nws mus tshaj tawm nws txoj lus rau nws cov neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj txoj sia kav ib txhis.
- 14 Thiab nws tau tsim nyog tias kuv, raws li Vajtswv lub siab nyiam, xwv kom tej kev thov Vajtswv ntawm cov uas tau mus ua ntej, cov uas yog cov dawb huv, yuav tsum muaj puv npo raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg, yuav sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej txog tej yam no uas tau ua los lawm—
- 15 Muaj tseeb tiag, ib phau ceev xwm txheej me uas tau muaj tej uas txij li lub caij thaum Lihais tau ncaim Yeluxalees, nqis los mus txog rau lub sij hawm no.
- 16 Yog li ntawd kuv sau kuv phau ceev xwm txheej los ntawm tej zaj uas tau raug muab los ntawm cov uas nyob ua ntej kuv, los mus txog thaum pib kuv lub neej.
- 17 Thiab tom qab ntawd kuv thiaj sau ib phau ceev xwm txheej txog tej yam uas kuv tau pom nrog kuv ob lub qhov muag kiag.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

18 Thiab kuv paub tias phau ceev xwm txheej uas kuv sau yeej yog ib phau ceev xwm txheej uas ncaj thiab tseeb; txawm li ntawd los muaj ntau yam uas, raws li peb yam lus hais, peb tsis muaj cuab kav sau tau.

19 Thiab nim no kuv xaus kuv cov lus hais, uas hais txog kuv tus kheej, thiab pib muab kuv zaj txog tej uas tau muaj ua ntej kuv.

20 Kuv yog Maumoos, thiab ib tug xeeb ntxwv tseeb ntawm Lihais. Kuv muaj qhov uas yuav qhuas kuv tus Vajtswv thiab kuv tus Cawm Seej Yexus Khetos, uas nws tau coj peb tej yawg koob tawm ntawm daim av Yeluxalees, (thiab tsis muaj leej twg paub nws li tsuas yog nws tus kheej thiab cov uas nws tau coj tawm ntawm thaj av xwb) thiab qhov uas nws tau muab rau kuv thiab kuv cov neeg paub ntau heev rau txoj kev cawm seej ntawm peb tej ntsuj plig.

21 Tseeb tiag nws twb tau foom koob hmoov rau Yakhauj tsev neeg, thiab tau muaj siab hlub tshua rau Yauxej cov noob.

22 Thiab yog tias Lihais cov me nyuam tau coj nws tej lus txib nws yeej yuav foom koob hmoov rau lawv thiab ua kom lawv huaj vam raws li nws txoj lus.

23 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tseeb tiag nws yuav rov coj ib cov seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej cov noob los paub txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv dua.

24 Thiab tseeb tiag tib yam li tus Tswv muaj sia nyob, nws yeej yuav sau tawm ntawm plaub ceg kaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb tag nrho tej seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj cov noob los ua ke, cov uas tau tawg ri niab mus nyob saum lub ntiaj teb txhua qhov.

25 Thiab li nws tau khi lus nrog tag nrho Yakhauj tsev neeg, tib yam li ntawd lo lus khi tseg uas nws tau khi tseg nrog Yakhauj tsev neeg yuav tsum muaj puv npo nyob hauv nws lub sij hawm uas teem tseg, rau txoj kev rov los txum tim tag nrho Yakhauj tsev neeg los paub txog txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi nrog lawv lawm.

26 Thiab tom qab ntawd lawv yuav paub lawv tus Txhiv Dim, tus uas yog Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub; thiab tom qab ntawd lawv yuav raug sau tawm ntawm plaub ceg kaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb los rau lawv tej av, qhov uas lawv tau sib ncaim; muaj tseeb tiag, ib yam li tus Tswv muaj sia nyob ces nws yeej yuav muaj li ntawd. Amees.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

3 Nifais 6

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tag nrho tau rov qab mus rau lawv tej av nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab rau, txhua tus txiv neej, nrog nws tsev neeg, nws tej pab yaj thiab nws tej tsiaj txhu, nws tej nees thiab nws tej nyuj twm, thiab tag nrho tej yam uas yog lawv li.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tseem tsis tau noj tag nrho lawv tej khoom noj; yog li ntawd lawv coj nrog lawv tag nrho tej uas lawv tau noj tsis tas, tag nrho lawv tej noob qoob noob loos txhua yam, thiab lawv tej kub, thiab lawv tej nyiaj dawb, thiab tag nrho lawv tej khoom muaj nuj nqis, thiab lawv tau rov mus rau lawv tej av thiab tej khoom lawv muaj, tag nrho nyob sab pem toj thiab nyob rau sab nram hav, tag nrho nyob rau thaj av qaum teb thiab rau thaj av qab teb.
- 3 Thiab lawv tau pub av rau cov neeg tub sab uas tau khi ib lo lus ceev txoj kev thaj yeeb ntawm thaj av, cov uas tseem xav ua cov Neeg Lamas, raws li tej neeg uas lawv muaj, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj, nrog lawv tej kev ua hauj lwm, uas yug siav; thiab li no lawv tau tsim kev thaj yeeb nyob tag nrho rau hauv thaj av.
- 4 Thiab lawv tau pib huaj vam thiab rais los mus zoo heev; thiab xyoo nees nkaum thiab rau thiab xya tau dhau mus, thiab tau muaj kev tiaj tus heev hauv thaj av; thiab lawv tau tsim kho lawv tej kev cai raws li kev sib txig thiab kev txim lij.
- 5 Thiab nim no tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av yuav los cheem cov neeg ntawm txoj kev vam meej tsis tu ncuu, tsuas ntshai tsam lawv yuav poob rau hauv txoj kev txhaum xwb.
- 6 Thiab nim no nws tau yog Nkikhidoonais, thiab tus neeg txiav txim, Lakhoonias, thiab cov uas tau raug tsa ua cov thawj coj, cov uas tau tsim txoj kev thaj yeeb loj no nyob rau hauv thaj av.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ntau lub nroog uas tau ua tshiab, thiab tau kho ntau lub qub nroog.
- 8 Thiab tau ua ntau txoj kev loj, thiab tau ua ntau txoj kev, uas mus ib lub nroog rau ib lub nroog, thiab ib thaj av rau ib thaj av, thiab ib qhov chaw rau ib qhov chaw.
- 9 Thiab li no xyoo nees nkaus thiab yim tau dhau mus, thiab cov neeg tau muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncuu.

3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

- 10 Tiam sis tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo nees nkaum thiab cuaj tau pib muaj ib co kev sib cav nyob rau hauv cov neeg; thiab ib txhia tau sawv rau txoj kev khav theeb thiab tej kev khav txiv vim yog lawv tej kev nplua nuj heev, muaj tseeb tiag, twb mus rau tej kev tsim txom loj;
- 11 Vim tau muaj ntau tus neeg ua lag luam nyob rau hauv thaj av, thiab kuj muaj ntau tus neeg hais kev cai, thiab ntau tus nom tswv.
- 12 Thiab cov neeg tau pib muaj kev sib faib los ntawm txoj kev siab qis, raws li lawv tej kev nplua nuj, thiab lawv tej kev muaj caij rau txoj kev kawm; muaj tseeb tiag, ib txhia tau raug tsis quav ntsej vim yog lawv txoj kev pluag, thiab lwm cov tau txais txoj kev kawm loj vim yog lawv tej kev nplua nuj.
- 13 Ib txhia tau sawv nyob rau hauv txoj kev khav theeb, thiab lwm cov ho txo hwj chim heev; ib txhia tau rov ua phem pauj phem, hos lwm cov ho tau txais kev phem thiab kev tsim txom thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev txom nyem, thiab tsis tau ua phem pauj, tiam sis tau txo hwj chim thiab ua neeg hloov siab rau Vajtswv.
- 14 Thiab li no tau rais los muaj ib qho kev tsis xwm yeem nyob rau tag nrho hauv thaj av, kawg tias thaum kawg lub koom txoos tau pib tawg; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias nyob rau hauv xyoo peb caug lub koom txoos tau tawg nyob rau tag nrho hauv thaj av tsuas yog tshuav ib txhia ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tau raug hloov siab tshiab los rau txoj kev ntseeg tseeb xwb; thiab lawv tsis kam ncaim ntawm nws mus li, vim lawv tau khov, thiab ruaj nrees, thiab muab txav tsis tau, zoo siab hlo nrog tag nrho txoj kev kub siab lug coj tej lus txib ntawm tus Tswv.
- 15 Nim no qhov uas ua kom muaj txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm cov neeg no yog li no—Dab Ntxwg Nyoog tau muaj hwj chim loj, rau txoj kev txhib cov neeg kom ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj, thiab kom lawv muaj kev khav puv nkaus, tau ntxias lawv nrhiav hwj chim, thiab cai, thiab tej kev nplua nuj, thiab tej yam tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 16 Thiab li no Dab Ntxwg Nyoog thiaj tau coj cov neeg tej siab kom ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj; yog li ntawd lawv tau zoo siab rau txoj kev thaj yeeb tiam sis tsuas yog ob peb xyoos xwb.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

17 Thiab li no, nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo peb caug—cov neeg tau raug coj tau ncuva ntev heev raug cab los ntawm tej kev haub ntxias ntawm tus dab mus rau txhua qhov uas nws tau xav cab lawv mus, thiab kom ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj uas nws tau xav kom lawv ua—thiab li no nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo peb caug no, lawv tau nyob hauv ib qho uas phem kawg nkaus.

18 Nim no lawv tau txhob txwm ua txhaum, vim lawv tau paub Vajtswv lub siab xav txog lawv; vim nws tau raug qhia rau lawv lawm; yog li ntawd lawv tau txhob txwm ntxeev siab tawm tsam Vajtswv.

19 Thiab nim no nws tau nyob rau hauv lub caij ntawm Lakhoonias, tus tub ntawm Lakhoonias, vim Lakhoonias tau txum lub rooj zaum ntawm nws txiv thiab tau kav cov neeg xyoo ntawd.

20 Thiab tau pib muaj tej neeg uas raug qhia los saum ntuj los rau thiab raug xa tawm, tau sawv ntsug nyob hauv cov neeg nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av, tau qhuab qhia thiab tau ua tim khawv yam tsis ntshai txog tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj ntawm cov neeg, thiab tau ua tim khawv rau lawv txog txoj kev txhiv dim uas tus Tswv yuav ua rau nws cov neeg, los sis ua lwm yam lus hais, yog txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los ntawm Khetos; thiab lawv tau ua tim khawv yam tsis ntshai txog nws txoj kev tuag thiab tej kev txom nyem.

21 Nim no tau muaj ntau tus ntawm cov neeg uas tau npau tawm heev vim yog cov uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no; thiab cov thawj uas tau npau taws tau yog cov ua thawj tub txiav txim ntag, thiab lawv cov uas tau ua cov pov thawj hlob thiab cov tub hais kev cai; muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho cov uas yog tub hais kev cai tau npau taws nrog cov uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no.

22 Nim no tsis muaj ib tug neeg hais kev cai los sis neeg txiav txim los sis pov thawj hlob uas yuav muaj hwj chim rau txim rau ib tug twg kom tuag mus txog thaum lawv txoj kev rau txim raug ntaus cim pom zoo los ntawm tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av xwb.

23 Nim no tau muaj ntau leej ntawm cov uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam uas txog Khetos uas tau ua tim khawv yam tsis ntshai, cov uas tau raug txhom thiab muab tua ntsiag to los ntawm cov neeg txiav txim, xwv kom txoj kev paub txog lawv txoj kev tuag los tsis tau rau tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av mus txog tom qab uas lawv twb tuag lawm.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

- 24 Nim no saib seb, qhov no tau tsis raws li tej kev cai ntawm thaj av, tias txhua tus neeg uas yuav muab tua yuav tsum yog lawv tau muaj hwj chim los ntawm tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av—
- 25 Yog li ntawd ib qho kev tsis pom zoo tau tuaj rau thaj av ntawm Xalahelas, tuaj rau tus tswv xeev ntawm thaj av, tawm tsam cov neeg txiav txim uas tau rau txim tuag rau cov yaj saub ntawm tus Tswv, uas tsis raws li txoj kev cai.
- 26 Nim no tau muaj tias lawv tau raug txhom thiab coj tuaj rau ntawm tus neeg txiav txim xub ntiag raug txiav txim txog qhov kev txhaum uas lawv tau ua lawm, raws li txoj kev cai uas tau muab los ntawm cov neeg.
- 27 Nim no tau muaj tias cov neeg txiav txim ntawd tau muaj phooj ywg thiab tej neeg txheeb ze coob; thiab cov uas seem tshuav, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav luag tag nrho cov neeg hais kev cai thiab cov pov thawj hlob, lawv tau sib sau tuaj ua ke, thiab koom nrog cov neeg txheeb ze ntawm cov neeg txiav txim uas yuav raug txiav txim raws li txoj kev cai.
- 28 Thiab lawv ib leeg tau khi lus rau ib leeg, muaj tseeb tiag, twb khi lo lus ntawd uas tau muab los ntawm lawv cov txheej thaum ub, txoj kev khi lus uas tau raug muab thiab siv los ntawm tus dab, los sib koom tawm tsam tag nrho tej kev ncaj ncees.
- 29 Yog li ntawd lawv tau sib koom tawm tsam tus Tswv cov neeg, thiab tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus ua kom lawv puas tsuaj, thiab mus tso cov uas muaj txim tua neeg dim ntawm txoj kev txim lij tes, uas twb yuav luag tau raug ua kom raws li txoj kev cai.
- 30 Thiab lawv tau ua kom phem qias rau txoj kev cai thiab tej kev muaj cai ntawm lawv lub teb chaws; thiab lawv ib leeg tau khi lus rau ib leeg mus ua kom tus tswv xeev puas tsuaj thiab yuav tsim kom muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv rau saum thaj av, xwv kom thaj av yuav tsis nyob rau txoj kev ywj siab ib zaug ntxiv lawm tiam sis yuav tsum raug ywj rau cov vaj ntxwv.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

3 Nifais 7

- 1 Nim no saib seb, kuv yuav kom nej pom tias lawv tsis tau tsim ib tug vaj ntxwv rau saum thaj av; tiam sis nyob hauv tib xyoos no, muaj tseeb tiag, xyoo peb caug, lawv tau rhuav lub rooj txiav txim puas tsuaj, muaj tseeb tiag, tau tua tus thawj tub txiav txim ntawm thaj av.
- 2 Thiab cov neeg tau sib faib ib leeg tawm tsam ib leeg; thiab lawv ib leeg tau faib tawm ntawm ib leeg mus ua pab ua pawg, txhua tus neeg raws li nws tsev neeg thiab nws tej txheeb ze thiab tej phooj ywg; thiab li no lawv tau rhuav tej nom tswv ntawm thaj av puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab txhua pab pawg tau tsa ib tug yawg hlob los sis ib tug thawj rau saum lawv; thiab li no lawv tau rais los mus ua pab pawg thiab tej thawj koj ntawm tej pab pawg.
- 4 Nim no saib seb, tsis muaj ib tug neeg nyob hauv lawv uas yuav tsis muaj tsev neeg coob thiab tej neeg txheeb ze thiab tej phooj ywg coob li; yog li ntawd lawv tej pab pawg tau rais los mus coob heev.
- 5 Nim no tau muaj tag nrho tej yam no, thiab tseem tsis tau muaj rog nyob rau hauv lawv; thiab tag nrho tej kev tsis ncaj no tau los rau saum cov neeg vim yog lawv tau tso lawv tus kheej mus rau Dab Ntxwng Nyoog lub hwj chim.
- 6 Thiab tej kev cai ntawm tej nom tswv tau raug puas tsuaj, vim yog txoj kev tuav hauv ntawm cov phooj ywg thiab tej neeg txheeb ze ntawm cov uas tau tua cov yaj saub.
- 7 Thiab lawv tau ua muaj ib qho kev sib cav loj heev nyob rau hauv thaj av, kawg tias thaum kawg feem neeg uas ncaj me ntsis ntawm cov neeg yuav luag tau rais los mus ua neeg phem huv tib si; muaj tseeb tiag, tsuas tshuav ob peb tug neeg ncaj nyob hauv lawv lawm xwb.
- 8 Thiab li no rau xyoo tseem tsis tau dhau mus txij li feem coob ntawm cov neeg tau tig tawm ntawm lawv txoj kev ncaj ncees, ib yam li tus dev uas rov qab mus noj nws cov ntuav, los sis ib yam li tus npua uas luag muab dej ntxuav huv huv lawm nws rov qab mus da hawv dua.
- 9 Nim no txoj kev tuav hauv ntsiag to no, uas tau koj txoj kev tsis ncaj loj heev los rau cov neeg, tau sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke, thiab tau xaiv ib tug neeg ua lawv tus thawj uas lawv tau hu ua Yakhauj;

3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

- 10 Thiab lawv tau hu nws ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv; yog li ntawd nws tau rais los mus ua ib tug vaj ntxwv rau saum pab neeg phem no; thiab nws tau yog ib tug ntawm cov uas ua thawj heev uas tau muab nws lub suab tawm tsam cov vaj saub uas tau ua tim khawv txog Yexus.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tseem tsis tau muaj coob ib yam li tej pab pawg ntawm cov neeg, uas tau sib sau ua ke tsuas yog tias lawv tej thawj coj tau tsim lawv tej kev cai, txhua tus raws li nws pab pawg; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem yog tej yeeb ncuab; txawm tias lawv tsis yog ib co neeg ncaj ncees, los lawv tseem tau sib sau nyob hauv txoj kev ntxub ntawm cov uas tau nkag rau txoj kev khi lus rhuav tej nom tswv kom puas tsuaj.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, Yakhauj tau pom tias lawv tej yeeb ncuab tau muaj coob dua lawv, nws tau yog tus vaj ntxwv ntawm pab neeg, yog li ntawd nws tau txib nws cov neeg kom lawv yuav tsum khiav mus rau hauv sab puag pem toj ntawm thaj av, thiab nyob ped tau rhawv ib lub nceeg vaj rau lawv, mus txog thaum lawv raug koom los ntawm cov neeg ntxeev siab, (vim nws tau ua txuj ntxias lawv tias yeej yuav muaj ntau tus neeg ntxeev siab) thiab lawv rais los mus muaj zog txaus tawm tsam nrog tej pab pawg ntawm cov neeg; thiab lawv tau ua li.
- 13 Thiab nrawm heev tau yog lawv txoj kev mus kom nws yuav tsis raug tab kaum mus txog thaum lawv tau mus dhau qhov uas cov neeg yuav txhom tau lawv. Thiab li no tau xaus xyoo thib peb caug; thiab li no tau yog tej kev ua hauj lwm ntawm Nifais cov neeg.

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo thib peb caug thiab ib lawv tau sib faib ua pab pawg, txhua tus neeg raws li nws tsev neeg, pab neeg thiab tej phooj ywg; txawm li ntawd los lawv tseem tau los sib haum ib los lus tias lawv ib leeg yuav tsum tsis txhob mus ua rog rau ib leeg; tiam sis lawv tsis tau sib sau ib yam li rau lawv tej kev cai, thiab lawv tej kev nom tswy, vim lawv tau raug txhim tsa raws li tej siab ntawm cov uas yog lawv cov yawg hlob thiab lawv cov thawj coj. Tiam sis lawv tau tsim tej kev cai nruj heev tias kom ib pab yuav tsum tsis txhob hla ib pab, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau muaj kev thaj yeeb thiab nyob rau hauv thaj av; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tej siab tau tig ncaim ntawm tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab lawv tau xuas pob zeb ntaus tej yaj saub thiab tau muab lawv ntiab tawm ntawm lawv mus.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais—tau raug los xyuas los ntawm tej tim tswv thiab tus Tswv lub suab, yog li ntawd tau pom tej tim tswv, thiab tau ua tim khawv los ntawm qhov muag, thiab tau muaj hwj chim muab rau nws kom nws yuav paub txog Khetos txoj kev los ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, thiab kuj tau ua tim khawv los ntawm qhov muag rau lawv txoj kev maj tig ncaim ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees mus rau lawv txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias.
- 16 Yog li ntawd, tau tu siab rau txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab thiab txoj kev dig heev ntawm lawv tej siab—tau tawm mus rau hauv lawv nyob hauv tib xyoos ntawd, thiab tau pib ua tim khawv, yam tsis ntshai, txog txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev zam txim ntawm tej kev txhaum dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg tus Tswv Yexus Khetos.
- 17 Thiab nws tau qhuab qhia ntau yam rau lawv; thiab tag nrho lawv los yuav sau tsis tag, thiab ib feem ntawm lawv los ho tsis tsaus, yog li ntawd lawv thiaj tsis tau raug muab sau cia rau hauv phau ntawv no. Thiab Nifais tau qhuab qhia nrog hwj chim thiab nrog cai loj heev.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau npau taws rau nws, twb yog vim nws tau muaj hwj chim loj dua lawv, vim muaj tsis tsaus tias lawv yuav tsis ntseeg nws tej lus, vim nws txoj kev ntseeg tus Tswv Yexus Khetos loj heev npaum tias tej tim tswv tau los muab kev pab rau nws txhua hnuv.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

- 19 Thiab los ntawm Yexus lub npe nws tau ntiab tej dab thiab tej ntsuj plig tsis huv tawm; thiab nws tus kwv tij kiag nws tau tsa sawv hauv qhov tuag los, tom qab uas nws tau raug xuas pob zeb ntaus thiab tau tuag los ntawm cov neeg.
- 20 Thiab cov neeg tau pom qhov no, thiab tau ua tim khawv txog nws, thiab tau npau taws rau nws vim yog nws lub hwj chim; thiab nws kuj tau ua ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb, nyob ntawm cov neeg qhov muag, los ntawm Yexus lub npe.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo peb caug thiab ib tau dhau mus, thiab tau muaj tsis coob cov uas tau hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv; tiam sis txhua tus uas tau hloov siab tshiab tau qhia tseeb rau cov neeg pom tias lawv tau raug los xyuas los ntawm lub hwj chim thiab Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, uas nyob hauv Yexus Khetos, nyob hauv tus uas lawv ntseeg.
- 22 Thiab txhua tus uas tau raug muab tej dab ntiab tawm ntawm lawv lawm, thiab tau raug kho zoo ntawm lawv tej kev mob thiab lawv tej kev qaug zog, tau ua tim khawv tseeb rau cov neeg tias lawv tau raug tshav los ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig, thiab tau raug kho zoo; thiab lawv kuj tau ua tej cim tawm thiab tau ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob rau hauv cov neeg.
- 23 Li no kuj tau dhau mus xyoo peb caug thiab ob. Thiab Nifais tau qhia rau cov neeg nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo peb caug thiab peb; thiab nws tau qhuab qhia rau lawv txog kev hloov siab lees txim thiab kev zam txim ntawm tej kev txhaum.
- 24 Nim no kuv kuj xav kom nej nco ntsoov thiab, tias tsis tau muaj ib tug uas tau raug coj los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim es nws ho tsis tau raug ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm dej.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, tej neeg los rau txoj kev ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia no, tau raug tsa los ntawm Nifais, xwv kom tag nrho cov uas yuav los rau lawv yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej los ntawm dej, thiab qhov no zoo ib yam li ib qho tim khawv thiab ib qho lus pov thawj rau Vajtswv thiab rau cov neeg, tias lawv tau hloov siab lees txim thiab tau txais ib qho kev zam txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum lawm.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj ntau leej nyob rau thaum pib ntawm xyoo no uas tau raug ua kev cai raus dej rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim; thiab li no feem ntau ntawm lub xyoos tau dhau mus.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

3 Nifais 8

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias raws li peb phau ceev xwm txheej, thiab peb paub tias peb phau ceev xwm txheej yeej tseeb, vim saib seb, nws tau yog ib tug neeg ncaj uas tau coj phau ceev xwm txheej—vim nws tau ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb ntau tiag nyob hauv Yexus lub npe; thiab tsis tau muaj ib tug neeg twg uas yuav muaj peev xwm ua ib yam txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob hauv Yexus lub npe tsuas yog nws tau raug ntxuav txhua txhia yam ntawm nws txoj kev tsis ncaj xwb—
- 2 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias, yog tsis tau muaj qhov yuam kev uas tau ua los ntawm tus neeg no nyob hauv txoj kev ceev ntawm peb lub caij, xyoo peb caug thiab peb tau dhau mus;
- 3 Thiab cov neeg tau pib ntsia nrog txoj kev siab kub lug rau lub cim uas tau muab los ntawm tus yaj saub Xamuyees, tus Neeg Lamas, muaj tseeb tiag, rau lub sij hawm uas yuav tsum muaj txoj kev tsaus ntuj ncuva li peb hnuv rau saum thaj av.
- 4 Thiab tau pib muaj kev ua ntau lub siab loj heev thiab tej kev sib cav nyob rau hauv cov neeg, txawm tias tau muaj ntau lub cim heev uas tau muab.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo peb caug thiab plaub, nyob rau hauv lub ib hlis ntuj, nyob rau hauv hnuv thib plaub ntawm lub hlis, tau sawv ib qho khaub zeeg cua loj heev, ib qho uas tsis tau hnov ib zaug nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av.
- 6 Thiab kuj tau muaj ib thwj cua daj cua dub loj thiab phem heev; thiab tau muaj xob quaj phem heev, kawg tias nws tau co tag nrho lub ntiaj teb zoo ib yam li nws twb yuav faib ua ob sab.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tej xob laim ntse heev kawg li, ib qho uas ib txwm tsis tau paub dua li nyob rau tag nrho hauv thaj av.
- 8 Thiab lub nroog Xalahelas tau kub hnyiab.
- 9 Thiab lub nroog Maulaunais tau tog mus rau hauv qhov tob tob ntawm dej hiav txwv, thiab tej neeg uas nyob hauv tau poob deg tuag tas.
- 10 Thiab tej av tau los npog lub nroog Maulaunaihas xwv thaum kawg nyob hauv qhov chaw ntawm lub nroog tau rais los mus ua ib lub roob loj heev.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj ib qho kev puas tsuaj loj thiab phem heev nyob rau hauv thaj av sab qab teb.

3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

- 12 Tiam sis saib seb, tau muaj ib qho kev puas tsuaj loj dua thiab phem heev dua nyob rau thaj av qaum teb; vim saib seb, tag nrho saum thaj av tau raug hloov tas, vim yog tej cua daj cua dub thiab tej cua moj zeeg kaw thiab tej xob quaj thiab tej xob laim, thiab txoj kev qeeg loj heev ntawm tag nrho thaj av.
- 13 Thiab tej kev loj tau raug tawg thiab tej kev uas sib txig tau raug piam, thiab ntau qhov chaw du du tau rais los mus ua chaw com kawb.
- 14 Thiab ntau lub nroog loj thiab muaj npe tau raug tog, thiab ntau lub tau raug kub hnyiab, thiab ntau lub tau raug qeeg mus txog thaum tej tsev uas nyob hauv tau vau rau hauv av, thiab cov neeg uas nyob hauv tau raug tuag, thiab tej chaw tau tso tseg tsis muaj neeg nyob.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj ib txhia nroog uas seem tshuav; tiam sis tej kev piam ntawm cov ntawd tau loj heev, thiab tau muaj ntau tus ntawm lawv uas tau raug tuag.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj ib txhia uas tau raug cua moj zeeg kaw coj mus; thiab qhov uas lawv tau mus lawm tsis muaj neeg paub, tsuas yog lawv paub tias lawv tau raug coj mus lawm xwb.
- 17 Thiab li no tag nrho thaj av tau rais los mus txawv txav vim yog tej cua daj cua dub, thiab tej xob quaj, thiab tej xob laim, thiab txoj kev qeeg ntawm tej av.
- 18 Thiab saib seb, tej pob zeb tau raug tawg ua ob sab; lawv tau raug tawg rau saum tag nrho thaj av, kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau raug nrhiav tau tej ntxwj zeb tawg, thiab xwb thiab tawg pleb, nyob tag nrho rau saum thaj av.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum tej xob quaj, thiab tej xob laim, thiab khauv zeeg cua, tej cua daj cua dub, thiab tej kev qeeg ntawm tej av tau tus lawm—vim saib seb, lawv tau los nyob ntev ncu li peb teev; thiab ib txhia tau hais tias lub sij hawm tau ntev dua; txawm li ntawd los, tag nrho tej yam loj thiab phem no tau tshwm sim tau li peb teev—thiab tom qab ntawd saib seb, tau muaj kev tsaus ntuj nyob rau saum thaj av.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj kev tsaus ntuj tuaj nyob tag nrho rau saum thaj av, kawg tias thaum kawg cov neeg uas nyob hauv es tsis tau vau yeej hnov raug tej huab ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj;

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

- 21 Thiab yeej muaj tsis taus qhov pom kev li, vim yog txoj kev tsaus nti, thiab yeej tsis muaj neeg taws tau tswm ciab, los sis tsau; thiab yeej tsis muaj neeg rauv tau taws nrog lawv tej ntoo zoo thiab ntoo qhuav heev, ces thiaj li muaj tsis taus ib qho pom kev hlo li;
- 22 Thiab tsis pom muaj ib qho teeb, los sis hluav taws, los sis ib qho kaj quaj les li, thiab tsis pom lub hnuv, los sis lub hli, los sis tej hnuv qub, vim tej huab ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj tuab heev li uas tau muaj nyob rau saum thaj av.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau muaj nyob ntev tau peb hnuv uas tsis tau pom muaj teeb li; thiab tau muaj kev quaj ntsuag thiab quaj nrov nrov thiab quaj nyiav nyob tsis tu ncuu tag nrho rau hauv cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, tej kev quaj nyiav ntawm cov neeg tau loj, vim yog txoj kev tsaus ntuj thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj loj uas tau los rau saum lawv.
- 24 Thiab nyob hauv ib qho chaw lawv tau raug hnov quaj, hais tias: Au kheev lam peb tau hloov siab lees txim ua ntej hnuv loj thiab phem no, thiab ces peb tej kwv tij yeej yuav tau raug tseg cia, thiab lawv yeej yuav tsis tau raug kub hnyiav nyob hauv lub nroog loj Xalabelas.
- 25 Thiab nyob lwm qhov chaw lawv tau raug hnov quaj thiab nyiav, hais tias: Au kheev lam peb tau hloov siab lees txim ua ntej hnuv loj thiab phem no, thiab tsis txhob tau tua thiab xuas pob zeb ntau cov yaj saub, thiab muab lawv ntiab tawm; ces nyaj peb tej niam thiab peb tej ntxhais zoo nkauj, thiab peb tej me nyuam yuav tau raug tseg cia, thiab yuav tsis tau raug muab faus rau hauv lub nroog loj Maulaunaihas. Thiab li no tau yog tej kev quaj loj thiab phem ntawm cov neeg.

And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

3 Nifais 9

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib lub suab hnov thoob plaws nyob hauv cov neeg ntawm lub ntiaj teb, nyob rau saum tag nrho ntawm thaj av no, hais tias:
- 2 Kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem, kev txom nyem rau cov neeg no; kev txom nyem rau cov neeg ntawm tag nrho lub ntiaj teb tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb; vim tus dab luag luag, thiab nws tej tim tswv zoo siab, vim yog txoj kev raug tuag ntawm kuv cov neeg tej tub zoo nraug thiab tej ntxhais zoo nkauj; thiab nws vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj thiab tej kev qias uas lawv raug tuag!
- 3 Saib seb, lub nroog loj Xalahas ntawd kuv tau xuas hluav taws hlawv, thiab hlawv cov neeg uas nyob hauv.
- 4 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog loj Maulaunais ntawd kuv tau ua kom tog rau hauv qhov tob ntawm dej hiav txwv, thiab ua kom cov neeg nyob hauv tau raug poob deg tuag.
- 5 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog loj Maulaunaihas ntawd kuv tau muab av faus, thiab cov neeg nyob hauv, kom zais tau lawv tej kev tsis ncaj thiab lawv tej kev qias ncaim ntawm kuv lub ntsej muag, xwv kom tej ntshav ntawm cov yaj saub thiab cov neeg ntseeg yuav tsis los rau kuv ib zaug ntxiv los tawm tsam lawv lawm.
- 6 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog Kilakas kuv tau ua kom tog, thiab cov neeg nyob hauv tau raug faus tob ntawm lub ntiaj teb;
- 7 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab lub nroog Aunaihas thiab cov neeg nyob hauv, thiab lub nroog Maukhas thiab cov neeg nyob hauv, thiab lub nroog Yeluxalees thiab cov neeg nyob hauv; thiab kuv tau ua kom tej dej sawv tuaj rau tej chaw ntawd, kom zais tau lawv tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias ncaim tawm ntawm kuv lub ntsej muag, xwv kom tej ntshav ntawm tej yaj saub thiab cov neeg ntseeg yuav tsis los rau kuv ib zaug ntxiv los tawm tsam lawv lawm.

3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocom and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

8 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog Nkadi-adais, thiab lub nroog Nkadi-oonas, thiab lub nroog Yakhauj, thiab lub nroog Nkinkinaus, tag nrho tej no kuv tau ua kom raug tog, thiab tau ua pov roob thiab tej dawm nyob rau hauv tej chaw ntawd; thiab cov neeg nyob hauv kuv tau muab faus rau hauv qhov tob ntawm lub ntiaj teb, kom zais tau lawv tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias ncaim tawm ntawm kuv lub ntsej muag, xwv kom tej ntshav ntawm tej yaj saub thiab tej neeg ntseeg yuav tsis los rau kuv ib zaug ntxiv los tawm tsam lawv lawm.

9 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog loj Yakhaunpankas, uas nyob los ntawm cov neeg ntawm vaj ntxwv Yakhauj, kuv tau ua rau hluav taws kub vim yog lawv tej kev txhaum thiab lawv tej kev phem, uas phem dua ntais tej kev phem ntawm tag nrho lub ntiaj teb, vim yog lawv tej kev tua neeg ntsiag to thiab tej kev tuav hauv; vim twb yog lawv uas tau rhuav txoj kev thaj yeeb ntawm kuv cov neeg thiab tej nom tswv ntawm thaj av; yog li ntawd kuv tau ua kom lawv kub hnyiab, ua kom lawv puas tsuaj ncaim ntawm kuv lub ntsej muag, xwv kom tej ntshav ntawm tej yaj saub thiab tej neeg ntseeg yuav tsis los rau kuv ib zaug ntxiv los tawm tsam lawv lawm.

10 Thiab saib seb, lub nroog Lamas, thiab lub nroog Yosawm, thiab lub nroog Nkab, thiab lub nroog Kisawkhumas, kuv tau ua kom raug kub hnyiab nrog hluav taws, thiab cov neeg uas nyob hauv, vim yog lawv txoj kev phem hauv txoj kev ntiab cov yaj saub tawm, thiab xuas pob zeb ntau cov uas kuv tau xa mus tshaj tawm rau lawv txog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias.

11 Thiab vim lawv tau ntiab lawv tag nrho tawm, xwv kom tsis txhob muaj ib tug neeg ncaj nyob hauv lawv, kuv tau xa hluav taws nqis los thiab ua rau lawv puas tsuaj, xwv kom lawv tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias yuav raug zais ncaim ntawm kuv lub ntsej muag, kom tej ntshav ntawm tej yaj saub thiab cov neeg ntseeg uas kuv tau xa mus rau hauv lawv yuav tsis quaj tawm hauv tej av tuaj rau kuv tuaj tawm tsam lawv.

12 Thiab ntau yam kev puas tsuaj loj uas kuv tau ua los rau saum thaj av no, thiab rau saum cov neeg no, vim yog lawv txoj kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

13 Au tag nrho nej cov uas raug tseg dim vim yog nej ua neeg ncaj dua li lawv, nim no nej puas yuav tsis kam tig rov qab los cuag kuv, thiab hloov siab lees txim txog nej tej kev txhaum, thiab hloov siab tshiab, xwv kom kuv yuav kho nej?

14 Muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais tseeb rau nej, yog nej yuav los cuag kuv nej yuav muaj txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis. Saib seb, kuv txhais caj npab hlob tshua twb muab cev tuaj rau nej, thiab leej twg uas yuav los, kuv yuav txais tus ntawd; thiab cov uas los cuag kuv tau koob hmoov.

15 Saib seb, kuv yog Yexus Khetos Vajtswv Leej Tub. Kuv tau tsim tej ntuj ceeb tsheej thiab lub ntiaj teb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas nyob hauv lawv. Kuv yeej tau nrog Leej Txiv txij puag thaum chiv keeb los. Kuv nyob hauv Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Txiv nyob hauv kuv; thiab nyob hauv kuv Leej Txiv tau yeeb koob rau nws lub npe.

16 Kuv tau los rau hauv kuv cov neeg kiag, thiab kuv cov neeg tsis tau txais kuv. Thiab tej vajlugkub hais txog kuv txoj kev los tau muaj puv npo lawm.

17 Thiab coob npaum li coob tau uas tau txais yuav kuv, rau lawv kuv tau muab pub kom rais los mus ua Vajtswv tej tub; thiab tib yam li ntawd kuv yuav muab rau coob tug npaum li yuav coob tau uas yuav ntseeg kuv lub npe, vim saib seb, kev txhiv dim twb yog los ntawm kuv los, thiab nyob hauv kuv Mawxes txoj kev cai thiaj raug muaj puv npo.

18 Kuv yog qhov kaj thiab txoj sia ntawm lub ntiaj teb. Kuv yog Alafas thiab Aumekhas, qhov pib thiab qhov kawg.

19 Thiab nej yuav tsis txhob muab tsiaj tua txi ntshav rau kuv ntxiv lawm; muaj tseeb tiag, nej tej kev txi thiab nej tej kev hlawv tsiaj yuav tsum tseg txhob ua lawm, vim kuv yuav tsis txais nej tej kev txi thiab nej tej kev hlawv tsiaj.

20 Thiab nej yuav muab lub siab mob thiab lub siab xav ua zoo ua ib qho kev txi rau kuv. Thiab txhua tus uas yuav los cuag kuv nrog lub siab mob thiab lub siab xav ua zoo, tus ntawd kuv yuav muab ua kev cai raus dej nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, zoo tib yam li cov Neeg Lamas, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg hauv kuv nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawm lawv txoj kev hloov siab tshiab, tau raug ua kev cai raus dej nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab lawv tsis tau paub txog qhov ntawd.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

21 Saib seb, kuv tau los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb koj txoj kev txhiv dim los rau lub qab ntuj, los cawm lub ntiaj teb dim ntawd txoj kev txhaum.

22 Yog li ntawd, tus uas hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag kuv ib yam li ib tug me nyuam yaus, kuv yuav txais nws, vim cov zoo li ntawd yog cov uas tau nkag mus saum Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj. Saib seb, rau cov zoo li ntawd kuv thiaj tau tso kuv txoj sia rau, thiab tau rov qab txais nws dua; yog li ntawd cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab los cuag kuv nej cov uas nyob hauv ntiaj teb no, thiab raug cawm dim.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

3 Nifais 10

- 1 Thiab nim no saib seb, tau muaj tias tag nrho cov neeg ntawm thaj av tau hnov tej lus hais no, thiab tau ua tim khawv txog nws. Thiab tom qab cov lus hais no tas tau muaj kev ntsiag to nyob hauv thaj av tau ncuat ntau teev;
- 2 Vim txoj kev xav tsis thoob ntawm cov neeg tau loj heev ces lawv thiab tau tsum tsis quaj ntsuag thiab quaj nrov rau txoj kev ploj ntawm lawv tej neeg txheeb ze uas tau raug tuag lawm; yog li ntawd tau muaj kev ntsiag to nyob hauv tag nrho thaj av tau ncuat ntau teev.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ib lub suab los rau cov neeg dua, thiab tag nrho cov neeg tau hnov, thiab tau ua tim khawv txog nws, hais tias:
- 4 Au nej cov neeg ntawm tej nroog loj no uas tau raug vau, cov uas yog tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv ntawm Yakhaus, muaj tseeb tiag, cov uas nyob hauv tsev neeg Ixayees, pes tsawg zaas uas kuv tau sau nej ib yam li ib tug poj qaib sau nws tej me nyuam los rau hauv nws qab tis, thiab tau tu nej.
- 5 Thiab ntxiv, pes tsawg zaas uas ntshe kuv twb sau nej lawm ib yam li ib tug poj qaib sau nws tej me nyuam los nyob hauv nws qab tis, muaj tseeb tiag, Au nej cov neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, cov uas tau vau; muaj tseeb tiag, Au nej cov neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, nej cov uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees, ib yam li nej cov uas tau vau; muaj tseeb tiag, pes tsawg zaas uas ntshe kuv twb sau nej lawm ib yam li ib tug poj qaib sau nws tej me nyuam, thiab nej tsis kam.
- 6 Au nej tsev neeg Ixayees uas kuv tau tseg cia es, pes tsawg zaas uas kuv yuav sau nej ib yam li ib tug poj qaib sau nws tej me nyuam los rau hauv nws qab tis, yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov qab los cuag kuv nrog lub siab tag nrho puv npo.
- 7 Tiam sis yog tias tsis li ntawd, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, nej tej chaw nyob yuav rais los mus ua tej chaw tsis muaj neeg nyob mus txog lub sij hawm thaum tej kev khi lus rau nej tej yawg koob muaj puv npo.
- 8 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab cov neeg tau hnov tej lus no tas lawm, saib seb, lawv tau rov pib quaj nyiav thiab quaj nrov vim yog txoj kev ploj ntawm lawv tej neeg txheeb ze thiab tej phooj ywg.

3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias peb hnuv tau dhau mus. Thiab nws tau yog thaum sawv ntxov, thiab qhov kev tsaus ntuj tau faib ncaim saum thaj av mus, thiab lub ntiaj teb tau tsum tsis tshee, thiab tej pob zeb tau tsum tsis tawg, thiab txoj kev nroo uas phem heev tau tsum, thiab tag nrho tej suab nrov ua tsuj ua tsaug tau tsum.
- 10 Thiab lub ntiaj teb tau los koom ua ke dua, ces nws thiaj sawv tau; thiab txoj kev quaj ntsuag, thiab txoj kev nyiav, thiab txoj kev quaj ntawm cov neeg uas tau dim muaj sia tau tsum; thiab lawv txoj kev quaj ntsuag tau ntxeev ua kev xyiv fab, thiab txoj kev nyiav tau ntxeev ua kev qhuas thiab kev ua tsaug rau tus Tswv Yexus Khetos, lawv tus Txhiv Dim.
- 11 Thiab npaum li no tej vajlugkub tau muaj puv npo li tej uas tau hais los ntawm tej yaj saub.
- 12 Thiab nws tau yog feem uas ncaj ncees dua ntawm cov neeg uas tau raug dim, thiab nws twb yog lawv cov uas tau txais tej yaj saub thiab tsis tau xuas zeb ntaus lawv; thiab nws twb yog lawv cov uas tsis tau txo cov ntshav ntawm cov neeg ntseeg, uas tau raug tseg cia—
- 13 Thiab lawv tau raug tseg cia thiab tsis raug tog thiab faus rau hauv av; thiab lawv tsis raug poob deg rau hauv tej qhov tob ntawm hiav txwv; thiab lawv tsis tau raug kub hnyiav los ntawm hluav taws, thiab lawv kuj tsis tau raug faus thiab tsuam kom tuag; thiab lawv tsis tau raug tej khauv zeeg cua coj mus; thiab lawv kuj tsis tau raug kov yeej los ntawm tej pa taws thiab ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj.
- 14 Thiab nim no, yog leej twg tau nyeem, cia nws to taub; tus uas muaj tej vajlugkub, cia nws nrhiav kawm lawv, thiab kom pom thiab ntsia saib tag nrho tej kev tuag no thiab tej kev puas tsuaj los ntawm hluav taws, thiab los ntawm pa taws, thiab los ntawm tej cua daj cua dub, thiab los ntawm tej khauv zeeg cua, thiab los ntawm tej av qhib txais lawv, thiab tag nrho tej yam no puas yuav tsis yog rau txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog ntau yam ntawm tej yaj saub dawb huv.
- 15 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias, Muaj tseeb tiag, ntau tus tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no nyob rau lub caij thaum Khetos los, thiab tau raug tua vim lawv tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, tus yaj saub Xinos tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no, thiab Xinoj kuj tau hais txog tej yam no thiab, vim lawv tsuas tau ua tim khawv txog peb, cov uas yog lawv tej noob uas seem tshuav.
- 17 Saib seb, peb yawg koob Yakhouj kuj tau ua tim khawv txog ib co seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej cov noob. Thiab saib seb, peb tsis yog ib co noob seem ntawm Yauxej los? Thiab tej yam no uas tau ua tim khawv txog peb, tsis yog lawv tau raug muab sau rau saum cov phiaj toog uas peb yawg koob Lihais tau coj tawm ntawm Yeluxalees tuaj los?
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau thaum kawg ntawm xyoo peb caug thiab plaub, saib seb, kuv yuav qhia rau nej paub tias Nifais cov neeg uas tau raug tseg cia, thiab cov uas tau raug hu ua Neeg Lamas, cov uas tau raug tseg cia, thiab tau muaj ntau yam zoo heev muab rau lawv, thiab tej koob hmoov loj heev tau nchuav tawm los rau saum lawv taub hau, kawg tias tsis ntev tom qab txoj kev Khetos nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej nws tau ua nws tus kheej los rau lawv pom tiag tiag—
- 19 Tau muab nws lub cev rau lawv pom, thiab tau qhuab qhia rau lawv; thiab ib zag ntawm nws txoj kev qhuab qhia yuav raug muab tom qab no. Yog li ntawd rau lub sij hawm no kuv yuav tau xaus kuv tej lus hais.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inasmuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Yexus Khetos tau ua nws tus kbeej rau cov Neeg Nifais pom, thaum uas cov neeg coob tau sib sau ua ke nyob hauv thaj av Huaj Vam, thiab tau qhuab qhia rau lawv; thiab zoo li no nws tau ua nws tus kbeej los rau lawv pom.

3 Nifais 11

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tau muaj Nifais cov neeg coob coob tau sib sau ua ke, ib puag ncig lub tuam tsev uas nyob hauv thaj av Huaj Vam; thiab lawv ib leeg zoo siab kawg nkaus thiab xav tsis thooob nrog ib leeg, thiab ib leeg qhia rau ib leeg txog qhov loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas tau muaj los.
- 2 Thiab lawv kuj tham txog tus Yexus Khetos no, tus ua lub cim tau raug muab ua txog nws txoj kev tuag.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv ib leeg tseem tab tom tham nrog ib leeg li no, lawv tau hnov ib lub suab zoo li nws tau tawm saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los; thiab lawv tau tsa lawv qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig, vim lawv tsis to taub lub suab uas lawv tau hnov; thiab nws tsis tau yog ib lub suab nchav, thiab nws kuj tsis yog ib lub suab nrov; tiam sis, thiab txawm tias nws tau yog ib lub suab yau los nws tseem tau chob lawv cov uas tau hnov mus rau hauv nruab siab, kawg tias tsis muaj ib feem ntawm lawv tej cev uas nws tsis tau ua kom tshee li; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau chob lawv mus rau puag nruab nrog, thiab tau ua rau lawv tej siab kub.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rov hnov lub suab dua, thiab lawv tsis to taub nws.
- 5 Thiab lawv tau hnov lub suab dua zaum peb, thiab tau cuab lawv tej pob ntseg kom hnov nws; thiab lawv tej qhov muag tau tig ncaj nraim rau lub suab ntawd; thiab lawv tau ntsia ntsoov rau saum ntuj, rau saum qhov uas lub suab tau nqis los.
- 6 Thiab saib seb, zaum peb lawv tau to taub lub suab uas lawv tau hnov; thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias:
- 7 Saib seb kuv tus Tub uas kuv Hlub, tus uas kuv zoo siab heev rau, tus uas ua rau kuv lub npe tau yeeb koob—nej cia li mloog nws.

Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.

3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

8 Thiab tau muaj tias, thaum uas lawv to taub lawm lawv tau tsa lawv tej qhov muag dua mus rau saum ntuj; thiab saib seb, lawv tau pom ib tug Neeg nqis saum ntuj los; thiab nws tau hnav ib lub tsho tshaj sab dawb; thiab nws tau nqis los thiab tau sawv ntsug nyob hauv nruab nrab ntawm lawv; thiab tej qhov muag ntawm tag nrho cov neeg coob coob tau tig rau nws, thiab lawv tsis kam qhib lawv tej qhov ncauj, tsis hais ib tug rau lwm tus, thiab tsis paub tias nws txhais li cas, vim lawv tau xav tias nws tau yog ib tug tim tswv uas tau tshwm sim rau lawv.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau xyab nws txhais tes thiab tau hais rau cov neeg, hais tias:

10 Saib seb, kuv yog Yexus Khetos, tus uas tej yaj saub tau ua tim khawv tias yuav los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb.

11 Thiab saib seb, kuv yog qhov kaj thiab txoj sia ntawm lub ntiaj teb; thiab kuv tau haus tawm ntawm lub khob dej iab uas Leej Txiv tau muab rau kuv, thiab tau ua rau Leej Txiv tau yeeb koob nyob rau hauv txoj kev kuv ris tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb, los ntawm qhov uas kuv tau ua raws li Leej Txiv lub siab nyiam nyob hauv txhua yam txij li thaum chiv keeb los.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no tas lawm tag nrho cov neeg coob coob tau vau rau hauv av; vim lawv tau nco qab tias nws twb tau raug hais qhia tseg nyob hauv lawv lawm tias Khetos yuav ua nws tus kheej rau lawv pom tom qab ntawm nws txoj kev nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau lawv hais tias:

14 Cia li sawv thiab los cuag kuv, xwv kom nej yuav tau muab nej tej tes xuas kuv sab tav, thiab kom nej yuav tau xuas tej qhov ntsia hlau hauv kuv tes thiab hauv kuv taw, xwv kom nej yuav paub tias kuv yog Ixayees tus Vajtswv, thiab tus Vajtswv ntawm tag nrho lub ntiaj teb, thiab tau raug tua rau tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb.

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg coob coob tau tawm mus, thiab muab lawv tej tes xuas rau hauv nws sab tav, thiab tau xuas tej qhov ntsia hlau hauv nws tej tes thiab hauv nws tej taw; thiab lawv tau ua li no, mus ib leeg zuj zus txog thaum lawv sawv daws tau mus tas, thiab tau pom nrog lawv tej qhov muag thiab tau xuas nrog lawv tej tes, thiab tau paub qhov tseeb thiab tau ua tim khawv, tias twb yog nws ntag, tus uas tau raug muab sau cia los ntawm tej yaj saub, tias yuav los.
- 16 Thiab thaum lawv tau mus tag nrho thiab tau ua tim khawv rau lawv tus kheej, lawv tau qw nrov nrov tawm ua ib ke, hais tias:
- 17 Hauxanas! Vajtswv tus uas Siab Kawg nkaus lub npe tau koob hmoov! Thiab lawv tau vau rau ntawm Yexus ko taw, thiab tau teev tiam nws.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau Nifais (vim Nifais tau nyob hauv cov neeg coob coob) thiab nws tau txib nws tias kom nws tawm los.
- 19 Thiab Nifais tau sawv thiab tau mus, thiab tau qhau cev loo nws tus kheej rau ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag thiab tau nwj nws txhais ko taw.
- 20 Thiab tus Tswv tau txib nws tias kom nws sawv. Thiab nws tau sawv thiab tau sawv ntawm nws xub ntiag.
- 21 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv muab hwj chim rau koj xwv kom koj yuav muab cov neeg no ua kev cai raus dej thaum uas kuv rov qab nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lawm.
- 22 Thiab ntxiv tus Tswv tau hu lwm cov neeg los, thiab tau hais rau lawv tib yam; thiab nws tau muab hwj chim rau lawv ua kev cai raus dej. Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej li no; thiab tsis txhob kom muaj tej kev sib cav nyob hauv nej.
- 23 Kuv hais tseeb rau nej, tias tus uas hloov siab lees txim txog nws tej kev txhaum dhau los ntawm nej tej lus thiab xav ua kev cai raus dej nyob hauv kuv lub npe, nej yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej li no rau lawv—Saib seb, nej yuav tsum nqis mus thiab sawv rau hauv dej, thiab nyob ntawm kuv lub npe nej yuav ua kev cai raus dej rau lawv.
- 24 Thiab nim no saib seb, cov no yog cov lus uas nej yuav hais, hu lawv los ntawm lub npe, hais tias:

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them— Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

- 25 Tau muab cai rau kuv los ntawm Yexus Khetos, kuv muab koj ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Leej Txiv, thiab ntawm Leej Tub, thiab ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub npe. Amees.
- 26 Thiab tom qab ntawd nej yuav muab lawv raus rau hauv dej, thiab rov qab tawm hauv dej los.
- 27 Thiab nej yuav ua kev cai raus dej zoo li no nyob ntawm kuv lub npe; vim saib seb, kuv hais tseeb rau nej, tias Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Tub, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yog ib tug; thiab kuv nyob hauv Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Txiv nyob hauv kuv, thiab Leej Txiv thiab kuv yog ib tug.
- 28 Thiab raws li tej uas kuv tau txib nej yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej li no. Thiab yuav tsum tsis txhob muaj kev sib cav nyob hauv nej, ib yam li tau muaj tas los lawm; thiab tsis txhob muaj tej kev sib cav nyob hauv nej txog kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, ib yam li tau muaj los lawm.
- 29 Vim kuv hais tseeb tseeb rau nej, tus uas muaj tus ntsuj plig ntawm txoj kev sib cav tsis yog kuv li, tiam sis yog los ntawm tus dab, tus uas yog leej txiv ntawm txoj kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab nws txhib neeg tej siab kom ib leeg sib cav npau taws rau ib leeg.
- 30 Saib seb, qhov no tsis yog kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, txhib kom neeg tej siab npau taws, ib leeg nkaug ib leeg; tiam sis qhov no yog kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, kom tsis txhob ua tej yam zoo li ntawd lawm.
- 31 Saib seb, kuv hais tseeb tseeb, rau nej tias, kuv yuav qhia kuv tej lus qhuab qhia rau nej.
- 32 Thiab qhov no yog kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, thiab nws yog tej lus qhuab qhia uas Leej Txiv tau muab rau kuv; thiab kuv ua tim khawv txog Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Txiv ua tim khawv txog kuv, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ua tim khawv txog Leej Txiv thiab kuv; thiab kuv ua tim khawv tias Leej Txiv txib tag nrho tib neeg sawv daws, nyob txhua qhov, kom hloov siab lees txim thiab ntseeg kuv.
- 33 Thiab tus uas ntseeg kuv, thiab ua kev cai raus dej, tus ntawd yuav raug cawm dim; thiab lawv yog lawv cov uas yuav tau Vajtsvub lub nceeg vaj.
- 34 Thiab tus uas tsis ntseeg kuv, thiab tsis ua kev cai raus dej, yuav raug txim.

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

- 35 Kuv hais tseeb tseeb rau nej, tias qhov no yog kuv tej lus qhia, thiab kuv ua tim khawv txog nws los ntawm Leej Txiv; thiab tus uas ntseeg kuv yeej ntseeg Leej Txiv thiab; thiab rau tus ntawd Leej Txiv yuav ua tim khawv txog kuv, vim nws yuav los xyuas tus ntawd nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 36 Thiab li no Leej Txiv yuav ua tim khawv txog kuv, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yuav ua tim khawv rau nws txog Leej Txiv thiab kuv; vim Leej Txiv, thiab kuv, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yog ib tug.
- 37 Thiab ntxiv kuv hais rau nej, nej yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, thiab rais los mus zoo li tej me nyuam yaus, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, los sis yog tsis li nej yuav tsis muaj kev txais tau tej yam no.
- 38 Thiab ntxiv kuv hais rau nej, nej yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, thiab rais los mus zoo li ib tug me nyuam yaus, los sis yog tsis li nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm tau Vajtsuv lub nceeg vaj.
- 39 Kuv hais tseeb tseeb rau nej, tias qhov no yog kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, thiab tus uas tsa rau saum qhov no yog tsa rau saum kuv lub pob zeb, thiab tej rooj vag ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav kov tsis yeej lawv.
- 40 Thiab tus uas yuav tshaj ntau dua los sis tsawg dua qhov no, thiab tsim nws los ua kuv tej lus qhuab qhia, ces tib yam li kev phem los ntag, thiab twb tsis tsa rau saum kuv lub pob zeb; tiam sis nws tsa rau saum ib co hauv paus xuab zeb xwb, thiab tej rooj vag ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus yuav sawv qhib tos txais cov ntawd thaum tej dej nyab los thiab tej cua los ntaus lawv.
- 41 Yog li ntawd, tawm mus rau cov neeg no, thiab tshaj tawm tej lus uas kuv tau hais lawm, mus rau qhov kawg ntawm lub ntiaj teb.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

3 Nifais 12

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no rau Nifais tas, thiab rau cov uas tau raug hu, (nim no lawv cov uas nws tau hu, thiab tau txais hwj chim thiab cai ua kev cai raus dej, muaj kaum ob leeg) thiab saib seb, nws tau xyab nws txhais tes rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab hais nrov nrov rau lawv, hais tias: Nej tau koob hmoov yog nej yuav mob siab mloog rau tej lus ntawm kaum ob leeg no uas kuv tau xaiv hauv nej los muab kev pab rau nej, thiab los ua nej tej tub txib; thiab rau lawv kuv tau muab hwj chim xwv kom lawv yuav muab nej ua kev cai raus dej rau hauv dej; thiab tom qab uas nej ua kev cai raus dej rau hauv dej tas lawm, saib seb kuv yuav muab nej ua kev cai raus dej nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; yog li ntawd nej tau koob hmoov yog nej yuav ntseeg kuv thiab ua kev cai raus dej, tom qab uas nej tau pom kuv lawm thiab paub tias yog kuv.
- 2 Thiab ntxiv, koob hmoov tau ntau dua rau lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg hauv nej tej lus vim tias nej yuav ua tim khawv tias nej tau pom kuv, thiab tias nej paub tias yog kuv. Muaj tseeb tiag, koob hmoov tau rau lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg rau nej tej lus, thiab nqis los rau hauv tej qhov tob tob ntawm txoj kev txo hwj chim thiab ua kev cai raus dej, vim lawv yuav raug xyuas nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab yuav txais ib qho kev zam txim ntawm lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, cov neeg pluag hauv sab ntsuj plig uas los cuag kuv tau koob hmoov, vim ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj yog lawv li.
- 4 Thiab ntxiv, tag nrho lawv cov uas quaj ntsuag tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav raug nplij siab.
- 5 Thiab cov uas ua siab dawb siab zoo tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav tau lub ntiaj teb ua lawv tug.
- 6 Thiab tag nrho lawv cov ua tshaib thiab nqhis rau txoj kev ncaj ncees tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo.
- 7 Thiab cov uas muaj kev hlub tshua puv npo tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav tau txais kev hlub tshua.
- 8 Thiab tag nrho cov uas muaj siab huv huv tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav pom Vajtswv.
- 9 Thiab tag nrho cov neeg tsim kev thaj yeeb tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yuav raug hu ua Vajtswv cov me nyuam.

3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

10 Thiab tag nrho lawv cov uas raug tsim txom vim yog rau kuv lub npe tau koob hmoov, vim teb chaws ntuj ceeb tsheej yog lawv li.

11 Thiab nej tau koob hmoov thaum tej tib neeg yuav thuam thiab tsim txom nej, thiab yuav hais txhua yam lus phem tsis tseeb, tawm tsam nej, vim yog kuv;

12 Vim nej yuav muaj kev xyiv fab heev thiab yuav kaj siab lug heev, vim nej cov nqi zog nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej yuav loj; vim lawv kuj tau tsim txom cov yaj saub uas nyob ua ntej nej.

13 Kuv hais tseeb tseeb rau nej, kuv muab nej ua tej ntsev ntawm lub ntiaj teb; tiam sis yog cov ntsev yuav tsuag ces yuav yog dab tsi thiaj yuav ua tau lub ntiaj teb qab taus ntsev? Tom qab ntawd tej ntsev yuav tsis zoo rau dab tsi li, tiam sis tsuas yog yuav muab pov tseg thiab raug muab tsuj rau hauv tej neeg qab xib taws xwb.

14 Kuv hais tseeb tseeb rau nej, kuv muab nej ua lub teeb rau cov neeg no. Ib lub nroog uas nyob rau saum ib lub roob yeej tsis muaj dab tsi ntis tau.

15 Saib seb, neeg puas yuav taws ib tug tswm ciab thiab muab nws tso rau hauv ib lub qab thooob? Yeej tsis ua li ntawd, tiam sis yeej yuav muab tso rau saum qhov chaw taws tswm ciab, thiab nws yuav muab qhov kaj rau tag nrho cov uas nyob hauv tsev;

16 Yog li ntawd cia nej lub teeb kom ci rau cov neeg no, xwv kom lawv yuav pom nej tej hauj lwm zoo thiab muab yeeb koob rau nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.

17 Tsis txhob xav tias yog kuv los ua kom txoj kev cai los sis tej yaj saub puas tsuaj. Kuv tsis yog los ua kom puas tsuaj tiam sis kom muaj puv npo;

18 Vim kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias, ib qho los sis ib yam yuav tsis poob ntawm txoj kev cai mus, tiam sis nyob hauv kuv tej ntawd tau muaj puv npo tag nrho.

19 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau muab txoj kev cai thiab tej lus txib ntawm kuv Leej Txiv rau nej, xwv kom nej yuav ntseeg kuv, thiab kom nej yuav hloov siab lees txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum, thiab los cuag kuv nrog ib lub siab mob thiab lub siab xav ua zoo. Saib seb, nej twb muaj tej lus txib nyob ntawm nej, thiab txoj kev cai tau muaj puv npo.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

- 20 Yog li ntawd cia li los cuag kuv thiab kom nej dim; vim kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias, tsuas yog nej yuav coj kuv tej lus txib, uas kuv tau txib nej nyob rau lub sij hawm no xwb, yog tsis li nej yuav tsis muaj kev nkag tau mus rau hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj.
- 21 Nej tau hnov tias nws tau raug hais los ntawm lawv txheej thaum ub, thiab nws kuj raug muab sau cia rau ntawm nej, kom nej tsis txhob tua neeg, thiab yog leej twg tua neeg ces yuav raug muaj teeb meem nyob ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev txiav txim.
- 22 Tiam sis kuv hais rau nej tias, tus uas npau taws nrog nws tus kwv tij ces yuav raug teeb meem nyob ntawm nws txoj kev txiav txim. Thiab yog leej twg hais rau nws tus kwv tij tias, niag Neeg Ruam, ces yuav raug teeb meem nyob ntawm rooj sab laj; thiab yog leej twg hais tias, niag Neeg Ruam, ces yuav raug teeb meem nyob hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej hluav taws.
- 23 Yog li ntawd, yog nej yuav los cuag kuv, los sis yuav xav los cuag kuv, thiab nco ntsoov tias nej tus kwv tij muaj tej yam tawm tsam nej—
- 24 Nej cia li mus lawm tom nej tus kwv tij, thiab xub sib raug zoo rau nej tus kwv tij tso, thiab tom qab ntawd cia li los cuag kuv muaj siab ntshis, thiab kuv yuav txais nej.
- 25 Yeem nrog nej tej yeeb ncuab sai thaum nej nrog nws mus ua ke, nyob tsam ib lub sij hawm twg nws yuav muab nej, thiab nej yuav raug muab pov rau hauv qhov taub.
- 26 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, nej yuav tawm tsis tau hauv los mus txog thaum nej tau them npib xinai nyiaj kawg. Thiab thaum nej tseem nyob hauv qhov taub nej puas yuav muaj ib xinai nyiaj them tau? Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, Tsis tau.
- 27 Saib seb, nws tau raug muab sau cia los ntawm lawv txheej thaum ub, tias nej yuav tsum tsis txhob deev luag poj luag txiv;
- 28 Tiam sis kuv hais rau nej, tias yog leej twg ntsia rau ib tug poj niam, xav tau nws, ces twb tau ua txhaum kev nkauj kev nraug nyob hauv nws siab lawm.
- 29 Saib seb, kuv muab rau nej ib txoj lus txib, kom nej tsis txhob cia ib yam txhaum ntawm tej yam no nkag rau hauv nej lub siab;

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

30 Vim nws twb zoo dua tias nej yuav tsum tsis txhob
cia nej tus kheej ua ib yam txhaum no, kom nej thiaj
yuav kwv nej tus ntoo khaub lig, zoo dua li uas nej
yuav raug muab pov rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.

31 Nws raug muab sau cia lawm, tias yog leej twg
yuav muab nws tus poj niam tso tseg, cia tus txiv
ntawd muab ib tsab ntawv sib nrauj rau nws.

32 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, yog leej twg yuav
muab nws tus poj niam tso tseg, tseg rau txoj kev
mus deev hluas nkauj hluas nraug, ces twb ua rau tus
poj niam ntawd deev luag poj luag txiv; thiab leej
twg uas yuav tus poj niam uas raug nrauj twb deev
luag poj luag txiv.

33 Thiab ntxiv tau sau tseg cia tias nej yuav tsum tsis
txhob lav nej tus kheej, tiam sis yuav tsum ua tawm
nej tej lus lav rau tus Tswv;

34 Tiam sis kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, tsis
txhob twv dab tsi hlo li; tsis txhob twv ntuj, vim nws
yog Vajtswv lub chaw zaum;

35 Tsis txhob twv teb, vim nws yog nws qhov chaw
tiag taw;

36 Thiab nej yuav tsum tsis txhob twv nej lub taub
hau, vim nej tsis muaj peev xwm ua kom ib txoj
plaub hau dub los sis dawb;

37 Tiam sis cia nej txoj kev sib hais sib teb lo Yog ces
yog, Tsis yog ces tsis yog; vim yam dab tsi uas ntau
dua li tej no ces yuav phem.

38 Thiab saib seb, nws raug sau cia tias, ib lub qhov
muag pauj ib lub qhov muag, thiab ib tug hniav pauj
ib tug hniav;

39 Tiam sis kuv hais rau nej, tias nej yuav tsum tsis
txhob yib kev phem, tiam sis yog leej twg ntaus nej
sab plhu xis, cia li tig lwm sab rau nws thiab;

40 Thiab yog ib tug neeg twg yuav coj nej mus nce
tsev hais plaub thiab txeeb nej lub tsho, cia li muab
nej lub tsho loj rau nws thiab;

41 Thiab yog leej twg yuam kom nej mus ib tawm
kev, cia li nrog nws mus ob tawm kev.

42 Muab rau nws tus uas thov nej, thiab ntawm tus
uas yuav qiv txais nej nej tsis txhob tig khiav mus.

43 Thiab saib seb nws kuj tau muab sau cia, tias nej
yuav tsum hlub nej tej neeg txheeb ze thiab ntxub
nej tej yeeb ncuab;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of
these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than
that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put
away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorce-
ment.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall
put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornica-
tion, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso
shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear
thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all;
neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because
thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay;
for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a
tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but
whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn
to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take
away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go
with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that
would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love
thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

44 Tiam sis saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, hlub nej tej yeeb ncuab, foom koob hmoov rau lawv cov uas foom tsis zoo rau nej, ua zoo rau lawv cov uas ntxub nej, thiab thov Vajtsv rau lawv cov uas siv tsis zoo rau nej thiab tsim txom nej;

45 Xwv kom nej yuav ua tau tej me nyuam ntawm nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej; vim nws ua kom nws lub hnuv tuaj rau cov neeg phem thiab rau cov neeg zoo.

46 Yog li ntawd tej yam uas yog txheej thaum ub, uas tau nyob rau hauv txoj kev cai, tau muaj puv npo tag nrho hauv kuv.

47 Tej yam qub twb tiav tag lawm, thiab txhua yam tau rais los mus tshiab.

48 Yog li ntawd kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum ua neeg zoo kawg nkaus ib yam li kuv, los sis nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej uas zoo kawg nkaus.

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

3 Nifais 13

- 1 Kuv hais tseeb tseeb tias, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum ua tej qhov zoo pab rau cov neeg pluag; tiam sis ceev faj kom nej tsis txhob ua tej qhov zoo rau neeg ntsia kom lawv pom; yog nej ua li ntawd nej yuav tsis tau nqi zog ntawm nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 2 Yog li ntawd, thaum nej yuav ua tej qhov zoo tsis txhob tshuab raj tshuab hom ua ntej nej, ib yam li cov neeg siab phem yuav ua nyob hauv tej tsev sab laj thiab nyob tom tej kev, xwv kom neeg yuav qhuas lawv. Kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, lawv twb tau lawv nqi zog lawm.
- 3 Tiam sis thaum nej ua tej qhov zoo tsis txhob cia nej sab tes laug paub yam uas nej sab tes xis ua;
- 4 Xwv kom nej tej qhov zoo yuav nyob hauv qhov ntsiag to; thiab nej Leej Txiv tus uas pom hauv qhov ntsiag to, nws tus kheej mam li yuav qhib lug muab nqi zog rau nej.
- 5 Thiab thaum nej thov Vajtswv nej tsis txhob ua li cov neeg siab phem ua, vim lawv nyiam thov Vajtswv sawv ntsug hauv tej tsev sab laj thiab nyob tom tej ces kaum kev, xwv kom tej neeg yuav pom lawv. Kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, lawv twb tau lawv nqi zog lawm.
- 6 Tiam sis nej, thaum nej thov Vajtswv, nkag mus rau hauv nej chav me tsev, thiab thaum nej tau kaw nej lub qhov rooj lawm, mam thov rau nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob hauv qhov ntsiag to; thiab nej Leej Txiv, tus uas pom tau hauv qhov ntsiag to, yuav qhib lug muab nqi zog rau nej.
- 7 Tiam sis thaum nej thov Vajtswv, tsis txhob hais mus hais los qhov qub, ib yam li cov neeg tsis paub Vajtswv ua, vim lawv xav tias lawv yuav raug hnov vim lawv txoj kev hais ntau.
- 8 Yog li ntawd nej tsis txhob zoo li lawv, vim nej Leej Txiv twb paub yam uas nej xav tau ua ntej nej thov nws lawm.
- 9 Yog li no nej yuav tsum thov Vajtswv zoo li no: Peb Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thov kom koj lub npe raug hwm dawb huv.
- 10 Thov kom yam koj siab xav yuav ua tiav nyob hauv ntiag teb ib yam li nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 11 Thiab thov zam txim rau peb tej kev tshuav nuj nqis, ib yam li peb zam txim rau cov uas tshuav peb nqi.

3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

12 Thiab tsis txhob coj peb mus rau kev ntseev
ntxias, tiam sis pab kom peb dim ntawm kev phem.

13 Vim lub nceeg vaj, thiab lub hwj chim, thiab lub
yeeb koob, yog koj li mus ib txhis. Amees.

14 Vim, yog nej zam txim rau neeg tej kev txhaum ces
nej Leej Txiv tus nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej yeej
yuav zam txim rau nej;

15 Tiam sis yog nej tsis zam txim rau neeg tej kev
txhaum ces nej Leej Txiv los yeej yuav tsis zam txim
rau nej thiab.

16 Ntxiv, thaum nej yoo mov tsis txhob ua li cov neeg
siab phem, es ua ntsej muag mluas mlob, vim lawv
ua kom lawv tej ntsej ntshaus mluas mlob xwv kom
neeg yuav pom tias lawv yoo mov. Kuv hais tseeb rau
nej tias, lawv twb tau lawv nqi zog lawm.

17 Tiam sis nej, thaum nej yoo mov, pleev roj rau tej
taub hau, thiab ntxuav nej tej ntsej muag;

18 Xwv kom neeg yuav tsis pom tias nej yoo mov,
tiam sis rau nej Leej Txiv, tus uas nyob hauv qhov
ntsiag to; thiab nej Leej Txiv, tus uas pom hauv qhov
ntsiag to, yuav qhib lug muab nqi zog rau nej.

19 Tsis txhob khaws tej nyiaj txiag cia rau nej tus
kheej rau hauv ntiaj teb no, qhov uas muaj npauj
thiab xeb yuav ua tau kom puas tsuaj, thiab tub sab
yuav tsoo tawg tau thiab tuaj nyiaj;

20 Tiam sis khaws tej nyiaj txiag cia rau nej tus kheej
rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, qhov uas tsis muaj npauj
thiab xeb ua kom puas tsuaj, thiab qhov uas tej tub
sab tsoo tsis tau tawg tuaj nyiaj.

21 Vim nej tej nyiaj txiag nyob qhov twg, nej lub siab
yeej yuav nyob qhov ntawd.

22 Qhov pom kev ntawm lub cev yog lub qhov muag;
yog li ntawd, yog nej lub qhov muag ua ib ke, tag
nrho nej lub cev yuav pom kev huv tib si.

23 Tiam sis yog nej lub qhov muag phem, tag nrho
nej lub cev yuav muaj kev tsaus ntuj puv nkaus. Yog
li ntawd, yog qhov pom kev uas nyob hauv nej yog
kev tsaus ntuj, ces qhov kev tsaus ntuj ntawd yuav loj
heev!

24 Tsis muaj ib tug neeg yuav ua tau hauj lwm rau ob
tug tswv; vim nws yeej yuav ntsub ib tug thiab nyiam
ib tug, los sis nws yeej yuav puab ib tug thiab tsis
quav ntsej ib tug. Nej yeej ua tsis tau hauj lwm rau
Vajtswv thiab Nyiaj Txiag.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us
from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the
glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heav-
enly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither
will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of
a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that
they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto
you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and
wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto
thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who
seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth,
where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break
through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven,
where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and
where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be
also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine
eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be
full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee
be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will
hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to
the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God
and Mammon.

- 25 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no tas nws tau ntsia kaum ob tug uas nws tau xaiv, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Nco ntsoov tej lus uas kuv tau hais lawm. Vim saib seb, nej yog lawv cov uas kuv tau xaiv los muab kev pab rau cov neeg no. Yog li ntawd kuv hais rau nej tias, tsis txhob xav txog nej lub neej, yam dab tsi uas nej yuav noj, los sis yam dab tsi uas nej yuav haus; los sis rau nej lub cev, yam dab tsi nej yuav hnav. Tsis yog txoj sia muaj nuj nqis dua nqajj thiab lub cev muaj nuj nqis dua tej khaub ncaws hnav los?
- 26 Saib seb tej noog uas nyob saum huab cua, lawv twb tsis cog qoob loos, thiab lawv twb tsis hlais los sis sau los rau hauv txhab; tiam sis nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej twb pub lawv noj. Nej tseem tsis muaj nuj nqis dua li lawv los?
- 27 Nej leej twg yog xav txog es yuav ntxiv tau ib nti kom nws siab me ntsis tuaj?
- 28 Thiab vim li cas nej pheed xav txog khaub ncaws? Xav rau tej paj deg tom tej liaj saib lawv tuaj li cas; lawv tsis ua hauv lwm, thiab lawv twb tsis ntos ntaub ntos xov;
- 29 Thiab tsis tas li kuv hais rau nej, tias txawm yog Xaulaumoos, nyob hauv tag nrho nws lub yeeb koob, los twb tsis tau hnav zoo nkauj li ib lub nyuag paj no.
- 30 Yog li ntawd, yog Vajtsv w twb ua kom tej nyom tom tej liaj zoo nkauj, uas hnuv no nyob, thiab tag kis raug pov rau hauv qhov cub, tib yam li ntawd nws yeej yuav muab ris tsho rau nej hnav, yog nej tsis txhob muaj kev ntseeg me me.
- 31 Yog li ntawd tsis txhob xav, hais tias, Peb yuav noj dab tsi? los sis, Peb yuav haus dab tsi? los sis, Peb yuav hnav dab tsi?
- 32 Vim nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej yeej paub tias nej yuav tsum muaj tag nrho txhua yam no.
- 33 Tiam sis nej yuav tsum xub nrhiav Vajtsv w lub nceeg vaj thiab nws txoj kev ncaj ncees tso, thiab tag nrho tej yam no yeej yuav raug muab ntxiv rau nej.
- 34 Yog li ntawd tsis txhob xav txog tag kis, vim tag kis muaj kev xav txaus tau nws tus kheej lawm. Txhua hnuv twg yeej muaj kev phem txaus nyob hauv lawm.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

3 Nifais 14

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas nws tau rov qab tig mus rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab tau rov qab qhib nws lub qhov ncauj rau lawv dua, hais tias: Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, tsis txhob txiav txim rau lwm tus, es nej thiaj yuav tsis raug txiav txim.
- 2 Vim kev txiav txim dab tsi uas nej txiav rau lwm tus, nej yeej yuav raug txiav thiab; thiab nej ntsuas npaum li cas rau lwm tus, yeej yuav raug ntsuas npaum li ntawd rov rau nej thiab.
- 3 Thiab vim li cas nej pheej pom qhov hmoov ntoo uas nyob hauv nej tus kwv tij lub qhov muag, tiam sis ho tsis xav txog yav niag tog ntoo uas nyob hauv nej tus kheej lub qhov muag?
- 4 Los sis nej yuav muaj peev xwm li cas hais rau nej tus kwv tij tias: Cia kuv mam muab qhov hmoov ntoo tawm hauv koj qhov muag—thiab saib seb, ib yav niag tog ntoo twb nyob hauv nej lub qhov muag ne?
- 5 Nej cov niag neeg siab phem es, xub muab yav tog ntoo tawm hauv nej lub qhov muag tso; thiab tom qab ntawd nej thiaj li yuav pom kev tseeb muab qhov hmoov ntoo tawm hauv nej tus kwv tij lub qhov muag.
- 6 Tsis txhob muab tej yam uas dawb huv rau tej dev, thiab tsis txhob pov nej tej hlaws rau ntawm npua hauv ntej, ntshai tsam lawv yuav muab tej ntawd tsuj rau hauv lawv qab xib taws, thiab tig rov los thiab tom nej.
- 7 Thov, thiab nws yuav raug muab rau nej; nrhiav, thiab nej yuav ntsib; khob, thiab nws yeej yuav raug qhib rau nej.
- 8 Vim txhua tus uas thov, twb tau txais; thiab tus uas nrhiav, twb ntsib; thiab rau tus uas khob, nws yeej yuav raug qhib.
- 9 Los sis puas muaj ib tug neeg uas nyob hauv nej uas yog nws tus tub thov mov, nws puas yuav muab pob zeb rau?
- 10 Los sis yog nws thov ib tug ntses, nws puas yuav muab ib tug nab rau nws?
- 11 Yog tias nej, cov uas phem, twb paub muab yam khoom zoo rau nej tej me nyuam, ces nej Leej Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej haj yam yuav muab ntau dua tej yam uas zoo rau lawv cov uas thov nws?

3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

12 Yog li ntawd, tag nrho txhua yam uas nej xav kom lwm tus ua rau nej, nej yuav tsum ua tib yam li ntawd rau lawv thiab, vim qhov no yog txoj kev cai thiab cov yaj saub.

13 Nej yuav tsum mus lub qhov rooj nqaim; vim lub qhov rooj loj, thiab txoj kev dav, yog qhov uas coj mus rau txoj kev puas tsuaj, thiab muaj coob leej cov uas mus rau qhov ntawd;

14 Vim lub qhov rooj nqaim, thiab txoj kev ti, yog qhov uas yuav coj mus rau txoj sia, thiab muaj tsawg tus thiaj li nrhiav tau nws.

15 Ceev faj txog tej yaj saub cuav, uas los rau nej uas muaj tawv yaj tuaj sab nraud, tiam sis nyob sab hauv lawv yog cov hma tshaib plab.

16 Nej yuav paub lawv los ntawm lawv tej txiv. Puas yuav muaj neeg sau tej txiv hmab los ntawm tej pos tshauv los sis tej txiv cev los ntawm tej pos nphuab.

17 Ib yam li ntawd txhua tsob ntoo zoo yeej txi tej txiv zoo; tiam sis tsob ntoo uas liam lawm yeej txiv tau tej txiv phem.

18 Tsob ntoo zoo yeej txi tsis tau tej txiv phem, thiab tsob ntoo uas liam lawm yeej txi tsis tau tej txiv zoo.

19 Txhua tsob ntoo uas tsis txi txiv zoo yeej yuav raug muab ntov, thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub.

20 Yog li ntawd, los ntawm lawv tej txiv nej yeej yuav paub lawv.

21 Tsis yog txhua tus uas hais rau kuv tias, tus Tswv, tus Tswv, es yuav tau nkag mus rau hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej lub nceeg vaj; tiam sis tsuas yog tus uas ua li kuv Txiv tus uas nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lub siab nyiam xwb.

22 Ntau tus yuav hais rau kuv nyob rau hnuv ntawd tias: Tus Tswv, tus Tswv, peb tsis tau qhia tseg ua ntej lawm nyob ntawm koj lub npe los, thiab nyob ntawm koj lub npe tau ntiab tej dab tawm, thiab nyob ntawm koj lub npe tau ua ntau yam hauj lwm zoo heev los?

23 Thiab thaum ntawd kuv yuav hais meej rau lawv tias: Kuv yeej ib txwm tsis paub nej; ncaim ntawm kuv mus, nej cov uas ua hauj lwm tsis ncaj.

24 Yog li ntawd, tus uas hnov kuv tej lus hais no thiab ua li lawv, kuv yuav muab nws piv rau ib tug neeg muaj tswv yim, uas tau ua nws lub tsev rau saum ib lub pob zeb.

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

25 Thiab thaum nag los, thiab tej dej los nyab, thiab tej cua tshuab, thiab nplawm rau lub tsev ntawd; thiab nws tsis vau, vim nws tau cog rau saum lub pob zeb.

26 Thiab txhua tus ua hnov kuv tej lus hais no thiab tsis ua lawv yuav muab piv rau ib tug neeg tsis muaj tswv yim, uas ua nws lub tsev rau saum tej xuab zeb—

27 Thiab thaum nag tau los, thiab dej los nyab, thiab tej cua tau tshuab, thiab nplawm rau lub tsev ntawd; thiab nws txawm vau hlo, thiab nws txoj kev vau loj kawg.

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

3 Nifais 15

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau xaus cov lus hais no tas nws tau tsa nws qhov muag ib puag ncig rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, nej tau hnov tej yam uas kuv tau qhia ua ntej kuv nce mus cuag kuv Txiv; yog li ntawd, tus uas nco qab kuv tej lus hais no thiab ua li lawv, kuv yuav tsa tus ntawd sawv nyob rau thaum hnuv kawg.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no tas nws tau paub tias tau muaj ib txhia neeg nyob hauv lawv uas tau xav tsis thooob, thiab xav tias nws hais yam dab tsi ntsig txog Mauxes txoj kev cai; vim lawv tsis to taub qhov hais tias tej yam qub tau dua mus, thiab tias tag nrho txhua yam tau rais los mus ua tshiab.
- 3 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Tsis txhob poob siab tias kuv tau hais rau nej tias tej yam qub tau dua mus, thiab tias tag nrho txhua yam tau rais los mus ua tshiab.
- 4 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias txoj kev cai raug muaj puv npo lawm uas tau muab rau Mauxes.
- 5 Saib seb, kuv yog tus uas tau muab txoj kev cai, thiab kuv yog tus uas tau khi lus nrog kuv cov neeg Ixayees; yog li ntawd, txoj kev cai nyob hauv kuv raug muaj puv npo lawm, vim kuv tau los kom txoj kev cai muaj puv npo; yog li ntawd nws thiaj muaj ib qho xaus.
- 6 Saib seb, kuv tsis rhuav kom tej yaj saub puas tsuaj, vim ntau npaum li ntau tau uas tseem tsis tau muaj puv npo nyob hauv kuv, kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, tag nrho yuav muaj kom puv npo.
- 7 Thiab vim kuv tau hais rau nej tias tej yam qub tau dua mus, kuv tsis tau ua kom puas tsuaj tej uas tau hais txog tej yam uas tseem yuav muaj los.
- 8 Vim saib seb, tej kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi nrog kuv cov neeg tseem tsis tau muaj puv npo tag nrho; tiam sis txoj kev cai uas tau muab rau Mauxes tau muaj qhov xaus nyob hauv kuv.
- 9 Saib seb, kuv yog txoj kev cai, thiab qhov kaj. Ntsia rau kuv, thiab tiv mus kom txog thaum kawg, thiab nej yuav muaj txoj sia; vim rau tus uas tiv mus kom txog thaum kawg kuv yuav muab txoj siab nyob mus ib txhis rau.

3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

10 Saib seb, kuv tau muab tej kev cai rau nej; yog li ntawd koj kuv tej lus txib. Thiab qhov no yog txoj kev cai thiab tej yaj saub, vim lawv yeej tau ua tim khawv tseeb txog kuv.

11 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no tas, nws tau hais rau kaum ob leeg uas nws tau xaiv tias:

12 Nej yog kuv cov pab koj; thiab nej yog ib lub teeb rau cov neeg no, cov uas yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej tsev neeg.

13 Thiab saib seb, qhov no yog thaj av ntawm nej qub txeeg qub teg; thiab Leej Txiv tau muab nws rau nej.

14 Thiab tsis tau muaj ib lub sij hawm uas Leej Txiv tau muab lus txib rau kuv kom kuv yuav tsum qhia nws rau nej cov kwv tij uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees.

15 Thiab tsis tau muaj ib lub sij hawm uas Leej Txiv tau muab lus txib rau kuv kom kuv yuav tsum qhia rau lawv txog lwm pab neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees, uas Leej Txiv tau koj khiav tawm ntawm thaj av.

16 Leej Txiv tau txib kuv npaum li no, kom kuv yuav tsum qhia rau lawv:

17 Tias lwm cov yaj kuv muaj uas tsis yog nyob hauv pab no; kuv kuj yuav tsum mus koj lawv los thiab, thiab lawv yuav hnov kuv lub suab; thiab tsuas yuav muaj ib pab, thiab ib tug tswv yug yaj.

18 Thiab nim no, vim yog txoj kev tawv ncauj thiab txoj kev tsis ntseeg lawv thiaj tsis to taub kuv tej lus; yog li ntawd kuv tau raug txib kom tsis txhob hais ntxiv los ntawm Leej Txiv txog tej yam no rau lawv lawm.

19 Tiam sis, kuv hais tseeb, rau nej tias Leej Txiv tau txib kuv, thiab kuv qhia nws rau nej, tias nej tau raug faib ncaim ntawm lawv los vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj; yog li ntawd nws vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj uas lawv thiaj tsis paub txog nej.

20 Thiab kuv hais tseeb rau nej dua, tias lawv lwm xeem los Leej Txiv tau muab faib ncaim ntawm lawv mus; thiab nws vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj uas lawv thiaj tsis paub lawv cov no.

21 Thiab kuv hais tseeb rau nej, tias nej yog lawv cov uas kuv tau hais tias: Lwm cov yaj kuv muaj uas tsis nyob hauv pab no; kuv kuj yuav tsum koj lawv los thiab, thiab lawv yuav hnov kuv lub suab; thiab tsuas yuav muaj ib pab, thiab ib tug tswv yug yaj.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

22 Thiab lawv tsis to taub kuv, vim lawv tau xav tias ntshe nws yog Lwm Haiv Neeg; vim lawv tsis to taub tias Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tsum raug hloov siab tshiab dhau los ntawm lawv txoj kev qhuab qhia.

23 Thiab lawv tsis to taub kuv qhov kuv tau hais tias lawv yuav hnov kuv lub suab; thiab lawv tsis to taub kuv tias Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tsis hnov kuv lub suab thaum twg los tau—kom kuv txhob ua kuv tus kheej rau lawv pom tsuas yog los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv xwb.

24 Tiam sis saib seb, nej puav leej tau hnov kuv lub suab, thiab tau pom kuv; thiab nej yog kuv cov yaj, thiab nej twb raug suav nrog cov uas Leej Txiv tau muab rau kuv lawm.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

3 Nifais 16

- 1 Thiab kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, kuv muaj lwm cov yaj, uas tsis nyob hauv thaj av no, thiab kuj tsis nyob hauv thaj av Yeluxalees, thiab kuj tsis nyob hauv tej feem av uas nyob ib puag ncig ntawd uas kuv tau mus muab kev pab.
- 2 Vim lawv cov uas kuv hais txog yog lawv cov uas tseem tsis tau hnov kuv lub suab; thiab kuv kuj tsis tau ua kuv tus kheej rau lawv pom ib lub sij hawm twg li.
- 3 Tiam sis kuv tau txais ib lo lus txib los ntawm Leej Txiv tias kuv yuav tsum mus rau lawv, thiab xwv kom lawv yuav hnov kuv lub suab, thiab yuav raug suav nrog kuv cov yaj, xwv kom yuav muaj ib pab thiab ib tug tswv yug yaj; yog li ntawd kuv mus ua kuv tus kheej rau lawv pom.
- 4 Thiab kuv txib nej tias nej yuav tsum sau tej lus hais no tom qab uas kuv tau mus lawm, xwv kom yog tias kuv cov neeg nyob hauv Yeluxalees, lawv cov uas tau pom kuv thiab tau nrog kuv nyob hauv kuv txoj kev ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, tsis thov Leej Txiv nyob hauv kuv lub npe, kom lawv yuav tau txais ib txoj kev paub txog nej los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab txog lwm xeeb neeg uas lawv paub tsis txog, kom tej lus hais no uas nej yuav sau kom yuav raug ceev thiab yuav raug ua rau Lwm Haiv Neeg pom, kom dhau los ntawm txoj kev cai muaj puv npo ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, cov neeg seem ntawm lawv tej noob, uas tau raug khiav tawg ri niab mus rau saum lub ntiaj teb vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg, yuav raug coj los rau hauv, los sis yuav raug coj los paub txog kuv, lawv tus Txhiv Dim.
- 5 Thiab tom qab ntawd kuv yuav sau lawv ntawm plaub ceg kaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb los ua ke; thiab tom qab ntawd kuv yuav ua kom muaj puv npo cov kev khi lus uas Leej Txiv tau khi rau tag nrho cov neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 6 Thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg tau koob hmoov, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg kuv, nyob hauv thiab los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas ua tim khawv rau lawv txog kuv thiab txog Leej Txiv.

3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

7 Saib seb, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg kuv, Leej Txiv hais tias, thiab vim yog txoj kev tsis ntseeg ntawm nej, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, nyob hauv hnub nyoog kawg qhov tseeb yuav los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, xwv kom txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm tej yam no yuav raug ua paub rau lawv.

8 Tiam sis kev txom nyem, Leej Txiv hais tias, yuav raug rau cov uas tsis ntseeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg—vim txawm tias lawv tau tuaj txog rau saum thaj av no, thiab tau ua tawg ri niab rau kuv cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab kuv cov neeg uas yog cov ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees tau raug ntiab tawm ncaim ntawm lawv, thiab tau raug lawv tsuj hauv qab xib taws;

9 Thiab vim yog tej kev hluv tshua ntawm Leej Txiv rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab tej kev txiav txim ntawm Leej Txiv uas nyob saum kuv cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias tom qab ib puas yam tsav no, thiab kuv tau ua kom kuv cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees raug ntaus, thiab raug txom nyem, thiab raug tua, thiab raug ntiab tawm ncaim ntawm lawv, thiab rais los mus raug lawv ntxub, thiab rais los mus ua lub suab ntxub thiab paj lug phem nyob hauv lawv—

10 Thiab Leej Txiv tau txib li no tias kuv yuav tsum hais rau nej: Nyob rau hnub ntawd thaum uas Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav ua txhaum rau kuv txoj moo zoo, thiab yuav tsis kam txais yuav txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo, thiab lawv tej siab yuav khav theeb tshaj tag nrho tej haiv neeg, thiab tshaj tag nrho tej neeg ntawm lub ntiaj teb huv si, thiab yuav muaj puv npo nrog txhua yam kev dag, thiab tej kev ntxias, thiab tej kev ua tsis zoo, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev ua siab phem, thiab tej kev tua neeg, thiab tej ua dab, thiab tej kev sib daj sib deev, thiab tej kev qias ntsiag to; thiab yog lawv yuav ua tag nrho tej yam ntawd, thiab yuav tsis kam txais yuav txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo, saib seb, Leej Txiv hais tias, kuv yuav tshem txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo ntawm lawv mus.

11 Thiab tom qab ntawd kuv yuav nco txog kuv txoj kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi rau kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, thiab kuv yuav coj kuv txoj moo zoo los rau lawv.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

- 12 Thiab kuv yuav ua rau nej pom, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, kom Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tsis muaj hwj chim rau saum nej; tiam sis kuv yuav nco ntsoov kuv txoj kev khi lus rau nej, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es, thiab nej yuav los paub txog txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo.
- 13 Tiam sis Leej Txiv hais tias, yog Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov qab los cuag kuv, saib seb lawv yuav raug suav nrog kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es.
- 14 Thiab kuv yuav tsis cia kuv cov neeg, uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, mus dhau rau hauv lawv, thiab muab lawv tsuj, Leej Txiv hais li.
- 15 Tiam sis yog lawv yuav tsis tig los cuag kuv, thiab mloog rau kuv lub suab, kuv yuav cia lawv, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav cia kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees, kom lawv yuav mus dhau rau hauv lawv, thiab yuav muab lawv tsuj, thiab lawv yuav zoo ib yam li tej ntsev uas tau tsuag lawm, uas tom qab ntawd tsis zoo rau dab tsi lawm tsuas yog yuav muab pov tseg xwb, thiab kom raug muab tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws ntawm kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 16 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb, Leej Txiv tau txib kuv li no—kom kuv yuav muab thaj av no rau cov neeg no ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg.
- 17 Thiab tom qab ntawd tej lus ntawm tus yaj saub Yaxayas yuav muaj puv npo, uas hais tias:
- 18 Koj tej neeg zov xyuas yuav tsa lawv tej suab; lawv yuav hu nkauj nrog tej suab ua ke; vim lawv yuav pom qhov muag rau qhov muag thaum tus Tswv yuav coj Xi-oos rov qab los.
- 19 Cia li tawg plho los rau hauv txoj kev xyiv fab; cia li hu nkauj ua ke, nej tej chaw uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm Yeluxalees; vim tus Tswv tau nplij nws cov neeg, nws tau txhiv Yeluxalees;
- 20 Tus Tswv tau ua nws lub hwj chim dawb huv rau ntawm txhua haiv neeg lub qhov muag, thiab tag nrho hauv qab ntuj kawg yuav pom Vajtsv txoj kev cawm seeg.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

3 Nifais 17

- 1 Saib seb, nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas lawm nws tau rov ntsia ib puag ncig rau cov neeg coob coob dua, thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib saib, kuv lub sij hawm los txog lawm.
- 2 Kuv pom tau tias nej qaug zog, tias nej tsis muaj peev xwm to taub tag nrho kuv tej lus uas Leej Txiv tau txib kuv hais rau nej nyob rau lub sij hawm no.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, nej cia li mus rau hauv nej tej tsev, thiab ua tib zoo xav txog tej yam uas kuv tau hais lawm, thiab thov Leej Txiv, los ntawm kuv lub npe, xwv kom nej yuav to taub, thiab npaj nej tej siab rau tag kis, thiab kuv yuav rov los cuag nej dua.
- 4 Tiam sis nim no kuv mus cuag Leej Txiv, thiab kuj yuav mus ua kuv tus kheej rau tej xeem neeg ntawm Ixayees uas ploj lawm pom, vim lawv tsis raug ploj rau Leej Txiv, vim nws yeej paub qhov uas nws tau coj lawv mus lawm.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais li no tas lawm, nws tau rov tsa nws lub qhov muag ntsia ib puag ncig rau saum cov neeg coob coob dua, thiab tau pom tias lawv tau quaj, thiab tau ntsia ntsoov rau nws zoo li lawv xav thov kom nws nrog lawv nyob ib nyuag ntev me ntsis.
- 6 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv lub siab muaj kev hmov tshua puv npo rau nej.
- 7 Nej puas muaj tej neeg mob nyob hauv nej? Coj lawv los ntawm no. Nej puas muaj tej neeg ceg tawv, los sis dig muag, los sis tej neeg khoov duav, los sis tej neeg tu ceg tu npab, los sis tej neeg mob ruas, los sis tej uas qhuav tes qhuav taw, los sis tej uas lag ntseg, los sis tej uas raug txom nyem ib yam dab tsi? Coj lawv los ntawm no thiab kuv yuav kho kom lawv zoo, vim kuv muaj kev hmov tshua rau nej; kuv lub siab muaj kev hlub tshua puv npo.
- 8 Vim kuv pom tau tias nej xav kom kuv ua rau nej pom tej yam uas kuv tau ua rau nej cov kwv tij nyob tim Yeluxalees lawm, vim kuv pom tias nej txoj kev ntseeg muaj txaus kom kuv yuav kho kom nej zoo.

3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau hais li no tas lawm, tag nrho cov neeg coob coob, ua ib ke, tau coj lawv tej neeg muaj mob mus thiab lawv tej neeg raug txom nyem, thiab lawv tej neeg ceg tawv, thiab nrog lawv tej neeg dig muag, thiab nrog lawv tej neeg hais tsis tau lus, thiab nrog tag nrho lawv tej neeg uas raug txom nyem txhua yam; thiab nws tau kho lawv zoo txhua tus thaum uas lawv tau raug coj tuaj cuag nws.
- 10 Thiab lawv tag nrho, tsis hais cov uas tau raug kho zoo thiab lawv cov uas tsis muaj mob, tau khoov rau hauv nws ko taw, thiab tau teev tiam nws; thiab txhua tus uas tau tawm ntawm cov neeg coob coob los tau nwj nws txhais ko taw, kawg tias lawv tau ntxuav nws txhais ko taw nrog lawv tej kua muag.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txib kom lawv yuav tsum coj lawv tej me nyuam yaus tuaj.
- 12 Yog li ntawd lawv tau coj lawv tej me nyuam yaus tuaj thiab tau muab lawv tso rau hauv av ncig nws, thiab Yexus tau sawv ntsug hauv nruab nrab; thiab cov neeg coob coob tau cia kev kom lawv raug coj los cuag nws.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau raug coj tag nrho tuaj lawm, thiab Yexus tau sawv ntsug hauv nruab nrab, nws tau txib cov neeg coob coob kom lawv yuav tsum txhos caug rau hauv av.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau txhos caug rau hauv av lawm, Yexus tau nyuaj siab nyob hauv nws, thiab tau hais tias: Leej Txiv, kuv muaj kev nyuaj siab vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 15 Thiab thaum nws tau hais cov lus no tas, nws tus kheej los kuj tau txhos caug rau hauv av thiab; thiab saib seb nws tau thov rau Leej Txiv, thiab tej yam uas nws tau thov tsis muaj peev xwm muab sau tau cia, thiab cov neeg coob coob uas tau hnov nws tau ua tim khawv.
- 16 Thiab lawv tau ua tim khawv raws li nram no: Lub qhov muag yeej ib txwm tsis tau pom, thiab lub pob ntseg los ib txwm tsis tau hnov, yav tas los, tej yam loj thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob ib yam li pib tau pom thiab tau hnov Yexus hais rau Leej Txiv;

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

17 Thiab tsis muaj ib tug nplaig uas txawj hais, thiab yuav muaj peev xwm muab sau tseg cia los ntawm ib tug neeg, thiab neeg tej siab los tsis muaj peev xwm to taub txog tej yam loj thiab zoo kawg xav tsis thoob ib yam li peb tau pom thiab tau hnov Yexus hais; thiab tsis muaj ib tug uas yuav to taub txog txoj kev xyiv fab uas tau muaj puv npo rau peb tej ntsuj plig nyob rau lub sij hawm uas peb tau hnov nws thov Leej Txiv rau peb.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau thov Leej Txiv tas, nws tau sawv; tiam sis vim txoj kev uas xyiv fab kawg nkaus li ntawm cov neeg coob coob ces lawv thiaj raug hwj chim qaug zog.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias Yexus tau hais rau lawv, thiab hais kom lawv sawv.

20 Thiab lawv tau sawv hauv av los, thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej tau koob hmoov vim yog nej txoj kev ntseeg. Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab muaj puv npo lawm.

21 Thiab thaum nws tau hais cov lus no tas, nws tau quaj, thiab cov neeg coob coob tau ua tim khawv txog nws, thiab nws tau muab lawv tej me nyuam yaus, ib tug dhau ib tug, thiab tau foom koob hmoov rau lawv, thiab tau thov Leej Txiv rau lawv.

22 Thiab thaum nws tau ua li no tas lawm nws tau rov quaj dua;

23 Thiab nws tau hais rau cov neeg coob, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb nej tej me nyuam yaus.

24 Thiab thaum lawv tau ntsia kom pom lawv tau ntsia lawv tej qhov muag mus rau saum ntuj, thiab lawv tau pom rooj ntug qhib, thiab lawv tau pom tej tim tswv tau nqis tawm saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los zoo ib yam li nyob hauv plawv hluav taws; thiab lawv tau nqis los thiab tau vij ib puag ncig cov me nyuam ntawd, thiab lawv tau raug hluav taws vij ib puag ncig; thiab tej tim tswv tau muab kev pab rau lawv.

25 Thiab cov neeg coob coob tau pom thiab tau hnov thiab tau ua tim khawv; thiab lawv paub tias lawv tej lus tim khawv yeej muaj tseeb vim lawv txhua tus yeej tau pom thiab tau hnov, txhua tus yeej pom rau nws tus kheej; thiab lawv tau muaj kwv yees ncuu li ob txhiab thiab tsib puas leej; thiab lawv tau muaj txiv neej, poj niam, thiab me nyuam yaus.

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

3 Nifais 18

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Yexus tau txib nws cov pab coj kom lawv coj ib co mov mog thiab cawv txiv hmab los rau nws.
- 2 Thiab thaum lawv tseem mus nqa mov mog thiab kua txiv hmab, nws tau txib cov neeg coob coob kom lawv zaum rau hauv av.
- 3 Thiab thaum cov pab coj nqa tau mov mog thiab cawv txiv hmab los, nws tau muab cov mov mog thiab tau muab ntais thiab foom koob hmoov rau nws; thiab nws tau muab rau cov pab coj thiab tau kom lawv noj.
- 4 Thiab thaum lawv tau noj tas thiab tau tsau, nws tau txib kom lawv yuav muab rau cov neeg coob coob.
- 5 Thiab thaum cov neeg coob coob tau noj tas lawm thiab tau tsau, nws tau hais rau cov pab coj tias: Saib seb yuav tsum muaj ib tug raug tsa nyob hauv nej, thiab rau nws kuv yuav muab hwj chim xwv kom nws yuav ntais tau mov mog thiab foom koob hmoov rau nws thiab muab nws rau cov neeg ntawm kuv lub koom txoos, rau tag nrho cov uas yuav ntseeg thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe.
- 6 Thiab nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov coj ua li no, tib yam li kuv tau ua lawm, tib yam li kuv tau ntais mov mog thiab tau foom koob hmoov rau nws thiab muab nws rau nej.
- 7 Thiab qhov no nej yuav tsum ua rau txoj kev nco txog kuv lub cev, uas kuv tau muab rau nej saib. Thiab nws yuav ua ib qho tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nej yeej nco ntsoov txog kuv. Thiab yog nej nco ntsoov txog kuv nej yuav muaj kuv tus Ntsuj Plig nrog nej nyob.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws tau hais cov lus no tas, nws tau txib nws cov pab coj kom lawv yuav muab cov cawv txiv hmab nyob hauv khob thiab haus nws, thiab kom lawv yuav tsum muab rau cov neeg coob coob thiab kom lawv yuav haus nws.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ua li ntawd, thiab tau muab nws haus thiab tau tsau; thiab lawv tau muab rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab lawv tau haus, thiab lawv tau tsau.

3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

10 Thiab thaum cov pab coj tau ua li no tas, Yexus tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej tau koob hmoov rau yam no uas nej tau ua lawm, vim qhov no tau ua rau kuv tej lus txib muaj puv npo, thiab qhov no yeej ua tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nej yeej kam ua li tej uas kuv tau txib nej.

11 Thiab qhov no nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov ua rau cov uas hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe; thiab nej yuav ua nws rau txoj kev nco txog kuv cov ntshav, uas kuv tau cia nrog rau nej, xwv kom nej yuav ua tim khawv rau Leej Txiv tias nej yeej nco ntsoov txog kuv. Thiab yog nej nco ntsoov txog kuv nej yuav muaj kuv tus Ntsuj Plig nrog nej nyob.

12 Thiab kuv muab rau nej ib txoj lus txib tias nej yuav tsum ua tej yam no. Thiab yog nej yuav nco ntsoov ua tej yam no nej yuav tau koob hmoov, vim nej raug tsa nyob rau saum kuv lub pob zeb.

13 Tiam sis leej twg nyob hauv nej uas ua ntau dua los sis ho tsawg dua li tej yam no tsis tau raug tsa rau saum kuv lub pob zeb, tiam sis raug tsa rau saum tej xuab zeb; thiab thaum nag los, thiab dej nyab los, thiab tej cua tshuab, thiab nplawm rau saum lawv, lawv yuav vau, thiab tej rooj vag ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus yeej qhib lug tos txais lawv.

14 Yog li ntawd nej yuav tau koob hmoov yog nej yuav coj kuv tej lus txib, uas Leej Txiv tau txib kuv tias kuv yuav tsum muab rau nej.

15 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, nej yuav tsum saib xyuas thiab thov Vajtsvw tas mus li, nyob tsam nej yuav raug tus dab ntxias, thiab nej yuav raug nws coj mus txhom khi.

16 Thiab tib yam li kuv tau thov Vajtsvw nyob hauv nej tib yam li ntawd nej yuav tau thov Vajtsvw nyob hauv kuv lub koom txoos, nyob hauv kuv cov neeg uas kam hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe. Saib seb kuv yog qhov kaj; kuv tau ua ib tug yam ntxwv rau nej.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no rau nws cov pab coj tas, nws tau rov tig mus rau cov neeg coob coob thiab tau hais rau lawv tias:

18 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, nej yuav tsum saib xyuas thiab thov Vajtsvw tas mus li nyob tsam nej yuav nkag tau mus rau hauv txoj kev dag ntxias; vim Dab Ntxwv Nyoog xav tau nej, kom nws yuav tau tshau nej poob ib yam li tej nplej.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

- 19 Yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe tas mus li;
- 20 Thiab txawm yog dab tsi uas nej yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe, uas yog qhov yog, cia siab ntsoov tias nej yuav tau txais, saib seb nws yeej yuav raug muab rau nej.
- 21 Thov rau Leej Txiv nyob hauv nej tej tsev neeg tas mus li los ntawm kuv lub npe, xwv kom nej tej poj niam thiab nej tej me nyuam yuav tau koob hmoov.
- 22 Thiab saib seb, nej yuav tsum nquag nquag tuaj sib ntsib ua ke; thiab nej tsis txhob txwv ib tug neeg twg uas tuaj rau hauv nej thaum nej yuav sib ntsib ua ke, tiam sis cia lawv kom lawv yuav tuaj rau hauv nej thiab tsis txhob txwv lawv.
- 23 Tiam sis nej yuav tsum thov Vajtswv rau lawv, thiab tsis txhob ntiab lawv tawm; thiab yog tias lawv nquag nquag tuaj cuag nej nej yuav tsum thov Leej Txiv rau lawv, los ntawm kuv lub npe.
- 24 Yog li ntawd, tsa nej lub teeb kom nws yuav ci rau lub ntiaj teb. Saib seb kuv yog lub teeb uas nej yuav tsum tsa—tej uas nej tau pom kuv ua lawm. Saib seb nej pom tias kuv tau thov Leej Txiv, thiab nej tag nrho tau ua tim khawv.
- 25 Thiab nej pom tias kuv tau txib tias kom txhob cia ib tug twg ntawm nej khiav mus, tiam sis tau txib kom nej los cuag kuv, xwv kom nej yuav tau xuas thiab pom; tib yam li ntawd nej yuav tau ua rau lub ntiaj teb; thiab tus uas tsis ua li lo lus txib no cia nws tus kheej raug coj mus rau txoj kev dag ntxias.
- 26 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais cov lus no tas, nws tau rov qab tig nws lub qhov muag dua rau cov pab coj uas nws tau xaiv, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias:
- 27 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, kuv muab dua ib txoj lus txib rau nej, thiab tom qab ntawd kuv yuav tsum mus cuag kuv Leej Txiv kom kuv yuav ua tiav lwm cov lus txib uas nws tau muab rau kuv.
- 28 Thiab nim no saib seb, qhov no yog txoj lus txib uas kuv muab rau nej, kom nej yuav tsum tsis txhob cia ib tug twg uas paub ntsoov tias tsis dawb huv noj kuv lub cev thiab haus cov ntshav, thaum nej yuav foom koob hmoov thiab muab;

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

29 Vim tus uas noj thiab haus kuv lub cev thiab cov ntshav nrog kev tsis dawb huv noj thiab haus kev raug txim rau nws tus kheej; yog li ntawd yog nej paub tias ib tug neeg twg tsis tsim nyog noj thiab haus kuv lub cev thiab cov ntshav nej yuav tsum txwv nws.

30 Txawm li ntawd los, nej tsis txhob muab nws ntiab tawm ntawm nej cov mus, tiam sis nej yuav tsum pab qhia rau nws thiab yuav thov Leej Txiv rau nws, los ntawm kuv lub npe; thiab yog tias nws yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, ces nej yuav tsum txais nws, thiab yuav cia nws noj thiab haus kuv lub cev thiab cov ntshav.

31 Tiam sis yog nws tsis kam hloov siab lees txim nws yuav tsum tias raug suav nyob hauv kuv cov neeg, xwv kom nws thiaj yuav tsis tau rhuav kom kuv cov neeg puas tsuaj, vim saib seb kuv yeej paub kuv cov yaj, thiab lawv twb raug muab suav.

32 Txawm li ntawd los, nej tsis txhob ntiab nws tawm ntawm nej tej tsev sab laj, los sis nej tej chaw teev tiam, vim rau cov zoo li ntawd nej yuav tau pab thiab qhia tsis tu ncuaj; vim nej tsis paub tiam sis muaj ib hnuv lawv yuav tig rov qab thiab hloov siab lees txim, thiab los cuag kuv nrog lub siab puv npo, thiab kuv yuav kho kom lawv zoo; thiab nej yuav yog tej cuab yeej ntawm txoj kev coj txoj kev cawm seeg los rau lawv.

33 Yog li ntawd, cia li coj tej lus hais uas kuv tau txib nej no xwv kom nej thiaj li yuav tsis los raug txoj kev raug txim; vim kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas Leej Txiv rau txim rau.

34 Thiab kuv muab rau nej tej lus txib no vim yog tej kev sib cav sib ceg uas tau muaj nyob hauv nej. Thiab nej yuav tau koob hmoov yog tias nej tsis muaj kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv nej.

35 Thiab nim no kuv mus cuag Leej Txiv, vim nws tsim nyog tias kuv yuav tsum mus cuag Leej Txiv rau txoj kev pab nej.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau xaus cov lus hais no tas, nws tau xuas nws txhais tes tuav cov pab coj uas nws tau xaiv, ib tug dhau ib tug, mus txog thaum nws tau tuav lawv tag nrho, thiab tau hais lus rau lawv thaum nws tseem tuav lawv.

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

37 Thiab cov neeg coob coob tsis tau hnov tej lus uas nws tau hais, yog li ntawd lawv tsis tau ua tim khawv; tiam sis cov pab coj tau ua tim khawv tias nws tau muab hwj chim rau lawv mus muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv. Thiab kuv yuav qhia rau nej tom qab no tias cov lus tim khawv no muaj tseeb tiag.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau tuav lawv tag nrho lawm, tau muaj ib tau huab los thiab tau roos cov neeg coob coob kom lawv tsis pom Yexus.

39 Thiab thaum lawv tau raug roos nws tau ncaim ntawm lawv, thiab tau nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej. Thiab cov pab coj tau pom thiab tau ua tim khawv tias nws tau nce rov mus saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lawm.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

3 Nifais 19

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lawm, cov neeg coob coob tau sib ncaim, thiab txhua tus txiv neej tau coj nws tus poj niam thiab nws tej me nyuam thiab tau rov qab mus rau nws lub tsev.
- 2 Thiab nws tau muaj suab nrov mus thoob rau cov neeg tam sim ntawd, ua ntej thaum tsis tau tsaun ntuj, tias cov neeg coob coob tau pom Yexus, thiab tias nws tau muab kev pab rau lawv, thiab tias nws kuj yuav ua rau cov neeg coob coob pom nws tus kheej tag kis.
- 3 Muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho ib hmos tau muaj suab nrov deb txog Yexus; thiab kawg tias thaum kawg lawv tau xa xov tawm mus rau cov neeg tias tau muaj ntau leej, muaj tseeb tiag, tau muaj ib pab neeg coob heev, tau ua hauv lwm heev tag nrho hmo ntawd, xwv kom tag kis lawv yuav tau mus nyob ntawm qhov chaw uas Yexus yuav ua nws tus kheej rau cov neeg coob coob pom.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias tag kis, thaum cov neeg coob coob tau sib sau ua ke, saib seb, Nifais thiab nws tus kwv tij uas nws tau tsa sawv hauv qhov tuag los, uas lub npe hu ua Timautes, thiab nws tus tub, uas npe hu ua Yaunas, thiab Mathaunais, thiab Mathaunaihas, nws tus kwv, thiab Khumas, thiab Khumenoochais, thiab Yelemis, thiab Senoos, thiab Yaunas, thiab Xedekhiyas, thiab Yaxayas—nim no cov no tau yog cov npe ntawm cov pab coj uas Yexus tau xaiv—thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm mus thiab tau sawv ntsug hauv nruab nrab ntawm cov neeg coob coob.
- 5 Thiab saib seb, cov neeg coob coob tau coob heev li lawv thiab tau kom lawv yuav tsum raug faib ua kaum ob pab.
- 6 Thiab kaum ob leeg ntawd tau qhia rau cov neeg coob coob; thiab saib seb, lawv tau kom cov neeg coob coob txhos caug rau hauv av, thiab yuav tsum thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe.
- 7 Thiab cov pab coj kuj tau thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe thiab. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sawv thiab muab kev pab rau cov neeg.

3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

- 8 Thiab thaum lawv tau qhuab qhia tib co lus uas Yexus tau hais—tsis muaj ib yam txawv li tej lus uas Yexus tau hais—saib seb, lawv tau rov txhos caug dua thiab tau thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe.
- 9 Thiab lawv tau thov rau yam uas lawv xav tau tshaj; thiab lawv tau xav kom tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yuav raug muab rau lawv.
- 10 Thiab thaum lawv tau thov li no tas lawm lawv tau nqis mus rau nram ntug dej, thiab cov neeg coob coob tau raws lawv mus.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais tau nqis mus rau hauv dej thiab raug muab ua kev cai raus dej.
- 12 Thiab nws tau tawm hauv dej los thiab tau pib ua kev cai raus dej. Thiab nws tau ua kev cai raus dej rau tag nrho cov uas Yexus tau xaiv.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tag nrho tau raug ua kev cai raus dej tag thiab tau tawm hauv dej los lawm, tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau poob los rau saum lawv, thiab lawv tau muaj puv npo nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv thiab nrog hluav taws.
- 14 Thiab saib seb, zoo li lawv raug hluav taws vij ib puag ncig; thiab nws tau nqis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, thiab cov neeg coob coob tau ua tim khawv txog nws, thiab ua lus pov thawj; thiab tej tim tswv tau nqis tawm saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los thiab tau muab kev pab rau lawv.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum tej tim tswv tab tom muab kev pab rau cov pab coj, saib seb, Yexus tau los thiab tau sawv hauv nruab nrab thiab tau muab kev pab rau lawv.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau cov neeg coob coob, thiab tau txib kom lawv yuav tsum txhos caug dua rau hauv av, thiab kuj tau kom nws cov pab coj yuav tsum txhos caug rau hauv av thiab.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tag nrho tau txhos caug rau hauv av tas lawm, nws tau txib nws cov pab coj kom lawv yuav tsum thov Vajtswv.
- 18 Thiab saib seb, lawv tau pib thov; thiab lawv tau thov rau Yexus, hu nws ua lawv tus Tswv thiab lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias Yexus tau ncaim hauv nruab nrab ntawm lawv mus, thiab nws tau mus deb ntawm lawv me ntsis thiab tau khoov nws tus kheej rau hauv av, thiab tau hais tias:

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

- 20 Txiv es, kuv ua koj tsaug uas koj tau muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv rau cov uas kuv tau xaiv no; thiab nws vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg kuv uas kuv tau xaiv lawv tawm ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 21 Txiv es, kuv thov koj kom koj yuav muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv rau tag nrho lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg lawv tej lus.
- 22 Txiv es, koj tau muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv rau lawv vim lawv ntseeg kuv; thiab koj pom tias lawv ntseeg kuv vim koj hnov lawv, thiab lawv tau thov rau kuv; thiab lawv thov rau kuv vim kuv nrog lawv nyob.
- 23 Thiab nim no Txiv es, kuv thov koj rau lawv, thiab kuj rau tag nrho lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg lawv tej lus, kom lawv yuav ntseeg kuv, kom kuv yuav nyob hauv lawv, Txiv es, ib yam li koj nyob hauv kuv, kom peb yuav yog ib tug.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau thov li no rau Leej Txiv tas lawm, nws tau los cuag nws cov pab coj, thiab saib seb, lawv tseem pheej thov rau nws, tsis tau tsum; thiab lawv tsis tau ntxiv ntau lo lus, vim nws tau muab rau lawv yam uas lawv yuav thov, thiab lawv tau muaj puv npo tej uas xav tau.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias Yexus tau foom koob hmoov rau lawv li lawv tau thov nws; thiab nws lub ntsej muag tau luag rau lawv, thiab qhov ci ntawm nws lub ntsej muag tau ci rau lawv, thiab saib seb lawv tau dawb ib yam li lub ntsej muag thiab tej ris tsho ntawm Yexus; thiab saib seb txoj kev dawb ntawd tau dawb tshaj txhua yam dawb huv tib si, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb uas yuav dawb npaum li txoj kev dawb ntawd.
- 26 Thiab Yexus tau hais rau lawv tias: Thov kam tiag; txawm tias lawv tseem thov tsis tau tsum.
- 27 Thiab nws tau tig ntawm lawv mus ntxiv, thiab tau mus ib nyuag deb me ntsis thiab nws tau khoov nws tus kheej rau hauv av; thiab nws tau thov dua rau Leej Txiv, hais tias:
- 28 Txiv es, kuv ua koj tsaug uas koj tau ua kom cov uas kuv tau xaiv lawm dawb huv, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab kuv thov rau lawv, thiab rau lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg lawv tej lus, xwv kom lawv yuav raug dawb huv nyob hauv kuv, dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg lawv tej lus, tib yam li lawv raug ua dawb huv hauv kuv.

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

- 29 Txiv es, kuv tsis thov rau neeg ntiaj teb, tiam sis tsuas yog rau cov uas koj tau muab rau kuv tawm ntawm neeg ntiaj teb los, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg, xwv kom lawv yuav raug ua dawb huv nyob hauv kuv, kom kuv yuav nyob hauv lawv, Txiv es, ib yam li koj nyob hauv kuv, kom peb yuav ua tau ib tug, kom kuv yuav tau yeeb koob nyob hauv lawv.
- 30 Thiab thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas nws tau rov los cuag nws cov pab coj dua; thiab saib seb lawv tau thov ruaj npo, tsis tseg rau nws; thiab nws tau rov luag rau lawv dua; thiab saib seb lawv tau dawb, tib yam li Yexus.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau rov mus ib nyuag deb me ntsis thiab tau thov rau Leej Txiv;
- 32 Thiab nplaig hais tsis tau tej lus uas nws tau thov, thiab tej lus uas nws tau thov los tib neeg tsis muaj peev xwm sau tau.
- 33 Thiab cov neeg coob coob tau hnov thiab tau ua tim khawv; thiab lawv tej siab tau qhib thiab lawv to taub nyob hauv lawv tej siab cov lus uas nws tau thov.
- 34 Txawm li ntawd los, tej lus uas nws tau thov tseem ceeb heev thiab zoo tshaj es tsis muaj peev xwm muab lawv sau cia, thiab tib neeg tsis muaj peev xwm hais tau lawv.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau xaus txoj kev thov Vajtswv nws tau rov qab los cuag cov pab coj, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Txoj kev ntseeg loj heev kuv twb tsis tau pom nyob tag nrho hauv cov Neeg Yudais li; yog li ntawd kuv thiaj ua tsis tau rau lawv pom tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj heev, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 36 Kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, lawv tsis tau muaj ib tug uas tau pom tej yam loj heev ib yam li nej tau pom; thiab lawv twb tsis tau hnov tej yam loj heev ib yam li nej tau hnov.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

3 Nifais 20

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txib cov neeg coob coob kom lawv tsum thov Vajtswv, thiab nws cov pab coj. Thiab nws tau txib lawv kom lawv tsis txhob tseg thov Vajtswv nyob hauv lawv tej siab.
- 2 Thiab nws tau txib lawv kom lawv sawv thiab sawv tsees sawv ntsug rau saum lawv tej ko taw. Thiab lawv tau sawv thiab tau sawv tsees sawv ntsug rau saum lawv tej ko taw.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau rov ntais mov mog dua thiab tau foom koob hmoov rau nws, thiab tau muab rau cov pab coj noj.
- 4 Thiab thaum lawv tau noj tas nws tau txib lawv kom lawv yuav ntais cov mov mog, thiab muab rau cov neeg coob coob.
- 5 Thiab thaum lawv tau muab rau cov neeg coob coob tas lawm nws kuj tau muab cawv txiv hmab rau lawv haus thiab, thiab tau txib lawv kom lawv muab rau cov neeg coob coob.
- 6 Nim no, twb tsis tau muaj mov mog, los sis cawv txiv hmab, uas raug coj tuaj los ntawm cov pab coj, los sis los ntawm cov neeg coob coob;
- 7 Tiam sis nws yeej tau muab mov mog tiag tiag rau lawv noj thiab cawv txiv hmab rau lawv haus.
- 8 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Tus uas noj cov mov mog no noj kuv lub cev rau nws tus ntsuj plig; thiab tus uas haus cov cawv txiv hmab no haus kuv cov ntshav rau nws tus ntsuj plig; thiab nws tus ntsuj plig yuav tsis tshaib los sis nqhis ntxiv lawm, tiam sis tsuas muaj tsau npo xwb.
- 9 Nim no, thaum cov neeg coob coob tag nrho sawv daws tau noj thiab haus, saib seb, lawv tau muaj tus Ntsuj Plig puv npo; thiab lawv tau qw tawm ua ib lub suab, thiab muab yeeb koob rau Yexus, tus uas lawv tau pom thiab tau hnov.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv sawv daws tau muab yeeb koob rau Yexus tas lawm, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb nim no kuv ua tas txoj lus txib uas Leej Txiv tau txib kuv txog cov neeg no, uas yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 11 Nej nco tias kuv tau hais rau nej thiab tau hais tias thaum tej lus ntawm Yaxayas yuav muaj puv npo—saib seb lawv raug muab sau cia, nej muaj lawv nyob ntawm nej, yog li ntawd cia li nrhiav lawv—

3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

12 Thiab kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, thaum tej ntawd muaj puv npo ces yog txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm txoj kev khi lus tseg uas Leej Txiv tau khi rau nws cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.

13 Thiab tom qab ntawd cov uas seem tshuav uas raug tawg ri niab mus lwm qhov chaw uas nyob saum lub ntiaj teb, yuav raug sib sau nyob hauv sab hnuv tuaj thiab sab hnuv poob, thiab sab nram hav thiab sab pem toj; thiab lawv yuav raug coj los rau txoj kev paub txog tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv, uas tau txhiv lawv dim.

14 Thiab Leej Txiv tau txib kuv kom kuv muab thaj av no rau nej, ua nej qub txeeg qub teg.

15 Thiab kuv hais rau nej, tias yog Lwm Haiv Neeg tsis hloov siab lees txim tom qab txoj koob hmoov uas lawv yuav tau txais, tom qab uas lawv tau ua rau kuv cov neeg tawg ri niab—

16 Ces nej, cov uas yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Yakhausj, yuav tawm mus rau hauv lawv; thiab nej yuav mus nyob hauv nruab nrab ntawm lawv cov uas yuav muaj coob; thiab nej yuav mus nyob hauv lawv ib yam li ib tug tsov ntxhuav nyob hauv tej tsiaj qus tom hav zoov, thiab ib yam li ib tug thav tsov ntxhuav nyob hauv tej pab yaj uas yog nws mus mos vau thiab dua ua daim, thiab tsis muaj tus pab tau.

17 Nej txhais tes yuav raug tsa rau saum tawm tsam nej tej yeeb ncuab, thiab tag nrho nej tej yeeb ncuab yuav raug txiav tawm.

18 Thiab kuv yuav sau kuv cov neeg los ua ke ib yam li ib tug neeg sau nws tej tes nplej los rau hauv plag tse.

19 Vim kuv yuav ua kuv cov neeg uas Leej Txiv tau khi lus tseg, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv yuav ua kom nej muaj kub hlau, thiab kuv yuav ua kom nej muaj rau tooj. Thiab nej yuav ntaus pab neeg tawg ua tej dwb daim; thiab kuv yuav muab lawv txoj kev yeej pub rau tus Tswv, thiab lawv tej khoom rau tus Tswv ntawm lub ntiaj teb tag nrho. Thiab saib seb, kuv yog nws tus uas ua qhov ntawd.

20 Thiab Leej Txiv hais tias yuav muaj tias, rab ntaj ntawm kuv txoj kev txim lij yuav dai rawv rau saum lawv nyob rau hnuv ntawd; thiab tsuas yog lawv hloov siab lees txim xwb tsis li ces nws yuav vau los rau saum lawv, Leej Txiv hais li, muaj tseeb tiag, rau saum tag nrho tej haiv neeg ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg.

21 Thiab yuav muaj tias kuv yuav txhim tsa kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

- 22 Thiab saib seb, kuv yuav txhim tsa cov neeg no nyob rau saum thaj av no, rau txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm txoj kev khi lus tseg uas kuv tau khi nrog nej tus yawg koob Yakhouj; thiab nws yuav yog ib lub Yeluxalees tshiab. Thiab tej hwj chim saum ntuj ceeb tsheej yuav muaj nyob hauv nruab nrab ntawm cov neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv los yeej yuav nyob hauv nruab nrab hauv nej.
- 23 Saib seb, kuv yog nws tus uas Mauxes tau hais txog, hais tias: Tus Tswv nej tus Vajtsv yuav tsa ib tug yaj saub tawm ntawm nej cov kwv tij los rau nej, ib yam li kuv; ntawm nws nej yuav tsum mloog tag nrho txhua yam uas nws yuav hais rau nej. Thiab yuav muaj tias txhua tus cov uas yuav tsis mloog tus yaj saub ntawd yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm cov neeg mus.
- 24 Kuv hais tseeb rau nej, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho cov yaj saub txij li Xamuyees thiab cov uas tom qab ntawd, txhua tus uas tau hais, tau ua tim khawv txog kuv.
- 25 Thiab saib seb, nej yog tej me nyuam ntawm cov yaj saub; thiab nej yog ib co ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab nej yog cov uas nyob ntawm txoj kev khi lus uas Leej Txiv tau khi nrog nej tej yawg koob, tau hais rau Anplaham tias: Thiab nyob hauv koj tej noob tag nrho txhua pab neeg ntawm lub ntiaj teb yuav tau koob hmoov.
- 26 Leej Txiv tau xub tsa kuv los rau nej, thiab tau xa kuv los foom koob hmoov rau nej kom nej txhua tus tig tawm ntawm nws tej kev tsis ncaj; thiab li no los vim nej yog tej me nyuam ntawm txoj kev khi lus—
- 27 Thiab tom qab uas nej tau koob hmoov lawm ces yuav muaj puv npo li Leej Txiv txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi nrog Anplaham hais tias: Nyob hauv koj tej noob txhua pab neeg ntawm lub ntiaj teb yuav tau koob hmoov—rau txoj kev cai nchuav tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tawm dhau hauv kuv los rau saum Lwm Haiv Neeg, yam koob hmoov uas los rau saum Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav ua rau lawv muaj zog tshaj sawv daws, rau txoj kev tawg ri niab ntawm kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

28 Thiab lawv yuav ua ib tug nplawm rau cov neeg ntawm thaj av no. Txawm li ntawd los, thaum lawv yuav tau txais kuv txoj moo zoo uas muaj txhij txhua, tom qab ntawd yog lawv yuav ua lawv tej siab tawv rau kuv, kuv yuav rov qab muab lawv tej kev tsis ncaj los rau saum lawv taub hau kiag, Leej Txiv hais li.

29 Thiab kuv yuav nco qab ntsoov txoj kev khi lus uas kuv tau khi nrog kuv cov neeg; thiab kuv tau khi lus tseg nrog lawv tias kuv yuav sau lawv los ua ke nyob hauv kuv lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg lawm, xwv kom kuv yuav tau rov qab muab rau lawv thaj av ntawm lawv tej yawg koob ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg, uas yog thaj av ntawm Yeluxalees, uas yog thaj av cog lus rau lawv mus ib txhis, Leej Txiv hais li.

30 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias lub sij hawm yuav los, thaum txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo yuav raug coj mus qhia rau lawv;

31 Thiab lawv yuav ntseeg kuv, tias kuv yog Yexus Khetos, Vajtsvw Leej Tub, thiab yuav thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe.

32 Thaum ntawd lawv tej neeg zov xyuas yuav tsa lawv tej suab, thiab lawv yuav hu nkauj nrog tej suab ua ke; vim lawv yuav pom qhov muag rau qhov muag.

33 Thaum ntawd Leej Txiv yuav sau lawv los ua ke dua, thiab muab Yeluxalees rau lawv ua lawv thaj av qub txeeg qub teg.

34 Thaum ntawd lawv yuav tawg plho los rau txoj kev xyiv fab—Cia li hu nkauj ua ke, nej tej chaw uas tsis muaj nuj nqis ntawm Yeluxalees; vim Leej Txiv twb tau nplij nws cov neeg, nws twb tau txhiv Yeluxalees lawm.

35 Leej Txiv tau ua nws lub hwj chim dawb huv rau ntawm txhua haiv neeg lub qhov muag; thiab tag nrho hauv qab ntuj kawg yuav pom Leej Txiv txoj kev cawm seeg; thiab Leej Txiv thiab kuv yog ib tug.

36 Thiab thaum ntawd yuav muaj li tej uas tau sau cia lawm tias: Cia li tsim, cia li tsim dua, thiab cia li muab nej lub zog los coj, Au Xi-oos es; cia li muab koj tej ris tsho uas zoo zoo nkauj coj los hnav, Au Yeluxalees, lub nroog dawb huv es, vim txij li no mus yuav tsis muaj leej twg uas tsis tau ua kev cai txiav thiab tsis huv los tau rau hauv koj ntxiv lawm.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

37 Cia li nchos koj tus kheej ntawm tej hmoov av; cia li sawv, thiab zaum, Au Yeluxalees; tso koj tus kheej tawm ntawm tej hlua ntawm koj caj dab, Au tus ntxhais uas raug txhom ntawm Xi-oos es.

38 Vim tus Tswv hais li no tias: Nej tau muab nej tus kheej muag rau yam tsis muaj nqi, thiab nej yuav raug txhiv dim yam tsis yuav nyiaj.

39 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, kuv cov neeg yuav paub kuv lub npe; muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau hnuv ntawd lawv yuav paub tias kuv yog nws tus uas hais lus.

40 Thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav hais tias: Zoo nkauj npaum li cas nyob rau saum tej roob twb yog ob txhais ko taw ntawm nws tus uas coj tej moo zoo los rau lawv, tus uas tau tsim kev thaj yeeb; tus uas coj tej moo zoo los rau lawv cov uas zoo, tus uas tsim txoj kev cawm seeg; uas hais rau Xi-oos tias: Koj tus Vajtswv los kav lawm!

41 Thiab thaum ntawd ib lub suab qw yuav tawm mus tias: Nej cia li ncaim mus, nej cia li ncaim mus, nej cia li tawm ntawm qhov ntawd mus, tsis txhob kov tej uas tsis huv; nej cia li tawm ntawm nruab nrab ntawm nws mus; nej ris tus Tswv tej twj taig yuav tsum dawb huv.

42 Vim nej yuav tsis tawm nrawm nroos mus thiab mus los ntawm kev tsiv; vim tus Tswv yuav mus ua nej ntej, thiab tus Vajtswv ntawm Ixayees yuav ua tus kav nej qab.

43 Saib seb, kuv tus tub qhe yuav ua yam txawj ntse; nws yuav raug txhawb mus siab thiab raug qhuas thiab nyob siab heev.

44 Yam li ntau tus tau xav tsis thoob rau koj—nws lub ntsej muag tau ntswj mob heev, ntau tshaj li lwm tus neeg, thiab nws lub cev ntswj mob dua li tej tib neeg tej tub—

45 Tib yam li ntawd nws yuav ywg ntau haiv neeg; tej vaj ntxwv yuav kaw lawv tej qhov ncauj rau nws, vim tej yam uas tsis tau raug qhia rau lawv lawv yuav pom; thiab tej uas lawv tsis tau hnov lawv yuav to taub.

46 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, tag nrho tej yam no yeej yuav los tiag tiag, tib yam li Leej Txiv tau txib kuv lawm. Thaum ntawd txoj kev khi lus no uas Leej Txiv tau khi nrog nws cov neeg yuav muaj puv npo; thiab thaum ntawd kuv cov neeg yuav rov qab tau Yeluxalees dua, thiab nws yuav yog thaj av ntawm lawv qub txeeg qub teg.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

3 Nifais 21

- 1 Thiab kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias, kuv muab ib lub cim rau nej, kom nej yuav paub lub sij hawm thaum tej yam no yuav luag muaj—tias kuv yuav sau los ua ke, los ntawm lawv txoj kev sib faib ntev lawm, kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab yuav txhim tsa kuv lub Xi-oos dua nyob hauv lawv.
- 2 Thiab saib seb, qhov no yog yam uas kuv yuav muab rau nej ua ib lub cim—vim kuv hais tseeb rau nej tias thaum tej yam no uas kuv tshaj tawm rau nej, thiab yam uas kuv yuav tshaj tawm rau nej tom qab no txog kuv tus kheej, thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv uas yuav raug muab rau nej los ntawm Leej Txiv, yuav raug ua kom paub rau Lwm Haiv Neeg kom lawv yuav paub txog cov neeg no uas yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Yakhausj, thiab txog kuv cov neeg no uas yuav raug tawg ri niab los ntawm lawv;
- 3 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, thaum tej yam no yuav raug ua rau lawv paub los ntawm Leej Txiv, thiab yuav tawm los ntawm Leej Txiv dhau hauv lawv los rau nej;
- 4 Vim nws yog ib qho kev txawj ntse nyob hauv Leej Txiv tias lawv yuav tsum raug txhim tsa nyob hauv thaj av no, thiab raug cia ua ib co neeg nyob ywj siab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm Leej Txiv, xwv kom tej yam no yuav tau dhau ntawm lawv los rau ib co seem tshuav ntawm nej tej noob, xwv kom txoj kev khi lus ntawm Leej Txiv yuav raug muaj puv npo li tej uas nws tau khi tseg nrog nws cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees;
- 5 Yog li ntawd, thaum tej hauj lwm no thiab tej hauj lwm uas yuav raug ua tiav nyob hauv nej tom qab no yuav tawm ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg los, rau nej tej noob uas yuav tseg txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj;
- 6 Vim li no thiaj tsim nyog rau Leej Txiv kom nws yuav tawm ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg los, xwv kom nws yuav ua nws lub hwj chim rau Lwm Haiv Neeg pom, vim yog qhov no kom Lwm Haiv Neeg, yog lawv tsis ua lawv tej siab tawv, xwv kom lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag kuv thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe thiab paub txog tej ntsiab tseeb ntawm kuv txoj lus qhia, xwv kom lawv yuav raug suav nrog kuv cov neeg, Au tsev neeg Ixayees;

3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

- 7 Thiab thaum tej yam no muaj los kom nej tej noob yuav pib paub tej yam no—nws yuav yog ib lub cim rau lawv, xwv kom lawv yuav paub tias txoj hauj lwm ntawm Leej Txiv twb tau pib muaj puv npo li txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees lawm.
- 8 Thiab thaum hnuv ntawd los, yuav muaj tias tej vaj ntxwv yuav qos lawv tej qhov ncauj; vim tej yam uas tsis tau raug qhia rau lawv lawv yuav pom; thiab tej yam uas lawv tsis tau hnov lawv yuav to taub.
- 9 Vim nyob rau hnuv ntawd, Leej Txiv yuav ua ib txoj hauj lwm los pab kuv, uas yuav yog ib txoj hauj lwm loj thiab tseem ceeb nyob hauv lawv; thiab yuav muaj cov uas nyob hauv lawv uas tsis ntseeg tej ntawd, txawm tias ib tug neeg yuav tshaj nws tawm rau lawv.
- 10 Tiam sis saib seb, txoj sia ntawm kuv tus tub qhe yuav nyob hauv kuv txhais tes; yog li ntawd lawv yuav tsis ua rau nws mob, txawm tias nws yuav raug mob vim yog lawv. Tiam sis kuv yuav kho nws kom zoo, vim kuv yuav ua rau lawv pom tias kuv txoj kev txawj ntse yeej loj dua li txoj kev dag ntxias ntawm tus dab.
- 11 Yog li ntawd yuav muaj tias txhua tus uas tsis ntseeg kuv tej lus, tus uas yog Yexus Khetos, tej uas Leej Txiv tau ua kom nws coj los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab yuav muab rau nws lub hwj chim kom nws yuav coj lawv los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, (nws yuav raug ua tiav tib yam li Mauxes tau hais lawm), lawv yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm kuv cov neeg uas yog cov tau khi lus tseg lawm.
- 12 Thiab kuv cov neeg uas yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj yuav nyob nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv lawv nruab nrab zoo ib yam li ib tug tsov ntxhuav nyob hauv tej tsiaj qus tom hav zoov, ib yam li ib tug thav tsov ntxhuav nyob hauv tej pab yaj, tus uas, yog nws mus mos tau tom thiab dua ua daim, thiab tsis muaj leej twg pab tau.
- 13 Lawv tej tes yuav raug tsa rau saum lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab tag nrho lawv tej yeeb ncuab yuav raug txiav tawm.
- 14 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem yuav raug rau Lwm Haiv Neeg tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb; vim yuav muaj tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd, Leej Txiv hais tias, kuv yuav txiav nej tej nees tawm ntawm nej nruab nrab mus, thiab kuv yuav ua kom nej tej tsheb nees luag puas tsuaj;

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

15 Thiab kuv yuav txiav tej nroog ntawm nej thaj av, thiab rub kom tag nrho nej tej chaw tiv thaiv vau;

16 Thiab kuv yuav txiav tej kev ua dab tawm ntawm nej thaj av, thiab nej yuav tsis muaj tej neeg txawj saib hmoov ntxiv lawm;

17 Nej tej mlom los kuv kuj yuav txiav tawm, thiab nej tej mlom sawv ntsug yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm nej nruab nrab mus, thiab nej yuav tsis tau teev tiam tej hauj lwm ntawm nej tej tes ntxiv lawm;

18 Thiab kuv yuav rho nej tej ntoo yuj tawm ntawm nej nruab nrab mus; ces kuv yuav ua kom nej tej nroog puas tsuaj.

19 Thiab yuav muaj tias tag nrho tej kev dag, thiab tej kev ntxias, thiab tej kev xav tau luag tug, thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab tej kev ua dab, thiab tej kev sib daj sib deev, yuav tsis muaj lawm.

20 Vim Leej Txiv hais tias yuav muaj tias, nyob rau hnuv ntawd leej twg uas yuav tsis hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag kuv tus Tub uas kuv Hlub, kuv yuav txiav lawv tawm hauv kuv cov neeg mus, Au tsev neeg Ixayees;

21 Thiab kuv yuav pauj txiaj ntsig thiab npau taws rau lawv, tib yam li rau cov neeg tsis paub Vajtsww, li tej uas lawv tsis tau hnov.

22 Tiam sis yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab hnov kuv tej lus, thiab tsis ua lawv tej siab tawv, kuv yuav tsa kuv lub koom txoos nyob hauv lawv, thiab lawv yuav los rau hauv txoj kev khi lus, thiab raug suav nyob hauv cov seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj no, rau cov uas kuv tau muab thaj av no ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg;

23 Thiab lawv yuav pab kuv cov neeg, cov seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj, thiab ntau npaum li ntau tau ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees uas yuav los, xwv kom lawv yuav ua tau ib lub nroog, uas yuav raug hu ua Yeluxalees Tshiab.

24 Thiab thaum ntawd lawv yuav pab kuv cov neeg xwv kom lawv yuav raug sau ua ke, cov uas tau tawg ri niab mus rau saum txhua thaj av, los rau hauv Yeluxalees Tshiab.

25 Thiab thaum ntawd lub hwj chim ntawm ntuj ceeb tsheej yuav nqis los rau hauv lawv; thiab kuv kuj yuav nyob hauv plawv.

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

26 Thiab thaum ntawd txoj hauj lwm ntawm Leej Txiv yuav pib nyob rau hnub ntawd, twb yuav nyob rau thaum txoj moo zoo no yuav raug qhuab qhia nyob hauv cov seem tshuav ntawm cov neeg no. Kuv hais tseeb rau nej, tias nyob rau hnub ntawd txoj hauj lwm ntawm Leej Txiv yuav pib nyob tag nrho rau cov tau sib faib ntawm kuv cov neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog cov xeem neeg uas tau ploj lawm, uas Leej Txiv tau coj tawm ntawm Yeluxalees lawm.

27 Muaj tseeb tiag, txoj hauj lwm yuav pib nyob tag nrho hauv cov uas tau faib ntawm kuv cov neeg, nrog Leej Txiv npaj txoj kev kom lawv yuav los cuag tau kuv, xwv kom lawv yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe.

28 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaum ntawd txoj hauj lwm yuav pib, nrog Leej Txiv nyob tag nrho rau txhua haiv neeg npaj txoj kev kom nws cov neeg yuav raug sau los tsev rau thaj av ntawm lawv qub txeeg qub teg.

29 Thiab lawv yuav ncaim tawm ntawm txhua haiv neeg mus; thiab lawv yuav tsis tawm nrawm nroos mus, thiab mus los ntawm kev tsiv, vim kuv yuav mus ua lawv ntej, Leej Txiv hais li, thiab kuv yuav ua tus kav lawv qab.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

3 Nifais 22

- 1 Thiab thaum ntawd yam uas raug muab sau cia lawm yuav muaj los: Hu nkauj, Au tus poj niam muaj tsis tau me nyuam, koj tus uas tsis yug me nyuam; cia li tawg plho los rau txoj kev hu nkauj, thiab qw nrov nrov, koj tus uas ib txwm tsis tau mob plab yug me nyuam; vim tus Tswv hais tias, tus poj niam tshob yuav muaj me nyuam coob dua li tus poj niam muaj txiv.
- 2 Koj cia li rub koj lub tsev pheed suab ntaub kom dav ntxiv, thiab cia lawv yaws tej ntaub qhov rais ntawm koj tej chaw nyob; txhob tseg, txuas koj tej hlua kom ntev thiab kho koj tej tswg kom muaj zog;
- 3 Vim koj yuav tawg plho rau sab xis thiab sab laug, thiab koj tej noob yuav los nyob hauv Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab ua kom tej nroog uas tsis muaj neeg nyob muaj neeg nyob tuaj.
- 4 Tsis txhob ntshai, vim koj yeej yuav tsis poob ntsej muag; thiab koj yuav tsis raug swb, vim koj yuav tsis raug ua kom poob ntsej muag; vim koj yuav hnov qab tej kev poob ntsej muag thaum koj tseem hluas, thiab yuav tsis nco txog tej kev nyuaj siab lwj plawv thaum koj tseem hluas, thiab yuav tsis nco txog txoj kev nyuaj siab lwj plawv thaum koj tseem ua poj ntsuam nyob ntxiv lawm.
- 5 Vim koj tus tsim, koj tus txiv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv yog nws lub npe; thiab koj tus Txhiv Dim, Ixayees Tus Dawb Huv—nws yuav raug hu ua Vajtswv ntawm tag nrho lub ntiaj teb.
- 6 Vim tus Tswv tau hu koj ib yam li ib tug poj niam uas raug tso tseg thiab muaj kev nyuaj siab lwj ntsws, thiab ib tug poj niam hluas, thaum koj raug tsis kam lees yuav, koj tus Vajtswv hais li.
- 7 Vim kuv tau tso koj ib nyuag pliag xwb, tiam sis nrog txoj kev hluv tshua heev kuv yuav sau koj rov qab.
- 8 Nyob hauv txoj kev chim me ntsis kuv thiaj tau zais kuv lub ntsej muag rau koj ib nyuag pliag, tiam sis nrog txoj kev hluv kav ib txhis kuv yuav muaj kev hluv tshua rau koj, tus Tswv koj tus Txhiv Dim hais li.
- 9 Vim qhov no, zoo ib yam li cov dej thaum Nau-as lub caij rau kuv, vim ib yam li kuv tau cog lus tias cov dej ntawm Nau-as yuav tsis los nyab lub ntiaj teb ib zaug ntxiv lawm, ces kuv thiaj tau cog lus tias kuv yuav tsis chim rau koj.

3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

- 10 Vim tej toj roob yuav pob thiab tej hauv pes yuav nphau, tiam sis kuv txoj kev hlub yuav tsis ncaim koj li, los sis kuv txoj kev khi lus ntawm kuv txoj kev nyab xeeb los yuav tsis raug tshem li, tus Tswv uas muaj txoj kev hlub tshua rau nej hais li.
- 11 Au koj tus uas raug txom nyem, raug cua ntsawj, thiab tsis raug nplij siab es! Saib seb, kuv yuav pua koj tej pob zeb kom xim ci ci, thiab yuav muab tej pob zeb xiav tawv tawv los pua koj tej plag tsev.
- 12 Thiab kuv yuav muab tej hlaws liab los ua koj tej qhov rais, thiab muab tej hlaws lulpis los ua koj tej rooj loog, thiab yuav muab tej pob zeb zoo los ua tag nrho koj tej tsa loog.
- 13 Thiab tag nrho koj tej me nyuam yuav raug qhia txog tus Tswv; thiab koj tej me nyuam txoj kev thaj yeeb nyab xeeb yuav zoo heev.
- 14 Koj yuav raug txhim tsa nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees; koj yuav nyob deb ntawm kev tsim txom vim koj yuav tsis ntshai, thiab ntawm kev txhawj ntshai nws yuav tsis los ze koj.
- 15 Saib seb, lawv yeej yuav sib sau ua ke tawm tsam koj tiag, tsis yog los ntawm kuv; leej twg uas yuav sib sau ua ke tawm tsam koj yeej yuav swb rau koj tej hauj lwm.
- 16 Saib seb, kuv tau tsim tej foob xab uas tshuab tej thee hauv qhov cub, thiab uas ntaus tau ib rab cuab yeej rau nws txoj hauj lwm; thiab kuv tau tsim kom ua puas tsuaj.
- 17 Tsis muaj ib yam cuab yeej twg uas ua tawm tsam koj es yuav kov yeej; thiab txhua tus nplaig uas yuav ntxo tawm tsam koj nyob hauv txoj kev txiav txim koj yuav tsum rau txim rau. Qhov no yog qhov ntiag tug ntawm tus Tswv cov tub qhe, thiab lawv txoj kev ncaj ncees yog los ntawm kuv, tus Tswv hais li.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

3 Nifais 23

- 1 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv hais rau nej, tias nej yuav tsum tshawb nrhiav tej yam no. Muaj tseeb tiag, ib txoj lus txib kuv muab rau nej tias nej yuav tsum kub siab lug tshawb nrhiav tej yam no; vim Yaxayas tej lus tseem ceeb heev.
- 2 Vim nws yeej tau hais tseeb qhia tag nrho txhua yam txog kuv cov neeg uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees; yog li ntawd nws tsim nyog tias nws yuav tsum tau hais rau Lwm Haiv Neeg thiab.
- 3 Thiab txhua yam uas nws tau hais tau muaj lawm thiab tseem yuav muaj, twb yuav raws nraim li tej lus uas nws tau hais lawm.
- 4 Yog li ntawd ua li kuv tej lus; sau tej uas kuv tau hais rau nej cia; thiab raws li lub sij hawm thiab lub siab xav ntawm Leej Txiv lawv yeej yuav tawm mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg.
- 5 Thiab tus uas yuav hnov rau kuv tej lus thiab hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej, tus ntawd yuav raug cawm dim. Tshawb nrhiav tej yaj saub, vim muaj ntau leej uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam no.
- 6 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas nws tau hais rau lawv dua, tom qab uas nws tau piav ntxaws txog tag nrho tej vajlugkub rau lawv tej uas lawv tau txais, nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv xav kom nej yuav tsum sau lwm cov vajlugkub, tej uas nej tsis tau sau.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau Nifais tias: Coj phau ceev xwm txheej uas koj tau ceev los.
- 8 Thiab thaum Nifais tau coj cov ceev xwm txheej los, thiab tau muab tso rau ntawm nws xub ntiag, nws tau tsa nws lub qhov muag rau lawv thiab tau hais tias:
- 9 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias, kuv tau txib kuv tus tub qhe Xamuyees tus Neeg Lamas, kom nws yuav tsum ua tim khawv rau cov neeg no, tias nyob rau hnuv ntawd Leej Txiv yuav qhuas nws lub npe nyob hauv kuv tias tau muaj ntau tus ntseeg uas yuav sawv hauv qhov tuag los, thiab yuav tshwm sim rau ntau tus pom, thiab yuav muab kev pab rau lawv. Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Tsis muaj li ntawd los?
- 10 Thiab nws cov pab coj tau teb nws tias: Muaj li ntawd, tus Tswv, Xamuyees tau qhia tseg ua ntej lawm raws li koj tej lus, thiab lawv tau muaj puv npo tag nrho.

3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

11 Thiab Yexus tau hais rau lawv tias: Vim li cas uas nej ho tsis muab tej yam no sau cia, tias ntau tus ntseeg tau sawv thiab tau los tshwm sim rau ntau leej thiab tau muab kev pab rau lawv no?

12 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais tau nco qab tias tej yam no tsis tau muab sau cia tiag.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias Yexus tau txib tias nws yuav tsum raug muab sau cia; yog li ntawd nws tau raug muab sau cia raws li nws tau txib.

14 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau piav ntxaws txog tag nrho tej vajlugkub ua ib ke, tej uas lawv tau muab sau cia, nws tau txib lawv kom lawv yuav tsum qhia tej yam uas nws tau piav rau lawv lawm.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

3 Nifais 24

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txib lawv kom lawv yuav tsum sau tej lus uas Leej Txiv tau muab rau Malakhis, tej uas nws yuav tsum qhia rau lawv. Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas lawv raug muab sau cia lawm nws tau piav ntxaws txog lawv. Thiab cov no yog tej lus uas nws tau qhia rau lawv, hais tias: Li no Leej Txiv tau hais rau Malakhis tias—Saib seb, kuv yuav xa kuv tus tub xa xov, thiab nws yuav npaj txoj kev ua kuv ntej, thiab tus Tswv uas nej nrhiav yuav tawm plaws los rau hauv nws lub tuam tsev, twb yog tus tub xa xov ntawm txoj kev khi lus, uas nej zoo siab rau; saib seb, nws yuav los, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.
- 2 Tiam sis leej twg yuav tiv nyob rau hnuv nws los, thiab leej twg yuav sawv tau thaum nws tshwm sim los? Vim nws yuav zoo ib yam li tus kws nchuav nyiaj lub qhov cub, thiab zoo ib yam li tus ntxhua khaub ncaws tej tshuaj.
- 3 Thiab nws yuav zaum yam li ib tug kws nchuav nyiaj thiab kws ua kom nyiaj dawb; thiab nws yuav ua kom Livais tej tub dawb huv, thiab nchuav kom lawv yuav zoo li kub thiab nyiaj, kom lawv yuav tau muab rau tus Tswv ib qho kev txi nyob hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees.
- 4 Thaum ntawd txoj kev txi ntawm Yudas thiab Yeluxalees yuav txaus siab rau tus Tswv, ib yam li nyob rau txheej thaum ub, thiab ib yam li tej xyoo tas los lawm.
- 5 Thiab kuv yuav los ze rau nej rau txoj kev txiav txim; thiab kuv yuav ua ib tug tim khawv nrawm nroos nkaug cov neeg txawj ua khawv koob, thiab nkaug tej neeg deev luag poj luag txiv, thiab nkaug tej neeg ua tim khawv tsis tseeb, thiab nkaug cov uas ua phem khoo nws tej tub dag tub zog tej nyiaj, ua phem khoo tej poj ntsuam thiab tej me nyuam tsis muaj txiv, thiab cov uas tsis kam txais qhua los tsev, thiab cov uas tsis ntshai kuv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.
- 6 Vim kuv yog tus Tswv, kuv yeej tsis hloov; yog li ntawd nej cov tub ntawm Yakhaug yeej yuav tsis puas tsuaj tu noob nrho.

3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

- 7 Txawm yog txij li lub caij ntawm nej tej yawg koob los los nej tau khiav deb ntawm kuv tej kab ke, thiab tsis tau koj lawv. Cia li tig rov los cuag kuv thiab kuv yuav tig rov los cuag nej, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li. Tiam sis nej hais tias: Peb yuav rov qab tau li cas?
- 8 Ib tug tib neeg puas yuav nyiag Vajtswv? Tiam sis nej twb nyiag kuv lawm. Tiam sis nej hais tias: Peb tau nyiag koj li cas? Nyob hauv ib feem kaum thiab tej kev muab pub.
- 9 Nej raug foom nrog ib qho kev foom tsis zoo, vim nej tau nyiag kuv, twb tag nrho haiv neeg no.
- 10 Nej cia li koj tag nrho tej feem kaum tuaj rau hauv lub tsev cia khoom, xwv kom yuav muaj nqaij nyob hauv kuv lub tsev; thiab nim no cia li ua qhia rau kuv saib, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, yog kuv tseem yuav tsis qhib tej qhov rais ntuj ceeb tsheej rau nej, thiab nchuav ib qho koob hmoov rau nej xwv kom yuav tsis muaj chaw txaus txais nws.
- 11 Thiab kuv yuav tshem tus uas yuav rhuav nej tej qoob loos, thiab nws yuav tsis tau ua kom tej txiv hmab txiv ntoo ntawm nej tej av puas tsuaj; thiab nej tej txiv hmab los yuav tsis poob ua ntej lub sijhawm lawv siav, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.
- 12 Thiab txhua haiv neeg yuav hu nej ua cov neeg tau koob hmoov, vim nej yuav yog ib thaj av uas ntxim nyiam heev, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li.
- 13 Nej tej lus tau nyaum tawm tsam kuv, tus Tswv hais li. Tiam sis nej hais tias: Peb tau hais yam dab tsi tawm tsam koj?
- 14 Nej tau hais tias: Nws tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi mus ua hauj lwm rau Vajtswv, thiab yuav muaj nuj nqis dab tsi kom peb koj nws tej kab ke thiab kom peb mus yam li txawj tu siab ua ntej Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv?
- 15 Thiab nim no peb hu cov neeg khav theeb ua cov zoo siab; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv cov uas ua hauj lwm phem raug vam meej; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv cov uas sim Vajtswv raug tso dim dawb.
- 16 Thaum ntawd lawv cov uas ntshai tus Tswv ib leeg nquag nquag hais rau ib leeg, thiab tus Tswv tau mloog thiab tau hnov; thiab ib phau ntawv nco txog tau raug sau ua ntej nws rau lawv kom ntshai tus Tswv, thiab kom xav txog nws lub npe.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightful land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

17 Thiab lawv yuav yog kuv li, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum kuv ua kuv tej sawv nyiaj sawv kub; thiab kuv yuav tseg lawv ib yam li ib tug neeg tseg nws tus tub uas ua hauj lwm rau nws.

18 Thaum ntawd nej yuav tig rov qab thiab pom nruab nrab ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees thiab cov neeg phem, nyob nruab nrab ntawm nws tus uas ua hauj lwm rau Vajtswv thiab nws tus uas tsis ua hauj lwm rau nws.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

3 Nifais 25

- 1 Vim saib seb, hnuv ntawd yuav los uas yuav kub ib yam li ib lub qho cub; thiab tag nrho cov neeg khav txiv, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho cov neeg ua phem, yuav yog quav nyab npleg; thiab hnuv uas yuav los ntawd yuav kub lawv, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li, nws yuav tsis cia lawv tej cag los sis tej ceg li.
- 2 Tiam sis rau nej cov uas ntshai kuv lub npe, Leej Tub ntawm txoj kev Ncaj Ncees yuav sawv nrog txoj kev kho mob nyob hauv nws tis; thiab nej yuav tawm mus thiab loj hlob zoo ib yam li tus me nyuam nyuj nyob hauv nkuaj.
- 3 Thiab nej yuav tsuj cov neeg phem; vim lawv yuav ua tej hmoov av nyob hauv nej tej qab xib taws nyob hauv hnuv uas kuv yuav ua li no, Ib Tsoom Tub Rog tus Tswv hais li ntawd.
- 4 Nej yuav tsum nco ntsoov Mauxes txoj kev cai, kuv tus tub qhe, uas kuv tau txib muab rau nws nyob hauv roob Holes rau tag nrho cov neeg Ixayees, nrog tej kev cai thiab tej kev txiav txim.
- 5 Saib seb, kuv yuav xa Eliyas tus yaj saub los rau nej ua ntej txoj kev los ntawm hnuv loj thiab ntshai heev ntawm tus Tswv;
- 6 Thiab nws yuav tig tej siab ntawm tej txiv los rau tej me nyuam, thiab tej siab ntawm tej me nyuam mus rau lawv tej txiv, nyob tsam kuv yuav los thiab nplawm lub ntiaj teb nrog ib qho kev foom tsis zoo.

3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

3 Nifais 26

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej yam no tas nws tau piav lawv ntxaws rau cov neeg coob coob; thiab nws tau piav ntxaws txhua yam rau lawv, tsis hais loj thiab me.
- 2 Thiab nws hais tias: Tej vajlugkub no, uas nej tseem tsis tau muaj nrog nej, Leej Txiv tau txib kom kuv yuav tsum muab rau nej; vim nws yog ib qho kev txawj ntse hauv nws, lawv yuav tsum raug muab rau cov tiam neeg uas yuav muaj los.
- 3 Thiab nws tau piav ntxaws tag nrho txhua yam, twb pib txij li thaum chiv keeb mus txog rau lub sij hawm uas nws yuav los nrog nws lub yeeb koob—muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho txhua yam uas yuav los rau saum lub ntiaj teb, twb mus txog thaum txhua yam yuav yaj nrog tej kua lawj faj kub, thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav raug muab kauv ua ke ib yam li ib daig ntawv uas muab kauv ib tog tuaj, thiab lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb yuav ploj mus;
- 4 Thiab twb mus rau hnuv loj thiab kawg ntawd, thaum tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws, thiab txhua xeem neeg, thiab txhua haiv neeg thiab txhua yam lus yuav sawv ntsug rau ntawm Vajtswv, kom raug txiav txim txog lawv tej hauj lwm, saib lawv zoo los sis saib lawv phem—
- 5 Yog tias lawv zoo, ces yuav tau txais txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag los ntawm txoj sia kav ib txhis; thiab yog tias lawv phem, ces yuav tau txais txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag los ntawm txoj kev raug txim; raug ib leeg nyob ib sab, ib tug nyob rau ib sab tes thiab lwm tus nyob rau lwm sab tes, raws li txoj kev hlub tshua, thiab txoj kev ncaj ncees, thiab txoj kev dawb huv uas nyob hauv Khetos, tus uas nyob ua ntej lub ntiaj teb tau pib.
- 6 Thiab nim no tsis tau muaj peev xwm muab sau cia rau hauv phau ntawv no twb tshuav li ib feem pua ntawm tej yam uas Yexus tau qhia tseeb rau cov neeg;
- 7 Tiam sis saib seb Nifais cov phiaj tau muaj feem ntau ntawm tej yam uas nws tau qhia cov neeg.
- 8 Thiab tej yam no kuv tau muab sau uas yog ib feem tsawg ntawm tej yam uas nws tau qhia cov neeg; thiab kuv tau txhob txwm muab lawv sau cia xwv kom lawv yuav raug koj rov qab los dua rau cov neeg no, los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, raws li tej lus uas Yexus tau hais lawm.

3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

- 9 Thiab thaum lawv tau txais tej no, tej uas tsim nyog tias lawv yuav tsum xub muaj los sim lawv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab yog tias lawv yuav ntseeg tej yam no ces tej yam loj dua no yuav raug ua rau lawv paub.
- 10 Thiab yog tias lawv yuav tsis ntseeg tej yam no, ces tej yam loj dua no yuav raug muab tuav tseg ncaim ntawm lawv mus rau lawv txoj kev raug txim.
- 11 Saib seb, kuv twb yuav luag sau tag nrho lawv, cov uas tau muab sau rau saum Nifais cov phiaj, tiam sis tus Tswv tau txwv, tau hais tias: Kuv yuav sim txoj kev ntseeg ntawm kuv cov neeg.
- 12 Yog li ntawd kuv, Maumoos, tsuas sau tej yam uas tus Tswv tau txib kuv xwb. Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, yuav xaus kuv tej lus hais, thiab yuav sau ntxiv tej yam uas kuv tau raug txib.
- 13 Yog li ntawd, kuv xav kom nej pom tias tus Tswv yeej tau qhia rau cov neeg tiag, tau ncuu li peb hnub; thiab tom qab ntawd nws tau ua nws tus kheej rau lawv pom tsis tu ncuu, thiab tau ntais tej mov mog tsis tu ncuu, thiab foom koob hmoov rau nws, thiab muab nws rau lawv.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau qhia thiab muab kev pab rau tej me nyuam ntawm cov neeg coob coob uas tau hais lawm, thiab nws tau ua rau lawv tej nplaig muag, thiab lawv tau hais tej yam loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob rau lawv tej txiv, twb loj dua li tej uas nws tau ua rau cov neeg paub; thiab nws tau ua rau lawv tej nplaig muag xwv kom lawv yuav hais tau lus.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej lawm—zaum ob uas nws tau ua nws tus kheej rau lawv pom, thiab tau mus cuag Leej Txiv, tom qab uas tau kho tag nrho lawv tej neeg muaj mob, thiab lawv tej neeg ceg tawv, thiab tau qhib tej qhov muag ntawm lawv tej neeg dig muag thiab kho tej neeg lag ntseg hnouv lus, thiab twb tau ua txhua yam kev kho mob nyob hauv lawv, thiab tau tsa ib tug neeg sawv hauv qhov tuag los, thiab tau ua nws lub hwj chim rau lawv pom, thiab tau nce mus cuag Leej Txiv—

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

- 16 Saib seb, tau muaj tias nyob rau tag kis cov neeg coob coob tau sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke, thiab lawv tau pom thiab tau hnov cov me nyuam yaus no; muaj tseeb tiag, tej me nyuam mos liab kuj tau qhib lawv tej qhov ncauj thiab tau hais tej yam zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob; thiab tej yam uas lawv tau hais tau raug txwv tsis pub ib tug neeg muab lawv sau cia.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg pab coj uas Yexus tau xaiv tau pib txij li lub sij hawm ntawd ua kev cai raus dej thiab qhia txhua tus uas tau los cuag lawv; thiab txhua tus uas tau ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Yexus lub npe tau muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo.
- 18 Thiab ntau tus ntawm lawv tau pom thiab tau hnov tej yam uas hais tsis tau tawm, tej uas tsis yog cai muab sau cia.
- 19 Thiab lawv tau qhia, thiab ib leeg tau muab kev pab rau ib leeg; thiab lawv tau muaj txhua yam zoo sib xws nyob hauv lawv, txhua tus neeg tau ua ncaj ncees, nrog lwm tus.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ua txhua yam tib yam li Yexus tau txib lawv.
- 21 Thiab lawv cov uas tau ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Yexus lub npe tau raug hu ua Khetos lub koom txoos.

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

3 Nifais 27

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum cov pab coj ntawm Yexus tab tom mus ncig thiab tab tom qhuab qhia tej uas lawv tau hnov thiab tau pom, thiab tab tom ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Yexus lub npe, tau muaj tias cov neeg pab coj tau sib sau ua ke thiab tau koom kev sib sib thov Vajtswv thiab kev yoo mov.
- 2 Thiab Yexus tau rov ua nws tus kheej rau lawv pom dua, vim lawv tau tab tom thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm nws lub npe; thiab Yexus tau los thiab tau sawv ntsug hauv lawv nruab nrab, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej xav kom kuv muab yam dab tsi rau nej?
- 3 Thiab lawv tau hais rau nws tias: Tus Tswv, peb xav kom koj qhia rau peb saib peb yuav hu lub koom txoos no npe li cas; vim muaj tej kev sib cav nyob hauv cov neeg txog yam teeb meem no.
- 4 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau lawv tias: Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, vim li cas cov neeg thiaj li yws yws thiab sib cav vim yog tej yam no?
- 5 Lawv tsis tau nyeem tej vajlugkub, uas hais tias nej yuav tsum ris Khetos lub npe rau saum nej, lub ntawd yog kuv lub npe no lo? Vim los ntawm lub npe no nej yuav raug hu nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg;
- 6 Thiab txhua tus uas ris kuv lub npe rau saum nws, thiab tiv mus kom txog thaum kawg, tus ntawd yuav raug dim nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, txhua yam uas nej yuav ua, nej yuav tsum ua nws los ntawm kuv lub npe; yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum hu lub koom txoos li kuv lub npe; thiab nej yuav tsum thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe xwv kom nws yuav foom koob hmoov rau lub koom txoos vim yog kuv.
- 8 Thiab nws yuav yog kuv lub koom txoos, vim li cas yog nws tsis hu li kuv lub npe? Vim yog ib lub koom txoos hu nyob hauv Mauxes lub npe ces nws kuj yog Mauxes lub koom txoos; los sis yog nws ho hu nyob hauv ib tug neeg lub npe ces nws yeej yog tus neeg ntawd lub koom txoos; tiam sis yog nws hu nyob hauv kuv lub npe ces nws yeej yog kuv lub koom txoos, yog tias lawv yuav tsa nyob rau saum kuv txoj moo zoo.

3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

- 9 Kuv hais tseeb rau nej, tias nej raug tsa nyob rau saum kuv txoj moo zoo; yog li ntawd nej yuav tsum hu txhua yam uas nej hu, los ntawm kuv lub npe; yog li ntawd yog nej thov Leej Txiv, rau lub koom txoos, yog tias los ntawm kuv lub npe Leej Txiv yeej yuav hnov nej;
- 10 Thiab yog lub koom txoos raug tsa nyob ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo ces Leej Txiv yuav ua tawm nws tej hauj lwm kiag nyob hauv nws.
- 11 Tiam sis yog nws tsis raug tsa nyob ntawm kuv txoj moo zoo, thiab ho raug tsa rau saum tej hauj lwm ntawm tib neeg, los sis rau saum tej hauj lwm ntawm tus dab phem, kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias lawv muaj kev xyiv fab nyob hauv lawv tej hauj lwm rau ib nyuag ntu, thiab tsis ntev ntawd qhov kawg yuav los, thiab lawv yuav raug ntov vau thiab pov rau hauv qhov cub, qhov uas yuav tsis muaj qhov rov qab los lawm.
- 12 Vim lawv tej hauj lwm yeej raws lawv qab, vim nws yog lawv tej hauj lwm uas lawv thiaj raug ntov vau; yog li ntawd cia li nco ntsoov tej yam uas kuv tau hais rau nej lawm.
- 13 Saib seb kuv tau muab rau nej kuv txoj moo zoo, thiab qhov no yog txoj moo zoo uas kuv tau muab rau nej—tias kuv tau los rau hauv lub ntiag teb los ua li Leej Txiv lub siab nyiam, vim kuv Txiv tau xa kuv los.
- 14 Thiab kuv Txiv tau xa kuv los xwv kom kuv yuav raug dai rau saum tus ntoo khaub lig; thiab tom qab uas kuv tau raug dai rau saum tus ntoo khaub lig lawm, kom kuv yuav rub tau tag nrho tej tib neeg los cuag kuv, ib yam li kuv tau raug muab dai los ntawm tib neeg tib yam li ntawd tib neeg yuav raug tsa los ntawm Leej Txiv, los sawv ntawm kuv xub ntiag, los txiav txim txog lawv tej hauj lwm, txawm lawv yuav zoo los sis txawm lawv yuav phem—
- 15 Thiab vim qhov no kuv thiaj raug muab dai; yog li ntawd, raws li lub hwj chim ntawm Leej Txiv kuv yuav coj tau tag nrho tej tib neeg los cuag kuv, xwv kom lawv yuav raug txiav txim raws li lawv tej hauj lwm.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

- 16 Thiab nws yuav muaj tias, tus uas hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe yuav raug muaj puv npo; thiab yog nws yuav tiv kom mus txog thaum kawg, saib seb, tus ntawd kuv yuav tsis suav muaj txim ntawm kuv txiv xub ntiag nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum kuv yuav sawv txiav txim rau lub ntiag teb.
- 17 Thiab tus uas tsis tiv kom mus txog thaum kawg, tus ntawd kuj yog nws tus uas yuav raug ntov vau thiab muab pov rau hauv qhov cub, qhov ntawd lawv yuav tsis muaj cuab kav tig rov qab tau ntxiv lawm, vim txoj kev ncaj ncees ntawm Leej Txiv.
- 18 Thiab qhov no yog txoj lus uas nws tau muab rau noob neej. Thiab vim qhov no nws tau ua tiav tej lus uas nws tau muab, thiab nws tsis dag, tiam sis ua kom muaj puv npo tag nrho li nws tej lus.
- 19 Thiab tsis muaj ib yam tsis dawb huv yuav muaj peev xwm nkag tau mus rau hauv nws lub nceeg vaj; yog li ntawd tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi nkag tau mus rau hauv nws qhov chaw so tsuas yog cov uas tau ntxuav lawv tej ris tsho nyob hauv kuv cov ntshav, vim yog lawv txoj kev ntseeg, thiab txoj kev hloov siab lees txim ntawm tag nrho lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab lawv txoj kev ntseeg kom mus txog thaum kawg.
- 20 Nim no qhov no yog txoj lus txib: Cia li hloov siab lees txim, nej sawv daws tag nrho hauv qab ntuj kawg, thiab los cuag kuv thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, xwv kom nej yuav raug ua kom dawb huv los ntawm txoj kev txais ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, xwv kom nej yuav sawv tsis muaj qhov ceb rau ntawm kuv xub ntiag nyob rau hnuv kawg.
- 21 Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tseeb tias, qhov no yog kuv txoj moo zoo; thiab nej yeej paub tej yam uas nej yuav tsum ua nyob hauv kuv lub koom txoos; rau tej hauj lwm uas nej tau pom kuv ua tej ntawd nej kuj yuav tsum ua thiab; rau tej uas nej tau pom kuv ua tej ntawd ntag nej yuav tsum ua;
- 22 Yog li ntawd, yog nej ua tej yam no nej yuav tau koob hmoov, vim nej yuav raug tsa sawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 23 Sau tej yam uas nej tau pom thiab tau hnov cia, tsuas yog tseg tej uas tau txwv xwb.
- 24 Sau tej hauj lwm ntawm cov neeg no, uas tseem yuav muaj cia, ib yam li tej uas tau sau cia, txog tej uas tau muaj tas los lawm.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

- 25 Vim saib seb, cov neeg no yuav raug txiav txim tawm ntawm cov ntawv uas tau muab sau cia lawm, thiab ntawm tej uas tseem yuav muab sau cia, vim los ntawm lawv cov no lawv tej hauj lwm yuav raug ua rau tej tib neeg paub.
- 26 Thiab saib seb, txhua yam raug muab sau cia los ntawm Leej Txiv; yog li ntawd lub ntiaj teb yuav raug txiav txim tawm ntawm cov ntawv uas yuav raug muab sau.
- 27 Thiab kom nej paub tias nej yuav yog cov txiav txim rau cov neeg no, raws li txoj kev txiav txim uas kuv muab rau nej, uas yuav yog ib txoj ncaj ncees. Yog li ntawd, nej yuav tsum ua neeg zoo li cas? Kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias, zoo tib yam li kuv.
- 28 Thiab nim no kuv yuav mus cuag Leej Txiv. Thiab kuv hais rau nej tseeb tias, txhua yam dab tsi uas nej yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe yeej yuav raug muab rau nej.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, cia li thov, thiab nej yuav tau txais; cia li khob, thiab nws yuav qhib rau nej; vim tus uas thov, yeej tau txais; thiab rau nws tus uas khob, nws yuav qhib.
- 30 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv txoj kev xyiv fab ntau heev, twb muaj puv npo, vim yog nej, thiab yog tiam neeg no; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab txawm yog Leej Txiv los twb zoo siab heev, thiab tag nrho tej tim tswv dawb huv saum ntuj, vim yog nej thiab tiam neeg no; vim lawv tsis muaj ib tug uas tau ploj li.
- 31 Saib seb, kuv xav kom nej yuav to taub; twb yog kuv hais lawv cov uas nim no tseem muaj txoj sia ntawm tiam neeg no; thiab lawv tsis muaj ib tug uas tau ploj li; thiab nyob hauv lawv kuv muaj txoj kev xyiv fab puv nkaus.
- 32 Tiam sis saib seb nws ua rau kuv tu siab vim yog tiam neeg thib plaub ntawm tiam neeg no mus, vim lawv yuav raug coj mus ua qhev los ntawm nws tib yam li uas thaud tus tub ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj; vim lawv yuav muab kuv muag yuav nyiaj dawb thiab kub, thiab rau tej yam uas yuav muaj npauj noj thiab tej yam uas tej tub sab yuav tsoo tau tawg thiab tuaj nyiaj tau. Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd kuv yuav los xyuas lawv, twb yuav tig lawv tej hauj lwm rau saum lawv tej taub hau kiag.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fullness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau xaus tej lus hais no tas nws tau hais rau nws cov pab coj tias: Nej cia li nkag mus hauv lub qhov rooj nqaim; vim txoj kev nqaim thiaj yog lub qhov rooj, thiab txoj kev ti thiaj yog txoj kev uas coj mus rau txoj sia, thiab tsis muaj neeg coob leej nrhiav tau nws; tiam sis txoj kev dav yog lub qhov rooj, thiab txoj kev loj ntawd yuav coj mus rau txoj kev tuag, thiab muaj coob tug tau mus txoj kev ntawd, mus txog hmo tsaus ntuj los, qhov uas tsis muaj neeg yuav ua tau hauj lwm.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

3 Nifais 28

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas, nws tau hais rau nws cov pab coj, ib tug dhau ib tug, hais rau lawv tias: Nej xav tau dab tsi ntawm kuv, tom qab uas kuv mus cuag Leej Txiv lawm?
- 2 Thiab lawv tag nrho, tsuas yog tshuav peb leeg xwb, tau hais tias: Peb xav kom tom qab uas peb tau ua neej nyob mus txog li tib neeg lub hnuv nyoog, kom peb txoj kev ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, qhov uas koj tau hu peb, yuav muaj qhov xaus, xwv kom peb yuav nrawm nroos los cuag koj nyob hauv koj lub nceeg vaj.
- 3 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej tau koob hmoov vim nej xav tau tej yam no ntawm kuv; yog li ntawd, tom qab uas nej muaj xya caum thiab ob xyoos nej yuav los cuag kuv nyob hauv kuv lub nceeg vaj; thiab nrog kuv, nej yuav nrhiav tau txoj kev so.
- 4 Thiab thaum nws tau hais rau lawv tas, nws tau tig nws tus kheej mus rau peb tug, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej xav kom kuv ua dab tsi rau nej thaum kuv mus cuag Leej Txiv lawm?
- 5 Thiab lawv tau nyuaj lawv tej siab heev, vim lawv tsis kam hais rau nws txog tej yam uas lawv xav tau.
- 6 Thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias: Saib seb, kuv paub nej tej kev xav, thiab nej xav tau tej yam uas Yauhas, tus uas kuv hlub, tus uas nyob nrog kuv hauv kuv lub caij ua hauj lwm qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, ua ntej uas kuv tau raug muab dai los ntawm cov Neeg Yudaais, xav tau ntawm kuv.
- 7 Yog li ntawd, nej tau koob hmoov ntau dua, vim nej yuav tsis tau saj txoj kev tuag li; tiam sis nej yuav muaj sia nyob mus pom tag nrho tej uas Leej Txiv ua rau noob neej, mus txog ntua thaum txhua yam yuav muaj puv npo raws li Leej Txiv lub siab nyiam, thaum kuv yuav los nyob hauv kuv lub yeeb koob nrog tej hwj chim ntawm ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 8 Thiab nej yuav tsis tau tiv tej kev mob ntawm txoj kev tuag; tiam sis thaum kuv los nyob hauv kuv lub yeeb koob tib ntsais muag nej yuav hloov ntawm lub cev uas txawj ploj txawj tuag mus rau lub ces uas tsis txawj ploj tsis txawj tuag; thiab tom qab ntawd nej yuav tau koob hmoov nyob hauv kuv Txiv lub nceeg vaj.

3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

- 9 Thiab ntxiv, nej yuav tsis muaj mob thaum nej tseem ua neej nyob, thiab tsis muaj kev nyuaj siab tsuas yog rau tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb xwb; thiab kuv yuav ua tag nrho txhua yam no vim yog yam uas nej tau xav yuav ntawm kuv, vim nej tau xav tias nej yuav coj tib neeg tej ntsuj plig los cuag kuv, thaum lub ntiaj teb tseem muaj nyob.
- 10 Thiab vim qhov no nej yuav muaj txoj kev xyiv fab puv nkaus; thiab nej yuav zaum nyob hauv kuv Txiv lub nceeg vaj; muaj tseeb tiag, nej txoj kev xyiv fab yuav muaj puv nkaus, tib yam li Leej Txiv tau muab txoj kev xyiv fab puv nkaus rau kuv; thiab nej yuav zoo tib yam li kuv, thiab kuv zoo tib yam li Leej Txiv; thiab Leej Txiv thiab kuv yog ib tug.
- 11 Thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ua tim khawv txog Leej Txiv thiab kuv; thiab Leej Txiv muab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv rau noob neej, vim yog kuv.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Yexus tau hais tej lus no tas, nws tau tuav lawv txhua tus nrog nws tus ntv tes tsuas yog tshuav peb tug uas yuav nyob xwb, thiab tom qab ntawd nws txawm tau ncaim lawm.
- 13 Thiab saib seb, ntuj tau qhib, thiab lawv tau raug coj mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thiab tau pom thiab tau hnov tej yam uas hais tsis tau.
- 14 Thiab lawv tau raug txwv kom lawv tsis txhob hais; thiab lawv tsis tau raug muab hwj chim kom lawv yuav muaj cuab kav hais tau tej uas lawv tau pom thiab tau hnov;
- 15 Thiab txawm tias lawv nyob hauv lub cev los sis tawm ntawm lub cev, lawv tsis muaj peev xwm qhia tau; vim lawv tau xav tias nws zoo li ib txoj kev hloov hlo ntawm lawv, kom lawv raug hloov ncaim ntawm lub cev uas txawj ploj tuag mus rau ib lub tsis txawj ploj tuag, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj peev xwm pom tau tej yam ntawm Vajtswv.
- 16 Tiam sis tau muaj tias lawv tau rov qhuab qhia rau saum lub ntiaj teb dua; txawm li ntawd los lawv tsis tau qhuab qhia txog tej yam uas lawv tau hnov thiab pom, vim yog txoj lus txib uas tau muab rau lawv nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 17 Thiab nim no, txawm tias lawv txawj ploj tuag los sis tsis txawj ploj tuag, txij li hnuv uas lawv tau hloov hlo, kuv tsis paub;

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

- 18 Tiam sis kuv paub npaum li no, raws li phau ceev xwm txheej uas tau raug muab—lawv tau tawm mus rau saum thaj av, thiab tau muab kev pab rau tag nrho cov neeg, tau sau coob npaum li coob tau cov uas yuav ntseeg lawv tej lus qhuab qhia los rau lub koom txoos; tau ua kev cai raus dej rau lawv, thiab coob npaum li coob tau uas tau ua kev cai raus dej tau txais tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 19 Thiab lawv tau raug pov rau hauv qhov taub los ntawm lawv cov uas tsis tau zwm rau hauv lub koom txoos. Thiab tej nkuaj ntim tsis tas lawv, vim lawv tau ntuag ua ob sab.
- 20 Thiab lawv tau raug pov rau hauv tej qhov av, tiam sis lawv tau ntaus tej av nrog Vajtsvw txoj lus, kawg tias thaum kawg los ntawm nws lub hwj chim lawv tau raug cawm dim tawm ntawm tej qhov av tob tob; thiab yog li ntawd lawv tsis muaj peev xwm khawb tej qhov kom txaus ntim lawv.
- 21 Thiab lawv tau raug pov rau hauv qhov cub peb zaug thiab tsis tau txais kev mob dab tsi.
- 22 Thiab lawv tau raug pov ob zaug rau hauv ib lub qhov uas muaj tej tsiaj qus nyob; thiab saib seb lawv tau ua si nrog tej tsiaj qus zoo ib yam li ib tug me nyuam yaus ua si nrog ib tug me nyuam yaj uas tsis tau tso mis, thiab tsis tau txais kev mob dab tsi.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias li no lawv tau tawm mus rau tag nrho hauv cov neeg ntawm Nifais, thiab tau qhuab qhia Khetos txoj moo zoo rau tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob saum thaj av; thiab lawv tau raug hloov siab tshiab los cuag tus Tswv, thiab tau raug los koom rau Khetos lub koom txoos, thiab li no cov neeg ntawm tiam neeg ntawd tau koob hmoov, raws li Yexus txoj lus.
- 24 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, yuav xaus hais txog tej yam no ib ntus.
- 25 Saib seb, kuv twb yuav luag sau tej npe ntawm cov uas yuav tsis tau saj txoj kev tuag li, tiam sis tus Tswv tau txwv; yog li ntawd kuv thiaj tsis tau muab lawv sau, vim lawv raug muab zais ncaim ntawm lub ntiaj teb lawm.
- 26 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau pom lawv, thiab lawv tau muab kev pab rau kuv.
- 27 Thiab saib seb lawv yuav nrog Lwm Haiv Neeg nyob, thiab Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav tsis paub lawv.
- 28 Lawv kuj yuav nrog cov Neeg Yudais nyob thiab, thiab cov Neeg Yudais yuav tsis paub lawv.

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

29 Thiab yuav tau muaj tias, thaum tus Tswv pom tsim nyog nyob hauv nws txoj kev txawj ntse kom lawv yuav muab kev pab rau tag nrho tej xeem ntawm Ixayees uas tau tawg ri niab, thiab rau txhua haiv neeg, txhua xeem neeg, txhua yam lus thiab cov neeg sawv daws, thiab yuav coj ntau tus tawm ntawm lawv los mus cuag Yexus, xwv kom lawv tej kev xav tau yuav muaj puv nkaus, thiab vim yog lub hwj chim yaum ntawm Vajtswv uas nyob hauv lawv.

30 Thiab lawv zoo ib yam li Vajtswv tej tim tswv, thiab yog lawv yuav thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe lawv yeej muaj peev xwm ua lawv tus kheej los rau tus neeg dab tsi pom los tau uas lawv xav tias zoo.

31 Yog li ntawd, tej hauj lwm loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob yuav raug ua tiav los ntawm lawv, ua ntej hnuv loj thiab yuav los thaum tag nrho cov neeg sawv daws yuav tsum tau sawv tseeb tseeb ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim;

32 Muaj tseeb tiag nyob hauv Lwm Haiv Neeg los twb yuav muaj ib txoj hauj lwm loj thiab zoo kawg nkaus uas xav tsis thoob ua tiav los ntawm lawv, ua ntej hnuv txiav txim ntawd.

33 Thiab yog nej tau muaj tag nrho tej vajlugkub uas tau muab ib zag txog tag nrho tej hauj lwm zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob ntawm Khetos, ces raws li Khetos tej lus, nej yuav paub tias tej yam no yeej yuav tsum muaj los tiag.

34 Thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws tus uas yuav tsis mloog rau Yexus tej lus, thiab kuj rau lawv cov uas nws tau xaiv thiab tau xa mus rau hauv lawv; vim tus uas tsis kam txais Yexus tej lus thiab tej lus ntawm cov uas nws tau xa mus tsis kam txais yuav nws; thiab yog li ntawd nws yuav tsis kam txais yuav lawv nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg;

35 Thiab nws yuav zoo dua rau lawv yog lawv tsis tau yug los. Vim nej puas xav tias nej muaj peev xwm muab tau txoj kev txim lij ntawm Vajtswv tus uas raug tawm tsam pov tseg, tus uas tau raug neeg tsuj rau hauv qab xib taws, xwv kom txoj kev cawm seeg yuav los tau ntawm qhov ntawd los no los?

36 Thiab nim no saib seb, ib yam li kuv tau hais txog cov uas tus Tswv tau xaiv, muaj tseeb tiag, tib yam li peb tug uas tau raug coj mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, uas kuv tsis paub xyov lawv puas raug ua kom huv ntawm txoj kev txawj ploj tuag mus rau txoj kev tsis txawj ploj tuag—

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

- 37 Tiam sis saib seb, txij li thaum kuv tau sau tej ntawd tas, kuv tau thov tus Tswv, thiab nws tau ua rau kuv paub tias yuav tsum tsim nyog muaj ib qho kev hloov ua tiav rau lawv tej cev, los sis tsis li ntawd lawv yuav tsum tau saj txoj kev tuag xwb;
- 38 Yog li ntawd, kom lawv yuav tsis tau saj txoj kev tuag tau muaj ib qho kev hloov ua tiav nyob rau lawv tej cev, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tau nyiaj txoj kev mob nkeeg los sis txoj kev txom nyem siab tsuas yog rau tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb xwb.
- 39 Nim no txoj kev hloov no yeej tsis tau npaum li txoj uas yuav muaj nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg; tiam sis tau muaj ib qho kev hloov ua tiav nyob hauv lawv, kawg tias Dab Ntxwg Nyoog tsis muaj peev xwm muaj hwj chim rau saum lawv, uas nws tsis muaj peev xwm ntxias tau lawv; thiab lawv tau raug ua dawb huv thaum tseem ua neej nyob, kom lawv yuav dawb huv, thiab kom tej hwj chim ntawm lub ntiaj teb tsis muaj peev xwm tuav tau lawv.
- 40 Thiab nyob zoo li no lawv tau raug kom nyob mus txog Khetos hnuv txiav txim; thiab nyob rau hauv hnuv ntawd lawv tseem yuav tau raug txais ib qho kev hloov loj dua, thiab raug txais mus rau hauv Leej Txiv lub nceeg vaj uas yuav tsis tawm mus sab nraud ib zaug ntxiv lawm, tiam sis yuav nyob nrog Vajtswv mus ib txhis li saum ntuj ceeb tsheej.

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

3 Nifais 29

- 1 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias thaum tus Tswv pom tias tsim nyog, nyob hauv nws txoj kev txawj ntse, tias tej lus hais no yuav los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg raws li nws txoj lus, thaum ntawd nej yuav paub tias txoj kev khi lus uas Leej Txiv tau khi nrog Ixayees tej me nyuam, txog lawv txoj kev rov qab los txum tim rau tej av ntawm lawv tej qub txeeg qub teg, twb pib muaj puv npo lawm.
- 2 Thiab nej yuav paub tias tus Tswv tej lus, uas tau raug hais los ntawm tej yaj saub dawb huv, yuav muaj puv npo; thiab tsis tas nej yuav hais tias tus Tswv tau ncuu nws txoj kev los rau Ixayees tej me nyuam.
- 3 Thiab tsis tas nej yuav xav nyob hauv nej tej siab tias tej lus uas tau raug hais yeej yuav tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, vim saib seb, tus Tswv yeej yuav nco ntsoov nws txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau nws cov neeg ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 4 Thiab thaum nej yuav pom tej lus hais no los tshwm rau hauv nej, thaum ntawd tsis tas nej yuav cem tsis kam lees yuav rau tej uas tus Tswv ua lawm, vim rab ntaj ntawm nws txoj kev ncaj ncees twb nyob hauv nws sab tes xis; thiab saib seb, nyob rau hnuv ntawd, yog nej pheej cem tsis kam lees yuav rau tej uas nws ua ces nws yuav ua kom los kov yeej nej tsis ntev no.
- 5 Kev txom nyem raug rau nws tus uas cem tsis kam lees yuav rau tej uas tus Tswv ua; muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem raug rau nws tus uas yuav tsis kam lees yuav Khetos thiab nws tej hauj lwm!
- 6 Muaj tseeb tiag, kev txom nyem raug rau nws tus uas yuav tsis lees yuav tus Tswv tej kev tshwm sim, thiab tus uas yuav hais tias tus Tswv tsis ua hauj lwm ntxiv los ntawm kev tshwm sim lawm, los sis los ntawm txoj kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, los sis los ntawm tej kev pub txiaj ntsim, los sis los ntawm txoj kev txawj hais lwm yam lus, los sis los ntawm tej kev kho mob zoo, los sis los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim!

3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

7 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kev txom nyem raug rau nws tus uas nyob rau hnuv ntawd, ua kom muaj ntsej muag, hais tias yuav tsis muaj tej txuj ci tseem ceeb ua tau los ntawm Yexus Khetos; vim nws tus uas ua li no yuav rais los mus zoo li tus tub ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj, rau nws yuav tsis muaj txoj kev zam txim, raws li Khetos txoj lus!

8 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tsis tas nej yuav hais lus ntxub txog, los sis cem tsis lees yuav, los sis ua saib tsis taus cov Neeg Yudais, los sis ib tug twg ntawm cov seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees ntxiv lawm; vim saib seb, tus Tswv yeej nco ntsoov nws txoj kev khi lus rau lawv, thiab nws yuav ua rau lawv raws li tej uas nws tau khi lus tseg lawm.

9 Yog li ntawd tsis tas nej yuav xav tias nej muaj peev xwm tig tau tus Tswv sab tes xis mus rau sab laug, xwv kom nws yuav tsis txhob txiav txim kom puv npo nyob ntawm txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau tsev neeg Ixayees lawm.

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

3 Nifais 30

- 1 Cuab pob ntseg, Au nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab cia li hnov Yexus Khetos tej lus, Vajtsvw tus uas tseem muaj txoj sia nyob tus Tub, tej uas nws tau txib kuv kom kuv yuav tsum hais txog nej, vim, saib seb nws tau txib kuv tias kom kuv yuav tsum sau, hais tias:
- 2 Cia li tig, tag nrho nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg, ncaim ntawm nej tej kev phem; thiab cia li hloov siab ntawm nej tej kev ua phem, ntawm nej tej kev dag thiab tej kev ntxias, thiab ntawm nej tej kev sib daj sib deev, thiab ntawm nej tej kev ua dab, thiab nej tej kev pe dab pe mlom, thiab ntawm nej tej kev tua neeg, thiab nej tej kev ua xib hwb cuav, thiab nej tej kev xav tau luag tug, thiab nej tej kev sib cav sib ceg, thiab ncaim ntawm tag nrho nej tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias, thiab cia li los cuag kuv, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, xwv kom nej yuav tau txais zam txim ntawm nej tej kev txhaum, thiab kom muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv puv npo, xwv kom nej yuav raug suav nrog kuv cov neeg uas yog cov ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.

3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

Plaub Nifais

Nifais Phau Ntawv

Tus uas Yog Nifais tus Tub—Ib tug ntawm Yexus Khetos cov Pab Coj

Ib zag txog Nifais cov neeg, raws li nws phau ceev xwm txbeej.

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo peb caug thiab plaub tau dhau mus, thiab peb caug thiab tsib kuj tib yam, thiab saib seb Yexus cov pab coj tau ua Khetos ib lub koom txoos nyob tag nrho rau hauv tej thaj av ib puag ncig. Thiab txhua tus uas tau los cuag lawv, thiab tau hloov siab lees txim tiag txog lawv tej kev txhaum, tau raug ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Yexus lub npe; thiab lawv kuj tau txais tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo peb caug thiab rau, cov neeg tag nrho tau hloov siab tshiab los rau tus Tswv, thoob plaws rau saum thaj av, cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tsis muaj tej kev sib cav thiab tej kev sib ceg nyob hauv lawv, thiab txhua tus neeg tau ua ncaj ib tug nrog rau lwm tus.
- 3 Thiab lawv muaj txhua yam sib npaug zos nyob hauv lawv; yog li ntawd tsis muaj cov muaj thiab cov pluag, cov raug txim thiab cov tsis muaj txim, tiam sis lawv sawv daws raug ua nyob ywj siab, thiab yog cov tau koob hmoov ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo peb caug thiab xya kuj tau dhau mus, thiab kuj tseem muaj kev thaj yeeb tsis tu ncu a nyob hauv thaj av.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tej hauj lwm loj thiab zoo kawg xav tsis thoob ua tiav los ntawm Yexus cov pab coj, kawg tias lawv tau kho tej neeg mob zoo, thiab tsa tej neeg tuag sawv, thiab ua rau tej neeg ceg tawv mus tau kev, thiab tej neeg dig muag rov txais lawv tej kev pom kev, thiab tej neeg lag ntseg hnov lus; thiab tag nrho txhua yam txuj ci tseem ceeb lawv tau ua nyob rau hauv cov neeg; thiab tsis muaj yam dab tsi uas lawv tau ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb tsuas yog los ntawm Yexus lub npe xwb.

Fourth Nephi

The Book of Nephi

Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

6 Thiab li no xyoo peb caug thiab yim tau dhau mus, thiab peb caug thiab cuaj los tib yam, thiab plaub caug thiab ib, thiab plaub caug thiab ob, muaj tseeb tiag, twb mus txog rau thaum xyoo plaub caug thiab cuaj tau dhau mus, thiab tib yam li tsib caug thiab ib, thiab tsib caug thiab ob; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab twb mus txog rau thaum xyoo tsib caug thiab cuaj tau dhau mus.

7 Thiab tus Tswv tau ua rau lawv vam meej heev nyob rau hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, kawg tias lawv tau rov tsa tej nroog dua rau tej zos uas tau raug kub hnyiab lawm.

8 Muaj tseeb tiag, lub niag nroog loj Xalahelas ntawd los lawv kuj tau kom rov tsa dua.

9 Tiam sis tau muaj ntau lub nroog uas tau tog, thiab tej dej tau tawm los nyob lawv tej chaw; yog li ntawd tej nroog no tsis muaj peev xwm ua tau dua tshiab.

10 Thiab nim no, saib seb, tau muaj tias Nifais cov neeg tau hlob muaj zog, thiab tau zeej noob sai heev kawg nkaus, thiab tau rais los ua ib co neeg zoo nkauj zoo nraug thiab txaus nyiam heev.

11 Thiab lawv tau raug sib yuav, thiab raug muab hauv kev sib yuav, thiab tau koob hmoov raws li tej kev cog lus ntau uas tus Tswv tau cog rau lawv lawm.

12 Thiab lawv tsis tau mus raws li tej kev ua ub ua no thiab tej kab ke ntawm Mauxes txoj kev cai; tiam sis lawv tau mus raws li tej lus txib uas lawv tau txais los ntawm lawv tus Tswv thiab lawv tus Vajtswv, tsis tu ncuav nyob hauv txoj kev yoo mov thiab txoj kev thov Vajtswv, thiab nyob hauv txoj kev nquag nquag sib ntsib ua ke thov Vajtswv thiab mloog tus Tswv txoj lus.

13 Thiab tau muaj tias tsis muaj kev tsis sib haum nyob hauv cov neeg sawv daws, nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av; tiam sis tau muaj tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj tau ua los ntawm Yexus cov pab coj.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias xyoo xya caum thiab ib tau dhau mus, thiab xyoo xya caum thiab ob los ib yam, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab ua kom sai, xyoo xya caum thiab cuaj tau dhau mus; muaj tseeb tiag, xyoo ib puas tau dhau mus, thiab Yexus cov pab coj, uas nws tau xaiv, tag nrho tau mus rau hauv Vajtswv lub yeeb tsheej, tsuas yog tshuav peb tug uas yuav nyob xwb; thiab tau muaj lwm cov pab coj tau raug tsa los nyob lawv chaw; thiab ntau tus ntawm tiam neeg ntawd tau tuag tas.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias twb tsis muaj kev sib cav sib ceg rau hauv thaj av, vim yog Vajtsv txoj kev hlub uas tau nyob hauv cov neeg tej siab.
- 16 Thiab tsis muaj tej kev xav tau luag tug, los sis tej kev sib cav sib ceg, los sis tej kev sib thab, los sis tej kev ua niam ntiav, los sis tej kev dag, los sis tej kev tua neeg, los sis ib yam kev xav sib daj sib deev li; thiab tseeb tiag tsis tau muaj ib co neeg ua zoo siab tshaj nyob hauv tag nrho cov neeg uas tau raug tsim los ntawm Vajtsv txhais tes.
- 17 Tsis muaj tej tub sab, los sis tej neeg tua neeg, thiab twb tsis muaj Neeg Lamas, los sis ib yam npe lawm ib pab; tiam sis lawv tsuas ua ib pab, Khetos cov me nyuam, thiab cov uas tau Vajtsv lub nceeg vaj ua lawv tug.
- 18 Thiab lawv tau koob hmoov heev! Vim tus Tswv tau foom koob hmoov rau lawv nyob rau tag nrho tej uas lawv ua; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb tau koob hmoov thiab vam meej mus txog ib puas thiab kaum xyoo tau dhau mus; thiab thawj tiam neeg txij li Khetos los tau dhau mus, thiab tsis tau muaj kev tsis sib haum nyob txhua qhov hauv thaj av.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias Nifais, nws tus uas tau ceev phau ceev xwm txheej kawg no, (thiab nws tau ceev tej ntawd rau saum Nifais cov phiaj) tau tuag, thiab nws tus tub Amos tau ceev tej ntawd nyob hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab nws kuj tau ceev tej ntawd rau saum Nifais cov phiaj thiab.
- 20 Thiab nws tau ceev tej ntawd tau yim caum thiab plaub xyoos, thiab tseem pheej muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av, tsuas yog tshuav ib feem me me ntawm cov neeg uas tau ntxeev siab khiav ntawm lub koom txoos mus thiab tau ris lub npe Neeg Lamas rau saum lawv; yog li ntawd tau pib muaj Neeg Lamas dua nyob hauv thaj av.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias Amos kuj tau tuag lawm thiab, (thiab tau muaj ib puas thiab cuaj caum thiab plaub xyoos txij li Khetos los) thiab nws tus tub Amos tau ceev phau ceev xwm txheej nyob hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab nws kuj tau ceev tej ntawd nyob saum Nifais cov phiaj thiab; thiab nws kuj tau raug muaj sau rau hauv Nifais phau ntawv, uas yog phau no.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias ob puas xyoo tau dhau mus; thiab tiam neeg thib ob tau tuag tag tsuas tshuav qhov tug xwb.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

- 23 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, xav kom nej paub tias cov neeg tau zeej noob ntxiv, kawg tias lawv tau ri mus rau txhua txhia qhov nyob rau saum thaj av, thiab tias lawv tau rais los mus nplua nuj heev, vim yog lawv txoj kev vam meej nyob hauv Khetos.
- 24 Thiab nim no, nyob hauv xyoo ob puas thiab ib no tau pib muaj ib txhia uas nyob hauv lawv uas tau khav theeb, ib yam li hnav tej ris tsho kim kim, thiab txhua yam hlaws zoo nkauj, thiab tej yam zoo ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 25 Thiab txij li lub sij hawm ntawd mus lawv tau muaj lawv tej khoom thiab lawv tej khoom siv tsis sib npaug nyob hauv lawv lawm.
- 26 Thiab lawv tau pib raug muab sib faib ua tej cwbc; thiab lawv tau pib tsim tej koom txoos rau lawv tus kheej kom muaj nyiaj, thiab tau pib tsis kam lees yuav Khetos lub koom txoos tseeb.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum ob puas thiab kaum xyoo tau dhau mus lawm tau muaj ntau lub koom txoos nyob hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, tau muaj ntau lub koom txoos uas hais tias twb paub tus Khetos, tiam sis lawv tsis kam lees feem ntau ntawm nws txoj moo zoo, kawg tias lawv tau txais txhua yam kev phem, thiab tau muab qhov uas dawb ceev mus rau nws tus uas qhov ntawd tau raug txwv vim yog txoj kev tsis tsim nyog.
- 28 Thiab lub koom txoos no tau loj hlob heev vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj, thiab vim yog Dab Ntxwng Nyoog lub hwj chim tus uas tuav tau lawv tej siab.
- 29 Thiab ntxiv, muaj dua ib lub koom txoos uas tsis lees Khetos; thiab lawv tau tsim txom Khetos lub koom txoos tseeb, vim yog lawv txoj kev txo hwj chim thiab lawv txoj kev ntseeg Khetos; thiab lawv tau ntxub lawv vim yog ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb uas tau ua nyob hauv lawv.
- 30 Yog li ntawd lawv tau siv hwj chim thiab cai rau saum Yexus cov pab coj uas tau nyob nrog lawv, thiab lawv tau muab lawv pov rau hauv qhov taub; tiam sis los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus, uas nyob hauv lawv, tej qhov taub tau tawg ua ob sab, thiab lawv tau tawm mus ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj heev nyob hauv lawv.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

31 Txawm li ntawd, thiab txawm tias tau muaj txhua yam txuj ci tseem ceeb no los, cov neeg tseem tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv, thiab tau nrhiav muab lawv tua, tib yam li cov Neeg Yudais uas nyob hauv Yeluxalees uas tau nrhiav tua Yexus, raws li nws txoj lus.

32 Thiab lawv tau muab lawv pov rau hauv tej nplaim hluav taws, thiab lawv tau tawm los tsis tau txais mob dab tsi.

33 Thiab lawv kuj tau muab lawv pov rau hauv tej qhov ntawm tej tsiaj qus, thiab lawv tau ua si nrog tej tsiaj qus ib yam li ib tug me nyuam yaus ua si nrog ib tug me nyuam yaj; thiab lawv tau tawm ntawm tej tsiaj ntawd los, tsis tau txais mob dab tsi.

34 Txawm li ntawd los, cov neeg tseem tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv, vim lawv tau raug coj los ntawm ntau tus pov thawj thiab tej yaj saub cuav uas tau ua ntau lub koom txoos, thiab ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj. Thiab lawv tau ntaus Yexus cov neeg; tiam sis Yexus cov neeg tsis tau ntaus rov qab. Thiab li no lawv tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus thiab nyob hauv txoj kev phem, ib xyoo dhau ib xyoo, mus txog thaum ob puas thiab peb caug xyoo tau dhau mus.

35 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo no, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob hauv xyoo ob puas thiab peb caug thiab ib, tau muaj ib qho kev sib faib loj heev nyob hauv cov neeg.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo no tau sawv ib co neeg uas hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, thiab lawv yog cov ntseeg Khetos tseeb; thiab nyob hauv lawv tau muaj cov uas tau raug hu los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas—cov Neeg Yakhauj, thiab cov neeg Yauxej, thiab cov Neeg Xaulas;

37 Yog li ntawd cov neeg ntseeg Khetos tseeb, thiab cov neeg teev tiam Khetos tseeb, (nyob hauv los kuj muaj Yexus peb tug pab coj ua yuav nyob) tau raug hu ua cov Neeg Nifais, thiab cov Neeg Yakhauj, thiab cov neeg Yauxej, thiab cov Neeg Xaulas.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv cov uas tsis kam lees yuav txoj moo zoo tau raug hu ua cov Neeg Lamas, thiab cov Neeg Lemu-ees, thiab cov Neeg Ixama-ees; thiab lawv tsis tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus, tiam sis lawv tau zoo siab hlo ntseeg siab tawm tsam Khetos txoj moo zoo; thiab lawv tau qhia lawv tej me nyuam tias kom lawv tsis txhob ntseeg, tib yam li lawv tej yawg koob, txij li thaum chiv keeb, uas tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

39 Thiab qhov ntawd tau muaj vim yog txoj kev phem thiab txoj kev qias ntawm lawv tej yawg koob, tib yam li nyob thaum chiv keeb. Thiab lawv tau raug qhia kom ntxub Vajtswv cov me nyuam, tib yam li cov Neeg Lamas tau raug qhia kom ntxub Nifais tej me nyuam txij li thaum chiv keeb los.

40 Thiab tau muaj tias ob puas thiab plaub caug thiab plaub xyoos tau dhau mus, thiab li no yog tej kev tshwm sim ntawm cov neeg. Thiab feem coob ntawm cov neeg tau loj hlob muaj zog, thiab tau rais los mus coob heev dua li Vajtswv cov neeg.

41 Thiab lawv kuj tseem pheej ua tej koom txoos rau lawv tus kheej tsis tseg li, thiab tau tsab zam rau lawv nrog txhua yam muaj nuj nqis. Thiab li no ob puas thiab tsib caug xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab ob puas thiab rau caum xyoo kuj tau dhau mus.

42 Thiab tau muaj tias feem phem ntawm cov neeg tau pib rov qab tsim tej kev khi lus thiab tej kev tuav hauv ntsiag to ntawm Nkadi-atoos.

43 Thiab cov neeg uas raug hu ua Nifais cov neeg tau pib khav nyob hauv lawv tej siab, vim yog lawv tej kev nplua nuj heev, thiab rais los mus tsis muaj nuj nqis zoo li lawv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas.

44 Thiab txij lub sij hawm no mus cov pab coj tau pib tu siab rau tej kev txhaum ntawm lub ntiag teb.

45 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum peb puas xyoo tau dhau mus, cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau rais los mus ua neeg phem heev ib tug zoo li ib tug.

46 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tub sab ntawm Nkadi-atoos tau ri mus thoo plaws rau saum thaj av; thiab tsis muaj ib tug uas ncaj ncees li tsuas yog Yexus cov pab coj xwb. Thiab lawv tau muab tej kub thiab tej nyiaj dawb tso rau ib qho ntau heev, thiab tau sib pauv tej khoom txhua yam.

47 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab peb puas thiab tsib xyoos tau dhau mus lawm, (thiab cov neeg tseem sij nyob hauv txoj kev phem) Amos tau tuag lawm; thiab nws tus kwv, Amaloos, tau ceev phau ceev xwm txheej nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

48 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum peb puas thiab nees nkaum xyoo tau dhau mus, Amaloos, tau raug yuam los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiaj muab tej ceev xwm txheej uas dawb ceev zais cia—muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej dawb ceev uas tau muab cev nqis dhau ib tiam mus rau ib tiam, uas dawb ceev—mus txog thaum peb puas thiab nees nkaus xyoo txij li Khetos txoj kev los.

49 Thiab nws tau muab lawv zais rau tus Tswv, xwv kom lawv yuav rov qab los dua rau cov seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Yakhauj, raws li tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej thiab tej kev cog lus ntawm tus Tswv. Thiab li no yog qhov kawg ntawm Amaloos phau ceev xwm txheej.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Maumoos phau Ntawv

Maumoos 1

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, ua ib phau ceev xwm txheej txog tej yam uas kuv tau pom thiab tau hnob, thiab hu nws ua Maumoos Phau Ntawv.
- 2 Thiab ntsig txog lub sij hawm uas Amaloos tau muab tej ceev xwm txheej zais rau tus Tswv, nws tau los cuag kuv, (kuv tau muaj hnub nyoog kwv yees li kaum xyoo, thiab kuv tau pib kawm tej yam raws li txoj kev kawm ntawm kuv cov neeg) thiab Amaloos tau hais rau kuv tias: Kuv pom tau tias koj yog ib tug me nyuam ua dab tsi ua tiag tiag, thiab koj pom tau sai;
- 3 Yog li ntawd, thaum koj muaj kwv yees li nees nkaum thiab plaub xyoos kuv xav kom koj yuav nco txog tej yam uas koj tau pom txog cov neeg no; thiab thaum koj muaj hnub nyoog li ntawd cia li mus rau thaj av Atoos, mus rau ib lub me nyuam roob uas yuav raug hu ua See; thiab nyob qhov ntawd kuv tau muab zais rau tus Tswv tag nrho tej kev sau dawb ceev uas hais txog cov neeg no.
- 4 Thiab saib seb, koj yuav tsum muab Nifais cov phiaj los rau koj tus kheej, thiab cov seem koj yuav tsum cia lawv nyob qhov qub chaw; thiab koj yuav tsum sau rau saum Nifais cov phiaj tag nrho txhua yam uas koj tau pom txog cov neeg no.
- 5 Thiab kuv, Maumoos, tau yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Nifais, (thiab kuv txiv lub npe yog Maumoos) kuv tau nco ntsoov tej yam uas Amaloos tau txib kuv.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, muaj kaum ib xyoos, tau raug kuv txiv coj mus rau thaj av qab teb, mus rau thaj av Xalahelas.
- 7 Tag nrho saum thaj av tau rais los muaj tej tsev npog luas, thiab cov neeg tau muaj yuav luag coob, npaum li tej xuab zeb tom ntug dej hiav txwv.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo no tau pib muaj ib npluav rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, cov uas yog cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Yakhaus thiab cov neeg Yauxej thiab cov Neeg Xaulas; thiab npluav rog no tau muaj nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Lemu-ees thiab cov Neeg Ixama-ees.

The Book of Mormon

Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 Nim no cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov Neeg Lemu-ees thiab cov Neeg Ixama-ees tau raug hu ua cov Neeg Lamas, thiab ob pab neeg ntawd yog cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias npluav rog tau pib hauv lawv nyob hauv tej ciam teb ntawm Xalahelas, ze tej dej ntawm Xidoos.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau sib sau tuaj ua ke ib co neeg coob heev, twb muaj coob dua li peb caug txhiab leej. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muaj nyob hauv tib xyoos no ntau npluav rog, uas cov Neeg Nifais tau kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas thiab tau tua lawv coob leej.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau thim lawv tej kev npaj ua, thiab tau muaj kev cog lus kom muaj kev thaj yeeb nyob hauv thaj av; thiab txoj kev thaj yeeb tau nyob kwv yees ncuu li plaub xyoos, uas tsis muaj ntshav nrog li.
- 13 Tiam sis kev phem tau huaj vam nyob rau saum tag nrho thaj av, kawg tias tus Tswv tau muab nws cov pab coj uas nws hlub tshem mus lawm, thiab tej hauj lwm ntawm tej txuj ci tseem ceeb thiab ntawm txoj kev kho mob zoo tau tseg vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm cov neeg.
- 14 Thiab tsis muaj tej kev pub los ntawm tus Tswv, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tsis tau los rau leej twg hlo li, vim yog lawv tej kev phem thiab txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 15 Thiab kuv, tau muaj hnuv nyoog kaum tsib xyoos thiab tau muaj lub siab xav ua tiag tiag, yog li ntawd kuv tau raug xyuas los ntawm tus Tswv, thiab tau saj thiab tau paub txog Yexus txoj kev zoo.
- 16 Thiab kuv tau rau siab qhuab qhia rau cov neeg no, tiam sis kuv lub qhov ncauj tau raug kaw, thiab kuv tau raug txwv kom kuv txhob mus qhuab qhia rau lawv; vim saib seb lawv tau zoo siab hlo ntseev siab tawm tsam lawv tus Vajtswv; thiab cov pab coj uas hlub tau raug coj tawm ntawm thaj av mus, vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj.
- 17 Tiam sis kuv tseem tau nyob hauv lawv, tiam sis kuv tau raug txwv tsis qhuab qhia rau lawv, vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab; thiab vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab thaj av tau raug foom vim lawv tej hauj lwm.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

18 Thiab cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos no, uas nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas, tau nyob feem ntau hauv thaj av, kawg tias cov neeg uas nyob ntawd tau pib zais lawv tej nyiaj txiag rau hauv av; thiab tej ntawd tau rais los mus nplua, vim tus Tswv tau foom thaj av, xwv kom lawv yuav muab tsis tau tej ntawd, los sis nrhiav tsis tau lawv ntxiv lawm.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj kev ua khawv koob, thiab kev ua dab, thiab kev ua yees siv; thiab lub hwj chim ntawm tus dab tau raug siv nyob rau saum thaj av tag nrho, twb tau muaj puv nkaus li tag nrho tej lus ntawm Anpinadais, thiab Xamuyees tus uas yog Neeg Lamas.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

Maumoos 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv tib xyoos ntawd tau rov pib muaj ib npluav rog dua nyob nruab nrab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas. Thiab txawm tias kuv tseem hluas, los tseem tau muaj lub cev loj; yog li ntawd Nifais cov neeg tau tsa kom kuv los ua lawv tus thawj coj, los sis tus thawj coj ntawm lawv cov tub rog.
- 2 Yog li ntawd nyob hauv kuv xyoo kaum rau kuv tau tawm mus ua ntej ntawm ib pab tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas; yog li ntawd peb puas thiab nees nkaum thiab rau xyoo tau dhau mus.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv peb puas thiab nees kaum thiab xya xyoo cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj tawm tsam peb nrog zog loj heev kawg, kawg tias lawv tau ua rau kuv tej tub rog poob siab; yog li ntawd lawv tsis kam sib tua, thiab lawv tau pib thim mus rau tej teb chaws qaum teb.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tuaj rau lub nroog Eenkaulas, thiab txeeb tau lub nroog, thiab tau npaj tiv thaiv peb tus kheej tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau kho lub nroog kom khov nrog peb lub zog; tiam sis txawm muaj tag nrho peb tej kev tiv thaiv ntawd los cov Neeg Lamas tseem tau tuaj rau saum peb thiab tau raws peb tawm ntawm lub nroog.
- 5 Thiab lawv kuj tau raws peb tawm ntawm thaj av Daviv mus.
- 6 Thiab peb tau tawm mus thiab tau los rau thaj av Tsosuas, uas nyob rau hauv tej ciam teb sab hnuv poob ze ntug dej hiav txwv.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau sau peb cov neeg los ua ke ceev npaum li ua tau, xwv kom peb yuav sau tau lawv los ua ke ib pawg.
- 8 Tiam sis saib seb, thaj av tau muaj puv nkaus tej neeg tub sab thiab cov Neeg Lamas; thiab txawm tias muaj txoj kev puas tsuaj loj heev uas tau dai ncuav rau kuv cov neeg los, lawv tseem tsis kam hloov siab txog lawv tej kev ua phem; yog li ntawd tau muaj ntshav thiab kev puas tsuaj ri thoob plaws rau saum thaj av, nyob rau sab ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab rau saum cov Neeg Lamas; thiab nws tau yog ib qho kev ntseev siab tag nrho thoob plaws rau saum thaj av.

Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 Thiab nim no, cov Neeg Lamas tau muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv, thiab nws lub npe yog Aloos; thiab nws tau tuaj tawm tsam peb nrog ib pab tub rog plaub caug thiab plaub txhiab leej. Thiab saib seb, kuv tau sawv tawm tsam nws nrog plaub caug thiab ob txhiab leej. Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau kov yeej nws nrog kuv pab tub rog ua rau nws tau khiav ua ntej kuv. Thiab saib seb, tag nrho tej yam no tau muaj, thiab peb puas thiab peb caug xyoo tau dhau mus.

10 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau pib hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj, thiab tau pib quaj tib yam li tus yaj saub Xamuyees twb tau hais tseg lawm; vim saib seb tsis muaj ib tug neeg uas yuav muaj cuab kav ceev tau tej uas yog nws tug, vim yog tej tub sab, thiab tej tub nyiag, thiab tej neeg tua neeg, thiab txoj kev ua yees siv, thiab txoj kev ua dab uas nyob hauv thaj av.

11 Li no tau pib muaj kev quaj ntsuag thiab kev nyiav quaj nyob rau hauv thaj av txhua nrho vim yog tej yam no, thiab qhov tseem ceeb dua yog nyob hauv Nifais cov neeg.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kuv, Maumoos, tau pom lawv txoj kev nyiav quaj thiab lawv txoj kev quaj ntsuag thiab lawv txoj kev tu siab rau tus Tswv, kuv lub siab tau pib zoo siab nyob hauv kuv, tau paub txog tej kev hlub tshua thiab txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj ntawm tus Tswv, yog li ntawd tau xav tias nws yuav zam txim rau lawv xwv kom lawv yuav rov qab rais los ua tau ib co neeg ncaj ncees.

13 Tiam sis saib seb kuv txoj kev xyiv fab no tau tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, vim lawv txoj kev tu siab tsis yog mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, vim yog Vajtswv txoj kev zoo; tiam sis nws tau yog txoj kev tu siab ntawm cov raug txim, vim tus Tswv yuav tsis cia lawv muaj txoj kev zoo siab nyob hauv txoj kev txhaum tas li.

14 Thiab lawv tsis tau los cuag Yexus nrog tej siab mob thiab tej siab xav ua zoo, tiam sis lawv tau foom Vajtswv, thiab xav tuag. Txawm li ntawd los lawv kuj sib ntswg nrog ntaj kom cawm tau lawv tej siav.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv txoj kev tu siab tau rov qab los rau kuv dua, thiab kuv tau pom tias hnuv ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua twb dhau lawv mus lawm, tag nrho sab cev nqaij daim tawv thiab sab ntsuj plig; vim kuv tau pom txhiab leej ntawm lawv tau raug ntov vau nyob hauv txoj kev tab meeg ntxeev siab tawm tsam lawv tus Vajtswv, thiab tau tsub ib yam li tej chiv rau saum thaj av. Thiab li no peb puas thiab plaub caug thiab plaub xyoos tau dhau mus.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo peb puas thiab plaub caug thiab tsib xyoos cov Neeg Nifais tau pib khiav ua ntej ntawm cov Neeg Lamas; thiab lawv tau raug caum mus txog thaum lawv tau los rau thaj av ntawm Yaxoos, ua ntej uas cheem tau lawv nyob hauv lawv txoj kev thim rov qab.
- 17 Thiab nim no, lub nroog Yaxoos nyob ze thaj av uas Amaloos tau zais cov ceev xwm txheej rau tus Tswv, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis raug puas tsuaj. Thiab saib seb kuv tau mus raws li Amaloos tej lus, thiab tau muab Nifais cov phiaj, thiab tau sau ib zag xwm txheej raws li Amaloos tej lus.
- 18 Thiab nyob rau saum Nifais cov phiaj kuv tau sau ib zag puv nkaus txog tag nrho tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias; tiam sis nyob rau saum cov phiaj no kuv tau tseg tsis sau ib zag tag nrho txog lawv tej kev phem thiab tej kev qias, vim saib seb, txoj kev pom tsis tu ncuva ntawm txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias tau muaj nyob ntawm kuv qhov muag txij li thaum kuv loj txaus los pom txog neeg tej kev.
- 19 Thiab kuv nyuaj siab heev vim yog lawv tej kev phem; vim kuv lub siab tau muaj txoj kev tu siab puv nkaus vim yog lawv txoj kev phem, nyob tag nrho hauv kuv lub neej; txawm li ntawd los, kuv paub tias kuv yeej yuav raug tsa sawv nyob hauv hnuv kawg.
- 20 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv xyoo no Nifais cov neeg tau rov raug yos tua thiab raws dua. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau raug raws tawm mus txog thaum peb tau los txog sab pem toj rau ntawm thaj av uas hu ua Sees.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau kho lub nroog Sees kom muaj chaw tiv thaiv zoo, thiab peb tau sau peb cov neeg los ua ke coob npaum li yuav ua tau, xwv kom saib peb puas yuav cawm tau lawv dim ntawm kev puas tsuaj.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo peb puas thiab plaub caug thiab rau lawv tau pib tuaj rau saum peb dua.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau hais rau kuv cov neeg, thiab tau yaum lawv tag zog, kom lawv yuav tsum sawv yam tsis ntshai rau cov Neeg Lamas thiab tawm tsam rau lawv tej poj niam, thiab lawv tej me nyuam, thiab lawv tej vaj tej tsev.

24 Thiab kuv tej lus tau tsa lawv kom muaj zog, kawg tias lawv tsis tau khiav ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas, tiam sis tau sawv yam tsis ntshai tawm tsam lawv.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tua nrog ib pab tub rog ntawm peb caug txhiab leej tawm tsam ib pab tub rog ntawm tsib caug txhiab leej. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau sawv ua ntej lawv nrog txoj kev ruaj nrees heev ces lawv tau khiav ntawm peb mus.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau khiav lawm peb tau raws lawv qab nrog peb cov tub rog, thiab tau rov ntsib lawv dua, thiab tau kov yeej lawv; txawm li ntawd los tus Tswv lub zog twb tsis nrog peb nyob; muaj tseeb tiag, peb tau raug tso tseg rau peb tus kheej, kom tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tsis txhob nrog peb nyob; yog li ntawd peb tau rais los mus qaug zog zoo li peb cov kwv tij.

27 Thiab kuv tau tu siab vim yog txoj kev puas tsuaj loj ntawm kuv cov neeg no, vim yog lawv tej kev phem thiab lawv tej kev qias. Tiam sis saib seb, peb tau tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos, mus txog thaum peb rov txeeb tau tej av ntawm peb tej qub txeeg qub teg.

28 Thiab peb puas thiab plaub caug thiab cuaj xyoos tau dhau mus. Thiab nyob hauv xyoo peb puas thiab tsib caug, peb tau ua ib qho kev sib pauv nrog cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov neeg tub sab Nkadi-atoos, uas peb tau muab tej av ntawm peb tej qub txeeg qub teg faib.

29 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau muab thaj av qaum teb rau peb, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab thaj av nqaim uas coj mus rau thaj av qab teb. Thiab peb tau muab rau cov Neeg Lamas tag nrho thaj av qab teb.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

Maumoos 3

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau rov tuaj ua rog mus txog kaum xyoo ntxiv tau dhau mus. Thiab saib seb, kuv tau kom kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, ua hauj lwm npaj lawv tej av thiab lawv tej cuab yeej rau lub caij ua rog.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Qhuab qhia nrov nrov rau cov neeg no—Nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab los cuag kuv, thiab ua kev cai raus dej, thiab rov tsa kuv lub koom txoos dua, thiab nej yuav raug cia dim.
- 3 Thiab kuv tau qhuab qhia nrov nrov rau cov neeg no, tiam sis nws tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi; thiab lawv tseem tsis paub tias nws twb yog tus Tswv uas tau cia lawv dim, thiab tau muab ib lub caij rau lawv los hloov siab lees txim. Thiab saib seb lawv tau ua lawv tej siab tawv tawm tsam tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas kaum xyoo no tau dhau mus lawm, tau muaj tag nrho peb puas thiab rau caum xyoo txij li Khetos txoj kev los, cov Neeg Lamas tus vaj ntxwv tau xa ib tsab ntawv tuaj rau kuv, uas muab rau kuv kom paub tias lawv tab tom npaj rov tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau kom kuv cov neeg yuav tsum sib sau lawv tus kheej tuaj ua ke nyob rau hauv thaj av Quav Poj, rau hauv ib lub nroog uas nyob rau hauv tej ciam teb, uas nyob ze txoj kev nqaim uas coj mus rau hauv thaj av qab teb.
- 6 Thiab peb tau tso peb tej tub rog rau qhov ntawd, xwv kom peb yuav cheem tau tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, xwv kom lawv yuav txeeb tsis tau peb tej av ib qho li; yog li ntawd peb tau tiv thaiv tawm tsam lawv nrog tag nrho peb pawg tub rog.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv peb puas thiab rau caum thiab ib xyoos cov Neeg Lamas tau nqis tuaj rau hauv lub nroog Quav Poj ua rog tawm tsam peb; thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv xyoo ntawd peb tau kov yeej lawv, kawg tias lawv tau tig rov qab mus rau lawv tej av.
- 8 Thiab nyob rau hauv peb puas thiab rau caum thiab ob xyoos lawv tau nqis rov qab tuaj ua rog dua. Thiab peb tau rov qab kov yeej lawv dua, thiab tau tua lawv coob leej heev, thiab lawv cov neeg tuag tau raug muab pov rau hauv dej hiav txwv.

Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

- 9 Thiab nim no, vim yog qhov loj no uas kuv cov Neeg Nifais, tau ua lawm, lawv tau pib khav lawv tus kheej lub zog, thiab tau pib cog lus ua ntej rau ntuj tias lawv yuav pauj txiaj ntsig rau tej ntshav ntawm lawv tej kwv tij uas tau raug tua tuag los ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab.
- 10 Thiab lawv tau cog lus los ntawm ntuj, thiab kuj los ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj zaum, tias lawv yuav nce mus ua rog tawm tsam lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab yuav muab lawv txiav tawm ntawm thaj av mus.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv, Maumoos, tsis kam kiag txij li lub sij hawm no mus uas yuav los ua ib tug thawj txib thiab ib tug thawj coj ntawm cov neeg no, vim yog lawv txoj kev phem thiab txoj kev qias.
- 12 Saib seb, kuv tau coj lawv, txawm tias lawv muaj txoj kev phem los kuv tseem tau coj lawv ntau zaus mus ua rog, thiab tau hlub lawv, raws li Vajtswv txoj kev hlub uas muaj nyob hauv kuv, nrog tag nrho kuv lub siab; thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tau nchuav tawm nyob hauv txoj kev thov rau kuv tus Vajtswv tag nrho ib hnuv rau lawv; txawm li ntawd los, tej ntawd tau tsis muaj kev cia siab dab tsi, vim yog txoj kev tawm ntawm lawv tej siab.
- 13 Thiab kuv tau cawm lawv dim ntawm lawv tej yeeb ncuab tes peb zaug, thiab lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 14 Thiab thaum lawv tau cog lus los ntawm tag nrho tej uas tau raug txwv lawv los ntawm peb tus Tswv thiab tus Cawm Seeg Yexus Khetos, tias lawv yuav nce mus ua rog rau lawv tej yeeb ncuab, thiab pauj txiaj ntsig rau tej ntshav ntawm lawv tej kwv tij, saib seb tus Tswv lub suab tau los rau kuv, hais tias:
- 15 Txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig yog kuv li, thiab kuv yuav them rov qab; thiab vim cov neeg no tsis tau hloov siab lees txim tom qab uas kuv tau cawm lawv dim, saib seb, lawv yuav raug txiav tawm saum thaj av mus.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tsis kam nce mus tawm tsam kuv tej yeeb ncuab kiag; thiab kuv tau ua tib yam li tus Tswv tau txib kuv lawm; thiab kuv tau sawv ua ib tug tim khawv qhuab qhia rau lub ntiaj teb txog tej yam uas kuv tau pom thiab tau hnov, raws li txoj kev qhia ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig uas tau ua tim khawv txog tej yam uas yuav muaj los.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

- 17 Yog li ntawd kuv sau rau nej, cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg, thiab kuj rau nej, tsev neeg Ixayees, thaum txoj hauj lwm pib, ces nej yuav tau npaj rov qab mus rau thaj av ntawm nej qub txeeg qub teg;
- 18 Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb, kuv sau rau tag nrho sawv daws hauv qab ntuj kawg; muaj tseeb tiag, rau nej, kaum ob xeeb neeg Ixayees, uas yuav raug txiav txim raws li nej tej hauj lwm los ntawm kaum ob tug uas Yexus tau xaiv los ua nws cov pab koj nyob rau hauv thaj av Yeluxalees.
- 19 Thiab kuv kuj sau rau cov seem tshuav ntawm cov neeg no, uas kuj yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm kaum ob leeg uas Yexus tau xaiv nyob hauv thaj av no; thiab lawv yuav raug txiav txim los ntawm lwm cov kaum ob leeg uas Yexus tau xaiv nyob hauv thaj av Yeluxalees.
- 20 Thiab tus Ntsuj Plig qhia tej yam no rau kuv paub; yog li ntawd kuv sau rau nej sawv daws. Thiab rau qhov txiav txim no kuv thiaj sau rau nej, xwv kom nej yuav paub tias nej sawv daws yuav tsum tau sawv ua ntej ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim, muaj tseeb tiag, txhua tus uas zwm rau tag nrho tib neeg tsev neeg ntawm Adas; thiab nej yuav tsum tau sawv raug txiav txim txog nej tej hauj lwm, txawm tias lawv zoo los sis phem;
- 21 Thiab kuj xwv kom nej yuav ntseeg Yexus Khetos txoj moo zoo, uas nej yuav muaj nyob hauv nej; thiab kom cov Neeg Yudais, cov neeg khi lus ntawm tus Tswv, yuav muaj lwm tus tim khawv nrog nws tus uas lawv tau pom thiab tau hnov tias Yexus, tus uas lawv tau muab tua lawm, twb yog kiag tus Khetos thiab tus Vajtsww.
- 22 Thiab kuv xav tias kheev lam kuv muaj peev xwm yaum tau nej sawv daws hauv qab ntuj kawg los hloov siab lees txim thiab npaj tos mus sawv ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Maumoos 4

- 1 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias nyob hauv peb puas thiab rau caum thiab peb xyoos cov Neeg Nifais tau nce mus ua rog tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nrog lawv tej tub rog, tawm ntawm thaj av Quav Poj.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tau raug raws rov qab los rau thaj av Quav Poj dua. Thiab thaum lawv tseem nkees nkees, ib pab tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas uas tseem muaj zog tau tuaj tawm tsam lawv; thiab lawv tau muaj ib npluav rog mob heev, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas txeeb tau lub nroog Quav Poj, thiab tau tua coob tug ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tau coj ntau tus mus ua neeg raug txim.
- 3 Thiab cov uas seem tshuav tau khiav mus thiab koom nrog cov neeg ntawm lub nroog Thi-akhas. Nim no lub nroog Thi-akhas nyob rau hauv tej ciam teb ze ntug hiav txwv; thiab nws kuj nyob ze lub nroog Quav Poj thiab.
- 4 Thiab nws vim yog cov Neeg Nifais tej tub rog tau nce mus rau cov Neeg Lamas es lawv thiaj tau pib raug tua; vim yog tias tsis yog qhov ntawd, cov Neeg Lamas yeej yuav tsis muaj zog kov yeej lawv.
- 5 Tiam sis, saib seb, Vajtsv tej kev txiav txim yuav raug cov neeg phem; thiab twb yog los ntawm cov neeg phem es cov neeg phem thiaj raug txim; vim twb yog cov neeg phem uas txhib tej siab ntawm noob neej kom muaj ntshav nrog.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau npaj tuaj tawm tsam lub nroog Thi-akhas.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv peb puas thiab rau caum thiab plaub xyoos cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj tawm tsam lub nroog Thi-akhas, xwv kom lawv yuav txeeb tau lub nroog Thi-akhas thiab.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau raug yuam thiab raws rov qab los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab thaum cov Neeg Nifais pom tias lawv tau raws cov Neeg Lamas lawv tau rov khav txog lawv tus kheej lub zog dua; thiab lawv tau tawm mus nyob hauv lawv tus kheej lub zog, thiab rov mus txeeb lub nroog Quav Poj dua.
- 9 Thiab nim no tau muaj tag nrho txhua yam no, thiab tau muaj txhiab leej raug tua nyob rau ob tog, hauv cov Neeg Nifais thiab cov Neeg Lamas.

Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias peb puas thiab rau caum thiab rau xyoo tau dhau mus, thiab cov Neeg Lamas tau rov tuaj ua rog rau cov Neeg Nifais dua; thiab cov Neeg Nifais los tseem tsis tau hloov siab lees txim txog txoj kev phem uas lawv tau ua lawm, tiam sis tseem sij ua lawv txoj kev phem tsis tseg.
- 11 Thiab tsis muaj yam uas tus nplaig yuav piav tau, los sis rau neeg yuav sau ib qho kev piav zoo txog txoj kev qias heev ntawm tej ntshav thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj uas tau muaj nyob hauv cov neeg, ob tog ntawm cov Neeg Nifais thiab ntawm cov Neeg Lamas; thiab txhua lub siab tau tawv, xwv kom lawv thiaj tau nyiam txoj kev txo ntshav tsis tseg.
- 12 Thiab yeej ib txwm tsis tau muaj txoj kev phem loj heev npaum li nyob hauv tag nrho Lihais tej me nyuam, los sis nyob tag nrho hauv tsev neeg Ixayees, raws li tus Tswv tej lus, ib yam li tau muaj nyob hauv cov neeg no.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas txeeb tau lub nroog Quav Poj, thiab li no los vim yog lawv tej neeg tau muaj coob dua li cov Neeg Nifais tej.
- 14 Thiab lawv kuj tau tawm mus tawm tsam lub nroog Thi-akhas, thiab tau raws cov neeg nyob hauv tawm ntawm nws mus, thiab tau txhom coob tug poj niam thiab me nyuam mus ua neeg raug txim, thiab tau muab lawv tua txi rau lawv tej mlom vajtswv.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv peb puas thiab rau caum thiab xya xyoo, cov Neeg Nifais tau npau taws vim yog cov Neeg Lamas tau muab lawv tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam tua txi, ces lawv tau mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nrog txoj kev npau taws heev, kawg tias lawv tau rov kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas dua, thiab tau raws lawv tawm ntawm lawv tej av.
- 16 Thiab cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau rov qab tuaj tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais mus txog thaum peb puas thiab xya caum thiab tsib xyoos.
- 17 Thiab nyob hauv xyoo no lawv tau nqis tuaj tawm tsam cov Neeg Nifais nrog tag nrho lawv tej zog; thiab lawv tsis tau raug muab suav vim lawv muaj coob heev kawg nkaus li.
- 18 Thiab txij li lub sij hawm no mus cov Neeg Nifais tsis muaj peev xwm kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas li lawm, tiam sis tau pib raug cheb tawm los ntawm lawv zoo ib yam li tej lwg yaj zuj zus thaum hnuv tuaj.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau nqis tuaj tawm tsam lub nroog Quav Poj; thiab tau muaj ib npluav rog mob heev tawm tsam nyob hauv thaj av Quav Poj, nyob hauv qhov ntawd lawv tau kov yeej cov Neeg Nifais.

20 Thiab lawv tau rov khiav ntawm lawv dua, thiab lawv tau los rau lub nroog Npau-as; thiab nyob qhov ntawd lawv tau sawv tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas nrog txoj kev tsis ntshai kiag, kawg tias cov Neeg Lamas tau kov tsis yeej lawv mus txog thaum lawv tau rov qab tuaj zaum ob.

21 Thiab thaum lawv tau tuaj zaum ob, cov Neeg Nifais tau raug raws thiab raug tua tuag coob heev kawg nkaus li; lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam tau raug rov muab txi rau tej mlom dua.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Nifais tau rov khiav ua ntej lawv, coj tag nrho tej neeg nrog lawv, cov nyob hauv nroog thiab hauv tej zos.

23 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, tau pom tias cov Neeg Lamas twb tau kav yuav luag tas thaj av, yog li ntawd kuv tau mus rau saum lub roob See, thiab tau muab tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej uas Amaloos tau muab zais rau tus Tswv.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-
somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

Maumoos 5

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau tawm mus rau hauv cov Neeg Nifais, thiab tau thim txog lo lus lav tseg uas kuv tau lav tias kuv yuav tsis pab lawv ntxiv lawm; thiab lawv tau rov muab kuv txib lawv tej tub rog, vim lawv tau ntsia kuv ib yam li kuv yuav muaj peev xwm cawm tau lawv dim ntawm lawv tej kev txom nyem.
- 2 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tau tas kev cia siab, vim kuv twb paub txog tej kev txiav txim ntawm tus Tswv uas yuav los rau lawv; vim lawv tsis tau hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj, tiam sis tau sib ntswg rau lawv txoj sia tsis hu thov rau Tus uas tau tsim lawv.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias cov Neeg Lamas tau tuaj tawm tsam peb thaum peb khiav mus rau lub nroog Yauladees; tiam sis saib seb, lawv tau raug raws rov qab uas lawv txeeb tsis tau lub nroog nyob rau lub sij hawm ntawd.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rov qab tuaj tawm tsam peb dua, thiab peb tseem tswj tau lub nroog. Thiab tau muaj lwm cov nroog uas raug tswj los ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, uas muaj tej chaw tiv thaiv zoo uas tau txiav lawv tawm kom lawv tsis muaj peev xwm tuaj tau rau hauv lub teb chaws uas nyob ntawm peb, tuaj rhuav cov neeg uas nyob hauv peb tej av kom puas tsuaj.
- 5 Tiam sis tau muaj tias txhua thaj av uas peb tau mus hla, thiab cov neeg uas tsis sib sau rau sab hauv tau raug puas tsuaj los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, thiab lawv tej zos loj thiab tej zos, thiab tej nroog tau raug hluav taws kub; thiab li no peb puas thiab xya caum thiab cuaj xyoos tau dhau mus.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv peb puas thiab yim caum xyoo cov Neeg Lamas tau rov tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb dua, thiab peb tau sawv tawm tsam lawv yam tsis ntshai; tiam sis nws twb tsis muaj nuj nqis tag nrho, vim lawv tau muaj coob leej heev ces lawv tau muab cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Nifais tsuj rau hauv lawv qab xib taws.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau rov khiav dua, thiab cov uas mus nrawm dua li cov Neeg Lamas tau khiav dim, thiab cov uas mus tsis yeej cov Neeg Lamas tau raug txiav vau thiab tau puas tsuaj.

Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

8 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv, Maumoos, tsis tau xav ua kom mob tib neeg tej ntsuj plig nyob hauv txoj kev muab pov rau lawv ib qho kev pom qias heev ntawm ntshav thiab kev puas tsuaj ib yam li tau muaj nyob ntawm kuv lub qhov muag; tiam sis kuv, twb paub tias tej yam no yuav tsum raug ua kom paub, thiab tias tag nrho txhua yam uas raug muab zais yuav tsum raug muab qhib rau saum ru tsev—

9 Thiab ib qho kev paub txog tej yam no yuav tsum los rau cov seem tshuav ntawm cov neeg no, thiab rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, cov uas tus Tswv tau hais tias yuav ua cov neeg no khiav ri niab, thiab cov neeg no yuav raug suav yam tsis muaj nqis nyob hauv lawv—yog li ntawd kuv thiaj sau ib qho ntsiab lus me me, tsis kam muab ib zag puv nkaus txog tej yam uas kuv tau pom, vim yog txoj lus txib uas kuv tau txais, thiab kuj xwv kom nej yuav tsis muaj kev tu siab heev vim yog txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg no.

10 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv hais li no rau lawv tej noob, thiab kuj rau Lwm Haiv Neeg uas tau muaj siab hlub rau tsev neeg Ixayees, uas pom tau thiab paub tias lawv tej koob hmoov los qhov twg los.

11 Vim kuv paub tias cov ntawd yuav tu siab rau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv yuav tu siab rau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg no; lawv yuav tu siab tias cov neeg no tsis tau hloov siab lees txim kom lawv yuav tau raug puag nyob hauv Yexus caj npab.

12 Nim no tej yam no raug muab sau cia rau cov seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Yakhauj; thiab lawv raug muab sau raws li no, vim nws yog los ntawm Vajtswv tias kev phem yuav coj tsis tau cov no tawm los rau lawv; thiab lawv tau raug muab zais cia rau tus Tswv xwv kom lawv yuav tawm los nyob rau hauv nws lub sij hawm uas teem tseg lawm.

13 Thiab qhov no yog txoj lus txib uas kuv tau txais; thiab saib seb, lawv yuav tawm los raws li tus Tswv lo lus txib, thaum nws pom tias haum, nyob hauv nws txoj kev txawj ntse.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

14 Thiab saib seb, lawv yuav mus rau cov Neeg Yudais uas tsis ntseeg; thiab vim rau lub ntsiab no lawv yuav mus—xwv kom lawv yuav raug yaum tau tias Yexus yog tus Khetos, Vajtswv tus tseem muaj sia nyob Leej Tub; kom dhau los ntawm tus uas nws Hlub tshaj, Leej Txiv yuav coj tau nws lub ntsiab tseem ceeb thiab nyob mus ib txhis, hauv kev txum tim rau cov Neeg Yudais, los sis rau tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees, los rau tej av uas yog lawv qub txeeg qub teg, uas tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv tau muab rau lawv lawm, kom muaj puv npo li txoj kev khi lus.

15 Thiab kuj xwv kom tej noob ntawm cov neeg no yuav ntseeg nws txoj moo zoo huv si dua, tej uas yuav tawm ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg mus rau lawv; vim cov neeg no yuav rau tawg ri niab, thiab yuav rais los mus ua ib co neeg tawv tsaus, qias neeg, thiab vuab tsuab, tshaj qhov piav tau txog tej uas ib txwm tau muaj nyob hauv peb, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tshaj tej uas tau muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas, thiab muaj li no los vim yog lawv txoj kev tsis ntseeg thiab txoj kev pe dab pe mlom.

16 Vim saib seb, tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig twb tau tseg tsis nrog lawv tej yawg koob nyob lawm; thiab lawv twb tsis muaj Khetos thiab Vajtswv nrog nyob hauv lub ntiaj teb; thiab lawv raug raws khiav ib yam li tej quav nyab npleg ya ua ntej tej cua.

17 Lawv ib zaug tau yog ib co neeg tsaus nyiam, thiab lawv tau muaj Khetos ua lawv tus tswv yug yaj; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau raug coj los ntawm Vajtswv Leej Txiv.

18 Tiam sis nim no, saib seb, lawv raug coj los ntawm Dab Ntxwng Nyoog, tib yam li tej quav nyab npleg ya ua ntej tej cua, los sis ib yam li ib lub nkoj raug muab pov rau saum tej nphwv dej, tsis muaj kev mus los sis tsis muaj tus hlau tuav kom nyob tau, los sis tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi uas yuav tig nws; thiab lawv zoo tib yam li nws ntag.

19 Thiab saib seb, tus Tswv tau khaws lawv tej koob hmoov uas tsim nyog lawv tau txais nyob hauv thaj av cia rau Lwm Haiv Neeg cov uas yuav los nyob hauv thaj av.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

- 20 Tiam sis saib seb, yuav tau muaj tias lawv yuav raug raws khiav thiab tawg ri niab los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau raug raws khiav thiab tawg ri niab los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg lawm, saib seb, thaum ntawd tus Tswv yuav nco qab txog txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi tseg rau Anplaham thiab rau tag nrho tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 21 Thiab tus Tswv kuj yuav nco ntsoov tej kev thov ntawm cov neeg ncaj ncees, uas tau raug muab rau nws pab lawv.
- 22 Thiab thaum ntawd, Au nej cov ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg, nej yuav sawv tiv tau Vajtswv lub hwj chim li cas, tsuas yog nej yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig ncaim ntawm nej tej kev phem xwb?
- 23 Nej tsis paub tias nej nyob hauv Vajtswv txhais tes no los? Nej tsis paub tias nws muaj tag nrho tej hwj chim, thiab los ntawm nws txoj lus txib uas tseem ceeb, lub ntiaj teb yuav raug kauv los ua ke zoo li ib daig ntawv kauv no los?
- 24 Yog li ntawd, nej cia li hloov siab lees txim, thiab txo nej tej hwj chim rau ntawm nws, ntshai nyob tsam nws yuav tawm hauv txoj kev ncaj ncees los tawm tsam nej—ntshai nyob tsam ib tug seem tshuav ntawm Yakhauj tej noob yuav tawm mus rau hauv nej yam li tus tsov ntxhuav, thiab dua nej ua tej dwb daim, thiab yuav tsis muaj tus pab tau.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Maumoos 6

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv sau kaw kuv phau ceev xwm txheej txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais. Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tawm mus ua ntej cov Neeg Lamas.
- 2 Thiab kuv, Maumoos, tau sau ib tsab ntawv mus rau tus vaj ntxwv ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, thiab tau xav kom nws yuav pub rau peb kom peb yuav sib sau tau peb cov neeg ua ke mus rau thaj av Khumaulas, ze ib lub roob uas hu ua Khumaulas, thiab peb yuav ua rog nyob rau qhov ntawd.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias tus vaj ntxwv ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau pub rau kuv yam uas kuv xav tau.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias peb tau tawm mus rau thaj av Khumaulas, thiab peb tau rub peb tej tsev pheb suab ntaub ncig lub roob Khumaulas; thiab nws tau nyob hauv ib thaj av uas muaj dej ntau, muaj tej dej ntws, thiab tej qhov dej txhawv; thiab ntawm no peb tau cia siab tias yuav kov yeej cov Neeg Lamas.
- 5 Thiab thaum peb puas thiab yim caum thiab plaub xyoos tau dhau mus, peb tau sau ua ke tag nrho cov seem tshuav ntawm peb cov neeg mus rau thaj av Khumaulas.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum peb tau sib sau tag nrho peb cov neeg ua ke rau hauv thaj av Khumaulas, saib seb kuv, Maumoos, tau pib laus lawm; thiab tau paub tias nws yuav yog kev sib ntswg zaum kawg ntawm kuv cov neeg, thiab tau raug txib los ntawm tus Tswv kom kuv yuav tsum tsis txhob cia tej ceev xwm txheej uas tau cev nqis los ntawm peb tej yawg koob, uas dawb ceev, kom poob rau hauv cov Neeg Lamas tes, (vim cov Neeg Lamas yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj) yog li ntawd kuv tau ua phau ceev xwm txheej no tawm ntawm Nifais cov phiaj, thiab tau muab zais rau hauv Khumaulas tag nrho tej ceev xwm txheej uas tau raug muab rau kuv los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, tsuas tshuav cov phiaj tsawg no uas kuv tau muab rau kuv tus tub Maulaunais.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv cov neeg, nrog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam, nim no tau pom cov Neeg Lamas tab tom tuaj ncaj nraim rau lawv; thiab nrog txoj kev ntshai heev ntawm txoj kev tuag uas tau puv tej siab ntawm tag nrho tej neeg phem, lawv tau tos ntsoov txais lawv.

Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tuaj ua rog tawm tsam peb, thiab txhua tus puav leej muaj txoj kev txhawj puv nkaus vim yog txoj kev coob ntawm lawv cov neeg.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tua kuv cov neeg nrog ntaj, nrog hneev, thiab nrog xub, thiab nrog taus, thiab nrog tag nrho txhua yam cuab yeej ua rog.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv cov neeg tau raug txiav vau, muaj tseeb tiag, kuv kaum txhiab leej uas tau nrog kuv, thiab kuv tau vau raug mob nyob hauv nruab nrab; thiab lawv tau hla kuv mus tsis tau muab qhov kawg rau kuv txoj sia.
- 11 Thiab thaum lawv tau mus dhau thiab tau txiav vau tag nrho kuv cov neeg tsuas tshuav peb nees nkaum thiab plaub leeg xwb, (nyob hauv tau muaj kuv tus tub Maulaunais) thiab peb tau dim txoj kev tuag ntawm peb cov neeg, tau pom nyob rau tag kis, thaum cov Neeg Lamas tau rov qab saum ncov roob Khumaulas mus rau hauv lawv tej yeej, kaum txhiab leej ntawm kuv cov neeg uas tau raug txiav vau, uas kuv tau ua tus coj ua ntej.
- 12 Thiab peb kuj tau pom kaum txhiab leej ntawm kuv cov neeg uas tau raug coj los ntawm kuv tus tub Maulaunais.
- 13 Thiab saib seb, kaum txhiab leej ntawm Nkikhidoonas tau vau, thiab nws kuj tau vau rau hauv nruab nrab.
- 14 Thiab Lamaj tau vau nrog nws kaum txhiaj leej; thiab Kilakas tau vau nrog nws kaum txhiab leej; thiab Leehas tau vau nrog nws kaum txhiab leej; thiab Yenias tau vau nrog nws kaum txhiab leej; thiab Koomunaihas, thiab Maulaunaihas, thiab Eethi-onas, thiab Sinploos, thiab Sees, thiab Yos, tau vau nrog lawv kaum txhiab leej.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj kaum tus ntxiv uas tau vau los ntawm ntaj, nrog lawv ib leeg kaum txhiab leej; muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho kuv cov neeg tau vau, tsuas yog tshuav neeg nkaum thiab plaub leeg uas tau nrog kuv, thiab ob peb tug uas tau khiav dim mus rau tej teb chaws qab teb, thiab ib txhia uas tau mus zwm rau cov Neeg Lamas lawm xwb; thiab lawv tej nqaij, thiab tej pob txha, thiab tej ntshav tso cia rau saum tej av, tau raug tso tseg los ntawm cov uas tau tua lawv kom lwj rau saum thaj av, thiab kom ntsoog thiab rov qab mus rau lawv leej niam av.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

- 16 Thiab kuv tus ntsuj plig tau ntuag nrog txoj kev mob heev, vim yog txoj kev tua tuag ntawm kuv cov neeg, thiab kuv tau quaj qw nrov nrov tias:
- 17 Au nej cov uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug es, vim li cas nej thiaj li tau ncaim ntawm tus Tswv tej kev! Au nej cov uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug es, vim li cas nej thiaj li tau tsis kam lees yuav tus Yexus ntawd, tus uas tau sawv ntsug qhib caj npab lug tos txais nej!
- 18 Saib seb, yog nej tsis tau ua li no, nej yeej yuav tsis tau vau. Tiam sis saib seb, nej raug vau, thiab kuv quaj ntsuag rau nej txoj kev ploj.
- 19 Au nej cov tub zoo nraug thiab cov ntxhais zoo nkauj, nej cov txiv thiab cov niam, nej cov ua txiv thiab poj niam, nej cov uas zoo es, vim li cas nej thiaj li tau vau!
- 20 Tiam sis saib seb, nej tau mus lawm, thiab kuv tej kev tu siab tsis muaj peev xwm yuav coj tau nej rov qab los.
- 21 Thiab tsis ntev hnuv ntawd yuav los uas nej tej cev uas txawj ploj tuag yuav tsum tau hnav tej cev uas tsis txawj ploj tuag, thiab tej cev uas nim no tab tom lwj tsus no tsis ntev yuav tsum rais los mus uas tej cev uas tsis txawj lwj; thiab thaum ntawd nej yuav tsum tau sawv ua ntej ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim, raug txiav txim mus raws li nej tej hauj lwm; thiab yog hais tias nej ho yog neeg ncaj ncees, ces thaum ntawd nej yuav tau koob hmoov nrog nej tej yawg koob uas tau ua nej ntej mus lawm.
- 22 Au kheev lam nej tau hloov siab lees txim ua ntej txoj kev puas tsuaj loj no tau los rau saum nej. Tiam sis saib seb, nej twb mus lawm, thiab Leej Txiv, muaj tseeb tiag, Leej Txiv uas nyob mus ib txhis saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, yeej paub nej zoo li cas; thiab nws yuav ua rau nej raws li nws txoj kev ncaj ncees thiab txoj kev hlub tshua.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now mouldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Maumoos 7

- 1 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv yuav hais tej yam rau cov seem tshuav ntawm cov neeg no uas tau raug tseg cia, yog hais tias Vajtswv ho muab kuv tej lus rau lawv, es kom lawv yuav paub txog tej yam ntawm lawv tej yawg koob; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv hais rau nej, nej cov seem tshuav ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab cov no yog tej lus uas kuv hais:
- 2 Nej puas paub tias nej yog los ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 3 Nej puas paub tias nej yuav tsum los rau hauv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, los sis nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm dim tau.
- 4 Nej puas paub tias nej yuav tsum txo nej tej cuab yeej ua rog, thiab tsis txhob nyiam txo ntshav ntxiv lawm, thiab tsis txhob nqa lawv dua lawm, tsuas yog thaum Vajtswv txib nej xwb.
- 5 Nej puas paub tias nej yuav tsum los kawm paub txog nej tej yawg koob, thiab hloov siab lees txim tag nrho nej tej kev txhaum thiab tej kev tsis ncaj, thiab ntseeg Yexus Khetos, tias nws yog Vajtswv Leej Tub, thiab tias nws tau raug tua los ntawm cov Neeg Yudais, thiab los ntawm Leej Txiv lub hwj chim nws tau sawv rov qab los, los ntawm qhov ntawd nws tau kov yeej lub qhov ntxa; thiab nyob hauv nws tej kuab ntawm txoj kev tuag twb raug muab nqos lawm.
- 6 Thiab nws tau cia kom muaj txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, los ntawm qhov ntawd tib neeg yuav tsum raug tsa sawv los sawv ntawm nws lub rooj txiav txim.
- 7 Thiab nws tau cia kom muaj txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm lub ntiaj teb, los ntawm qhov ntawd tus uas raug nrhiav pom tsis muaj txhaum ua ntej nws nyob rau hnub txiav txim tus ntawd yuav raug pub mus nyob ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag uas nyob hauv nws lub nceeg vaj, yuav hu nkauj qhuas nrog pab hu nkauj sab saum yam tsis muaj qhov kawg, rau Leej Txiv, thiab rau Leej Tub, thiab rau tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas yog ib tug Vajtswv, nyob hauv ib qho chaw nyob kaj siab lug uas tsis muaj qhov kawg.

Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

8 Yog li ntawd cia li hloov siab lees txiv, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm Yexus lub npe, thiab cia li txais tuav Khetos txoj moo zoo, uas yuav raug muab rau nej, tsis yog nyob hauv phau ceev xwm txheej no xwb tiam sis nyob hauv phau ceev xwm txheej uas yuav muaj los ntawm cov Neeg Yudais los rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, phau ceev xwm txheej uas yuav los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg rau nej.

9 Vim saib seb, qhov no txhob txwm raug muab sau kom nej yuav ntseeg qhov ntawd; thiab yog nej ntseeg qhov ntawd nej yeej yuav ntseeg qhov no thiab; thiab yog nej ntseeg qhov no nej yuav paub txog nej tej yawg koob, thiab kuj paub txog tej hauj lwm zoo kawg nkaus uas tau raug ua tiav los ntawm Vajtsv lub hwj chim nyob hauv lawv.

10 Thiab nej kuj yuav paub tias nej yog ib co seem tshuav ntawm tej noob ntawm Yakhauj; yog li ntawd nej raug suav nyob hauv cov neeg ntawm thawj txoj kev khi lus; thiab yog hais tias nej ho ntseeg Khetos, thiab raug ua kev cai raus dej, thawj zaug nrog dej, tom qab ntawd nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, raws loo tus yam ntxwv ntawm peb tus Cawm Seeg, raws li tej uas nws tau txib peb, nyob rau hauv hnuv txiav txim nws yuav zoo rau nej. Amees.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

Maumoos 8

- 1 Saib seb kuv, Maulaunais, yuav sau kuv txiv, Maumoos, phau ceev xwm txheej kom tag. Saib seb, kuv tsuas muaj ob peb yam yuav sau, tej yam uas kuv tau raug txib los ntawm kuv txiv.
- 2 Thiab nim no tau muaj tias tom qab uas tau muaj npluav rog loj thiab hnyav heev nyob saum Khumaulas, saib seb, cov Neeg Nifais uas tau khiav dim mus rau lub teb chaws qab teb tau raug plob tua los ntawm cov Neeg Lamas, mus txog thaum lawv sawv daws tau puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 3 Thiab kuv txiv los kuj tau raug tua tuag los ntawm lawv, thiab tau tshuav kuv tib leeg sau zaj dab neeg tu siab txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm kuv cov neeg. Tiam sis saib seb, lawv twb mus lawm, thiab kuv ua kom muaj puv npo li txoj lus txib ntawm kuv txiv. Thiab xyov lawv yuav tua kuv, los kuv tsis paub.
- 4 Yog li ntawd kuv yuav sau thiab muab tej ceev xwm txheej zais rau hauv av; thiab txawm kuv yuav mus qhov twg los tsis ua li cas.
- 5 Saib seb, kuv txiv tau ua phau ceev xwm txheej no, thiab nws tau sau tej ntsiab rau hauv. Thiab saib seb, kuv kuj yuav sau tej ntawd thiab yog tus kuv muaj chaw nyob saum tej phiaj, tiam sis kuv tsis muaj; thiab kuv tsis muaj tej quav hlau, vim kuv tib leeg xwb. Kuv txiv tau raug tua tuag hauv hav rog, thiab tag nrho kuv tej neeg txheeb ze, thiab kuv tsis muaj phooj ywg thiab tsis pom qab yuav mus qhov twg; thiab tus Tswv yuav cia kom kuv muaj sia nyob ntev npaum li cas los kuv tsis paub.
- 6 Saib seb, plaub puas xyoo tau dhau mus txij li thaum peb tus Tswv thiab tus Cawm Seeg tau los.
- 7 Thiab saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau plob tua kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, nqis ib lub nroog dhau ib lub nroog thiab dhau ib qho chaw rau ib qho chaw, twb mus txog thaum tsis muaj lawv tas; thiab lawv txoj kev poob tau loj; muaj tseeb tiag, kuv cov neeg, cov Neeg Nifais, txoj kev puas tsuaj tau loj thiab phem heev.
- 8 Thiab saib seb, twb yog tus Tswv txhais tes uas tau ua qhov ntawd. Thiab kuj saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas ib leeg kuj ua rog nrog ib leeg; thiab tag nrho saum thaj av no yog kev tua neeg thiab txo ntshav uas ncig mus tsis tu ncu; thiab tsis muaj leej twg paub qhov kawg ntawm npluav rog.

Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

- 9 Thiab nim no, saib seb, kuv tsis hais txog lawv ntxiv lawm, vim twb tsis tshuav ib tug li lawm tsuas yog tshuav cov Neeg Lamas thiab cov tub sab thiaj tseem muaj nyob rau saum thaj av xwb.
- 10 Thiab twb tsis muaj ib tug li lawm uas paub tus Vajtswv tseeb tsuas yog Yexus cov pab coj xwb, uas tau nyob hauv thaj av mus txog thaum txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg tau phem heev kawg tias tus Tswv tsis kam cia lawv nyob nrog cov neeg; thiab xyov lawv tseem nyob saum thaj av los tsis nyob tsis muaj neeg paub.
- 11 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv txiv thiab kuv tau pom lawv, thiab lawv tau pab wb.
- 12 Thiab tus uas txais yuav phau ceev xwm txheej no, thiab yuav tsis rhuav nws vim yog tej kev tsis zoo tag nrho uas nyob hauv nws, tus ntawd yuav paub tej yam loj dua li tej yam no. Saib seb, kuv yog Maulaunais; thiab kheev lam yog ua tau, kuv twb yuav ua tag nrho txhua yam los rau nej paub lawm.
- 13 Saib seb, kuv xaus hais txog cov neeg no. Kuv yog Maumoos tus tub, thiab kuv txiv tau yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Nifais.
- 14 Thiab kuv yog tib tug uas zais phau ceev xwm txheej no rau tus Tswv; cov phiaj ntawd tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, vim yog txoj lus txib ntawm tus Tswv. Vim nws tau hais tseeb tias tsis muaj ib tug twg uas yuav tau lawv kom nplua nuj; tiam sis cov xwm txheej uas nyob hauv muaj nuj nqis heev; thiab tus uas yuav coj nws los rau qhov kaj, tus ntawd tus Tswv yuav foom koob hmoov rau.
- 15 Vim tsis muaj ib tug muaj peev xwm muaj hwj chim coj tau nws los rau qhov kaj tsuas yog Vajtswv muab rau nws xwb; vim Vajtswv xav kom tej ntawd yuav raug ua nrog ib lub qhov muag ntsia ntsoov rau nws lub yeeb koob, los sis rau txoj kev nyab xeeb ntawm cov neeg txheej thaum ub thiab tus Tswv cov neeg sib khi lus uas tau tawg ri niab los ntev lawm.
- 16 Thiab tus uas yuav coj tej yam no los rau qhov kaj yuav tau koob hmoov; vim nws yuav raug coj tawm ntawm qhov tsaus ntuj mus rau qhov kaj, raws li Vajtswv txoj lus; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav raug coj tawm hauv av los, thiab nws yuav ci tawm mus ntawm qhov tsaus ntuj, thiab los mus rau txoj kev paub ntawm cov neeg; thiab nws yuav raug ua los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

17 Thiab yog muaj tej tsis yog ces lawv tsuas yog tej kev tsis yog ntawm tib neeg xwb. Tiam sis saib seb, peb paub tias tsis muaj qhov tsis yog; txawm li ntawd los Vajtswv yeej paub tag nrho txhua yam; yog li ntawd, tus uas tsis pom zoo, tus ntawd yuav tsum ceev faj nyob tsam nws yuav raug teeb meem ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus tej hluav taws.

18 Thiab tus uas hais tias: Muab rau kuv saib soj, los sis nej yuav raug nplawm—tus ntawd yuav tsum ceev faj nyob tsam nws txib ua tej uas raug txwv los ntawm tus Tswv.

19 Vim saib seb, tus uas maj txiav txim rau lwm tus yeej yuav raug rov maj txiav txim rau; vim nws yeej yuav tau txais nqi zog raws li nws tej hauj lwm; yog li ntawd, tus uas ntaus lwm tus yeej yuav rov raug ntaus, los ntawm tus Tswv.

20 Saib seb vajlugkub hais li cas—tib neeg yuav tsum tsis txhob ntaus lwm tus, thiab nws yuav tsum tsis txhob txiav txim; vim txoj kev txiav txim yog kuv li, tus Tswv hais li, thiab txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig kuj yog kuv li, thiab kuv mam pauj rov qab.

21 Thiab tus uas yuav ua npau taws thiab cam tawm tsam tus Tswv txoj hauj lwm, thiab tawm tsam tus Tswv cov neeg khi lus uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab yuav hais tias: Peb yuav rhuav tus Tswv txoj hauj lwm kom puas tsuaj, thiab tus Tswv yuav tsis nco qab txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau tsev neeg Ixayees—tus ntawd yuav muaj xwm raug ntov vau thiab pov rau hauv hluav taws;

22 Vim tej ntsiab uas nyob mus ib txhis ntawm tus Tswv yeej yuav dov mus, kom txog thaum tag nrho nws tej lus cog tseg yuav muaj puv npo.

23 Cia li nrhiav kawm tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntawm Yaxayas. Saib seb, kuv tsis muaj peev xwm muab lawv sau. Muaj tseeb tiag, saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias cov ntseeg ntawd uas tau mus ua ntej kuv lawm, cov uas tau nyob hauv thaj av no, yuav quaj, muaj tseeb tiag, lawv twb yuav quaj tawm hauv av tuaj rau tus Tswv; thiab ib yam li tus Tswv tseem muaj sia nyob nws yuav nco ntsoov txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau lawv lawm.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

- 24 Thiab nws paub lawv tej kev thov, tias lawv yog kev txhawb nqa rau lawv tej kwv tij. Thiab nws paub lawv tej kev ntseeg, vim los ntawm nws lub npe lawv muaj peev xwm tshem tau tej roob; thiab los ntawm nws lub npe lawv muaj peev xwm ua kom tej av co qeeg nkaws; thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus lawv tau ua tej qhov taub vau rau hauv av; muaj tseeb tiag, tej qhov cub kub kub twb ua tsis tau lawv mob, los sis tej tsiaj qus thiab tej nab muaj taug, vim yog lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus.
- 25 Thiab saib seb, lawv tej kev thov kuj yog kev txhawb nqa rau nws tus uas tus Tswv yuav cia coj tej yam no los.
- 26 Thiab ib tug tsis tas yuav hais tias tej no yuav tsis muaj los, vim lawv yeej yuav los tiag tiag, vim tus Tswv tau hais li ntawd; vim lawv yuav tawm hauv tej av, los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes, thiab tsis muaj leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm txwv nws tau; thiab nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum uas neeg yuav hais tias tej txuj ci tseem ceeb twb tag tsis muaj lawm; thiab nws yuav los zoo ib yam li ib tug hais tawm hauv qhov tuag los.
- 27 Thiab nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum uas tej ntshav ntawm cov ntseeg yuav quaj thov rau tus Tswv, vim yog tej kev tuav hauv thiab tej hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev tsaus ntuj.
- 28 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum Vajtswv lub hwj chim yuav raug tsis kam lees yuav, thiab tej koom txoos yuav rais los ua phem ua qias thiab raug nqa siab nyob hauv txoj kev khav ntawm lawv tej siab; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum uas tej thawj coj ntawm tej koom txoos thiab tej xib hwb yuav sawv nyob hauv txoj kev khav ntawm lawv tej siab, mus txog qhov uas ntshaw kav lawv cov uas zwm rau lawv tej koom txoos.
- 29 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum yuav hnov muaj hluav taws, thiab tej cua daj cua dub, thiab tej pa hluav taws nyob rau lwm thaj av;
- 30 Thiab kuj yuav hnov tej kev ua rog, tej lus paj lus cua txog kev ua rog, thiab tej kev av qeeg nyob ntaw qhov chaw.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

31 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum yuav muaj kev vuab tsuab loj heev nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb; yuav muaj tej kev tua neeg, thiab kev ua tub sab, thiab kev dag, thiab tej kev ntxias, thiab tej kev sib daj sib deev, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev qias; thaum uas yuav muaj coob leej uas yuav hais tias, Cia li ua qhov no, los sis ua qhov tod, thiab nws yuav tsis ua li cas, vim tus Tswv yuav kam tej zoo li ntawd nyob hauv hnuv kawg. Tiam sis kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov hais li ntawd, vim lawv tab tom nyob hauv tus kwj tob ntawm txoj kev iab thiab nyob hauv tej kev raug txim ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj.

32 Muaj tseeb tiag, nws yuav los nyob hauv ib hnuv thaum uas yuav muaj tej koom txoos tau tsa uas yuav hais tias: Cia li los cuag kuv, thiab vim nej tej nyiaj nej yuav raug zam nej tej kev txhaum.

33 Au nej cov neeg phem thiab lim hiam thiab tawv ncauj es, vim li cas nej thiaj tau tsa tej koom txoos rau nej tus kheej kom nplua nuj? Vim li cas nej thiaj tau hloov Vajtswv txoj lus dawb huv, xwv kom nej yuav coj tau txoj kev raug txim los rau saum nej tej ntsuj plig? Saib seb, nej cia li ntsia rau Vajtswv tej kev tshwm sim; vim saib seb, lub sij hawm yuav los nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum tag nrho tej yam no yuav tsum muaj puv npo.

34 Saib seb, tus Tswv tau ua rau kuv paub tej kev loj thiab tej yam tseem ceeb xav tsis thoob txog tej uas yuav tsum muaj los tsis ntev, nyob rau hnuv ntawd thaum tej yam no yuav muaj los nyob hauv nej.

35 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej ib yam li nej nyob ntawm no, thiab tiam sis nej tsis nyob. Tiam sis saib seb, Yexus Khetos tau ua nej rau kuv paub, thiab kuv paub tej uas nej ua.

36 Thiab kuv paub tias nej yeej mus hauv txoj kev khav ntawm nej tej siab; thiab twb tsis muaj li tsuas tshuav ob peb leeg xwb uas tsis tau tsa lawv tus kheej siab nyob hauv txoj kev khav ntawm lawv tej siab, mus rau txoj kev hnav tej tsoos zoo zoo, rau txoj kev ntshaw luag tug, thiab tej kev cam ncauj, thiab txoj kev xav ua kom lwm tus puas tsuaj, thiab tej kev tsim txom, thiab tag nrho txhua yam kev tsis ncaj; thiab nej tej koom txoos, muaj tseeb tiag, twb tag nrho txhua lub, tau rais los mus vuab tsuab vim yog txoj kev khav ntawm nej tej siab.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

37 Vim saib seb, nej yeej hlub nyiaj, thiab nej tej toob xib, thiab nej tej ris tsho zoo, thiab txoj kev ua zoo nkauj ntawm nej tej koom txoos, ntau tshaj li nej hlub tej neeg pluag thiab tej neeg xav tau kev pab, tej neeg mob thiab tej neeg raug txom nyem.

38 Au nej cov neeg vuab tsuab es, nej cov neeg siab phem, nej cov xib hwb, uas muag nej tus kheej rau tej uas yuav lwj siab, vim li cas nej thiaj tau ua vuab tsuab rau Vajtswv lub koom txoos dawb huv? Vim li cas nej thiaj txaj muag ris Khetos lub npe rau saum nej? Vim li cas nej ho tsis xav tias qhov zoo dua yog qhov nuj nqis ntawm ib txoj kev zoo siab uas tsis muaj qhov kawg dua li txoj kev txom nyem uas tsis txawj tuag—vim yog txoj kev qhuas ntawm neeg ntiaj teb los?

39 Vim li cas nej ho tsab zam rau nej tus kheej nrog tej uas tsis muaj sia, thiab ho cia tej neeg tshaib plab, thiab tej neeg xav tau kev pab, thiab tej neeg liab qab, thiab tej neeg muaj mob thiab tej neeg raug txom nyem hla dhau ntawm nej, thiab tsis pom lawv?

40 Muaj tseeb tiag, vim li cas nej thiaj tsa nej tej kev tuav hauv kom nplua nuj, thiab ua kom tej poj ntsuam quaj ntsuag rau tus Tswv, thiab kuj ua tej me nyuam ntsuag quaj ntsuag rau tus Tswv, thiab ua kom tej ntshav ntawm lawv txiv thiab lawv tej txiv quaj tawm hauv av rau tus Tswv, rau txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig rau saum nej tej taub hau?

41 Saib seb, rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev pauj txiaj ntsig dai rawv rau saum nej; thiab tsis ntev lub sij hawm yuav los kom nws yuav pauj txiaj ntsig rau tej ntshav ntawm cov ntseeg rau saum nej, vim nws nyiaj tsis taus lawv tej kev quaj ntev ntxiv lawm.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Maumoos 9

- 1 Thiab nim no, kuv kuj hais txog cov uas tsis ntseeg Khetos thiab.
- 2 Saib seb, nej puas yuav ntseeg nyob hauv hnuv uas nej raug los xyuas—saib seb, thaum tus Tswv los, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog hnuv loj ntawd thaum lub ntiaj teb yuav raug muab kauv ua ke li ib riag ntawv kauv, thiab txhua yam nyob hauv yuav yaj nrog kua kub, muaj tseeb tiag, nyob rau hnuv loj ntawd thaum nej yuav raug coj los sawv ua ntej ntawm Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj—thaum ntawd nej puas yuav hais tias tsis muaj Vajtswv?
- 3 Thaum ntawd nej puas tseem yuav tsis kam lees Khetos, los sis nej puas yuav muaj cuab kav ntsia tau Vajtswv tus Me Nyuam Yaj? Nej xav tias nej yuav nrog nws nyob tau yam paub ntsoov nej tej kev txhaum no los? Nej xav hais tias nej muaj peev xwm zoo siab nyob nrog Tus dawb huv tau, thaum uas nej tej ntsuj plig raug tsim txom nrog txoj kev paub ntawm txoj kev txhaum uas nej tau ua txhaum nws tej kev cai?
- 4 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias nej yuav raug nyuaj siab ntau dua nyob nrog Vajtswv tus dawb huv thiab ncaj ncees, yog paub ntsoov txog nej tej kev vuab tsuab nyob ntawm nws, dua li nej nyob nrog tej ntsuj plig raug txim uas nyob hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.
- 5 Vim saib seb, thaum nej raug coj los ntsia nej tej kev liab qab ua ntej Vajtswv thiab Vajtswv lub yeeb koob, thiab Yexus Khetos txoj kev dawb huv, nws yuav zoo li ib tug nplaim hluav taws uas cig tsis paub tuag li rau saum nej.
- 6 Au ces nej cov uas tsis ntseeg es, nej cia li tig mus cuag tus Tswv; cia li sib sib zog thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe, xwv kom tej zaum nej yuav raug nrhiav pom tsis muaj qhov ceb, huv huv, zoo nkauj, thiab dawb, tau raug txhuav los ntawm cov ntshav ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj, nyob rau hnuv loj thiab kawg ntawd.
- 7 Thiab kuv rov hais rau nej cov uas tsis lees Vajtswv tej kev tshwm sim, thiab hais tias tej ntawd tsis muaj ntxiv lawm, tias tsis muaj tej kev tshwm sim, los sis tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej, los sis tej kev pub, los sis txoj kev kho mob zoo, los sis txoj kev txawj hais lwm yam lus, thiab txoj kev txhais tej yam lus;

Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

- 8 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, tus uas tsis lees yuav tej yam no tsis paub Khetos txoj moo zoo; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tsis tau nyeem tej vajlugkub; yog tau los, nws tsis to taub lawv.
- 9 Vim peb tau nyeem tias Vajtswv yeej zoo li qub, nag hmo, hnuv no, thiab mus ib txhis, thiab nws tsis muaj ib yam dab tsi los sis ib qho hlo li uas yuav hloov.
- 10 Thiab nim no, yog nej tau lam xav txog ib tug niag vajtswv rau nej uas txawj hloov, thiab nyob hauv nws muaj tej yam uas txawj hloov, ces nej tau lam xav txog ib tug niag vajtswv rau nej uas tsis yog tus Vajtswv uas ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb.
- 11 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv yuav ua rau nej pom ib tug Vajtswv uas ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb, twb yog Anplaham tus Vajtswv, thiab Ixaj tus Vajtswv, thiab Yakhaus tus Vajtswv; thiab nws twb yog tib tug Vajtswv uas tau tsim tej ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas nyob hauv lawv.
- 12 Saib seb, nws tau tsim Adas, thiab los ntawm Adas tau los tib neeg txoj kev poob. Thiab vim muaj tib neeg txoj kev poob Yexus Khetos tau los, tus uas yog Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub; thiab vim muaj Yexus Khetos tib neeg txoj kev txhiv dim tau los.
- 13 Thiab vim muaj tib neeg txoj kev txhiv dim, uas tau los ntawm Yexus Khetos, tib neeg raug coj rov mus rau ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag; muaj tseeb tiag, qhov no yog qhov uas tib neeg sawv daws raug txhiv dim, vim Khetos txoj kev tuag coj tau txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag los, uas coj tau ib txoj kev txhiv dim ntawm ib txoj kev tsaug zog uas tsis muaj qhov kawg los, los ntawm qhov kev tsaug zog uas tag nrho tib neeg sawv daws yuav raug xeev los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim thaum tej suab raj yuav nrov; thiab lawv yuav tawm los, tsis hais tus loj thiab tus me, thiab tag nrho sawv daws yuav sawv ua ntej ntawm nws lub rooj, uas tau raug txhiv dim thiab raug xooob ncaim ntawm txoj kev tuag no tej hlua khi uas nyob mus ib txhis, uas yog txoj kev tuag ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv.
- 14 Thiab tom qab ntawd Tus Dawb Huv txoj kev txiav txim yuav los rau saum lawv; thiab ces los lub caij uas tus uas vuab tsuab tseem yuav vuab tsuab li qub; thiab tus uas ncaj ncees tseem yuav ncaj ncees li qub; tus uas zoo siab yeej tseem yuav zoo siab li qub; thiab tus uas tsis zoo siab yeej tseem yuav tsis zoo siab li qub.

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

- 15 Thiab nim no, Au tag nrho nej cov uas tau lam xav txog ib tug vajtsv rau nej uas tsis txawj ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb, kuv xav nug nej, tag nrho tej yam no, uas kuv tau hais puas tau dhau lawm? Qhov kawg puas tau los? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau; thiab Vajtsv tsis tau tsum ua ib tug Vajtsv uas ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb.
- 16 Saib seb, tej yam uas Vajtsv tau ua no puas zoo kawg nkaus nyob ntawm peb tej qhov muag? Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab leej twg thiaj muaj peev xwm to taub Vajtsv tej hauj lwm uas zoo kawg nkaus?
- 17 Leej twg hais tau tias tsis yog ib qho txuj ci tseem ceeb uas los ntawm nws txoj lus thiaj li muaj lub ntuj thiab lub ntiaj teb; thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus neeg thiaj raug tsim tau los ntawm tej hmoov av ntawm lub ntiaj teb; thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj lus thiaj ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb?
- 18 Thiab leej twg yuav hais tau tias Yexus Khetos tsis tau ua ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb loj? Thiab tau muaj ntau yam txuj ci tseem ceeb loj tau ua los ntawm cov thwj tim tej tes.
- 19 Thiab yog tias tau muaj tej txuj ci tseem ceeb tau ua nyob thaum ntawd, vim li cas Vajtsv tau tsum ua ib tug Vajtsv uas ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb thiab tseem ho ua tau Ib Tug ua tsis txawj hloov? Thiab saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias nws yeej tsis hloov; yog hloov nws yeej yuav tseg tsis ua Vajtsv lawm; thiab nws tsis tau tsum ua Vajtsv, thiab tseem yog ib tug Vajtsv uas ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb.
- 20 Thiab qhov ntsiab uas vim li cas nws tsum tsis ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob hauv noob neej lawm los vim yog tias lawv tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus, thiab ncaim ntawm txoj kev yog mus, thiab tsis paub tus Vajtsv uas lawv yuav tsum cia siab rau.
- 21 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej tias tus uas ntseeg Khetos, tsis ua ob lub siab, nws thov Leej Txiv yam dab tsi los ntawm Khetos lub npe yam ntawd yeej yuav raug muab rau nws; thiab lo lus cog tseg no yeej yog rau tag nrho sawv daws twb rau tag nrho lub ntiaj teb kawg.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

- 22 Vim saib seb, Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub tau hais rau nws cov pab coj uas yuav nyob, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj rau tag nrho nws cov pab coj, nyob hauv txoj kev hnov ntawm cov neeg coob coob li no tias: Nej cia li mus rau hauv lub ntiaj teb tag nrho, thiab tshaj tawm txoj moo zoo rau txhua txhia tus neeg;
- 23 Thiab tus uas ntseeg thiab ua kev cai raus dej yuav dim, tiam sis tus uas tsis ntseeg yuav raug txim;
- 24 Thiab tej cim no yuav raws lawv cov uas ntseeg qab—los ntawm kuv lub npe lawv yuav ntiab tau tej dab tawm; lawv yuav txawj hais tej yam lus tshiab; lawv yuav txhom tau tej nab; thiab yog lawv haus tau tej yam muaj taug tej ntawd yuav ua tsis tau lawv mob; lawv yuav tso tes rau saum tej neeg mob thiab lawv yuav zoo;
- 25 Thiab tus uas yuav ntseeg hauv kuv lub npe, tsis ua ob lub siab, kuv yuav ua kom muaj tag nrho li kuv tej lus rau nws, thiab tag nrho rau hauv lub ntiaj teb kawg.
- 26 Thiab nim no, saib seb, leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm sawv tawm tsam tau tus Tswv tej hauj lwm? Leej twg yuav muaj peev xwm tsis kam lees nws tej lus hais? Leej twg yuav sawv tawm tsam Vajtswv lub hwj chim loj kawg nkaus? Leej twg yuav ntxub tau tus Tswv tej hauj lwm? Leej twg yuav ntxub tau Khetos tej me nyuam? Saib seb, tag nrho nej cov uas yog cov neeg ntxub tus Tswv tej hauj lwm, nej yuav xav tsis thoob thiab piam sij.
- 27 Au ces tsis txhob ntxub, thiab tsis txhob xav tsis thoob, tiam sis cia li mloog tus Tswv tej lus, thiab thov Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe rau txhua yam uas nej xav tau. Tsis txhob ua ob lub siab, tiam sis cia li ntseeg tiag, thiab pib ib yam li nyob txheej thaum ub, thiab los cuag tus Tswv nrog tag nrho nej tej siab, thiab khwv kom tau nej txoj kev cawm seeg nrog txoj kev ntshai thiab tshee na rau ntawm nws xub ntiag.
- 28 Cia li ua neeg ntse nyob rau hauv nej lub caij sim siab; ntxuav tag nrho tej kev tsis huv tawm ntawm nej tus kheev mus; tsis txhob thov, tej uas nej yuav coj mus siv raws li nej tej siab, tiam sis thov nrog txoj kev ruaj khov kho yam tsis co, xwv kom nej yuav tsis zam rau txoj kev dag ntxias, tiam sis kom nej yuav txhawb pe Vajtswv tus tseeb thiab tus tseem muaj txoj sia nyob.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

- 29 Ua zoo saib kom nej tsis txhob ua kev cai raus dej yam tsis tsim nyog; ua zoo saib kom nej tsis txhob txais lub cim nco txog ntawm Khetos yam tsis tsim nyog; tiam sis ua zoo saib kom nej yuav ua tag nrho txhua yam nyob hauv kev tsim nyog, thiab ua tej ntawd los ntawm Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv tus muaj txoj sia Leej Tub, lub npe; thiab yog nej ua li no, thiab tiv kom mus txog thaum kawg, nej yuav tsis raug ntiab tawm ib zaug li.
- 30 Saib seb, kuv hais rau nej ib yam li kuv hais tawm hauv qhov tuag los; vim kuv paub tias nej yuav muaj kuv tej lus.
- 31 Tsis txhob yws kuv vim yog kuv txoj kev tsis zoo tag nrho, los sis yws kuv txiv, vim yog nws txoj kev tsis zoo tag nrho, los sis lawv cov uas tau sau ua ntej nws; tiam sis cia li ua tsaug rau Vajtswv uas nws tau ua rau nej paub txog peb tej kev tsis zoo tag nrho, xwv kom nej yuav kawm kom ntse dua li peb tau ua los lawm.
- 32 Thiab nim no, saib seb, peb tau sau phau ceev xwm txheej no raws li peb txoj kev paub, nyob hauv yam ntawv uas raug hu nyob hauv peb uas tau ua los ntawm cov neeg Iyiv, tau cev nqis los thiab tau muab hloov los ntawm peb, raws li peb yam lus hais.
- 33 Thiab yog peb cov phiaj tau loj txaus peb twb tsim nyog yuav tau sau ua lus Henplais; tiam sis lus Henplais los peb kuj tau muab hloov lawm thiab; thiab yog tias peb tau muab sau hauv lus Henplais ces, saib seb, nej yeej yuav tsis tau muaj qhov tsis zoo tag nrho nyob hauv peb phau ceev xwm txheej.
- 34 Tiam sis tus Tswv yeej paub tej yam uas peb tau sau, thiab kuj paub tias tsis muaj lwm cov neeg paub peb yam lus; thiab vim tsis muaj lwm cov neeg paub peb yam lus, yog li ntawd nws tau npaj tej kev txhais lus rau.
- 35 Thiab tej yam no raug muab sau kom peb yuav ntxhua peb tej ris tsho tawm ntawm tej ntshav ntawm peb cov kwv tij, uas tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus.
- 36 Thiab saib seb, tej yam no uas peb tau xav kom muaj rau peb cov kwv tij, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog lawv txoj kev rov qab los txum tim rau txoj kev paub txog Khetos, yog raws li tej kev thov Vajtswv ntawm tag nrho cov ntseeg uas tau nyob hauv thaj av.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

Thiab thov tus Tswv Yexus Khetos pub kom lawv tej kev thov Vajtswv raug teb raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg; thiab thov kom Vajtswv Leej Txiv nco ntsoov txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi nrog tsev neeg Ixayees; thiab thov kom nws foom koob hmoov rau lawv tas mus li, dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg Yexus Khetos lub npe. Anees.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

Ethaws phau Ntawv

Cov Neeg Tsales phau ceev xwm txheej, ua tau muab ntawm nees nkaum plaub daig phiaj los uas nrhiav tau los ntawm Leehais cov neeg nyob rau lub caij ntawm vaj ntxwv Mouxias.

Ethaws 1

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, rov pib muab ib zag txog cov tib neeg thaum ub uas tau raug ua puas tsuaj los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes nyob rau saum lub teb chaws qaum teb no.
- 2 Thiab kuv muab kuv zaj los ntawm cov nees nkaum thiab plaub daig phiaj uas tau nrhiav tau los ntawm Leehais cov neeg, uas hu ua Ethaws Phau Ntawv.
- 3 Thiab vim kuv xav tias thawj feem ntawm phau ceev xwm txheej no, uas hais txog txoj kev tsim lub ntiav teb, thiab txog Adas, thiab ib zag txij li lub caij ntawd los mus txog rau tus pej thum loj, thiab txhua yam uas tau tshwm sim nyob hauv noob neej los mus txog lub sij hawm ntawd, tau muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Yudais lawm—
- 4 Yog li ntawd kuv yuav tsis sau tej yam uas tau tshwm sim txij li Adas lub caij los mus txog lub sij hawm ntawd; tiam sis lawv tau muaj nyob rau saum cov phiaj; thiab tus uas nrhiav tau lawv, tus ntawd yuav muaj hwj chim kom nws yuav muaj tau ib zaj puv nkaus.
- 5 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tsis muab tag nrho ib zag, tiam sis kuv yuav muab ib feem ntawm ib zag, txij li tus pej thum nqis mus txog thaum lawv raug puas tsuaj.
- 6 Thiab kuv yuav muab zaj ntawd raws li no. Tus uas tau sau phau ceev xwm txheej no yog Ethaws, thiab nws yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Khauli-ataws.
- 7 Khauli-ataws yog Mauloos tus tub.
- 8 Thiab Mauloos yog Eethas tus tub.
- 9 Thiab Eethas yog Ahav tus tub.
- 10 Thiab Ahav yog Xej tus tub.
- 11 Thiab Xej yog Sinploos tus tub.
- 12 Thiab Sinploos yog Khoos tus tub.
- 13 Thiab Khoos yog Khauli-atoos tus tub.

The Book of Ether

The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiah.

Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblón.

And Shiblón was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

14 Thiab Khauli-atoos yog Anikhadas tus tub.
 15 Thiab Anikhadas yog Aloos tus tub.
 16 Thiab Aloos yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Hes, tus uas yog Hiathoos tus tub.
 17 Thiab Hiathoos yog Lis tus tub.
 18 Thiab Lis yog Khis tus tub.
 19 Thiab Khis yog Khauloos tus tub.
 20 Thiab Khauloos yog Livais tus tub.
 21 Thiab Livais yog Kis tus tub.
 22 Thiab Kis yog Mauli-atoos tus tub.
 23 Thiab Mauli-atoos yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Lilekis.
 24 Thiab Lilekis yog Ses tus tub.
 25 Thiab Ses yog Hes tus tub.
 26 Thiab Hes yog Khoos tus tub.
 27 Thiab Khoos yog Khauli-atoos tus tub.
 28 Thiab Khauli-atoos yog Emaws tus tub.
 29 Thiab Emaws yog Aumaws tus tub.
 30 Thiab Aumaws yog Sus tus tub.
 31 Thiab Sus yog Khij tus tub.
 32 Thiab Khij yog Aulaihas tus tub, tus uas ho yog Tsales tus tub;
 33 Tus Tsales uas tau tawm tuaj nrog nws tus tij laugthiab lawv tej tsev neeg, nrog lwm cov thiab lawv tej tsev neeg, tim tus pej thuam loj tuaj, nyob rau lub caij tus Tswv ua rau cov neeg yam lus tsis sib nkag siab, thiab tau cog lus nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws tias lawv yuav raug tawg ri niab mus thoob plaws rau saum lub ntiaj teb; thiab raws li tus Tswv lo lus cov neeg tau raug tawg ri niab.
 34 Thiab Tsales tus tij laug tau yog ib tug neeg loj thiab muaj zog, thiab yog ib tug neeg tus Tswv txaus siab heev rau, Tsales, nws tus kwv, hais rau nws tias: Cia li thov tus Tswv, kom nws tsis txhob hloov peb yam lus kom peb yuav tsis to taub peb tej lus.
 35 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laugtau thov tus Tswv, thiab tus Tswv tau muaj kev hlob tshua rau Tsales; yog li ntawd nws tsis tau hloov Tsales yam lus hais; thiab Tsales thiab nws tus tij laugtsis raug ua kom ib leeg tsis to taub ib leeg.
 36 Tom qab ntawd Tsales tau hais rau nws tus tij laugtias: Rov thov tus Tswv dua, thiab tej zaum nws yuav tig nws txoj kev npau taws ncaim ntawm lawv cov uas yog peb cov phooj ywg mus, kom nws yuav tsis hloov lawv tej lus hais.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
 And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
 And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.
 And Hearthom was the son of Lib.
 And Lib was the son of Kish.
 And Kish was the son of Corom.
 And Corom was the son of Levi.
 And Levi was the son of Kim.
 And Kim was the son of Morianton.
 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.
 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
 And Shez was the son of Heth.
 And Heth was the son of Com.
 And Com was the son of Coriantum.
 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
 And Emer was the son of Omer.
 And Omer was the son of Shule.
 And Shule was the son of Kib.
 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;
 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.
 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.
 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.
 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laughtau thov tus Tswv, thiab tus Tswv tau muaj kev hlub tshua rau lawv tej phooj ywg thiab lawv tej tsev neeg, ces lawv tsis raug ua kom ib leeg tsis to taub ib leeg.

38 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales rov qab hais rau nws tus tij laug, hais tias: Cia li mus thiab thov tus Tswv saib nws puas kom peb khiav tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab yog nws kom peb khiav tawm ntawm thaj av, thov rau nws saib peb yuav mus qhov twg. Thiab leej twg paub yog tias tus Tswv yuav coj peb mus rau hauv ib thaj av uas yog thaj uas zoo tshaj plaws txhua thaj hauv ntiaj teb? Thiab yog ho muaj li ntawd, cia peb rau siab ntseeg tus Tswv, xwv kom peb yuav tau txais nws ua peb qub txeeg qub teg.

39 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laughtau thov tus Tswv raws li tej uas tau hais los ntawm Tsales lub qhov ncauj.

40 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hnov Tsales tus tij laug, thiab tau hlub tshua nws, thiab tau hais rau nws tias:

41 Cia li mus thiab sau koj tej pab tsiaj los ua ke, tsis hais tej maum thiab tej txiv, tag nrho txhua yam; thiab tej noob txhua yam ntawm lub ntiaj teb; thiab koj tsev neeg; thiab koj tus kwv Tsales thiab nws tsev neeg; thiab koj tej phooj ywg thiab lawv tej tsev neeg, thiab Tsales tej phooj ywg thiab lawv tej tsev neeg.

42 Thiab thaum koj ua li no tas lawm koj yuav tsum mus ua lawv ntej nqis mus rau hauv lub hav uas nyob sab pem toj. Thiab kuv yuav ntsib koj nyob qhov ntawd, thiab kuv yuav mus ua koj ntej mus rau hauv ib thaj av uas yog thaj uas zoo tshaj lwm thaj av tag nrho hauv ntiaj teb.

43 Thiab nyob qhov ntawd kuv yuav foom koob hmoov rau koj thiab koj tej noob, thiab yuav tsa koj tej noob sawv rau kuv, thiab tsa koj tus kwv tej noob, thiab lawv cov uas yuav nrog koj mus, ua ib haiv neeg zoo heev. Thiab yuav tsis muaj lwm haiv neeg zoo dua li haiv neeg uas kuv yuav tsa sawv rau kuv los ntawm koj tej noob, nyob rau saum tag nrho lub ntiaj teb. Thiab kuv yuav ua li no rau koj vim yog koj tau thov kuv ntev npaum li no.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

Ethaws 2

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales thiab nws tus tij laug, thiab lawv tej tsev neeg, thiab Tsales thiab nws tus tij laugtej phooj ywg thiab lawv tej tsev neeg, tau nqis mus rau hauv lub hav uas yog sab pem toj, (thiab lub hav ntawd lub npe yog Nilos, tau hu raws li ib tug neeg tua tsiaj uas muaj suab npe) nrog lawv tej pab tsiaj uas lawv tau sau los ua ke, tej maum thiab tej txiv, txhua yam.
- 2 Thiab lawv kuj tau cuab ntxiab thiab txhom tej noog saum nruab ntug; thiab lawv kuj tau npaj ib lub thoob, uas cia lawv coj tej ntses ntawm tej dej nrog lawv.
- 3 Thiab lawv kuj coj nrog lawv tej dexiles, uas, txhais tias, ntab muaj zib; thiab li no lawv tau coj nas ntab nrog lawv, thiab tag nrho tej uas muaj nyob saum thaj av, tej noob txhua yam.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau nqis los rau hauv lub hav Nilos tus Tswv tau nqis los thiab tau tham nrog Tsales tus tij laug; thiab nws tau nyob hauv cov huab, thiab Tsales tus tij laugtsis pom nws.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau txib lawv kom lawv yuav tsum tawm mus rau hauv roob moj sab qhua, muaj tseeb tiag, rau hauv feem uas tsis tau muaj neeg mus dua li. Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau mus ua lawv ntej, thiab tau tham nrog lawv thaum nws sawv nyob hauv cov huab, thiab tau qhia kev saib lawv yuav tsum mus qhov twg.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau mus hauv roob moj sab qhua, thiab tau txua tej nkoj, rau lawv hla tej dej ntau, tau raug coj kev tsis tu ncuia los ntawm tus Tswv txhais tes.
- 7 Thiab tus Tswv tsis cia kom lawv yuav nres ntawm tej hiav txwv uas nyob hauv roob moj sab qhua, tiam sis nws xav kom lawv yuav tsum tuaj kom mus txog rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm, uas tau yog thaj uas zoo tshaj dua li lwv thaj av, uas yog thaj uas tus Tswv Vajtswv tau tshwj tseg rau cov neeg uas ncaj ncees.

Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

8 Thiab nws tau cog lus nyob hauv nws txog kev npau taws rau Tsales tus tij laug, tias tus uas yuav tuaj nyob thaj av cog lus tseg cia no, txij lub sij hawm no lawm yav tom ntej thiab mus ib txhis, yuav tsum pe hawm nws, tus uas yog Vajtswv tseeb thiab tib leeg xwb, los sis lawv yuav raug cheb pov tseg thaum txoj kev puv npo ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws yuav los rau lawv.

9 Thiab nim no, peb pom tau Vajtswv tej lus ceeb toom txog thaj av no, tias nws yog ib thaj av uas tau cog lus tseg cia lawm; thiab haiv neeg twg uas yuav nyob hauv nws yuav tsum tu Vajtswv, los sis lawv yuav raug cheb tawm mus thaum txoj kev puv npo ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws yuav los rau saum lawv. Thiab txoj kev puv npo ntawm nws txoj kev npau taws yuav los rau saum lawv thaum lawv siav nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj.

10 Vim saib seb, qhov no yog ib thaj av uas zoo dua li tag nrho lwm thaj av; yog li ntawd tus uas nyob hauv nws yuav tsum pe hawm Vajtswv los sis yuav raug cheb tawm mus; vim nws yog Vajtswv lo lus ceeb toom uas kav ib txhis. Thiab yuav tsis muaj li mus txog thaum uas muaj txoj kev tsis ncaj puv npo nyob hauv cov me nyuam ntawm thaj av, es lawv mam raug cheb tawm.

11 Thiab qhov no yuav los rau nej, Au nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg es, kom nej yuav paub txog Vajtswv tej lus ceeb toom—kom nej yuav hloov siab lees txim, thiab yuav tsis ua ntxiv nyob hauv nej tej kev tsis ncaj ncees mus txog thaum txoj kev puv npo los, kom nej yuav tsis raug coj txoj kev puv npo ntawm txoj kev npau taws ntawm Vajtswv nqis los rau saum nej ib yam li cov neeg uas nyob ntawm thaj av tau ua los lawm.

12 Saib seb, qhov no yog ib thaj av zoo, thiab haiv neeg twg uas yuav tuaj nyob hauv nws yuav raug dim ntawm txoj kev ua qhev, thiab ntawm txoj kev txhom, thiab ntawm tag nrho lwm haiv neeg uas nyob hauv qab ntuj, yog lawv tsuas yuav pe hawm tus Vajtswv ntawm thaj av, tus yog Yexus Khetos, tus uas tau raug ua kom paub los ntawm tej yam uas peb tau muab sau cia lawm.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

13 Thiab nim no kuv rov qab txuas nrog kuv phau ceev xwm txheej; vim saib seb, tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau coj Tsales thiab nws tus tij laugtawm mus txog tus hiav txwv loj uas faib tej av. Thiab thaum lawv tau los txog ntawm hiav txwv lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub; thiab lawv tau hu qhov chaw ntawd npe ua Mali-akhumaws; thiab lawv tau nyob hauv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub, thiab tau nyob hauv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub nyob ntawm ntug hiav txwv tau ncu a li plaub xyoos.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum kawg plaub xyoos lawm tus Tswv tau los rau Tsales tus tij laugdua, thiab tau sawv nyob hauv ib tau huab thiab tau tham nrog nws. Thiab tus Tswv tau tham nrog Tsales tus tij laughtau ncu a li peb teev, thiab tau ntuas nws vim nws tau tsis nco qab thov rau tus Tswv lub npe.

15 Thiab Tsales tus tij laughtau hloov siab lees txim txog txoj kev phem uas nws tau ua lawm, thiab nws tau thov tus Tswv lub npe rau nws cov kwv tij uas tau nyob nrog nws. Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yuav zam txim rau koj thiab koj tej kwv tij txog lawv tej txim; tiam sis nej yuav tsum tsis txhob ua txhaum ntxiv lawm, vim nej yuav nco tias kuv tus Ntsuj Plig yeej yuav tsis nrog neeg nyob tas mus li; yog li ntawd, yog nej yuav ua txhaum kom mus txog thaum nej siav siav nej yuav raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv qhov chaw mus. Thiab tej no yog kuv tej kev xav nyob rau saum thaj av uas kuv yuav muab rau nej ua nej tej qub txeeg qub teg; vim nws yuav yog ib thaj av uas zoo dua li tag nrho lwm thaj av.

16 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais tias: Cia li mus ua hauj lwm thiab txua, tej nkoj raws li tej uas nej tau txua tas los no. Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laughtau mus ua hauj lwm, thiab nws cov kwv tij los tib yam, thiab tau txua tej nkoj zoo li tej uas lawv tau txua tas los lawm, raws li tus Tswv tej kev qhia. Thiab tej nkoj ntawd me, thiab lawv sib sib nyob rau saum nplaim dej, twb sib ib yam li ib tug noog nyob rau saum nplaim dej.

17 Thiab lawv tau raug txua kom lawv yuav ntom heev, twb kom lawv yuav ntim tau dej li ib lub ntim; thiab hauv tej qab los ntom ib yam li ib lub ntim; thiab ntawm tej sab tav los ntom ib yam li ib lub ntim; thiab tom ob tog kawg ntse; thiab sab saum kuj ntom tib yam li ib lub ntim; thiab qhov ntev ntev li ib tug ntoo; thiab lub qhov rooj ntawd, thaum muab nws kaw, kuj ntom tib yam li ib lub ntim.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laughtau thov rau tus Tswv, hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, kuv tau ua txoj hauj lwm uas koj tau txib kuv lawm, thiab kuv tau ua tej nkoj raws li qhov uas koj tau kom kuv ua.
- 19 Thiab saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, tsis muaj teeb nyob hauv tej nkoj ntawd; peb yuav tsav mus qhov twg? Thiab peb kuj yuav piam sij, vim peb ua tsis taus pa nyob hauv lawv, tsuas muaj tej cua uas nyob hauv lawv xwb; yog li ntawd peb yuav piam sij.
- 20 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau Tsales tus tij laughtias: Saib seb, koj cia li tho ib lub qhov rau sab saum, thiab rau hauv qab; thiab thaum koj yuav cia cua los koj yuav qhib lub qhov thiab txais yuav cua. Thiab yog dej los rau hauv nej, saib seb, nej yuav kaw lub qhov, kom nej yuav tsis piam sij nyob hauv dej nyab.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laughtau ua raws li tus Tswv tau txib.
- 22 Thiab nws tau rov thov rau tus Tswv dua hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, saib seb kuv twb tau ua tas li koj tau txib kuv lawm; thiab kuv tau npaj tej nkoj rau kuv cov neeg, thiab saib seb tsis muaj teeb nyob hauv lawv. Saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, koj puas yuav cia peb hla cov dej loj heev kawg no tsaus ntuj nti?
- 23 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau Tsales tus tij laughtias: Koj xav kom kuv ua dab tsi kom nej thiaj li yuav muaj tau teeb nyob hauv nej tej nkoj? Vim saib seb, nej muaj tsis tau qhov rais, vim lawv yuav raug tawg ua dwb daim; los sis nej yuav coj tsis tau hluav taws nrog nej, vim nej yuav tsis mus nrog qhov kaj ntawm hluav taws.
- 24 Vim saib seb, nej yuav zoo li ib tug ntses loj loj nyob hauv plawv hiav txwv; vim tej nthwv dej zoo li tej roob yuav vau los npog nej. Txawm li ntawd los, kuv mam coj nej tawm hauv tej dej hiav txwv tob tob rov los; vim tej cua tau tawm ntawm kuv lub qhov ncauj mus, thiab kuv kuj tau xa tej nag thiab tej dej nyab.
- 25 Thiab saib seb, kuv tau npaj nej rau tej yam no; vim nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm hla qhov dej tob heev no tsuas yog kuv yuav npaj nej rau tej dej sawv ntawm hiav txwv, thiab tej cua uas tau tawm mus, thiab tej kev dej nyab uas yuav los xwb. Yog li ntawd koj xav kom kuv npaj yam dab tsi rau nej kom nej yuav muaj teeb thaum nej raug nqos nyob hauv tej hiav txwv tob tob?

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

Ethaws 3

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tus tij laug, (nim no cov nkoj uas tau raug npaj tau lawm muaj yim lub) tau tawm mus rau saum lub roob, uas lawv tau hu ua roob Siles, vim yog qhov uas nws siab heev, thiab tau muab ib lub pob zeb los nchuav ua kaum rau lub me nyuam pob zeb; thiab lawv dawb thiab ci lam thab, twb zoo tib yam li tej iav tshaj sab; thiab nws tau nqa lawv hauv nws tes mus rau saum ncoov roob, thiab tau rov thov tus Tswv dua, hais tias:
- 2 Au tus Tswv es, koj tau hais tias peb yuav tsum raug vij ib puag ncig los ntawm tej dej nyab. Nim no saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, thiab tsis txhob npau taws nrog koj tus tub qhe vim yog nws txoj kev qaug zog rau ntawm koj; vim peb paub tias koj yeej dawb huv thiab nyob puag saum ntuj, thiab peb twb tsis tsim nyog txaus rau koj; vim yog txoj kev poob peb tej kev ntiatj teb tau rais los mus phem tsis tu ncu; txawm li ntawd los, Au tus Tswv es, koj tau muab rau peb ib txoj lus txib kom peb yuav tsum thov koj, kom los ntawm koj peb yuav tau txais raws li peb siab xav yuav.
- 3 Saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, koj tau rau txim rau peb vim yog peb txoj kev tsis ncaj, thiab tau raws peb tawm, thiab tau ntau xyoo npaum no peb tau nyob rau hauv roob moj sab qhua; txawm li ntawd los, koj tseem tau hlub tshua rau peb. Au tus Tswv es, ntsia rau kuv nyob hauv txoj kev hlub, thiab tig koj txoj kev npau taws ncaim ntawm koj cov neeg no mus, thiab tsis txhob cia kom lawv yuav tawm mus hla tus dej hiav txwv tob nphau nphwv no nyob hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj; tiam sis saib tej yam no uas kuv tau nchuav tawm ntawm pob zeb los.
- 4 Thiab kuv paub, Au tus Tswv es, tias koj muaj hwj chim tag nrho, thiab muaj peev xwm ua tau txhua yam li koj siab xav rau txoj kev pab ntawm tib neeg; yog li ntawd kov cov pob zeb no, Au tus Tswv es, nrog koj tus ntiv tes, thiab npaj lawv kom lawv yuav ci pom kev nyob hauv qhov tsaus ntuj; thiab lawv yeej yuav ci pom kev rau peb nyob hauv tej nkoj uas peb npaj tau, kom peb yuav muaj teeb thaum peb hla hiav txwv.
- 5 Saib seb, Au tus Tswv es, koj yeej ua tau li no. Peb paub tias koj muaj peev xwm ua tau tej hwj chim loj no tawm, uas saib mas me rau txoj kev to taub ntawm tib neeg.

Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Tsales tus tij laughtau hais tej lus no tas, saib seb, tus Tswv tau cev nws txhais tes tawm thiab kov cov pob zeb ib lub dhau ib lub nrog nws tus ntiv tes. Thiab daim ntaub thaiv tau raug qhib tawm ntawm Tsales tus tij lauglub qhov muag, thiab nws tau pom tus Tswv tus ntiv tes; thiab nws zoo li neeg tus ntiv tes, uas muaj nqaij thiab ntshav; thiab Tsales tus tij laughtau vau rau ntawm tus Tswv, vim nws tau raug ntshai.
- 7 Thiab tus Tswv tau pom tias Tsales tus tij laughtau vau rau hauv av; thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Cia li sawv, vim li cas koj thiaj li vau?
- 8 Thiab nws hais rau tus Tswv tias: Kuv tau pom tus Tswv tus ntiv tes, thiab kuv tau ntshai nyob tsam nws yuav nplawm kuv; vim kuv tsis tau paub tias tus Tswv muaj nqaij thiab ntshav.
- 9 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Vim yog koj txoj kev ntseeg koj tau pom tias kuv yuav tau txais cev nqaij thiab ntshav; thiab tsis tau muaj dua ib tug neeg tuaj cuag kuv es muaj txoj kev ntseeg loj npaum li koj; vim yog tias tsis li ntawd ces koj yuav pom tsis tau kuv tus ntiv tes. Koj puas tau pom ntau dua li no?
- 10 Thiab nws tau teb tias: Tsis tau; tus Tswv, ua koj tus kheej rau kuv pom.
- 11 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Koj puas ntseeg tej lus uas kuv yuav hais?
- 12 Thiab nws tau teb tias: Muaj tseeb tiag, tus Tswv es, kuv paub tias koj yeej hais qhov tseeb, vim koj yog ib tug Vajtsv ntawm qhov tseeb, thiab yeej dag tsis tau.
- 13 Thiab thaum nws tau hais tej lus no tas, saib seb, tus Tswv tau ua nws tus kheej rau nws pom, thiab tau hais tias: Vim koj paub tej yam no koj twb raug txhiv dim ntawm txoj kev poob lawm; yog li ntawd koj raug koj rov qab los rau hauv kuv xub ntiag; yog li ntawd kuv ua kuv tus kheej rau koj pom.
- 14 Saib seb, kuv yog nws tus uas tau npaj txij thaum chiv keeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb los txhiv kuv cov neeg kom dim. Saib seb, kuv yog Yexus Khetos. Kuv yog Leej Txiv thiab Leej Tub. Nyob hauv kuv tib neeg sawv daws yuav muaj txoj sia, thiab qhov nyob mus ib txhis, lawv cov uas yuav ntseeg kuv lub npe; thiab lawv yuav rais los mus ua kuv tej tub thiab kuv tej ntxhais.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

- 15 Thiab kuv yeej ib txwm tsis tau ua kuv tus kheej rau ib tug neeg uas kuv tau tsim pom li, vim tsis tau muaj ib tug neeg tau ntseeg kuv ib yam li koj tau. Koj puas pom tias koj tau raug tsim muaj tus yam ntxwv ib yam li kuv? Muaj tseeb tiag, tag nrho tib neeg sawv daws tau raug tsim thaum chiv keeb muaj tus yam ntxwv zoo ib yam li kuv.
- 16 Saib seb, lub cev no, uas koj pom ziag no, yog lub cev ntwm kuv tus ntsuj plig; thiab kuv tau tsim neeg zoo li kuv tus ntsuj plig lub cev; thiab tib yam li kuv tau tshwm sim rau koj nyob hauv tus ntsuj plig kuv yuav tshwm sim rau kuv cov neeg nyob hauv cev nqaij daim tawv.
- 17 Thiab nim no, ib yam li kuv, Maulaunais, tau hais tias kuv tsis muaj peev xwm sau ib zag puv nkaus txog tej yam no uas raug muab sau, yog li ntawd nws txaus rau kuv hais tias Yexus tau ua nws tus kheej rau tus txiv neej no pom nyob hauv tus ntsuj plig, twb zoo raws thiab zoo li tib lub cev uas nws tau ua nws tus kheej rau cov Neeg Nifais pom.
- 18 Thiab nws tau los pab rau nws ib yam li nws tau los pab rau cov Neeg Nifais; thiab tag nrho tej yam no, kom tus txiv neej no yuav paub tias nws yog Vajtswv, vim yog tej hauj lwm ntau tseem ceeb uas tus Tswv tau ua rau nws pom.
- 19 Thiab vim yog txoj kev paub ntwm tus txiv neej no nws thiaj tsis muaj peev xwm raug muab ceev kom tsis txhob pom dhau hauv daim ntaub thaiv; thiab nws tau pom Yexus tus ntv tes uas thaum nws pom, nws tau qaug nrog txoj kev ntshai; vim nws paub lawm tias nws yog tus Tswv tus ntv tes; thiab nws tias muaj kev ntseeg ntxiv lawm, vim nws twb paub lawm, tsis muaj dab tsi ua ob peb lub siab lawm.
- 20 Yog li ntawd, thaum muaj txoj kev paub Vajtswv zoo li no, nws thiaj raug ceev tsis tau nyob hauv daim ntaub kom thaiv; yog li ntawd nws tau pom Yexus; thiab nws twb tau los pab rau nws.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau Tsales tus tij laugtias: Saib seb, koj yuav tsum tsis txhob cia tej yam uas koj tau pom thiab tau hnov no tawm mus rau hauv lub ntiaj teb, mus txog thaum lub sij hawm uas kuv yuav los ua kuv lub npe tau yeeb koob nyob hauv cev nqaij daim tawv; yog li ntawd, koj yuav tsum khaws tej yam uas koj tau pom thiab tau hnov cia, thiab tsis txhob ua nws rau neeg pom.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

- 22 Thiab saib seb, thaum koj yuav los cuag kuv, koj yuav tsum muab lawv sau cia thiab muab lawv zwm tseg, kom tsis muaj leej twg txhais tau lawv; vim koj yuav muab lawv sau rau hauv ib yam lus uas lawv yuav raug nyeem tsis tau.
- 23 Thiab saib seb, kuv yuav muab ob lub pob zeb no rau koj, thiab koj yuav tsum muab lawv zwm tseg nrog tej yam uas koj yuav sau.
- 24 Vim saib seb, yam lus uas koj yuav sau kuv tau muab ua kom tsis muaj neeg to taub lawm; yog li ntawd kuv yuav ua kom nyob hauv kuv lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg lawm kom tej pob zeb no yuav ua kom tej yam no uas koj yuav sau pom tseeb rau tib neeg tej qhov muag.
- 25 Thiab thaum tus Tswv tau hais tej lus no tas, nws tau ua rau Tsales tus tij laugpom tag nrho tej neeg hauv ntiav teb no uas tau muaj tas los lawm, thiab tag nrho tej uas tseem yuav muaj; thiab nws tsis tau muab lawv nraim ntawm nws lub qhov muag, mus txog thoob plaws hauv qab ntuj kawg.
- 26 Vim nws tau hais rau nws sij hawm ua ntej lawm, tias yog nws yuav ntseeg nws ces nws yuav ua tau rau nws pom tag nrho txhua yam—tej ntawd yuav raug ua rau nws pom; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tsis muaj peev xwm tuav ib yam dab tsi tsis pub nws pom, vim nws paub lawm tias tus Tswv yeej muaj peev xwm ua rau nws pom tag nrho txhua yam.
- 27 Thiab tus Tswv tau hais rau nws tias: Cia li muab tej yam no sau tseg thiab muab lawv zwm tseg; thiab kuv yuav ua rau noob neej pom lawv nyob hauv lub sij hawm uas tau teem tseg lawm.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau txib nws kom nws yuav tsum muab ob lub pob zeb uas nws tau txais lawm zwm tseg, thiab tsis txhob cia lawv tawm, mus txog thaum tus Tswv yuav ua lawv rau noob neej pom.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

Ethaws 4

- 1 Thiab tus Tswv tau txib Tsales tus tij laugnqis tawm saum roob ncaim ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag mus, thiab sau tej yam uas nws tau pom lawm cia; thiab lawv tau raug txwv tsis pub los rau noob neej mus txog tom qab uas nws raug muab dai rau saum tus ntoo khaub lig; thiab vim yog qhov no vaj ntxwv Mauxiyas thiaj tau muab lawv ceev tseg, kom lawv yuav tsis tau los rau lub ntiag teb mus txog tom qab uas Khetos yuav ua nws tus kheej rau nws cov neeg pom.
- 2 Thiab tom qab uas Khetos tau ua nws tus kheej rau nws cov neeg pom tiag lawm nws tau txib kom lawv yuav tsum raug ua kom paub.
- 3 Thiab nim no, tom qab ntawd, tag nrho lawv tau tso txoj kev ntseeg tseg zuj zus; thiab tsis tshuav leej twg li lawm tsuas tshuav cov Neeg Lamas xwb, thiab lawv tau tsis kam lees yuav Khetos txoj moo zoo; yog li ntawd kuv raug txib kom kuv yuav tsum muab lawv zais dua rau hauv av.
- 4 Saib seb, kuv tau sau rau saum cov phiaj no tej uas Tsales tus tij laughtau pom kiag; thiab tsis tau muaj tej yam loj tshaj uas tau raug ua paub dua li cov uas tau ua paub rau Tsales tus tij laug.
- 5 Yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau txib kom kuv muab lawv sau cia; thiab kuv tau muab lawv sau cia. Thiab nws tau txib kuv tias kuv yuav tsum muab lawv zwm tseg; thiab kuj tau txib kom kuv yuav tsum muab tej uas txhais lawv zwm tseg cia thiab; yog li ntawd kuv tau muab tej txhais lus zwm tseg cia, raws li tus Tswv txoj lus txib.
- 6 Vim tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Lawv yuav tsum tsis tawm mus rau Lwm Haiv Neeg mus txog thaum hnuv uas lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim txog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj, thiab rais los mus huv ua ntej tus Tswv.
- 7 Thiab nyob rau hnuv ntawd uas lawv yuav coj txoj kev ntseeg kuv, tus Tswv hais li, tib yam li Tsales tus tij laughtau ua, kom lawv yuav rais los mus dawb huv nyob hauv kuv, ces thaum ntawd kuv yuav ua kom lawv paub tej yam uas Tsales tus tij laughtau pom, twb yuav qhib rau lawv tag nrho kuv tej kev tshwm sim, Yexus Khetos, Vajtswv Leej Tub, Leej Txiv saum ntuj thiab hauv ntiag teb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam uas nyob hauv lawv.

Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 Thiab tus uas yuav cav tawm tsam tus Tswv txoj lus, cia kom nws raug foom tsis zoo; thiab tus uas tsis kam lees txais tej yam no, cia kom nws raug foom tsis zoo; vim rau lawv cov ntawd kuv yuav tsis ua tej yam loj dua rau pom li, Yexus Khetos hais li; vim kuv yog tus uas hais.
- 9 Thiab nyob ntawm kuv lo lus txib lub ntuj twb raug qhib thiab raug kaw; thiab nyob ntawm kuv txoj lus lub ntiaj teb yuav ua zog koog; thiab nyob ntawm kuv lo lus txib tej neeg nyob hauv yuav tuag mus, twb tib yam li hluav taws kub.
- 10 Thiab tus uas tsis ntseeg kuv tej lus yeej tsis ntseeg kuv cov pab koj tej; thiab yog hais tias kuv tsis tau hais, nej sim txiav txim seb; vim nej yuav paub tias kuv twb yog tus uas hais, nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 11 Tiam sis tus uas ntseeg tej yam no uas kuv tau hais lawm, kuv yuav los xyuas nws nrog tej kev tshwm sim ntawm kuv tus Ntsuj Plig, thiab nws yuav paub thiab ua tim khawv. Rau qhov vim yog kuv tus Ntsuj Plig nws yuav paub tias tej yam no muaj tseeb; vim nws yuav yaum kom tib neeg ua zoo.
- 12 Thiab txhua yam uas yaum kom neeg ua zoo yeej los ntawm kuv; vim yam zoo yeej tsis los ntawm tus twg tsuas yog los ntawm kuv xwb. Kuv twb yog tus uas koj tib neeg mus rau txhua yam uas zoo; tus uas tsis ntseeg kuv tej lus yeej tsis ntseeg kuv—tias kuv tseem muaj nyob; thiab tus uas yuav tsis ntseeg kuv yeej yuav tsis ntseeg Leej Txiv tus uas tau xa kuv los. Vim saib seb, kuv yog Leej Txiv, kuv yog qhov kaj, thiab yog txoj sia, thiab yog qhov tseeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 13 Cia li los cuag kuv, Au nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg es, thiab kuv yuav ua rau nej pom tej yam uas tseem ceeb dua, tej kev paub uas tau raug muab zais cia vim yog txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 14 Cia li los cuag kuv, Au nej cov uas yog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab nws yuav ua rau nej pom tej yam tseem ceeb uas Leej Txiv tau tseg cia rau nej, txij li thaum chiv keeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb; thiab tej ntawd tseem tsis tau los rau nej, vim yog txoj kev tsis ntseeg.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

15 Saib seb, thaum nej yuav dua daim ntaub thaiv ntawm txoj kev tsis ntseeg uas pheed ua kom nej nyob rau hauv nej txoj kev phem kawg nkaus, thiab txoj kev ua siab tawv, thiab tej siab tsis to taub, thaum ntawd tej yam tseem ceeb thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thooob uas tau raug muab zais txij li thaum chiv keeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb yuav ua rau nej pom—muaj tseeb tiag, thaum nej yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe, nrog ib lub siab mob thiab lub siab xav ua zoo, thaum ntawd nej yuav paub tias Leej Txiv yuav nco txog txoj kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau nej tej yawg koob, Au tsev neeg Ixayees es.

16 Thiab thaum ntawd kuv tej kev tshwm sim uas kuv tau kom raug muab sau cia los ntawm kuv tus tub qhe Yauhas yuav raug muab qhib rau ntawm tag nrho cov neeg tej qhov muag. Nco ntsoov, thaum nej pom tej yam no, nej yuav paub tias lub sij hawm twb txog lawm kom tej ntawd yuav raug ua kom muaj tseeb tiag.

17 Yog li ntawd, thaum nej tau txais phau ceev xwm txheej no nej yuav paub tias txoj hauj lwm ntawm Leej Txiv tau pib lawm rau txhua txhia qhov uas nyob saum thaj av.

18 Yog li ntawd, cia li hloov siab lees txim tag nrho nej sawv daws uas nyob thooob plaws hauv ntiaj teb, thiab cia li los cuag kuv, thiab ntseeg kuv txoj moo zoo, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe; vim tus uas ntseeg thiab ua kev cai raus dej yuav raug cawm dim; tiam sis tus uas tsis ntseeg yuav raug txim; thiab tej cim yuav raws lawv cov uas ntseeg kuv lub npe qab.

19 Thiab koob hmoov yuav tau raug tus uas nrhiav pom muaj txoj kev ntseeg rau kuv lub npe nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg, vim tus ntawd yuav raug tsa sawv mus nyob hauv lub nceeg vaj uas tau npaj rau nws txij li thaum chiv keeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb. Thiab saib seb kuv yog tus uas tau hais tej ntawd. Anees.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

Ethaws 5

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, tau sau tej lus uas raug txib kuv, raws li kuv txoj kev nco tau; thiab kuv tau qhia rau koj tej uas kuv tau muab zwm cia; yog li ntawd tsis txhob kov lawv xwv kom koj yuav tau muab txhais; vim yam ntawd raug txwv rau koj, tsuas yog nyob thiab nyob nws yuav yog kev txawj ntse nyob hauv Vajtswv.
- 2 Thiab saib seb, koj yuav muaj sij hawm zoo uas koj yuav tau muab cov phiaj rau cov uas yuav pab coj kom muaj tau txoj hauj lwm no pom;
- 3 Thiab rau peb tug lawv yuav raug ua kom pom los ntawm Vajtswv lub hwj chim; yog li ntawd lawv yuav paub tseeb tias tej yam no muaj tseeb.
- 4 Thiab nyob hauv tej qhov ncauj ntawm peb tug tim khawv tej yam no yuav raug tsim kom muaj; thiab tej lus tim khawv ntawm peb tug, thiab txoj hauj lwm no, uas yog txoj uas yuav raug ua kom pom Vajtswv lub hwj chim thiab nws txoj lus, uas Leej Txiv, thiab Leej Tub, thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ua tim khawv—thiab tag txhua yam no yuav sawv ua tim khawv tawm tsam neeg ntiaj teb nyob rau hauv hnuv kawg.
- 5 Thiab yog tias lawv ho hloov siab lees txim thiab los cuag Leej Txiv los ntawm Yexus lub npe, lawv yuav raug txais mus rau hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 6 Thiab nim no, yog kuv tsis muaj cai rau tej yam no, nej sim txiav txim seb; vim nej yuav paub tias kuv muaj cai thaum nej pom kuv, thiab peb yuav sawv ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag nyob hauv hnuv kawg. Anees.

Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

Ethaws 6

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, rov txuas muab phau ceev xwm txheej txog Tsales thiab nws tus tij laug.
- 2 Vim tau muaj tias tom qab uas tus Tswv tau npaj tej pob zeb uas Tsales tus tij laugtau coj mus rau saum roob, Tsales tus tij laugtau nqis tawm saum roob los, thiab nws tau muab tej pob zeb ntawd tso rau hauv cov nkoj uas tau npaj, ib lub rau hauv ib toj; thiab saib seb, lawv tau ci pom kev rau hauv tej nkoj.
- 3 Thiab tus Tswv tau ua kom tej pob zeb ci nyob hauv qhov tsaus ntuj li no, kom ci pom kev rau tej txiv neej, tej poj niam, thiab tej me nyuam, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis tau hla tej dej loj nyob hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv npaj tau txhua yam zaub mov tas, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lawv yuav nyob muaj sia rau hauv dej, thiab kuj npaj zaub noj rau lawv tej pab yaj thiab tej tsiaj txhu, thiab txhua yam tsiaj qus los sis tsiaj nyeg los sis tej noog uas lawv yuav coj nrog lawv—thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau ua tag txhua yam no lawm lawv tau nce mus rau hauv lawv tej nkoj los sis tej nkoj, thiab tso mus rau hauv hiav txwv, muab lawv tus kheej cob rau tus Tswv lawv tus Vajtswv.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv Vajtswv tau ua kom muaj ib nthwv cua loj ntsawj rau saum nplaim dej hiav txwv, mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab li no lawv tau raug muab pov nyob rau saum tej ntshuas dej hiav txwv ua ntej tej cua.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias ntau zaus lawv tau raug faus rau hauv tej kev tob ntawm hiav txwv, vim yog tej nthwv dej luaj roob uas tau tawg los npog lawv, thiab vim yog tej cua daj cua dub loj thiab phem heev uas tau raug muaj los ntawm tej cua heev.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv raug faus nyob hauv qhov tob tsis muaj dej uas yuav ua kom lawv raug mob, vim lawv tej nkoj ntom ib yam li ib lub ntim, thiab lawv kuj ntom zoo tib yam li Nau-as lub nkoj; yog li ntawd thaum lawv tau raug tej dej ntau vij ib puag ncig lawv tau thov rau tus Tswv, thiab nws tau coj lawv rov qab los dua rau saum tej nplaim dej.

Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias tej cua yeej tshuab tsis tu mus rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm thaum uas lawv tseem nyob rau saum tej dej; thiab lawv tau raug ntsawj ua ntej tej cua li no.
- 9 Thiab lawv tau hu nkauj qhuas rau tus Tswv; muaj tseeb tiag, Tsales tus tij laughtau hu nkauj qhuas rau tus Tswv, thiab nws tau ua tsaug thiab qhuas tus Tswv tag nrho ib hnub; thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj, lawv tseem tsis tau tseg qhuas tus Tswv.
- 10 Thiab li no lawv tau raug ntsawj mus; thiab tsis muaj tsiaj phem uas nyob hauv hiav txwv yuav ua tau lawv tawg, los sis tej ntses loj loj ua kom lawv puas tau; thiab lawv tau muaj qhov pom kev tsis tu ncu, tsis hais nyob saum qaum dej los sis hauv qab dej.
- 11 Thiab li no lawv tau raug ntsawj mus, peb puas thiab plaub caug thiab plaub hnub nyob rau saum dej.
- 12 Thiab lawv tau tuaj sua rau ntawm ntug dej ntawm thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm. Thiab thaum lawv tau muab lawv tej ko taw tsuj rau saum tej ntug dej ntawm thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm lawv tau khoov ti nkaus rau hauv av, thiab tau txo lawv tej hwj chim ua ntej tus Tswv, thiab tau poob kua muag ntawm txoj kev xyiv fab rau tus Tswv, vim yog nws txoj kev hlob tshua uas muaj nplua mias rau lawv.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm mus rau saum thaj av, thiab tau pib ua liaj teb.
- 14 Thiab Tsales muaj plaub tug tub; thiab lawv hu ua Ntsekhas, thiab Nkinkas, thiab Mahas, thiab Aulaihas.
- 15 Thiab Tsales tus tij laugkuj tau yug tau tej tub thiab tej ntxhais.
- 16 Thiab tej phooj ywg ntawm Tsales thiab nws tus tij laughtau muaj kwv yees li nees nkaum thiab ob leeg; thiab lawv kuj muaj tej tub thiab tej ntxhais ua ntej lawv tau tuaj rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; thiab yog li ntawd lawv tau pib muaj coob heev.
- 17 Thiab lawv tau raug qhia kom ua neej txo hwj chim ua ntej tus Tswv; thiab lawv kuj tau raug qhia saum ntuj los thiab.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pib ri mus rau saum thaj av, thiab tau coob ntxiv thiab ua liaj ua teb; thiab lawv tau loj hlob muaj zog nyob hauv thaj av.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

- 19 Thiab Tsales tus tij laughtau pib laus lawm, thiab tau pom tias tsis ntev nws yuav tsum nqis mus rau hauv lub qhov ntxa; yog li ntawd nws tau hais rau Tsales tias: Cia wb sau wb cov neeg los ua ke xwv kom wb yuav suav txheeb lawv, kom wb yuav paub txog lawv saib lawv xav tau dab tsi ntawm wb ua ntej wb nqis mus rau hauv wb ob lub qhov ntxa.
- 20 Thiab cov neeg tau sib sau ua ke mus raws li. Nim no tej tub thiab tej ntxhais ntawm Tsales tus tij laugmuaj nees nkaum thiab ob leeg; thiab tej tub thiab tej ntxhais ntawm Tsales muaj kaum ob leeg, nws muaj plaub leeg tub.
- 21 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau suav lawv cov neeg; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau suav lawv tas, nkawd tau xav paub txog lawv saib yam dab tsi uas lawv xav kom nkawd ua ua ntej nkawd nqis mus rau hauv nkawd ob lub qhov ntxa.
- 22 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau xav kom nkawd pleev roj tsa ib tug ntawm nkawd tej tub los ua ib tug vaj ntxwv kav lawv.
- 23 Thiab nim no saib seb, qhov no tau ua rau nkawd nyuaj siab. Thiab Tsales tus tij laughtau hais rau lawv tias: Muaj tseeb qhov no yeej yuav coj mus rau txoj kev txhom ua qhev.
- 24 Tiam sis Tsales tau hais rau nws tus tij laugtias: Cia lawv kom lawv ho muaj ib tug vaj ntxwv. Thiab yog li no nws thiaj tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej cia li xaiv ib tug vaj ntxwv tawm ntawm wb cov tub, txawm yog tus twg uas nej xav tau.
- 25 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau xaiv Tsales tus tij laughtus tub hlob; thiab nws lub npe hu ua Pankas. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tsis lees thiab tsis kam ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv. Thiab cov neeg tau kom nws txiv yuam kom nws ua, tiam sis nws txiv tsis kam; thiab nws tau hais rau lawv tias lawv yuav tsum tsis txhob yuam ib tug neeg los ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv.
- 26 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau xaiv tag nrho Pankas cov kwv tij, thiab lawv tsis kam ua.
- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias tag nrho Tsales cov tub los kuj tsis kam, tsuas tshuav ib tug xwb; thiab Aulaihas tau raug pleev roj tsa ua vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg.
- 28 Thiab nws tau pib kav, thiab cov neeg tau pib vam meej; thiab lawv tau rais los mus nplua nuj heev.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tau tuag, thiab nws tus tij lauglos kuj tib yam.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias Aulaihas tau ua neej txo hwj
chim ua ntej tus Tswv, thiab tau nco ntsoov tej yam
loj heev uas tus Tswv tau ua rau nws txiv, thiab kuj
tau qhia nws cov neeg saib tus Tswv tau ua tej yam
loj heev rau lawv tej yawg koob li cas lawm.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly
before the Lord, and did remember how great things
the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his
people how great things the Lord had done for their
fathers.

Ethaws 7

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Aulaihas tau txiav txim ncaj ncees nyob rau saum thaj av tag nrho nws lub neej, uas yog lub uas ntev heev.
- 2 Thiab nws yug tau tub thiab ntxhais; muaj tseeb tiag, nws yug tau peb caug thiab ib leeg, nyob hauv lawv muaj nees nkaum thiab peb leeg tub.
- 3 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws hnub nyoog laus lawm nws kuj yug tau Khij. Thiab tau muaj tias Khij tau los kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab Khij yug tau Khaulihos.
- 4 Thiab thaum Khaulihos muaj peb caug thiab ob xyoos nws tau ntxeev siab tawm tsam nws txiv, thiab tau mus thiab tau nyob rau hauv thaj av Nihos; thiab nws yug tau tub thiab ntxhais, thiab lawv tau rais los mus zoo nkauj zoo nraug heev; yog li ntawd Khaulihos rub tau ntau tus neeg raws nws qab.
- 5 Thiab thaum nws sau tau ib pab tub rog los ua ke lawm nws tau nce tuaj rau thaj av Mauloos qhov uas vaj ntxwv nyob, thiab txhom tau nws, uas tau muaj raws li tej lus hais ntawm Tsales tus tij laugtias lawv yuav raug coj los mus rau hauv txoj kev ua qhev.
- 6 Nim no thaj av Mauloos, uas tus vaj ntxwv tau nyob, twb ze thaj av uas cov Neeg Nifais hu ua thaj av Quav Poj.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Khij tau nyob hauv txoj kev ua qhev, thiab nws cov neeg nyob hauv qab ntawm Khaulihos nws tus tub, mus txog thaum nws tau laus heev lawm; txawm li ntawd los Khij tseem yug tau Sus thaum nws laus laus lawm, thaum nws tseem nyob hauv txoj kev ua qhev.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias Sus tau npau taws rau nws tus tij laug; thiab Sus tau hlob muaj zog, thiab tau rais los mus muaj zog li lub zog ntawm ib tug neeg; thiab nws kuj muaj hwj chim txiav txim.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, nws tau tuaj rau lub roob Efala-is, thiab nws tau nchuav tej quav hlau tawm ntawm lub roob, thiab tau muab hlau ua ntaj rau cov uas nws tau yaum nrog nws lawm; thiab tom qab uas nws tau muab tej ntaj npaj rau lawv tas nws tau rov qab los rau lub nroog Nihos, thiab tau ua rog rau nws tus tij laugKhaulihos, los ntawm qhov no nws txeeb tau lub teb chaws thiab muab nws rov los txum tim rau nws txiv Khij.

Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

10 Thiab nim no vim yog tej yam uas Sus tau ua, nws txiv thiaj tau muab lub teb chaws rau nws; yog li ntawd nws tau pib kav nyob hauv nws txiv qhov chaw.

11 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau txiav txim ncaj ncees; thiab nws tau nthuav nws lub teb chaws mus thoob plaws rau saum thaj av, vim cov neeg tau rais los mus coob heev.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias Sus kuj yug tau ntau tus tub thiab ntxhais.

13 Thiab Khaulihos tau hloov siab lees txim txog ntau yam phem uas nws tau ua lawm; yog li ntawd Sus tau muab hwj chim rau nws nyob hauv nws lub teb chaws.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias Khaulihos tau muaj ntau tus tub thiab ntxhais. Thiab nyob rau hauv tej tub ntawm Khaulihos tau muaj ib tug uas npe hu ua Nau-as.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias Nau-as tau ntxeev siab tawm tsam Sus, tus vaj ntxwv, thiab nws txiv Khaulihos, thiab rub tau nws tus tij laugKhaulihos, thiab tag nrho nws cov kwv tij thiab ntau tus neeg mus.

16 Thiab nws tau ua rog rau Sus, tus vaj ntxwv, nyob hauv qhov ntawd nws txeeb tau thaj av uas yog lawv thawj thawj qhov qub txeeg qub teg; thiab nws tau rais los mus ua ib tug vaj ntxwv kav feem av ntawd.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias nws rov qab tau ua rog dua rau Sus, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv; thiab nws txhom tau Sus, tus uas yog vaj ntxwv, thiab tau cab nws mus ua qhev nyob hauv Mauloos.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum nws twb yuav luag muab nws tua, Sus cov tub tau nyiag nkag tuaj rau hauv Nau-as lub tsev thaum tsaus ntuj thiab tau muab nws tua, thiab tau tsoo lub qhov rooj ntawm lub qhov taub tawg thiab tau coj lawv txiv tawm, thiab tau muab nws tso rau saum nws lub rooj zaum hauv nws lub teb chaws.

19 Yog li ntawd Nau-as tus tub tau txhim kho nws lub teb chaws hloov nws chaw; txawm li ntawd los lawv tsis tau muaj hwj chim kov yeej vaj ntxwv Sus ntxiv lawm, thiab cov neeg uas nyob hauv qab ntawm vaj ntxwv Sus txoj kev kav tau vam meej heev thiab hlob zoo.

20 Thiab lub teb chaws tau raug muab faib; thiab tau muaj ob lub teb chaws, lub teb chaws Sus, thiab lub teb chaws Khaulihos, Nau-as tus tub.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

- 21 Thiab Khauhos, Nau-as tus tub, tau ua kom nws cov neeg yuav tsum ua rog rau Sus, nyob hauv qhov ntawd Sus tau kov yeej lawv thiab tau tua Khauhos.
- 22 Thiab nim no Khauhos tau muaj ib tug tub uas npe hu ua Nilos; thiab Nilos tau muab Khauhos lub teb chaws rau Sus, thiab nws tau raug Sus nyiam; yog li ntawd Sus tau muab ntau yam uas xav tau rau nws, thiab nws tau ua li nws siab xav nyob rau hauv Sus lub teb chaws.
- 23 Thiab nyob rau hauv txoj kev kav ntawm Sus tau muaj tej yaj saub tuaj rau hauv cov neeg, cov uas tau raug xa los ntawm tus Tswv, tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej tias txoj kev phem thiab txoj kev pe dab pe mlom ntawm cov neeg tab tom koj ib txoj kev foom tsis zoo los rau saum thaj av, thiab lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj yog lawv tsis hloov siab lees txim.
- 24 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau hais lus phem tawm tsam cov yaj saub, thiab tau saib tsis taus lawv. Thiab tau muaj tias vaj ntxwv Sus tau txiav txim tawm tsam tag nrho cov uas tau hais lus phem nkaug cov yaj saub.
- 25 Thiab nws tau ua ib txoj cai thoob plaws tag nrho thaj av, uas tau muab hwj chim rau cov yaj saub tias lawv yuav mus qhov twg los lawv mus tau; thiab los ntawm tej yam no cov neeg tau raug koj los rau hauv txoj kev hloov siab lees txim.
- 26 Thiab vim cov neeg tau hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj thiab tej kev pe dab pe mlom tus Tswv tau tso lawv dim, thiab lawv tau pib rov vam meej dua nyob rau hauv thaj av. Thiab tau muaj tias Sus yug tau tub thiab ntxhais thaum nws twb laus lawm.
- 27 Thiab tsis tau muaj tsov rog nyob hauv Sus lub neej ntxiv lawm; thiab nws tau nco ntsoov tej yam tseem ceeb uas tus Tswv tau ua rau nws tej yawg koob nyob hauv txoj kev koj lawv hla hiav txwv tuaj rau thaj av uas tau cog lus cia lawm; yog li ntawd nws tau txiav txim ncaj ncees nyob tag nrho hauv nws lub neej.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

Ethaws 8

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias nws yug tau Aumaws, thiab Aumaws tau los kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw. Thiab Aumaws yug tau Tsales; thiab Tsales yug tau tub thiab ntxhais.
- 2 Thiab Tsales tau ntxeev siab tawm tsam nws txiv, thiab tau los thiab nyob rau hauv thaj av Hes. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ntxias ntau cov neeg, vim yog nws tej lus txawj dag ntxias, txog thaum nws tau ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws.
- 3 Thiab thaum nws tau muaj ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws nws tau ua rog rau nws txiv, thiab nws tau cab nws txiv mus rau txim, thiab tau kom nws ua qhev;
- 4 Thiab nim no, nyob rau lub caij kav ntawm Aumaws nws raug nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim ib nrab ntawm nws lub caij. Thiab tau muaj tias nws yug tau tub thiab ntxhais, nyob hauv cov no tau muaj Henroos thiab Khauli-athumaws;
- 5 Thiab nkawd tau npau taws heev vim yog tej kev ua ntawm Tsales nkawd tus tij laug, kawg tias nkawd tau tsa ib pab tub rog thiab tau ua rog rau Tsales. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ua rog rau nws thaum tsaus ntuj.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau tua Tsales cov tub rog tuag lawv twb yuav luag tua nws thiab; thiab nws tau thov lawv kom lawv tsis txhob tua nws, thiab nws yuav muab lub teb chaws rau nws txiv. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau muab nws txoj sia rau nws.
- 7 Thiab nim no Tsales tau tu siab heev vim yog txoj kev poob ntawm lub teb chaws, vim nws tau muab nws lub siab tso rau saum lub teb chaws thiab rau saum txoj kev qhuas ntawm lub ntiaj teb.
- 8 Nim no Tsales tus ntxhais tau txawj ntse heev, thiab tau pom tej kev tu siab ntawm nws txiv, tau xav ib txoj kev uas los ntawm qhov ntawd nws yuav txhiv tau lub teb chaws los rau nws txiv.

Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

- 9 Nim no Tsales tus ntxhais tau zoo nkauj heev. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tham nrog nws txiv, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Vim li cas kuv txiv yuav muaj kev tu siab heev ua luaj? Nws tsis tau nyeem phau ceev xwm txheej uas peb tej yawg koob tau coj hla hiav txwv tuaj los? Saib seb, tsis yog muaj ib zag txog lawv cov thaud, uas los ntawm lawv tej kev ua ntsiag to lawv txeeb tau tej teb chaws thiab muaj suab npe loj heev no los?
- 10 Thiab nim no, yog li ntawd, cia kuv txiv xa xov mus hais Akis tuaj, Khinaws tus tub; thiab saib seb, kuv twb zoo nkauj, thiab kuv yuav dhia muas caum rau nws saib, thiab kuv yuav ua kom nws zoo siab, kom nws yuav xav tau kuv ua poj niam; yog li ntawd yog nws yuav thov koj kom koj muab kuv ua nws tus poj niam, ces koj hais tias: Kuv yuav muab nws yog koj yuav coj kuv txiv, uas yog vaj ntxwv, lub taub hau los rau kuv.
- 11 Thiab nim no Aumaws tau yog Akis ib tug phooj ywg; yog li ntawd, thaum Tsales tau hu Akis tuaj, Tsales tus ntxhais tau dhia muas caum rau nws saib ces nws tau ua rau nws zoo siab, kawg tias nws tau xav yuav nws ua poj niam. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau hais rau Tsales tias: Muab nws rau kuv ua poj niam.
- 12 Thiab Tsales tau hais rau nws tias: Kuv yuav muab nws rau koj, yog koj yuav coj kuv txiv, uas yog vaj ntxwv, lub taub hau los rau kuv.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias Akis tau sau tag nrho nws tej neeg txheeb ze tuaj rau hauv Tsales tsev, thiab tau hais rau lawv tias: Nej puas yuav cog lus rau kuv tias nej yuav rau siab ua rau kuv nyob rau hauv tej yam uas kuv xav kom nej ua?
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tag nrho tau cog lus rau nws, los ntawm tus Vajtswv saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thiab kuj los ntawm lub ntuj, thiab kuj los ntawm lub ntiaj teb, thiab los ntawm lawv tej taub hau, tias yog leej twg hloov ntawm txoj kev pab uas Akis xav tau yuav tsum poob nws lub taub hau; thiab yog leej twg yuav qhia tawm yam uas Akis yuav ua rau lawv paub, tus ntawd yuav tsum poob nws txoj sia mus.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau yeem li no nrog Akis. Thiab Akis tau hais tej lus lav rau lawv tej uas tau raug muab los ntawm lawv txheej thaum ub cov uas kuj tau nrhiav kom muaj hwj chim, uas tau muab cev nqis los txij li thaum Kayees, uas tau yog ib tug neeg tua neeg txij li thaum chiv keeb los.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

- 16 Thiab lawv tau raug tshwj tseg los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus dab los muab tej lus lav no rau cov neeg, kom ceev tau lawv nyob hauv txoj kev tsaus ntuj, kom pab cov uas nrhiav hwj chim muaj hwj chim, thiab tua neeg, thiab ua lim hiam, thiab dag, thiab ua txhaum tag nrho txhua yam kev phem thiab kev plees kev yi.
- 17 Thiab nws tau yog Tsales tus ntxhais uas tau muab tej no rau hauv nws lub siab kom txheeb nrhiav tej yam thaum ub no; thiab Tsales tau muab tej no rau hauv Akis siab; yog li ntawd, Akis tau muab tej ntawd rau nws tej neeg txheeb ze thiab tej phooj ywg, tau coj lawv ncaim los ntawm tej kev cog lus ntxim nyiam ua tej uas nws tau xav ua.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau txhim tsa ib pab neeg tuav hauv ua ke, tib yam li lawv txheej thaum ub; uas yog ib txoj kev tuav hauv uas qias thiab phem tshaj plaws, nyob ntawm Vajtswv lub qhov muag;
- 19 Vim tus Tswv tsis ua hauj lwm nyob hauv tej kev tuav hauv, thiab nws tsis xav kom neeg yuav tsum txo ntshav, tiam sis tau txwv tag nrho txhua yam, txij li thaum chiv keeb ntawm neeg los.
- 20 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, tsis sau lawv tej kev lav lus thiab tej kev tuav hauv saib zoo li cas, vim nws raug ua rau kuv paub lawm tias lawv twb muaj nyob rau hauv txhua haiv neeg tag nrho, thiab lawv twb muaj nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas.
- 21 Thiab lawv tau ua muaj txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg no uas nim no kuv tab tom hais txog, thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm Nifais cov neeg.
- 22 Thiab haiv neeg twg uas yuav cia muaj tej kev tuav hauv li ntawd, kom muaj tau hwj chim thiab nplua nuj, mus txog thaum lawv yuav ri mus rau hauv tej haiv neeg, saib seb, lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj; vim tus Tswv yuav tsis cia kom tej ntshav ntawm nws cov neeg ntseeg, uas yuav raug hlais los ntawm lawv, yuav quaj tas mus li rau nws hauv av tawm los rau txoj kev paj txiaj ntsig rau lawv thiab nws tseem tsis paj lawv txiaj ntsig.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23 Yog li ntawd, Au nej cov uas yog Lwm Haiv Neeg es, nws yog txoj kev txawj ntse hauv Vajtswv kom tej yam no yuav tsum raug ua rau nej paub, xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd nej yuav hloov siab lees txim txog nej tej kev txhaum, thiab yuav tsis cia kom tej kev tuav hauv tua neeg no yuav maj yeej nej, tej uas yuav ua kom muaj hwj chim thiab nplua nuj—thiab txoj hauj lwm, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog txoj hauj lwm ntawm txoj kev puas tsuaj yuav los rau saum nej, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog rab ntaj ntawm txoj kev ncaj ncees ntawm Vajtswv Nyob Mus Ib Txhis yuav vau los rau nej, rau nej txoj kev poob vau thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj yog nej yuav cia kom muaj tej yam no.

24 Yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau txib nej, thaum nej yuav pom tej yam no los rau hauv nej kom nej yuav ras paub txog nej qhov chaw phem heev, vim yog txoj kev tuav hauv no uas yuav muaj los rau hauv nej; los sis kev txom nyem yuav raug rau nws, vim yog tej ntshav ntawm lawv cov uas tau raug tua tuag lawm; vim lawv quaj hauv tej hmoov av los rau txoj kev pajj txiaj ntsig rau nws, thiab kuj rau cov uas tau txhim tsa nws.

25 Vim yuav tau muaj tias tus uas txhim tsa nws yeej yuav nrhiav ntxeev txoj kev ywj pheej ntawm tag nrho tej thaj av, tej haiv neeg, thiab tej teb chaws; thiab nws yuav coj kom muaj tau txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm tag nrho cov neeg, vim nws raug txhim tsa los ntawm tus dab, tus uas yog leej txiv ntawm tag nrho kev dag; twb yog tib tug neeg dag uas tau ntxias peb thawj nkawg niam txiv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog tib tug neeg dag uas tau ua kom neeg tua neeg txij thaum chiv keeb los; tus uas tau ua rau tej neeg tej siab tawv kom lawv tau muab tej yaj saub tua, thiab xuas pob zeb ntaus lawv, thiab muab lawv ntiab tawm txij thaum chiv keeb los.

26 Yog li ntawd, kuv Maulaunais, tau raug txib kom sau tej yam no xwv kom txoj kev phem yuav muaj qhov kawg, thiab kom lub sij hawm yuav los kom Dab Ntxwg Nyoog yuav tsis muaj hwj chim rau saum tej siab ntawm noob neej, tiam sis kom lawv yuav raug yaum ua zoo tsis tu ncu, xwv kom lawv yuav los rau hauv qhov chaw txhawv ntawm tag nrho tej kev ncaj ncees thiab raug cawm dim.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

Ethaws 9

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, txuas kuv phau ceev xwm txheej ntxiv. Yog li ntawd, saib seb, tau muaj tias vim yog tej kev ua ke tuav hauv ntawm Akis thiab nws cov phooj ywg. Saib seb, lawv ntxeev tau Aumaws lub teb chaws.
- 2 Txawm li ntawd los, tus Tswv tseem tau hlub tshua rau Aumaws, thiab rau nws tej tub thiab rau nws tej ntxhais cov uas tsis tau nrhiav ua kom nws puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab tus Tswv tau ceeb toom Aumaws nyob hauv ib zag npau suav kom nws ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av mus; yog li ntawd Aumaws tau ncaim tawm ntawm thaj av nrog nws tsev neeg, thiab tau tsiv mus ntau hnuv, thiab tau los txog thiab tau hla ze ntawm lub roob See, thiab tau los txog ze ntawm qhov chaw uas cov Neeg Nifais tau raug puas tsuaj, thiab mus ntawm qhov ntawd mus rau sab hnuv tuaj, thiab tau los txog ib qho chaw uas hu ua Anploos, ze ntawm ntug hiav txwv, thiab nyob qhov ntawd nws tau rub nws lub tsev pheed suab ntaub, thiab nws tej tub thiab tej ntxhais, thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg, tsuas yog tshuav Tsales thiab nws tsev neeg xwb.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias Tsales tau raug pleev roj tsa ua vaj ntxwv kav cov neeg los ntawm kev phem tej tes; thiab nws tau muab nws tus ntxhais rau Akis ua poj niam.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Akis tau nrhiav nws yawm txiv txoj sia; thiab nws tau thov rau cov uas nws tau lav lus los ntawm cov neeg txheej thaum ub tej lus sib cog, thiab lawv muab tau nws yawm txiv lub taub hau, thaum nws tseem zaum saum nws lub rooj zaum, tab tom muab lus rau nws cov neeg.
- 6 Vim txoj kev ri ntawm txoj kev phem no thiab pab neeg ua hauj lwm ntsiag to tau loj heev ces tau ua rau tag nrho tej neeg tej siab phem tuaj; yog li ntawd Tsales tau raug tua tuag nyob saum nws lub rooj zaum, thiab Akis tau los kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Akis tau pib khib txog nws tus tub, yog li ntawd nws tau muab nws xauv rau hauv qhov taub, thiab tau muab zaub mov me ntsis los sis tsis muab li rau nws mus txog thaum nws tau tuag tshaib.

Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

8 Thiab nim no tus kwv ntawm nws tus uas tau tuag tshaib, (thiab nws lub npe yog Nilas) tau npau taws nrog nws txiv vim yog tej uas nws txiv tau ua rau nws tus tij lauglawm.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias Nilas tau sau ib pab neeg tsis coob tuaj ua ke, thiab tau khiav tawm ntawm thaj av, thiab tau los thiab nyob nrog Aumaws.

10 Thiab tau muaj tias Akis yug tau lwm cov tub, thiab lawv tau kov yeej cov neeg tej siab, txawm tias lawv tau cog lus rau nws tias yuav ua tag nrho txhua yam kev phem raws li tej uas nws siab xav yuav.

11 Nim no cov neeg ntawm Akis tau xav kom nplua nuj, twb tib yam li Akis tau xav kom muaj hwj chim; yog li ntawd, tej tub ntawm Akis tau muab nyiaj rau lawv, los ntawm qhov ua li no lawv rub tau cov neeg feem ntau raws lawv qab.

12 Thiab tau pib muaj ib npluav rog nyob nruab nrab ntawm Akis tej tub thiab Akis, uas tau ntev ncu ntau xyoo, muaj tseeb tiag, twb muaj txoj kev puas tsuaj yuav luag tag rau tag nrho cov neeg ntawm lub teb chaws, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav luag tag nrho, tsuas tshuav peb caug leej xwb, thiab lawv cov uas tau khiav nrog Aumaws tsev neeg.

13 Yog li ntawd, Aumaws tau rov qab los txum tim dua rau thaj av ntawm nws qub txeeg, qub teg.

14 Thiab tau muaj tias Aumaws tau pib laus; txawm li ntawd los, thaum nws muaj hnuv nyoog laus nws tseem yug tau Emawj; thiab nws tau tsa Emawj ua vaj ntxwv kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

15 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau pleev roj tsa Emawj ua vaj ntxwv lawm nws tau pom kev nyab xeeb nyob hauv thaj av tau ncu ob xyoos, thiab nws tau tuag lawm, tau pom ntau lub caij heev, uas tau muaj kev tu siab puv nkaus. Thiab tau muaj tias Emawj tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw, thiab tau ua raws nws txiv tau kav lawm tag nrho.

16 Thiab tus Tswv tau rov pib tshem tej kev foom tsis zoo tawm ntawm thaj av mus, thiab Emawj tsev neeg tau vam meej heev kawg nyob hauv qab ntawm Emawj txoj kev kav; thiab nyob hauv ncu li rau caum thiab ob xyoo lawv tau rais los mus muaj zog heev, kawg tias lawv tau rais los mus nplua nuj heev—

17 Tau muaj txhua yam txiv hmab txiv ntoo, thiab txhua yam noob, thiab txhua yam paj, thiab txhua yam ntaub zoo, thiab kub, thiab nyiaj dawb, thiab tej yam muaj nuj nqis;

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

18 Thiab kuj tau muaj txhua yam nyuj twm, tej heev nyuj, thiab tej maum nyuj, thiab yaj, thiab npua, thiab tej tshis, thiab kuj muaj lwm yam tsiaj ntau uas zoo siv rau neeg ua zaub noj.

19 Thiab lawv kuj muaj tej nees, thiab tej zag, thiab tau muaj tej ntxhw thiab tej khawliloos thiab tej khumas; tag nrho uas yog cov zoo rau neeg siv, thiab cov tseem ceeb tshaj yog cov ntxhw thiab cov khawliloos thiab cov khumas.

20 Thiab li no tus Tswv tau nchuav nws tej koob hmoov rau saum thaj av no, uas tau yog thaj uas zoo dua li tag nrho lwm thaj av; thiab nws tau txib tias txhua tus uas yuav nyob hauv thaj av yuav tsum nyob pe hawm tus Tswv, los sis lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj thaum lawv tau raug siav nyob hauv txoj kev tsis ncaj; tus Tswv hais rau tej uas zoo li ntawd tias: Kuv yuav nchuav tag nrho kuv txoj kev npau taws los.

21 Thiab Emawj tau txiav txim ncaj ncees nyob tag nrho hauv nws lub neej, thiab nws yug tau ntau tus tub thiab ntxhais; thiab nws yug tau Khauli-atoos, thiab nws tau pleev roj tsa Khauli-atoos kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

22 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau pleev roj tsa Khauli-atoos kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw lawm nws tau nyob plaub xyoo ntxiv, thiab nws tau pom kev nyab xeeb nyob hauv thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws twb tau pom Leej Tub ntawm txoj kev Ncaj Ncees, thiab tau zoo siab thiab qhuas nyob hauv nws lub neej; thiab nws tau tuag nrog kev nyab xeeb.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-atoos tau mus ua li nws txiv tau ua, thiab tau ua ntau lub nroog loj, thiab tau qhuab qhia tej uas zoo rau nws cov neeg nyob tag nrho hauv nws lub neej. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tsis muaj me nyuam mus txog thaum uas nws twb tau laus heev lawm.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tus poj niam tau tuag, tau muaj ib puas thiab ob xyoos. Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-atoos tau yuav ib tug poj niam hluas los ua poj niam, thaum nws hnuv nyoog laus, thiab yug tau tej tub thiab ntxhais; yog li ntawd nws tau nyob mus txog thaum nws muaj ib puas thiab plaub caug thiab ob xyoos.

25 Thiab tau muaj tias nws yug tau Khoos, thiab Khoos tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab nws tau kav plaub caug thiab cuaj xyoos, thiab nws yug tau Hes; thiab nws kuj yug tau lwm cov tub thiab ntxhais thiab.

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

26 Thiab cov neeg tau rov ri dua mus rau saum thaj av tag nrho, thiab tau rov pib muaj txoj phem heev kawg nkaus dua rau saum thaj av, thiab Hes tau pib puag tej kev ua hauj lwm ntsiag to thaum ub, los ua kom nws txiv puas tsuaj.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tshem nws txiv tawm saum nws lub rooj zaum, vim nws xuas nws rab ntaj kiag tua nws txiv; thiab nws tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

28 Thiab tau rov muaj tej yaj saub tuaj rau hauv thaj av dua, tau qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau lawv—kom lawv yuav tsum npaj tus Tswv txoj kev los sis yuav muaj ib qho kev foom tsis zoo los rau saum thaj av; muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav muaj ib qho kev tshaib nqhis loj heev, uas lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj yog lawv tsis kam hloov siab lees txim.

29 Tiam sis cov neeg tsis kam ntseeg cov yaj saub tej lus, lawv tau ntiab lawv tawm; thiab lawv tau muab lawv cov no ib txhia pov rau hauv tej qhov thiab tau cia lawv piam sij mus. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau ua tag nrho tej yam no raws li vaj ntxwv Hes tej lus txib.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias tau pib muaj ib qho kev zaub mov tsis txaus noj nyob rau saum thaj av, thiab tej neeg tau pib raug puas tsuaj nrawm heev li vim yog txoj kev tsis muaj zaub mov txaus, vim tsis tau muaj nag los rau saum thaj av.

31 Thiab kuj tau muaj tej nab muaj taug los rau saum thaj av, thiab tau tom ntau tus neeg. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tej pab tsiaj tau khiav ntawm tej nab muaj taug, mus rau thaj av qab teb, uas cov Neeg Nifais hu ua Xalahelas.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias tau muaj ntau tus ntawm lawv uas tau piam sij ntawm tog kev; tiam sis, tau muaj ib txhia uas tau khiav mus txog rau hauv thaj av qab teb.

33 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau ua kom tej nab tsis txhob raws lawv ntxiv lawm, tiam sis kom lawv thaiv kev kom neeg yuav hla tsis tau, xwv kom txhua tus uas sim hla yuav raug tej nab muaj taug tom tuag.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

- 34 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau raws tej tsiaj ntawd txoj kev, thiab tau noj tej tsiaj uas tau tuag ntawm kev tej cev, mus txog thaum uas lawv tau noj lawv tag. Nim no thaum cov neeg tau pom tias lawv yuav tsum piam sij lawv tau pib hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj thiab quaj thov rau tus Tswv.
- 35 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau txo lawv tej hwj chim txaus rau tus Tswv lawm nws tau xa nag los rau saum thaj av; thiab cov neeg tau pib ciaj sia dua, thiab tau pib muaj txiv hmab txiv ntoo nyob rau tej teb chaws qaum teb, thiab nyob rau tag nrho tej teb chaws uas nyob ib ncig. Thiab tus Tswv tau ua nws lub hwj chim tawm rau lawv pom nyob hauv txoj kev cawm lawv dim ntawm txoj tshaib nqhis.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

Ethaws 10

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Se, tus uas yog ib tug xeeb ntxwv ntawm Hes—vim Hes tau piam sij los ntawm txoj kev tshaib nqhis, thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg tsuas yog tshuav Se xwb—yog li ntawd, Se tau rov pib txhim tsa ib co neeg uas tau tawg tas lawm dua.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias Se tau nco ntsoov txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm nws tej yawg koob, thiab nws tau txhim tsa ib lub teb chaws uas ncaj ncees; vim nws tau nco ntsoov yam uas tus Tswv tau ua nyob hauv txoj kev coj Tsales thiab nws tus tij laughla hiav txwv; thiab nws tau mus li tus Tswv tej kev; thiab nws yug tau tub thiab ntxhais.
- 3 Thiab nws tus tub hlob, uas npe hu ua Se, tau ntxeev siab tawm tsam nws; tiam sis Se tau raug tua tuag los ntawm ib tug tub sab tes, vim yog nws txoj kev nplua nuj heev, qhov ntawd tau rov coj txoj kev nyab xeeb los rau nws txiv dua.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nws txiv tau txhim tsa ntau lub nroog rau saum thaj av, thiab cov neeg tau pib ri mus rau saum thaj av tag nrho. Thiab Se tau ua neej nyob mus muaj hnub nyoog laus heev; thiab nws yug tau Lilakis. Thiab nws tau tuag, thiab Lilakis tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Lilakis tsis tau ua tej uas ncaj nyob hauv tus Tswv lub qhov muag, vim nws tau muaj ntau tus poj niam thiab niam yau, thiab tau tso tej uas tsis yooj yim ris rau saum tej neeg tej xub pwg; muaj tseeb tiag, nws tau sau lawv se hnyav heev; thiab nws tau siv tej se ua ntau lub tsev uas dav heev.
- 6 Thiab nws tau ua ib lub rooj zaum zoo nkauj heev rau nws; thiab nws tau ua ntau lub qhov taub, thiab leej twg uas tsis kam them se nws tau muab pov rau hauv qhov taub; thiab leej twg uas them tsis tau se nws tau muab pov rau hauv qhov taub; thiab nws tau ua kom lawv yuav tsum ua hauj lwm tsis tseg rau lawv txoj kev pab; thiab leej twg tau tsis kam ua hauj lwm nws tau ua kom muab tua.
- 7 Yog li ntawd nws tau muab tag nrho nws tej hauj lwm zoo, muaj tseeb tiag, nws tej kub zoo nws twb tau ua kom raug muab nchuav nyob hauv qhov taub; thiab tag nrho txhua yam ntawm tej qauv tes zoo nws tau ua kom raug ua nyob hauv qhov taub. Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau ua tsim txom cov neeg nrog nws tej kev sib daj sib deev thiab tej kev qias.

Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 Thiab thaum nws tau kav tau plaub caug thiab ob xyoos cov neeg tau sawv ntseev siab tawm tsam nws; thiab tau rov pib muaj rog nyob hauv thaj av dua, kawg tias thaum kawg Lilakis tau raug tua, thiab nws tej xeeb leej xeeb ntxwv tau raug raws tawm ntawm thaj av.

9 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab tau ncu ntau xyoo lawm, Mauli-atoos, (nws yog Lilakis ib tug xeeb ntxwv) tau sib sau ua ke ib pab tub rog ntawm cov neeg sab nraud, thiab tau tawm mus thiab tau ua rog rau cov neeg; thiab nws txeeb tau ntau lub nroog; thiab nplua rog tau rais los mus mob heev, thiab tau tsis kawg tau ntau xyoo; thiab nws tau muaj hwj chim rau saum tag nrho thaj av, thiab tau tsa nws tus kheej ua vaj ntxwv kav tag nrho thaj av.

10 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau pleev roj tsa nws tus kheej ua vaj ntxwv tas lawm nws tau ua kom cov neeg lub nra sib, los ntawm qhov uas nws tau ua kom cov neeg nyiam nyob hauv lawv tej qhov muag, thiab lawv tau tsa nws ua lawv tus vaj ntxwv.

11 Thiab nws tau ua kev ncaj ncees rau cov neeg, tiam sis tsis rau nws tus kheej vim yog nws tej kev sib daj sib deev ntau; yog li ntawd nws tau raug txiav tawm ntawm tus Tswv lub xub ntiag mus.

12 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauli-atoos tau ua ntau lub nroog, thiab cov neeg tau rais los mus nplua nuj heev nyob hauv nws txoj kev kav, uas nyob hauv tej vaj tse, thiab nyob hauv tej kub thiab tej nyiaj dawb, thiab hauv txoj kev cog qoob loos, thiab hauv tej pab yaj, thiab tej tsiaj txhu, thiab tej yam uas tau rov qab los txum tim rau lawv.

13 Thiab Mauli-atoos tau ua neej nyob muaj hnuv nyoog loj kawg nkaus li, thiab tom qab ntawd nws yug tau Kis; thiab Kis tau kav nyob hauv nws txiv qhov chaw; thiab nws tau kav yim xyoo, thiab nws txiv tau tuag. Thiab tau muaj tias Kis tsis tau kav ncaj ncees, yog li ntawd nws tsis raug tus Tswv nyiam.

14 Thiab nws tus kwv tij tau sawv ntseev siab tawm tsam nws, los ntawm qhov ntawd nws tau coj nws los mus rau txim; thiab nws tau nyob raug txim tag nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau tub thiab ntxhais nyob hauv kev raug txim, thiab thaum nws hnuv nyoog laus lawm nws yug tau Levis; thiab nws tau tuag.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

15 Thiab tau muaj tias Levis tau ua hauj lwm nyob hauv kev raug txim tom qab uas nws txiv tuag lawm, tau ncuia li plaub caug thiab ob xyoos. Thiab nws tau ua rog tawm tsam tus vaj ntxwv ntawm thaj av, los ntawm qhov ntawd nws txeeb tau lub teb chaws los rau nws tus kheej.

16 Thiab tom qab uas nws txeeb tau lub teb chaws los rau nws tus kheej lawm nws tau ua tej yam uas ncaj nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag; thiab cov neeg tau vam meej nyob hauv thaj av; thiab nws tau ua neeg nyob muaj hnuv nyoog laus zoo, thiab yug tau tej tub thiab tej ntxhais; thiab nws kuj yug tau Khaulas, tus uas nws tau pleev roj tsa ua vaj ntxwv nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias Khaulas tau ua tej uas zoo nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag tag nrho nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau ntau tus tub thiab ntxhais; thiab tom qab uas nws tau pom ntau hnuv nws tau tuag, zoo tib yam li sawv daws ntawm lub ntiatj teb; thiab Khisaws tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias Khisaws kuj tau tuag lawm thiab, thiab Lis tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw.

19 Thiab tau muaj tias Lis kuj tau ua tej yam uas zoo nyob ntawm tus Tswv lub qhov muag. Thiab nyob lub sij hawm ntawm Lis cov nab muaj taug tau raug puas tsuaj tas. Yog li ntawd lawv tau mus rau nram thaj av qab teb, mus plob nqaij rau cov neeg ntawm thaj av, vim thaj av tau muaj tej tsiaj hav zoov puv nkaus. Thiab Lis tus kheej kuj tau rais los ua ib tug neeg plob zoo heev.

20 Thiab lawv tau ua ib lub nroog loj ze ntawm lub caj dab nqaim ntawm thaj av, ze ntawm qhov chaw uas hiav txwv faib thaj av.

21 Thiab lawv tau tshwj thaj av qab teb ua ib thaj hav zoov qus, cia mus tua tsiaj. Thiab tag nrho thaj av qaum teb tau muaj neeg nyob puv nkaus.

22 Thiab lawv muaj txuj ci tsim ub tsim no heev, thiab lawv tau yuav thiab muag thiab ib leeg pauv khoom rau ib leeg, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj tuaj.

23 Thiab lawv ua txhua yam quav hlau, thiab lawv tau ua kub, thiab nyiaj dawb, thiab hlau, thiab tooj dag, thiab txhua yam hlau, thiab lawv tau khawb tej ntawd tawm hauv av los; yog li ntawd, lawv khawb av ntau heev kom muab tau quav hlau, kub, thiab nyiaj dawb, thiab hlau, thiab tooj liab. Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam khoom zoo.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

24 Thiab lawv tau muaj paj, thiab tej ntaub yaj pwm; thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam ntaub, xwv kom lawv yuav muaj ris tsho npog lawv tej kev liab qab.

25 Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam twj khawb av, tsis hais laij thiab tseb, thiab sau thiab tsoo, thiab ntaus.

26 Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam twj uas lawv ua hauj lwm nrog lawv tej tsiaj.

27 Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam cuab yeej ua rog. Thiab lawv tau ua txhua yam uas muaj qauv tes ntaus zoo kawg li.

28 Thiab ib txwm tsis tau muaj ib co neeg uas tau koob hmoov ntau dua li lawv, thiab tau vam meej dua los ntawm tus Tswv tes. Thiab lawv tau nyob hauv ib thaj av uas zoo tshaj li txhua thaj av, vim tus Tswv tau hais li.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias Lis tau ua neej nyob ntau xyoo, thiab yug tau tub thiab ntshais; thiab nws kuj yug tau Hiathoos.

30 Thiab tau muaj tias Hiathoos tau kav nyob hauv nws txiv qhov chaw. Thiab thaum Hiathoos kav tau nees nkaum thiab plaub xyoos, saib seb, lub teb chaws tau raug txeeb ntawm nws mus. Thiab nws tau raug ua hauj lwm ntau xyoo nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim, muaj tseeb tiag, twb nyob tag nrho nws lub neej uas tshuav.

31 Thiab nws yug tau Hes, thiab Hes ua neej nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej. Thiab Hes yug tau Aloos, thiab Aloos tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau Anikhadas, thiab Anikhadas kuj tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau Khauli-atoos, thiab Khauli-atoos tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau Khoos.

32 Thiab tau muaj tias Khoos txeeb tau ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws. Thiab nws tau kav ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws tau plaub caug thiab ob xyoos; thiab nws tau mus ua rog tawm tsam vaj ntxwv, Ankis, thiab lawv tau sib tua tau ncu ntau xyoo, nyob lub sij hawm ntawd Khoos tau kov yeej Ankis, thiab txeeb tau kav lub teb chaws qhov seem tshuav.

33 Thiab nyob rau hauv Khoos lub caij tau pib muaj tej tub sab nyob hauv thaj av; thiab lawv tau pib siv tej qub kev, thiab sib lav lus raws li txheej laus thaum ub, thiab tau rov nrhiav rhuav lub teb chaws dua.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

34 Nim no Khoos tau tua tawm tsam lawv ntau heev;
tiam sis nws cheem tsis tau lawv.

Now Com did fight against them much; neverthe-
less, he did not prevail against them.

Ethaws 11

- 1 Thiab kuj tau muaj ntau leej yaj saub tuaj nyob hauv Khoos lub caij, thiab tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg coob heev ntawd tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim, thiab tig rov mus cuag tus Tswv, thiab tso lawv tej kev tua neeg thiab tej kev phem tseg xwb.
- 2 Thiab tau muaj tias tej yaj saub tau raug cov neeg tsis lees yuav, thiab lawv tau khiav mus kom Khoos pab, vim cov neeg tau nrhiav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj.
- 3 Thiab lawv tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej ntau yam rau Khoos; thiab nws tau koob hmoov nyob tag nrho hauv nws lub neej uas tseem seem tshuav.
- 4 Thiab nws tau ua neej nyob muaj hnuv nyoog laus zoo, thiab yug tau Silos; thiab Silos tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw. Thiab Silos ib tug kwv tij tau ntxeev siab tawm tsam nws, thiab tau pib muaj ib npluav rog loj heev nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Silos tus kwv tij tau kom tag nrho cov yaj saub uas tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg yuav tsum raug muab tua;
- 6 Thiab tau muaj kev txom nyem loj nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av, vim lawv tau ua tim khawv tias ib qho kev foom loj yuav los rau saum thaj av, thiab rau saum cov neeg, thiab tias yuav muaj ib qho kev puas tsuaj loj nyob hauv lawv, yog ib qho uas ib txwm tsis tau muaj nyob saum lub ntiaj teb dua, thiab lawv tej pob txha yuav rais los mus ib yam li tej av tsub rau saum thaj av tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim txog lawv txoj kev phem xwb.
- 7 Thiab lawv tsis hnov tus Tswv lub suab, vim yog lawv tej kev tuav hauv ua phem; yog li ntawd, tau pib muab tsov rog thiab tej kev sib cav sib ceg nyob tag nrho hauv thaj av, thiab kuj muaj tej kev tshaib nqhis thiab tej kev mob nkeeg ntau, kawg tias thaum kawg tau muaj ib qho kev puas tsuaj loj, yog ib qho uas ib txwm tsis tau paub dua nyob rau saum lub ntiaj teb; thiab tau muaj tag nrho tej yam no nyob hauv Silos lub caij.
- 8 Thiab cov neeg tau pib hloov siab lees txim txog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj; thiab npaum li lawv tau ua li ntawd tus Tswv tau muaj kev hlub tshua rau lawv.

Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inasmuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias Silos tau raug tua, thiab Xeji tau raug coj mus rau txim, thiab tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej.
- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tus tub, Ahav, tau muab tau lub teb chaws; thiab nws tau kav cov neeg tag nrho nws lub neej. Thiab nws tau ua txhua yam kev tsis ncaj nyob hauv nws lub neej, los ntawm qhov ntawd nws tau ua muaj kev txo ntshav ntau; thiab nws txoj sia tau tsis ntev.
- 11 Thiab Eethas, tau yog Ahav ib tug xeeb ntxwv, tau muab tau lub teb chaws; thiab nws kuj tau ua tej uas phem nyob hauv nws lub neej.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv lub caij ntawm Eethas ntau tus yaj saub tau tuaj, thiab tau rov qab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg; muaj tseeb tiag, lawv tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej tias tus Tswv yuav ua kom lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si tawm saum lub ntiag teb mus tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev tsis ncaj xwb.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau ua lawv tej siab tawv qhawv, thiab tsis hnov lawv tej lus; thiab cov yaj saub tau txom nyem siab thiab tau thim ncaim hauv cov neeg mus.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Eethas tau txiav txim nyob hauv txoj kev phem tag nws lub neej; thiab nws yug tau Mauloos. Thiab tau muaj tias Mauloos tau kav nyob hauv nws qhov chaw; thiab Mauloos tau ua tej uas phem nyob ntawm tus Tswv xub ntiag.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias tau sawv ib qho kev ntxeev siab nyob hauv cov neeg, vim yog txoj kev tuav hauv ua hauj lwm ntsiag to uas tau tsa ua kom muaj hwj chim thiab nplua nuj; thiab tau sawv ib tug txiv neej nyob hauv lawv uas muaj hwj chim ua tsis ncaj, thiab tau ua rog rau Mauloos, nyob hauv qhov ntawd nws txeeb tau ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws; thiab nws tau ceev ib nrab ntawm lub teb chaws tau ntau xyoo.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias Mauloos tau ntxeev tau nws, thiab muab tau lub teb chaws rov qab los.
- 17 Thiab tau muaj tias tau sawv lwm tus txiv neej muaj hwj chim; thiab nws tau yog Tsales tus tij laugib tug xeeb ntxwv.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj tias nws ntxeev tau Mauloos thiab muab tau lub teb chaws; yog li ntawd, Mauloos tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej uas tseem tshuav; thiab nws yug tau Khauli-ataws.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-ataws tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej.
- 20 Thiab nyob hauv Khauli-ataws lub caij kuj tau muaj ntau tus yaj saub tuaj, thiab tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tej yam loj thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob, thiab tau qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim rau cov neeg, thiab tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav txiav txim tawm tsam lawv mus txog thaum lawv puas tsuaj huv tib si.
- 21 Thiab tias tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav xa los sis coj lwm cov neeg los nyob thaj av, los ntawm nws lub hwj chim, zoo tib yam li qhov uas nws tau coj lawv tej yawg koob.
- 22 Thiab lawv tau tsis kam lees tag nrho cov yaj saub tej lus, vim yog lawv txoj kev tuav hauv ua hauj lwm ntsiag to thiab tej kev phem qias.
- 23 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-ataws yug tau Ethaws, thiab nws tau tuag, tau nyob hauv txoj kev raug txim tag nws lub neej.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

Ethaws 12

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias Ethaws tau ua neej nyob rau hauv lub caij ntawm Khauli-athumaws; thiab Khauli-athumaws tau ua vaj ntxwv kav tag nrho thaj av.
- 2 Thiab Ethaws yog tus Tswv ib tug yaj saub; yog li ntawd Ethaws tau tawm tuaj rau hauv lub caij ntawm Khauli-athumaws, thiab tau pib qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau cov neeg, vim nws raug ua tsis tau kom tsum vim yog tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig uas tau nyob hauv nws.
- 3 Vim nws tau qhuab qhia txij thaum sawv ntxov, mus txog rau thaum hnuv poob, tau ntuas cov neeg kom ntseeg Vajtswv los mus rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim nyob tsam lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj, tau hais rau lawv tias los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg tag nrho txhua yam yuav muaj puv npo—
- 4 Yog li ntawd, tus uas ntseeg Vajtswv yeej yuav muaj txoj kev cia siab rau ib lub ntiaj teb zoo dua, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yuav yog ib qho chaw nyob ntawm Vajtswv sab xis, qhov kev cia siab ntawd yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, yuav ua ib tug hlau nres tuav rau tib neeg tej ntsuj plig, uas yuav ua kom lawv ruaj thiab khov, niaj hnuv lo rau tej hauj lwm uas zoo, uas yuav raug coj mus qhuas Vajtswv.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Ethaws tau qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog tej yam loj thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob rau cov neeg, tej uas lawv tsis ntseeg, vim lawv tsis tau pom tej ntawd.
- 6 Thiab nim no, kuv, Maulaunais, yuav hais me ntsis txog tej yam no; kuv yuav ua rau ntiaj teb paub tias txoj kev ntseeg yog tej yam uas cia siab rau thiab tsis pom; yog li ntawd tsis txhob cam vim nej tsis pom, vim nej yuav tsis pom ib qho tim khawv mus txog thaum nej txoj kev ntseeg twb raug muab sim lawm tso.
- 7 Vim nws tau yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg uas Khetos tau ua nws tus kheej rau peb tej yawg koob pom, tom qab uas nws tau sawv hauv qhov tuag los; thiab nws tsis tau ua rau lawv pom nws mus txog tom qab uas lawv tau muaj kev ntseeg nyob hauv nws; yog li ntawd, nws yeej yuav tsum yog tias ib txhia tau muaj kev ntseeg hauv nws, vim nws yeej tsis tau ua nws tus kheej rau ntiaj teb pom.

Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

- 8 Tiam sis vim yog tib neeg txoj kev ntseeg nws tau ua nws tus kheej rau ntiaj teb pom, thiab tau qhuas Leej Txiv lub npe, thiab tau npaj ib txoj kev xwv kom los ntawm qhov ntawd lwm tus yuav tau ua cov uas tau txais tej txiaj ntsim saum ntuj, xwv kom lawv yuav cia siab rau tej yam uas lawv tsis tau pom.
- 9 Yog li ntawd, nej los kuj yuav tsum muaj kev cia siab, thiab ua cov uas tau txais qhov txiaj ntsim ntawd, yog nej tsuas yuav muaj txoj kev ntseeg.
- 10 Saib seb nws twb yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg lawv txheej thaum ub thiaj raug hu mus raws li tus txheej txheem dawb huv ntawm Vajtswv.
- 11 Yog li ntawd, los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg Mauxes txoj kev cai thiaj raug muab. Tiam sis nyob hauv lub txiaj ntsim ntawm nws Leej Tub Vajtswv tau npaj ib txoj kev zoo dua; thiab nws yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg uas tej kev cai ntawd tau muaj puv npo.
- 12 Vim yog tsis muaj txoj kev ntseeg nyob hauv noob neej Vajtswv yuav ua tsis tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb nyob hauv lawv; yog li ntawd, nws tsis tau ua nws tus kheej rau lawv pom mus txog tom qab uas lawv muaj txoj kev ntseeg.
- 13 Saib seb, nws twb yog txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Amas thiab Amulej uas tau ua kom lub qhov taub vau rau hauv av.
- 14 Saib seb, nws twb yog txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Nifais thiab Lihais uas tau ua kom muaj kev hloov rau saum cov Neeg Lamas, kom lawv raug ua kev cai raus dej nrog hluav taws thiab nrog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 15 Saib seb, nws twb yog txoj kev ntseeg ntawm Amoos thiab nws cov kwv tij uas tau ua ib qho txuj ci tseem ceeb loj heev nyob hauv cov Neeg Lamas.
- 16 Muaj tseeb tiag, thiab tag nrho lawv cov uas tau ua tej txuj ci tseem ceeb twb tau ua tej ntawd los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, cov uas nyob ua ntej Khetos thiab cov uas nyob tom qab los kuj tib yam.
- 17 Thiab nws twb yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg es peb tug pab coj thiaj tau txais ib lo lus cog tseg tias lawv yuav tsis tau saj txoj kev tuag; thiab lawv tsis tau txais lo lus cog tseg mus txog tom qab uas lawv muaj txoj kev ntseeg.
- 18 Thiab ib txwm tsis muaj ib lub sij hawm uas muaj tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb mus txog tom qab uas lawv muaj txoj kev ntseeg; yog li ntawd, lawv yeej xub ntseeg Vajtswv Leej Tub tso.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

19 Thiab tau muaj ntau leej uas txoj kev ntseeg tau muaj zog heev, nyob ua ntej Khetos los, cov uas tsis muaj peev xwm ceev rau sab hauv daim ntaub thaiv, tiam sis tau pom tiag nrog lawv tej qhov muag tej yam uas lawv tau pom nrog ib lub qhov muag ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, thiab lawv tau zoo siab.

20 Thiab saib seb, peb tau pom nyob hauv phau ceev xwm txheej no tias ib tug ntawm cov no yog Tsales tus tij laug; nws txoj kev ntseeg Vajtsv loj heev li, kawg tias thaum uas Vajtsv tau cev nws tus ntiv tes nws tsis muaj peev xwm zais tau tus ntiv tes ntawd ncaim ntawm Tsales tus tij lauglub qhov muag, vim yog nws lo lus uas nws tau hais rau nws uas yog lo lus uas nws tau txais los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg.

21 Thiab tom qab uas Tsales tus tij laughtau pom tus Tswv tus ntiv tes, vim yog lo lus cog tseg uas Tsales tus tij laughtau txais los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, tus Tswv thiaj tsis muaj peev xwm tseg tau ib yam dab tsi kom nws lub qhov muag tsis pom; yog li ntawd nws tau ua rau nws pom tag nrho txhua yam, vim nws tsis muaj peev xwm ceev tau nyob sab nraum daim ntaub thaiv ntxiv lawm.

22 Thiab nws yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg uas kuv tej yawg koob tau txais lo lus cog tseg tias tej yam no yuav muaj los rau lawv cov kwv tij dhau los ntawm Lwm Haiv Neeg; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau txib kuv, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog Yexus Khetos.

23 Thiab kuv tau hais rau nws tias: Tus Tswv es, Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav thuam tej yam no, vim yog peb txoj kev tsis txawj sau; vim tus Tswv koj tau ua rau peb txawj hais lus heev los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, tiam sis koj tsis tau ua kom peb txawj sau ntawv; vim koj tau ua rau tag nrho cov neeg no kom lawv muaj peev xwm hais lus zoo, vim yog tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv uas koj tau muab rau lawv;

24 Thiab koj tau ua rau peb kom peb txawj sau me ntsis xwb, vim yog txoj kev txhav ntawm peb tej tes. Saib seb, koj tsis tau ua kom peb txawj sau zoo li Tsales tus tij laug, vim koj tau ua nws kom tej uas nws tau sau muaj hwj chim tib yam li koj, kom kov yeej tus neeg uas yuav nyeem lawv.

25 Koj kuj tau ua kom peb tej lus muaj hwj chim thiab zoo heev, txawm tias peb tsis txawj muab lawv sau cia; yog li ntawd, thaum peb sau peb pom peb txoj kev qaug zog, thiab dawm taw vim yog txoj kev tso peb tej lus nyob chaw; thiab kuv ntshai nyob tsam Lwm Haiv Neeg yuav thuam peb tej lus.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

26 Thiab thaum kuv tau hais li no tas, tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv, hais tias: Cov neeg ruam yuav thuam, tiam sis lawv yuav txom nyem siab; thiab kuv txoj kev hlub tshua yeej muaj txaus rau cov neeg uas siab dawb siab zoo, xwv kom lawv yuav tsis hais li cas rau nej txoj kev qaug zog.

27 Thiab yog tib neeg los cuag kuv kuv yuav ua kom lawv paub txog lawv tej kev tsis muaj zog. Kuv muab txoj kev tsis muaj zog rau tib neeg kom lawv yuav txo hwj chim; thiab kuv txoj kev hlub tshua yeej muaj txaus rau tag nrho txhua tus tib neeg uas txo lawv tej hwj chim rau kuv; vim yog lawv txo lawv tej hwj chim rau kuv, thiab muaj txoj kev ntseeg nyob hauv kuv, ces kuv yuav ua kom tej uas tsis muaj zog rais los mus muaj zog rau lawv.

28 Saib seb, kuv yuav ua kom Lwm Haiv Neeg paub txog lawv txoj kev tsis muaj zog, thiab kuv yuav ua rau lawv paub tias txoj kev ntseeg, txoj kev cia siab thiab txoj kev siab hlub yuav coj los cuag tau kuv—tus uas yog qhov txhawv ntawm tag nrho tej kev ncaj ncees.

29 Thiab kuv, Maulaunais, tau hnov tej lus no, tau raug nplij siab, thiab tau hais tias: Au tus Tswv es, koj txoj kev ncaj yeej yuav raug ua kom tiav, vim kuv paub tias koj ua hauj lwm rau noob neej raws li lawv txoj kev ntseeg;

30 Vim Tsales tus tij laug tau hais rau lub roob Xeeles tias, Txav—thiab nws txawm cia li txav. Thiab yog nws tsis tau muaj txoj kev ntseeg ces nws yeej yuav tsis txav; yog li ntawd koj ua hauj lwm tom qab uas neeg muaj txoj kev ntseeg.

31 Vim li no koj thiaj tau ua koj tus kheej rau koj cov pab coj pom; vim tom qab uas lawv tau muaj txoj kev ntseeg, thiab tau hais los ntawm koj lub npe, koj tau ua koj tus kheej rau lawv pom uas muaj hwj chim loj heev.

32 Thiab kuv kuj nco qab tias koj tau hais tias koj tau npaj ib lub tsev rau tib neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, twb yog ib lub uas nyob hauv koj Leej Txiv tej tsev, nyob hauv qhov ntawd neeg yuav muaj ib qho kev cia siab zoo heev ntxiv; yog li ntawd neeg yuav tsum cia siab, los sis nws yuav tsis muaj peev xwm txais ib qho qub txeeg qub teg nyob hauv qhov chaw uas koj tau npaj lawm.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou werkest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou werkest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

33 Thiab ntxiv, kuv nco qab tias koj tau hais tias koj tau hlub lub ntiaj teb, twb mus txog qhov uas tau tso koj txoj sia rau lub ntiaj teb, xwv kom koj yuav muab tau nws dua mus npaj ib qho chaw rau noob neej.

34 Thiab nim no kuv paub tias txoj kev hlub no uas koj tau muaj rau noob neej yog txoj kev siab hlub; yog li ntawd, tsuas yog tib neeg yuav muaj txoj kev siab hlub xwb tsis li ntawd lawv yuav tsis muaj peev xwm txais tau qhov chaw uas koj tau npaj nyob hauv koj Leej Txiv tej tsev.

35 Yog li ntawd, kuv paub los ntawm tej yam no uas koj tau hais tias, yog Lwm Haiv Neeg tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub, vim yog peb txoj kev qaug zog, ces koj yuav ua kom lawv pom, thiab yuav muab lawv txoj kev txawj ntse tshem mus, muaj tseeb tiag, tej uas lawv twb tau txais lawm, thiab yuav muab rau lawv cov uas yuav muaj ntxiv nplua mias.

36 Thiab tau muaj tias kuv tau thov rau tus Tswv kom nws yuav muab txoj kev hlub tshua rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, xwv kom lawv yuav muab txoj kev siab hlub.

37 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau kuv tias: Yog lawv tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub los nws yuav tsis ua cas rau koj, koj twb muaj kev ntseeg lawm; yog li ntawd, koj tej ris tsho yuav raug ua kom huv. Thiab vim koj tau pom koj txoj kev tsis muag zog koj yuav raug ua kom muaj zog, twb yuav tau zaum hauv qhov chaw uas kuv tau npaj nyob hauv kuv Txiv tej tsev.

38 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, thov hais ncaim mus zoo rau Lwm Haiv Neeg, muaj tseeb tiag, thiab kuj rau kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, mus txog thaum peb yuav sib ntsib rau ntawm Khetos lub rooj txiav txim, qhov uas txhua tus tib neeg yuav paub tias kuv tej ris tsho yeej tsis tsuas nej tej ntshav.

39 Thiab thaum ntawd nej yuav paub tias kuv tau pom Yexus, thiab nws tau nrog kuv tham tim ntsej tim muag, thiab nws tau hais rau kuv yam txo hwj chim heev, twb tib yam li ib tug neeg hais rau lwm tus nyob hauv kuv yam lus, ntsig txog tej yam no;

40 Thiab kuv tsuas tau sau qho me ntsis xwb, vim yog kuv txoj kev tsis txawj sau.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

41 Thiab nim no, kuv xav kom nej yuav nrhiav tus
Yexus no tus uas tej yaj saub thiab tej thwj tim tau
sau txog, xwv kom txoj kev hlub tshua ntawm
Vajtswv Leej Txiv, thiab tus Tswv Yexus Khetos,
thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas ua tim khawv
txog lawv, yuav los thiab nyob hauv nej mus ib txhis.
Amees.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus
of whom the prophets and apostles have written,
that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord
Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth
record of them, may be and abide in you forever.
Amen.

Ethaws 13

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, txuas ua kom tag kuv phau ceev xwm txheej txog txoj kev puas tsuaj ntawm cov neeg uas kuv tau sau los lawm.
- 2 Vim saib seb, lawv tau tsis kam txais yuav tag nrho Ethaws tej lus; vim nws tau qhia rau lawv tseeb txog tag nrho txhua yam, txij thaum chiv keeb ntawm tib neeg los; thiab tias tom qab tej dej tau lau saum thaj av no nws tau rais los mus ua ib thaj av zoo dua li tag nrho lwm thaj av, ib thaj av uas tau xaiv tseg los ntawm tus Tswv; yog li ntawd tus Tswv tau xav kom tag nrho tej neeg sawv daws uas nyob rau saum thaj av yuav tsum ua hauj lwm rau nws;
- 3 Thiab tias nws tau yog qhov chaw ntawm Yeluxalees Tshiab, uas yuav nqis tawm saum ntuj ceeb tsheej los, thiab yog qhov chaw dawb huv ntawm tus Tswv.
- 4 Saib seb, Ethaws tau pom Khetos lub caij, thiab nws tau hais txog ib lub Yeluxalees Tshiab nyob rau saum thaj av no.
- 5 Thiab nws kuj tau hais txog tsev neeg Ixayees, thiab lub Yeluxalees uas Lihais yuav tuaj—tom qab uas nws raug puas tsuaj lawm nws yuav raug rhawv dua, ib lub nroog dawb huv rau tus Tswv; yog li ntawd, nws yuav ua tsis tau ib lub Yeluxalees tshiab vim nws tau muaj nyob txheej thaum ub los; tiam sis nws yuav raug muab rhawv dua, thiab rais los mus ua ib lub nroog dawb huv ntawm tus Tswv; thiab nws yuav raug rhawv rau tsev neeg Ixayees—
- 6 Thiab tias ib lub Yeluxalees Tshiab yuav raug rhawv rau saum thaj av no, rau cov seem tshuav ntawm cov noob ntawm Yauxej, vim tej yam no twb tau muaj ib lub cim lawm.
- 7 Vim ib yam li Yauxej tau coj nws txiv nqis mus rau hauv thaj av Iyiv, nws twb tau tuag tid; yog li ntawd, tus Tswv tau coj ib cov seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej cov noob tawm ntawm thaj av Yeluxalees, xwv kom nws yuav hlub tshua rau Yauxej cov noob kom lawv yuav tsis piam sij, tib yam li nws twb tau hlub tshua rau Yauxej txiv kom nws yuav tsis piam sij.

Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

- 8 Yog li ntawd, cov seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej tsev neeg yuav raug txhim tsa rau saum thaj av no; thiab nws yuav yog ib thaj av ntawm lawv tej qub txeeg qub teg; thiab lawv yuav txhim tsa ib lub nroog dawb huv rau tus Tswv, tib yam li lub Yeluxalees qub; thiab lawv yuav tsis raug sib txuam ntxiv lawm, mus txog thaum qhov kawg los thaum uas lub ntiaj teb yuav dua mus.
- 9 Thiab yuav muaj dua ib lub ntuj tshiab thiab ib lub ntiaj teb tshiab; thiab lawv yuav zoo li cov qub tsuas yog cov qub tau dua mus lawm xwb, thiab tag nrho txhua yam rais los mus tshiab.
- 10 Thiab tom qab ntawd yuav muaj lub Yeluxalees Tshiab los; thiab lawv cov uas nyob hauv yuav tau koob hmoov, vim lawv yog cov uas tej ris tsho raug dawb huv dhau los ntawm tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov ntshav; thiab lawv yog lawv cov uas raug suav nyob hauv cov seem tshuav ntawm Yauxej cov noob, uas tau yog los ntawm tsev neeg Ixayees.
- 11 Thiab tom qab ntawd lub Yeluxalees qub kuj yuav muaj los; thiab cov neeg nyob hauv, lawv yuav tau koob hmoov, vim lawv tau raug ntxuav nyob hauv tus Me Nyuam Yaj cov ntshav; thiab lawv yog lawv cov uas tau tawg ri niab thiab raug sau ua ke los ntawm plaub ceg kaum ntawm lub ntiaj teb, thiab los ntawm tej teb chaws qaum teb, thiab yog cov uas nyob hauv txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm txoj kev khi lus uas Vajtsvw tau khi nrog lawv yawg koob, Anplaham.
- 12 Thiab thaum tej yam no los, yuav muaj raws li tej vajlugkub uas hais tias, lawv cov uas ua ntej, yuav tau ua qab; thiab lawv cov uas ua qab, yuav tau ua ntej.
- 13 Thiab kuv tau yuav luag sau ntau ntxiv, tiam sis kuv tau raug txwv; tiam sis loj thiab zoo kawg uas xav tsis thoob yog Ethaws tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej; tiam sis lawv tau saib nws yam tsis muaj nuj nqis, thiab tau muab nws ntiab tawm; thiab nruab hnuv nws tau mus nkaum hauv ib lub qhov tsua, thiab hmo ntuj nws tau tawm mus saib tej uas yuav los rau saum cov neeg.
- 14 Thiab thaum uas nws tau nyob hauv ib lub qhov tsua nws tau sau qhov seem tshuav ntawm phau ceev xwm txheej no, tau saib tej kev puas tsuaj uas tau los rau saum cov neeg, thaum hmo ntuj.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau hauv tib xyoos uas nws tau raug ntiab tawm hauv cov neeg tau pib muaj ib npluav rog loj heev nyob hauv cov neeg, vim tau muaj ntau tus uas tau sawv, uas tau yog tej neeg muaj zog, thiab tau nrhiav rhuav Khauli-athumaws los ntawm lawv tej kev ua hauj lwm ntsiag to ntawm txoj kev phem, uas tau hais txog lawm.
- 16 Thiab nim no Khauli-athumaws, nws tus kheej tau kawm, tag nrho tej kev ua rog thiab tag nrho kev ntxias ntawm lub ntiaj teb, yog li ntawd nws tau ua rog rau lawv cov uas tau nrhiav ua kom nws puas tsuaj.
- 17 Tiam sis nws tsis tau hloov siab lees txim, nws tej tub thiab tej ntxhais uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug los tib yam; Khauhos tej tub thiab tej ntxhais uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug los tib yam; Khaulihos tej tub thiab tej ntxhais uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug los tib yam; thiab thaum kawg, tsis muaj ib tug ntawm tej tub thiab tej ntxhais uas zoo nkauj zoo nraug nyob tag nrho saum lub ntiaj teb uas tau hloov siab lees txim txog lawv tej kev txhaum.
- 18 Yog li ntawd, tau muaj tias nyob hauv thawj xyoos uas Ethaws tau nyob hauv qhov tsua, tau muaj ntau leej neeg uas tau raug tua los ntawm ntaj los ntawm cov uas ua ke tuav hauv, tua tawm tsam Khauli-athumaws kom lawv yuav txeeb tau lub teb chaws.
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tej tub tau tua heev thiab tau los ntshav ntau.
- 20 Thiab nyob hauv xyoo ob tus Tswv txoj lus tau los rau Ethaws, kom nws mus thiab qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej rau Khauli-athumaws tias, yog nws thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg yuav hloov siab lees txim, tus Tswv yuav muab nws lub teb chaws rau nws thiab yuav tso cov neeg dim—
- 21 Tsis li ntawd lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj, thiab tag nrho nws tsev neeg tsuas yog yuav tshuav nws tus kheej xwb. Thiab nws tsuas yuav nyob kom pom txoj kev muaj puv npo ntawm tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau hais txog lwm cov neeg uas tau txais thaj av ua lawv qub txeeg qub teg; thiab Khauli-athumaws yuav tau txais ib qho kev faus los ntawm lawv; thiab txhua txhia tus yuav raug puas tsuaj tsuas yog tshuav Khauli-athumaws xwb.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

22 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tsis kam hloov siab lees txim, nws tsev neeg los tsis kam, cov neeg los tsis kam; thiab tej rog tsis tau tsum; thiab lawv tau nrhiav tua Ethaws, tiam sis nws tau khiav ntawm lawv mus thiab tau rov mus nkaum hauv lub qhov tsua dua.

23 Thiab tau muaj tias Seles tau sawv, thiab nws kuj tau ua rog rau Khauli-athumaws; thiab nws tau kov yeej nws, kawg tias nyob hauv xyoo peb nws tau coj nws mus rau hauv txoj kev rau txim.

24 Thiab Khauli-athumaws tej tub, nyob hauv xyoo plaub, tau kov yeej Seles, thiab rov txeeb tau lub teb chaws los rau lawv txiv dua.

25 Nim no tau pib muaj ib npluav rog nyob rau saum thaj av, txhua tus txiv neej nrog nws pab tau tawm tsam rau tej uas nws xav tau.

26 Thiab tau muaj tej tub sab, thiab thaum kawg, muaj tag nrho txhua yam kev phem nyob rau saum tag nrho thaj av.

27 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau npau taws heev nrog Seles, thiab nws tau tawm mus ua rog nrog nws tej tub rog tawm tsam nws; thiab lawv tau sib ntsib yam npau taws heev, thiab lawv tau sib ntsib hauv lub hav Kilakas; thiab npluav rog tau rais los mus mob heev.

28 Thiab tau muaj tias Seles tau tua tawm tsam nws tau ncuab peb hnub. Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau yeej nws, thiab tau caum nws mus txog thaum nws tau los txog lub tiaj Heloos.

29 Thiab tau muaj tias Seles rov ua rog rau nws nyob saum cov tiaj; thiab saib seb, nws tau kov yeej Khauli-athumaws, thiab tau raws nws rov qab los rau lub hav Kilakas.

30 Thiab Khauli-athumaws rov ua rog rau Seles dua nyob hauv lub hav Kilakas, nyob hauv qhov ntawd nws tau kov yeej Seles thiab muab nws tua.

31 Thiab Seles ua rau Khauli-athumaws raug mob hauv nws tus ncej puab, kom nws tsis tau rov mus ua rog tau ncuab li ob xyoos, nyob hauv lub sij hawm ntawd tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob saum thaj av tau tab tom sib txo ntshav, thiab tsis muaj ib tug uas cheem tau lawv.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

Ethaws 14

- 1 Thiab nim no tau pib muaj ib qho kev foom loj heev rau saum tag nrho thaj av vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj ntawm cov neeg, nyob rau hauv tej ntawd, yog ib tug neeg yuav tso nws tej cuab yeej tes los sis nws rab ntaj rau saum nws lub txee, los sis rau saum qhov chaw uas nws yuav ceev tej ntawd, saib seb, nyob rau tag kis, nws tsis muaj peev xwm nrhiav tau tej ntawd, qhov phem heev yog txoj kev foom uas nyob saum thaj av.
- 2 Yog li ntawd txhua tus neeg tau tuav rawv rau tej uas nws tau muaj, nrog nws tej tes, thiab tsis kam qiv los sis nws tsis kam txais; thiab txhua tus neeg tau ceev nws rab ko ntaj rau ntawm nws sab tes xis, tiv thaiv nws tej cuab tam thiab nws txoj sia thiab nws tej poj niam thiab me nyuam.
- 3 Thiab nim no, tom qab uas tau ncuab ob xyoos, thiab tom qab uas Seles tuag, saib seb, Seles ib tug kwv tij tau sawv thiab ua rog rau Khauli-athumaws, nyob hauv qhov ntawd Khauli-athumaws tau kov yeej nws thiab tau raws nws mus txog lub hav zoov Akis.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias Seles tus kwv tij tau ua rog rau nws nyob hauv lub hav zoov Akis; thiab npluav rog tau rais los mus mob heev, thiab ntau txhiab leej tau vau los ntawm ntaj.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau mus vij lub hav zoov; thiab Seles tus kwv tij tau tawm hauv hav zoov thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj thiab tau tua ib feem ntawm Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog, thaum lawv tseem tab tom qaug cawv.
- 6 Thiab nws tau los rau thaj av Mauloos, thiab tau tso nws tus kheej rau saum Khauli-athumaws lub rooj zaum.
- 7 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau nyob nrog nws cov tub rog hauv hav zoov tau ncuab ob xyoos, nyob hauv qhov ntawd nws tau txais zog loj heev rau nws cov tub rog.
- 8 Nim no Seles tus kwv tij, uas npe yog Nkiliyas, kuj tau txais zog loj heev rau nws cov tub rog, vim yog tej kev ua kev tuav hauv.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tus pov thawj hlob tau tua nws thaum nws zaum saum nws lub rooj zaum.

Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias ib tug ntawm cov neeg ua ke tuav hauv tau tua nws nyob hauv ib txoj kev uas tsis muaj neeg paub, thiab txeeb tau lub teb chaws rau nws tus kheej; thiab nws lub npe yog Lis; thiab Lis tau yog ib tug neeg muaj lub cev loj, loj dua li lwms tus neeg uas nyob hauv cov neeg sawv daws.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob hauv thawj xyoos ntawm Lis, Khauli-athumaws tau los rau hauv thaj av Mauloos, thiab tau ua rog rau Lis.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau tua nrog Lis, nyob hauv qhov ntawd Lis tau tua raug nws txhais caj npab ua rau nws raug mob; txawm li ntawd los, Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog tau txiv mus rau tom Lis, ua rau nws tau khiav mus rau ntawm tej ciam teb uas nyob ntawm ntug hiav txwv.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau raws nws qab; thiab Lis tau ua rog rau nws nyob saum ntug hiav txwv.
- 14 Thiab tau muaj tias Lis tau tua Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog, ua rau lawv tau rov khiav los rau lub hav zoov Akis.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias Lis tau caum nws mus txog thaum nws tau los txog lub tiaj Ankos. Thiab Khauli-athumaws tau koj tag nrho cov neeg nrog nws thaum uas nws tau khiav ua ntej Lis nyob hauv ces kaum av uas nws tau khiav mus rau ntawd.
- 16 Thiab thaum nws tau los txog rau lub tiaj Ankos nws tau ua rog rau Lis, thiab nws tau tua nws mus txog thaum nws tuag; txawm li ntawd los, Lis ib tug kwv tij tau tuaj tawm tsam Khauli-athumaws nyob hauv qhov chaw ntawd, thiab npluav rog tau rais los mus mob heev, nyob hauv qhov ntawd Khauli-athumaws tau rov khiav ua ntej Lis tus kwv tij cov tub rog dua.
- 17 Nim no Lis tus kwv tij lub npe hu ua Siv. Thiab tau muaj tias Siv tau caum Khauli-athumaws qab, thiab nws ntseev tau ntau lub nroog, thiab nws tau tua tej poj niam thiab tej me nyuam, thiab tau hlawv tej nroog.
- 18 Thiab tau muaj ib qho kev ntshai txog Siv mus thoob plaws rau thaj av tag nrho; muaj tseeb tiag, ib qho kev quaj tau tawm mus thoob plaws thaj av— Leej twg yuav sawv thaiv tau ntawm Siv tej tub rog? Saib seb, nws tau cheb tej av du lug ua nws ntej!
- 19 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tau pib txoos tej tub rog ua ke, thoob plaws saum thaj av huv tib si.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land— Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

20 Thiab lawv tau raug muab faib; thiab ib feem ntawm lawv tau khiav mus rau Siv tej tub rog, thiab ib feem ntawm lawv tau khiav mus rau Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog.

21 Thiab qhov npluav rog tau loj heev thiab tsis txawj kawg, thiab txoj kev nqaij ntuag ntshav nrog thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj tau ntev heev, kawg tias tag nrho saum thaj av tau raug cov neeg tuag tej cev npog tas.

22 Thiab qhov npluav rog tau ceev thiaj nrawm heev kawg tias tsis muaj ib tug tseg los faus cov neeg tuag, tiam sis lawv tau mus ntawm ib qhov kev txo ntshav mus rau ib qhov kev txo ntshav, tso tej cev ntawm tej txiv neej, tej poj niam, thiab tej me nyuam ua sab ua suab rau saum thaj av, kom rais los ua zaub rau tej kas ntawm cev nqaij daim tawv.

23 Thiab txoj kev tsw ntawm qhov ntawd tau tawm mus rau saum thaj av, twb mus rau tag nrho saum thaj av; yog li ntawd cov neeg tau rais los nyuaj siab nruab hnub thiab hmo ntuj, vim yog txoj kev tsw ntawm qhov ntawd.

24 Tiam sis, Siv tsis tau tsum caum Khauli-athumaws; vim nws tau cog lus muab nws tus kheej pauj txiaj ntsig ntawm Khauli-athumaws rau nws tus kwv tij cov ntshav, uas tau raug tua tuag, thiab tus Tswv txoj lus uas tau los rau Ethaws tias Khauli-athumaws yuav tsis raug ntog los ntawm ntaj.

25 Thiab li no peb pom tias tus Tswv tau los xyuas lawv nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws puv nkaus, thiab lawv txoj kev phem thiab tej kev qias tau npaj ib txoj kev rau lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj uas kav ib txhis.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias Siv tau caum Khauli-athumaws mus rau sab hnub tuaj, twb mus txog rau tej ciam teb ze ntug hiav txwv, thiab nyob qhov ntawd nws tau ua rog rau Siv tau ncu a li peb hnub.

27 Thiab txoj kev puas tsuaj nyob hauv Siv tej tub rog tau phem kawg nkaus tias nws ua rau cov neeg tau pib poob siab, thiab tau pib khiav ua ntej Khauli-athumaws tej tub rog; thiab lawv tau khiav mus rau thaj av Khaulihos, thiab tau cheb cov neeg hauv tawm ua ntej lawv, tag nrho lawv cov uas tsis kam koom lawv.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

- 28 Thiab lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub nyob hauv lub hav Khaulihos; thiab Khauli-athumaws tau rub nws tej tsev pheed suab ntaub nyob hauv lub hav Sawm. Nim no lub hav Sawm nyob ze lub roob Khaunos; yog li ntawd, Khauli-athumaws tau sau nws tej tub rog los ua ke rau saum lub roob Khaunos, thiab tau tshuab ib lub hom rau Siv cov tub rog caw kom lawv tuaj ua rog.
- 29 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau tawm tuaj, tiam sis raug raws rov qab; thiab lawv tau tuaj zaum ob, thiab tau raug raws rov qab zaum ob. Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau rov tuaj dua zaum peb, thiab npluav rog tau rais los mus mob heev.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias Siv tau tua raug Khauli-athumaws uas nws tau ua rau nws raug ntau qhov mob tob; thiab Khauli-athumaws, tau xiam nws cov ntshav, tau qaug zog tas lawm, thiab tau raug ev mus yam li nws twb tuag lawm.
- 31 Nim no txoj kev xiam tej txiv neej, poj niam thiab me nyuam ntawm ob tog tau coob heev kawg tias Siv tau txib nws cov neeg kom lawv tsis txhob caum Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog lawm; yog li ntawd, lawv tau rov qab mus rau lawv lub yeej.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

Ethaws 15

- 1 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Khauli-athumaws tau zoo nws tej mob tas, nws tau pib nco txog tej lus uas Ethaws tau hais rau nws lawm.
- 2 Nws tau pom tias twb tau raug tua tuag los ntawm ntaj ze ob plhom ntawm nws cov neeg lawm, thiab nws tau pib tu nws lub siab; muaj tseeb tiag, tau raug tua tuag ob plhom ntawm cov neeg muaj zog, thiab lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam.
- 3 Nws tau pib hloov siab lees txim txog txoj kev phem uas nws tau ua lawm; nws tau pib nco txog tej lus uas tau hais los ntawm tej qhov ncauj ntawm tag nrho tej yaj saub, thiab nws tau pom lawv tias lawv tau muaj puv npo zuj zus, txhua txhia yam; thiab nws tus ntsuj plig tau txom nyem siab thiab tsis kam kom nplij.
- 4 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau sau ib tsab ntawv rau Siv, tau xav kom nws yuav tseg cov neeg, thiab nws yuav muab lub teb chaws rau txoj kev uas tseg cov neeg txoj sia.
- 5 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Siv tau txais nws tsab ntawv nws tau sau ib tsab ntawv rau Khauli-athumaws, tias yog nws yuav kam nws tus kheej, xwv kom Siv yuav tau xuas nws rab ntaj kiag tua nws, ces nws yuav tseg cov neeg txoj sia.
- 6 Thiab tau muaj tias cov neeg tsis kam hloov siab lees txim txog lawv txoj kev tsis ncaj; thiab Khauli-athumaws cov neeg tau raug txhib kom npau taws tawm tsam Siv cov neeg; thiab Siv cov neeg tau raug txhib kom npau taws tawm tsam Khauli-athumaws cov neeg; yog li ntawd, Siv cov neeg tau ua rog rau Khauli-athumaws cov neeg.
- 7 Thiab thaum Khauli-athumaws tau pom tias nws twb yuav swb nws tau rov khiav ua ntej Siv cov neeg.
- 8 Thiab tau muaj tias nws tau los txog rau cov dej Lipliakhas uas txhais tias, loj, los sis loj dua lwm cov tag nrho; yog li ntawd, thaum lawv tau los txog cov dej no lawv tau rub lawv tej tsev pheb suab ntaub; thiab Siv kuj tau rub nws tej tsev pheb suab ntaub ze lawv; thiab yog li ntawd nyob rau tag kis lawv tau tuaj ua rog.
- 9 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sib tua ib npluav rog uas mob heev, nyob hauv qhov ntawd Khauli-athumaws rov qab raug mob dua, thiab nws tau qaug zog lawm vim ntshav xiam ntau.

Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

- 10 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog tau txiv rau saum Siv cov tub rog ces lawv tau kov yeej lawv, ces lawv tau ua rau lawv khiav ua ntej lawv; thiab lawv tau khiav mus rau sab nram hav, thiab tau rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub nyob hauv ib qho chaw uas hu ua Ankas.
- 11 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws cov tub rog tau rub lawv tej tsev pheed suab ntaub ze lub roob Lamas; thiab nws tau yog tib lub roob uas kuv txiv Maumoos tau muab cov ceev xwm txheej zais rau tus Tswv, uas yog tej uas dawb ceev.
- 12 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sau ua ke tag nrho cov neeg uas nyob saum thaj av huv tib si, uas tsis tau raug tua tuag, tsuas yog tshuav Ethaws xwb.
- 13 Thiab tau muaj tias Ethaws tau pom tag nrho tej kev ua ub ua no ntawm cov neeg; thiab nws tau pom tias cov neeg uas yeem rau Khauli-athumaws raug sib sau ua ke rau Khauli-athumaws pab tub rog; thiab cov neeg uas yeem rau Siv tau raug sib sau ua ke rau Siv pab tub rog.
- 14 Yog li ntawd, lawv tau sau tej neeg ua ke tau ncuav li plaub xyoos, xwv kom lawv yuav tau tag nrho cov uas nyob saum thaj av, thiab kom lawv yuav tau txais tag nrho tej zog uas lawv yuav muaj peev xwm txais tau.
- 15 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv tau sau tag nrho sawv daws tuaj ua ke, txhua tus rau pab tub rog uas nws tau xaiv, nrog lawv tej poj niam thiab lawv tej me nyuam—txiv neej, poj niam thiab me nyuam yaus tau coj tej cuab yeej ua rog, tau muaj tej phiaj hlau, thiab tej phiaj thaiv hauv siab, thiab tej kaus mom hlau, thiab tau hnav tej ris li yuav mus ua rog—lawv ib leeg tau tawm mus ua rog rau ib leeg; thiab lawv tau sib tua hnav ntawd ib hnav, thiab tsis muaj tog yeej.
- 16 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum hmo ntuj lawv tau lim heev, thiab tau mus so rau tom lawv tej yeej; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau mus so rau tom lawv tej yeej tas lawv tau pib quaj thiab nyiav rau txoj kev xiam ntawm lawv cov neeg uas raug tua tuag lawm; thiab qhov loj heev tau yog lawv tej kev qw, lawv tej kev quaj thiab tej kev nyiav, ua rau lawv tau ua ncha tej cua heev kawg nkaus.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

17 Thiab tau muaj tias nyob rau tag kis lawv tau rov mus ua rog dua, thiab qhov loj thiab phem heev tau yog hnuv ntawd; txawm li ntawd los, lawv tsis muaj tog yeej, thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tau tuaj dua lawv tau ua ncha tej cua nrog lawv tej kev qw, thiab lawv tej kev quaj, thiab lawv tej kev txom nyem siab, rau txoj kev xiam ntawm lawv cov neeg txoj kev tua tuag.

18 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau rov sau ib tsab ntawv mus rau Siv, tau xav kom nws tsis txhob rov tuaj ua rog lawm, tiam sis kom nws yuav txais yuav lub teb chaws, thiab tseg cov neeg txoj sia.

19 Tiam sis saib seb, tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig tau tsum tsis nrog lawv nyob lawm, thiab Dab Ntxwng Nyoog tau muaj hwj chim kav cov neeg tej siab; vim lawv tau zeem rau txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab, thiab lawv tej siab tsis to taub ua kom lawv yuav raug puas tsuaj; yog li ntawd lawv tau rov qab mus ua rog dua.

20 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sib tua hnuv ntawd ib hnuv nkaus, thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj lawm lawv tau pw tsaug zog nrog lawv tej ntaj.

21 Thiab nyob rau tag kis lawv tau sib tua mus txog thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj.

22 Thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj lawv tau qaug nrog txoj kev npau taws, tib yam li ib tug txiv neej uas raug qaug cawv txiv hmab; thiab lawv tau rov pw tsaug zog nrog lawv tej ntaj.

23 Thiab nyob rau tag kis lawv tau rov sib tua dua; thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj lawv sawv daws tau ntog tag los ntawm ntaj tsuas tshuav tsib caug thiab ob leeg ntawm Khauli-athumaws cov neeg xwb, thiab Siv cov neeg tshuav rau caum thiab cuaj leeg.

24 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau pw tsaug zog nrog lawv tej ntaj hmo ntawd, thiab nyob rau tag kis lawv tau rov sib tua, thiab lawv tau tawm tsam nyob hauv lawv tej zog nrog lawv tej ntaj thiab nrog lawv tej phiaj hlau, tag nrho hnuv ntawd.

25 Thiab thaum tsaus ntuj tuaj tau muaj peb caug thiab ob leeg ntawm Siv cov neeg, thiab nees nkaum thiab xya leej ntawm Khauli-athumaws cov neeg.

26 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau noj thiab tau pw tsaug zog, thiab tau npaj rau txoj kev tuag nyob rau tag kis. Thiab lawv tau loj thiab yog neeg muaj zog yog muab piv rau tej neeg lub zog.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

- 27 Thiab tau muaj tias lawv tau sib tua tau ncuu li peb teev, thiab lawv tau qaug zog lawm vim txoj kev xiam ntshav.
- 28 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Khauli-athumaws cov neeg tau txais zog txaus uas lawv mus taus kev, lawv twb yuav luag tau khiav rau lawv txoj sia; tiam sis saib seb, Siv, thiab nws cov neeg tau sawv, thiab nws tau cog lus nyob hauv nws txoj kev npau taws tias nws yuav tua Khauli-athumaws los sis nws yuav piam sij los ntawm ntaj.
- 29 Yog li ntawd, nws tau caum lawv, thiab nyob rau tag kis nws caum tau lawv; thiab lawv rov xuas ntaj sib tua dua. Thiab tau muaj tias thaum lawv sawv daws tau ntog tas los ntawm ntaj, tsuas yog tshuav Khauli-athumaws thiab Siv xwb, saib seb Siv tau qaug zog lawm vim txoj kev xiam ntshav.
- 30 Thiab tau muaj tias thaum Khauli-athumaws tau pheb rau saum nws rab ntaj, es nws tau so me ntsis, nws tau txiav Siv lub taub hau.
- 31 Thiab tau muaj tias tom qab uas nws tau txiav Siv lub taub hau tawm, Siv tau tsa nws ob txhais tes thiab vau kiag; thiab tom qab uas nws tau ntswj huas pa, nws tau tuag.
- 32 Thiab tau muaj tias Khauli-athumaws tau ntog rau hauv av, thiab tau rais los mus zoo li nws tsis muaj sia.
- 33 Thiab tau muaj tias tus Tswv tau hais rau Ethaws, thiab tau hais rau nws tias: Cia li mus. Thiab nws tau tawm mus, thiab tau pom tias tus Tswv tej lus tau muaj puv npo tag nrho; thiab nws tau xaus nws phau ceev xwm txheej; (thiab kuv tsis tau sau ib feem pua) thiab nws tau muab lawv zais ncaj ke kom cov neeg Leehais nrhiav tau lawv.
- 34 Nim no cov lus kawg uas tau raug sau los ntawm Ethaws yog cov no: Txawm tias tus Tswv yuav kom kuv plhis, los sis kom kuv tiv li tus Tswv lub siab nyiam nyob hauv cev nqaij daim tawv, nws tsis ua li cas, yog hais tias kuv yuav raug cawm dim mus nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj xwb. Amees.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

Maulaunais Phau Ntaww

Maulaunais 1

- 1 Nim no kuv, Maulaunais, tom qab uas tau xaus txoj kev muab lub ntsiab lus hauv ib zag ntawm Tsales cov neeg, kuv tsis tau xav tias yuav tau sau ntxiv lawm, tiam sis kuv tseem tsis tau piam sij; thiab kuv tsis tau ua kuv tus kheej rau cov Neeg Lamas paub ntshai nyob tsam lawv yuav ua rau kuv puas tsuaj.
- 2 Vim saib seb, lawv tej rog tau hnyav heev kawg nkaus nyob hauv lawv tus kheej; thiab vim yog lawv txoj kev ntxub lawv tau tua txhua tus Neeg Nifais uas tsis kam tso Khetos tseg.
- 3 Thiab kuv, Maulaunais, yuav tsis kam tso Khetos tseg; yog li ntawd, kuv tau mus ub mus no rau txhua qhov uas kuv yuav muaj peev xwm ceev tau kuv txoj sia.
- 4 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav sau ob peb yam ntxiv, tsis raws li tej uas kuv tau xav tias yuav ua; vim kuv tau xav tias yuav tsis sau ntxiv lawm; tiam sis kuv sau ob peb yam ntxiv, xwv kom tej zaum lawv yuav muaj nuj nqis rau kuv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas, nyob rau tej caij yav tom ntej, raws li tus Tswv lub siab xav.

The Book of Moroni

Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

Maulaunais 2

- 1 Cov lus ntawm Khetos, uas nws tau hais rau nws cov pab coj, kaum ob tug uas nws tau xaiv, thaum nws tso nws ob txhais tes rau saum lawv—
- 2 Thiab nws tau hu lawv raws npe, hais tias: Nej yuav tsum thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe, hauv kev sib sib zog thov; thiab tom qab uas nej tau ua li no tas nej yuav muaj hwj chim rau nws tus uas nej yuav tso nej ob txhais tes, nej yuav pub tau tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; thiab nej yuav muab nws los ntawm kuv lub npe, vim kuv cov thwj tim tau ua li no.
- 3 Nim no Khetos tau hais cov lus no rau lawv nyob rau lub sij hawm thawj zaug thaum nws tshwm los; thiab cov neeg coob coob tsis tau hnov tej ntawd, tiam sis cov pab coj tau hnov tej ntawd; thiab txhua tus uas lawv tau tso lawv tej tes rau, puav leej tau muaj tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.

Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

Maulaunais 3

- 1 Txoj kev uas cov pab coj, uas tau raug hu ua cov txwj laug ntawm lub koom txoos, tau tsa cov pov thawj thiab cov xib hwb—
- 2 Tom qab uas lawv tau thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Khetos lub npe, lawv tau tso lawv tej tes rau saum lawv, thiab tau hais tias:
- 3 Los ntawm Yexus Khetos lub npe kuv tsa koj ua ib tug pov thawj (los sis yog nws yog ib tug xib hwb, kuv tsa koj ua ib tug xib hwb) mus qhuab qhia txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev zam tej kev txhaum dhau los ntawm Yexus Khetos, los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg nws lub npe mus li kom txog thaum kawg. Amees.
- 4 Thiab raws li no lawv tau tsa cov pov thawj thiab cov xib hwb, raws li tej txiaj ntsim thiab tej kev hu ntawm Vajtsvw rau tib neeg; thiab lawv tau tsa lawv los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, uas tau nyob hauv lawv.

Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

Maulaunais 4

- 1 Tʰoxj kev uas lawv cov txwj laug thiab tej pov thawj foom koob hmoov thiab muab lub cev thiab cov ntshav ntawm Khetos rau lub koom txoos; thiab lawv tau foom koob hmoov thiab muab nws raws li Khetos tej lus txib; yog li ntawd peb paub tias txoj kev ua li ntawd yeej yog qhov tseeb; thiab tus txwj laug thiab tus pov thawj tau foom koob hmoov thiab muab nws—
- 2 Thiab lawv tau txhos caug nrog lub koom txoos, thiab thov rau Leej Txiv los ntawm Khetos lub npe, hais tias:
- 3 Au Vajtswv, Leej Txiv tus uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis, peb thov koj ntawm koj Leej Tub, Yexus Khetos lub npe, kom koj foom koob hmoov thiab tshwj cov mov mog no tseg cia kom dawb huv rau lawv sawv daws cov tau noj; kom lawv cov uas tau noj kom nco txog koj Leej Tub lub cev, thiab ua tim khawv rau koj, Au Vajtswv, Leej Txiv tus uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis, kom lawv txaus siab txais koj Leej Tub lub npe, thiab nco ntsoov txog nws, thiab koj raws li nws tej lus txib uas nws tau muab rau lawv, kom lawv thiaj li yuav muaj nws Leej Ntsuj Plig niaj hnuv nrog lawv nyob. Amees.

Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Maulaunais 5

- 1 Txoj kev foom koob hmoov thiab muab cov kua txiv hmab—Saib seb, lawv muab lub khob, thiab tau hais tias:
- 2 Au Vajtswv, Leej Txiv tus uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis, peb thov koj ntawm koj Leej Tub, Yexus Khetos lub npe, kom koj foom koob hmoov thiab tshwj cov kua txiv hmab no tseg cia kom dawb huv rau lawv sawv daws cov tau haus, kom lawv cov uas tau haus kom nco txog koj Leej Tub cov ntshav, uas tau nrog theej lawv; kom lawv ua tau tim khawv rau koj, Au Vajtswv, Leej Txiv tus uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis, kom lawv nco ntsoov txog nws, kom lawv thiaj li yuav muaj nws Leej Ntsuj Plig nrog lawv nyob. Amees.

Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

Maulaunais 6

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv hais txog txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej. Saib seb, cov txwj laug, cov pov thawj, thiab cov xib hwb raug ua kev cai raus dej; thiab lawv tsis tau ua kev cai raus dej tsuas yog lawv txi tau tej txiv uas lawv tsim nyog ua tau nws xwb.
- 2 Lawv kuj tsis tau txais ua ib qho kev cai raus dej tsuas yog lawv tau tawm los nrog ib lub siab mob thiab lub siab xav ua zoo xwb, thiab tau ua tim khawv rau lub koom txoos tias lawv yeej tau hloov siab lees txim txog tag nrho lawv tej kev txhaum lawm tiag.
- 3 Thiab tsis muaj ib tug uas tau txais txoj kev cai raus dej tsuas yog lawv tau ris Khetos lub npe rau saum lawv, tau muaj ib qho kev txiav txim siab yuav ua hauj lwm rau nws kom mus txog thaum kawg.
- 4 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau raug txais los rau hauv txoj kev cai raus dej, thiab tau txais thiab ntxuav los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim, lawv tau raug suav nrog cov neeg ntawm Khetos lub koom txoos; thiab lawv tej npe raug muab sau cia, xwv kom lawv yuav raug nco txog thiab tu kom hlob los ntawm Vajtswv txoj lus zoo, kom koj lawv nyob hauv txoj kev yog, kom koj lawv saib ntsoov rau txoj kev thov Vajtswv tsis tu ncuu, tsuas cia siab tos ntshis rau tej hwj chim pab tau ntawm Khetos, tus uas yog tus tswv thiab tus ua tag ntawm lawv txoj kev ntseeg.
- 5 Thiab lub koom txoos tau sib ntsib ua ke tsis tu ncuu, yoo mov thiab thov Vajtswv, thiab ib leeg nrog ib leeg tham txog txoj kev nyab xeeb ntawm lawv tej ntsuj plig.
- 6 Thiab lawv tau sib ntsib ua ke tsis tu ncuu noj cov mov mog thiab haus cov dej, ua kev nco txog tus Tswv Yexus.
- 7 Thiab lawv tau koj nruj heev kom tsis txhob muaj kev tsis ncaj nyob hauv lawv; thiab tus uas raug nrhiav pom ua tsis ncaj, thiab muaj peb tug tim khawv ntawm lub koom txoos tau rau txim rau lawv ua ntej cov txwj laug, thiab yog lawv tsis hloov siab, thiab tsis lees txim, lawv tej npe tau raug rho tawm, thiab lawv tsis raug suav nyob hauv Khetos cov neeg.
- 8 Tiam sis nquag npaum li lawv hloov siab lees txim thiab nrhiav txoj kev zam txim, nrog txoj kev ua tiag tiag, lawv yuav raug zam txim.

Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 Thiab lawv tej kev sab laj raug coj los ntawm lub koom txoos raws li tej kev ua hauj lwm ntawm tus Ntsuj Plig, thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; vim thaum lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau coj lawv saib yuav qhuab qhia yam twg, los sis yuav ntuas, los sis yuav thov Vajtswv, los sis yuav thov yam dab tsi, los sis yuav hu nkauj, ces nws twb raug ua tiav.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

Maulaunais 7

- 1 Thiab nim no kuv, Maulaunais, sau ob peb yam ntawm tej lus ntawm kuv txiv Maumoos, tej uas nws tau hais txog txoj kev ntseeg, txoj kev cia siab, thiab txoj kev siab hlub; nws tau hais rau cov neeg zoo li no, thaum nws qhia lawv nyob hauv tsev sab laj uas lawv tau ua rau qhov chaw teev tiam.
- 2 Thiab nim no kuv, Maumoos, hais rau nej, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub; thiab nws yog los ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua ntawm Vajtswv Leej Txiv, thiab peb tus Tswv Yexus Khetos, thiab nws lub siab xav dawb huv, vim yog lub txiaj ntsim ntawm nws txoj kev hu rau kuv, es kuv thiaj raug pub hais rau nej nyob lub sij hawm no.
- 3 Yog li ntawd, kuv yuav hais rau nej cov uas yog cov ntawm lub koom txoos, cov uas yog cov raws Khetos qab uas muaj kev nyab xeeb, thiab cov uas tau muaj ib txoj kev cia siab txaus los ntawm tej uas nej muaj peev xwm nkag tau rau hauv tus Tswv qhov chaw so, txij li lub sij hawm no lawm yav tom ntej mus txog thaum nej yuav tau so nrog nws hauv ntuj ceeb tsheej.
- 4 Thiab nim no kuv cov kwv tij, kuv yuav txiax txim rau nej tej yam no vim yog nej txoj kev mus yam nyab xeeb nrog noob neej.
- 5 Vim kuv nco txog tus Tswv txoj lus uas hais tias los ntawm lawv tej hauj lwm nej yeej yuav paub lawv; vim yog lawv tej hauj lwm zoo, ces lawv yeej zoo thiab.
- 6 Vim saib seb, Vajtswv tau hais tias ib tug neeg uas phem yeej tsis muaj peev xwm ua tej uas zoo; vim yog nws muab pub ib qho txiaj ntsim, los sis thov Vajtswv, tsuas yog nws yuav ua tej ntawd tiag tiag xwb tsis yog li ces yuav pab tsis tau nws dab tsi.
- 7 Vim saib seb, yuav tsis tau suav rau nws tias tej ntawd ncaj ncees.
- 8 Vim saib seb, yog ib tug neeg uas ua phem muab ib qho txiaj ntsim, nws yeej tsis muab dawb paug; yog li ntawd raug suav rau nws tib yam li tias nws tau tuav cia qhov txiaj ntsim ntawd; yog li ntawd nws raug suav ua phem nyob ntawm Vajtswv xub ntiag.
- 9 Thiab nws kuj raug suav tias phem rau ib tug neeg zoo li ntawd thiab, yog nws yuav thov Vajtswv thiab tsis muaj siab thov tiag; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab nws yuav pab tsis tau nws dab tsi, vim Vajtswv tsis txais tej yam li ntawd.

Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

- 10 Yog li ntawd, ib tug neeg uas phem tsis muaj peev xwm ua tej yam uas zoo; thiab nws yeej yuav tsis muab ib qho txiaj ntsim zoo.
- 11 Vim saib seb, ib lub qhov dej iab yeej tsis muaj peev xwm txhawv tau tej dej zoo; thiab ib lub qhov dej zoo yeej tsis muaj peev xwm txhawv tau dej iab; yog li ntawd, ib tug neeg uas ua ib tug tub qhe ntawm tus dab yeej tsis muaj peev xwm raws tau Khetos qab; thiab yog nws yuav lawv Khetos qab nws yuav tsis muaj peev xwm ua tau ib tug tub qhe ntawm tus dab.
- 12 Yog li ntawd, tag nrho txhua yam uas zoo yeej los ntawm Vajtswv los; thiab tej uas phem yeej los ntawm tus dab los; vim tus dab yog ib tug yeeb ncuab rau Vajtswv, thiab tawm tsam nkaug nws tsis tu ncuab, thiab caw thiab ntxias kom ua txhaum, thiab ua tej uas phem tsis tu ncuab.
- 13 Tiam sis saib seb, tej uas yog Vajtswv li yuav caw thiab yaum kom ua zoo tsis tu ncuab; yog li ntawd, txhua yam uas caw thiab yaum kom ua zoo, thiab kom hlub Vajtswv, thiab kom ua hauj lwm rau nws, yeej yog Vajtswv kom ua.
- 14 Yog li ntawd, ceev faj, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, kom nej tsis txhob txiav txim tias tej uas phem yog Vajtswv li, los sis tej uas zoo thiab yog Vajtswv li ho yog tus dab li.
- 15 Vim saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij, yeej raug muab rau nej txiav txim, kom nej yuav paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem; thiab txoj kev yuav txiav txim yeej pom tseeb, kom nej yuav paub nrog ib txoj kev paub zoo heev, tib yam li nruab hnub uas ncaim hauv hmo ntuj los.
- 16 Vim saib seb, tus Ntsuj Plig ntawm Khetos twb raug muab rau txhua tus neeg, kom nws yuav paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem; yog li ntawd, kuv yuav qhia txoj kev txiav txim rau nej; vim txhua yam uas caw kom ua zoo, thiab yaum kom ntseeg Khetos, yeej raug xa tawm los ntawm lub hwj chim thiab lub txiaj ntsim ntawm Khetos; yog li ntawd nej yuav paub nrog ib txoj kev paub zoo tias tej ntawd yog Vajtswv li.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

- 17 Tiam sis txhua yam uas yaum tib neeg ua phem, thiab tsis ntseeg Khetos, thiab tsis kam lees nws, thiab ua hauj lwm rau nws, ces nej yuav paub nrog ib txoj kev paub zoo tias tej ntawd yog tus dab li; vim tus dab ua hauj lwm zoo li no, vim nws tsis yaum ib tug neeg los ua zoo li, tsis yaum tiag, tsis yaum ib tug li; nws tej tim tswv los tib yam; lawv cov uas ywj lawv tus kheej rau nws siv los tib yam.
- 18 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, saib zoo kom nej yuav paub qhov kaj ntawm tej uas nej yuav txiav txim, qhov kaj uas yog qhov kaj ntawm Khetos, saib zoo kom nej tsis txhob txiav txim yuam kev; vim nej yuav raug txiav txim rau tej uas nej tau txiav txim rau lawm.
- 19 Yog li ntawd, kuv thov nej, cov kwv tij, kom nej yuav rau siab ntso nrhiav nyob hauv qhov kaj ntawm Khetos kom nej yuav paub qhov zoo tawm ntawm qhov phem; thiab yog nej yuav tuav txhua yam uas zoo, thiab tsis txiav txim rau tej ntawd, nej yeej yuav tau ua Khetos ib tug me nyuam tiag.
- 20 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij, yuav ua li cas nej thiaj li yuav tuav tau txhua yam uas zoo?
- 21 Thiab nim no kuv los rau txoj kev ntseeg ntawd, qhov uas kuv tau hais tias kuv yuav hais; thiab kuv yuav qhia nej txoj kev uas nej yuav tuav tau txhua yam uas zoo.
- 22 Vim saib seb, Vajtswv yeej paub txhua yam, tau kav ib txhis rau ib txhis, saib seb, nws tau xa tej tim tswv los pab rau noob neej, kom yuav paub txog txoj kev los ntawm Khetos; thiab nyob hauv Khetos yuav muaj tau txhua yam kev zoo los.
- 23 Thiab Vajtswv kuj tau qhia rau tej yaj saub, los ntawm nws lub qhov ncauj kiag, tias Khetos yuav los.
- 24 Thiab saib seb, tau muaj ntau yam kev uas nws tau ua tej xwm rau noob neej paub, uas tau yog tej uas zoo; thiab tag nrho tej uas zoo yeej los ntawm Khetos los; tsis yog li ntawd ces tib neeg yeej tau raug poob lawm, thiab yuav tsis muaj tau yam uas zoo los rau lawv.
- 25 Yog li ntawd, los ntawm txoj kev pab ntawm tej tim tswv, thiab los ntawm txhua lo lus uas tau hais tawm los ntawm Vajtswv lub qhov ncauj, tib neeg tau pib xyaum kom muaj kev ntseeg Khetos; thiab li no los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, lawv thiaj tuav tau txhua yam uas zoo; thiab li no nws yog mus txog thaum txoj kev los ntawm Khetos.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

26 Thiab tom qab uas nws tau los tib neeg kuj yuav raug cawm dim los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg nyob hauv nws lub npe; thiab los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg, lawv rais los mus ua Vajtsvuv tej tub. Thiab tseeb ib yam li Khetos muaj sia nyob nws tau hais tej lus no rau peb tej yawg koob, hais tias: Txhua yam uas nej yuav thov Leej Txiv los ntawm kuv lub npe, uas yog yam uas zoo, nyob hauv txoj kev ntseeg cia siab ntsoov tias nej yuav tau txais, saib seb, yeej yuav raug ua tiav li ntawd rau nej.

27 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, tej txuj ci tseem ceeb puas tau tseg vim Khetos tau nce mus rau saum ntuj ceeb tsheej, thiab tau zaum ntawm Vajtsvuv sab tes xis, mus muab nqi zog ntawm Leej Txiv txog nws tej kev muaj cai rau ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua uas nws tau muaj rau saum noob neej?

28 Vim nws tau teb qhov kawg ntawm txoj kev cai, thiab nws tau lees tag nrho cov uas muaj txoj kev ntseeg hauv nws; thiab lawv cov uas muaj kev ntseeg hauv nws yeej yuav npuab rau txhua yam uas zoo; yog li ntawd nws hais zoo txog noob neej; thiab nws nyob saum ntuj ceeb tsheej tas mus li.

29 Thiab vim nws tau ua li no lawm, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, tej txuj ci tseem ceeb puas tau tseg lawm? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis tau; tej tim tswv los kuj tsis tau tsum los pab rau noob neej.

30 Vim saib seb, lawv raug ywj rau nws, kom mus pab raws li nws txoj lus txib, ua lawv tus kheej rau lawv cov uas muaj txoj kev ntseeg muaj zog thiab muaj lub siab ruaj nyob hauv txhua yam ncaj ncees pom.

31 Thiab txoj hauj lwm ntawm lawv txoj kev pab yog hu kom neeg los rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim, thiab kom muaj puv npo thiab ua txoj hauj lwm ntawm tej kev khi lus ntawm Leej Txiv, uas nws tau khi rau noob neej, kom yuav npaj tau kev nyob hauv noob neej, los ntawm txoj kev tshaj Khetos txoj lus rau cov neeg uas raug xaiv ntawm tus Tswv, kom lawv yuav ua tim khawv txog nws.

32 Thiab los ntawm txoj kev ua li no, tus Tswv Vajtsvuv yuav npaj txoj kev kom cov neeg uas tseem tshuav yuav muaj txoj kev ntseeg hauv tus Tswv, kom tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv yuav muaj qhov chaw nyob hauv lawv tej siab, raws li lub hwj chim ntawm qhov ntawd; thiab Leej Txiv tau coj tau, tej kev khi lus uas nws tau khi rau noob neej raws li no.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

- 33 Thiab Khetos tau hais tias: Yog nej yuav muaj txoj kev ntseeg hauv kuv nej yeej yuav muaj hwj chim ua tau txhua yam uas tsim nyob hauv kuv.
- 34 Thiab nws tau hais tias: Cia li hloov siab lees txim nej sawv daws uas nyob thoob lub ntiaj teb, thiab cia li los cuag kuv, thiab ua kev cai raus dej nyob ntawm kuv lub npe, thiab muaj txoj kev ntseeg nyob hauv kuv, xwv kom nej thiaj li yuav raug cawm dim.
- 35 Thiab nim no, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, yog tias qhov no yog li ntawd tias tej yam no uas kuv tau hais rau nej muaj tseeb, thiab Vajtswv yuav ua rau nej paub, nrog lub hwj chim thiab lub yeeb koob loj nyob hauv hnuv kawg, tias lawv muaj tseeb, thiab yog lawv muaj tseeb no lub caij ntawm tej txuj ci tseem ceeb puas tau tsum lawm?
- 36 Los sis tej tim tswv puas tau tsum tshwm sim rau noob neej? Los sis nws puas tau tuav lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv ncaim ntawm lawv? Los sis nws puas yuav tuav, ntev heev npaum li lub sij hawm yuav ntev, los sis npaum li lub ntiaj teb yuav nyob, los sis puas yuav muaj ib tug neeg nyob rau saum qhov ntawd raug cawm dim taus?
- 37 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias, Tsis yog li ntawd; vim twb yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg es thiaj ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb; thiab twb yog los ntawm txoj kev ntseeg es tej tim tswv tshwm sim thiab los pab rau tej tib neeg; yog li ntawd, yog tej yam no tau tseg lawm tiag ces txoj kev txom nyem yuav raug rau noob neej, vim nws yog vim txoj kev tsis ntseeg, thiab tag nrho tsis muaj yam tsim nyog.
- 38 Vim tsis muaj ib tug neeg muaj peev xwm dim tau, raws li Khetos tej lus, tsuas yog lawv yuav muaj txoj kev ntseeg hauv nws lub npe xwb; yog li ntawd, yog tej yam no tau tseg lawm, ces txoj kev ntseeg los kuj tau tseg lawm thiab; thiab neeg yeej yuav nyob qhov uas phem kawg nkaus, vim lawv yuav nyob zoo li uas tsis tau muaj txoj kev txhiv dim.
- 39 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv txiav txim rau nej tej yam uas zoo dua, vim kuv txiav txim tias nej muaj txoj kev ntseeg hauv Khetos vim yog nej lub siab dawb siab zoo; vim yog nej tsis muaj txoj kev ntseeg nyob hauv nws ces nej yuav tsis phim suav nyob hauv cov neeg ntawm nws lub koom txoos.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

40 Thiab ntxiv, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, kuv yuav hais rau nej txog txoj kev cia siab. Yuav ua li cas nej thiaj txawj muaj tau txoj kev ntseeg, tsuas yog nej yuav tsum muaj txoj kev cia siab xwb?

41 Thiab nej yuav cia siab rau yam dab tsi? Saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias nej yuav tsum muaj txoj kev cia siab dhau los ntawm Khetos thiab lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj kev sawv hauv qhov tuag rov qab los, tias yuav sawv los mus rau txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, thiab tau qhov no los vim nej txoj kev ntseeg hauv nws raws li txoj kev cog lus.

42 Yog li ntawd, yog ib tug neeg muaj txoj kev ntseeg nws yuav tsum muaj txoj kev cia siab; vim yog tsis muaj txoj kev ntseeg yeej muaj tsis tau txoj kev cia siab li.

43 Thiab ntxiv, saib seb kuv hais rau nej tias nws tsis muaj peev xwm muaj tau txoj kev ntseeg thiab kev cia siab, tsuas yog nws yuav txo hwj chim thiab muaj siab mos siab muag xwb.

44 Yog tsis li ntawd, nws txoj kev ntseeg thiab txoj kev cia siab tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, vim tsis muaj ib tug uas raug txais yuav nyob ntawm Vajtswv, tsuas yog cov neeg txo hwj chim thiab muaj siab mos siab muag xwb; thiab yog ib tug neeg txo hwj chim thiab muaj siab mos siab muag, thiab lees los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tias Yexus yog tus Khetos, nws yuav tsum muaj txoj kev siab hlub; vim yog nws tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub nws tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi; yog li ntawd nws yuav tsum muaj txoj kev siab hlub.

45 Thiab txoj kev siab hlub tiv taus ntev, thiab siab zoo, thiab tsis xav tau luag tug, thiab tsis khav theeb, tsis xav rau nws tus kheej xwb, tsis chim sai, tsis xav phem, thiab tsis nyiam kev tsis ncaj ncees tiam sis nyiam qhov tseeb, tiv tag nrho txhua yam, ntseeg txhua yam, cia siab rau txhua yam, nyiaj tag nrho txhua yam.

46 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, yog nej tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub ces, nej twb tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi, vim txoj kev siab hlub yeej tsis plam ib zaug li. Yog li ntawd, cia li npuab rau txoj kev siab hlub, uas yog yam uas zoo tshaj plaws tag nrho, vim txhua yam yeej yuav plam—

47 Tiam sis txoj kev siab hlub yog txoj kev hlub dawb paug ntawm Khetos, thiab nws yuav nyob tas mus li; thiab tus uas raug nrhiav pom muaj nws nyob hauv hnuv kawg, tus ntawd yuav tau zoo.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

48 Yog li ntawd, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub es, cia li thov Leej Txiv tag nrho lub zog ntawm lub siab, xwv kom nej yuav muaj txoj kev hlub no puv npo, txoj uas nws tau muab rau tag nrho cov uas raws qab tiag ntawm nws Leej Tub, Yexus Khetos; xwv kom nej yuav rais tau los mus ua Vajtswv tej tub; kom thaum nws yuav tshwm los peb yuav zoo li nws, vim peb yuav pom nws zoo li uas nws yog; kom peb yuav muaj txoj kev cia siab no; kom peb yuav raug ua kom dawb huv tib yam li nws twb dawb huv. Amees.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

Maulaunais 8

- 1 Kuv txiv Maumoos ib tsab ntawv, uas tau sau rau kuv, Maulaunais; thiab nws tau raug sau rau kuv tom qab tsis ntev uas kuv raug hu los rau txoj kev qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo. Thiab qhov no yog tej uas nws tau sau rau kuv, hais tias:
- 2 Kuv tus tub Maulaunais, uas kuv hlub, kuv zoo siab heev uas koj tus Tswv Yexus Khetos tau txaus siab rau koj, thiab tau hu koj los rau hauv nws txoj kev qhuab qhia txoj moo zoo, thiab rau hauv nws txoj hauj lwm dawb huv.
- 3 Kuv nco ntsoov txog koj nyob hauv kuv tej kev thov Vajtswv, tau thov Vajtswv Leej Txiv tsis tu ncuia los ntawm nws tus Me Nyuam Dawbuv lub npe, Yexus, kom nws, dhau hauv nws txoj kev zoo thiab txoj kev hlub tshua tsis muaj qhov kawg, yuav tsom kwm koj dhau hauv txoj kev tiv ntawm txoj kev ntseeg hauv nws lub npe kom mus txog thaum kawg.
- 4 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub es, kuv hais rau koj txog tej uas ua rau kuv nyuaj siab heev; vim nws ua rau kuv nyuaj siab tias yuav muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg sawv nyob hauv nej.
- 5 Vim, yog kuv tau kawm qhov tseeb, tau muaj tej kev sib cav sib ceg nyob hauv nej ntsig txog txoj kev cai raus dej ntawm nej tej me nyuam yaus.
- 6 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv xav kom koj yuav rau siab ntso ua hauj lwm, kom yuav tshem tau qhov kev tsis yog loj no tawm ntawm nej mus; vim, yog rau qhov no ntag kuv thiaj li tau sau tsab ntawv no.
- 7 Vim tsis ntev tom qab uas kuv tau kawm tej yam no ntsig txog nej kuv tau thov tus Tswv txog qhov teeb meem ntawd. Thiab tus Tswv txoj lus tau los rau kuv los ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv lub hwj chim, hais tias:

Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

8 Cia li mloog Khetos tej lus, nej tus Txhiv Dim, nej tus Tswv thiab nej tus Vajtswv. Saib seb, kuv tau los rau hauv lub ntiaj teb tsis yog los hu cov neeg ncaj ncees tiam sis los hu cov neeg txhaum kom hloov siab lees txim; tej neeg tsis muaj mob yeej tsis xav tau kws tshuaj, tsuas yog lawv cov uas muaj mob xwb; yog li ntawd, tej me nyuam yaus yeej tsis muaj mob, vim lawv tsis tau txawj ua txhaum; yog li ntawd txoj kev foom ntawm Adas raug tshem tawm ntawm lawv nyob hauv kuv, kom nws tsis muaj hwj chim kav lawv; thiab txoj kev cai txiav tau raug tsum nyob hauv kuv.

9 Thiab tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv tau ua Vajtswv txoj lus rau kuv paub raws li no; yog li ntawd, kuv tus me tub uas kuv hluv es, kuv paub tias nws yog ib txoj kev thuam heev rau Vajtswv, tias nej yuav muab tej me nyuam yaus ua kev cai raus dej.

10 Saib seb kuv hais rau koj tias koj yuav tsum qhia tej yam no—txoj kev hloov siab lees txim thiab txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej rau cov uas lav ris tau thiab txawj ua txhaum; muaj tseeb tiag, qhia tej niam txiv kom lawv yuav tsum hloov siab lees txim thiab ua kev cai raus dej, thiab txo lawv tej hwj chim tib yam li tej me nyuam yaus, thiab lawv sawv daws yuav dim nrog lawv tej me nyuam yaus.

11 Thiab lawv tej me nyuam yaus tsis tas yuav hloov siab lees txim, los sis tsis tas ua kev cai raus dej. Saib seb, txoj kev cai raus dej yog ua rau txoj kev hloov siab lees txim kom muaj tau puv npo li tej lus txib rau txoj kev zam txim ntawm tej kev txhaum.

12 Tiam sis tej me nyuam yaus muaj txoj sia nyob hauv Khetos, twb txij li thaum chiv keeb ntawm lub ntiaj teb los; yog tsis muaj li ntawd, Vajtswv yeej yog Vajtswv tsis tas, thiab kuj yog tus Vajtswv uas txawj hloov, thiab yog tus uas saib neeg ntsej muag ua; vim muaj pes tsawg leej me nyuam yaus uas tau tuag lawm es tsis tau ua kev cai raus dej!

13 Yog li ntawd, yog tej me nyuam yaus tsis muaj peev xwm raug cawm dim taus yog tsis tau ua kev cai raus dej, es lawv yuav tsum tau mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus uas tsis muaj qhov kawg.

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

14 Saib seb kuv hais rau nej, tias tus uas xav tias tej me nyuam yaus yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej tab tom nyob hauv tus kwj tob tob ntawm txoj kev iab ntsim thiab nyob hauv tej kev raug txim ntawm txoj kev tsis ncaj; vim nws tsis tau muaj txoj kev ntseeg los sis txoj kev cia siab, los sis tsis muaj txoj kev siab hlub; yog li ntawd, nws yuav raug txiav tawm thaum tseem sij xav li no, nws yeej yuav tsum tau nqis mus rau hauv ntuj txiag teb tsaus.

15 Vim nws yog ib qho kev phem heev uas xav tias Vajtswv cawm ib tug me nyuam vim yog txoj kev ua kev cai raus dej, thiab lwj tus yuav tsum piam sij vim nws tsis tau ua txoj kev cai raus dej.

16 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas yuav hloov tus Tswv tej kev mus raws li no, vim lawv yuav piam sij tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb. Saib seb, kuv hais yam tsis ntshai, tau muaj cai los ntawm Vajtswv; thiab kuv tsis ntshai yam uas neeg muaj peev xwm ua tau; vim txoj kev hlub tiag tiag yeej ntiab tau tag nrho tej kev txhawj ntshai tawm.

17 Thiab kuv puv npo nrog txoj kev siab hlub, uas yog txoj kev hlub uas kav ib txhis; yog li ntawd, tag nrho tej me nyuam yaus zoo tib yam rau kuv; yog li ntawd, kuv hlub tej me nyuam yaus nrog txoj kev hlub tiag tiag; thiab lawv sawv daws zoo ib yam thiab yog cov uas tau txais txoj kev cawm seeg.

18 Vim kuv paub tias Vajtswv tsis yog ib tug Vajtswv uas tsis zoo tas, los sis tsis yog ib tug uas txawj hloov; tiam sis nws yog tus uas tsis txawj hloov mus ib txhiab ib txhis li.

19 Tej me nyuam yaus tsis txawj hloov siab lees txim; yog li ntawd, nws yog ib qho kev phem heev uas tsis kam lees tej kev hlub tshua dawb paug ntawm Vajtswv los rau lawv, vim lawv sawv daws muaj sia nyob hauv nws vim yog nws txoj kev hlub tshua.

20 Thiab nws tus uas hais tias tej me nyuam yaus yuav tsum ua kev cai raus dej twb tsis lees txais tej kev hlub tshua ntawm Khetos, thiab muab txoj kev theej txhoj ntawm nws thiab lub hwj chim ntawm nws txoj kev txhiv dim suav tsis muaj nqi.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

- 21 Kev txom nyem yuav raug rau cov ntawd, vim lawv yuav muaj xwm txheej ntawm txoj kev tuag, ntawm ntuj txiag teb tsaus, thiab ntawm txoj kev tsim txom uas tsis muaj qhov kawg. Kuv hais tej no yam tsis ntshai; Vajtswv tau txib kuv. Cia li mloog lawv thiab ua raws li, los sis tej ntawd yuav sawv tawm tsam nej nyob ntawm lub rooj txiav txim ntawm Khetos.
- 22 Vim saib seb tag nrho tej me nyuam yaus muaj txoj sia nyob hauv Khetos, thiab txoj kev cai tsis raug rau lawv sawv daws. Vim lub hwj chim ntawm txoj kev txhiv dim los rau saum lawv sawv daws uas tsis muaj txoj kev cai; yog li ntawd, tus uas tsis raug txim, los sis tus uas tsis nyob hauv qab txoj kev raug txim, hloov siab lees txim tsis tau; thiab txoj kev raus dej rau cov li ntawd tsis muaj nuj nqis dab tsi—
- 23 Tiam sis nws yog txoj kev thuam rau Vajtswv, tau tsis lees yuav tej kev hlub tshua ntawm Khetos, thiab lub hwj chim ntawm nws tus Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv, thiab tau cia siab rau tej hauj lwm uas tuag lawm.
- 24 Saib seb, kuv tus me tub, qhov no yuav tsum tsis txhob ua; vim txoj kev hloov siab lees txim yog rau lawv cov uas nyob hauv qab txoj kev raug txim thiab hauv qab ntawm txoj kev foom ntawm ib txoj kev cai uas tau ua txhaum.
- 25 Thiab thawj thawj cov txiv ntawm txoj kev hloov siab lees txim yog txoj kev cai raus dej; thiab txoj kev cai raus dej los tau ntawm txoj kev ntseeg los rau txoj kev ua tej lus txib kom puv npo; thiab txoj kev ua tej lus txib kom puv npo coj tau txoj kev zam tej kev txog txhaum los;
- 26 Thiab txoj kev zam tej kev txog txhaum coj tau txoj kev txo hwj chim, thiab siab mos siab muag los; thiab vim yog txoj kev txo hwj chim thiab siab mos siab muag txoj kev saib xyuas ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv thiaj los tau, uas yog tus Nplij kom muaj txoj kev cia siab thiab txoj kev hlub tiag tiag, uas yog txoj kev hlub uas tiv tau los ntawm txoj kev rau siab ntso thov, mus txog thaum qhov kawg yuav los, thaum uas tag nrho cov ntseeg yuav tau nrog Vajtswv nyob.
- 27 Saib seb, kuv tus me tub, kuv yuav sau ntawv rau koj dua yog kuv tsis tawm mus tawm tsam cov Neeg Lamas tsis ntev no. Saib seb, txoj kev khav ntawm haiv neeg no, los sis cov neeg ntawm cov Neeg Nifais, tau qhia tseeb txog lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim xwb.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

28 Thov Vajtswv rau lawv, kuv tus me tub, kom txoj kev hloov siab lees txim yuav los tau rau lawv. Tiam sis saib seb, kuv ntshai nyob tsam tus Ntsuj Plig yuav tseg tsis nrog lawv nyob lawm; thiab nyob rau feem av ntawm no lawv kuj tau nrhiav txo tag nrho tej hwj chim thiab cai uas los ntawm Vajtswv los; thiab lawv tab tom tsis lees yuav tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.

29 Thiab tom qab uas tau tsis lees yuav ib txoj kev paub zoo heev, kuv tus me tub, lawv yuav tsum piam sij tsis ntev no, kom muaj puv npo li tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej uas tau raug hais los ntawm tej yaj saub, thiab tib yam li tej lus ntawm peb tus Cawm Seeg kiag.

30 Nyob zoo nawj, kuv tus me tub, mus txog thaum uas kuv yuav sau ntawv rau koj, los sis tau rov ntsib koj dua. Anees.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

Maulaunais 9

- 1 Kuv tus me tub uas kuv hlub es, kuv sau ntawv rau koj dua kom koj yuav paub tias kuv tseem muaj sia nyob; tiam sis kuv yuav sau txog tej yam uas tu siab heev.
- 2 Vim saib seb, kuv tau muaj ib npluav rog mob heev nrog cov Neeg Lamas, uas yog npluav uas peb tsis yeej; thiab Aki-eetus tau ntog los ntawm ntaj, thiab Lulas thiab Eloos los tib yam; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab peb tau xiam peb ib co neeg zoo heev.
- 3 Thiab nim no saib seb, kuv tus me tub, kuv ntshai nyob tsam cov Neeg Lamas yuav ua kom cov neeg no puas tsuaj; vim lawv yeej tsis kam hloov siab lees txim, thiab Dab Ntxwg Nyoog pheej txhib kom lawv ib leeg npau taws rau ib leeg tsis tu ncuu li.
- 4 Saib seb, kuv tab tom ua hauj lwm nrog lawv tsis tu ncuu; thiab thaum kuv hais Vajtswv txoj lus nrog txoj kev nruj lawv tau ua tshee na thiab npau taws nkaug kuv; thiab thaum kuv tsis siv txoj kev nruj lawv ua lawv tej siab tawv tawm tsam tej ntawd; yog li ntawd, kuv ntshai nyob tsam tus Tswv tus Ntsuj Plig yuav tseg tsis nrog lawv nyob lawm.
- 5 Vim lawv yeej npau taws heev kawg nkaus kuv saib yam li lawv tsis muaj txoj kev ntshai txog txoj kev tuag li; thiab lawv ib leeg tau poob lawv txoj kev hlub, rau ib leeg; thiab lawv xav tua neeg thiab pauj txiaj ntsig tsis tu ncuu xwb.
- 6 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub uas kuv hlub es, txawm tias lawv muaj siab tawv los, cia peb rau siab ntso ua hauj lwm; vim yog peb tsum tsis ua hauj lwm, peb yuav raug coj los rau hauv qab txoj kev raug txim; vim peb muaj ib txoj hauj lwm ua thaum tseem nyob hauv lub cev av no, xwv kom peb yuav kov yeej tus yeeb ncuab ntawm tag nrho tej kev ncaj ncees, thiab cia peb tej ntsuj plig so nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj.
- 7 Thiab nim no kuv sau tej yam txog tej kev txom nyem ntawm cov neeg no. Vim raws li txoj kev paub uas kuv tau txais los ntawm Amauloos, saib seb, cov Neeg Lamas tau ntau leej neeg raug txim, uas lawv txhom tau los ntawm tus pej thuum Selixas; thiab tau muaj tej txiv neej, tej poj niam, thiab tej me nyuam yaus.

Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

- 8 Thiab lawv tau tua tej ua txiv thiab tej txiv ntawm cov poj niam thiab tej me nyuam ntawd; thiab lawv tau muab tej nqaij ntawm lawv cov txiv rau tej poj niam noj, thiab muab tej nqaij ntawm lawv tej txiv rau tej me nyuam noj; thiab tsis muaj dej, lawv tsuas muab me rau lawv xwb.
- 9 Thiab txawm tias cov Neeg Lamas ua txoj kev qias loj npaum li no los, nws tseem tsis tau npaum li tej uas peb cov neeg ua nyob hauv Mauli-atus. Vim saib seb, ntau tus ntxhais ntawm cov Neeg Lamas tau raug lawv txhom tau ua neeg raug txim; thiab tom qab uas tau muab lawv tej uas tshua tshaj thiab muaj nuj nqis tshaj plaws txhua yam huv tib si, uas yog txoj kev coj dawb huv thiab tsim txiaj—
- 10 Thiab tom qab uas lawv tau ua tej yam no tas, lawv tau muab lawv tua yam ua phem kawg nkaus, tau tsim txom lawv tej cev mus txog thaum tuag; thiab tom qab uas lawv tau ua li no tas, lawv tau noj lawv tej nqaij zoo ib yam li tej tsiaj qus, vim yog txoj kev tawv ntawm lawv tej siab; thiab lawv tau ua tej no rau ib lub cim ntawm txoj kev tsis ntshai.
- 11 Au kuv tus me tub uas kuv hlub es, vim li cas ib co neeg zoo li no, uas yuav tsis muaj kev vam meej li—
- 12 (Thiab nyuam qhuav yog tau ob peb xyoos dhau los lawm xwb, thiab lawv tau yog ib co neeg uas muaj kev zoo thiab txaus nyiam)
- 13 Tiam sis Au kuv tus me tub, vim li cas cov neeg uas zoo li no, cov uas muaj txoj kev zoo ho nyob hauv txoj kev qias tag npaud—
- 14 Peb yuav xav tau li cas tias Vajtswv yuav tsis tso nws txhais tes nyob hauv txoj kev txiav txim tawm tsam peb?
- 15 Saib seb, kuv lub siab quaj tias: Kev txom nyem raug rau cov neeg no. Cia li tawm los rau hauv txoj kev txiav txim, Au Vajtswv es, thiab zais lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab tej kev phem, thiab tej kev qias tawm ntawm koj lub ntsej muag!
- 16 Thiab ntxiv, kuv tus me tub, tau muaj ntau tus poj ntsuam thiab lawv tej ntxhais uas tseem nyob hauv Selixas; thiab tej zaub mov noj uas cov Neeg Lamas tsis tau coj mus, saib seb, Xenefais tej tub rog tau muab nqa lawm, thiab tau muab lawv cia lam theeb puas rau qhov txhia chaw uas lawv yuav nrhiav tau zaub mov; thiab ntau cov poj niam laus tau qaug zog tom tej kev thiab tuag.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

- 17 Thiab tej tub rog uas nyob nrog kuv twb tsis muaj zog; thiab tej tub rog ntawm cov Neeg Lamas nyob nruab nrab ntawm Selixas thiab kuv; thiab txhua tus uas tau khiav mus rau Aloos tej tub rog tau poob raug txhom mus rau lawv tej kev raug tsim txom uas phem kawg nkaus.
- 18 Au txoj kev phem qias ntawm kuv cov neeg! Lawv nyob tsis muaj chaw rau thiab tsis muaj kev hlub tshua. Saib seb, kuv yog ib tug neeg xwb, thiab kuv tsuas muaj zog li ib tug neeg xwb, thiab kuv tsis muaj peev xwm hais kom lawv mloog kuv tej lus ntxiv lawm.
- 19 Thiab lawv tau rais los mus muaj zog nyob hauv lawv txoj kev lim hiam; thiab lawv kuj phem, tsis tseg leej twg li, yuav laus los hluas; thiab lawv nyiam txhua yam tsuas tshuav tej uas zoo xwb; thiab txoj kev txom nyem ntawm peb tej poj niam thiab peb tej me nyuam uas nyob saum thaj av no yeej phem tshaj txhua yam tsav; muaj tseeb tiag, tus nplaig tsis muaj peev xwm qhia tau, los sis tsis muaj peev xwm muab nws sau cia tau.
- 20 Thiab nim no, kuv tus me tub, kuv yuav tsis piav txog txoj kev phem heev no ntev ntxiv lawm. Saib seb, koj yeej paub txoj kev phem ntawm cov neeg no; koj yeej paub tias lawv nyob yam tsis muaj kev cai kav, thiab dhau qhov siab xav; thiab lawv txoj kev phem tseem phem tshaj li cov Neeg Lamas tej.
- 21 Saib seb, kuv tus me tub, kuv tsis muaj peev xwm hais tej yam zoo txog lawv rau Vajtswv nyob tsam nws yuav nplawm kuv.
- 22 Tiam sis saib seb, kuv tus me tub, kuv muaj tej yam zoo hais txog koj rau Vajtswv, thiab kuv cia siab rau Khetos xwv kom koj yuav raug cawm dim; thiab kuv thov Vajtswv kom nws yuav tseg koj txoj sia, ua tim khawv txog cov neeg no txoj kev tig rov mus cuag nws, los sis rau lawv txoj kev puas tsuaj huv tib si; vim kuv paub tias lawv yuav tsum piam sij tsuas yog lawv yuav hloov siab lees txim thiab tig rov mus cuag nws xwb.
- 23 Thiab yog lawv piam sij nws yuav raug zoo li cov Neeg Tsales, vim yog txoj kev xav ua puv npo ntawm lawv tej siab, nrhiav ntshis tua neeg thiab pauj txiaj ntsig xwb.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

24 Thiab yog tias lawv piam sij, peb paub tias ntau tus ntawm peb cov kwv tij tau khiav mus koom cov Neeg Lamas, thiab ntau tus ntxiv kuj yuav khiav mus koom lawv thiab; yog li ntawd, sau tej yam me ntsis ntxiv, yog koj dim thiab kuv piam sij thiab tsis pom koj; tiam sis kuv cia siab tias nyaj kuv yuav tau pom koj tsis ntev no; vim kuv muaj tej ceev xwm txheej dawb ceev uas kuv yuav muab rau koj.

25 Kuv tus me tub, cia siab ntsoov rau Khetos; thiab tsis txhob cia tej yam uas kuv tau sau ua rau koj nyuaj siab, tsuam koj ntog rau txoj kev tuag; tiam sis thov Khetos tsa koj sawv, thiab thov kom nws tej kev raug txom nyem thiab txoj kev tuag thiab txoj kev ua nws lub cev rau peb tej yawg koob pom, thiab nws txoj kev hlub tshua thiab txoj kev ua siab ntev nyiaj, thiab txoj kev cia siab ntawm nws lub yeeb koob thiab ntawm txoj sia nyob mus ib txhis, nyob hauv koj siab mus ib txhis.

26 Thiab thov kom txoj kev hlub tshua ntawm Vajtswv Leej Txiv, tus uas lub rooj zaum nyob siab puag saum ntuj, thiab peb tus Tswv Yexus Khetos, tus uas zaum ntawm sab tes xis ntawm nws lub hwj chim, mus txog thaum tag nrho txhua yam rais los mus ua nws tug, yog, thiab nrog koj nyob tas mus li. Amees.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

Maulaunais 10

- 1 Nim no kuv, Maulaunais, sau tej yam uas kuv xav tias zoo; thiab kuv sau rau kuv cov kwv tij, cov Neeg Lamas; thiab kuv xav kom lawv yuav paub tias ntau dua li plaub puas thiab nees nkaum xyoo tau dhau mus txij li lub cim tau raug muab txog txoj kev los ntawm Khetos.
- 2 Thiab kuv yuav muab tej ceev xwm txheej no zwm cia, tom qab uas kuv tau hais ob peb lo lus los ntawm txoj kev ntuas nej.
- 3 Saib seb, kuv yuav ntuas nej tias thaum nej yuav nyeem tej yam no, yog Vajtswv pom zoo tias nej yuav tsum nyeem lawv, kom nej yuav nco txog saib tus Tswv tau hlub tshua rau noob neej npaum li cas, txij li thaum tsim Adas nqis los mus txog lub sij hawm uas nej yuav txais tej yam no, thiab xav zoo zoo tej ntawd nyob hauv nej tej siab.
- 4 Thiab thaum nej yuav tau txais tej yam no, kuv yuav ntuas nej kom nej yuav thov Vajtswv, Leej Txiv tus uas nyob mus ib txhis, los ntawm Khetos lub npe, saib tej yam no puas muaj tseeb; thiab yog nej yuav thov nrog lub siab dawb paug, nrog txoj kev thov tiag tiag, muaj txoj kev ntseeg Khetos, nws yuav ua kom nej paub qhov tseeb ntawm tej ntawd, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv.
- 5 Thiab los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv nej yuav paub qhov tseeb ntawm tag nrho txhua yam.
- 6 Thiab txhua yam uas zoo yeej ncaj thiab tseeb; yog li ntawd, tsis muaj ib yam uas zoo uas yuav tsis lees txais Khetos, tiam sis tsuas qhia kom paub tias nws muaj nyob.
- 7 Thiab nej yuav paub tias nws tseem muaj nyob, los ntawm lub hwj chim ntawm tus Vaj Ntsuj Plig Dawb Huv; yog li ntawd kuv yuav ntuas nej kom nej tsis txhob tsis lees Vajtswv lub hwj chim; vim nws ua hauj lwm los ntawm lub hwj chim, raws li txoj kev ntseeg ntawm noob neej, hnuv no thiab tag kis, thiab mus ib txhis los zoo tib yam nkaus.

Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

- 8 Thiab ntxiv, kuv ntuas nej, kuv cov kwv tij, kom nej tsis txhob tsis lees Vajtswv tej txiaj ntsim, vim lawv muaj ntau; thiab tej ntawd los ntawm tib tug Vajtswv. Thiab muaj ntau txoj kev uas tej txiaj ntsim no yuav raug muab; tiam sis nws yog tib tug Vajtswv ua hauj lwm txhua yam rau sawv daws; thiab tej ntawd raug muab los ntawm tej kev tshwm sim ntawm Vajtswv tus Ntsuj Plig rau tib neeg, kom yuav pab tau lawv.
- 9 Vim saib seb, rau ib tug raug muab los ntawm Vajtswv Tus Ntsuj Plig, kom nws yuav txawj qhia lo lus txawj ntse;
- 10 Thiab rau lwm tus, kom nws yuav txawj qhia lo lus thoob tsib los ntawm tib tug Ntsuj Plig;
- 11 Thiab rau lwm tus, kom muaj kev ntseeg loj heev; thiab ho rau lwm tus, kom muaj tej txiaj ntsim ntawm txoj kev kho mob zoo los ntawm tib tug Ntsuj Plig;
- 12 Thiab ntxiv, rau lwm tus, kom nws yuav ua tau tej txuj ci tseem ceeb loj heev;
- 13 Thiab ntxiv, rau lwm tus, kom nws yuav qhia tau tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej txog txhua yam tsav;
- 14 Thiab ntxiv, rau lwm tus, kom pom tau tej tim tswv thiab tej kev qhuab qhia ntawm tej ntsuj plig;
- 15 Thiab ntxiv, rau lwm tus, kom txawj hais txhua yam lus;
- 16 Thiab ntxiv, rau lwm tus, kom txawj txhais tej lus thiab lwm yam lus uas txawv.
- 17 Thiab tag nrho txhua yam txiaj ntsim no tau los ntawm Khetos tus Ntsuj Plig los; thiab lawv los rau txhua tus neeg, raws li nws pom zoo.
- 18 Thiab kuv xav ntuas nej, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, kom nej yuav nco ntsoov tias txhua yam txiaj ntsim zoo yeej los ntawm Khetos los.
- 19 Thiab kuv xav ntuas nej, kuv cov kwv tij uas kuv hlub, kom nej yuav nco ntsoov tias nws yeej zoo tib yam li nag hmo, hnub no, thiab mus ib txhis, thiab txhua yam txiaj ntsim uas kuv tau hais txog, uas yog sab ntsuj plig, yeej yuav tsis raug muab tshem mus li, twb yuav nyob ntev npaum li lub ntiaj teb yuav nyob, tsuas yog thaum noob neej tsis ntseeg lawm xwb.
- 20 Yog li ntawd, yuav tsum muaj kev ntseeg; thiab yog muaj kev ntseeg ces yuav tsum muaj txoj kev cia siab; thiab yog muaj txoj kev cia siab ces kuj yuav tsum muaj txoj kev siab hlub.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

- 21 Thiab tsuas yog nej muaj txoj kev siab hlub xwb tsis yog li ntawd nej yuav tsis muaj peev xwm raug cawm dim los nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; thiab nej kuj yuav tsis muaj peev xwm raug cawm dim los nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj yog nej tsis muaj txoj kev ntseeg; thiab nej kuj dim tsis taus yog nej tsis muaj txoj kev ntseeg.
- 22 Thiab yog nej tsis muaj txoj kev cia siab nej yuav tsum tau nyob hauv qhov chaw tsis muaj kev cia siab; thiab txoj kev tsis muaj chaw cia siab tau los vim yog txoj kev tsis ncaj.
- 23 Thiab Khetos tau hais tseeb rau peb tej yawg koob tias: Yog nej muaj txoj kev ntseeg nej yeej muaj peev xwm ua tau txhua yam uas kuv xav tias tsim nyog.
- 24 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau tag nrho txhua tus hauv qab ntuj kawg—tias yog muaj lub caij uas lub hwj chim thiab tej txiaj ntsim ntawm Vajtswv raug tshem ntawm nej mus ces twb vim yog txoj kev tsis ntseeg.
- 25 Thiab kev txom nyem yuav raug rau noob neej yog yuav muaj li no; vim yuav tsis muaj ib tug ua zoo nyob hauv nej li, tsis muaj ib tug li. Vim yog muaj ib tug nyob hauv nej uas ua zoo, nws yeej yuav ua hauj lwm los ntawm lub hwj chim thiab tej txiaj ntsim ntawm Vajtswv.
- 26 Thiab txoj kev txom nyem yuav raug rau lawv cov uas ua kom tsis muaj tej yam no thiab tuag mus, vim lawv tuag nyob hauv lawv tej kev txhaum, thiab lawv tsis muaj peev xwm raug cawm dim tau nyob hauv Vajtswv lub nceeg vaj; thiab kuv hais tej no raws li Khetos tej lus; thiab kuv tsis dag.
- 27 Thiab kuv ntuas nej kom nco ntsoov tej yam no; vim lub sijhawm yuav los sai heev uas nej yuav paub tias kuv tsis dag, vim nej yuav pom kuv nyob ntawm Vajtswv lub rooj txiaj txim; thiab tus Tswv Vajtswv yuav hais rau nej tias: Kuv tau tshaj kuv tej lus rau nej, uas tau raug sau los ntawm tus txiv neej no, zoo li ib tug uas quaj hais tawm hauv qhov tuag los, muaj tseeb tiag, twb zoo li ib tug uas hais tawm hauv av los.
- 28 Kuv tshaj tawm tej yam no kom tej kev qhia tej uas yuav muaj los yav tom ntej yuav muaj puv npo. Thiab saib seb, lawv yuav tawm los ntawm Vajtswv tus uas kav ib txhis lub qhov ncauj; thiab nws txoj lus yuav tawm ntawm ib tiam neeg mus rau ib tiam neeg.
- 29 Thiab Vajtswv yuav ua rau nej paub, tias yam uas kuv tau sau yeej muaj tseeb.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

30 Thiab ntxiv kuv yuav ntuas nej kom nej yuav los cuag Khetos, thiab cia li tuav txhua yam txiaj ntsim uas zoo, thiab tsis txhob kov tej txiaj ntsim phem, los sis tej yam uas tsis huv.

31 Thiab cia li tsim, thiab sawv hauv av los, Au Yeluxalees; muaj tseeb tiag, thiab cia li hnav nej tej ris tsho uas zoo zoo nkauj, Au Xi-oos tus ntxhais es; thiab kho nej tej tswg kom muaj zog thiab ua nej tej ciam dej ciam av kom loj tas mus li, xwv kom nej yuav tsis tau sib txuam ntxiv lawm, kom tej kev khi lus ntawm Leej Txiv tus Nyob Mus Ib Txhis uas nws tau khi rau nej, yuav muaj puv npo, Au tsev neeg Ixayees.

32 Muaj tseeb tiag, cia li los cuag Khetos, thiab cia li ua kom zoo tshaj plaws nyob hauv nws, thiab tswj nej tej siab tawm ntawm txhua yam uas tsis zoo; thiab yog nej yuav tswj nej tej siab tawm ntawm txhua yam uas tsis zoo, thiab hlub Vajtswv tag nej siab, nej ntsws thiab nej dag nej zog, ces nws txoj kev hlub tshua yeej muaj txaus rau nej, xwv kom los ntawm nws txoj kev hlub tshua nej yuav raug ua kom zoo tshaj plaws nyob hauv Khetos; thiab yog los ntawm txoj kev hlub tshua ntawm Vajtswv nej raug ua kom zoo tshaj plaws nyob hauv Khetos, ces nej yuav tsis kam tsis lees Vajtswv lub hwj chim.

33 Thiab ntxiv, yog nej raug ua kom zoo tshaj plaws nyob hauv Khetos los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev hlub tshua, thiab tsis kam tsis lees nws lub hwj chim, ces nej yuav raug ua kom dawb huv nyob hauv Khetos los ntawm Vajtswv txoj kev hlub tshua, dhau los ntawm txoj kev ntshav nrog ntawm Khetos, uas muaj nyob hauv txoj kev khi lus ntawm Leej Txiv rau txoj kev zam nej tej kev txhaum, xwv kom nej yuav rais los mus dawb huv, tsis muaj qhov ceb.

34 Thiab nim no kuv hais rau nej sawv daws, nyob zoo mog. Tsis ntev no kuv yuav mus so nyob hauv Vajtswv qhov chaw uas nyob kaj siab lug, mus txog thaum kuv tus ntsuj plig thiab lub cev yuav rov los sib koom ua ke; thiab kuv raug coj los li tus uas kov yeej dhau tej cua, los ntsib nej nyob ntawm Yehauvas tus zoo kawg nkaus lub rooj txiav txim, tus Txiaiv Txim uas Nyob Mus Ib Txhis ntawm cov neeg uas muaj sia thiab cov neeg tuag. Amees.

Xaus Li No

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

The End